

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
RALEIGH, N.C.

PROPOSAL

INCLUDES ADDENDUM No.4 DATED 9-16-2019

DATE AND TIME OF BID OPENING: **SEPTEMBER 17, 2019 AT 2:00 PM**

CONTRACT ID C204265
WBS 34232.3.5, 34232.3.GV8

FEDERAL-AID NO. NHPP-026-1(200)13, NHP-0026(15)
COUNTY BUNCOMBE, HENDERSON
T.I.P. NO. I-4400C, I-4400BB
MILES 8.552
ROUTE NO. I 26
LOCATION I-26 FROM 0.05 MILES NORTH OF US-64 TO NC-280 (EXIT 40).

TYPE OF WORK GRADING, DRAINAGE, PAVING, SIGNALS, AND STRUCTURES.

NOTICE:

ALL BIDDERS SHALL COMPLY WITH ALL APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICE OF GENERAL CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA WHICH REQUIRES THE BIDDER TO BE LICENSED BY THE N.C. LICENSING BOARD FOR CONTRACTORS WHEN BIDDING ON ANY NON-FEDERAL AID PROJECT WHERE THE BID IS \$30,000 OR MORE, EXCEPT FOR CERTAIN SPECIALTY WORK AS DETERMINED BY THE LICENSING BOARD. BIDDERS SHALL ALSO COMPLY WITH ALL OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICES OF ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA. NOTWITHSTANDING THESE LIMITATIONS ON BIDDING, THE BIDDER WHO IS AWARDED ANY FEDERAL - AID FUNDED PROJECT SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA FOR LICENSING REQUIREMENTS WITHIN 60 CALENDAR DAYS OF BID OPENING.

BIDS WILL BE RECEIVED AS SHOWN BELOW:

THIS IS A ROADWAY & STRUCTURE PROPOSAL

5% BID BOND OR BID DEPOSIT REQUIRED

**PROPOSAL FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF
CONTRACT No. C204265 IN BUNCOMBE AND HENDERSON COUNTIES, NORTH CAROLINA**

Date _____ 20 _____

**DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION,
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA**

The Bidder has carefully examined the location of the proposed work to be known as Contract No. C204265 has carefully examined the plans and specifications, which are acknowledged to be part of the proposal, the special provisions, the proposal, the form of contract, and the forms of contract payment bond and contract performance bond; and thoroughly understands the stipulations, requirements and provisions. The undersigned bidder agrees to bound upon his execution of the bid and subsequent award to him by the Board of Transportation in accordance with this proposal to provide the necessary contract payment bond and contract performance bond within fourteen days after the written notice of award is received by him. The undersigned Bidder further agrees to provide all necessary machinery, tools, labor, and other means of construction; and to do all the work and to furnish all materials, except as otherwise noted, necessary to perform and complete the said contract in accordance with *the 2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* by the dates(s) specified in the Project Special Provisions and in accordance with the requirements of the Engineer, and at the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, for the various items given on the sheets contained herein.

The Bidder shall provide and furnish all the materials, machinery, implements, appliances and tools, and perform the work and required labor to construct and complete State Highway Contract No. C204265 in Buncombe and Henderson Counties, for the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, bid by the Bidder in his bid and according to the proposal, plans, and specifications prepared by said Department, which proposal, plans, and specifications show the details covering this project, and hereby become a part of this contract.

The published volume entitled *North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, January 2018* with all amendments and supplements thereto, is by reference incorporated into and made a part of this contract; that, except as herein modified, all the construction and work included in this contract is to be done in accordance with the specifications contained in said volume, and amendments and supplements thereto, under the direction of the Engineer.

If the proposal is accepted and the award is made, the contract is valid only when signed either by the Contract Officer or such other person as may be designated by the Secretary to sign for the Department of Transportation. The conditions and provisions herein cannot be changed except over the signature of the said Contract Officer.

The quantities shown in the itemized proposal for the project are considered to be approximate only and are given as the basis for comparison of bids. The Department of Transportation may increase or decrease the quantity of any item or portion of the work as may be deemed necessary or expedient.

An increase or decrease in the quantity of an item will not be regarded as sufficient ground for an increase or decrease in the unit prices, nor in the time allowed for the completion of the work, except as provided for the contract.

Accompanying this bid is a bid bond secured by a corporate surety, or certified check payable to the order of the Department of Transportation, for five percent of the total bid price, which deposit is to be forfeited as liquidated damages in case this bid is accepted and the Bidder shall fail to provide the required payment and performance bonds with the Department of Transportation, under the condition of this proposal, within 14 calendar days after the written notice of award is received by him, as provided in the *Standard Specifications*; otherwise said deposit will be returned to the Bidder.



State Contract Officer

DocuSigned by:

Ronald E. Davenport, Jr.

F81B6038A47A442...

9/16/2019

TABLE OF CONTENTS**COVER SHEET****PROPOSAL SHEET****PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-1
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 1, BONUS CLAUSE AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:.....	G-1
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 2 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-2
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 3 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-3
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 4 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-4
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 5 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-4
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 6 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-4
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 7 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-5
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 8 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-5
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 9 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-5
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 10 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-6
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 11 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-6
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 12 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-6
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 13 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-6
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 14 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-7
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 15 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-7
INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 16 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:	G-7
AWARD OF CONTRACT:.....	G-8
PERMANENT VEGETATION ESTABLISHMENT:.....	G-8
CONSTRUCTION MORATORIUM:.....	G-8
MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS:	G-9
SPECIALTY ITEMS:.....	G-9
FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:.....	G-9
PAYOUT SCHEDULE:	G-10
SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS:.....	G-10
DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE:	G-11
CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS:	G-24
CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS:	G-25
USE OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS):	G-25
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE:	G-25
CARGO PREFERENCE ACT:	G-26
SUBSURFACE INFORMATION:.....	G-26
PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER - (Partial Payments for Materials):.....	G-26
REMOVABLE PAVEMENT MARKINGS - (Partial Payments for Materials):.....	G-27
MAINTENANCE OF THE PROJECT:	G-27
COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS:.....	G-27
ELECTRONIC BIDDING:.....	G-28
BID DOCUMENTATION:	G-28
TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:.....	G-32
EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION:	G-32
PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:.....	G-37
NOTES TO CONTRACTOR:	G-39

DELAY IN RIGHT OF ENTRY:..... G-40

ROADWAY..... R-1

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISIONS

AVAILABILITY FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS SSP-1
 NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY SSP-2
 ERRATA..... SSP-5
 PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES SSP-6
 TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION SSP-7
 MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS SSP-15
 REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL-AID CONST. CONTRACTS SSP-18
 ON-THE-JOB TRAINING SSP-27
 MINIMUM WAGES SSP-30

UNIT PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

GEOTECHNICAL.....GT-0.1
 SIGNING SN-1
 PAVEMENT MARKINGS..... PM-1
 TRAFFIC CONTROL TC-1
 LIGHTING..... LT-1
 UTILITY CONSTRUCTION UC-1
 UTILITY COORDINATOR..... US-1
 UTILITY BY OTHERS..... UBO-1
 EROSION CONTROL EC-1
 REST AREA RA-1
 REST AREA SITE WORK RAS-1
 TRAFFIC SIGNALS TS-1
 ITS..... ITS-1
 STRUCTURE / CULVERTS..... ST-1
 RAILROAD INSURANCE (Structures) RR-1

PERMITS P-1

PROPOSAL ITEM SHEET

ITEM SHEET(S) (TAN SHEETS)

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**GENERAL****CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:**

(8-15-00) (Rev. 12-18-07)

108

SP1 G07 A

The date of availability for this contract is **October 28, 2019**, except that work in jurisdictional waters and wetlands shall not begin until a meeting between the DOT, Regulatory Agencies, and the Contractor is held as stipulated in the permits contained elsewhere in this proposal. This delay in availability has been considered in determining the contract time for this project.

The completion date for this contract is **May 31, 2024**.

Except where otherwise provided by the contract, observation periods required by the contract will not be a part of the work to be completed by the completion date and/or intermediate contract times stated in the contract. The acceptable completion of the observation periods that extend beyond the final completion date shall be a part of the work covered by the performance and payment bonds.

The liquidated damages for this contract are **Two Hundred Dollars (\$ 200.00)** per calendar day. These liquidated damages will not be cumulative with any liquidated damages which may become chargeable under Intermediate Contract Time Number 1.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 1, BONUS CLAUSE AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 2-21-12)

108

SP1 G13 A(Rev)

Except for that work required under the Project Special Provisions entitled *Planting, Reforestation* and/or *Permanent Vegetation Establishment*, included elsewhere in this proposal, the Contractor will be required to complete all work included in this contract and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is **October 28, 2019**.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is **November 1, 2023**.

The Department desires that this intermediate contract work be completed by this date and that the Contractor pursue the work with such labor, equipment and materials as necessary to ensure that the intermediate date will be met without regard to time extensions and time reliefs provided for in the Specifications. Therefore, as full compensation for all extra costs involved, the Department agrees to pay as a bonus, the sum of **Two Million Dollars (\$ 2,000,000.00)** to the Contractor for satisfactorily completing this intermediate contract work on or prior to **November 1, 2023**. Should the Contractor fail to complete this intermediate contract work by this date, then normal time extension and time reliefs provided in the Specifications will apply and no bonus will be allowed.

The liquidated damages for this intermediate contract time are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per calendar day.

Upon apparent completion of all the work required to be completed by this intermediate date, a final inspection will be held in accordance with Article 105-17 and upon acceptance, the Department will assume responsibility for the maintenance of all work except *Planting, Reforestation* and/or *Permanent Vegetation Establishment*. The Contractor will be responsible for and shall make corrections of all damages to the completed roadway caused by his planting operations, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic through the project.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 2 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07)

108

SP1 G14 A

The Contractor shall complete the required work of installing, maintaining, and removing the traffic control devices for lane closures and restoring traffic to the existing traffic pattern. The Contractor shall not close or narrow a lane of traffic on **the following roads** during the following time restrictions:

DAY AND TIME RESTRICTIONS

I-26 (including associated Ramps), US 25, and US 64 Ramps

Monday thru Friday

6:00 AM to 9:00 PM

Saturday and Sunday

9:00 AM to 9:00 PM

SR 1358 (Fanning Bridge Road)

Monday thru Friday

6:00 AM to 9:00 AM and 4:00 PM to 6:00 PM

SR 1534 (Naples Road)

Monday thru Friday

6:00 AM to 9:00 AM

Saturday and Sunday

4:00 PM to 6:00 PM

In addition, the Contractor shall not close or narrow a lane of traffic on **I-26, US 25, US 64 (including associated Ramps), SR 1358 (Fanning Bridge Road) and SR 1534 (Naples Road)**, detain and/or alter the traffic flow on or during holidays, holiday weekends, special events, or any other time when traffic is unusually heavy, including the following schedules:

HOLIDAY AND HOLIDAY WEEKEND LANE CLOSURE RESTRICTIONS

1. For **unexpected occurrence** that creates unusually high traffic volumes, as directed by the Engineer.
2. For **Christmas and New Year's**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** December 18th and **9:00 PM** the third weekday following New Year's Day.
3. For **Easter**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** Thursday and **9:00 PM** Monday.
4. For **Memorial Day**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** Friday and **9:00 PM** Tuesday.

5. For **Independence Day**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** the day before Independence Day and **9:00 PM** the day after Independence Day.

If **Independence Day** is on a Friday, Saturday, Sunday or Monday, then between the hours of **6:00 AM** the Thursday before Independence Day and **9:00 PM** the Tuesday after Independence Day.
6. For **Labor Day**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** Friday and **9:00 PM** Tuesday.
7. For **Thanksgiving**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** the Friday before Thanksgiving Day and **9:00 PM** the Monday following Thanksgiving Day.
8. For the **Christmas retail season**, Thursdays through Sundays between the hours of **9:00 PM** the Thursday following Thanksgiving Day to **6:00 AM** December 18th.
9. For the **North Carolina Mountain State Fair** (typically held for 10 days starting the Friday after Labor Day), between the hours of **6:00 AM** the Friday following Labor Day and **9:00 PM** the following Monday after the Fair concludes.

Holidays and holiday weekends shall include New Year's, Easter, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving, and Christmas. The Contractor shall schedule his work so that lane closures will not be required during these periods, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract work shall be the time the Contractor begins to install all traffic control devices for lane closures according to the time restrictions listed herein.

The completion time for this intermediate contract work shall be the time the Contractor is required to complete the removal of all traffic control devices for lane closures according to the time restrictions stated above and place traffic in the existing traffic pattern.

The liquidated damages are **Two Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500.00)** per fifteen (15) minute time period.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 3 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 10-15-13)

108

SP1 G14 E

The Contractor shall complete the required work of installing, maintaining and removing the traffic control devices for road closures and restoring traffic to the existing traffic pattern. The Contractor shall not close **I-26 (including associated Ramps)** during the following time restrictions:

DAY AND TIME RESTRICTIONS

**Monday thru Sunday
5:00 AM - 11:00 PM**

The maximum allowable time for **existing bridge demolition, girder installation, overhead sign structure installation, signal mast arms and traffic shift** is **thirty (30) minutes** for **I-26**

(including associated Ramps). The Contractor shall reopen the travel lanes to traffic until any resulting traffic queue is depleted.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time will be the time the Contractor begins to install traffic control devices required for the road closures according to the time restrictions stated herein.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time will be the time the Contractor is required to complete the removal of traffic control devices required for the road closures according to the time restrictions stated herein and restore traffic to the existing traffic pattern.

The liquidated damages are **Three Thousand Seven Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$3,750)** per fifteen (15) minute time period.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 4 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #2.3 thru #2.8** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3 (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **twenty-one (21)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Three Thousand Dollars (\$3,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 5 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #3.3 thru #3.5** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3 (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **fourteen (14)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Three Thousand Dollars (\$3,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 6 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #10.1 thru #10.3** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday** at **9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday** at **6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Two Thousand Dollars (\$2,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 7 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Steps #1 thru #5** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday** at **9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday** at **6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Two Thousand Dollars (\$2,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 8 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Steps #8.1 thru #8.4** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **fourteen (14)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Ten Thousand Dollars (\$10,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 9 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #2.2 thru #2.7** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3 (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **one hundred eighty (180)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Seven Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$7,500.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 10 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IIB, Steps #2.2 and #2.3** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 11 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IIC, Step #2** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 12 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Steps #5.1 thru #5.5** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3B (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 13 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Step #5.6** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3B (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **opening of -Y10- (US 25) to traffic in Phase IV, Step #5.5.**

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **fourteen (14)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date **-Y10- (US 25) is open to traffic in Phase IV, Step #5.5.**

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 14 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

The Contractor shall complete the work required of the **Snow and Ice Removal Special Provision included in this Contract. All equipment, including any specified appurtenances (plows, spreaders, etc.) shall be rigged, fitted and ready for operation (loading, plowing, etc.) and delivered to the pre-designated Department of Transportation Facilities.**

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time **for each piece of equipment** is the time that the Contractor is notified by a designated Department staff member that each **individual piece of equipment with operator is required. The Contractor will be notified a minimum of three (3) hours before the piece of equipment with operator is needed to begin work.**

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the time **that each piece of equipment is no longer required, as determined by a designated Department staff member.**

The liquidated damages **for failure to satisfactorily furnish equipment and operators as specified** are **Two Hundred Dollars (\$ 200.00)** per hour per piece of equipment.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 15 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete all work required at each of the **following locations**, as shown on the **Rest Area Plans**, and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

Independent Intermediate Contract Times:

- A. I-26 EB Rest Area**
- B. I-26 WB Rest Area**

The date of availability for **each independent** intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to **close public access to the rest area**, but not before **October 28, 2019** or later than **April 30, 2020.**

The completion date for **each independent** intermediate contract time is the date which is **four hundred fifty-five (455)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date of availability. **Please refer to Local Note #15 on Sheet TMP-1C (I-4400C TMP) for maintenance of traffic.**

The liquidated damages **for each Independent Intermediate Contract Time** are **One Thousand Dollars (\$ 1,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 16 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase II, Steps #4 thru #6** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **ten (10)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Ten Thousand Dollars (\$ 10,000.00)** per calendar day.

AWARD OF CONTRACT:

Revise the 2018 *Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-23, Subarticle 103-4 (A) General, first paragraph, replace the 3rd and 4th sentences with the following:

Where award is to be made, the notice of award will be issued within 60 days after the opening of bids or upon issuance of any necessary debt instrument, whichever is later, but not to exceed 120 days; except with the consent of the lowest responsible bidder the decision to award the contract to such bidder may be delayed for as long a time as may be agreed upon by the Department and such bidder. In the absence of such agreement, the lowest responsible bidder may withdraw his bid at the expiration of 120 days without penalty if no notice of award has been issued.

PERMANENT VEGETATION ESTABLISHMENT:

(2-16-12) (Rev. 10-15-13)

104

SP1 G16

Establish a permanent stand of the vegetation mixture shown in the contract. During the period between initial vegetation planting and final project acceptance, perform all work necessary to establish permanent vegetation on all erodible areas within the project limits, as well as, in borrow and waste pits. This work shall include erosion control device maintenance and installation, repair seeding and mulching, supplemental seeding and mulching, mowing, and fertilizer topdressing, as directed. All work shall be performed in accordance with the applicable section of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. All work required for initial vegetation planting shall be performed as a part of the work necessary for the completion and acceptance of the Intermediate Contract Time (ICT). Between the time of ICT and Final Project acceptance, or otherwise referred to as the vegetation establishment period, the Department will be responsible for preparing the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) inspection records.

Once the Engineer has determined that the permanent vegetation establishment requirement has been achieved at an 80% vegetation density (the amount of established vegetation per given area to stabilize the soil) and no erodible areas exist within the project limits, the Contractor will be notified to remove the remaining erosion control devices that are no longer needed. The Contractor will be responsible for, and shall correct any areas disturbed by operations performed in permanent vegetation establishment and the removal of temporary erosion control measures, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic on the project.

Payment for *Response for Erosion Control, Seeding and Mulching, Repair Seeding, Supplemental Seeding, Mowing, Fertilizer Topdressing, Silt Excavation, and Stone for Erosion Control* will be made at contract unit prices for the affected items. Work required that is not represented by contract line items will be paid in accordance with Articles 104-7 or 104-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No additional compensation will be made for maintenance and removal of temporary erosion control items.

CONSTRUCTION MORATORIUM:

(1-19-16)

SP1 G18C

No tree cutting will be allowed from **May 15** through **August 15** of any year.

MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS:

(2-19-02)

104

SP1 G28

The following listed items are the major contract items for this contract (see Article 104-5 of the 2018 Standard Specifications):

Line #	Description
82 -	Class IV Subgrade Stabilization
98 -	13" Port Cem Conc Pavement, Through Lanes (with Dowels)

SPECIALTY ITEMS:

(7-1-95)(Rev. 1-17-12)

108-6

SP1 G37

Items listed below will be the specialty items for this contract (see Article 108-6 of the 2018 Standard Specifications).

Line #	Description
162-182, 188	Guardrail
183-187	Fencing
194-244	Signing
271-274, 285-290, 297	Long-Life Pavement Markings
275-277	Removable Tape
298-299	Permanent Pavement Markers
300-333, 335-350	Lighting
351-408	Utility Construction
409-443, 445-446	Erosion Control
444	Reforestation
447-456	Planting
457-492	Rest Area
493-570, 675-677	Signals/ITS System
625-630, 632-633	Drilled Piers

FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:

(11-15-05) (Rev. 2-18-14)

109-8

SP1 G43

Revise the 2018 Standard Specifications as follows:

Page 1-87, Article 109-8, Fuel Price Adjustments, add the following:

The base index price for DIESEL #2 FUEL is \$ **1.9515** per gallon. Where any of the following are included as pay items in the contract, they will be eligible for fuel price adjustment.

The pay items and the fuel factor used in calculating adjustments to be made will be as follows:

Description	Units	Fuel Usage Factor Diesel
Unclassified Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29

Borrow Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Class IV Subgrade Stabilization	Gal/Ton	0.55
Aggregate Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Sub-Ballast	Gal/Ton	0.55
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Open-Graded Asphalt Friction Course	Gal/Ton	2.90
Permeable Asphalt Drainage Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Sand Asphalt Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Aggregate for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Portland Cement for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
___ " Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245
Concrete Shoulders Adjacent to ___ " Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245

PAYOUT SCHEDULE:

(1-19-10) (Rev. 1-17-12)

108

SP1 G57

Submit an Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule prior to beginning construction. The Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule will be used by the Department to monitor funding levels for this project. Include a monthly percentage breakdown (in terms of the total contract amount) of the work anticipated to be completed. The schedule should begin with the date the Contractor plans to begin construction and end with the anticipated completion date. Submit updates of the Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule on March 15, June 15, September 15, and December 15 of each calendar year until project acceptance. Submit the original Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule and all subsequent updates to the Resident Engineer with a copy to the State Construction Engineer at 1 South Wilmington Street, 1543 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1543.

SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS:

(7-15-08) (Rev. 6-19-18)

108-2

SP1 G58

The Contractor's attention is directed to the Standard Special Provision entitled *Availability of Funds Termination of Contracts* included elsewhere in this proposal. The Department of Transportation's schedule of estimated completion progress for this project as required by that Standard Special Provision is as follows:

	<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Progress (% of Dollar Value)</u>
2020	(7/01/19 - 6/30/20)	27% of Total Amount Bid
2021	(7/01/20 - 6/30/21)	32% of Total Amount Bid
2022	(7/01/21 - 6/30/22)	23% of Total Amount Bid
2023	(7/01/22 - 6/30/23)	15% of Total Amount Bid
2024	(7/-1/23 – 6/30/24)	3% of Total Amount Bid

The Contractor shall also furnish his own progress schedule in accordance with Article 108-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Any acceleration of the progress as shown by the Contractor's progress schedule over the progress as shown above shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE:

(10-16-07)(Rev. 2-19-19)

102-15(J)

SP1 G61

Description

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts financed in whole or in part with Federal funds. This provision is guided by 49 CFR Part 26.

Definitions

Additional DBE Subcontractors - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that will not be used to meet the DBE goal. No submittal of a Letter of Intent is required.

Committed DBE Subcontractor - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that is being used to meet the DBE goal by submission of a Letter of Intent. Or any DBE used as a replacement for a previously committed DBE firm.

Contract Goal Requirement - The approved DBE participation at time of award, but not greater than the advertised contract goal.

DBE Goal - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage, that is to be performed by committed DBE subcontractor(s).

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

Goal Confirmation Letter - Written documentation from the Department to the bidder confirming the Contractor's approved, committed DBE participation along with a listing of the committed DBE firms.

Manufacturer - A firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises, the materials or supplies obtained by the Contractor.

Regular Dealer - A firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials or supplies required for the performance of the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold to the public in the usual course of business. A regular dealer engages in, as its principal business and in its own name, the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A regular dealer in such bulk items as steel, cement, gravel, stone, and petroleum products need not keep such products in stock, if it owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Brokers and packagers are not regarded as manufacturers or regular dealers within the meaning of this section.

Replacement / Substitution - A full or partial reduction in the amount of work subcontracted to a committed (or an approved substitute) DBE firm.

North Carolina Unified Certification Program (NCUCP) - A program that provides comprehensive services and information to applicants for DBE certification, such that an applicant is required to apply only once for a DBE certification that will be honored by all recipients of

USDOT funds in the state and not limited to the Department of Transportation only. The Certification Program is in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26.

United States Department of Transportation (USDOT) - Federal agency responsible for issuing regulations (49 CFR Part 26) and official guidance for the DBE program.

Forms and Websites Referenced in this Provision

DBE Payment Tracking System - On-line system in which the Contractor enters the payments made to DBE subcontractors who have performed work on the project.
<https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/Vendor/PaymentTracking/>

DBE-IS Subcontractor Payment Information - Form for reporting the payments made to all DBE firms working on the project. This form is for paper bid projects only.
<https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Turnpike/Documents/Form%20DBE-IS%20Subcontractor%20Payment%20Information.pdf>

RF-1 DBE Replacement Request Form - Form for replacing a committed DBE.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/DBE%20MBE%20WBE%20Replacement%20Request%20Form.pdf>

SAF Subcontract Approval Form - Form required for approval to sublet the contract.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Subcontract%20Approval%20Form%20Rev.%202012.zip>

JC-1 Joint Check Notification Form - Form and procedures for joint check notification. The form acts as a written joint check agreement among the parties providing full and prompt disclosure of the expected use of joint checks.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Joint%20Check%20Notification%20Form.pdf>

Letter of Intent - Form signed by the Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, manufacturer or regular dealer that affirms that a portion of said contract is going to be performed by the signed DBE for the estimated amount (based on quantities and unit prices) listed at the time of bid.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Letter%20of%20Intent%20to%20Perform%20as%20a%20Subcontractor.pdf>

Listing of DBE Subcontractors Form - Form for entering DBE subcontractors on a project that will meet this DBE goal. This form is for paper bids only.
[http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20\(Federal\).docx](http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20(Federal).docx)

Subcontractor Quote Comparison Sheet - Spreadsheet for showing all subcontractor quotes in the work areas where DBEs quoted on the project. This sheet is submitted with good faith effort packages.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE%20Subcontractor%20Quote%20Comparison%20Example.xls>

DBE Goal

The following DBE goal for participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises is established for this contract:

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises **6.0** %

- (A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that DBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above as the DBE goal.
- (B) *If the DBE goal is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use DBEs during the performance of the contract. Any DBE participation obtained shall be reported to the Department.

Directory of Transportation Firms (Directory)

Real-time information is available about firms doing business with the Department and firms that are certified through NCUCP in the Directory of Transportation Firms. Only firms identified in the Directory as DBE certified shall be used to meet the DBE goal. The Directory can be found at the following link. [https:// www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html](https://www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html)

The listing of an individual firm in the directory shall not be construed as an endorsement of the firm's capability to perform certain work.

Listing of DBE Subcontractors

At the time of bid, bidders shall submit all DBE participation that they anticipate to use during the life of the contract. Only those identified to meet the DBE goal will be considered committed, even though the listing shall include both committed DBE subcontractors and additional DBE subcontractors. Additional DBE subcontractor participation submitted at the time of bid will be used toward the Department's overall race-neutral goal. Only those firms with current DBE certification at the time of bid opening will be acceptable for listing in the bidder's submittal of DBE participation. The Contractor shall indicate the following required information:

- (A) Electronic Bids

Bidders shall submit a listing of DBE participation in the appropriate section of the electronic submittal file.

- (1) Submit the names and addresses of DBE firms identified to participate in the contract. If the bidder uses the updated listing of DBE firms shown in the electronic submittal file, the bidder may use the dropdown menu to access the name and address of the DBE firm.
- (2) Submit the contract line numbers of work to be performed by each DBE firm. When no figures or firms are entered, the bidder will be considered to have no DBE participation.

- (3) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the DBE goal.
- (B) Paper Bids
- (1) *If the DBE goal is more than zero,*
 - (a) Bidders, at the time the bid proposal is submitted, shall submit a listing of *DBE* participation, including the names and addresses on *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* contained elsewhere in the contract documents in order for the bid to be considered responsive. Bidders shall indicate the total dollar value of the DBE participation for the contract.
 - (b) If bidders have no DBE participation, they shall indicate this on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* by entering the word "None" or the number "0." This form shall be completed in its entirety. **Blank forms will not be deemed to represent zero participation.** Bids submitted that do not have DBE participation indicated on the appropriate form will not be read publicly during the opening of bids. The Department will not consider these bids for award and the proposal will be rejected.
 - (c) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the corresponding goal.
 - (2) *If the DBE goal is zero,* entries on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* are not required for the zero goal, however any DBE participation that is achieved during the project shall be reported in accordance with requirements contained elsewhere in the special provision.

DBE Prime Contractor

When a certified DBE firm bids on a contract that contains a DBE goal, the DBE firm is responsible for meeting the goal or making good faith efforts to meet the goal, just like any other bidder. In most cases, a DBE bidder on a contract will meet the DBE goal by virtue of the work it performs on the contract with its own forces. However, all the work that is performed by the DBE bidder and any other DBE subcontractors will count toward the DBE goal. The DBE bidder shall list itself along with any DBE subcontractors, if any, in order to receive credit toward the DBE goal.

For example, if the DBE goal is 45% and the DBE bidder will only perform 40% of the contract work, the prime will list itself at 40%, and the additional 5% shall be obtained through additional DBE participation with DBE subcontractors or documented through a good faith effort.

DBE prime contractors shall also follow Sections A and B listed under *Listing of DBE Subcontractor* just as a non-DBE bidder would.

Written Documentation – Letter of Intent

The bidder shall submit written documentation for each DBE that will be used to meet the DBE goal of the contract, indicating the bidder's commitment to use the DBE in the contract. This documentation shall be submitted on the Department's form titled *Letter of Intent*.

The documentation shall be received in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer or at DBE@ncdot.gov no later than 10:00 a.m. of the sixth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the sixth day falls on an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

If the bidder fails to submit the Letter of Intent from each committed DBE to be used toward the DBE goal, or if the form is incomplete (i.e. both signatures are not present), the DBE participation will not count toward meeting the DBE goal. If the lack of this participation drops the commitment below the DBE goal, the Contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts, completed in its entirety, to the State Contractor Utilization Engineer or DBE@ncdot.gov no later than 10:00 a.m. on the eighth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the eighth day falls on an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Submission of Good Faith Effort

If the bidder fails to meet or exceed the DBE goal, the apparent lowest responsive bidder shall submit to the Department documentation of adequate good faith efforts made to reach the DBE goal.

A hard copy and an electronic copy of this information shall be received in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer or at DBE@ncdot.gov no later than 10:00 a.m. on the sixth calendar day following opening of bids unless the sixth day falls on an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day. If the contractor cannot send the information electronically, then one complete set and 5 copies of this information shall be received under the same time constraints above.

Note: Where the information submitted includes repetitious solicitation letters, it will be acceptable to submit a representative letter along with a distribution list of the firms that were solicited. Documentation of DBE quotations shall be a part of the good faith effort submittal. This documentation may include written subcontractor quotations, telephone log notations of verbal quotations, or other types of quotation documentation.

Consideration of Good Faith Effort for Projects with DBE Goals More Than Zero

Adequate good faith efforts mean that the bidder took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness, could reasonably be expected to

obtain sufficient DBE participation. Adequate good faith efforts also mean that the bidder actively and aggressively sought DBE participation. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not considered good faith efforts.

The Department will consider the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts a bidder has made. Listed below are examples of the types of actions a bidder will take in making a good faith effort to meet the goal and are not intended to be exclusive or exhaustive, nor is it intended to be a mandatory checklist.

- (A) Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising, written notices, use of verifiable electronic means through the use of the NCDOT Directory of Transportation Firms) the interest of all certified DBEs who have the capability to perform the work of the contract. The bidder must solicit this interest within at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow the DBEs to respond to the solicitation. Solicitation shall provide the opportunity to DBEs within the Division and surrounding Divisions where the project is located. The bidder must determine with certainty if the DBEs are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow up initial solicitations.
- (B) Selecting portions of the work to be performed by DBEs in order to increase the likelihood that the DBE goals will be achieved.
 - (1) Where appropriate, break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate DBE participation, even when the prime contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.
 - (2) Negotiate with subcontractors to assume part of the responsibility to meet the contract DBE goal when the work to be sublet includes potential for DBE participation (2nd and 3rd tier subcontractors).
- (C) Providing interested DBEs with adequate information about the plans, specifications, and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.
- (D)
 - (1) Negotiating in good faith with interested DBEs. It is the bidder's responsibility to make a portion of the work available to DBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available DBE subcontractors and suppliers, to facilitate DBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for DBEs to perform the work.
 - (2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including DBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using DBEs is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's failure to meet the contract DBE goal, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire

of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Bidding contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from DBEs if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable.

- (E) Not rejecting DBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities. The bidder's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associates and political or social affiliations (for example, union vs. non-union employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the bidder's efforts to meet the project goal.
- (F) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the recipient or bidder.
- (G) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.
- (H) Effectively using the services of available minority/women community organizations; minority/women contractors' groups; Federal, State, and local minority/women business assistance offices; and other organizations as allowed on a case-by-case basis to provide assistance in the recruitment and placement of DBEs. Contact within 7 days from the bid opening the Business Opportunity and Work Force Development Unit at BOWD@ncdot.gov to give notification of the bidder's inability to get DBE quotes.
- (I) Any other evidence that the bidder submits which shows that the bidder has made reasonable good faith efforts to meet the DBE goal.

In addition, the Department may take into account the following:

- (1) Whether the bidder's documentation reflects a clear and realistic plan for achieving the DBE goal.
- (2) The bidders' past performance in meeting the DBE goals.
- (3) The performance of other bidders in meeting the DBE goal. For example, when the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but others meet it, you may reasonably raise the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts the apparent successful bidder could have met the goal. If the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but meets or exceeds the average DBE participation obtained by other bidders, the Department may view this, in conjunction with other factors, as evidence of the apparent successful bidder having made a good faith effort.

If the Department does not award the contract to the apparent lowest responsive bidder, the Department reserves the right to award the contract to the next lowest responsive bidder that can satisfy to the Department that the DBE goal can be met or that an adequate good faith effort has been made to meet the DBE goal.

Non-Good Faith Appeal

The State Contractual Services Engineer will notify the contractor verbally and in writing of non-good faith. A contractor may appeal a determination of non-good faith made by the Goal Compliance Committee. If a contractor wishes to appeal the determination made by the Committee, they shall provide written notification to the State Contractual Services Engineer or at DBE@ncdot.gov. The appeal shall be made within 2 business days of notification of the determination of non-good faith.

Counting DBE Participation Toward Meeting DBE Goal**(A) Participation**

The total dollar value of the participation by a committed DBE will be counted toward the contract goal requirement. The total dollar value of participation by a committed DBE will be based upon the value of work actually performed by the DBE and the actual payments to DBE firms by the Contractor.

(B) Joint Checks

Prior notification of joint check use shall be required when counting DBE participation for services or purchases that involves the use of a joint check. Notification shall be through submission of Form JC-1 (*Joint Check Notification Form*) and the use of joint checks shall be in accordance with the Department's Joint Check Procedures.

(C) Subcontracts (Non-Trucking)

A DBE may enter into subcontracts. Work that a DBE subcontracts to another DBE firm may be counted toward the contract goal requirement. Work that a DBE subcontracts to a non-DBE firm does not count toward the contract goal requirement. If a DBE contractor or subcontractor subcontracts a significantly greater portion of the work of the contract than would be expected on the basis of standard industry practices, it shall be presumed that the DBE is not performing a commercially useful function. The DBE may present evidence to rebut this presumption to the Department. The Department's decision on the rebuttal of this presumption is subject to review by the Federal Highway Administration but is not administratively appealable to USDOT.

(D) Joint Venture

When a DBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement a portion of the total value of participation with the DBE in the joint venture, that portion of the total dollar value being a distinct clearly defined portion of work that the DBE performs with its forces.

(E) Suppliers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement 60 percent of its expenditures for materials and supplies required to complete the contract and obtained from a DBE regular dealer and 100 percent of such expenditures from a DBE manufacturer.

(F) Manufacturers and Regular Dealers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement the following expenditures to DBE firms that are not manufacturers or regular dealers:

- (1) The fees or commissions charged by a DBE firm for providing a *bona fide* service, such as professional, technical, consultant, or managerial services, or for providing bonds or insurance specifically required for the performance of a DOT-assisted contract, provided the fees or commissions are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees and commissions customarily allowed for similar services.
- (2) With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a DBE, which is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site (but not the cost of the materials and supplies themselves), provided the fees are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services.

Commercially Useful Function

(A) DBE Utilization

The Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement only expenditures to DBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of a contract. A DBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of the work of the contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved. To perform a commercially useful function, the DBE shall also be responsible with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself. To determine whether a DBE is performing a commercially useful function, the Department will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid under the contract is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the DBE credit claimed for its performance of the work, and any other relevant factors.

(B) DBE Utilization in Trucking

The following factors will be used to determine if a DBE trucking firm is performing a commercially useful function:

- (1) The DBE shall be responsible for the management and supervision of the entire trucking operation for which it is responsible on a particular contract, and there shall not be a contrived arrangement for the purpose of meeting DBE goals.
- (2) The DBE shall itself own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the contract.
- (3) The DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services it provides on the contract using trucks it owns, insures, and operates using drivers it employs.
- (4) The DBE may subcontract the work to another DBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a DBE. The DBE who subcontracts work to another DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the subcontracted DBE provides on the contract.
- (5) The DBE may also subcontract the work to a non-DBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The DBE who subcontracts the work to a non-DBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by the non-DBE subcontractor not to exceed the value of transportation services provided by DBE-owned trucks on the contract. Additional participation by non-DBE subcontractors receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as a result of the subcontract arrangement. The value of services performed under subcontract agreements between the DBE and the Contractor will not count towards the DBE contract requirement.
- (6) A DBE may lease truck(s) from an established equipment leasing business open to the general public. The lease must indicate that the DBE has exclusive use of and control over the truck. This requirement does not preclude the leased truck from working for others during the term of the lease with the consent of the DBE, so long as the lease gives the DBE absolute priority for use of the leased truck. This type of lease may count toward the DBE's credit as long as the driver is under the DBE's payroll.
- (7) Subcontracted/leased trucks shall display clearly on the dashboard the name of the DBE that they are subcontracted/leased to and their own company name if it is not identified on the truck itself. Magnetic door signs are not permitted.

DBE Replacement

When a Contractor has relied on a commitment to a DBE subcontractor (or an approved substitute DBE subcontractor) to meet all or part of a contract goal requirement, the contractor shall not terminate the DBE subcontractor for convenience. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the Contractor seeks to perform the work of the terminated subcontractor with another

DBE subcontractor, a non-DBE subcontractor, or with the Contractor's own forces or those of an affiliate.

The Contractor must give notice in writing both by certified mail and email to the DBE subcontractor, with a copy to the Engineer of its intent to request to terminate and/or substitute, and the reason for the request. The Contractor must give the DBE subcontractor five (5) business days to respond to the Contractor's Notice of Intent to Request Termination and/or Substitution. If the DBE subcontractor objects to the intended termination/substitution, the DBE, within five (5) business days must advise the Contractor and the Department of the reasons why the action should not be approved. The five-day notice period shall begin on the next business day after written notice is provided to the DBE subcontractor.

A committed DBE subcontractor may only be terminated after receiving the Department's written approval based upon a finding of good cause for the proposed termination and/or substitution. For purposes of this section, good cause shall include the following circumstances:

- (a) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to execute a written contract;
- (b) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to perform the work of its subcontract in a way consistent with normal industry standards. Provided, however, that good cause does not exist if the failure or refusal of the DBE subcontractor to perform its work on the subcontract results from the bad faith or discriminatory action of the prime contractor;
- (c) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to meet the prime contractor's reasonable, nondiscriminatory bond requirements;
- (d) The listed DBE subcontractor becomes bankrupt, insolvent, or exhibits credit unworthiness;
- (e) The listed DBE subcontractor is ineligible to work on public works projects because of suspension and debarment proceedings pursuant to 2 CFR Parts 180, 215 and 1,200 or applicable state law;
- (f) The listed DBE subcontractor is not a responsible contractor;
- (g) The listed DBE voluntarily withdraws from the project and provides written notice of withdrawal;
- (h) The listed DBE is ineligible to receive DBE credit for the type of work required;
- (i) A DBE owner dies or becomes disabled with the result that the listed DBE contractor is unable to complete its work on the contract;
- (j) Other documented good cause that compels the termination of the DBE subcontractor. Provided, that good cause does not exist if the prime contractor seeks to terminate a DBE it relied upon to obtain the contract so that the prime contractor can self-perform the work for which the DBE contractor was engaged or so that the prime contractor can substitute another DBE or non-DBE contractor after contract award.

The Contractor shall comply with the following for replacement of a committed DBE:

(A) Performance Related Replacement

When a committed DBE is terminated for good cause as stated above, an additional DBE that was submitted at the time of bid may be used to fulfill the DBE commitment. A good faith effort will only be required for removing a committed DBE if there were no additional

DBEs submitted at the time of bid to cover the same amount of work as the DBE that was terminated.

If a replacement DBE is not found that can perform at least the same amount of work as the terminated DBE, the Contractor shall submit a good faith effort documenting the steps taken. Such documentation shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (1) Copies of written notification to DBEs that their interest is solicited in contracting the work defaulted by the previous DBE or in subcontracting other items of work in the contract.
 - (2) Efforts to negotiate with DBEs for specific subbids including, at a minimum:
 - (a) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs who were contacted.
 - (b) A description of the information provided to DBEs regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed.
 - (3) A list of reasons why DBE quotes were not accepted.
 - (4) Efforts made to assist the DBEs contacted, if needed, in obtaining bonding or insurance required by the Contractor.
- (B) Decertification Replacement
- (1) When a committed DBE is decertified by the Department after the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) has been received by the Department, the Department will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement DBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement.
 - (2) When a committed DBE is decertified prior to the Department receiving the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) for the named DBE firm, the Contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to replace the DBE subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work to meet the DBE goal requirement. If a DBE firm is not found to do the same amount of work, a good faith effort must be submitted to NCDOT (see A herein for required documentation).

All requests for replacement of a committed DBE firm shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval on Form RF-1 (*DBE Replacement Request*). If the Contractor fails to follow this procedure, the Contractor may be disqualified from further bidding for a period of up to 6 months.

Changes in the Work

When the Engineer makes changes that result in the reduction or elimination of work to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor will not be required to seek additional

participation. When the Engineer makes changes that result in additional work to be performed by a DBE based upon the Contractor's commitment, the DBE shall participate in additional work to the same extent as the DBE participated in the original contract work.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in extra work, which has more than a minimal impact on the contract amount, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in an alteration of plans or details of construction, and a portion or all of the work had been expected to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor shall seek participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Contractor requests changes in the work that result in the reduction or elimination of work that the Contractor committed to be performed by a DBE, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs equal to the reduced DBE participation caused by the changes.

Reports and Documentation

A SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) shall be submitted for all work which is to be performed by a DBE subcontractor. The Department reserves the right to require copies of actual subcontract agreements involving DBE subcontractors.

When using transportation services to meet the contract commitment, the Contractor shall submit a proposed trucking plan in addition to the SAF. The plan shall be submitted prior to beginning construction on the project. The plan shall include the names of all trucking firms proposed for use, their certification type(s), the number of trucks owned by the firm, as well as the individual truck identification numbers, and the line item(s) being performed.

Within 30 calendar days of entering into an agreement with a DBE for materials, supplies or services, not otherwise documented by the SAF as specified above, the Contractor shall furnish the Engineer a copy of the agreement. The documentation shall also indicate the percentage (60% or 100%) of expenditures claimed for DBE credit.

Reporting Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Participation

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with an accounting of payments made to all DBE firms, including material suppliers and contractors at all levels (prime, subcontractor, or second tier subcontractor). This accounting shall be furnished to the Engineer for any given month by the end of the following month. Failure to submit this information accordingly may result in the following action:

- (A) Withholding of money due in the next partial pay estimate; or
- (B) Removal of an approved contractor from the prequalified bidders' list or the removal of other entities from the approved subcontractors list.

While each contractor (prime, subcontractor, 2nd tier subcontractor) is responsible for accurate accounting of payments to DBEs, it shall be the prime contractor's responsibility to report all monthly and final payment information in the correct reporting manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from further bidding until the required information is submitted.

Failure on the part of any subcontractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from being approved for work on future DOT projects until the required information is submitted.

Contractors reporting transportation services provided by non-DBE lessees shall evaluate the value of services provided during the month of the reporting period only.

At any time, the Engineer can request written verification of subcontractor payments.

The Contractor shall report the accounting of payments through the Department's DBE Payment Tracking System.

Failure to Meet Contract Requirements

Failure to meet contract requirements in accordance with Subarticle 102-15(J) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* may be cause to disqualify the Contractor.

CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS:

(3-21-90)

SP1 G85

The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

- (A) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
- (B) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, *Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying*, in accordance with its instructions.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by *Section 1352, Title 31, U.S. Code*. Any person who

fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

The prospective participant also agrees by submitting his or her bid or proposal that he or she shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS:

(7-1-95)

102-14

SP1 G88

If the successful bidder does not hold the proper license to perform any plumbing, heating, air conditioning, or electrical work in this contract, he will be required to sublet such work to a contractor properly licensed in accordance with *Article 2 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of heating, plumbing, and air conditioning contractors) and *Article 4 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of electrical contractors).

USE OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS):

(8-20-19)

SP1 G092

The Contractor shall adhere to all Federal, State and Local regulations and guidelines for the use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS). This includes but is not limited to US 14 CFR Part 107 *Small UAS Rule*, NC GS 15A-300.2 *Regulation of launch and recovery sites*, NC GS 63-95 *Training required for the operation of unmanned aircraft systems*, NC GS 63-96 *Permit required for commercial operation of unmanned aircraft system*, and NCDOT UAS Policy. The required operator certifications include possessing a current Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Remote Pilot Certificate, a NC UAS Operator Permit as well as operating a UAS registered with the FAA.

Prior to beginning operations, the Contractor shall complete the NCDOT UAS – Flight Operation Approval Form and submit it to the Engineer for approval. All UAS operations shall be approved by the Engineer prior to beginning the operations.

All contractors or subcontractors operating UAS shall have UAS specific general liability insurance to cover all operations under this contract.

The use of UAS is at the Contractor's discretion. No measurement or payment will be made for the use of UAS. In the event that the Department directs the Contractor to utilize UAS, payment will be in accordance with Article 104-7 Extra Work.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE:

(11-22-94)

108-5

SP1 G100

To report bid rigging activities call: **1-800-424-9071**

The U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) operates the above toll-free hotline Monday through Friday, 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. eastern time. Anyone with knowledge of possible bid rigging, bidder collusion, or other fraudulent activities should use the hotline to report such activities.

The hotline is part of the DOT's continuing effort to identify and investigate highway construction contract fraud and abuse is operated under the direction of the DOT Inspector General. All information will be treated confidentially and caller anonymity will be respected.

CARGO PREFERENCE ACT:

(2-16-16)

Privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels transporting cargoes are subject to the Cargo Preference Act (CPA) of 1954 requirements and regulations found in 46 CFR 381.7. Contractors are directed to clause (b) of 46 CFR 381.7 as follows:

(b) Contractor and Subcontractor Clauses. "Use of United States-flag vessels: The contractor agrees-

" (1) To utilize privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to this contract, to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-flag commercial vessels.

(2) To furnish within 20 days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating outside the United States a legible copy of a rated, 'on-board' commercial ocean bill-of-lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in paragraph (b) (1) of this section to both the Contracting Officer (through the prime contractor in the case of subcontractor bills-of-lading) and to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590.

(3) To insert the substance of the provisions of this clause in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract."

SUBSURFACE INFORMATION:

(7-1-95)

450

SP1 G112 D

Subsurface information is available on the roadway and structure portions of this project.

PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER - (Partial Payments for Materials):

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-16-11)

1170-4

SP1 G121

When so authorized by the Engineer, partial materials payments will be made up to 95 percent of the delivered cost of portable concrete barrier, provided that these materials have been delivered on the project and stored in an acceptable manner, and further provided the documents listed in Subarticle 109-5(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* have been furnished to the Engineer.

The provisions of Subarticle 109-5(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* will apply to the portable concrete barrier.

REMOVABLE PAVEMENT MARKINGS - (Partial Payments for Materials):

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-16-11)

1205-10

SP1 G124

When so authorized by the Engineer, partial materials payments will be made up to 95 percent of the delivered cost of pavement marking tape, provided that these materials have been delivered on or in the vicinity of the project, stored in an acceptable manner, not to exceed the shelf life recommended by the manufacturer, and further provided the documents listed in Subarticle 109-5(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* have been furnished to the Engineer.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the material and the satisfactory performance of the material when used in the work.

The provisions of Article 109-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* will not apply to removable pavement marking materials.

MAINTENANCE OF THE PROJECT:

(11-20-07) (Rev. 1-17-12)

104-10

SP1 G125

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-39, Article 104-10 Maintenance of the Project, line 25, add the following after the first sentence of the first paragraph:

All guardrail/guiderail within the project limits shall be included in this maintenance.

Page 1-39, Article 104-10 Maintenance of the Project, line 30, add the following as the last sentence of the first paragraph:

The Contractor shall perform weekly inspections of guardrail and guiderail and shall report damages to the Engineer on the same day of the weekly inspection. *Where damaged guardrail or guiderail is repaired or replaced as a result of maintaining the project in accordance with this article, such repair or replacement shall be performed within 7 consecutive calendar days of such inspection report.*

Page 1-39, Article 104-10 Maintenance of the Project, lines 42-44, replace the last sentence of the last paragraph with the following:

The Contractor will not be directly compensated for any maintenance operations necessary, except for maintenance of guardrail/guiderail, as this work will be considered incidental to the work covered by the various contract items. The provisions of Article 104-7, Extra Work, and Article 104-8, Compensation and Record Keeping will apply to authorized maintenance of guardrail/guiderail. Performance of weekly inspections of guardrail/guiderail, and the damage reports required as described above, will be considered to be an incidental part of the work being paid for by the various contract items.

COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS:

(7-1-95)

105-7

SP1 G133

The Contractor's attention is directed to Article 105-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

I-4700 (C204266) is currently under construction and located adjacent to this project. I-4700 is not anticipated to be complete prior to the letting of this project.

I-5925 (Henderson County) is located in the vicinity of this project and is anticipated to be let prior to the completion of this project.

Green River Bridge Project 15BPR.20, Replacement of Bridge # 112 & 108 over Green River.

The Contractor on this project shall cooperate with the Contractor working within or adjacent to the limits of this project to the extent that the work can be carried out to the best advantage of all concerned.

ELECTRONIC BIDDING:

(2-19-19)

101, 102, 103

SP1 G140

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-4, Article 101-3, DEFINITIONS, BID (OR PROPOSAL) *Electronic Bid*, line 1, replace “Bid Express®” with “the approved electronic bidding provider”.

Page 1-15, Subarticle 102-8(B), Electronic Bids, lines 39-40, replace “to Bid Express®” with “via the approved electronic bidding provider”.

Page 1-15, Subarticle 102-8(B)(1), Electronic Bids, line 41, delete “from Bid Express®”

Page 1-17, Subarticle 102-9(C)(2), Electronic Bids, line 21, replace “Bid Express® miscellaneous folder within the .ebs” with “electronic submittal”.

Page 1-29, Subarticle 103-4(C)(2), Electronic Bids, line 32, replace “.ebs miscellaneous data file of Expedite” with “electronic submittal file”

BID DOCUMENTATION:

(1-1-02) (Rev.8-18-15)

103

SP1 G142

General

The successful Bidder (Contractor) shall submit the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation used to prepare the bid for this contract to the Department within 10 days after receipt of notice of award of contract. Such documentation shall be placed in escrow with a banking institution or other bonded document storage facility selected by the Department.

The Department will not execute the contract until the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation has been received by the Department.

Terms

Bid Documentation - Bid Documentation shall mean all written information, working papers, computer printouts, electronic media, charts, and all other data compilations which contain or reflect information, data, and calculations used by the Bidder in the preparation of the bid. The term *bid documentation* includes, but is not limited to, contractor equipment rates, contractor overhead rates, labor rates, efficiency or productivity factors, arithmetical calculations, and quotations from subcontractors and material suppliers to the extent that such rates and quotations were used by the Bidder in formulating and determining the bid. The term *bid documentation* also includes any manuals, which are standard to the industry used by the Bidder in determining the bid. Such manuals may be included in the bid documentation by reference. Such reference shall include the name and date of the publication and the publisher. *Bid Documentation* does not include bid documents provided by the Department for use by the Bidder in bidding on this project. The Bid Documentation can be in the form of electronic submittal (i.e. thumb drive) or paper. If the Bidder elects to submit the Bid Documentation in electronic format, the Department requires a backup submittal (i.e. a second thumb drive) in case one is corrupted.

Contractor's Representative - Officer of the Contractor's company; if not an officer, the Contractor shall supply a letter signed and notarized by an officer of the Contractor's company, granting permission for the representative to sign the escrow agreement on behalf of the Contractor.

Escrow Agent - Officer of the select banking institution or other bonded document storage facility authorized to receive and release bid documentation.

Escrow Agreement Information

A draft copy of the Escrow Agreement will be mailed to the Bidder after the notice of award for informational purposes. The Bidder and Department will sign the actual Escrow Agreement at the time the bid documentation is delivered to the Escrow Agent.

Failure to Provide Bid Documentation

The Bidder's failure to provide the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation within 10 days after the notice of award is received may be just cause for rescinding the award of the contract and may result in the removal of the Bidder from the Department's list of qualified bidders for a period of up to 180 days. Award may then be made to the next lowest responsible bidder or the work may be readvertised and constructed under the contract or otherwise, as the Department may decide.

Submittal of Bid Documentation

- (A) Appointment – Email specs@ncdot.gov or call 919.707.6900 to schedule an appointment.
- (B) Delivery - A representative of the Bidder shall deliver the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation to the Department, in a container suitable for sealing, within 10 days after the notice of award is received.

- (C) Packaging – The container shall be no larger than 15.5 inches in length by 12 inches wide by 11 inches high and shall be water resistant. The container shall be clearly marked on the face and the back of the container with the following information: Bid Documentation, Bidder's Name, Bidder's Address, Date of Escrow Submittal, Contract Number, TIP Number if applicable, and County.

Affidavit

Bid documentation will be considered a certified copy if the Bidder includes an affidavit stating that the enclosed documentation is an EXACT copy of the original documentation used by the Bidder to determine the bid for this project. The affidavit shall also list each bid document with sufficient specificity so a comparison may be made between the list and the bid documentation to ensure that all of the bid documentation listed in the affidavit has been enclosed for escrow. The affidavit shall attest that the affiant has personally examined the bid documentation, that the affidavit lists all of the documents used by the Bidder to determine the bid for this project, and that all bid documentation has been included. The affidavit shall be signed by a chief officer of the company, have the person's name and title typed below the signature, and the signature shall be notarized at the bottom of the affidavit.

Verification

Upon delivery of the bid documentation, the Department's Contract Officer and the Bidder's representative will verify the accuracy and completeness of the bid documentation compared to the affidavit. Should a discrepancy exist, the Bidder's representative shall immediately furnish the Department's Contract Officer with any other needed bid documentation. The Department's Contract Officer upon determining that the bid documentation is complete will, in the presence of the Bidder's representative, immediately place the complete bid documentation and affidavit in the container and seal it. Both parties will deliver the sealed container to the Escrow Agent for placement in a safety deposit box, vault, or other secure accommodation.

Confidentiality of Bid Documentation

The bid documentation and affidavit in escrow are, and will remain, the property of the Bidder. The Department has no interest in, or right to, the bid documentation and affidavit other than to verify the contents and legibility of the bid documentation unless the Contractor gives written notice of intent to file a claim, files a written claim, files a written and verified claim, or initiates litigation against the Department. In the event of such written notice of intent to file a claim, filing of a written claim, filing a written and verified claim, or initiation of litigation against the Department, or receipt of a letter from the Contractor authorizing release, the bid documentation and affidavit may become the property of the Department for use in considering any claim or in litigation as the Department may deem appropriate.

Any portion or portions of the bid documentation designated by the Bidder as a *trade secret* at the time the bid documentation is delivered to the Department's Contract Officer shall be protected from disclosure as provided by *G.S. 132-1.2*.

Duration and Use

The bid documentation and affidavit shall remain in escrow until 60 calendar days from the time the Contractor receives the final estimate; or until such time as the Contractor:

- (A) Gives written notice of intent to file a claim,
- (B) Files a written claim,
- (C) Files a written and verified claim,
- (D) Initiates litigation against the Department related to the contract; or
- (E) Authorizes in writing its release.

Upon the giving of written notice of intent to file a claim, filing a written claim, filing a written and verified claim, or the initiation of litigation by the Contractor against the Department, or receipt of a letter from the Contractor authorizing release, the Department may obtain the release and custody of the bid documentation.

The Bidder certifies and agrees that the sealed container placed in escrow contains all of the bid documentation used to determine the bid and that no other bid documentation shall be relevant or material in litigation over claims brought by the Contractor arising out of this contract.

Release of Bid Documentation to the Contractor

If the bid documentation remains in escrow 60 calendar days after the time the Contractor receives the final estimate and the Contractor has not filed a written claim, filed a written and verified claim, or has not initiated litigation against the Department related to the contract, the Department will instruct the Escrow Agent to release the sealed container to the Contractor.

The Contractor will be notified by certified letter from the Escrow Agent that the bid documentation will be released to the Contractor. The Contractor or his representative shall retrieve the bid documentation from the Escrow Agent within 30 days of the receipt of the certified letter. If the Contractor does not receive the documents within 30 days of the receipt of the certified letter, the Department will contact the Contractor to determine final disposition of the bid documentation.

Payment

The cost of the escrow will be borne by the Department. There will be no separate payment for all costs of compilation of the data, container, or verification of the bid documentation. Payment at the various contract unit or lump sum prices in the contract will be full compensation for all such costs.

TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:

(7-15-03)

108

SP1 G145

- (A) The Contractor shall guarantee materials and workmanship against latent and patent defects arising from faulty materials, faulty workmanship or negligence for a period of twelve months following the date of final acceptance of the work for maintenance and shall replace such defective materials and workmanship without cost to the Department. The Contractor will not be responsible for damage due to faulty design, normal wear and tear, for negligence on the part of the Department, and/or for use in excess of the design.
- (B) Where items of equipment or material carry a manufacturer's guarantee for any period in excess of twelve months, then the manufacturer's guarantee shall apply for that particular piece of equipment or material. The Department's first remedy shall be through the manufacturer although the Contractor is responsible for invoking the warranted repair work with the manufacturer. The Contractor's responsibility shall be limited to the term of the manufacturer's guarantee. NCDOT would be afforded the same warranty as provided by the Manufacturer.

This guarantee provision shall be invoked only for major components of work in which the Contractor would be wholly responsible for under the terms of the contract. Examples would include pavement structures, bridge components, and sign structures. This provision will not be used as a mechanism to force the Contractor to return to the project to make repairs or perform additional work that the Department would normally compensate the Contractor for. In addition, routine maintenance activities (i.e. mowing grass, debris removal, ruts in earth shoulders,) are not parts of this guarantee.

Appropriate provisions of the payment and/or performance bonds shall cover this guarantee for the project.

To ensure uniform application statewide the Division Engineer will forward details regarding the circumstances surrounding any proposed guarantee repairs to the Chief Engineer for review and approval prior to the work being performed.

EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION:

(1-16-07) (Rev 04-01-19)

105-16, 225-2, 16

SP1 G180

General

Schedule and conduct construction activities in a manner that will minimize soil erosion and the resulting sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters. Comply with the requirements herein regardless of whether or not a National Pollution discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit for the work is required.

Establish a chain of responsibility for operations and subcontractors' operations to ensure that the *Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan* is implemented and maintained over the life of the contract.

- (A) *Certified Supervisor* - Provide a certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor to manage the Contractor and subcontractor operations, insure compliance with

Federal, State and Local ordinances and regulations, and manage the Quality Control Program.

- (B) *Certified Foreman* - Provide a certified, trained foreman for each construction operation that increases the potential for soil erosion or the possible sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters.
- (C) *Certified Installer* - Provide a certified installer to install or direct the installation for erosion or sediment/stormwater control practices.
- (D) *Certified Designer* - Provide a certified designer for the design of the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of reclamation plans and, if applicable, for the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Roles and Responsibilities

- (A) *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor* - The Certified Supervisor shall be Level II and responsible for ensuring the erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan is adequately implemented and maintained on the project and for conducting the quality control program. The Certified Supervisor shall be on the project within 24 hours notice from initial exposure of an erodible surface to the project's final acceptance. Perform the following duties:
 - (1) **Manage Operations** - Coordinate and schedule the work of subcontractors so that erosion and sediment control/stormwater measures are fully executed for each operation and in a timely manner over the duration of the contract.
 - (a) Oversee the work of subcontractors so that appropriate erosion and sediment control/stormwater preventive measures are conformed to at each stage of the work.
 - (b) Prepare the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Inspection Record and submit to the Engineer.
 - (c) Attend all weekly or monthly construction meetings to discuss the findings of the NPDES inspection and other related issues.
 - (d) Implement the erosion and sediment control/stormwater site plans requested.
 - (e) Provide any needed erosion and sediment control/stormwater practices for the Contractor's temporary work not shown on the plans, such as, but not limited to work platforms, temporary construction, pumping operations, plant and storage yards, and cofferdams.
 - (f) Acquire applicable permits and comply with requirements for borrow pits, dewatering, and any temporary work conducted by the Contractor in jurisdictional areas.
 - (g) Conduct all erosion and sediment control/stormwater work in a timely and workmanlike manner.
 - (h) Fully perform and install erosion and sediment control/stormwater work prior to any suspension of the work.

- (i) Coordinate with Department, Federal, State and Local Regulatory agencies on resolution of erosion and sediment control/stormwater issues due to the Contractor's operations.
 - (j) Ensure that proper cleanup occurs from vehicle tracking on paved surfaces or any location where sediment leaves the Right-of-Way.
 - (k) Have available a set of erosion and sediment control/stormwater plans that are initialed and include the installation date of Best Management Practices. These practices shall include temporary and permanent groundcover and be properly updated to reflect necessary plan and field changes for use and review by Department personnel as well as regulatory agencies.
- (2) Requirements set forth under the NPDES Permit - The Department's NPDES Stormwater permit (NCS000250) outlines certain objectives and management measures pertaining to construction activities. The permit references *NCG010000, General Permit to Discharge Stormwater* under the NPDES, and states that the Department shall incorporate the applicable requirements into its delegated Erosion and Sediment Control Program for construction activities disturbing one or more acres of land. The Department further incorporates these requirements on all contracted bridge and culvert work at jurisdictional waters, regardless of size. Some of the requirements are, but are not limited to:
- (a) Control project site waste to prevent contamination of surface or ground waters of the state, i.e. from equipment operation/maintenance, construction materials, concrete washout, chemicals, litter, fuels, lubricants, coolants, hydraulic fluids, any other petroleum products, and sanitary waste.
 - (b) Inspect erosion and sediment control/stormwater devices and stormwater discharge outfalls at least once every 7 calendar days and within 24 hours after a rainfall event of greater than 1.0 inch that occurs within a 24 hour period. Additional monitoring may be required at the discretion of Division of Water Resources personnel if the receiving stream is 303(d) listed for turbidity and the project has had documented problems managing turbidity.
 - (c) Maintain an onsite rain gauge or use the Department's Multi-Sensor Precipitation Estimate website to maintain a daily record of rainfall amounts and dates.
 - (d) Maintain erosion and sediment control/stormwater inspection records for review by Department and Regulatory personnel upon request.
 - (e) Implement approved reclamation plans on all borrow pits, waste sites and staging areas.
 - (f) Maintain a log of turbidity test results as outlined in the Department's Procedure for Monitoring Borrow Pit Discharge.
 - (g) Provide secondary containment for bulk storage of liquid materials.
 - (h) Provide training for employees concerning general erosion and sediment control/stormwater awareness, the Department's NPDES Stormwater Permit NCS000250 requirements, and the applicable requirements of the *General Permit, NCG010000*.
 - (i) Report violations of the NPDES permit to the Engineer immediately who will notify the Division of Water Quality Regional Office within 24 hours of becoming aware of the violation.

- (3) Quality Control Program - Maintain a quality control program to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow provisions/conditions of permits. The quality control program shall:
- (a) Follow permit requirements related to the Contractor and subcontractors' construction activities.
 - (b) Ensure that all operators and subcontractors on site have the proper erosion and sediment control/stormwater certification.
 - (c) Notify the Engineer when the required certified erosion and sediment control/stormwater personnel are not available on the job site when needed.
 - (d) Conduct the inspections required by the NPDES permit.
 - (e) Take corrective actions in the proper timeframe as required by the NPDES permit for problem areas identified during the NPDES inspections.
 - (f) Incorporate erosion control into the work in a timely manner and stabilize disturbed areas with mulch/seed or vegetative cover on a section-by-section basis.
 - (g) Use flocculants approved by state regulatory authorities where appropriate and where required for turbidity and sedimentation reduction.
 - (h) Ensure proper installation and maintenance of temporary erosion and sediment control devices.
 - (i) Remove temporary erosion or sediment control devices when they are no longer necessary as agreed upon by the Engineer.
 - (j) The Contractor's quality control and inspection procedures shall be subject to review by the Engineer. Maintain NPDES inspection records and make records available at all times for verification by the Engineer.
- (B) *Certified Foreman* - At least one Certified Foreman shall be onsite for each type of work listed herein during the respective construction activities to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow permit provisions:
- (1) Foreman in charge of grading activities
 - (2) Foreman in charge of bridge or culvert construction over jurisdictional areas
 - (3) Foreman in charge of utility activities
- The Contractor may request to use the same person as the Level II Supervisor and Level II Foreman. This person shall be onsite whenever construction activities as described above are taking place. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.
- The Contractor may request to name a single Level II Foreman to oversee multiple construction activities on small bridge or culvert replacement projects. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.
- (C) *Certified Installers* - Provide at least one onsite, Level I Certified Installer for each of the following erosion and sediment control/stormwater crew:
- (1) Seeding and Mulching
 - (2) Temporary Seeding

- (3) Temporary Mulching
- (4) Sodding
- (5) Silt fence or other perimeter erosion/sediment control device installations
- (6) Erosion control blanket installation
- (7) Hydraulic tackifier installation
- (8) Turbidity curtain installation
- (9) Rock ditch check/sediment dam installation
- (10) Ditch liner/matting installation
- (11) Inlet protection
- (12) Riprap placement
- (13) Stormwater BMP installations (such as but not limited to level spreaders, retention/detention devices)
- (14) Pipe installations within jurisdictional areas

If a Level I *Certified Installer* is not onsite, the Contractor may substitute a Level II Foreman for a Level I Installer, provided the Level II Foreman is not tasked to another crew requiring Level II Foreman oversight.

- (D) *Certified Designer* - Include the certification number of the Level III-B Certified Designer on the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of all reclamation plans and if applicable, the certification number of the Level III-A Certified Designer on the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Preconstruction Meeting

Furnish the names of the *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* and notify the Engineer of changes in certified personnel over the life of the contract within 2 days of change.

Ethical Responsibility

Any company performing work for the North Carolina Department of Transportation has the ethical responsibility to fully disclose any reprimand or dismissal of an employee resulting from improper testing or falsification of records.

Revocation or Suspension of Certification

Upon recommendation of the Chief Engineer to the certification entity, certification for *Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* may be revoked or suspended with the issuance of an *Immediate Corrective Action (ICA)*, *Notice of Violation (NOV)*, or *Cease and Desist Order* for erosion and sediment control/stormwater related issues.

The Chief Engineer may recommend suspension or permanent revocation of certification due to the following:

- (A) Failure to adequately perform the duties as defined within this certification provision.
- (B) Issuance of an ICA, NOV, or Cease and Desist Order.

- (C) Failure to fully perform environmental commitments as detailed within the permit conditions and specifications.
- (D) Demonstration of erroneous documentation or reporting techniques.
- (E) Cheating or copying another candidate's work on an examination.
- (F) Intentional falsification of records.
- (G) Directing a subordinate under direct or indirect supervision to perform any of the above actions.
- (H) Dismissal from a company for any of the above reasons.
- (I) Suspension or revocation of one's certification by another entity.

Suspension or revocation of a certification will be sent by certified mail to the certificant and the Corporate Head of the company that employs the certificant.

A certificant has the right to appeal any adverse action which results in suspension or permanent revocation of certification by responding, in writing, to the Chief Engineer within 10 calendar days after receiving notice of the proposed adverse action.

Chief Engineer
1536 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1536

Failure to appeal within 10 calendar days will result in the proposed adverse action becoming effective on the date specified on the certified notice. Failure to appeal within the time specified will result in a waiver of all future appeal rights regarding the adverse action taken. The certificant will not be allowed to perform duties associated with the certification during the appeal process.

The Chief Engineer will hear the appeal and make a decision within 7 days of hearing the appeal. Decision of the Chief Engineer will be final and will be made in writing to the certificant.

If a certification is temporarily suspended, the certificant shall pass any applicable written examination and any proficiency examination, at the conclusion of the specified suspension period, prior to having the certification reinstated.

Measurement and Payment

Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor, Certified Foremen, Certified Installers and Certified Designer will be incidental to the project for which no direct compensation will be made.

PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 4-5-19)

105-16, 230, 801

SP1 G181

Water discharge from borrow pit sites shall not cause surface waters to exceed 50 NTUs (nephelometric turbidity unit) in streams not designated as trout waters and 10 NTUs in streams, lakes or reservoirs designated as trout waters. For lakes and reservoirs not designated as trout waters, the turbidity shall not exceed 25 NTUs. If the turbidity exceeds these levels due to natural background conditions, the existing turbidity level shall not be increased.

If during any operating day, the downstream water quality exceeds the standard, the Contractor shall do all of the following:

- (A) Either cease discharge or modify the discharge volume or turbidity levels to bring the downstream turbidity levels into compliance, or
- (B) Evaluate the upstream conditions to determine if the exceedance of the standard is due to natural background conditions. If the background turbidity measurements exceed the standard, operation of the pit and discharge can continue as long as the stream turbidity levels are not increased due to the discharge.
- (C) Measure and record the turbidity test results (time, date and sampler) at all defined sampling locations 30 minutes after startup and at a minimum, one additional sampling of all sampling locations during that 24-hour period in which the borrow pit is discharging.
- (D) Notify DWQ within 24 hours of any stream turbidity standard exceedances that are not brought into compliance.

During the Environmental Assessment required by Article 230-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, the Contractor shall define the point at which the discharge enters into the State's surface waters and the appropriate sampling locations. Sampling locations shall include points upstream and downstream from the point at which the discharge enters these waters. Upstream sampling location shall be located so that it is not influenced by backwater conditions and represents natural background conditions. Downstream sampling location shall be located at the point where complete mixing of the discharge and receiving water has occurred.

The discharge shall be closely monitored when water from the dewatering activities is introduced into jurisdictional wetlands. Any time visible sedimentation (deposition of sediment) on the wetland surface is observed, the dewatering activity will be suspended until turbidity levels in the stilling basin can be reduced to a level where sediment deposition does not occur. Staining of wetland surfaces from suspended clay particles, occurring after evaporation or infiltration, does not constitute sedimentation. No activities shall occur in wetlands that adversely affect the functioning of a wetland. Visible sedimentation will be considered an indication of possible adverse impacts on wetland use.

The Engineer will perform independent turbidity tests on a random basis. These results will be maintained in a log within the project records. Records will include, at a minimum, turbidity test results, time, date and name of sampler. Should the Department's test results exceed those of the Contractor's test results, an immediate test shall be performed jointly with the results superseding the previous test results of both the Department and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall use the *NCDOT Turbidity Reduction Options for Borrow Pits Matrix*, available at <https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/FieldOperationsDocuments/TurbidityReductionOptionSheet.pdf> to plan, design, construct, and maintain BMPs to address water quality standards. Tier I Methods include stilling basins which are standard compensatory BMPs. Other Tier I methods are noncompensatory and shall be used when needed to meet the stream turbidity standards. Tier II Methods are also noncompensatory and are options that may be needed for protection of rare or unique resources or where special environmental conditions

exist at the site which have led to additional requirements being placed in the DWQ's 401 Certifications and approval letters, Isolated Wetland Permits, Riparian Buffer Authorization or a DOT Reclamation Plan's Environmental Assessment for the specific site. Should the Contractor exhaust all Tier I Methods on a site exclusive of rare or unique resources or special environmental conditions, Tier II Methods may be required by regulators on a case by case basis per supplemental agreement.

The Contractor may use cation exchange capacity (CEC) values from proposed site borings to plan and develop the bid for the project. CEC values exceeding 15 milliequivalents per 100 grams of soil may indicate a high potential for turbidity and should be avoided when dewatering into surface water is proposed.

No additional compensation for monitoring borrow pit discharge will be paid.

NOTES TO CONTRACTOR:

- The contractor will be required to be an active participant in the Project Management Plan and Incident Management Plan that is being developed for this project.
- Any bat roost trees that are documented within 0.25 miles of the project area, regardless of the time of the year, the National Park Service will seek consultation with the US Fish and Wildlife Service before work proceeds.
- The United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) shall be notified of any injured or dead bats that are found on the project. In addition, the USFWS shall be notified of any new information regarding the gray bats.
- Lighting shall only be used in areas where active construction is occurring. For paving operations conducted at night, the area to be lit shall be directly adjacent to the paving machine.
- All Sediment and Erosion Control measures throughout the project limits shall be cleaned out when half full of sediment.
- The United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) shall be notified of any project modifications.
- A United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) biologist shall invited (with a 7 day notice) to any preconstruction meetings to review the permit conditions and discuss any questions regarding the implementation of the project. The biologist will review and provide comments on any plans submitted by the contractor and invited to attend any meetings to discuss implementation of the plans.
- During construction, the culvert inlets and outlets will be evaluated by the Department with regard to stream stability immediately following installation and quarterly for 1 year at each location. Indicators of instability, such as head cutting, scour, aggradation or degradation, shall be used to determine the need for corrective action.

- A final field inspection shall be held to evaluate the culvert placement and stream stability before the project is considered complete. If instability is detected, corrective actions shall be performed as directed by the Engineer.
- Contractor shall coordinate -Y- Line closures in the TMP to ensure that detour routes of adjacent -Y- Lines remain open during detour phasing.
- Notify Jeffrey Wait (828-225-2763, jlwait@ncdot.gov) 30 days prior to closing Rest Area and 6 months prior to completing work on Rest Area.
- The Department will provide snow and ice removal for the Rest Area location while it is open to the public. During all times of Rest Area closure, snow and ice removal is the responsibility of the Contractor.

DELAY IN RIGHT OF ENTRY:

(7-1-95)

108

SP1 G22 B

The Contractor will not be allowed right of entry to the following parcels prior to the listed dates unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer.

<u>Parcel No.</u>	<u>Property Owner</u>	<u>Date</u>
I-4400C 26	WARRIOR GOLF MANAGEMENT	01-01-2020
I-4400BB 110	ASHEVILLE SOUTH SE STORAGE VI, LLC	10-07-2019

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**ROADWAY****RESPONSE FOR GUARDRAIL/GUIDERAIL MAINTENANCE:****Description**

Furnish the labor, materials, tools and equipment necessary to move personnel, equipment, and supplies to the project necessary for guardrail/guiderail maintenance.

Construction Methods

In accordance with Article 104-10 of the 2018 Standard Specifications and the Maintenance of the Project Special Provision the Contractor shall perform weekly inspections of guardrail and guiderail and shall report damages to the Engineer on the same day of the weekly inspection.

Where damaged guardrail or guiderail must be repaired or replaced as a result of maintaining the project, such repair or replacement shall be performed within 7 consecutive calendar days of such inspection report.

Measurement and Payment

Response for Guardrail/Guiderail Maintenance will be measured and paid for by counting the actual number of times the contractor moves onto the project specifically for guardrail/guiderail maintenance. Payment for the labor, materials, and equipment necessary to complete the repair or replacement will be made with the various guardrail/guiderail contract items. No additional payment will be made for traffic control for guardrail/guiderail maintenance outside of the various contract items included in the contract.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Response for Guardrail/Guiderail Maintenance	Each

SNOW AND ICE REMOVAL:**Description**

Performance of snow and ice removal in accordance with the contract.

Materials

The Department of Transportation will provide all necessary deicing chemical materials and/or abrasives necessary for snow and ice control operations. The Contractor's Equipment will be loaded with deicing materials, abrasives in the same manner, and at the same locations as the Department of Transportation's equipment. The contractor shall return all unused materials to the Department.

Equipment

The Contractor shall provide the following types of equipment:

A minimum of 4 multi-rear-axel dump trucks, with operators, equipped with 12.0-ft. snowplow, tire chains, and 10.0 cubic yard (minimum truck capacity) material spreader. (*spreaders with tanks that allow the application of liquid chemicals at the spinner are required*)

- A minimum of 4 trucks, as described above, will be assigned to I-26 within the project limits or as determined by the Engineer.

Upon approval of the Engineer, the Contractor may provide additional units in accordance with the terms and conditions of this contract. The Engineer reserves the right to reassign equipment within the routes and maintenance yards as needs dictate.

All snowplows provided under this agreement shall be hydraulic powered, reversible, hydraulic angling, moldboard type plows, with a dual trip spring assembly, which will automatically return the plow to the normal plowing position. The trip spring assembly is intended to reduce the potential for damage to the plowing equipment resulting from collision with roadway structure, such as, but not limited to, manholes and valve boxes. The Department will not be responsible for damage to the Contractor's equipment resulting from collisions with such structures. Also, the snowplow operating, heights will be determined by the NCDOT. In some cases, the Contractor may be directed to have the snowplow in direct contact with the pavement surface.

All material spreaders provided under this agreement shall be truck engine driven, hydraulic pump powered, in-body style spreaders with a calibrated, adjustable, locking feed gate, which controls the amount of material being discharged.

All vehicles provided by the Contractor shall be equipped with permanent mounted Global Positioning Devices (GPS) such as the Motorola Locator 2000 or equivalent model.

The GPS units must be accompanied with an annual monitoring subscription that will begin and cover the period between October 15 and April 15 of each year. The GPS unit and monitoring subscription must demonstrate the following capabilities:

- Generate reports in a spreadsheet format
- Generate mapping
- Report every two (2) minutes or less
- Turn-by-turn tracking
- Roadway surface temperature monitoring (Vaisala surface patrol pavement temperature sensor or equivalent model)
- Internet monitoring with NCDOT management access
- Ability to track vehicle operating speed
- Software must send alert via email or text message when desired speed has been exceeded Software or web application must be capable of Zone Assignments and notification
- Tampering alert notification
- Operate during extreme temperatures
- Battery backup system

If, at any time, the Engineer finds that the monitoring software subscription does not satisfactorily meet the requirements set forth in this contract, or is not in operation for the specified timeframe, the Contractor will update or renew the GPS monitoring software system at the Contractor's expense.

A copy of the DOT specifications for snowplows and material spreaders will be made available to the contractor upon request.

All equipment provided by the Contractor shall be equipped with warning lights visible from 360 degrees in accordance with NCDOT standards. All trucks shall have headlights mounted to provide forward lighting over the snowplow/blade. Lighting shall be installed and adjusted to minimize glare. Communication devices shall be available in each piece of equipment to accommodate continuous communication between operators and the Contractors designated supervisor. All equipment shall also be equipped with operable, audible back-up warning devices. Each vehicle shall be equipped with a set of tire chains for at least one drive axle.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all cost or changes incurred in the operation and maintenance of the equipment during the term of the contract including but not limited to fuel, oil, snowplow blades, tire chains, equipment repairs, communication equipment, etc.

Construction Methods

(A) Supervisor

The Contractor will provide a designated supervisor that will coordinate this work with the County Maintenance Engineer and Department of Transportation's snow and ice removal operations

(B) Operators

Operators of all trucks shall have a valid Commercial's Driver's License of the appropriate class. The Contractor shall provide enough operators, per piece of equipment provided under this provision, to operate 24 hours per day during a storm event. Operators are limited to a maximum 12-hour shift within a 24-hour period.

(C) Training

The Department of Transportation shall provide training session(s) to familiarize all Contractor personnel (both operators and supervisors) with snow removal and ice control methods, equipment, and assigned routes. Training sessions consist of classroom style instruction on snow removal and ice control method and materials, snowplow and spreader operation, calibration and safety issues. Training session(s) will be scheduled and completed as determined by the Engineer and the Contractor will be given a minimum of 2 weeks' notice of scheduled training.

(D) Outfitting Fee

A capital recovery fee for the investment and administrative costs associated with the purchase, installation, maintenance and storage of the equipment appurtenances (spreaders, snow plows, plow blades, etc.) specified herein will be paid to the Contractor. All equipment covered by this pay item will remain the property of the Contractor upon the completion of the project.

The snowplows and material spreaders will be inspected and approved by the Engineer during the scheduled dry run(s). The Engineer will also periodically inspect all equipment provided. If, at any time, the Engineer finds that the equipment is not satisfactory, or has not been maintained in operating condition, the Contractor will repair or replace the unsatisfactory equipment at the Contractor's cost.

The Department of Transportation shall conduct dry run(s) to familiarize all the Contractor's personnel (both operators and supervisors) with snow removal and ice control methods, equipment, and assigned routes. Dry runs include the use of equipment. At a dry run, equipment is inspected; calibrated, and plowing routes are reviewed and driven for operators to note potential plowing patterns and changes. Dry run(s) will be scheduled and completed as determined by the Engineer, typically held during the months of October and November each year. The Department will provide the Contractor with a minimum two (2) week notice of scheduled dry runs.

(E) Response for Snow and Ice Removal

The Engineer will notify the Contractor when impending inclement weather is forecasted, and when and where, according to the forecast, to mobilize his/her equipment in preparation for snow and ice removal. The Engineer will notify the Contractor a minimum of three (3) hours before the equipment is needed to begin the work.

Payment for Response for Snow and Ice Removal shall include rigging the dump truck with the specified appurtenances and having the trucks ready for operation (loading and plowing) at the designated Department facility. Payment for Response for Snow in Ice Removal shall include the cleanup of the trucks and appurtenances at the conclusion of the current storm event and unrigging the specified appurtenances from the dump trucks.

All equipment, including any specified appurtenances (plows, spreaders, etc.), shall be rigged fitted and ready for operation (loading, plowing, etc.) and delivered to the pre-designated Department of Transportation Facilities within three (3) hours of notification.

Measurement and Payment

Outfitting Fee will be paid at the contract unit price per each, for each piece of equipment provided, approved, and accepted under this contract. Payment for Outfitting Fee includes furnishing, operating, repairing, and maintaining all required equipment and subscription fees as defined in the contract. Payment for Outfitting Fee will be made for each piece of equipment upon satisfactory inspection and the completion of all scheduled training sessions and dry runs established by the Engineer. Payment for *Outfitting Fees* will be made on the following schedule:

- A. 50% of the unit bid upon completion of the first dry run
- B. 30% of the unit bid when the project is 50% complete
- C. 20% of the unit bid when the project is 100% complete

Response for Snow and Ice Removal will be measured and paid per each for each piece of equipment mobilized at the request of the Engineer and ready for operation within the timeframe established in this provision.

Equipment Operating Rate for Snow and Ice Removal will be measured and paid for the actual number of hours of satisfactory operation of each piece of equipment per hour. All charges shall be determined to the nearest one-quarter (1/4) hour based upon the time the equipment was in actual productive operation or authorized stand-by time. The Contractor will not be paid for downtime due to meals, equipment failure, accidents, or other conditions. Costs associated with the maintenance and repair of the equipment and appurtenances shall be considered incidental to the operating costs of the equipment.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Outfitting Fee	Each
Response for Snow and Ice Removal	Each
Equipment Operating Rate for Snow and Ice Removal	Hour

VACUUM SWEEPING:**Description**

The work consist of sweeping, cleaning, vacuuming, shoveling, removing or picking up of all foreign material not intentionally bonded to the shoulder pavement surface which is not required for the operation or maintenance of the highway as directed.

Equipment

The Contractor shall furnish a “Vacuum Sweeper Unit” of sufficient type, capacity, and quantity to safely and efficiently perform and complete the sweeping work as specified in this provisions with acceptable levels of prosecution and progress.

All sweepers shall be equipped with the following: adequate water systems for dust control, dual steering and dual brooms.

The Contractor shall display the Company name on each piece of equipment.

The Contractor must demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Engineer that the sweeping equipment to be used in the work is in good working condition and suitable for performing the work required within the required cycle schedule. All such equipment is subject to inspection and final approval by the Engineer. Such approval will require an onsite demonstration of the capability of any proposed equipment.

Support vehicles, including safety trucks, debris transfer vehicles, pick-up trucks, sweeper truck, and any other vehicles used in the sweeping operation, shall be properly equipped in accordance with the 2018 Roadway Standard Drawings and the 2018 Standard Specifications.

Operation of Equipment

The Contractor shall operate the equipment in a safe manner so as not to create a hazard to the traveling public.

Crossing lanes of traffic and erratic driving between the median and outside shoulders shall be strictly prohibited.

Insofar as possible, the equipment wheels are to remain off the travel way during sweeping operations.

The Department shall, at its discretion, establish and/or change schedules because of citizen complaints of noise or similar discomforts affecting their property adjacent to the roadway. Special events may delay or cause the postponement of sweeping on a given period of time.

All sweeping operations shall be accomplished “with” or in the same direction as the traffic flow. Sweeping against or opposing the traffic shall not be permitted.

The sweeping operation shall not cause material to be thrown into travel lane. Material shall not be swept across a travel lane.

If an accident occurs as a result of or in the vicinity of the sweeping operation, the Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Engineer immediately.

No work is to be performed during adverse weather such as heavy rains, fog, high winds, snow and ice storms, and other inclement weather conditions.

Construction Method

The Contractor shall sweep the designated pavement areas identified on each Sweeping Request. The designated area will be a swath along paved shoulders, areas adjacent to a barrier wall, curb and gutter, shoulder berm and gutter, bridge curb/rail, and median. A swath shall be a minimum of eight (8) feet in width.

Foreign material to be swept includes, but is not limited to: loose aggregate, any undesirable grasses, and other accumulated material or foreign matter, from designated pavement areas and the disposal of such material at a location outside of the right-of way.

When foreign material, too large for the sweeper to remove, are encountered, the Contractor shall remove this larger material by hand. Such larger foreign material may include, but are not limited to: tires, tire parts, hub caps, large stones, boxes, tree limbs/bark, wood, cable, and large silt & grass combination accumulations.

The Contractor will be responsible for the disposal of all debris.

This provision is not intended as payment for and does not alleviate the Contractor from the requirements of Article 104-10 of the 2018 Standard Specifications "Maintenance of the Project"

Measurement and Payment

Sweeping will be measured and paid for as the actual number of shoulder miles, measured along the surface of the ground which have been swept and accepted.

Sweeping will be paid for at the contract unit price per shoulder mile for the various highway systems included in the contract. Such price and payment will be full compensation for the work covered by this provision, including but not limited to, supervision, labor, transportation, support vehicles, fuels, lubricants, repair parts, equipment, signage, machinery, tools, traffic control, disposal of debris, and any incidentals necessary for the prosecution and completion of the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Vacuum Sweeping

Pay Unit
Shoulder Mile

CLEARING AND GRUBBING - METHOD II:

(9-17-02) (Rev.8-18-15)

200

SP2 R02A

Perform clearing on this project to the limits established by Method "II" shown on Standard Drawing No. 200.02 of the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Conventional clearing methods may be used except where permit drawings or conditions have been included in the proposal which require certain areas to be cleared by hand methods.

BURNING RESTRICTIONS:

(7-1-95)

200, 210, 215

SP2 R05

Open burning is not permitted on any portion of the right-of-way limits established for this project. Do not burn the clearing, grubbing or demolition debris designated for disposal and generated from the project at locations within the project limits, off the project limits or at any waste or borrow sites in this county. Dispose of the clearing, grubbing and demolition debris by means other than burning, according to state or local rules and regulations.

TEMPORARY DETOURS:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 11-19-13)

1101

SP2 R30B

Construct temporary detours required on this project in accordance with the typical sections in the plans or as directed.

After the detours have served their purpose, remove the portions deemed unsuitable for use as a permanent part of the project as directed by the Engineer. Salvage and stockpile the aggregate base course removed from the detours at locations within the right of way, as directed by the Engineer, for removal by State Forces. Place pavement and earth material removed from the detour in embankments or dispose of in waste areas furnished by the Contractor.

Aggregate base course and earth material that is removed will be measured and will be paid at the contract unit price per cubic yard for *Unclassified Excavation*. Pavement that is removed will be measured and will be paid at the contract unit price per square yard for *Removal of Existing _____ Pavement*. Pipe culverts removed from the detours remain the property of the Contractor. Pipe culverts that are removed will be measured and will be paid at the contract unit price per linear foot for *Pipe Removal*. Payment for the construction of the detours will be made at the contract unit prices for the various items involved.

Such prices and payments will be full compensation for constructing the detours and for the work of removing, salvaging, and stockpiling aggregate base course; removing pipe culverts; and for placing earth material and pavement in embankments or disposing of earth material and pavement in waste areas.

SHOULDER AND FILL SLOPE MATERIAL:

(5-21-02)

235, 560

SP2 R45 B

Description

Perform the required shoulder and slope construction for this project in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 560 and Section 235 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

When the Contractor elects to obtain material from an area located beneath a proposed fill sections which does not require excavation for any reason other than to generate acceptable shoulder and fill slope material, the work of performing the excavation will be considered incidental to the item of *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*. If there is no pay item for *Borrow* or *Shoulder Borrow* in the contract, this work will be considered incidental to *Unclassified Excavation*. Stockpile the excavated material in a manner to facilitate measurement by the Engineer. Fill the void created by the excavation of the shoulder and fill slope material with suitable material. Payment for material used from the stockpile will be made at the contract unit price for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*. If there is no pay item for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*, then the material will be paid for at the contract unit price for *Unclassified Excavation*. The material used to fill the void created by the excavation of the shoulder and fill slope material will be made at the contract unit price for *Unclassified Excavation*, *Borrow Excavation*, or *Shoulder Borrow*, depending on the source of the material.

Material generated from undercut excavation, unclassified excavation or clearing and grubbing operations that is placed directly on shoulders or slope areas, will not be measured separately for payment, as payment for the work requiring the excavation will be considered adequate compensation for depositing and grading the material on the shoulders or slopes.

When undercut excavation is performed at the direction of the Engineer and the material excavated is found to be suitable for use as shoulder and fill slope material, and there is no area on the project currently prepared to receive the material generated by the undercut operation, the Contractor may construct a stockpile for use as borrow at a later date. Payment for the material used from the stockpile will be made at the contract unit price for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*.

When shoulder material is obtained from borrow sources or from stockpiled material, payment for the work of shoulder construction will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow* in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 230 or Section 560 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

COAL COMBUSTION PRODUCTS IN EMBANKMENTS:

(4-16-02) (Rev. 5-19-15)

235

SP02 R70

Description

This specification allows the Contractor an option, with the approval of the Engineer, to use coal combustion products (CCPs) in embankments as a substitute for conventional borrow material. The amount of CCPs allowed to be used for this project will be less than 80,000 tons total and less than 8,000 tons per acre.

Materials

Supply coal combustion products from the Department list of potential suppliers maintained by the Value Management Unit. Site specific approval of CCP material will be required prior to beginning construction.

The following CCPs are unacceptable:

- (A) Frozen material,
- (B) Ash from boilers fired with both coal and petroleum coke, and
- (C) Material with a maximum dry unit weight of less than 65 pounds per cubic foot when tested in accordance with AASHTO T-99 Method A or C.

Collect and transport CCPs in a manner that will prevent nuisances and hazards to public health and safety. Moisture condition the CCPs as needed and transport in covered trucks to prevent dusting.

Preconstruction Requirements

When CCPs are to be used as a substitute for earth borrow material, request written approval from the Engineer at least ninety (90) days in advance of the intent to use CCPs and include the following details using the NCDOT Form #CCP-2015-V1 in accordance with NCGS § 130A-309.219(b)(1):

- (A) Description, purpose and location of project.
- (B) Estimated start and completion dates of project.
- (C) Estimated volume of CCPs to be used on project with specific locations and construction details of the placement.
- (D) Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure analysis from a representative sample of each different CCP source to be used in the project for, at minimum, all of the following constituents: arsenic, barium, cadmium, lead, chromium, mercury, selenium, and silver.
- (E) The names, address, and contact information for the generator of the CCPs.
- (F) Physical location of the project at which the CCPs were generated.

Submit the form to the Engineer and the State Value Management Engineer at valuemanagementunit@ncdot.gov for review. The Engineer and the State Value Management Engineer will coordinate the requirements of NCGS § 130A-309.219(a)(1) and notify the Contractor that all the necessary requirements have been met before the placement of structural fill using coal combustion products is allowed.

Construction Methods

In accordance with the detail in the plans, place CCPs in the core of the embankment section with at least 4 feet of earth cover to the outside limits of the embankments or subgrade and at least 5 feet above the seasonal high ground-water table. CCPs used in embankments shall not be placed as follows:

- (A) Within 50 feet of any property boundary.
- (B) Within 300 horizontal feet of a private dwelling or well.
- (C) Within 50 horizontal feet of the top of the bank of a perennial stream or other surface water body.
- (D) Within a 100-year floodplain except as authorized under NCGS § 143-215.54A(b). A site located in a floodplain shall not restrict the flow of the 100-year floodplain or result in washout of solid waste so as to pose a hazard to human life, wildlife or land and water resources.

- (E) Within 50 horizontal feet of a wetland, unless, after consideration of the chemical and physical impact on the wetland, the United States Army Corps of Engineers issues a permit or waiver for the fill.

Construct embankments by placing CCPs in level uniform lifts with no more than a lift of 10 inches and compacted to at least a density of 95 percent as determined by test methods in AASHTO T-99, Determination of Maximum Dry Density and Optimum Moisture Content, Method A or C depending upon particle size of the product. Provide a moisture content at the time of compaction of within 4 percent of optimum but not greater than one percent above optimum as determined by AASHTO T-99, Method A or C.

Divert surface waters resulting from precipitation from the CCPs placement area during filling and construction activities. Construct embankments such that rainfall will not run directly off of the CCPs. Provide dust control to minimize airborne emissions. Construct fill in a manner that prevents water from accumulating and ponding and do not pump nor discharge waters from CCP's filling and construction areas.

Measurement and Payment

Borrow Excavation will be measured by truck volume and paid in cubic yards in accordance with Article 230-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

MANUFACTURED QUARRY FINES IN EMBANKMENTS:

(01-17-17)

235

SP02 R72

Description

This specification addresses the use of manufactured quarry fines that are not classified as select materials. The specification allows the Contractor an option, with the approval of the Engineer, to use manufactured quarry fines (MQFs) in embankments as a substitute for conventional borrow material. Furnish and place geotextile for pavement stabilization in accordance with the Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision and detail. Geotextile for pavement stabilization is required to prevent pavement cracking and provide separation between the subgrade and pavement section at embankment locations where manufactured quarry fines are utilized and as directed by the Engineer.

Materials

Manufactured Quarry Fines.

Site specific approval of MQFs material will be required prior to beginning construction as detailed in the preconstruction requirements of this provision.

The following MQFs are unacceptable:

- (A) Frozen material,
- (B) Material with a maximum dry unit weight of less than 90 pounds per cubic foot when tested in accordance with AASHTO T-99 Method A or C.
- (C) Material with greater than 80% by weight Passing the #200 sieve

Collect and transport MQFs in a manner that will prevent nuisances and hazards to public health and safety. Moisture condition the MQFs as needed and transport in covered trucks to prevent dusting. If MQFs are blended with natural earth material, follow Borrow Criteria in Section 1018 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Geotextiles

Areas of embankment where MQFs are incorporated, Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization shall be used. If the Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision is not included elsewhere in this contract, then it along with a detail will be incorporated as part of the contractors request to use. Notification of subgrade elevation, sampling and waiting period as required in the Construction Methods section of the Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision are not required.

Preconstruction Requirements

When MQFs are to be used as a substitute for earth borrow material, request written approval from the Engineer at least ninety (90) days in advance of the intent to use MQFs and include the following details:

- (A) Description, purpose and location of project.
- (B) Estimated start and completion dates of project.
- (C) Estimated volume of MQFs to be used on project with specific locations and construction details of the placement.
- (D) The names, address, and contact information for the generator of the MQFs.
- (E) Physical location of the site at which the MQFs were generated.

The Engineer will forward this information to the State Materials Engineer for review and material approval.

Construction Methods

Place MQFs in the core of the embankment section with at least 4 feet of earth cover to the outside limits of the embankments or subgrade.

Construct embankments by placing MQFs in level uniform lifts with no more than a lift of 10 inches and compacted to at least a density of 95 percent as determined by test methods in AASHTO T-99, Determination of Maximum Dry Density and Optimum Moisture Content, Method A or C depending upon particle size of the product. Provide a moisture content at the time of compaction of within 4 percent of optimum but not greater than one percent above optimum as determined by AASHTO T-99, Method A or C.

Areas of embankment where MQFs are incorporated, Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization shall be used. See Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision for geotextile type and construction method.

Measurement and Payment

Borrow Excavation will be measured by truck volume and paid in cubic yards in accordance with Article 230-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. As an alternate weigh tickets can be provided and payment made by converting weight to cubic yards based on the verifiable unit weight.

Where the pay item of *Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization* is included in the original contract

the material will be measured and paid in square yards (see Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision). Where the pay item of *Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization* is not included in the original contract then no payment will be made for this item and will be considered incidental to the use of MQFs in embankment.

C.S. SLOTTED DRAIN:

Description

Furnish and install ___" C. S. Slotted Drain, ___" Thick, that has been fabricated in accordance with the requirements of Section 310 of the *Standard Specifications* and the details in the plans. Install the slotted drain in accordance with the requirements of Section 300 of the *Standard Specifications* except as noted in this provision. Embed the slotted drain in a bedding of lean grout, consisting of a mixture of 1 part portland cement to 6 parts of mortar sand with no more water added than is necessary to make a workable mixture.

Measurement and Payment

___" *C. S. Slotted Drain*, ___" will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of slotted drain which have been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. Measurement will be made in accordance with Article 310-6. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work, including but not limited to furnishing, hauling, placing the slotted drain, bedding the drain in grout, making all joint connections, all excavation and backfill.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
___" C. S. Slotted Drain, ___" Thick	Linear Foot

SPECIAL PROVISION FOR PIPE REHABILITATION

I. DESCRIPTION

This work shall consist of the rehabilitation of existing storm water pipes, or culverts by the method or methods specified at the designated locations described in the Contract.

Pipe liner systems used for rehabilitation shall be from the NCDOT Approved Products List and may be subject to limitations for use as specified herein, by site-specific limitations for those locations listed in the Contract, or limitations as shown on the NCDOT Approved Products List for the specific liner system. The Contractor shall consult the Contract to determine the method or methods that are permitted at each rehabilitation location.

Liners provided per this special provisions shall be designed per the *NCDOT Manual for Pipe Rehabilitation*.

The Contractor shall receive approval from NCDOT in writing for substituting the type or size of the liner specified for any specific location prior to procurement of said liner.

The Contractor shall provide contract submittals as called for herein to the Engineer a minimum of 10 days prior to start of installation.

Designated Locations and Allowable Methods Location of pipes to be lined are shown in the I-4700 Plan Sheets and the Drainage Summary Sheets

The liners as specified for the two existing pipes on Plan Sheet 10 near Station 914+15 shall not be changed without written approval from both the Engineer of Record and the NCDOT Division Construction Engineer.

Category A (CIPP) liners may be substituted for Category C and Category F liners with written approval from the NCDOT Division Construction Engineer.

Category C and Category F liners may be substituted for Category A (CIPP) liners with written approval from both the Engineer of Record and the NCDOT Division Construction Engineer.

II. MATERIALS

Category A - Cured-In-Place Pipe (CIPP) liners are lining an existing culvert by either pulling or inverting a resin-impregnated fabric tube and curing the tube in place. When CIPP liners are specified, the liner system supplied by the Contractor shall conform to the following requirements as supported by contract submittals:

- Must list host pipe diameter ranges for which the product is applicable.
- Must indicate corrosion potential/acid reaction potential.
- Must list cure method (e.g., UV, steam, hot water, etc.).
- Must list typical, minimum, maximum application thicknesses.
- Calculated minimum thickness of liner
- Designation of air or water inversion or pull-in-place method
- Maximum allowable pulling force
- Site specific cure time
- Minimum pressure to hold liner tight against the host pipe
- Maximum pressure to ensure liner does not sustain damage
- Maximum and minimum cure temperatures
- Ambient temperature range allowable during installation
- Post cure temperature
- Temperature cure profile.
- Sample of temperature and pressure log to be used for monitoring the curing process
- Certification on manufacturer's letterhead indicating that the contractor is approved by the fabric tube and resin manufacturer to perform CIPP installation work.
- Manufacturer moisture limitations (e.g. installation in the dry, humidity restrictions, etc.).
- Material safety data sheets for all hazardous chemicals that will be used on the job site including resin, catalyst, cleaners, and repair agents. Identify the proposed use for each hazardous chemical and where it will be used in the work.
- Must provide and comply with specification for installation, and provide NCDOT Type 1 or Type 4 Certificates of compliance with material specifications as applicable to the below, or equivalent as approved by the Engineer:

- ASTM D5813
 - ASTM F1216 for inverted CIPP
 - ASTM F1743 for pulled-in-place CIPP
 - ASTM F2019 for pulled-in-place GRP CIPP
 - ASTM F2599 for sectional inverted CIPP (applies to pipe sections, not full length)
- Long Term Modulus of Elasticity for calculations = 150,000 psi. NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications may be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of alternate Long Term Modulus of Elasticity extrapolated from ASTM D2990, 10000-hour test. Design value of Long Term Modulus of Elasticity may be no greater than 50% of Initial Modulus of Elasticity. Tested value must be greater than or equal to value used in design equations.
 - Initial Modulus of Elasticity for calculations = 300,000 psi. NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications may be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of alternate Initial Modulus of Elasticity based on ASTM D790. Tested value must be greater than or equal to value used in design equations.
 - Long Term Flexural Strength = 2250 psi. NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications may be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of alternate Long Term Flexural Strength extrapolated from ASTM D2990, 10000-hour test. Tested value must be greater than or equal to value used in design equations.

When **Category C HDPE, PE, PP, solid wall slip liners** are specified, the liner system supplied by the Contractor shall conform to the following requirements as supported by contract submittals (**NO PVC ALLOWED on this Contract**):

- Must list host pipe diameter ranges for which the product is applicable.
 - Must indicate corrosion potential/acid reaction potential.
 - Must be closed profile; i.e. no definable bell and spigot that protrudes from the outer wall of the pipe.
 - Certification on manufacturer's letterhead indicating that the contractor is approved by the manufacturer to perform installation work.
 - Material safety data sheets for all hazardous chemicals that will be used on the job site. Identify the proposed use for each hazardous chemical and where it will be used in the work.
 - Calculated minimum thickness of liner.
 - Maximum allowable pulling and/or pushing force
 - Grouting mix design and manufacturer recommendations
 - Installation procedures and recommendations.
 - Must provide inside diameter and outside diameter of pipe.
- Must provide and comply with specification for installation, and provide NCDOT Type 1 or Type 4 Certificates of compliance with material specifications as applicable to the below, or equivalent as approved by the Engineer:
 - ASTM D3350 defines PE cell class referenced below

- ASTM F714 for solid wall polyethylene min cell classification 345464 and 2–4% carbon black
 - AASHTO M326 for solid wall polyethylene
 - ASTM F585 for polyethylene slip-line
 - ASTM F2620 for polyethylene heat fusion joining
- NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications must be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of Long Term Modulus of Elasticity, 50-year sustained loading value, if the following values are not used in design calculations: 22,000 psi shall be used for HDPE, PE, and PP per AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications 8th ed., Table 12.12.3.3-1.

Category F - Smooth-wall steel pipe liner rehabilitation materials shall conform to 1032-5 of the Standard Specifications, except as altered herein.

Grade B pipe shall be used with minimum wall thicknesses as listed in the *NCDOT Manual for Pipe Rehabilitation*.

The Contractor shall submit the following items to the Engineer:

- Material safety data sheets for all hazardous chemicals that will be used on the job site. Identify the proposed use for each hazardous chemical and where it will be used in the work.
- Grouting mix design and manufacturer recommendations.

III. CONSTRUCTION

Pre-Installation Inspection – The Contractor shall perform a pre-installation video inspection of pipe using NASSCO certified personnel. The camera shall be situated at the centerline of the pipe and shall be mounted on a rubber tired or tracked pipe rover that allows for a 360-degree inspection. Inspection equipment shall be capable of measuring protrusions and obstructions of ½ inch or greater. Provide a pipe profile, on which deflections that may affect the installation of the liner are located and noted. The inspection shall be performed in the presence of the Engineer, unless waived by the Engineer. Dewater the host pipe to the satisfaction of the Engineer, and in accordance with NCDOT Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities. A thorough culvert inspection is required to determine the number of existing “pipe to pipe” connections and the extent, if any, of obstruction removal and voids. The inspection shall be performed by experienced personnel trained in locating breaks, obstacles, voids and service connections. Video inspections shall be clearly labeled on the media with the time, date, and location of the pipe inspected. A copy of the video inspection shall be furnished to the Engineer at least 10 days prior to the start of rehabilitative construction. In the event the Contractor’s inspection shows the method of rehabilitation the Contractor has selected is no longer viable at that location as verified by the Engineer, the Contractor shall select another allowable method, if specified, from those designated in the Contract.

Pipe Clean-out - The Contractor shall clear the existing pipe(s) designated for rehabilitation of any debris, sediment, protrusions greater than ½ inch in height, and any other potential obstructions prior to the start of rehabilitation efforts. The Contractor shall then thoroughly clean and prepare the host pipe prior to the liner installation. Cleaning shall conform to the recommendations of the liner manufacturer, and any additional requirements of this special

provision. In the absence of manufacturer recommendations, the Contractor shall submit his/her proposed method for cleaning and preparing the host pipe for the Engineer's review and acceptance at least 10 working days prior to beginning the work at that location.

Grouting Host Pipe - The Contractor shall perform grouting work described in the contract, prior to pipe liner installation to correct existing deficiencies, such as voids.

Inlet & Outlet Sealing – All pipe liner installations shall be sealed to the host pipe at the terminal ends of the liner to prevent flow between the liner and host pipe.

De-Watering – All pipe liners and grout shall be installed in dry conditions. The Contractor shall de-water by diverting, pumping, or bypassing any water flow through an existing pipe or drainage system prior to and during the lining process. The method of de-watering is to be determined by the contractor but must be approved by the Engineer prior to implementing. No separate measurement or payment will be made for dewatering site as cost shall be included in contract price per linear foot. ((Size inches) Pipe Rehabilitation _____)

Disposal Plan – The Contractor shall submit a Disposal Plan to the Engineer a minimum of 10 days prior to installation. The Disposal Plan shall indicate how by-products and waste are to be contained, captured, transported offsite, and disposed of in accordance with project permits and local, state and federal regulations. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to report and take appropriate corrective actions to remediate any water quality alteration resulting from lining operations in accordance with project permits and applicable local, state or federal regulations. The cost for such remediation shall be at the Contractor's expense.

Category A – Cured-In-Place Pipe liner method. The Cured-In-Place Pipe liner system shall be fabricated and installed in such a manner as to result in a maintained full contact tight fit to the internal circumference of the host pipe for its entire length. The installation shall adhere to the cure times and temperatures stipulated in the manufacturer's recommended installation and cure specifications and the finished product shall be free of de-lamination, bubbling, rippling or other signs of installation failure.

Install per specification or standard practice for installation (ASTM F1216 inverted CIPP, or F1743 pulled-in-place CIPP, or F2019 pulled-in-place GRP CIPP, or F2599 sectional inverted CIPP for example).

Pulled-in-place liner installation must be accomplished without significant liner twisting or stretching the liner greater than 1% of its original length during installation. At no time shall the pulling force, as measured by a contractor-provided dynamometer or load cell, exceed that established by the liner manufacturer. For liner lengths greater than 100 feet, protect the pipe liner end using a device that uniformly distributes the applied load around the perimeter of the liner.

Curing for styrene-based, epoxy-based, and vinyl ester-based CIPP may be accomplished by water, steam or ultraviolet light and shall be in accordance with the liner manufacturer's recommendations.

Installation and curing requirements of pipe sections shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the specific product, as applicable. The Contractor shall furnish installation and curing requirements for the various flexible liners including individual components of the system, tube type (reinforced or non-reinforced), manufacturer name and type of resin including catalyst, volume of resin required to achieve proper impregnation and curing. All components of the systems shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific system used, and all components shall include lot numbers and expiration dates.

The Contractor shall place an impermeable barrier immediately upstream and downstream of the host pipe, prior to liner insertion, to capture any possible raw resin spillage during installation and shall dispose of any materials in accordance with the submitted disposal plan.

Where the pulled-in-place method of installation is used, the Contractor shall install a semi-rigid plastic slip sheet over any interior portions of the host pipe that could tear the outer film or over any significant voids in the host pipe.

Reconnect the existing storm drain lateral connections immediately after the liner has been cured in place. Use robotic cutting devices to re-establish tie-ins in non-man accessible pipes.

The Contractor shall monitor temperature via a minimum of three thermocouples on the outer surface (interface between the host pipe and liner) of the liner (one each at the upstream and downstream ends and one approximately mid-length of the host pipe). The Contractor shall monitor pressure during inversion and curing and maintain pressure between minimum and maximum allowable pressures as provided by the manufacturer. The Contractor shall automatically log cure time-temperature and time-pressure data at 30 second intervals with a data logger and provide such information in a format acceptable to the Engineer.

Submit the tape and log of recorded temperatures and pressure to the Engineer within 48 hours after completing the resin-curing process.

The Contractor shall thoroughly rinse the cured lined pipe with clean water prior to re-introducing flow.

The Contractor shall capture all cure water and/or steam condensate and rinse water and dispose of, in accordance with the submitted disposal plan.

Within 21 days of completing the resin curing at a given culvert location, submit the test results from an ISO 17025 lab suitable to the Engineer. The report must be signed by a representative of the independent testing lab. The report must include:

- Flexural strength and flexural modulus test results for field samples.
- Thickness measurements for the liner using prepared core samples.
- Description of the defects in the tested samples in terms of the effect on CIPP performance.

Make cured samples from the identical materials (tube, resin and catalyst) to be used for the CIPP. Identify each sample by date, contract number, drainage system number of the corresponding culvert, thickness, name of resin, and name of catalyst.

The samples must be 6 by 16 inches in size: Comply with the following sampling procedures unless UV cured:

- Place 3 aluminum-plate clamped molds, each containing a flat plate sample, inside the downtube when heated circulated water is used, and in the silencer when steam is used during the resin curing period
- Seal each flat plate sample in a heavy-duty plastic envelope inside the mold

- Remove the 3 cured flat plate samples after draining all the moisture from the cured CIPP

If UV cured, comply with field sampling procedures under ASTM F2019, Section 7: Recommended Inspection Practices.

Test the samples for flexural properties under ASTM D790, ASTM D5813, ASTM F1216, ASTM F1743, or ASTM F2019. Verify that physical properties of the field samples comply with the minimum values under:

- ASTM F1216, Table 1 (modified values), for heat cured polyester, vinyl ester, and epoxy resins. The flexural strength must be at least 5,000 psi. The flexural modulus must be at least 300,000 psi.
- ASTM F2019, Table 1, for UV cured CIPP. The flexural strength must be at least 6,500 psi. The flexural modulus must be at least 725,000 psi. Comply with sampling and testing procedures under ASTM F2019, Section 7: Recommended Inspection Practices.

Take core samples in the presence of the Engineer. Comply with the following core sample requirements:

- Take 2 samples. Take the samples at least 1 foot from each end of the culvert at a location near the top of the culvert. Samples must be at least 2 inches in diameter.
- If culvert material is corrugated metal, obtain samples at the corrugation crests.

Prepare the core samples by separating the CIPP material from the culvert material. If heat cured, remove the film from the inner lining or preliner. If UV cured, remove the film from the inner and outer foil.

Measure the thickness of the liner at 3 spots on each sample. If the culvert material is corrugated metal, measure the thickness at 3 spots that are along a line corresponding to the corrugation crests. Calculate the thickness as an average of at least 6 measurements.

If UV cured, comply with sampling and testing procedures under ASTM F2019, Section 7: Recommended Inspection Practices. If the culvert material is corrugated metal, measure the thickness at 3 spots that are along a line corresponding to the corrugation crests. Calculate the thickness as an average of at least 6 measurements.

All voids from core samples are to be filled with TYPE 1 epoxy resin as specified in NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures (2018)– Section 1081.

CIPP may be rejected if any of:

- Actual temperature and curing time and schedule do not comply with those shown in the authorized work plan
- Pressure deviates more than 1 psi from the required pressure
- At any time during installation the manufacturer's required minimum cool-down time or maximum cool-down rate is violated
- There are defects including:
 - Concentrated ridges, including folds and wrinkles exceeding 8 percent of the CIPP diameter
 - Dry spots
 - Lifts
 - Holes
 - Tears
 - Soft spots
 - Blisters or bubbles
 - Delaminations
 - Gaps in the length of the CIPP
 - Gaps or a loose fit between the exterior of the CIPP and the culvert
- Test results indicate one of the following:

- If heat cured, 2 of the 3 flat plate samples do not have any of the following:
 - the specified modulus of elasticity
 - the specified flexural strength
 - either the specified modulus of elasticity or the specified flexural strength
- If UV cured, 2 of the 3 cured samples do not have any of the following:
 - the specified modulus of elasticity
 - the specified flexural strength
 - either the specified modulus of elasticity or the specified flexural strength
- The liner thickness is less than the greater of either one of the following:
 - Specified thickness
 - Calculated minimum thickness shown in your authorized work plan
- Materials and installation methods are not those shown in your authorized installation plan
- Defects are excessive or unrepairable
- CIPP is not continuous or does not fit tightly for the full length of the culvert

If UV cured, and post installation inspections reveal signs of incomplete curing (dripping resin, etc.), contractor will trim liner obscuring uncured liner, re-wet, and re-cure with UV.

Category C – HDPE, PE, or PP solid wall slip liner shall be installed per specification or standard practice for installation (ASTM F585 polyethylene slip-line, ASTM F2620 polyethylene heat fusion joining, for example).

Installation requirements of pipe sections shall be according the manufacturer recommendations for the specific product as applicable. All components of the systems shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific system used, and all components shall include lot numbers.

Before lining, pull or push a mandrel through the existing pipe or perform laser survey to verify liner clearance. The liner must be positioned and secured to facilitate its complete encapsulation by grout. Follow the Manufacturer's recommendations for handling and assembling the pipe, and all provisions included in the design calculations. Reconnect the existing storm drain lateral connections immediately after the liner has been installed in place. Use robotic cutting devices to re-establish tie-ins in non-man accessible pipes. Prior to filling the annular space, connect and seal all laterals between the new liner pipe and the existing lateral.

Grout the entire annular space with non-shrink grout or an expansive admixture approved by the Manufacturer for use with the liner system. In the absence of Manufacturer recommendations for grout, refer to Section 1003 of Standard Specifications. Provide a minimum annular space of 1 inch for grouting between the new and existing pipes. Provide details on how to hold the liner pipe to line and grade until the grout has set. Ensure the maximum pressure developed by the grout does not exceed the manufacturer's recommendation for the maximum allowable external pressure for the liner pipe. If the volume of the grout used is less than the anticipated (calculated) volume, or an inspection of the relined culvert indicates that there are voids in the annular space, the Contractor must provide the Engineer with a plan to rehabilitate all identified voids. Depending on the location and size of the voids, additional grouting may be required in these areas. This may be accomplished by re-grouting in those areas from within the culvert. The voids must be filled to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no additional cost. Grouting is included with the cost of pipe liner installation.

Lining with HDPE or PP: Field cuts will be permitted only at the terminal ends. No pipe sections less than 3 feet long will be allowed in any lining projects. Perform all butt fusion, welding and extrusion welding of pipe in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendation.

Based on existence of alignment breaks or pinch points in the host pipe, all joints shall be butt fusion welded, or extrusion welded unless alternate joining methods are approved by the Engineer, in which case limit joint separations to less than ½ inch between adjoining sections.

Category F – Smooth wall steel pipe liner rehabilitation methods shall conform to Section 330 of the Standard Specifications, except as altered herein. The work shall be rehabilitation by the insertion of a smooth wall steel pipe into a host pipe. Where field welding is required, pipe shall be joined by butt welds in accordance with AWWA C-206. Field welded butt joints shall be complete joint penetration (CJP) and the adjoining members shall be assembled so that the seams in the adjacent pipe sections are offset from each other by at least five (5) times the thickness of the thinner member.

Welding procedures employed for welding shall be qualified by testing or prequalified in accordance with AWS D1.1

Personnel performing field welding operations shall have been tested and qualified by the Department.

The contractor shall provide a Certified Welding Inspector (CWI) on site during all welding and inspection operations to perform the necessary quality control examinations. Non-destructive testing/examination for testing to include visual outlined in the AWWA C-206 shall be provided at the contractor's expense.

Personnel performing these functions shall be qualified in accordance with AWS QC1 and/or the recommendations of the current edition of ASNT SNT-TC-1A. Radiographic and Hydrostatic testing is not required.

Before lining, pull or push a mandrel through the existing pipe to verify liner clearance. The liner must be positioned and secured to facilitate its complete encapsulation by grout. Follow the Manufacturer's recommendations for handling and assembling the pipe, and all provisions included in the design calculations. Reconnect the existing storm drain lateral connections after the liner has been installed in place. Use robotic cutting devices to re-establish tie-ins in non-man accessible pipes. Prior to filling the annular space, connect and seal all laterals between the new liner pipe and the existing lateral.

Grout the entire annular space with non-shrink grout approved by the Manufacturer for use with the liner system. In the absence of Manufacturer recommendations for grout, refer to Section 1003 of Standard Specifications. Provide a minimum annular space of 1 inch for grouting between the new and existing pipes. Provide details on how to hold the liner pipe to line and grade until the grout has set. Ensure the maximum pressure developed by the grout does not exceed the manufacturer's recommendation for the maximum allowable external pressure for the liner pipe. If the volume of the grout used is less than the anticipated (calculated) volume, or an inspection of the relined culvert indicates that there are voids in the annular space, the Contractor must provide the Engineer with a plan to rehabilitate all identified voids. Depending on the location and size of the voids, additional grouting may be required in these areas. This may be accomplished by re-grouting in those areas from within the culvert. The voids must be filled to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no additional cost. Grouting is included with the cost of pipe liner installation.

Post Installation Inspection – In addition to the inspection performed by the Department, the Contractor shall perform two post-installation video inspections using NASSCO certified personnel. The first inspection shall take place between 90 and 100 calendar days after completion of installation for each culvert or system to a single outfall. The second inspection shall take place 30 calendar days prior to the end of the liner warranty period (5 years, secured by construction bond). The camera shall be situated at the centerline of the pipe and shall be mounted on a rubber tired or tracked pipe rover that allows for a 360-degree inspection. Inspection equipment shall be capable of measuring protrusions and obstructions of ½ inch or greater. The inspection shall be performed in the presence of the Engineer. Dewater the host pipe to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Video inspections shall be clearly labeled on the media with the time, date, and location of the pipe inspected. A copy of the video inspection shall be furnished to the Engineer prior to acceptance of the work.

The finished liner may be rejected if not continuous over its entire length and free from visual defects such as foreign inclusions, joint separation, cracks, insufficient liner thickness, material loss, roughness, deformation, dry spots, pinholes, insufficient bonding to host pipe, delamination, or other material or installation deficiencies as described herein.

Remedies for rejection of liner - In the event the first post inspection of the installation reveals defects in localized areas of the liner pipe (comprising less than 20 percent of the pipe length) the localized defects shall be repaired as specified by the manufacturer. Where defects occur on 20 percent or more of the pipe length the defects shall be repaired, however, the Contractor will not be allowed to continue with his methodology of installation and/or the liner system used until he/she can demonstrate to the Engineer that he/she has remedied his/her operations to a sufficient level of quality as determined by the engineer. All such remedial efforts shall be at the Contractor's expense. Further failure(s) to perform a proper installation may result in the disallowance of the use of that liner system and an adjustment in the cost or non-payment of the failed installations depending on the severity of the failure.

In the event the first post installation inspection is not conducted until all or most of the locations in the Contract permitting this methodology have been performed, and the inspection reveals defects on 20 percent or more of the host pipe's length, then an adjustment in the cost or non-payment of the failed installations may be made by the Engineer depending on the severity of the failure.

In the event the second post inspection of the installation reveals defects, the Department may execute the option to call the construction bond to reimburse the Department for repairs or corrections, or to act as an adjustment in the cost, or both.

IV. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Pre Installation Inspection will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of pipe inspected, including mobilization of equipment, and production of records. Linear footage is not increased for multiple passes of inspection equipment through a length of pipe.

Pipe Rehabilitation will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of pipe for the Size, and Method that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. Note: At locations shown in the Contract where multiple methods are permitted, the Contractor may select

any of the methods specified, however, if only one method is specified, this will be the only method permitted at that location. This price shall include post installation inspection, cleaning and preparation of the host pipe, furnishing and installing the liner, lateral reconnection, coupling and expansion devices, annular cement grout, design (if necessary) and shop drawing preparation, furnishing and installing liner and all components of the liner system, capturing any discharges or releases during installation or curing operations, furnishing any documentation or fees required for effluent or condensate disposal, all testing and sampling including furnishing reports and pre and post installation video inspections, waste disposal costs, excavation, sheeting, shoring, disposing of surplus and unsuitable material; backfilling and backfill material; compaction, restoring existing surfaces, and clearing debris and obstructions.

De-Watering, water diversions or bypasses required to complete Pipe Rehabilitation work shall not be measured or paid separately. All materials, equipment, labor, or other resources required to de-watering a site shall be incidental to the Linear Foot unit cost for Pipe Rehabilitation.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Pre Installation Inspection	Linear Foot
___" Pipe Rehabilitation CIPP Liner	Linear Foot
___" OD Pipe Rehabilitation Solid Wall Thermoplastic Slip Liner	Linear Foot
___" Pipe Rehabilitation Smooth Wall Steel Slip Liner	Linear Foot

FLOWABLE FILL:

(9-17-02) (Rev 1-17-12)

300, 340, 1000, 1530, 1540, 1550

SP3 R30

Description

This work consists of all work necessary to place flowable fill in accordance with these provisions, the plans, and as directed.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Flowable Fill	1000-6

Construction Methods

Discharge flowable fill material directly from the truck into the space to be filled, or by other approved methods. The mix may be placed full depth or in lifts as site conditions dictate. The Contractor shall provide a method to plug the ends of the existing pipe in order to contain the flowable fill.

Measurement and Payment

At locations where flowable fill is called for on the plans and a pay item for flowable fill is included in the contract, *Flowable Fill* will be measured in cubic yards and paid as the actual number of cubic yards that have been satisfactorily placed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this provision including, but not limited to, the mix design, furnishing, hauling, placing and containing the flowable fill.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Flowable Fill

Pay Unit
Cubic Yard

POLYPROPYLENE CULVERT PIPE:

(8-20-19)

305,310

SP3 R35

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 3-5, Article 305-1 DESCRIPTION, lines 12-14, replace with the following:

Where shown in the plans, the Contractor may use reinforced concrete pipe, aluminum alloy pipe, aluminized corrugated steel pipe, HDPE pipe, Polypropylene Pipe, or PVC pipe in accordance with the following requirements.

Page 3-5, Article 305-2 MATERIALS, add the following after line 16:

Item	Section
Polypropylene Pipe	1032-9

Page 3-6, Article 310-2 MATERIALS, add the following after line 9:

Item	Section
Polypropylene Pipe	1032-9

Page 3-6, Article 310-4 SIDE DRAIN PIPE, lines 24-25, replace the first sentence of the second paragraph with the following:

Where shown in the plans, side drain pipe may be Class II reinforced concrete pipe, aluminized corrugated steel pipe, corrugated aluminum alloy pipe, polypropylene pipe, HDPE pipe or PVC pipe.

Page 3-7, Article 310-5 PIPE END SECTIONS, lines 2-4, replace the second sentence with the following:

Both corrugated steel and concrete pipe end sections will work on concrete pipe, corrugated steel pipe, polypropylene pipe, and HDPE smooth lined corrugated plastic pipe.

Page 3-7, Article 310-6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, add the following after line 14:

Pay Item

__" Polypropylene Pipe

Pay Unit

Linear Foot

Page 10-60, add Article 1032-9:**(A) General**

Use polypropylene pipe from sources participating in the Department's Polypropylene Pipe QA/QC Program. A list of participating sources is available from the Materials and Tests Unit. The Department will remove a manufacturer of polypropylene pipe from this program if the monitoring efforts indicated that non-specification material is being provided or test procedures are not being followed.

Use polypropylene culvert pipe that meets AASHTO M 330 for Type S or Type D, or ASTM F2881 or ASTM F2764 Double or Triple wall; and has been evaluated by NTPEP.

(B) End Treatments, Pipe Tees and Elbows

End treatments, pipe tees and elbows shall meet AASHTO M 330, Section 7.7, or ASTM F2764, Section 6.6.

(C) Marking

Clearly mark each section of pipe, end section, tee and elbow and other accessories according to the Department's Polypropylene Pipe QC/QA Program:

- (1) AASHTO or ASTM Designation
- (2) The date of manufacture
- (3) Name or trademark of the manufacturer

When polypropylene pipe, end sections, tees and elbows have been inspected and accepted a sticker will be applied to the inside of the pipe. Do not use pipe sections, flared end sections, tees or elbows which do not have this seal of approval.

BRIDGE APPROACH FILLS:

(10-19-10) (Rev. 1-16-18)

422

SP4 R02A

Description

Bridge approach fills consist of backfilling behind bridge end bents with select material or aggregate to support all or portions of bridge approach slabs. Install drains to drain water from bridge approach fills and geotextiles to separate approach fills from embankment fills, ABC and natural ground as required. For bridge approach fills behind end bents with mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) abutment walls, reinforce bridge approach fills with MSE wall reinforcement connected to end bent caps. Construct bridge approach fills in accordance with the contract, accepted submittals and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 422.01 or 422.02 or Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Define bridge approach fill types as follows:

Approach Fills – Bridge approach fills in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 422.01 or 422.02 or Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10;

Standard Approach Fill – Type I Standard Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.01;

Modified Approach Fill – Type II Modified Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.02 and

Reinforced Approach Fill – Type III Reinforced Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geotextiles, Type 1	1056
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Select Materials	1016
Subsurface Drainage Materials	1044

Provide Type 1 geotextile for separation geotextiles and Class B concrete for outlet pads. Use Class V or Class VI select material for standard and modified approach fills. For an approach fill behind a bridge end bent with an MSE abutment wall, backfill the reinforced approach fill with the same aggregate type approved for the reinforced zone in the accepted MSE wall submittal. For MSE wall aggregate, reinforcement and connector materials, see the *Mechanically Stabilized Earth Retaining Walls* provision. Provide PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes for subsurface drainage materials. For PVC drain pipes, use pipes with perforations that meet AASHTO M 278.

Construction Methods

Excavate as necessary for approach fills in accordance with the contract. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place separation geotextiles or aggregate until approach fill dimensions and foundation material are approved.

For reinforced approach fills, cast MSE wall reinforcement or connectors into end bent cap backwalls within 3" of locations shown in the accepted MSE wall submittals. Install MSE wall reinforcement with the orientation, dimensions and number of layers shown in the accepted MSE wall submittals. If a reinforced approach fill is designed with geogrid reinforcement embedded in an end bent cap, cut geogrids to the required lengths and after securing ends of geogrids in place, reroll and rewrap portions of geogrids not embedded in the cap to protect geogrids from damage. Before placing aggregate, pull geosynthetic reinforcement taut so that it is in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases.

Attach separation geotextiles to end bent cap backwalls and wing walls with adhesives, tapes or other approved methods. Overlap adjacent separation geotextiles at least 18" with seams oriented

parallel to the roadway centerline. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed. Contact the Engineer when existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with separation geotextiles or MSE wall reinforcement.

Install continuous perforated PVC drain pipes with perforations pointing down in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 422.01 or 422.02. Connect drain pipes to outlet pipes just beyond wing walls. Connect PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes with solvent cement in accordance with Article 815-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and place outlet pads in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 815.03.

Install drain pipes so water drains towards outlets. If the groundwater elevation is above drain pipe elevations, raise drains up to maintain positive drainage towards outlets. Place pipe sleeves in or under wing walls so water drains towards outlets. Use sleeves that can withstand wing wall loads.

Place select material or aggregate in 8" to 10" thick lifts. Compact fine aggregate for reinforced approach fills in accordance with Subarticle 235-3(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except compact fine aggregate to a density of at least 98%. Compact select material for standard or modified approach fills and coarse aggregate for reinforced approach fills with a vibratory compactor to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Do not displace or damage geosynthetics, MSE wall reinforcement or drains when placing and compacting select material or aggregate. End dumping directly on geosynthetics is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on geosynthetics or drain pipes until they are covered with at least 8" of select material or aggregate. Replace any damaged geosynthetics or drains to the satisfaction of the Engineer. When approach fills extend beyond bridge approach slabs, wrap separation geotextiles over select material or aggregate as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.01 or 2018 Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Measurement and Payment

Type I Standard Approach Fill, Station ____, *Type II Modified Approach Fill, Station ____* and *Type III Reinforced Approach Fill, Station ____* will be paid at the contract lump sum price. The lump sum price for each approach fill will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and approach fill materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials, installing geotextiles and drains, compacting backfill and supplying select material, aggregate, separation geotextiles, drain pipes, pipe sleeves, outlet pipes and pads and any incidentals necessary to construct approach fills behind bridge end bents.

The contract lump sum price for *Type III Reinforced Approach Fill, Station ____* will also be full compensation for supplying and connecting MSE wall reinforcement to end bent caps but not designing MSE wall reinforcement and connectors. The cost of designing reinforcement and connectors for reinforced approach fills behind bridge end bents with MSE abutment walls will be incidental to the contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. ____*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Type I Standard Approach Fill, Station ____	Lump Sum
Type II Modified Approach Fill, Station ____	Lump Sum
Type III Reinforced Approach Fill, Station ____	Lump Sum

ALTERNATE BRIDGE APPROACH FILLS FOR INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS:

(1-16-18)

422

SP4 R02B

Description

At the Contractors option, use Type A Alternate Bridge Approach Fills instead of Type I or II Bridge Approach Fills to support bridge approach slabs for integral bridge abutments. An alternate bridge approach fill consists of constructing an approach fill with a temporary geotextile wall before placing all or a portion of the concrete for the backwall and wing walls of the integral end bent cap. The temporary geotextile wall is designed for a crane surcharge, remains in place and aligned so the wall face functions as a form for the end bent cap backwall and wing walls. Install drains, welded wire facing and geotextiles and backfill approach fills and temporary walls with select material as required. Define “geotextiles” as separation or reinforcement geotextiles, “temporary wall” as a temporary geotextile wall and “alternate approach fill” as a Type A Alternate Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geotextiles	1056
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Select Materials	1016
Subsurface Drainage Materials	1044
Welded Wire Reinforcement	1070-3

For temporary walls, use welded wire reinforcement for welded wire facing and Type 5 geotextile for reinforcement geotextiles. Use Type 5 geotextile with lengths and an ultimate tensile strength as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Provide Type 1 geotextile for separation geotextiles and Class B concrete for outlet pads. Use Class V or Class VI select material for alternate approach fills and temporary walls. Provide PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes for subsurface drainage materials. For PVC drain pipes, use pipes with perforations that meet AASHTO M 278.

Construction Methods

Excavate as necessary for alternate approach fills and temporary walls in accordance with the contract. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place geotextiles until approach fill dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Install geotextiles as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Attach separation geotextiles to end bent cap backwalls and wing walls as needed with adhesives, tapes or other

approved methods. Overlap adjacent geotextiles at least 18" with seams oriented parallel to the roadway centerline. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed. Contact the Engineer when existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with geotextiles.

Install continuous perforated PVC drain pipes with perforations pointing down in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Connect drain pipes to outlet pipes just beyond wing walls. Connect PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes with solvent cement in accordance with Article 815-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and place outlet pads in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 815.03.

Install drain pipes so water drains towards outlets. If the groundwater elevation is above drain pipe elevations, raise drains up to maintain positive drainage towards outlets. Place pipe sleeves in or under wing walls so water drains towards outlets. Use sleeves that can withstand wing wall loads.

At the Contractor's option, construct bottom portion of integral end bents before temporary walls as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawings No. 422.03. Erect and set welded wire facing so facing functions as a form for the end bent cap backwall. Place welded wire facing adjacent to each other in the horizontal and vertical directions to completely cover the temporary wall face. Stagger welded wire facing to create a running bond by centering facing over joints in the row below.

Wrap reinforcement geotextiles at the temporary wall face in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03 and cover geotextiles with at least 3" of select material. Place layers of reinforcement geotextiles within 3" of locations shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Before placing select material, pull reinforcement geotextiles taut so they are in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Install reinforcement geotextiles with the direction shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Do not splice or overlap reinforcement geotextiles so seams are parallel to the temporary wall face.

Place select material in 8" to 10" thick lifts and compact select material with a vibratory compactor to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Do not displace or damage geotextiles or drains when placing and compacting select material. End dumping directly on geotextiles is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on geotextiles or drain pipes until they are covered with at least 8" of select material. Replace any damaged geotextiles or drains to the satisfaction of the Engineer. When alternate approach fills extend beyond bridge approach slabs, wrap separation geotextiles over select material as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03.

Temporary walls are designed for a surcharge pressure in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. If the crane surcharge will exceed the wall design, contact the Engineer before positioning the crane over reinforcement geotextiles.

Measurement and Payment

Alternate approach fills will be paid at the contract lump sum for either *Type I Standard Approach Fill, Station ____* or *Type II Modified Approach Fill, Station ____* based on the approach fill type that the alternate approach fill is replacing. The lump sum price for each approach fill will be full

compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and alternate approach fill materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials, constructing temporary walls, installing wall facing, geotextiles and drains, compacting backfill and supplying select material, separation and reinforcement geotextiles, welded wire facing, drain pipes, pipe sleeves, outlet pipes and pads and any incidentals necessary to construct alternate approach fills for integral abutments.

AGGREGATE SUBGRADE:

(5-15-18)

505

SP5 R8

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 5-8, Article 505-1 DESCRIPTION, lines 4-6, replace the paragraph with the following:

Construct aggregate subgrades in accordance with the contract. Install geotextile for soil stabilization and place Class IV subgrade stabilization at locations shown in the plans and as directed.

Undercut natural soil materials if necessary to construct aggregate subgrades. Define “subbase” as the portion of the roadbed below the Class IV subgrade stabilization. For Type 2 aggregate subgrades, undercut subbases as needed. The types of aggregate subgrade with thickness and compaction requirements for each are as shown below.

Type 1 – A 6 to 24 inch thick aggregate subgrade with Class IV subgrade stabilization compacted to 92% of AASHTO T 180 as modified by the Department or to the highest density that can be reasonably obtained.

Type 2 – An 8 inch thick aggregate subgrade on a proof rolled subbase with Class IV subgrade stabilization compacted to 97% of AASHTO T 180 as modified by the Department.

Page 5-8, Article 505-3 CONSTRUCTION METHODS, line 12, insert the following after the first sentence of the first paragraph:

For Type 2 aggregate subgrades, proof roll subbases in accordance with Section 260 before installing geotextile for soil stabilization.

Page 5-8, Article 505-3 CONSTRUCTION METHODS, lines 16-17, replace the last sentence of the first paragraph with the following:

Compact ABC as required for the type of aggregate subgrade constructed.

Page 5-8, Article 505-4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 26, insert the following after the last sentence of the first paragraph:

Undercut Excavation of natural soil materials from subbases for Type 2 aggregate subgrades will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 225-7 or 226-3. No measurement will be made for any undercut excavation of fill materials from subbases.

PRICE ADJUSTMENT - ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX:

(11-21-00)

620

SP6 R25

Price adjustments for asphalt binder for plant mix will be made in accordance with Section 620 of the 2018 *Standard Specifications*.

The base price index for asphalt binder for plant mix is \$ **532.92** per ton.

This base price index represents an average of F.O.B. selling prices of asphalt binder at supplier's terminals on **July 1, 2019**.

MILLING ASPHALT PAVEMENT:

(1-15-19)

607

SP6 R59

Revise the 2018 *Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 6-5, Article 607-2, EQUIPMENT, lines 14-16, delete the seventh sentence of this Article and replace with the following:

Use either a non-contacting laser or sonar type ski system with a minimum of three referencing stations mounted on the milling machine at a length of at least 24 feet.

ASPHALT CONCRETE PLANT MIX PAVEMENTS:

(2-20-18) (Rev.1-15-19)

610, 1012

SP6 R65

Revise the 2018 *Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 6-14, Table 609-3, LIMITS OF PRECISION FOR TEST RESULTS, replace with the following:

Mix Property	Limits of Precision
25.0 mm sieve (Base Mix)	± 10.0%
19.0 mm sieve (Base Mix)	± 10.0%
12.5 mm sieve (Intermediate & Type P-57)	± 6.0%
9.5 mm sieve (Surface Mix)	± 5.0%
4.75 mm sieve (Surface Mix)	± 5.0%
2.36 mm sieve (All Mixes, except S4.75A)	± 5.0%
1.18 mm sieve (S4.75A)	± 5.0%
0.075 mm sieve (All Mixes)	± 2.0%
Asphalt Binder Content	± 0.5%
Maximum Specific Gravity (G_{mm})	± 0.020
Bulk Specific Gravity (G_{mb})	± 0.030
TSR	± 15.0%
QA retest of prepared QC Gyratory Compacted Volumetric Specimens	± 0.015
Retest of QC Core Sample	± 1.2% (% Compaction)
Comparison QA Core Sample	± 2.0% (% Compaction)

QA Verification Core Sample	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
Density Gauge Comparison of QC Test	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
QA Density Gauge Verification Test	± 2.0% (% Compaction)

Page 6-17, Table 610-1, MIXING TEMPERATURE AT THE ASPHALT PLANT, replace with the following:

Binder Grade	JMF Temperature
PG 58-28; PG 64-22	250 - 290°F
PG 76-22	300 - 325°F

Page 6-17, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), lines 38-39, delete the fourth paragraph.

Page 6-18, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), line 12, replace “SF9.5A” with “S9.5B”.

Page 6-18, Table 610-3, MIX DESIGN CRITERIA, replace with the following:

Mix Type	Design ESALs millions ^A	Binder PG Grade	Compaction Levels		Max. Rut Depth (mm)	Volumetric Properties ^B			
			G _{mm} @			VMA % Min.	VTM %	VFA Min.-Max.	%G _{mm} @ N _{ini}
			N _{ini}	N _{des}					
S4.75A	< 1	64 - 22	6	50	11.5	16.0	4.0 - 6.0	65 - 80	≤ 91.5
S9.5B	0 - 3	64 - 22	6	50	9.5	16.0	3.0 - 5.0	70 - 80	≤ 91.5
S9.5C	3 - 30	64 - 22	7	65	6.5	15.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
S9.5D	> 30	76 - 22	8	100	4.5	15.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.0
I19.0C	ALL	64 - 22	7	65	-	13.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
B25.0C	ALL	64 - 22	7	65	-	12.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
		Design Parameter						Design Criteria	
All Mix Types		Dust to Binder Ratio (P _{0.075} / P _{be})						0.6 - 1.4 ^C	
		Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR) ^D						85% Min. ^E	

A. Based on 20 year design traffic.

B. Volumetric Properties based on specimens compacted to N_{des} as modified by the Department.

C. Dust to Binder Ratio (P_{0.075} / P_{be}) for Type S4.75A is 1.0 - 2.0.

D. NCDOT-T-283 (No Freeze-Thaw cycle required).

E. TSR for Type S4.75A & B25.0C mixes is 80% minimum.

Page 6-20, Table 610-5, BINDER GRADE REQUIREMENTS (BASED ON RBR%), replace with the following:

Mix Type	%RBR ≤ 20%	21% ≤ %RBR ≤ 30%	%RBR ≥ 30%
S4.75A, S9.5B, S9.5C, I19.0C, B25.0C	PG 64-22	PG 64-22 ^A	PG-58-28
S9.5D, OGFC	PG 76-22 ^B	n/a	n/a

- A. If the mix contains any amount of RAS, the virgin binder shall be PG 58-28.
- B. Maximum Recycled Binder Replacement (%RBR) is 18% for mixes using PG 76-22 binder.

Page 6-20, Table 610-6, PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-6 PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT	
Asphalt Concrete Mix Type	Minimum Surface and Air Temperature
B25.0C	35°F
I19.0C	35°F
S4.75A, S9.5B, S9.5C	40°F ^A
S9.5D	50°F

- A. For the final layer of surface mixes containing recycled asphalt shingles (RAS), the minimum surface and air temperature shall be 50°F.

Page 6-21, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, lines 34-35, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Use an MTV for all surface mix regardless of binder grade on Interstate, US Routes, and NC Routes (primary routes) that have 4 or more lanes and median divided.

Page 6-21, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, lines 36-38, delete the fourth sentence and replace with the following:

Use MTV for all ramps, loops, Y-line that have 4 or more lanes and are median divided, full width acceleration lanes, full width deceleration lanes, and full width turn lanes that are greater than 1000 feet in length.

Page 6-23, Table 610-7, DENSITY REQUIREMENTS, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-7 DENSITY REQUIREMENTS	
Mix Type	Minimum % G_{mm} (Maximum Specific Gravity)
S4.75A	85.0 ^A
S9.5B	90.0
S9.5C, S9.5D, I19.0C, B25.0C	92.0

- A. Compaction to the above specified density will be required when the S4.75A mix is applied at a rate of 100 lbs/sy or higher.

Page 6-24, Article 610-13, FINAL SURFACE TESTING, lines 35-36, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Final surface testing is not required on ramps, loops and turn lanes.

Page 6-26, Subarticle 610-13(A)(1), Acceptance for New Construction, lines 29-30, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Areas excluded from testing by the profiler may be tested using a 10-foot straightedge in accordance with Article 610-12.

Page 6-27, Subarticle 610-13(B), Option 2- North Carolina Hearne Straightedge, lines 41-46, delete the eighth and ninth sentence of this paragraph and replace with the following:

Take profiles over the entire length of the final surface travel lane pavement exclusive of structures, approach slabs, paved shoulders, tapers, or other irregular shaped areas of pavement, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Test in accordance with this provision all mainline travel lanes, full width acceleration or deceleration lanes and collector lanes.

Page 6-28, Subarticle 610-13(B), Option 2- North Carolina Hearne Straightedge, lines 1-2, delete these two lines.

Page 6-32, Article 610-16 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, replace with the following:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type B25.0C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type I19.0C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S4.75A	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5B	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5D	Ton

Page 10-30, Table 1012-1, AGGREGATE CONSENSUS PROPERTIES, replace with the following:

**TABLE 1012-1
AGGREGATE CONSENSUS PROPERTIES^A**

Mix Type	Coarse Aggregate Angularity^B	Fine Aggregate Angularity % Minimum	Sand Equivalent % Minimum	Flat and Elongated 5 : 1 Ratio % Maximum
<i>Test Method</i>	<i>ASTM D5821</i>	<i>AASHTO T 304</i>	<i>AASHTO T 176</i>	<i>ASTM D4791</i>
S4.75A; S9.5B	75 / -	40	40	-
S9.5C; I19.0C; B25.0C	95 / 90	45	45	10
S9.5D	100 / 100	45	50	10
OGFC	100 / 100	45	45	10
UBWC	100 / 85	45	45	10

A. Requirements apply to the design aggregate blend.

B. 95 / 90 denotes that 95% of the coarse aggregate has one fractured face and 90% has 2 or more fractured faces.

DIAMOND GRINDING CONCRETE PAVEMENT:

(4-15-08) (Rev 08-16-16)

SPI 7-9A

Description

Perform the work covered by this provision including but not limited to diamond grinding and regrinding concrete pavement to meet final surface acceptable smoothness requirements detailed in Article 710-7, selecting diamond tipped saw blades and configuration of cutting head; continual removal of residual slurry from pavement and disposal; furnishing all labor, materials, supplies, tools, equipment and incidentals as necessary. Perform this work on all new concrete pavement or as directed by the Engineer.

Prior to beginning any diamond grinding operations, schedule a pre-grind meeting with grinding subcontractor, Division Construction Engineer, Project Engineer, Area Roadway Engineer, State Pavement Construction Engineer, representatives from the Roadside Environmental Unit and the Materials and Tests Unit.

Equipment

Use equipment with diamond tipped saw blades gang mounted on a power driven self-propelled machine with a minimum wheel base length of 15 feet that is specifically designed to smooth and texture Portland Cement Concrete pavement. Utilize equipment that does not cause ravels; aggregate fracture; spalls or disturbance to the longitudinal or transverse joints; or damage and/or strain to the underlying surface of the pavement. Should any of the above problems occur immediately suspend operations.

Provide a minimum 3 feet wide grinding head with 50 to 60 evenly spaced grooves per foot. Prior to designing the grinding head, evaluate the aggregate hardness of the concrete pavement and select the appropriate diamond size, diamond concentration and bond hardness for the individual saw blades.

Provide vacuuming equipment to continuously remove slurry residue and excess water from the pavement as part of the grinding operation. Transport slurry material off-site and dispose of this material appropriately. Do not allow the slurry material to flow into a travel lane occupied by traffic or into any drainage facility.

Method of Construction

Grind the pavement surface to a uniform appearance with a high skid resistant longitudinal corduroy type texture. Provide grooves between 0.09 and 0.15 inches wide with the land area between the grooves between 0.06 and 0.13 inches wide. Ensure a ridge peak of approximately 0.0625 inches higher than the bottom of the grooves.

Begin and end diamond grinding at lines normal to the pavement centerline. Grind only in the longitudinal direction. All grooves and adjacent passes shall be parallel to each other with no variation. Completely lap adjacent passes with no unground surface remaining between passes and no overlap of more than 1½ inches. Adjacent passes shall be within 1/8 inch of the same height as measured with a 3 foot straightedge. Maintain positive cross-slope drainage for the duration of the grinding operation.

Grind all travel lanes to include auxiliary lanes, ramps and loops with not less than 98 percent of the specified surface being textured by grinding. Grinding of the bridge decks and concrete shoulders will not be required. Remove a minimum 0.0625 inches at all locations except dips. Extra grinding to eliminate minor depressions is not required. It is anticipated that extra grinding will be required on the high side of existing faults in the pavement. There shall be no ridge between lanes. In a separate operation, transition the grinding of any remaining ridges greater than 1/8 inch in height on the outside edge next to the shoulder or at a tie to an existing facility to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Final surface testing is required on this project in accordance with Article 710-7 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Disposal of Residual Slurry

Diamond grinding slurry disposal shall be in accordance with the Statewide Permit for Land Application of Diamond Grinding Slurry (DGS), Permit No. WQ0035749 dated June 3, 2014. Submit a slurry disposal plan to the Engineer detailing method of handling and disposing of slurry from the diamond grinding operation a minimum of 60 days prior to beginning the diamond grinding operation. Engineer shall review the slurry disposal plan. Plan must be accepted prior to beginning the diamond grinding operation. DGS shall be transported beyond the project limits to an approved permitted site. No additional payment will be made for transporting this slurry material for disposal.

Disposal options are:

- (A) Concrete grinding residues (CGR) that are not liquid and otherwise not hazardous may be disposed of in a municipal solid waste landfill or utilized as an alternate daily cover (ADC). The sanitary landfill operator that requests the use of this material as ADC shall contact the N.C. Department of Environmental Quality (DEQ) inspector for approval. The

definition of a solid, for solid waste disposal purposes, is a material that passes a Paint Filter test. CGR's may be eligible for disposal or use as ADC in an unlined sanitary landfill or a construction and demolition debris landfill. If CGR is disposed in an unlined-landfill, the Contractor shall submit samples of the material to a certified laboratory to verify that the CGR does not exceed Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) regulatory limits for the following metals: Arsenic, Barium, Cadmium, Chromium, Lead, Mercury, Selenium and Silver.

- (B) Upon the Engineer's approval, dewatered CGR's may be beneficially reused within the DOT project boundary or areas under DOT control at agronomic rates suitable for the establishment of vegetation. Dewatered CGR's that meet the solid waste definition for inert debris, North Carolina General Statute 130A-290(a)(14), may also be used within the roadbed at rates approved by the Engineer for soil modification purposes. If CGR is disposed as beneficial reuse within DOT project boundaries, the Contractor shall submit samples of the material to a certified laboratory to verify that the CGR does not exceed RCRA regulatory limits for the following metals: Arsenic, Barium, Cadmium, Chromium, Lead, Mercury, Selenium and Silver.

To prevent the migration of any direct discharge from the diamond grinding machine DGS from entering a drainage inlet or structure, the contractor shall install coir fiber wattles and silt fence at the direction of the Engineer. Silt Fence shall be installed in accordance with Section 1605 of the *NCDOT 2012 Standard Specifications*

Measurement and Payment

The quantity of *Diamond Grinding PCC Pavement* to be paid for will be the actual number of square yards of pavement which has been satisfactorily diamond ground, measured along the final top surface of the pavement. No separate payment will be made for any overlapping, regrinding, or for extra grinding on the high side of existing faults.

Payment will be full compensation for the work, including but is not limited to grinding, disposal of slurry, final surface testing, furnishing all materials, equipment, labor and all incidentals necessary to satisfactorily complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Diamond Grinding PCC Pavement

Pay Unit

Square Yard

AUTOMATED MACHINE GUIDANCE

(1-2-11)

801

SP8 R01

General

This Special Provision contains requirements to be followed if the Contractor elects to use Global Positioning System (GPS) machine control grading and shall be used in conjunction with Section 801 of the *Standard Specifications*. The use of this technology is referenced as Automated Machine Guidance (AMG).

All equipment using AMG shall be able to generate end results that meet the *Standard Specifications*. Perform test sections for each type of work to be completed with AMG to demonstrate that the system has the capability to achieve acceptable results. If acceptable results cannot be achieved, conform to the requirements for conventional stakeout.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all errors resulting from the use of AMG and shall correct deficiencies to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no cost to the Department.

Submittals

If the Contractor elects to use AMG, a Digital Terrain Model (DTM) of the design surface and all intermediate surfaces shall be developed and submitted to the Engineer for review.

At least 90 days prior to beginning grading operations, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer an AMG work plan to include, but not limited to, proposed equipment, control software manufacturer and version, types of work to be completed using AMG, project site calibration report, repetitive calibration methods for construction equipment and rover units to be used for the duration of the project, and local GPS base station to be used for broadcasting differential correction data to rover units (this may include the NC Network RTK). All surveys must be tied to existing project control as established by NCDOT.

Inspection

The Engineer will perform quality assurance checks of all work associated with AMG. If it is determined that work is not being performed in a manner that will assure accurate results, the Engineer may require corrective action at no cost to the Department.

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with one GPS rover unit for use during the duration of the contract. The rover will be loaded with the same model that is used with the AMG and have the same capability as rover units used by the Contractor. The rover will be kept in the possession of the Engineer and will be returned to the Contractor upon completion of the contract. Any maintenance or repairs required for the rover will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Formal training of at least 8 hours shall be provided to the Engineer by the Contractor on the use of the proposed AMG system.

Subgrade and Base Controls

If the Contractor elects to use AMG for fine grading and placement of base or other roadway materials, the GPS shall be supplemented with a laser or robotic total station. Include details of the proposed system in the AMG work plan. In addition, the following requirements apply for the use of AMG for subgrade and base construction.

Provide control points at intervals along the project not to exceed 1,000 feet. The horizontal position of these points shall be determined by static GPS sessions or by traverse connection from the original base line control points. The elevation of these control points shall be established using differential leveling from project benchmarks, forming closed loops where practical. A copy of all new control point information shall be provided to the Engineer prior to construction activities.

Provide control points and conventional survey grade stakes at 500 foot intervals and at critical points such as, but not limited to, PCs, PTs, superelevation transition points, and other critical points as requested by the Engineer.

Provide hubs at the top of the finished subgrade at all hinge points on the cross section at 500 foot intervals. These hubs shall be established using conventional survey methods for use by the Engineer to check the accuracy of construction.

Measurement and Payment

No direct payment will be made for work required to utilize this provision. All work will be considered incidental to various grading operations.

ENERGY DISSIPATOR:

(1-1-02)

SPI

Description

Construct a concrete energy dissipator according to the details and in the locations shown on the plans. Provide all excavation, backfill, labor and material to complete this item of work. Structure may be cast-in-place or precast.

Material

Provide all material in accordance with Section 840-2 or Section 1077-3 as applicable. Use Class B concrete for cast-in-place or 4000 psi (27.6 Mpa) for precast.

Construction Methods

Perform all work in accordance with Section 840 or Section 1077 of the *Standard Specifications* as applicable.

Measurement and Payment

Energy Dissipator will be measured and paid for on an each basis completed and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Energy Dissipator

Pay Unit

Each

MEDIAN HAZARD PROTECTION

Description

Furnish and install *Median Hazard Protection* at the concrete barrier transition sections as shown on the plans in accordance with the detail in the plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Median Hazard Protection will be measured and paid for per linear foot that are completed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all labor, materials (including, but not limited to concrete barrier, earth material, #57 stone, concrete cover, galvanized bar and grout) and all incidentals necessary construct the Median Hazard Protection.

Concrete barrier transition sections will be measured and paid for as provided elsewhere in the contract. No separate measurement or payment will be made for concrete cover at barrier transition sections as the cost of such shall be included in the unit price bid per each for *Concrete Barrier Transition Section*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Median Hazard Protection	Linear Foot

ADA FRAME AND GRATE:**Description**

Furnish and Install ADA Frames and Grates that have slot openings ½” or less in one direction for use with NCDOT Standard DWG 840.14 Drop Inlets located near the Rest Area Buildings and /or locations designated on the plans and in quantities on the itemized proposal and in accordance with this provision.

Materials

The Frame and Grate shall be fabricated using cast Iron with Grate and Frame meeting the requirements of Gray Iron ASTM A48 CL35B and comply with *NCDOT Standard Specification 1074-7*.

Measurement and Payment

ADA Frame and Grate shall be measured and paid for in units of each that have been installed and incorporated into the completed and accepted work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
ADA Frame and Grate	Each

GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE - TL-2:

(10-21-08) (Rev. 7-1-17)

862

SP8 R64

Description

Furnish and install guardrail end units in accordance with the details in the plans, the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish guardrail end units listed on the NCDOT Approved Products List at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal.

Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each guardrail end unit certifying it meets the requirements of the AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware, Test Level 2 in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each guardrail end unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the guardrail end unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans, and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

Guardrail end delineation is required on all approach and trailing end sections for both temporary and permanent installations. Guardrail end delineation consists of yellow reflective sheeting applied to the entire end section of the guardrail in accordance with Article 1088-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and is incidental to the cost of the guardrail end unit.

Measurement and Payment

Measurement and payment will be made in accordance with Article 862-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail End Units, Type TL-2

Pay Unit

Each

GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE - TL-3:

(4-20-04) (Rev. 7-1-17)

862

SP8 R65

Description

Furnish and install guardrail end units in accordance with the details in the plans, the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish guardrail end units listed on the NCDOT Approved Products List at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal.

Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each guardrail end unit certifying it meets the requirements of the AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware, Test Level 3, in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each guardrail end unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the guardrail end unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans, and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

Guardrail end delineation is required on all approach and trailing end sections for both temporary and permanent installations. Guardrail end delineation consists of yellow reflective sheeting applied to the entire end section of the guardrail in accordance with Article 1088-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and is incidental to the cost of the guardrail end unit.

Measurement and Payment

Measurement and payment will be made in accordance with Article 862-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail End Units, Type TL-3

Pay Unit

Each

GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS AND TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS:

(1-16-2018)

862

SP8 R70

Guardrail anchor units will be in accordance with the details in the plans and the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 8-42, Article 862-6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, add the following:

Guardrail Anchor Units, Type ____ and Temporary Guardrail Anchor Units Type ____ will be measured and paid as units of each completed and accepted. No separate measurement will be made of any rail, terminal sections, posts, offset blocks, concrete, hardware or any other components of the completed unit that are within the pay limits shown in the plans for the unit as all such components will be considered to be part of the unit.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail Anchor Units, Type ____
Temporary Guardrail Anchor Units, Type ____

Pay Unit

Each
Each

IMPACT ATTENUATOR UNITS, TYPE TL-3:

(4-20-04) (Rev. 12-18-18)

SP8 R75

Description

Furnish and install impact attenuator units and any components necessary to connect the impact attenuator units in accordance with the manufacturer's requirement, the details in the plans and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish impact attenuator units listed on the Approved Products List at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal. Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each impact attenuator unit certifying it meets the requirements of the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH-16), Test Level 3, in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each impact attenuator unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the impact attenuator unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

If the median width is 40 feet or less, the Contractor shall supply NON-GATING Impact Attenuator Units.

If the median width is greater than 40 feet, the Contractor may use GATING or NON-GATING Impact Attenuator Units.

Measurement and Payment

Impact Attenuator Unit, Type TL-3 will be measured and paid at the contract unit price per each. Such prices and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this provision including, but not limited to, furnishing, installing and all incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Impact Attenuator Units, Type TL-3	Each

FOUNDATIONS AND ANCHOR ROD ASSEMBLIES FOR METAL POLES:

(1-17-12) (Rev. 1-16-18)

9, 14, 17

SP9 R05

Description

Foundations for metal poles include foundations for signals, cameras, overhead and dynamic message signs (DMS) and high mount and light standards supported by metal poles or upright trusses. Foundations consist of footings with pedestals and drilled piers with or without grade beams or wings. Anchor rod assemblies consist of anchor rods (also called anchor bolts) with nuts and washers on the exposed ends of rods and nuts and a plate or washers on the other ends of rods embedded in the foundation.

Construct concrete foundations with the required resistances and dimensions and install anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Construct drilled piers consisting of cast-in-place reinforced concrete cylindrical sections in excavated holes. Provide temporary casings or polymer slurry as needed to stabilize drilled pier excavations. Use a prequalified Drilled Pier Contractor to construct drilled piers for metal poles. Define "excavation" and "hole" as a drilled pier excavation and "pier" as a drilled pier.

This provision does not apply to foundations for signal pedestals; see Section 1743 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1743.01.

Materials

Refer to the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Conduit	1091-3
Grout, Type 2	1003

Item	Section
Polymer Slurry	411-2(B)(2)
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Rollers and Chairs	411-2(C)
Temporary Casings	411-2(A)

Provide Type 3 material certifications in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* for conduit, rollers, chairs and anchor rod assemblies. Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store foundation and anchor rod assembly materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

Use conduit type in accordance with the contract. Use Class A concrete for footings and pedestals, Class Drilled Pier concrete for drilled piers and Class AA concrete for grade beams and wings including portions of drilled piers above bottom of wings elevations. Corrugated temporary casings may be accepted at the discretion of the Engineer. A list of approved polymer slurry products is available from:

connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Products.aspx

Provide anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the contract consisting of the following:

- (A) Straight anchor rods,
- (B) Heavy hex top and leveling nuts and flat washers on exposed ends of rods, and
- (C) Nuts and either flat plates or washers on the other ends of anchor rods embedded in foundations.

Do not use lock washers. Use steel anchor rods, nuts and washers that meet ASTM F1554 for Grade 55 rods and Grade A nuts. Use steel plates and washers embedded in concrete with a thickness of at least 1/4". Galvanize anchor rods and exposed nuts and washers in accordance with Article 1076-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. It is not necessary to galvanize nuts, plates and washers embedded in concrete.

Construction Methods

Install the required size and number of conduits in foundations in accordance with the plans and accepted submittals. Construct top of piers, footings, pedestals, grade beams and wings flat, level and within 1" of elevations shown in the plans or approved by the Engineer. Provide an Ordinary Surface finish in accordance with Subarticle 825-6(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* for portions of foundations exposed above finished grade. Do not remove anchor bolt templates or pedestal or grade beam forms or erect metal poles or upright trusses onto foundations until concrete attains a compressive strength of at least 3,000 psi.

(A) Drilled Piers

Before starting drilled pier construction, hold a predrill meeting to discuss the installation, monitoring and inspection of the drilled piers. Schedule this meeting after the Drilled Pier Contractor has mobilized to the site. The Resident or Division Traffic Engineer, Contractor and Drilled Pier Contractor Superintendent will attend this predrill meeting.

Do not excavate holes, install piles or allow equipment wheel loads or vibrations within 20 ft of completed piers until 16 hours after Drilled Pier concrete reaches initial set.

Check for correct drilled pier alignment and location before beginning drilling. Check plumbness of holes frequently during drilling.

Construct drilled piers with the minimum required diameters shown in the plans. Install piers with tip elevations no higher than shown in the plans or approved by the Engineer.

Excavate holes with equipment of the sizes required to construct drilled piers. Depending on the subsurface conditions encountered, drilling through rock and boulders may be required. Do not use blasting for drilled pier excavations.

Contain and dispose of drilling spoils and waste concrete as directed and in accordance with Section 802 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Drilling spoils consist of all materials and fluids removed from excavations.

If unstable, caving or sloughing materials are anticipated or encountered, stabilize holes with temporary casings and/or polymer slurry. Do not use telescoping temporary casings. If it becomes necessary to replace a temporary casing during drilling, backfill the excavation, insert a larger casing around the casing to be replaced or stabilize the excavation with polymer slurry before removing the temporary casing.

If temporary casings become stuck or the Contractor proposes leaving casings in place, temporary casings should be installed against undisturbed material. Unless otherwise approved, do not leave temporary casings in place for mast arm poles and cantilever signs. The Engineer will determine if casings may remain in place. If the Contractor proposes leaving temporary casings in place, do not begin drilling until a casing installation method is approved.

Use polymer slurry and additives to stabilize holes in accordance with the slurry manufacturer's recommendations. Provide mixing water and equipment suitable for polymer slurry. Maintain the required slurry properties at all times except for sand content.

Define a "sample set" as slurry samples collected from mid-height and within 2 ft of the bottom of holes. Take sample sets from excavations to test polymer slurry immediately after filling holes with slurry, at least every 4 hours thereafter and immediately before placing concrete. Do not place Drilled Pier concrete until both slurry samples from an excavation meet the required polymer slurry properties. If any slurry test results do not meet the requirements, the Engineer may suspend drilling until both samples from a sample set meet the required polymer slurry properties.

Remove soft and loose material from bottom of holes using augers to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Assemble rebar cages and place cages and Drilled Pier concrete in accordance with Subarticle 411-4(E) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except for the following:

- (1) Inspections for tip resistance and bottom cleanliness are not required,
- (2) Temporary casings may remain in place if approved, and
- (3) Concrete placement may be paused near the top of pier elevations for anchor rod assembly installation and conduit placement or
- (4) If applicable, concrete placement may be stopped at bottom of grade beam or wings elevations for grade beam or wing construction.

If wet placement of concrete is anticipated or encountered, do not place Drilled Pier concrete until a concrete placement procedure is approved. If applicable, temporary casings and fluids may be removed when concrete placement is paused or stopped in accordance with the exceptions above provided holes are stable. Remove contaminated concrete from exposed Drilled Pier concrete after removing casings and fluids. If holes are unstable, do not remove temporary casings until a procedure for placing anchor rod assemblies and conduit or constructing grade beams or wings is approved.

Use collars to extend drilled piers above finished grade. Remove collars after Drilled Pier concrete sets and round top edges of piers.

If drilled piers are questionable, pile integrity testing (PIT) and further investigation may be required in accordance with Article 411-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. A drilled pier will be considered defective in accordance with Subarticle 411-5(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and drilled pier acceptance is based in part on the criteria in Article 411-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except for the top of pier tolerances in Subarticle 411-6(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

If a drilled pier is under further investigation, do not grout core holes, backfill around the pier or perform any work on the drilled pier until the Engineer accepts the pier. If the drilled pier is accepted, dewater and grout core holes and backfill around the pier with approved material to finished grade. If the Engineer determines a pier is unacceptable, remediation is required in accordance with Article 411-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for remediation of unacceptable drilled piers or post repair testing.

Permanently embed a plate in or mark top of piers with the pier diameter and depth, size and number of vertical reinforcing bars and the minimum compressive strength of the concrete mix at 28 days.

(B) Footings, Pedestals, Grade Beams and Wings

Excavate as necessary for footings, grade beams and wings in accordance with the plans, accepted submittals and Section 410 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. If unstable, caving or sloughing materials are anticipated or encountered, shore foundation excavations

as needed with an approved method. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place concrete or reinforcing steel until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Construct cast-in-place reinforced concrete footings, pedestals, grade beams and wings with the dimensions shown in the plans and in accordance with Section 825 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Use forms to construct portions of pedestals and grade beams protruding above finished grade. Provide a chamfer with a 3/4" horizontal width for pedestal and grade beam edges exposed above finished grade. Place concrete against undisturbed soil or backfill and fill in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Proper compaction around footings and wings is critical for foundations to resist uplift and torsion forces.

(C) Anchor Rod Assemblies

Size anchor rods for design and the required projection above top of foundations. Determine required anchor rod projections from nut, washer and base plate thicknesses, the protrusion of 3 to 5 anchor rod threads above top nuts after tightening and the distance of one nut thickness between top of foundations and bottom of leveling nuts.

Protect anchor rod threads from damage during storage and installation of anchor rod assemblies. Before placing anchor rods in foundations, turn nuts onto and off rods past leveling nut locations. Turn nuts with the effort of one workman using an ordinary wrench without a cheater bar. Report any thread damage to the Engineer that requires extra effort to turn nuts.

Arrange anchor rods symmetrically about center of base plate locations as shown in the plans. Set anchor rod elevations based on required projections above top of foundations. Securely brace and hold rods in the correct position, orientation and alignment with a steel template. Do not weld to reinforcing steel, temporary casings or anchor rods.

Install top and leveling (bottom) nuts, washers and the base plate for each anchor rod assembly in accordance with the following procedure:

- (1) Turn leveling nuts onto anchor rods to a distance of one nut thickness between the top of foundation and bottom of leveling nuts. Place washers over anchor rods on top of leveling nuts.
- (2) Determine if nuts are level using a flat rigid template on top of washers. If necessary, lower leveling nuts to level the template in all directions or if applicable, lower nuts to tilt the template so the metal pole or upright truss will lean as shown in the plans. If leveling nuts and washers are not in full contact with the template, replace washers with galvanized beveled washers.
- (3) Verify the distance between the foundation and leveling nuts is no more than one nut thickness.
- (4) Place base plate with metal pole or upright truss over anchor rods on top of washers. High mount luminaires may be attached before erecting metal poles but do not attach cables, mast arms or trusses to metal poles or upright trusses at this time.

- (5) Place washers over anchor rods on top of base plate. Lubricate top nut bearing surfaces and exposed anchor rod threads above washers with beeswax, paraffin or other approved lubricant.
- (6) Turn top nuts onto anchor rods. If nuts are not in full contact with washers or washers are not in full contact with the base plate, replace washers with galvanized beveled washers.
- (7) Tighten top nuts to snug-tight with the full effort of one workman using a 12" wrench. Do not tighten any nut all at once. Turn top nuts in increments. Follow a star pattern cycling through each nut at least twice.
- (8) Repeat (7) for leveling nuts.
- (9) Replace washers above and below the base plate with galvanized beveled washers if the slope of any base plate face exceeds 1:20 (5%), any washer is not in firm contact with the base plate or any nut is not in firm contact with a washer. If any washers are replaced, repeat (7) and (8).
- (10) With top and leveling nuts snug-tight, mark each top nut on a corner at the intersection of 2 flats and a corresponding reference mark on the base plate. Mark top nuts and base plate with ink or paint that is not water-soluble. Use the turn-of-nut method for pretensioning. Do not pretension any nut all at once. Turn top nuts in increments for a total turn that meets the following nut rotation requirements:

NUT ROTATION REQUIREMENTS (Turn-of-Nut Pretensioning Method)	
Anchor Rod Diameter, inch	Requirement
$\leq 1 \frac{1}{2}$	1/3 turn (2 flats)
$> 1 \frac{1}{2}$	1/6 turn (1 flat)

Follow a star pattern cycling through each top nut at least twice.

- (11) Ensure nuts, washers and base plate are in firm contact with each other for each anchor rod. Cables, mast arms and trusses may now be attached to metal poles and upright trusses.
- (12) Between 4 and 14 days after pretensioning top nuts, use a torque wrench calibrated within the last 12 months to check nuts in the presence of the Engineer. Completely erect mast arm poles and cantilever signs and attach any hardware before checking top nuts for these structures. Check that top nuts meet the following torque requirements:

TORQUE REQUIREMENTS	
Anchor Rod Diameter, inch	Requirement, ft-lb
7/8	180
1	270
1 1/8	380
1 1/4	420
$\geq 1 \frac{1}{2}$	600

If necessary, retighten top nuts in the presence of the Engineer with a calibrated torque wrench to within ± 10 ft-lb of the required torque. Do not overtighten top nuts.

- (13) Do not grout under base plate.

Measurement and Payment

Foundations and anchor rod assemblies for metal poles and upright trusses will be measured and paid for elsewhere in the contract.

No payment will be made for temporary casings that remain in drilled pier excavations. No payment will be made for PIT. No payment will be made for further investigation of defective piers. Further investigation of piers that are not defective will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No payment will be made for remediation of unacceptable drilled piers or post repair testing.

OVERHEAD AND DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN FOUNDATIONS:

(1-16-18)

SP9 R07

Description

Sign foundations include foundations for overhead and dynamic message signs (DMS) supported by metal poles or upright trusses. Sign foundations consist of footings with pedestals or drilled piers with or without grade beams or wings, conduit and anchor rod assemblies. Construct sign foundations in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Define “cantilever sign” as an overhead cantilever sign support in accordance with Figure 1-1 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Materials

Use sign foundation materials that meet the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

Subsurface Conditions

Assume the following soil parameters and groundwater elevation for sign foundations unless these subsurface conditions are not applicable to sign locations:

- (A) Unit weight (γ) = 120 pcf,
- (B) Friction angle (ϕ) = 30°,
- (C) Cohesion (c) = 0 psf and
- (D) Groundwater 7 feet below finished grade.

A subsurface investigation is required if the Engineer determines these assumed subsurface conditions do not apply to a sign location and the sign cannot be moved. Subsurface conditions requiring a subsurface investigation include but are not limited to weathered or hard rock, boulders, very soft or loose soil, muck or shallow groundwater. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for subsurface investigations.

Subsurface Investigations

Use a prequalified geotechnical consultant to perform one standard penetration test (SPT) boring in accordance with ASTM D1586 at each sign location requiring a subsurface investigation. Rough grade sign locations to within 2 feet of finished grade before beginning drilling. Drill

borings to 2 drilled pier diameters below anticipated pier tip elevations or refusal, whichever is higher.

Use the computer software gINT version V8i or later manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs. Provide boring logs sealed by a geologist or engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Sign Foundation Designs

Design sign foundations for the wind zone and clearances shown in the plans and the slope of finished grade at each sign location. Use the assumed soil parameters and groundwater elevation above for sign foundation designs unless a subsurface investigation is required. For sign locations requiring a subsurface investigation, design sign foundations for the subsurface conditions at each sign location. Design footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings in accordance with the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*. In some instances, conflicts with drainage structures may dictate sign foundation types.

Design footings in accordance with Section 4.4 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Do not use an allowable bearing pressure of more than 3,000 psf for footings. Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* except reduce ultimate side resistance by 25% for uplift. Use the computer software LPILE version 2016 or later manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers. Provide drilled pier designs with a horizontal deflection of less than 1" at top of piers. For cantilever signs with single drilled pier foundations supporting metal poles, use wings to resist torsion forces. Provide drilled pier designs with a factor of safety of at least 2.0 for torsion.

For drilled pier sign foundations supporting upright trusses, use dual drilled piers connected with a grade beam having a moment of inertia approximately equal to that of either pier. The Broms' method is acceptable to analyze drilled piers with grade beams instead of LPILE. Use a safety factor of at least 3.5 for the Broms' design method in accordance with C13.6.1.1 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Submit boring logs, if any, working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, required foundation dimensions and elevations and typical sections with reinforcement, conduit and anchor rod assembly details. Include all boring logs, design calculations and LPILE output for sign foundation design submittals. Have sign foundations designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Construct footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings and install anchor rod assemblies for sign foundations in accordance with the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

Measurement and Payment

Overhead Footings will be measured and paid in cubic yards. Sign foundations will be measured as the cubic yards of foundation concrete for footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings shown in the accepted submittals. The contract unit price for *Overhead Footings* will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and foundation materials, stabilizing or shoring excavations, supplying and placing concrete, reinforcing steel, conduit, anchor rod assemblies and any incidentals necessary to construct sign foundations. Subsurface investigations required by the Engineer will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Overhead Footings	Cubic Yard

THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIAL – COLOR TESTING:

3-19-19

1087

SP10 R05

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Pages 10-183 and 10-184, Subarticle 1087-7(D)(1)(b) Yellow, lines 9-11, delete and replace with the following:

Obtain Color Values Y,x,y per ASTM E1349 using C/2° illuminant/observer.
Results shall be $Y \geq 45\%$, and x,y shall fall within PR#1 chart chromaticity limits.

POLYUREA PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIAL – TYPE 2 TYPICAL CERTIFIED MILL TEST REPORT:

3-19-19

1087

SP10 R06

Amend the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 10-184, Subarticle 1087-8 Material Certification, in accordance with Subarticle 106-3 provide a Type 2 Typical Certified Mill Test Report and a Type 3 Manufacturer's Certification for Polyurea pavement marking material.

When tested, the material shall meet the physical and chemical characteristics provided by the manufacturer. NCDOT reserves the right to compare these test results to baseline test results gathered by the NCDOT Materials and Test Unit.

TEMPORARY SHORING:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 1-16-18)

SP11 R02

Description

Temporary shoring includes cantilever, braced and anchored shoring and temporary mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) walls. Temporary shoring does not include trench boxes. At the Contractor's option, use any type of temporary shoring unless noted otherwise in the plans or as directed. Design and construct temporary shoring based on actual elevations and shoring

dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Construct temporary shoring at locations shown in the plans and as directed. Temporary shoring is required to maintain traffic when a 2:1 (H:V) slope from the top of an embankment or bottom of an excavation will intersect the existing ground line less than 5 feet from the edge of pavement of an open travelway. This provision does not apply to pipe, inlet or utility installation unless noted otherwise in the plans.

Positive protection includes concrete barrier and temporary guardrail. Provide positive protection for temporary shoring at locations shown in the plans and as directed. Positive protection is required if temporary shoring is located in the clear zone in accordance with the *AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*.

(A) Cantilever and Braced Shoring

Cantilever shoring consists of steel sheet piles or H-piles with timber lagging. Braced shoring consists of sheet piles or H-piles with timber lagging and bracing such as beams, plates, walers, struts, rakers, etc. Define “piles” as sheet piles or H-piles.

(B) Anchored Shoring

Anchored shoring consists of sheet piles with walers or H-piles with timber lagging anchored with ground or helical anchors. Driven anchors may be accepted at the discretion of the Engineer. A ground anchor consists of a grouted steel bar or multi-strand tendon with an anchorage. A helical anchor consists of a lead section with a central steel shaft and at least one helix steel plate followed by extensions with only central shafts (no helixes) and an anchorage. Anchorages consist of steel bearing plates with washers and hex nuts for bars or steel wedge plates and wedges for strands. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Contractor to install ground anchors. Define “anchors” as ground, helical or driven anchors.

(C) Temporary MSE Walls

Temporary MSE walls include temporary geosynthetic and wire walls. Define “temporary wall” as a temporary MSE wall and “Temporary Wall Vendor” as the vendor supplying the temporary MSE wall. Define “reinforcement” as geotextile, geogrid, welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement.

Temporary geosynthetic walls consist of geotextile or geogrid reinforcement wrapped behind welded wire facing. Define “temporary geotextile wall” as a temporary geosynthetic wall with geotextile reinforcement and “temporary geogrid wall” as a temporary geosynthetic wall with geogrid reinforcement.

Temporary wire walls consist of welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement connected to welded wire facing. Define “Wire Wall Vendor” as the vendor supplying the temporary wire wall.

(D) Embedment

Define “embedment” for cantilever, braced and anchored shoring as the pile depth below the grade in front of shoring. Define “embedment” for temporary walls as the wall height below the grade in front of walls.

(E) Positive Protection

Define “unanchored or anchored portable concrete barrier” as portable concrete barrier (PCB) that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1170.01. Define “concrete barrier” as unanchored or anchored PCB or an approved equal. Define “temporary guardrail” as temporary steel beam guardrail that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 862.02.

Materials

Refer to the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Concrete Barrier Materials	1170-2
Flowable Fill, Excavatable	1000-6
Geosynthetics	1056
Neat Cement Grout	1003
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Select Materials	1016
Steel Beam Guardrail Materials	862-2
Steel Plates	1072-2
Steel Sheet Piles and H-Piles	1084
Untreated Timber	1082-2
Welded Wire Reinforcement	1070-3

Provide Type 6 material certifications for shoring materials in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Use Class IV select material for temporary guardrail. Use neat cement grout for Type 2 grout for ground anchors. Use Class A concrete that meets Article 450-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* or Type 1 grout for drilled-in piles. Provide untreated timber with a thickness of at least 3 inches and a bending stress of at least 1,000 pounds per square inch for timber lagging. Provide steel bracing that meets ASTM A36.

(A) Shoring Backfill

Use Class II, Type 1, Class III, Class V or Class VI select material or material that meets AASHTO M 145 for soil classification A-2-4 with a maximum PI of 6 for shoring backfill except do not use A-2-4 soil for backfill around culverts.

(B) Anchors

Store anchor materials on blocking a minimum of 12 inches above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt,

dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store anchor materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

(1) Ground Anchors

Use high-strength deformed steel bars that meet AASHTO M 275 or seven-wire strands that meet ASTM A886 or Article 1070-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Splice bars in accordance with Article 1070-9 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Do not splice strands. Use bondbreakers, spacers and centralizers that meet Article 6.3.5 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*.

(2) Helical Anchors

Use helical anchors with an ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. (ICC-ES) report. Provide couplers, thread bar adapters and bolts recommended by the Anchor Manufacturer to connect helical anchors together and to piles.

(3) Anchorages

Provide steel plates for bearing plates and steel washers, hex nuts, wedge plates and wedges recommended by the Anchor Manufacturer.

(C) Temporary Walls

(1) Welded Wire Facing

Use welded wire reinforcement for welded wire facing, struts and wires. For temporary wire walls, provide welded wire facing supplied by the Wire Wall Vendor or a manufacturer approved or licensed by the vendor. For temporary wire walls with separate reinforcement and facing components, provide connectors (e.g., bars, clamps, plates, etc.) and fasteners (e.g., bolts, nuts, washers, etc.) required by the Wire Wall Vendor.

(2) Geotextiles

Provide Type 2 geotextile for separation and retention geotextiles. Provide Type 5 geotextile for geotextile reinforcement with ultimate tensile strengths in accordance with the accepted submittals.

(3) Geogrid Reinforcement

Use geogrids with a roll width of at least 4 feet and an “approved” or “approved for provisional use” status code. The list of approved geogrids is available from: connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Materials/Pages/Materials-Manual-by-Material.aspx

Provide geogrids for geogrid reinforcement with design strengths in accordance with the accepted submittals. Geogrids are typically approved for ultimate tensile strengths in the machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD) or short-term design strengths for a 3-year design life in the MD based on material type. Define material type from the website above for shoring backfill as follows:

Material Type	Shoring Backfill
Borrow	A-2-4 Soil
Fine Aggregate	Class II, Type 1 or Class III Select Material
Coarse Aggregate	Class V or VI Select Material

(4) **Welded Wire Grid and Metallic Strip Reinforcement**

Provide welded wire grid and metallic strip reinforcement supplied by the Wire Wall Vendor or a manufacturer approved or licensed by the vendor. Use welded wire grid reinforcement (“mesh”, “mats” and “ladders”) that meet Article 1070-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and metallic strip reinforcement (“straps”) that meet ASTM A572 or A1011.

Preconstruction Requirements

(A) **Concrete Barrier**

Define “clear distance” behind concrete barrier as the horizontal distance between the barrier and edge of pavement. The minimum required clear distance for concrete barrier is shown in the plans. At the Contractor’s option or if the minimum required clear distance is not available, set concrete barrier next to and up against traffic side of temporary shoring except for barrier above temporary walls. Concrete barrier with the minimum required clear distance is required above temporary walls.

(B) **Temporary Guardrail**

Define “clear distance” behind temporary guardrail as the horizontal distance between guardrail posts and temporary shoring. At the Contractor’s option or if clear distance for cantilever, braced and anchored shoring is less than 4 feet, attach guardrail to traffic side of shoring as shown in the plans. Place ABC in clear distance and around guardrail posts instead of pavement. Do not use temporary guardrail above temporary walls.

(C) **Temporary Shoring Designs**

Before beginning temporary shoring design, survey existing ground elevations in the vicinity of shoring locations to determine actual design heights (H). Submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations for temporary shoring designs in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, shoring profiles, typical sections and details of temporary shoring design and construction sequence. Do not begin shoring construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Have cantilever and braced shoring designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Design Consultant to design anchored shoring. Provide anchored shoring designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for an Anchored Wall Design Consultant. Include details in anchored shoring working drawings of anchor locations and lock-off loads, unit grout/ground bond strengths for ground anchors or minimum installation torque and torsional strength rating for helical anchors and if necessary, obstructions extending through shoring or interfering with anchors. Include details in the anchored shoring construction sequence of pile and anchor installation, excavation and anchor testing.

Provide temporary wall designs sealed by a Design Engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina and employed or contracted by the Temporary Wall Vendor. Include details in temporary wall working drawings of geotextile and reinforcement types, locations and directions and obstructions extending through walls or interfering with reinforcement.

(1) Soil Parameters

Design temporary shoring for the assumed soil parameters and groundwater elevations shown in the plans. Assume the following soil parameters for shoring backfill:

(a) Unit weight (γ) = 120 pcf;

Friction Angle (ϕ)	Shoring Backfill
30°	A-2-4 Soil
34°	Class II, Type 1 or Class III Select Material
38°	Class V or VI Select Material

(c) Cohesion (c) = 0 psf.

(2) Traffic Surcharge

Design temporary shoring for a traffic surcharge of 250 pounds per square foot if traffic will be above and within H of shoring. This traffic surcharge does not apply to construction traffic. Design temporary shoring for any construction surcharge if construction traffic will be above and within H of shoring. For LRFD shoring designs, apply traffic (live load) surcharge in accordance with Figure C11.5.5-3 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*.

(3) Cantilever, Braced and Anchored Shoring Designs

Use shoring backfill for fill sections and voids between cantilever, braced and anchored shoring and the critical failure surface. Use concrete or grout for embedded portions of drilled-in H-piles. Do not use drilled-in sheet piles.

Define “top of shoring” for cantilever, braced and anchored shoring as where the grade intersects the back of sheet piles or H-piles and timber lagging. Design cantilever, braced and anchored shoring for a traffic impact load of 2,000 pounds per foot applied 18 inches above top of shoring if concrete barrier is above and next

to shoring or temporary guardrail is above and attached to shoring. For anchored shoring designs, apply traffic impact load as horizontal load (P_{HI}) in accordance with Figure 3.11.6.3-2(a) of the AASHTO LRFD specifications.

Extend cantilever, braced and anchored shoring at least 32 inches above top of shoring if shoring is designed for traffic impact. Otherwise, extend shoring at least 6 inches above top of shoring.

Design cantilever, braced and anchored shoring for a maximum deflection of 3 inches if the horizontal distance to the closest edge of pavement or structure is less than H. Otherwise, design shoring for a maximum deflection of 6 inches. Design cantilever and braced shoring in accordance with the plans and *AASHTO Guide Design Specifications for Bridge Temporary Works*.

Design anchored shoring in accordance with the plans and Article 11.9 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Use a resistance factor of 0.80 for tensile resistance of anchors with bars, strands or shafts. Extend the unbonded length for ground anchors and the shallowest helix for helical anchors at least 5 feet behind the critical failure surface. Do not extend anchors beyond right-of-way or easement limits. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail posts, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with anchors, maintain a clearance of at least 6 inches between obstructions and anchors.

(4) Temporary Wall Designs

Use shoring backfill in the reinforced zone of temporary walls. Separation geotextiles are required between shoring backfill and backfill, natural ground or culverts along the sides of the reinforced zone perpendicular to the wall face. For Class V or VI select material in the reinforced zone, separation geotextiles are also required between shoring backfill and backfill or natural ground on top of and at the back of the reinforced zone.

Design temporary walls in accordance with the plans and Article 11.10 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Embed temporary walls at least 18 inches except for walls on structures or rock as determined by the Engineer. Use a uniform reinforcement length throughout the wall height of at least 0.7H or 6 feet, whichever is longer. Extend the reinforced zone at least 6 inches beyond end of reinforcement. Do not locate the reinforced zone outside right-of-way or easement limits.

Use the simplified method for determining maximum reinforcement loads in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications. For geotextile reinforcement, use geotextile properties approved by the Department or default values in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications. For geogrid reinforcement, use approved geogrid properties available from the website shown elsewhere in this provision. If the website does not list a short-term design strength for an approved geogrid, use a short-term design strength equal to the ultimate tensile strength divided by 3.5 for the geogrid reinforcement. Use geosynthetic properties for the

direction reinforcement will be installed, a 3-year design life and shoring backfill to be used in the reinforced zone.

Do not use more than 4 different reinforcement strengths for each temporary geosynthetic wall. Design temporary geotextile walls for a reinforcement coverage ratio (R_c) of 1.0. For temporary geogrid walls with an R_c of less than 1.0, use a maximum horizontal clearance between geogrids of 3 feet and stagger reinforcement so geogrids are centered over gaps in the reinforcement layer below.

For temporary geosynthetic walls, use “L” shaped welded wire facing with 18 to 24 inch long legs. Locate geotextile or geogrid reinforcement so reinforcement layers are at the same level as the horizontal legs of welded wire facing. Use vertical reinforcement spacing equal to facing height. Wrap geotextile or geogrid reinforcement behind welded wire facing and extend reinforcement at least 3 feet back behind facing into shoring backfill.

For temporary wire walls with separate reinforcement and facing components, attach welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement to welded wire facing with a connection approved by the Department. For temporary geogrid and wire walls, retain shoring backfill at welded wire facing with retention geotextiles and extend geotextiles at least 3 feet back behind facing into backfill.

(D) Preconstruction Meeting

The Engineer may require a shoring preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction, inspection and testing of the temporary shoring. If required and if this meeting occurs before all shoring submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of temporary shoring without accepted submittals. The Resident, District or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and Shoring Contractor Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

Construction Methods

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of shoring. Direct run off away from shoring and shoring backfill. Contain and maintain backfill and protect material from erosion.

Install positive protection in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use PCB in accordance with Section 1170 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1170.01. Use temporary guardrail in accordance with Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 862.01, 862.02 and 862.03.

(A) Tolerances

Construct shoring with the following tolerances:

- (1) Horizontal wires of welded wire facing are level in all directions,
- (2) Shoring location is within 6 inches of horizontal and vertical alignment shown in the accepted submittals, and
- (3) Shoring plumbness (batter) is not negative and within 2 degrees of vertical.

(B) Cantilever, Braced and Anchored Shoring Installation

If overexcavation behind cantilever, braced or anchored shoring is shown in the accepted submittals, excavate before installing piles. Otherwise, install piles before excavating for shoring. Install cantilever, braced or anchored shoring in accordance with the construction sequence shown in the accepted submittals. Remove piles and if applicable, timber lagging when shoring is no longer needed.

(1) Pile Installation

Install piles with the minimum required embedment and extension in accordance with Subarticles 450-3(D) and 450-3(E) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except that a pile driving equipment data form is not required. Piles may be installed with a vibratory hammer as approved by the Engineer.

Do not splice sheet piles. Use pile excavation to install drilled-in H-piles. After filling holes with concrete or grout to the elevations shown in the accepted submittals, remove any fluids and fill remaining portions of holes with flowable fill. Cure concrete or grout at least 7 days before excavating.

Notify the Engineer if refusal is reached before pile excavation or driven piles attain the minimum required embedment. When this occurs, a revised design submittal may be required.

(2) Excavation

Excavate in front of piles from the top down in accordance with the accepted submittals. For H-piles with timber lagging and braced and anchored shoring, excavate in staged horizontal lifts with a maximum height of 5 feet. Remove flowable fill and material in between H-piles as needed to install timber lagging. Position lagging with at least 3 inches of contact in the horizontal direction between the lagging and pile flanges. Do not excavate the next lift until timber lagging for the current lift is installed and if applicable, bracing and anchors for the current lift are accepted. Backfill behind cantilever, braced or anchored shoring with shoring backfill.

(3) Anchor Installation

If applicable, install foundations located behind anchored shoring before installing anchors. Fabricate and install ground anchors in accordance with the accepted submittals, Articles 6.4 and 6.5 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications* and the following unless otherwise approved:

- (a) Materials in accordance with this provision are required instead of materials conforming to Articles 6.4 and 6.5.3 of the AASHTO LRFD Specifications,
- (b) Encapsulation-protected ground anchors in accordance with Article 6.4.1.2 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications are not required, and
- (c) Corrosion protection for unbonded lengths of ground anchors and anchorage covers are not required.
- (d) Measure grout temperature, density and flow during grouting with at least the same frequency grout cubes are made for compressive strength. Perform density and flow field tests in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with American National Standards Institute/American Petroleum Institute Recommended Practice 13B-1 (Section 4, Mud Balance) and ASTM C939 (Flow Cone), respectively.

Install helical anchors in accordance with the accepted submittals and Anchor Manufacturer's instructions. Measure torque during installation and do not exceed the torsional strength rating of the helical anchor. Attain the minimum required installation torque and penetration before terminating anchor installation. When replacing a helical anchor, embed last helix of the replacement anchor at least 3 helix plate diameters past the location of the first helix of the previous anchor.

(4) Anchor Testing

Proof test and lock-off anchors in accordance with the accepted submittals and Article 6.5.5 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications* except for the acceptance criteria in Article 6.5.5.5. For the AASHTO LRFD specifications, "ground anchor" refers to a ground or helical anchor and "tendon" refers to a bar, strand or shaft.

(a) Anchor Acceptance

Anchor acceptance is based in part on the following criteria.

- (i) For ground and helical anchors, total movement is less than 0.04 inches between the 1 and 10 minute readings or less than 0.08 inches between the 6 and 60 minute readings.
- (ii) For ground anchors, total movement at maximum test load exceeds 80% of the theoretical elastic elongation of the unbonded length.

(b) Anchor Test Results

Submit PDF files of anchor test records including movement versus load plots for each load increment within 24 hours of completing each row of anchors. The Engineer will review the test records to determine if the anchors are acceptable.

If the Engineer determines an anchor is unacceptable, revise the anchor design or installation methods. Submit a revised anchored shoring design for acceptance and provide an acceptable anchor with the revised design or installation methods. If required, replace the anchor or provide additional anchors with the revised design or installation methods.

(C) Temporary Wall Installation

Excavate as necessary for temporary walls in accordance with the plans and accepted submittals. If applicable, install foundations located in the reinforced zone before placing shoring backfill or reinforcement unless otherwise approved. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place shoring backfill or reinforcement until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Erect welded wire facing so the wall position is as shown in the plans and accepted submittals. Set welded wire facing adjacent to each other in the horizontal and vertical direction to completely cover the wall face with facing. Stagger welded wire facing to create a running bond by centering facing over joints in the row below.

Wrap geotextile reinforcement and retention geotextiles behind welded wire facing as shown in the plans and accepted submittals and cover geotextiles with at least 3" of shoring backfill. Overlap adjacent geotextile reinforcement and retention and separation geotextiles at least 18 inches with seams oriented perpendicular to the wall face. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed.

Place reinforcement within 3 inches of locations shown in the plans and accepted submittals. Before placing shoring backfill, pull reinforcement taut so it is in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Install reinforcement with the direction shown in the plans and accepted submittals. For temporary wire walls with separate reinforcement and facing components, attach welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement to welded wire facing as shown in the accepted submittals. Do not splice or overlap reinforcement so seams are parallel to the wall face. Contact the Engineer when unanticipated existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with reinforcement.

Place shoring backfill in the reinforced zone in 8 to 10 inch thick lifts. Compact A-2-4 soil and Class II, Type 1 and Class III select material in accordance with Subarticle 235-3(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Use only hand operated compaction equipment to compact backfill within 3 feet of welded wire facing. At a distance greater than 3 feet, compact shoring backfill with at least 4 passes of an 8 to 10 ton vibratory roller in a direction parallel to the wall face. Smooth wheeled or rubber tired rollers are also

acceptable for compacting backfill. Do not use sheepsfoot, grid rollers or other types of compaction equipment with feet. Do not displace or damage reinforcement when placing and compacting shoring backfill. End dumping directly on geotextile or geogrid reinforcement is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on reinforcement until it is covered with at least 8 inches of shoring backfill. Replace any damaged reinforcement to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Backfill for temporary walls outside the reinforced zone in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Bench temporary walls into the sides of excavations where applicable. For temporary geosynthetic walls with top of wall within 5 feet of finished grade, remove top facing and incorporate top reinforcement layer into fill when placing fill in front of wall. Temporary walls remain in place permanently unless otherwise required.

Measurement and Payment

Temporary Shoring will be measured and paid in square feet. Temporary walls will be measured as the square feet of exposed wall face area. Cantilever, braced or anchored shoring will be measured as the square feet of exposed shoring face area with the shoring height equal to the difference between the top and bottom of shoring elevations. Define “top of shoring” as where the grade intersects the back of sheet piles or H-piles and timber lagging. Define “bottom of shoring” as where the grade intersects front of sheet piles or H-piles and timber lagging. No measurement will be made for any embedment, shoring extension above top of shoring or pavement thickness above temporary walls.

The contract unit price for *Temporary Shoring* will be full compensation for providing shoring designs, submittals and materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials and supplying all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to construct temporary shoring.

No payment will be made for temporary shoring not shown in the plans or required by the Engineer including shoring for OSHA reasons or the Contractor’s convenience. No value engineering proposals will be accepted based solely on revising or eliminating shoring locations shown in the plans or estimated quantities shown in the bid item sheets as a result of actual field measurements or site conditions.

PCB will be measured and paid in accordance with Section 1170 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No additional payment will be made for anchoring PCB for temporary shoring. Costs for anchoring PCB will be incidental to temporary shoring.

Temporary guardrail will be measured and paid for in accordance with Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Temporary Shoring

Pay Unit
Square Foot

EXTRUDED THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING THICKNESS:

3-19-19

1205

SP12 R05

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 12-6, Subarticle 1205-4(A)(1) General, lines 5-8, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Use application equipment that provides multiple width settings ranging from 4 inches to 12 inches and multiple thickness settings to achieve a minimum pavement marking thickness of 0.090 inch above the surface of the pavement.

Page 12-7, Table 1205-3, THICKNESS REQUIREMENTS FOR THERMOPLASTIC, replace with the following:

TABLE 1205-3 MINIMUM THICKNESS REQUIREMENTS FOR THERMOPLASTIC	
Thickness	Location
240 mils	In-lane and shoulder-transverse pavement markings (rumble strips). May be placed in 2 passes.
90 mils	Center lines, skip lines, transverse bands, mini-skip lines, characters, bike lane symbols, crosswalk lines, edge lines, gore lines, diagonals, and arrow symbols

ROADWAY LIGHTING FOUNDATIONS:

(1-16-18)

SP14 R04

Description

Roadway lighting foundations include foundations for high mount and light standards. High mount foundations for high mount standards and standard foundations for light standards consist of drilled piers or footings with pedestals, conduit and anchor rod assemblies. Construct roadway lighting foundations in accordance with the contract, *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings* and accepted submittals. Define “high mount foundation” as a drilled pier including the conduit and anchor rod assembly that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1402.01. Define “standard foundation” as a drilled pier or footing with pedestal including the conduit and anchor rod assembly that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1405.01.

Materials

Use roadway lighting foundation materials that meet the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision. Provide metal shrouds for median mounted light standards in accordance with Subarticle 1400-4(I) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Roadway Lighting Foundations**(A) High Mount Foundations**

Construct high mount foundations for the wind zone and high mount heights shown in the plans unless the following assumed site conditions are not applicable to high mount

locations:

- (E) Soil with unit weight (γ) \geq 120 pcf and friction angle (ϕ) \geq 30°,
- (F) Groundwater at least 7 feet below finished grade and
- (G) Slope of finished grade 6:1 (H:V) or flatter.

A subsurface investigation and high mount foundation design are required if the Engineer determines these assumed site conditions do not apply to a high mount location and the high mount cannot be moved. Subsurface conditions requiring a high mount foundation design include but are not limited to weathered or hard rock, boulders, very soft or loose soil, muck or shallow groundwater. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for subsurface investigations or high mount foundation designs.

(B) **Standard Foundations**

Construct standard foundation types for the light standard types shown in the plans and the site conditions at each light standard location. When weathered or hard rock, boulders or obstructions conflict with standard foundations, submit an alternate standard foundation design for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for alternate standard foundations.

Subsurface Investigations

Use a prequalified geotechnical consultant to perform one standard penetration test (SPT) boring in accordance with ASTM D1586 at each high mount location requiring a subsurface investigation. Rough grade high mount locations to within 2 ft of finished grade before beginning drilling. Drill borings to 2 drilled pier diameters below anticipated pier tip elevations or refusal, whichever is higher.

Use the computer software gINT version V8i or later manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs. Provide boring logs sealed by a geologist or engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

High Mount Foundation Designs

Design high mount foundations for the wind zone and high mount heights shown in the plans and the slope of finished grade and subsurface conditions at each high mount location. Design drilled piers, footings and pedestals in accordance with the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Use the computer software LPILE version 2016 or later manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers. Provide drilled pier designs with a horizontal deflection of less than 0.5" at top of piers.

Design footings in accordance with Section 4.4 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Do not use an allowable bearing pressure of more than 3,000 psf for footings.

Submit boring logs, working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, required foundation dimensions and elevations and typical sections with reinforcement, conduit and anchor rod assembly details. Include all boring logs, design calculations and LPILE output for high mount foundation design submittals. Have high mount foundations designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Grade around roadway lighting locations with cut and fill slopes as shown on 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1402.01 or 1405.01. Construct drilled piers, footings and pedestals and install anchor rod assemblies for roadway lighting foundations in accordance with the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

For median mounted light standards, place concrete for median barriers and underlying pedestals in the same pour. Construct concrete barriers in accordance with the contract and make concrete median barriers continuous through standard foundations. Coordinate construction of median mounted light standards with sign structures, concrete barriers, drainage structures, etc. to avoid conflicts.

Measurement and Payment

High Mount Foundations will be measured and paid in cubic yards. High mount foundations will be measured as the cubic yards of concrete shown on 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1402.01 for the high mount height and wind zone shown in the plans. All other high mount foundations will be measured as the cubic yards of foundation concrete for drilled piers, footings and pedestals shown in the accepted submittals. Subsurface investigations and high mount foundation designs required by the Engineer will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Standard Foundation ____ will be measured and paid in units of each. Standard foundations will be measured as the number of each standard foundation type. Alternate standard foundations will be measured as 1.5 times the number of each standard foundation type replaced.

The contract unit prices for *High Mount Foundations* and *Standard Foundation* ____ will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and foundation materials, stabilizing or shoring excavations, supplying and placing concrete, reinforcing steel, conduit, anchor rod assemblies and any incidentals necessary to construct roadway lighting foundations.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

High Mount Foundations
Standard Foundation ____

Pay Unit

Cubic Yard
Each

PERMANENT SEEDING AND MULCHING:

(7-1-95)

1660

SP16 R02

The Department desires that permanent seeding and mulching be established on this project as soon as practical after slopes or portions of slopes have been graded. As an incentive to obtain an early stand of vegetation on this project, the Contractor's attention is called to the following:

For all permanent seeding and mulching that is satisfactorily completed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1660 in the *2018 Standard Specifications* and within the following percentages of elapsed contract times, an additional payment will be made to the Contractor as an incentive additive. The incentive additive will be determined by multiplying the number of acres of seeding and mulching satisfactorily completed times the contract unit bid price per acre for Seeding and Mulching times the appropriate percentage additive.

Percentage of Elapsed Contract Time	Percentage Additive
0% - 30%	30%
30.01% - 50%	15%

Percentage of elapsed contract time is defined as the number of calendar days from the date of availability of the contract to the date the permanent seeding and mulching is acceptably completed divided by the total original contract time.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION
AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS

(5-20-08)

Z-2

General Statute 143C-6-11. (h) Highway Appropriation is hereby incorporated verbatim in this contract as follows:

(h) Amounts Encumbered. – Transportation project appropriations may be encumbered in the amount of allotments made to the Department of Transportation by the Director for the estimated payments for transportation project contract work to be performed in the appropriation fiscal year. The allotments shall be multiyear allotments and shall be based on estimated revenues and shall be subject to the maximum contract authority contained in *General Statute 143C-6-11(c)*. Payment for transportation project work performed pursuant to contract in any fiscal year other than the current fiscal year is subject to appropriations by the General Assembly. Transportation project contracts shall contain a schedule of estimated completion progress, and any acceleration of this progress shall be subject to the approval of the Department of Transportation provided funds are available. The State reserves the right to terminate or suspend any transportation project contract, and any transportation project contract shall be so terminated or suspended if funds will not be available for payment of the work to be performed during that fiscal year pursuant to the contract. In the event of termination of any contract, the contractor shall be given a written notice of termination at least 60 days before completion of scheduled work for which funds are available. In the event of termination, the contractor shall be paid for the work already performed in accordance with the contract specifications.

Payment will be made on any contract terminated pursuant to the special provision in accordance with Subarticle 108-13(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION
NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY

(5-17-11)

Z-3

Seed shall be sampled and tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory. When said samples are collected, the vendor shall supply an independent laboratory report for each lot to be tested. Results from seed so sampled shall be final. Seed not meeting the specifications shall be rejected by the Department of Transportation and shall not be delivered to North Carolina Department of Transportation warehouses. If seed has been delivered it shall be available for pickup and replacement at the supplier's expense.

Any re-labeling required by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory, that would cause the label to reflect as otherwise specified herein shall be rejected by the North Carolina Department of Transportation.

Seed shall be free from seeds of the noxious weeds Johnsongrass, Balloonvine, Jimsonweed, Witchweed, Itchgrass, Serrated Tussock, Showy Crotalaria, Smooth Crotalaria, Sicklepod, Sandbur, Wild Onion, and Wild Garlic. Seed shall not be labeled with the above weed species on the seed analysis label. Tolerances as applied by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will NOT be allowed for the above noxious weeds except for Wild Onion and Wild Garlic.

Tolerances established by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will generally be recognized. However, for the purpose of figuring pure live seed, the found pure seed and found germination percentages as reported by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory will be used. Allowances, as established by the NCDOT, will be recognized for minimum pure live seed as listed on the following pages.

The specifications for restricted noxious weed seed refers to the number per pound as follows:

<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. Of Seed</u>	<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. of Seed</u>
Blessed Thistle	4 seeds	Cornflower (Ragged Robin)	27 seeds
Cocklebur	4 seeds	Texas Panicum	27 seeds
Spurred Anoda	4 seeds	Bracted Plantain	54 seeds
Velvetleaf	4 seeds	Buckhorn Plantain	54 seeds
Morning-glory	8 seeds	Broadleaf Dock	54 seeds
Corn Cockle	10 seeds	Curly Dock	54 seeds
Wild Radish	12 seeds	Dodder	54 seeds
Purple Nutsedge	27 seeds	Giant Foxtail	54 seeds
Yellow Nutsedge	27 seeds	Horsenettle	54 seeds
Canada Thistle	27 seeds	Quackgrass	54 seeds
Field Bindweed	27 seeds	Wild Mustard	54 seeds
Hedge Bindweed	27 seeds		

Seed of Pensacola Bahiagrass shall not contain more than 7% inert matter, Kentucky Bluegrass, Centipede and Fine or Hard Fescue shall not contain more than 5% inert matter whereas a maximum of 2% inert matter will be allowed on all other kinds of seed. In addition, all seed shall

not contain more than 2% other crop seed nor more than 1% total weed seed. The germination rate as tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture shall not fall below 70%, which includes both dormant and hard seed. Seed shall be labeled with not more than 7%, 5% or 2% inert matter (according to above specifications), 2% other crop seed and 1% total weed seed.

Exceptions may be made for minimum pure live seed allowances when cases of seed variety shortages are verified. Pure live seed percentages will be applied in a verified shortage situation. Those purchase orders of deficient seed lots will be credited with the percentage that the seed is deficient.

FURTHER SPECIFICATIONS FOR EACH SEED GROUP ARE GIVEN BELOW:

Minimum 85% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 83% pure live seed will not be approved.

Sericea Lespedeza
Oats (seeds)

Minimum 80% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 78% pure live seed will not be approved.

Tall Fescue (all approved varieties)	Bermudagrass
Kobe Lespedeza	Browntop Millet
Korean Lespedeza	German Millet – Strain R
Weeping Lovegrass	Clover – Red/White/Crimson
Carpetgrass	

Minimum 78% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 76% pure live seed will not be approved.

Common or Sweet Sundangrass

Minimum 76% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 74% pure live seed will not be approved.

Rye (grain; all varieties)
Kentucky Bluegrass (all approved varieties)
Hard Fescue (all approved varieties)
Shrub (bicolor) Lespedeza

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 70% pure live seed will not be approved.

Centipedegrass	Japanese Millet
Crownvetch	Reed Canary Grass
Pensacola Bahiagrass	Zoysia
Creeping Red Fescue	

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 5% inert matter; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound.

Barnyard Grass
Big Bluestem
Little Bluestem
Bristly Locust
Birdsfoot Trefoil
Indiangrass
Orchardgrass
Switchgrass
Yellow Blossom Sweet Clover

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**ERRATA**

(10-16-18) (Rev.1-15-19)

Z-4

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Division 6

Page 6-7, Article 609-1 DESCRIPTION, line 29, replace article number “609-10” with “609-9”.

Division 7

Page 7-27, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 4, replace article number “725-1” with “724-4”.

Page 7-28, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 10, replace article number “725-1” with “725-3”.

Division 10

Page 10-78, Article 1056-4 GEOTEXTILES, TABLE 1056-1, Permittivity, Type 2, replace “Table 6^D” with “Table 7^D” and **Permittivity, Type 3^B**, replace “Table 7^D” with “Table 8^D”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-50 PAINT FOR VERTICAL MARKERS, line 1, replace article number “1080-50” with “1080-10”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-61 EPOXY RESIN FOR REINFORCING STEEL, line 5, replace article number “1080-61” with “1080-11”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-72 ABRASIVE MATERIALS FOR BLAST CLEANING STEEL, line 22, replace article number “1080-72” with “1080-12”.

Page 10-163, Article 1080-83 FIELD PERFORMANCE AND SERVICES, line 25, replace article number “1080-83” with “1080-13”.

Division 17

Page 17-15, Article 1715-4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, lines 42-44, replace the second sentence with the following:

An example is an installation of a single 1.25 inch HDPE conduit would be paid as:

Directional Drill (1)(1.25”) Linear Foot

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES****(Imported Fire Ant, Gypsy Moth, Witchweed, Emerald Ash Borer, Guava Root Knot Nematode, And Other Noxious Weeds)**

(3-18-03) (Rev. 5-21-19)

Z-04a

Within Quarantined Area

This project may be within a county regulated for plant and/or pests. If the project or any part of the Contractor's operations is located within a quarantined area, thoroughly clean all equipment prior to moving out of the quarantined area. Comply with federal/state regulations by obtaining a certificate or limited permit for any regulated article moving from the quarantined area.

Originating in a Quarantined County

Obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture. Have the certificate or limited permit accompany the article when it arrives at the project site.

Contact

Contact the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture at 1-800-206-9333, 919-707-3730, or <https://www.ncagr.gov/plantindustry/Plant/quaran/table2.htm> to determine those specific project sites located in the quarantined area or for any regulated article used on this project originating in a quarantined county.

Regulated Articles Include

1. Soil, sand, gravel, compost, peat, humus, muck, and decomposed manure, separately or with other articles. This includes movement of articles listed above that may be associated with cut/waste, ditch pulling, and shoulder cutting.
2. Plants with roots including grass sod.
3. Plant crowns and roots.
4. Bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers of ornamental plants.
5. Hay, straw, fodder, and plant litter of any kind.
6. Clearing and grubbing debris.
7. Used agricultural cultivating and harvesting equipment.
8. Used earth-moving equipment.
9. Any other products, articles, or means of conveyance, of any character, if determined by an inspector to present a hazard of spreading imported fire ant, gypsy moth, witchweed, emerald ash borer, guava root knot nematode, or other noxious weeds.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION:**

(6-28-77)(Rev 6/19/2018)

Z-6

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace Article 103-4(B) with the following:

The North Carolina Department of Transportation is committed to carrying out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts.

The provisions of this section related to United States Department of Transportation (US DOT) Order 1050.2A, Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) part 21, 23 United States Code (U.S.C.) 140 and 23 CFR part 200 (or 49 CFR 303, 49 U.S.C. 5332 or 49 U.S.C. 47123) are applicable to all North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) contracts and to all related subcontracts, material supply, engineering, architectural and other service contracts, regardless of dollar amount. Any Federal provision that is specifically required not specifically set forth is hereby incorporated by reference.

(1) **Title VI Assurances (USDOT Order 1050.2A, Appendix A)**

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

(a) Compliance with Regulations

The contractor (hereinafter includes consultants) shall comply with the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), as they may be amended from time to time, which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

(b) Nondiscrimination

The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by the Acts and the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers any activity, project, or program set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 21.

(c) Solicitations for Subcontractors, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment

In all solicitations, either by competitive bidding, or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials, or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

(d) Information and Reports

The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Recipient or the FHWA to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Acts,

Regulations, and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish the information, the contractor shall so certify to the Recipient or the FHWA, as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

(e) Sanctions for Noncompliance:

In the event of a contractor's noncompliance with the Non-discrimination provisions of this contract, the Recipient will impose such contract sanctions as it and/or the FHWA may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

- (i) Withholding payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies; and/or
- (ii) Cancelling, terminating, or suspending a contract, in whole or in part.

(f) Incorporation of Provisions

The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (a) through (f) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Acts, the Regulations and directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Recipient or the FHWA may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, that if the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation by a subcontractor, or supplier because of such direction, the contractor may request the Recipient to enter into any litigation to protect the interests of the Recipient. In addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(2) **Title VI Nondiscrimination Program (23 CFR 200.5(p))**

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) has assured the USDOT that, as a condition to receiving federal financial assistance, NCDOT will comply with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and all requirements imposed by Title 49 CFR part 21 and related nondiscrimination authorities to ensure that no person shall, on the ground of race, color, national origin, limited English proficiency, sex, age, or disability (including religion/creed or income-level, where applicable), be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any programs, activities, or services conducted or funded by NCDOT. Contractors and other organizations under contract or agreement with NCDOT must also comply with Title VI and related authorities, therefore:

(a) During the performance of this contract or agreement, contractors (e.g., subcontractors, consultants, vendors, prime contractors) are responsible for complying with NCDOT's Title VI Program. Contractors are not required to prepare or submit Title VI Programs. To comply with this section, the prime contractor shall:

1. Post NCDOT's Notice of Nondiscrimination and the Contractor's own Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Policy in conspicuous locations accessible to all employees, applicants and subcontractors on the jobsite.
2. Physically incorporate the required Title VI clauses into all subcontracts on federally-assisted and state-funded NCDOT projects, and ensure inclusion by subcontractors into all lower-tier subcontracts.
3. Required Solicitation Language. The Contractor shall include the following notification in all solicitations for bids and requests for work or material, regardless of funding source:

“The North Carolina Department of Transportation, in accordance with the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252, 42 US.C. §§

2000d to 2000d-4) and the Regulations, hereby notifies all bidders that it will affirmatively ensure that any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, disadvantaged business enterprises will be afforded full and fair opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and will not be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in consideration for an award. In accordance with other related nondiscrimination authorities, bidders and contractors will also not be discriminated against on the grounds of sex, age, disability, low-income level, creed/religion, or limited English proficiency in consideration for an award.”

4. Physically incorporate the FHWA-1273, in its entirety, into all subcontracts and subsequent lower tier subcontracts on Federal-aid highway construction contracts only.
 5. Provide language assistance services (i.e., written translation and oral interpretation), free of charge, to LEP employees and applicants. Contact NCDOT OCR for further assistance, if needed.
 6. For assistance with these Title VI requirements, contact the NCDOT Title VI Nondiscrimination Program at 1-800-522-0453.
- (b) Subrecipients (e.g. cities, counties, LGAs, planning organizations) may be required to prepare and submit a Title VI Plan to NCDOT, including Title VI Assurances and/or agreements. Subrecipients must also ensure compliance by their contractors and subrecipients with Title VI. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(7))
- (c) If reviewed or investigated by NCDOT, the contractor or subrecipient agrees to take affirmative action to correct any deficiencies found within a reasonable time period, not to exceed 90 calendar days, unless additional time is granted by NCDOT. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(15))
- (d) The Contractor is responsible for notifying subcontractors of NCDOT’s External Discrimination Complaints Process.
1. **Applicability**
Title VI and related laws protect participants and beneficiaries (e.g., members of the public and contractors) from discrimination by NCDOT employees, subrecipients and contractors, regardless of funding source.
 2. **Eligibility**
Any person—or class of persons—who believes he/she has been subjected to discrimination based on race, color, national origin, Limited English Proficiency (LEP), sex, age, or disability (and religion in the context of employment, aviation, or transit) may file a written complaint. The law also prohibits intimidation or retaliation of any sort.
 3. **Time Limits and Filing Options**
Complaints may be filed by the affected individual(s) or a representative and must be filed no later than 180 calendar days after the following:
 - (i) The date of the alleged act of discrimination; or
 - (ii) The date when the person(s) became aware of the alleged discrimination; or
 - (iii) Where there has been a continuing course of conduct, the date on which that conduct was discontinued or the latest instance of the conduct.Title VI and related discrimination complaints may be submitted to the following entities:

- North Carolina Department of Transportation, Office of Civil Rights, Title VI Program, 1511 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1511; toll free 1-800-522-0453
 - Federal Highway Administration, North Carolina Division Office, 310 New Bern Avenue, Suite 410, Raleigh, NC 27601, 919-747-7010
 - US Department of Transportation, Departmental Office of Civil Rights, External Civil Rights Programs Division, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590; 202-366-4070
4. Format for Complaints
Complaints must be in writing and signed by the complainant(s) or a representative, and include the complainant's name, address, and telephone number. Complaints received by fax or e-mail will be acknowledged and processed. Allegations received by telephone will be reduced to writing and provided to the complainant for confirmation or revision before processing. Complaints will be accepted in other languages, including Braille.
5. Discrimination Complaint Form
Contact NCDOT Civil Rights to receive a full copy of the Discrimination Complaint Form and procedures.
6. Complaint Basis
Allegations must be based on issues involving race, color, national origin (LEP), sex, age, disability, or religion (in the context of employment, aviation or transit). "Basis" refers to the complainant's membership in a protected group category.

**TABLE 103-1
COMPLAINT BASIS**

Protected Categories	Definition	Examples	Applicable Nondiscrimination Authorities
Race and Ethnicity	An individual belonging to one of the accepted racial groups; or the perception, based usually on physical characteristics that a person is a member of a racial group	Black/African American, Hispanic/Latino, Asian, American Indian/Alaska Native, Native Hawaiian/Pacific Islander, White	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 49 CFR Part 21; 23 CFR 200; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123. (<i>Executive Order 13166</i>)
Color	Color of skin, including shade of skin within a racial group	Black, White, brown, yellow, etc.	
National Origin (<i>Limited English Proficiency</i>)	Place of birth. Citizenship is not a factor. (<i>Discrimination based on language or a person's accent is also covered</i>)	Mexican, Cuban, Japanese, Vietnamese, Chinese	
Sex	Gender. The sex of an individual. <i>Note: Sex under this program does not include sexual orientation.</i>	Women and Men	1973 Federal-Aid Highway Act; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Age	Persons of any age	21-year-old person	Age Discrimination Act of 1975 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Disability	Physical or mental impairment, permanent or temporary, or perceived.	Blind, alcoholic, para-amputee, epileptic, diabetic, arthritic	Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990

<p>Religion (in the context of employment) <i>(Religion/ Creed in all aspects of any aviation or transit-related construction)</i></p>	<p>An individual belonging to a religious group; or the perception, based on distinguishable characteristics that a person is a member of a religious group. In practice, actions taken as a result of the moral and ethical beliefs as to what is right and wrong, which are sincerely held with the strength of traditional religious views. Note: Does not have to be associated with a recognized religious group or church; if an individual sincerely holds to the belief, it is a protected religious practice.</p>	<p>Muslim, Christian, Sikh, Hindu, etc.</p>	<p>Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 23 CFR 230; FHWA-1273 Required Contract Provisions. (49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123)</p>
--	---	---	--

(3) Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities, including, but not limited to:

- (a) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000d et seq., 78 stat. 252), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin); and 49 CFR Part 21.
- (b) The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 U.S.C. § 4601), (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
- (c) Federal-Aid Highway Act of 1973, (23 U.S.C. § 324 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of sex);
- (d) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, (29 U.S.C. § 794 et seq.), as amended, (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability) and 49 CFR Part 27;
- (e) The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 6101 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
- (f) Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, (49 USC § 471, Section 47123), as amended, (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
- (g) The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, (PL 100-209), (Broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms "programs or activities" to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);
- (h) Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act, which prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities (42 U.S.C. §§ 12131-12189) as implemented by Department of Transportation regulations at 49 C.F.R. parts 37 and 38;
- (i) The Federal Aviation Administration's Nondiscrimination statute (49 U.S.C. § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
- (j) Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, which ensures Nondiscrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with

disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations;

- (k) Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of Limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs (70 Fed. Reg. at 74087 to 74100);
 - (l) Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq).
 - (m) Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000e et seq., Pub. L. 88-352), (prohibits employment discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin).
- (4) **Additional Title VI Assurances**

***The following Title VI Assurances (Appendices B, C and D) shall apply, as applicable*

- (a) Clauses for Deeds Transferring United States Property (1050.2A, Appendix B)
The following clauses will be included in deeds effecting or recording the transfer of real property, structures, or improvements thereon, or granting interest therein from the United States pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 4.

NOW, THEREFORE, the U.S. Department of Transportation as authorized by law and upon the condition that the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) will accept title to the lands and maintain the project constructed thereon in accordance with the North Carolina General Assembly, the Regulations for the Administration of the Federal-Aid Highway Program, and the policies and procedures prescribed by the Federal Highway Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation in accordance and in compliance with all requirements imposed by Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation pertaining to and effectuating the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. § 2000d to 2000d-4), does hereby remise, release, quitclaim and convey unto the NCDOT all the right, title and interest of the U.S. Department of Transportation in and to said lands described in Exhibit A attached hereto and made a part hereof.

(HABENDUM CLAUSE)

TO HAVE AND TO HOLD said lands and interests therein unto the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) and its successors forever, subject, however, to the covenants, conditions, restrictions and reservations herein contained as follows, which will remain in effect for the period during which the real property or structures are used for a purpose for which Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits and will be binding on the NCDOT, its successors and assigns.

The NCDOT, in consideration of the conveyance of said lands and interests in lands, does hereby covenant and agree as a covenant running with the land for itself, its successors and assigns, that (1) no person will on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination with regard to any facility located wholly or in part on, over, or under such lands hereby conveyed [,] [and]* (2) that the NCDOT will use the lands and interests in lands and interests in lands so conveyed, in compliance with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Non-discrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, and as said Regulations and Acts may be amended [, and (3) that in the event of breach of any of the above-mentioned nondiscrimination conditions, the Department will have a right to enter or re-enter said lands and facilities on said land, and that above described land and facilities will thereon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the U.S. Department of Transportation and its assigns as such interest existed prior to this instruction].*

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary in order to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

(b) Clauses for Transfer of Real Property Acquired or Improved Under the Activity, Facility, or Program (1050.2A, Appendix C)

The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, leases, permits, or similar instruments entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(a):

1. The (grantee, lessee, permittee, etc. as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree [in the case of deeds and leases add "as a covenant running with the land"] that:
 - (i.) In the event facilities are constructed, maintained, or otherwise operated on the property described in this (deed, license, lease, permit, etc.) for a purpose for which a U.S. Department of Transportation activity, facility, or program is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits, the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will maintain and operate such facilities and services in compliance with all requirements imposed by the Acts and Regulations (as may be amended) such that no person on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities.
2. With respect to licenses, leases, permits, etc., in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (lease, license, permit, etc.) and to enter, re-enter, and repossess said lands and facilities thereon, and hold the same as if the (lease, license, permit, etc.) had never been made or issued. *
3. With respect to a deed, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to enter or re-enter the lands and facilities thereon, and the above described lands and facilities will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. *

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

(c) Clauses for Construction/Use/Access to Real Property Acquired Under the Activity, Facility or Program (1050.2A, Appendix D)

The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, permits, or similar instruments/ agreements entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(b):

1. The (grantee, licensee, permittee, etc., as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree (in the case of deeds and leases add, "as a covenant running with the land") that (1) no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities, (2) that in the construction of any improvements on, over, or under such land, and the furnishing of services thereon, no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination, (3) that the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will use the premises in compliance with all other requirements imposed by or pursuant to the Acts and Regulations, as amended, set forth in this Assurance.
2. With respect to (licenses, leases, permits, etc.), in the event of breach of any of the above Non-discrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) and to enter or re-enter and repossess said land and the facilities thereon, and hold the same as if said (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) had never been made or issued. *
3. With respect to deeds, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. *

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS**

Z-7

NOTICE OF REQUIREMENTS FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (*EXECUTIVE NUMBER 11246*)

1. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, see as shown on the attached sheet entitled "Employment Goals for Minority and Female participation".

These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and nonfederally involved construction.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4* shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in *41 CFR 60-4.3(a)*, and its effort to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4*. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

2. As used in this Notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is the county or counties shown on the cover sheet of the proposal form and contract.

**EMPLOYMENT GOALS FOR MINORITY
AND FEMALE PARTICIPATION**

Economic Areas

Area 023 29.7%

Bertie County
Camden County
Chowan County
Gates County
Hertford County
Pasquotank County
Perquimans County

Area 024 31.7%

Beaufort County
Carteret County
Craven County
Dare County
Edgecombe County
Green County
Halifax County
Hyde County
Jones County
Lenoir County
Martin County
Nash County
Northampton County
Pamlico County
Pitt County
Tyrrell County
Washington County
Wayne County
Wilson County

Area 025 23.5%

Columbus County
Duplin County
Onslow County
Pender County

Area 026 33.5%

Bladen County
Hoke County
Richmond County
Robeson County
Sampson County
Scotland County

Area 027 24.7%

Chatham County
Franklin County
Granville County
Harnett County
Johnston County
Lee County
Person County
Vance County
Warren County

Area 028 15.5%

Alleghany County
Ashe County
Caswell County
Davie County
Montgomery County
Moore County
Rockingham County
Surry County
Watauga County
Wilkes County

Area 029 15.7%

Alexander County
Anson County
Burke County
Cabarrus County
Caldwell County
Catawba County
Cleveland County
Iredell County
Lincoln County
Polk County
Rowan County
Rutherford County
Stanly County

Area 0480 8.5%

Buncombe County
Madison County

Area 030 6.3%

Avery County
Cherokee County
Clay County
Graham County
Haywood County
Henderson County
Jackson County
McDowell County
Macon County
Mitchell County
Swain County
Transylvania County
Yancey County

SMSA Areas

Area 5720 26.6%

Currituck County

Area 9200 20.7%

Brunswick County

New Hanover County

Area 2560 24.2%

Cumberland County

Area 6640 22.8%

Durham County

Orange County

Wake County

Area 1300 16.2%

Alamance County

Area 3120 16.4%

Davidson County

Forsyth County

Guilford County

Randolph County

Stokes County

Yadkin County

Area 1520 18.3%

Gaston County

Mecklenburg County

Union County

Goals for Female

Participation in Each Trade

(Statewide) 6.9%

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL - AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS**

FHWA - 1273 Electronic Version - May 1, 2012

Z-8

- I. General
- II. Nondiscrimination
- III. Nonsegregated Facilities
- IV. Davis-Bacon and Related Act Provisions
- V. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act Provisions
- VI. Subletting or Assigning the Contract
- VII. Safety: Accident Prevention
- VIII. False Statements Concerning Highway Projects
- IX. Implementation of Clean Air Act and Federal Water Pollution Control Act
- X. Compliance with Governmentwide Suspension and Debarment Requirements
- XI. Certification Regarding Use of Contract Funds for Lobbying

ATTACHMENTS

- A. Employment and Materials Preference for Appalachian Development Highway System or Appalachian Local Access Road Contracts (included in Appalachian contracts only)

I. GENERAL

1. Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated in each construction contract funded under Title 23 (excluding emergency contracts solely intended for debris removal). The contractor (or subcontractor) must insert this form in each subcontract and further require its inclusion in all lower tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services).
The applicable requirements of Form FHWA-1273 are incorporated by reference for work done under any purchase order, rental agreement or agreement for other services. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.
Form FHWA-1273 must be included in all Federal-aid design-build contracts, in all subcontracts and in lower tier subcontracts (excluding subcontracts for design services, purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services). The design-builder shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.
Contracting agencies may reference Form FHWA-1273 in bid proposal or request for proposal documents, however, the Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated (not referenced) in all contracts, subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services related to a construction contract).
2. Subject to the applicability criteria noted in the following sections, these contract provisions shall apply to all work performed on the contract by the contractor's own organization and with the assistance of workers under the contractor's immediate superintendence and to all work performed on the contract by piecework, station work, or by subcontract.
3. A breach of any of the stipulations contained in these Required Contract Provisions may be sufficient grounds for withholding of progress payments, withholding of final payment, termination of the contract, suspension / debarment or any other action determined to be appropriate by the contracting agency and FHWA.
4. Selection of Labor: During the performance of this contract, the contractor shall not use convict labor for any purpose within the limits of a construction project on a Federal-aid highway unless it is labor performed by convicts who are on parole, supervised release, or probation. The term Federal-aid highway does not include roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors.

II. NONDISCRIMINATION

The provisions of this section related to 23 CFR Part 230 are applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more. The provisions of 23 CFR Part 230 are not applicable to material supply, engineering, or architectural service contracts.

In addition, the contractor and all subcontractors must comply with the following policies: Executive Order 11246, 41 CFR 60, 29 CFR 1625-1627, Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The contractor and all subcontractors must comply with: the requirements of the Equal Opportunity Clause in 41 CFR 60-1.4(b) and, for all construction contracts exceeding \$10,000, the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications in 41 CFR 60-4.3.

Note: The U.S. Department of Labor has exclusive authority to determine compliance with Executive Order 11246 and the policies of the Secretary of Labor including 41 CFR 60, and 29 CFR 1625-1627. The contracting agency and the FHWA have the authority and the responsibility to ensure compliance with Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), and Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The following provision is adopted from 23 CFR 230, Appendix A, with appropriate revisions to conform to the U.S. Department of Labor (US DOL) and FHWA requirements.

1. **Equal Employment Opportunity:** Equal employment opportunity (EEO) requirements not to discriminate and to take affirmative action to assure equal opportunity as set forth under laws, executive orders, rules, regulations (28 CFR 35, 29 CFR 1630, 29 CFR 1625-1627, 41 CFR 60 and 49 CFR 27) and orders of the Secretary of Labor as modified by the provisions prescribed herein, and imposed pursuant to 23 U.S.C. 140 shall constitute the EEO and specific affirmative action standards for the contractor's project activities under this contract. The provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) set forth under 28 CFR 35 and 29 CFR 1630 are incorporated by reference in this contract. In the execution of this contract, the contractor agrees to comply with the following minimum specific requirement activities of EEO:
 - a. The contractor will work with the contracting agency and the Federal Government to ensure that it has made every good faith effort to provide equal opportunity with respect to all of its terms and conditions of employment and in their review of activities under the contract.
 - b. The contractor will accept as its operating policy the following statement:

"It is the policy of this Company to assure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, religion, sex, color, national origin, age or disability. Such action shall include: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship, pre-apprenticeship, and/or on-the-job training."

2. **EEO Officer:** The contractor will designate and make known to the contracting officers an EEO Officer who will have the responsibility for and must be capable of effectively administering and promoting an active EEO program and who must be assigned adequate authority and responsibility to do so.
3. **Dissemination of Policy:** All members of the contractor's staff who are authorized to hire, supervise, promote, and discharge employees, or who recommend such action, or who are substantially involved in such action, will be made fully cognizant of, and will implement, the contractor's EEO policy and contractual responsibilities to provide EEO in each grade and classification of employment. To ensure that the above agreement will be met, the following actions will be taken as a minimum:
 - a. Periodic meetings of supervisory and personnel office employees will be conducted before the start of work and then not less often than once every six months, at which time the contractor's EEO policy and its implementation will be reviewed and explained. The meetings will be conducted by the EEO Officer.
 - b. All new supervisory or personnel office employees will be given a thorough indoctrination by the EEO Officer, covering all major aspects of the contractor's EEO obligations within thirty days following their reporting for duty with the contractor.
 - c. All personnel who are engaged in direct recruitment for the project will be instructed by the EEO Officer in the contractor's procedures for locating and hiring minorities and women.
 - d. Notices and posters setting forth the contractor's EEO policy will be placed in areas readily accessible to employees, applicants for employment and potential employees.
 - e. The contractor's EEO policy and the procedures to implement such policy will be brought to the attention of employees by means of meetings, employee handbooks, or other appropriate means.
4. **Recruitment:** When advertising for employees, the contractor will include in all advertisements for employees the notation: "An Equal Opportunity Employer." All such advertisements will be placed in publications having a large circulation among minorities and women in the area from which the project work force would normally be derived.
 - a. The contractor will, unless precluded by a valid bargaining agreement, conduct systematic and direct recruitment through public and private employee referral sources likely to yield qualified minorities and women. To meet this requirement, the contractor will identify sources of potential minority group employees, and establish with such identified sources procedures whereby minority and women applicants may be referred to the contractor for employment consideration.
 - b. In the event the contractor has a valid bargaining agreement providing for exclusive hiring hall referrals, the contractor is expected to observe the provisions of that agreement to the extent that the system meets the contractor's compliance with EEO contract provisions. Where implementation of such an agreement has the effect of discriminating against minorities or women, or obligates the contractor to do the same, such implementation violates Federal nondiscrimination provisions.
 - c. The contractor will encourage its present employees to refer minorities and women as applicants for employment. Information and procedures with regard to referring such applicants will be discussed with employees.
5. **Personnel Actions:** Wages, working conditions, and employee benefits shall be established and administered, and personnel actions of every type, including hiring, upgrading, promotion, transfer, demotion, layoff, and termination, shall be taken without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability. The following procedures shall be followed:
 - a. The contractor will conduct periodic inspections of project sites to insure that working conditions and employee facilities do not indicate discriminatory treatment of project site personnel.
 - b. The contractor will periodically evaluate the spread of wages paid within each classification to determine any evidence of discriminatory wage practices.
 - c. The contractor will periodically review selected personnel actions in depth to determine whether there is evidence of discrimination. Where evidence is found, the contractor will promptly take corrective action. If the review indicates that the discrimination may extend beyond the actions reviewed, such corrective action shall include all affected persons.
 - d. The contractor will promptly investigate all complaints of alleged discrimination made to the contractor in connection with its obligations under this contract, will attempt to resolve such complaints, and will take appropriate corrective action within a reasonable time. If the investigation indicates that the discrimination may affect persons other than the complainant, such corrective action shall include such other persons. Upon completion of each investigation, the contractor will inform every complainant of all of their avenues of appeal.
6. **Training and Promotion:**
 - a. The contractor will assist in locating, qualifying, and increasing the skills of minorities and women who are applicants for employment or current employees. Such efforts should be aimed at developing full journey level status employees in the type of trade or job classification involved.
 - b. Consistent with the contractor's work force requirements and as permissible under Federal and State regulations, the contractor shall make full use of training programs, i.e., apprenticeship, and on-the-job training programs for the geographical area of contract performance. In the event a special provision for training is provided under this contract, this subparagraph will be superseded as indicated in the special provision. The contracting agency may reserve training positions for persons who receive welfare assistance in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 140(a).
 - c. The contractor will advise employees and applicants for employment of available training programs and entrance requirements for each.
 - d. The contractor will periodically review the training and promotion potential of employees who are minorities and women and will encourage eligible employees to apply for such training and promotion.
7. **Unions:** If the contractor relies in whole or in part upon unions as a source of employees, the contractor will use good faith efforts to obtain the cooperation of such unions to increase opportunities for minorities and women. Actions by the contractor, either directly or through a contractor's association acting as agent, will include the procedures set forth below:
 - a. The contractor will use good faith efforts to develop, in cooperation with the unions, joint training programs aimed toward qualifying more minorities and women for membership in the unions and increasing the skills of minorities and women so that they may qualify for higher paying employment.
 - b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to incorporate an EEO clause into each union agreement to the end that such union will be contractually bound to refer applicants without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability.
 - c. The contractor is to obtain information as to the referral practices and policies of the labor union except that to the extent such information is within the exclusive possession of the labor union and such labor union refuses to furnish such information to the contractor, the contractor shall so certify to the contracting agency and shall set forth what efforts have been made to obtain such information.

- d. In the event the union is unable to provide the contractor with a reasonable flow of referrals within the time limit set forth in the collective bargaining agreement, the contractor will, through independent recruitment efforts, fill the employment vacancies without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability; making full efforts to obtain qualified and/or qualifiable minorities and women. The failure of a union to provide sufficient referrals (even though it is obligated to provide exclusive referrals under the terms of a collective bargaining agreement) does not relieve the contractor from the requirements of this paragraph. In the event the union referral practice prevents the contractor from meeting the obligations pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and these special provisions, such contractor shall immediately notify the contracting agency.
8. **Reasonable Accommodation for Applicants / Employees with Disabilities:** The contractor must be familiar with the requirements for and comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act and all rules and regulations established there under. Employers must provide reasonable accommodation in all employment activities unless to do so would cause an undue hardship.
9. **Selection of Subcontractors, Procurement of Materials and Leasing of Equipment:** The contractor shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurement of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure nondiscrimination in the administration of this contract.
- a. The contractor shall notify all potential subcontractors and suppliers and lessors of their EEO obligations under this contract.
- b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to ensure subcontractor compliance with their EEO obligations.
10. **Assurance Required by 49 CFR 26.13(b):**
- a. The requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 and the State DOT's U.S. DOT-approved DBE program are incorporated by reference.
- b. The contractor or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as the contracting agency deems appropriate.
11. **Records and Reports:** The contractor shall keep such records as necessary to document compliance with the EEO requirements. Such records shall be retained for a period of three years following the date of the final payment to the contractor for all contract work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the contracting agency and the FHWA.
- a. The records kept by the contractor shall document the following:
- (1) The number and work hours of minority and non-minority group members and women employed in each work classification on the project;
- (2) The progress and efforts being made in cooperation with unions, when applicable, to increase employment opportunities for minorities and women; and
- (3) The progress and efforts being made in locating, hiring, training, qualifying, and upgrading minorities and women;
- b. The contractors and subcontractors will submit an annual report to the contracting agency each July for the duration of the project, indicating the number of minority, women, and non-minority group employees currently engaged in each work classification required by the contract work. This information is to be reported on Form FHWA-1391. The staffing data should represent the project work force on board in all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July. If on-the-job training is being required by special provision, the contractor will be required to collect and report training data. The employment data should reflect the work force on board during all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July.

III. NONSEGREGATED FACILITIES

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more.

The contractor must ensure that facilities provided for employees are provided in such a manner that segregation on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin cannot result. The contractor may neither require such segregated use by written or oral policies nor tolerate such use by employee custom. The contractor's obligation extends further to ensure that its employees are not assigned to perform their services at any location, under the contractor's control, where the facilities are segregated. The term "facilities" includes waiting rooms, work areas, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, restrooms, washrooms, locker rooms, and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing provided for employees. The contractor shall provide separate or single-user restrooms and necessary dressing or sleeping areas to assure privacy between sexes.

IV. DAVIS-BACON AND RELATED ACT PROVISIONS

This section is applicable to all Federal-aid construction projects exceeding \$2,000 and to all related subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (regardless of subcontract size). The requirements apply to all projects located within the right-of-way of a roadway that is functionally classified as Federal-aid highway. This excludes roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors, which are exempt. Contracting agencies may elect to apply these requirements to other projects.

The following provisions are from the U.S. Department of Labor regulations in 29 CFR 5.5 "Contract provisions and related matters" with minor revisions to conform to the FHWA-1273 format and FHWA program requirements.

1. Minimum wages

- a. All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work, will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph 1.d. of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under paragraph 1.b. of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

- b. (1) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:
 - (i) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and
 - (ii) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and
 - (iii) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.
- (2) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (3) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Wage and Hour Administrator for determination. The Wage and Hour Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (4) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs 1.b.(2) or 1.b.(3) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.
- c. Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.
- d. If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program. Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.
2. **Withholding.** The contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract, or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the contracting agency may, after written notice to the contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.
3. **Payrolls and basic records**
 - a. Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.
 - b. (1) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the contracting agency. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (e.g. , the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site at <http://www.dol.gov/esa/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm> or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the contracting agency for transmission to the State DOT, the FHWA or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the contracting agency.
 - (2) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:
 - (i) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under §5.5 (a)(3)(ii) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, the appropriate information is being maintained under §5.5 (a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, and that such information is correct and complete;
 - (ii) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR part 3;
 - (iii) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

- (3) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph 3.b.(2) of this section.
- (4) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.
- c. The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph 3.a. of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the contracting agency, the State DOT, the FHWA, or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the FHWA may, after written notice to the contractor, the contracting agency or the State DOT, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.
4. **Apprentices and trainees**
- a. Apprentices (programs of the USDOL). Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice.
- The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed.
- Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination.
- In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- b. Trainees (programs of the USDOL). Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration.
- The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration.
- Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed.
- In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- c. Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.
- d. Apprentices and Trainees (programs of the U.S. DOT). Apprentices and trainees working under apprenticeship and skill training programs which have been certified by the Secretary of Transportation as promoting EEO in connection with Federal-aid highway construction programs are not subject to the requirements of paragraph 4 of this Section IV. The straight time hourly wage rates for apprentices and trainees under such programs will be established by the particular programs. The ratio of apprentices and trainees to journeymen shall not be greater than permitted by the terms of the particular program.
5. **Compliance with Copeland Act requirements.** The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.
6. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert Form FHWA-1273 in any subcontracts and also require the subcontractors to include Form FHWA-1273 in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.
7. **Contract termination:** debarment. A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.
8. **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements.** All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
9. **Disputes concerning labor standards.** Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
10. **Certification of eligibility.**
- a. By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

- b. No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
- c. The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

V. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

The following clauses apply to any Federal-aid construction contract in an amount in excess of \$100,000 and subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. These clauses shall be inserted in addition to the clauses required by 29 CFR 5.5(a) or 29 CFR 4.6. As used in this paragraph, the terms laborers and mechanics include watchmen and guards.

1. **Overtime requirements.** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.
2. **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages.** In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section.
3. **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages.** The FHWA or the contacting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2.) of this section.
4. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraph (1.) through (4.) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1.) through (4.) of this section.

VI. SUBLETTING OR ASSIGNING THE CONTRACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts on the National Highway System.

1. The contractor shall perform with its own organization contract work amounting to not less than 30 percent (or a greater percentage if specified elsewhere in the contract) of the total original contract price, excluding any specialty items designated by the contracting agency. Specialty items may be performed by subcontract and the amount of any such specialty items performed may be deducted from the total original contract price before computing the amount of work required to be performed by the contractor's own organization (23 CFR 635.116).
 - a. The term "perform work with its own organization" refers to workers employed or leased by the prime contractor, and equipment owned or rented by the prime contractor, with or without operators. Such term does not include employees or equipment of a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor, agents of the prime contractor, or any other assignees. The term may include payments for the costs of hiring leased employees

from an employee leasing firm meeting all relevant Federal and State regulatory requirements. Leased employees may only be included in this term if the prime contractor meets all of the following conditions:

- (1) the prime contractor maintains control over the supervision of the day-to-day activities of the leased employees;
 - (2) the prime contractor remains responsible for the quality of the work of the leased employees;
 - (3) the prime contractor retains all power to accept or exclude individual employees from work on the project; and
 - (4) the prime contractor remains ultimately responsible for the payment of predetermined minimum wages, the submission of payrolls, statements of compliance and all other Federal regulatory requirements.
- b. "Specialty Items" shall be construed to be limited to work that requires highly specialized knowledge, abilities, or equipment not ordinarily available in the type of contracting organizations qualified and expected to bid or propose on the contract as a whole and in general are to be limited to minor components of the overall contract.
2. The contract amount upon which the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of Section VI is computed includes the cost of material and manufactured products which are to be purchased or produced by the contractor under the contract provisions.
 3. The contractor shall furnish (a) a competent superintendent or supervisor who is employed by the firm, has full authority to direct performance of the work in accordance with the contract requirements, and is in charge of all construction operations (regardless of who performs the work) and (b) such other of its own organizational resources (supervision, management, and engineering services) as the contracting officer determines is necessary to assure the performance of the contract.
 4. No portion of the contract shall be sublet, assigned or otherwise disposed of except with the written consent of the contracting officer, or authorized representative, and such consent when given shall not be construed to relieve the contractor of any responsibility for the fulfillment of the contract. Written consent will be given only after the contracting agency has assured that each subcontract is evidenced in writing and that it contains all pertinent provisions and requirements of the prime contract.
 5. The 30% self-performance requirement of paragraph (1) is not applicable to design-build contracts; however, contracting agencies may establish their own self-performance requirements.

VII. SAFETY: ACCIDENT PREVENTION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

1. In the performance of this contract the contractor shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws governing safety, health, and sanitation (23 CFR 635). The contractor shall provide all safeguards, safety devices and protective equipment and take any other needed actions as it determines, or as the contracting officer may determine, to be reasonably necessary to protect the life and health of employees on the job and the safety of the public and to protect property in connection with the performance of the work covered by the contract.
2. It is a condition of this contract, and shall be made a condition of each subcontract, which the contractor enters into pursuant to this contract, that the contractor and any subcontractor shall not permit any employee, in performance of the contract, to work in surroundings or under conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to his/her health or safety, as determined under construction safety and health standards (29 CFR 1926) promulgated by the Secretary of Labor, in accordance with Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704).
3. Pursuant to 29 CFR 1926.3, it is a condition of this contract that the Secretary of Labor or authorized representative thereof, shall have right of entry to any site of contract performance to inspect or investigate the matter of compliance with the construction safety and health standards and to carry out the duties of the Secretary under Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C.3704).

VIII. FALSE STATEMENTS CONCERNING HIGHWAY PROJECTS

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

In order to assure high quality and durable construction in conformity with approved plans and specifications and a high degree of reliability on statements and representations made by engineers, contractors, suppliers, and workers on Federal-aid highway projects, it is essential that all persons concerned with the project perform their functions as carefully, thoroughly, and honestly as possible. Willful falsification, distortion, or misrepresentation with respect to any facts related to the project is a violation of Federal law. To prevent any misunderstanding regarding the seriousness of these and similar acts, Form FHWA-1022 shall be posted on each Federal-aid highway project (23 CFR 635) in one or more places where it is readily available to all persons concerned with the project:

18 U.S.C. 1020 reads as follows:

"Whoever, being an officer, agent, or employee of the United States, or of any State or Territory, or whoever, whether a person, association, firm, or corporation, knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, or false report as to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of the material used or to be used, or the quantity or quality of the work performed or to be performed, or the cost thereof in connection with the submission of plans, maps, specifications, contracts, or costs of construction on any highway or related project submitted for approval to the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, false report or false claim with respect to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of any work performed or to be performed, or materials furnished or to be furnished, in connection with the construction of any highway or related project approved by the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement or false representation as to material fact in any statement, certificate, or report submitted pursuant to provisions of the Federal-aid Roads Act approved July 1, 1916, (39 Stat. 355), as amended and supplemented;

Shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than 5 years or both."

IX. IMPLEMENTATION OF CLEAN AIR ACT AND FEDERAL WATER POLLUTION CONTROL ACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

By submission of this bid/proposal or the execution of this contract, or subcontract, as appropriate, the bidder, proposer, Federal-aid construction contractor, or subcontractor, as appropriate, will be deemed to have stipulated as follows:

1. That any person who is or will be utilized in the performance of this contract is not prohibited from receiving an award due to a violation of Section 508 of the Clean Water Act or Section 306 of the Clean Air Act.
2. That the contractor agrees to include or cause to be included the requirements of paragraph (1) of this Section X in every subcontract, and further agrees to take such action as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such requirements.

X. CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts, design-build contracts, subcontracts, lower-tier subcontracts, purchase orders, lease agreements, consultant contracts or any other covered transaction requiring FHWA approval or that is estimated to cost \$25,000 or more – as defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200.

1. Instructions for Certification – First Tier Participants:

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective first tier participant is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The inability of a person to provide the certification set out below will not necessarily result in denial of participation in this covered transaction. The prospective first tier participant shall submit an explanation of why it cannot provide the certification set out below. The certification or explanation will be considered in connection with the department or agency's determination whether to enter into this transaction. However, failure of the prospective first tier participant to furnish a certification or an explanation shall disqualify such a person from participation in this transaction.
- c. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when the contracting agency determined to enter into this transaction. If it is later determined that the prospective participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the contracting agency may terminate this transaction for cause of default.
- d. The prospective first tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the contracting agency to whom this proposal is submitted if any time the prospective first tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- e. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).
- f. The prospective first tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency entering into this transaction.
- g. The prospective first tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include the clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transactions," provided by the department or contracting agency, entering into this covered transaction, without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- h. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- i. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require the establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of the prospective participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- j. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph (f) of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default.

* * * * *

2. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion – First Tier Participants:

- a. The prospective first tier participant certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief, that it and its principals:
 - (1) Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
 - (2) Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
 - (3) Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this certification; and
 - (4) Have not within a three-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- b. Where the prospective participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

2. Instructions for Certification - Lower Tier Participants:

(Applicable to all subcontracts, purchase orders and other lower tier transactions requiring prior FHWA approval or estimated to cost \$25,000 or more - 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200)

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective lower tier is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was entered into. If it is later determined that the prospective lower tier participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department, or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.
- c. The prospective lower tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the person to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the prospective lower tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- d. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. You may contact the person to which this proposal is submitted for assistance in obtaining a copy of those regulations. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of

Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers to any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).

- e. The prospective lower tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated.
- f. The prospective lower tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include this clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transaction," without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- g. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- h. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- i. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph e of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

* * * * *

Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion--Lower Tier Participants:

1. The prospective lower tier participant certifies, by submission of this proposal, that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency.
2. Where the prospective lower tier participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

* * * * *

XI. CERTIFICATION REGARDING USE OF CONTRACT FUNDS FOR LOBBYING

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts which exceed \$100,000 (49 CFR 20).

1. The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:
 - a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
 - b. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.
2. This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.
3. The prospective participant also agrees by submitting its bid or proposal that the participant shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**ON-THE-JOB TRAINING**

(10-16-07) (Rev. 4-21-15)

Z-10

Description

The North Carolina Department of Transportation will administer a custom version of the Federal On-the-Job Training (OJT) Program, commonly referred to as the Alternate OJT Program. All contractors (existing and newcomers) will be automatically placed in the Alternate Program. Standard OJT requirements typically associated with individual projects will no longer be applied at the project level. Instead, these requirements will be applicable on an annual basis for each contractor administered by the OJT Program Manager.

On the Job Training shall meet the requirements of 23 CFR 230.107 (b), 23 USC – Section 140, this provision and the On-the-Job Training Program Manual.

The Alternate OJT Program will allow a contractor to train employees on Federal, State and privately funded projects located in North Carolina. However, priority shall be given to training employees on NCDOT Federal-Aid funded projects.

Minorities and Women

Developing, training and upgrading of minorities and women toward journeyman level status is a primary objective of this special training provision. Accordingly, the Contractor shall make every effort to enroll minority and women as trainees to the extent that such persons are available within a reasonable area of recruitment. This training commitment is not intended, and shall not be used, to discriminate against any applicant for training, whether a member of a minority group or not.

Assigning Training Goals

The Department, through the OJT Program Manager, will assign training goals for a calendar year based on the contractors' past three years' activity and the contractors' anticipated upcoming year's activity with the Department. At the beginning of each year, all contractors eligible will be contacted by the Department to determine the number of trainees that will be assigned for the upcoming calendar year. At that time the Contractor shall enter into an agreement with the Department to provide a self-imposed on-the-job training program for the calendar year. This agreement will include a specific number of annual training goals agreed to by both parties. The number of training assignments may range from 1 to 15 per contractor per calendar year. The Contractor shall sign an agreement to fulfill their annual goal for the year.\

Training Classifications

The Contractor shall provide on-the-job training aimed at developing full journeyman level workers in the construction craft/operator positions. Preference shall be given to providing training in the following skilled work classifications:

Equipment Operators	Office Engineers
Truck Drivers	Estimators
Carpenters	Iron / Reinforcing Steel Workers
Concrete Finishers	Mechanics
Pipe Layers	Welders

The Department has established common training classifications and their respective training requirements that may be used by the contractors. However, the classifications established are not all-inclusive. Where the training is oriented toward construction applications, training will be allowed in lower-level management positions such as office engineers and estimators. Contractors shall submit new classifications for specific job functions that their employees are performing. The Department will review and recommend for acceptance to FHWA the new classifications proposed by contractors, if applicable. New classifications shall meet the following requirements:

Proposed training classifications are reasonable and realistic based on the job skill classification needs, and

The number of training hours specified in the training classification is consistent with common practices and provides enough time for the trainee to obtain journeyman level status.

The Contractor may allow trainees to be trained by a subcontractor provided that the Contractor retains primary responsibility for meeting the training and this provision is made applicable to the subcontract. However, only the Contractor will receive credit towards the annual goal for the trainee.

Where feasible, 25 percent of apprentices or trainees in each occupation shall be in their first year of apprenticeship or training. The number of trainees shall be distributed among the work classifications on the basis of the contractor's needs and the availability of journeymen in the various classifications within a reasonable area of recruitment.

No employee shall be employed as a trainee in any classification in which they have successfully completed a training course leading to journeyman level status or in which they have been employed as a journeyman.

Records and Reports

The Contractor shall maintain enrollment, monthly and completion reports documenting company compliance under these contract documents. These documents and any other information as requested shall be submitted to the OJT Program Manager.

Upon completion and graduation of the program, the Contractor shall provide each trainee with a certification Certificate showing the type and length of training satisfactorily completed.

Trainee Interviews

All trainees enrolled in the program will receive an initial and Trainee/Post graduate interview conducted by the OJT program staff.

Trainee Wages

Contractors shall compensate trainees on a graduating pay scale based upon a percentage of the prevailing minimum journeyman wages (Davis-Bacon Act). Minimum pay shall be as follows:

60 percent	of the journeyman wage for the first half of the training period
75 percent	of the journeyman wage for the third quarter of the training period
90 percent	of the journeyman wage for the last quarter of the training period

In no instance shall a trainee be paid less than the local minimum wage. The Contractor shall adhere to the minimum hourly wage rate that will satisfy both the NC Department of Labor (NCDOL) and the Department.

Achieving or Failing to Meet Training Goals

The Contractor will be credited for each trainee employed by him on the contract work who is currently enrolled or becomes enrolled in an approved program and who receives training for at least 50 percent of the specific program requirement. Trainees will be allowed to be transferred between projects if required by the Contractor's scheduled workload to meet training goals.

If a contractor fails to attain their training assignments for the calendar year, they may be taken off the NCDOT's Bidders List.

Measurement and Payment

No compensation will be made for providing required training in accordance with these contract documents.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION
MINIMUM WAGES
GENERAL DECISION NC190087 01/04/2019 NC87

Z-087

Date: January 4, 2019

General Decision Number: NC190087 01/4/2019 NC87

Superseded General Decision Numbers: NC20180100

State: North Carolina

Construction Type: HIGHWAY

COUNTIES:

Alexander	Caldwell	Henderson
Buncombe	Catawba	Madison
Burke	Haywood	

HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (excluding tunnels, building structures in rest area projects & railroad construction; bascule, suspension & spandrel arch bridges designed for commercial navigation, bridges involving marine construction; and other major bridges).

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of \$10.60 for calendar year 2019 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least \$10.60 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract for calendar year 2019. If this contract is covered by the EO and a classification considered necessary for performance of work on the contract must pay workers in that classification at least the wage rate determined through the conformance process set forth in 29 CFR.5.5(a)(1)(ii) (or the EO minimum wage rate, if it is higher than the conformed wage rate). The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Please note that this EO applies to the above-mentioned types of contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but it does not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(2) – (60). Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Modification Number

0

Publication Date

01/04/2019

SUNC2014-002 11/13/2014

	Rates	Fringes
BLASTER	20.93	
CARPENTER	13.48	
CEMENT MASON/CONCRETE FINISHER	14.40	
ELECTRICIAN		
Electrician	18.79	2.62
Telecommunications Technician	14.67	1.67
IRONWORKER	12.48	
LABORER		

	Rates	Fringes
Asphalt Raker and Spreader	11.76	
Asphalt Screed/Jackman	15.38	.08
Carpenter Tender	10.50	
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher Tender	11.04	
Common or General	11.90	
Guardrail/Fence Installer	13.09	
Pipelayer	12.87	
Traffic Signal/Lighting Installer	15.33	.22
PAINTER		
Bridge	20.67	
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATORS		
Asphalt Broom Tractor	10.00	
Bulldozer Fine	16.28	
Bulldozer Rough	14.51	
Concrete Grinder/Groover	19.20	
Crane Boom Trucks	18.19	
Crane Other	18.69	
Crane Rough/All-Terrain	19.19	
Drill Operator Rock	15.00	
Drill Operator Structure	21.07	
Excavator Fine	16.02	
Excavator Rough	14.67	
Grader/Blade Fine	19.86	
Grader/Blade Rough	15.12	
Loader 2 Cubic Yards or Less	12.38	
Loader Greater Than 2 Cubic Yards	17.91	
Material Transfer Vehicle (Shuttle Buggy)	15.44	
Mechanic	17.86	
Milling Machine	15.08	
Off-Road Hauler/Water Tanker	11.95	
Oiler/Greaser	15.05	
Pavement Marking Equipment	11.99	
Paver Asphalt	17.84	.08
Paver Concrete	18.20	
Roller Asphalt Breakdown	15.00	.08
Roller Asphalt Finish	16.08	.07
Roller Other	12.51	.03
Scraper Finish	12.86	
Scraper Rough	13.83	
Slip Form Machine	20.38	
Tack Truck/Distributor Operator	14.81	.02
TRUCK DRIVER		
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Greater	13.65	
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Less	12.48	

Welders – Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave

for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii)).

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of "identifiers" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than "SU" or "UAVG" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the "SU" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union

average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- * an existing published wage determination
- * a survey underlying a wage determination
- * a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- * a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations
Wage and Hour Division
U. S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

END OF GENERAL DECISION

**PROPOSAL FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF
CONTRACT No. C204265 IN BUNCOMBE AND HENDERSON COUNTIES, NORTH CAROLINA**

Date _____ 20 _____

**DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION,
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA**

The Bidder has carefully examined the location of the proposed work to be known as Contract No. **C204265** has carefully examined the plans and specifications, which are acknowledged to be part of the proposal, the special provisions, the proposal, the form of contract, and the forms of contract payment bond and contract performance bond; and thoroughly understands the stipulations, requirements and provisions. The undersigned bidder agrees to bound upon his execution of the bid and subsequent award to him by the Board of Transportation in accordance with this proposal to provide the necessary contract payment bond and contract performance bond within fourteen days after the written notice of award is received by him. The undersigned Bidder further agrees to provide all necessary machinery, tools, labor, and other means of construction; and to do all the work and to furnish all materials, except as otherwise noted, necessary to perform and complete the said contract in accordance with *the 2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* by the dates(s) specified in the Project Special Provisions and in accordance with the requirements of the Engineer, and at the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, for the various items given on the sheets contained herein.

The Bidder shall provide and furnish all the materials, machinery, implements, appliances and tools, and perform the work and required labor to construct and complete State Highway Contract No. **C204265** in **Buncombe and Henderson Counties**, for the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, bid by the Bidder in his bid and according to the proposal, plans, and specifications prepared by said Department, which proposal, plans, and specifications show the details covering this project, and hereby become a part of this contract.

The published volume entitled *North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, January 2018* with all amendments and supplements thereto, is by reference incorporated into and made a part of this contract; that, except as herein modified, all the construction and work included in this contract is to be done in accordance with the specifications contained in said volume, and amendments and supplements thereto, under the direction of the Engineer.

If the proposal is accepted and the award is made, the contract is valid only when signed either by the Contract Officer or such other person as may be designated by the Secretary to sign for the Department of Transportation. The conditions and provisions herein cannot be changed except over the signature of the said Contract Officer.

The quantities shown in the itemized proposal for the project are considered to be approximate only and are given as the basis for comparison of bids. The Department of Transportation may increase or decrease the quantity of any item or portion of the work as may be deemed necessary or expedient.

An increase or decrease in the quantity of an item will not be regarded as sufficient ground for an increase or decrease in the unit prices, nor in the time allowed for the completion of the work, except as provided for the contract.

Accompanying this bid is a bid bond secured by a corporate surety, or certified check payable to the order of the Department of Transportation, for five percent of the total bid price, which deposit is to be forfeited as liquidated damages in case this bid is accepted and the Bidder shall fail to provide the required payment and performance bonds with the Department of Transportation, under the condition of this proposal, within 14 calendar days after the written notice of award is received by him, as provided in the *Standard Specifications*; otherwise said deposit will be returned to the Bidder.



State Contract Officer

TABLE OF CONTENTS

**COVER SHEET
PROPOSAL SHEET**

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-1

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 1, BONUS CLAUSE AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:..... G-1

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 2 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-2

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 3 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-3

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 4 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-4

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 5 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-4

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 6 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-4

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 7 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-5

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 8 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-5

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 9 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-5

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 10 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-6

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 11 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-6

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 12 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-6

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 13 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-6

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 14 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-7

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 15 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-7

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 16 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: G-7

AWARD OF CONTRACT:..... G-8

PERMANENT VEGETATION ESTABLISHMENT:..... G-8

CONSTRUCTION MORATORIUM:..... G-8

MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS: G-9

SPECIALTY ITEMS:..... G-9

FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:..... G-9

PAYOUT SCHEDULE: G-10

SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS:..... G-10

DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE: G-11

CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS: G-24

CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS: G-25

USE OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS): G-25

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE: G-25

CARGO PREFERENCE ACT: G-26

SUBSURFACE INFORMATION:..... G-26

PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER - (Partial Payments for Materials):..... G-26

REMOVABLE PAVEMENT MARKINGS - (Partial Payments for Materials):..... G-27

MAINTENANCE OF THE PROJECT: G-27

COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS:..... G-27

ELECTRONIC BIDDING:..... G-28

BID DOCUMENTATION: G-28

TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:..... G-32

EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION: G-32

PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:..... G-37

NOTES TO CONTRACTOR: G-39

DELAY IN RIGHT OF ENTRY:..... G-40

ROADWAY..... R-1

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISIONS

AVAILABILITY FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS SSP-1
 NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY SSP-2
 ERRATA..... SSP-5
 PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES SSP-6
 TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION SSP-7
 MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS SSP-15
 REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL-AID CONST. CONTRACTS SSP-18
 ON-THE-JOB TRAINING SSP-27
 MINIMUM WAGES SSP-30

UNIT PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

GEOTECHNICAL.....GT-0.1
 SIGNING SN-1
 PAVEMENT MARKINGS..... PM-1
 TRAFFIC CONTROL TC-1
 LIGHTING..... LT-1
 UTILITY CONSTRUCTION..... UC-1
 UTILITY COORDINATOR..... US-1
 UTILITY BY OTHERS..... UBO-1
 EROSION CONTROL EC-1
 REST AREA RA-1
 REST AREA SITE WORK RAS-1
 TRAFFIC SIGNALS TS-1
 ITS..... ITS-1
 STRUCTURE / CULVERTS..... ST-1
 RAILROAD INSURANCE (Structures)RR-1

PERMITS P-1

PROPOSAL ITEM SHEET

ITEM SHEET(S) (TAN SHEETS)

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**GENERAL****CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:**

(8-15-00) (Rev. 12-18-07)

108

SP1 G07 A

The date of availability for this contract is **October 28, 2019**, except that work in jurisdictional waters and wetlands shall not begin until a meeting between the DOT, Regulatory Agencies, and the Contractor is held as stipulated in the permits contained elsewhere in this proposal. This delay in availability has been considered in determining the contract time for this project.

The completion date for this contract is **May 31, 2024**.

Except where otherwise provided by the contract, observation periods required by the contract will not be a part of the work to be completed by the completion date and/or intermediate contract times stated in the contract. The acceptable completion of the observation periods that extend beyond the final completion date shall be a part of the work covered by the performance and payment bonds.

The liquidated damages for this contract are **Two Hundred Dollars (\$ 200.00)** per calendar day. These liquidated damages will not be cumulative with any liquidated damages which may become chargeable under Intermediate Contract Time Number 1.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 1, BONUS CLAUSE AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 2-21-12)

108

SP1 G13 A(Rev)

Except for that work required under the Project Special Provisions entitled *Planting, Reforestation* and/or *Permanent Vegetation Establishment*, included elsewhere in this proposal, the Contractor will be required to complete all work included in this contract and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is **October 28, 2019**.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is **November 1, 2023**.

The Department desires that this intermediate contract work be completed by this date and that the Contractor pursue the work with such labor, equipment and materials as necessary to ensure that the intermediate date will be met without regard to time extensions and time reliefs provided for in the Specifications. Therefore, as full compensation for all extra costs involved, the Department agrees to pay as a bonus, the sum of **Two Million Dollars (\$ 2,000,000.00)** to the Contractor for satisfactorily completing this intermediate contract work on or prior to **November 1, 2023**. Should the Contractor fail to complete this intermediate contract work by this date, then normal time extension and time reliefs provided in the Specifications will apply and no bonus will be allowed.

The liquidated damages for this intermediate contract time are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per calendar day.

Upon apparent completion of all the work required to be completed by this intermediate date, a final inspection will be held in accordance with Article 105-17 and upon acceptance, the Department will assume responsibility for the maintenance of all work except *Planting, Reforestation* and/or *Permanent Vegetation Establishment*. The Contractor will be responsible for and shall make corrections of all damages to the completed roadway caused by his planting operations, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic through the project.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 2 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07)

108

SP1 G14 A

The Contractor shall complete the required work of installing, maintaining, and removing the traffic control devices for lane closures and restoring traffic to the existing traffic pattern. The Contractor shall not close or narrow a lane of traffic on **the following roads** during the following time restrictions:

DAY AND TIME RESTRICTIONS

I-26 (including associated Ramps), US 25, and US 64 Ramps

Monday thru Friday

6:00 AM to 9:00 PM

Saturday and Sunday

9:00 AM to 9:00 PM

SR 1358 (Fanning Bridge Road)

Monday thru Friday

6:00 AM to 9:00 AM and 4:00 PM to 6:00 PM

SR 1534 (Naples Road)

Monday thru Friday

6:00 AM to 9:00 AM

Saturday and Sunday

4:00 PM to 6:00 PM

In addition, the Contractor shall not close or narrow a lane of traffic on **I-26, US 25, US 64 (including associated Ramps), SR 1358 (Fanning Bridge Road) and SR 1534 (Naples Road)**, detain and/or alter the traffic flow on or during holidays, holiday weekends, special events, or any other time when traffic is unusually heavy, including the following schedules:

HOLIDAY AND HOLIDAY WEEKEND LANE CLOSURE RESTRICTIONS

1. For **unexpected occurrence** that creates unusually high traffic volumes, as directed by the Engineer.
2. For **Christmas and New Year's**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** December 18th and **9:00 PM** the third weekday following New Year's Day.
3. For **Easter**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** Thursday and **9:00 PM** Monday.
4. For **Memorial Day**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** Friday and **9:00 PM** Tuesday.

5. For **Independence Day**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** the day before Independence Day and **9:00 PM** the day after Independence Day.

If **Independence Day** is on a Friday, Saturday, Sunday or Monday, then between the hours of **6:00 AM** the Thursday before Independence Day and **9:00 PM** the Tuesday after Independence Day.
6. For **Labor Day**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** Friday and **9:00 PM** Tuesday.
7. For **Thanksgiving**, between the hours of **6:00 AM** the Friday before Thanksgiving Day and **9:00 PM** the Monday following Thanksgiving Day.
8. For the **Christmas retail season**, Thursdays through Sundays between the hours of **9:00 PM** the Thursday following Thanksgiving Day to **6:00 AM** December 18th.
9. For the **North Carolina Mountain State Fair** (typically held for 10 days starting the Friday after Labor Day), between the hours of **6:00 AM** the Friday following Labor Day and **9:00 PM** the following Monday after the Fair concludes.

Holidays and holiday weekends shall include New Year's, Easter, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving, and Christmas. The Contractor shall schedule his work so that lane closures will not be required during these periods, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract work shall be the time the Contractor begins to install all traffic control devices for lane closures according to the time restrictions listed herein.

The completion time for this intermediate contract work shall be the time the Contractor is required to complete the removal of all traffic control devices for lane closures according to the time restrictions stated above and place traffic in the existing traffic pattern.

The liquidated damages are **Two Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500.00)** per fifteen (15) minute time period.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 3 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 10-15-13)

108

SP1 G14 E

The Contractor shall complete the required work of installing, maintaining and removing the traffic control devices for road closures and restoring traffic to the existing traffic pattern. The Contractor shall not close **I-26 (including associated Ramps)** during the following time restrictions:

DAY AND TIME RESTRICTIONS

**Monday thru Sunday
5:00 AM - 11:00 PM**

The maximum allowable time for **existing bridge demolition, girder installation, overhead sign structure installation, signal mast arms and traffic shift** is **thirty (30) minutes** for **I-26**

(including associated Ramps). The Contractor shall reopen the travel lanes to traffic until any resulting traffic queue is depleted.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time will be the time the Contractor begins to install traffic control devices required for the road closures according to the time restrictions stated herein.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time will be the time the Contractor is required to complete the removal of traffic control devices required for the road closures according to the time restrictions stated herein and restore traffic to the existing traffic pattern.

The liquidated damages are **Three Thousand Seven Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$3,750)** per fifteen **(15)** minute time period.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 4 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #2.3 thru #2.8** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3 (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **twenty-one (21)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Three Thousand Dollars (\$3,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 5 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #3.3 thru #3.5** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3 (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **fourteen (14)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Three Thousand Dollars (\$3,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 6 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #10.1 thru #10.3** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Two Thousand Dollars (\$2,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 7 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Steps #1 thru #5** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Two Thousand Dollars (\$2,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 8 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Steps #8.1 thru #8.4** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **fourteen (14)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Ten Thousand Dollars (\$10,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 9 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase I, Steps #2.2 thru #2.7** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3 (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **one hundred eighty (180)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Seven Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$7,500.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 10 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IIB, Steps #2.2 and #2.3** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 11 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IIC, Step #2** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 12 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 F

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Steps #5.1 thru #5.5** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3B (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **Friday at 9:00 P.M.** that the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the following **Monday at 6:00 A.M.** after the time of availability.

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per hour.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 13 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SPI G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase IV, Step #5.6** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3B (I-4400C)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the **opening of -Y10- (US 25) to traffic in Phase IV, Step #5.5.**

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **fourteen (14)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date **-Y10- (US 25) is open to traffic in Phase IV, Step #5.5.**

The liquidated damages are **Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 14 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

The Contractor shall complete the work required of the **Snow and Ice Removal Special Provision included in this Contract. All equipment, including any specified appurtenances (plows, spreaders, etc.) shall be rigged, fitted and ready for operation (loading, plowing, etc.) and delivered to the pre-designated Department of Transportation Facilities.**

The time of availability for this intermediate contract time **for each piece of equipment** is the time that the Contractor is notified by a designated Department staff member that each individual piece of equipment with operator is required. The Contractor will be notified a minimum of three (3) hours before the piece of equipment with operator is needed to begin work.

The completion time for this intermediate contract time is the time that each piece of equipment is no longer required, as determined by a designated Department staff member.

The liquidated damages for failure to satisfactorily furnish equipment and operators as specified are **Two Hundred Dollars (\$ 200.00)** per hour per piece of equipment.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 15 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete all work required at each of the **following locations**, as shown on the **Rest Area Plans**, and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

Independent Intermediate Contract Times:

- A. **I-26 EB Rest Area**
- B. **I-26 WB Rest Area**

The date of availability for **each independent** intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to **close public access to the rest area**, but not before **October 28, 2019** or later than **April 30, 2020**.

The completion date for **each independent** intermediate contract time is the date which is **four hundred fifty-five (455)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date of availability. **Please refer to Local Note #15 on Sheet TMP-1C (I-4400C TMP) for maintenance of traffic.**

The liquidated damages for each **Independent Intermediate Contract Time** are **One Thousand Dollars (\$ 1,000.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 16 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 6-18-13)

108

SP1 G14 H

The Contractor shall complete the work required of **Phase II, Steps #4 thru #6** as shown on Sheet **TMP-3A (I-4400BB)** and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is the date the Contractor elects to begin the work.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is the date which is **ten (10)** consecutive calendar days after and including the date the Contractor begins this work.

The liquidated damages are **Ten Thousand Dollars (\$ 10,000.00)** per calendar day.

AWARD OF CONTRACT:

Revise the 2018 *Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-23, Subarticle 103-4 (A) General, first paragraph, replace the 3rd and 4th sentences with the following:

Where award is to be made, the notice of award will be issued within 60 days after the opening of bids or upon issuance of any necessary debt instrument, whichever is later, but not to exceed 120 days; except with the consent of the lowest responsible bidder the decision to award the contract to such bidder may be delayed for as long a time as may be agreed upon by the Department and such bidder. In the absence of such agreement, the lowest responsible bidder may withdraw his bid at the expiration of 120 days without penalty if no notice of award has been issued.

PERMANENT VEGETATION ESTABLISHMENT:

(2-16-12) (Rev. 10-15-13)

104

SP1 G16

Establish a permanent stand of the vegetation mixture shown in the contract. During the period between initial vegetation planting and final project acceptance, perform all work necessary to establish permanent vegetation on all erodible areas within the project limits, as well as, in borrow and waste pits. This work shall include erosion control device maintenance and installation, repair seeding and mulching, supplemental seeding and mulching, mowing, and fertilizer topdressing, as directed. All work shall be performed in accordance with the applicable section of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. All work required for initial vegetation planting shall be performed as a part of the work necessary for the completion and acceptance of the Intermediate Contract Time (ICT). Between the time of ICT and Final Project acceptance, or otherwise referred to as the vegetation establishment period, the Department will be responsible for preparing the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) inspection records.

Once the Engineer has determined that the permanent vegetation establishment requirement has been achieved at an 80% vegetation density (the amount of established vegetation per given area to stabilize the soil) and no erodible areas exist within the project limits, the Contractor will be notified to remove the remaining erosion control devices that are no longer needed. The Contractor will be responsible for, and shall correct any areas disturbed by operations performed in permanent vegetation establishment and the removal of temporary erosion control measures, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic on the project.

Payment for *Response for Erosion Control, Seeding and Mulching, Repair Seeding, Supplemental Seeding, Mowing, Fertilizer Topdressing, Silt Excavation, and Stone for Erosion Control* will be made at contract unit prices for the affected items. Work required that is not represented by contract line items will be paid in accordance with Articles 104-7 or 104-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No additional compensation will be made for maintenance and removal of temporary erosion control items.

CONSTRUCTION MORATORIUM:

(1-19-16)

SP1 G18C

No tree cutting will be allowed from **May 15** through **August 15** of any year.

MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS:

(2-19-02)

104

SP1 G28

The following listed items are the major contract items for this contract (see Article 104-5 of the 2018 Standard Specifications):

Line #	Description
82 -	Class IV Subgrade Stabilization
98 -	13" Port Cem Conc Pavement, Through Lanes (with Dowels)

SPECIALTY ITEMS:

(7-1-95)(Rev. 1-17-12)

108-6

SP1 G37

Items listed below will be the specialty items for this contract (see Article 108-6 of the 2018 Standard Specifications).

Line #	Description
162-182, 188	Guardrail
183-187	Fencing
194-244	Signing
271-274, 285-290, 297	Long-Life Pavement Markings
275-277	Removable Tape
298-299	Permanent Pavement Markers
300-333, 335-350	Lighting
351-408	Utility Construction
409-443, 445-446	Erosion Control
444	Reforestation
447-456	Planting
457-492	Rest Area
493-570, 675-677	Signals/ITS System
625-630, 632-633	Drilled Piers

FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:

(11-15-05) (Rev. 2-18-14)

109-8

SP1 G43

Revise the 2018 Standard Specifications as follows:

Page 1-87, Article 109-8, Fuel Price Adjustments, add the following:

The base index price for DIESEL #2 FUEL is \$ **1.9515** per gallon. Where any of the following are included as pay items in the contract, they will be eligible for fuel price adjustment.

The pay items and the fuel factor used in calculating adjustments to be made will be as follows:

Description	Units	Fuel Usage Factor Diesel
Unclassified Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29

Borrow Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Class IV Subgrade Stabilization	Gal/Ton	0.55
Aggregate Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Sub-Ballast	Gal/Ton	0.55
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Open-Graded Asphalt Friction Course	Gal/Ton	2.90
Permeable Asphalt Drainage Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Sand Asphalt Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Aggregate for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Portland Cement for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
" Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245
Concrete Shoulders Adjacent to ___ " Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245

PAYOUT SCHEDULE:

(1-19-10) (Rev. 1-17-12)

108

SP1 G57

Submit an Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule prior to beginning construction. The Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule will be used by the Department to monitor funding levels for this project. Include a monthly percentage breakdown (in terms of the total contract amount) of the work anticipated to be completed. The schedule should begin with the date the Contractor plans to begin construction and end with the anticipated completion date. Submit updates of the Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule on March 15, June 15, September 15, and December 15 of each calendar year until project acceptance. Submit the original Anticipated Monthly Payout Schedule and all subsequent updates to the Resident Engineer with a copy to the State Construction Engineer at 1 South Wilmington Street, 1543 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1543.

SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS:

(7-15-08) (Rev. 6-19-18)

108-2

SP1 G58

The Contractor's attention is directed to the Standard Special Provision entitled *Availability of Funds Termination of Contracts* included elsewhere in this proposal. The Department of Transportation's schedule of estimated completion progress for this project as required by that Standard Special Provision is as follows:

<u>Fiscal Year</u>		<u>Progress (% of Dollar Value)</u>
2020	(7/01/19 - 6/30/20)	27% of Total Amount Bid
2021	(7/01/20 - 6/30/21)	32% of Total Amount Bid
2022	(7/01/21 - 6/30/22)	23% of Total Amount Bid
2023	(7/01/22 - 6/30/23)	15% of Total Amount Bid
2024	(7/-1/23 – 6/30/24)	3% of Total Amount Bid

The Contractor shall also furnish his own progress schedule in accordance with Article 108-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Any acceleration of the progress as shown by the Contractor's progress schedule over the progress as shown above shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE:

(10-16-07)(Rev. 2-19-19)

102-15(J)

SP1 G61

Description

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts financed in whole or in part with Federal funds. This provision is guided by 49 CFR Part 26.

Definitions

Additional DBE Subcontractors - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that will not be used to meet the DBE goal. No submittal of a Letter of Intent is required.

Committed DBE Subcontractor - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that is being used to meet the DBE goal by submission of a Letter of Intent. Or any DBE used as a replacement for a previously committed DBE firm.

Contract Goal Requirement - The approved DBE participation at time of award, but not greater than the advertised contract goal.

DBE Goal - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage, that is to be performed by committed DBE subcontractor(s).

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

Goal Confirmation Letter - Written documentation from the Department to the bidder confirming the Contractor's approved, committed DBE participation along with a listing of the committed DBE firms.

Manufacturer - A firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises, the materials or supplies obtained by the Contractor.

Regular Dealer - A firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials or supplies required for the performance of the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold to the public in the usual course of business. A regular dealer engages in, as its principal business and in its own name, the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A regular dealer in such bulk items as steel, cement, gravel, stone, and petroleum products need not keep such products in stock, if it owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Brokers and packagers are not regarded as manufacturers or regular dealers within the meaning of this section.

Replacement / Substitution - A full or partial reduction in the amount of work subcontracted to a committed (or an approved substitute) DBE firm.

North Carolina Unified Certification Program (NCUCP) - A program that provides comprehensive services and information to applicants for DBE certification, such that an applicant is required to apply only once for a DBE certification that will be honored by all recipients of

USDOT funds in the state and not limited to the Department of Transportation only. The Certification Program is in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26.

United States Department of Transportation (USDOT) - Federal agency responsible for issuing regulations (49 CFR Part 26) and official guidance for the DBE program.

Forms and Websites Referenced in this Provision

DBE Payment Tracking System - On-line system in which the Contractor enters the payments made to DBE subcontractors who have performed work on the project.
<https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/Vendor/PaymentTracking/>

DBE-IS Subcontractor Payment Information - Form for reporting the payments made to all DBE firms working on the project. This form is for paper bid projects only.
<https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Turnpike/Documents/Form%20DBE-IS%20Subcontractor%20Payment%20Information.pdf>

RF-1 DBE Replacement Request Form - Form for replacing a committed DBE.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/DBE%20MBE%20WBE%20Replacement%20Request%20Form.pdf>

SAF Subcontract Approval Form - Form required for approval to sublet the contract.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Subcontract%20Approval%20Form%20Rev.%202012.zip>

JC-1 Joint Check Notification Form - Form and procedures for joint check notification. The form acts as a written joint check agreement among the parties providing full and prompt disclosure of the expected use of joint checks.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Joint%20Check%20Notification%20Form.pdf>

Letter of Intent - Form signed by the Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, manufacturer or regular dealer that affirms that a portion of said contract is going to be performed by the signed DBE for the estimated amount (based on quantities and unit prices) listed at the time of bid.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Letter%20of%20Intent%20to%20Perform%20as%20a%20Subcontractor.pdf>

Listing of DBE Subcontractors Form - Form for entering DBE subcontractors on a project that will meet this DBE goal. This form is for paper bids only.
[http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20\(Federal\).docx](http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20(Federal).docx)

Subcontractor Quote Comparison Sheet - Spreadsheet for showing all subcontractor quotes in the work areas where DBEs quoted on the project. This sheet is submitted with good faith effort packages.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE%20Subcontractor%20Quote%20Comparison%20Example.xls>

DBE Goal

The following DBE goal for participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises is established for this contract:

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises **6.0** %

- (A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that DBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above as the DBE goal.
- (B) *If the DBE goal is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use DBEs during the performance of the contract. Any DBE participation obtained shall be reported to the Department.

Directory of Transportation Firms (Directory)

Real-time information is available about firms doing business with the Department and firms that are certified through NCUCP in the Directory of Transportation Firms. Only firms identified in the Directory as DBE certified shall be used to meet the DBE goal. The Directory can be found at the following link. [https:// www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html](https://www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html)

The listing of an individual firm in the directory shall not be construed as an endorsement of the firm's capability to perform certain work.

Listing of DBE Subcontractors

At the time of bid, bidders shall submit all DBE participation that they anticipate to use during the life of the contract. Only those identified to meet the DBE goal will be considered committed, even though the listing shall include both committed DBE subcontractors and additional DBE subcontractors. Additional DBE subcontractor participation submitted at the time of bid will be used toward the Department's overall race-neutral goal. Only those firms with current DBE certification at the time of bid opening will be acceptable for listing in the bidder's submittal of DBE participation. The Contractor shall indicate the following required information:

- (A) Electronic Bids

Bidders shall submit a listing of DBE participation in the appropriate section of the electronic submittal file.

- (1) Submit the names and addresses of DBE firms identified to participate in the contract. If the bidder uses the updated listing of DBE firms shown in the electronic submittal file, the bidder may use the dropdown menu to access the name and address of the DBE firm.
- (2) Submit the contract line numbers of work to be performed by each DBE firm. When no figures or firms are entered, the bidder will be considered to have no DBE participation.

- (3) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the DBE goal.
- (B) Paper Bids
- (1) *If the DBE goal is more than zero,*
 - (a) Bidders, at the time the bid proposal is submitted, shall submit a listing of *DBE* participation, including the names and addresses on *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* contained elsewhere in the contract documents in order for the bid to be considered responsive. Bidders shall indicate the total dollar value of the DBE participation for the contract.
 - (b) If bidders have no DBE participation, they shall indicate this on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* by entering the word "None" or the number "0." This form shall be completed in its entirety. **Blank forms will not be deemed to represent zero participation.** Bids submitted that do not have DBE participation indicated on the appropriate form will not be read publicly during the opening of bids. The Department will not consider these bids for award and the proposal will be rejected.
 - (c) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the corresponding goal.
 - (2) *If the DBE goal is zero,* entries on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* are not required for the zero goal, however any DBE participation that is achieved during the project shall be reported in accordance with requirements contained elsewhere in the special provision.

DBE Prime Contractor

When a certified DBE firm bids on a contract that contains a DBE goal, the DBE firm is responsible for meeting the goal or making good faith efforts to meet the goal, just like any other bidder. In most cases, a DBE bidder on a contract will meet the DBE goal by virtue of the work it performs on the contract with its own forces. However, all the work that is performed by the DBE bidder and any other DBE subcontractors will count toward the DBE goal. The DBE bidder shall list itself along with any DBE subcontractors, if any, in order to receive credit toward the DBE goal.

For example, if the DBE goal is 45% and the DBE bidder will only perform 40% of the contract work, the prime will list itself at 40%, and the additional 5% shall be obtained through additional DBE participation with DBE subcontractors or documented through a good faith effort.

DBE prime contractors shall also follow Sections A and B listed under *Listing of DBE Subcontractor* just as a non-DBE bidder would.

Written Documentation – Letter of Intent

The bidder shall submit written documentation for each DBE that will be used to meet the DBE goal of the contract, indicating the bidder's commitment to use the DBE in the contract. This documentation shall be submitted on the Department's form titled *Letter of Intent*.

The documentation shall be received in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer or at DBE@ncdot.gov no later than 10:00 a.m. of the sixth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the sixth day falls on an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

If the bidder fails to submit the Letter of Intent from each committed DBE to be used toward the DBE goal, or if the form is incomplete (i.e. both signatures are not present), the DBE participation will not count toward meeting the DBE goal. If the lack of this participation drops the commitment below the DBE goal, the Contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts, completed in its entirety, to the State Contractor Utilization Engineer or DBE@ncdot.gov no later than 10:00 a.m. on the eighth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the eighth day falls on an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Submission of Good Faith Effort

If the bidder fails to meet or exceed the DBE goal, the apparent lowest responsive bidder shall submit to the Department documentation of adequate good faith efforts made to reach the DBE goal.

A hard copy and an electronic copy of this information shall be received in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer or at DBE@ncdot.gov no later than 10:00 a.m. on the sixth calendar day following opening of bids unless the sixth day falls on an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the State Contractor Utilization Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day. If the contractor cannot send the information electronically, then one complete set and 5 copies of this information shall be received under the same time constraints above.

Note: Where the information submitted includes repetitious solicitation letters, it will be acceptable to submit a representative letter along with a distribution list of the firms that were solicited. Documentation of DBE quotations shall be a part of the good faith effort submittal. This documentation may include written subcontractor quotations, telephone log notations of verbal quotations, or other types of quotation documentation.

Consideration of Good Faith Effort for Projects with DBE Goals More Than Zero

Adequate good faith efforts mean that the bidder took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness, could reasonably be expected to

obtain sufficient DBE participation. Adequate good faith efforts also mean that the bidder actively and aggressively sought DBE participation. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not considered good faith efforts.

The Department will consider the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts a bidder has made. Listed below are examples of the types of actions a bidder will take in making a good faith effort to meet the goal and are not intended to be exclusive or exhaustive, nor is it intended to be a mandatory checklist.

- (A) Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising, written notices, use of verifiable electronic means through the use of the NCDOT Directory of Transportation Firms) the interest of all certified DBEs who have the capability to perform the work of the contract. The bidder must solicit this interest within at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow the DBEs to respond to the solicitation. Solicitation shall provide the opportunity to DBEs within the Division and surrounding Divisions where the project is located. The bidder must determine with certainty if the DBEs are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow up initial solicitations.
- (B) Selecting portions of the work to be performed by DBEs in order to increase the likelihood that the DBE goals will be achieved.
 - (1) Where appropriate, break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate DBE participation, even when the prime contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.
 - (2) Negotiate with subcontractors to assume part of the responsibility to meet the contract DBE goal when the work to be sublet includes potential for DBE participation (2nd and 3rd tier subcontractors).
- (C) Providing interested DBEs with adequate information about the plans, specifications, and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.
- (D)
 - (1) Negotiating in good faith with interested DBEs. It is the bidder's responsibility to make a portion of the work available to DBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available DBE subcontractors and suppliers, to facilitate DBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for DBEs to perform the work.
 - (2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including DBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using DBEs is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's failure to meet the contract DBE goal, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire

of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Bidding contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from DBEs if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable.

- (E) Not rejecting DBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities. The bidder's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associates and political or social affiliations (for example, union vs. non-union employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the bidder's efforts to meet the project goal.
- (F) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the recipient or bidder.
- (G) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.
- (H) Effectively using the services of available minority/women community organizations; minority/women contractors' groups; Federal, State, and local minority/women business assistance offices; and other organizations as allowed on a case-by-case basis to provide assistance in the recruitment and placement of DBEs. Contact within 7 days from the bid opening the Business Opportunity and Work Force Development Unit at BOWD@ncdot.gov to give notification of the bidder's inability to get DBE quotes.
- (I) Any other evidence that the bidder submits which shows that the bidder has made reasonable good faith efforts to meet the DBE goal.

In addition, the Department may take into account the following:

- (1) Whether the bidder's documentation reflects a clear and realistic plan for achieving the DBE goal.
- (2) The bidders' past performance in meeting the DBE goals.
- (3) The performance of other bidders in meeting the DBE goal. For example, when the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but others meet it, you may reasonably raise the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts the apparent successful bidder could have met the goal. If the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but meets or exceeds the average DBE participation obtained by other bidders, the Department may view this, in conjunction with other factors, as evidence of the apparent successful bidder having made a good faith effort.

If the Department does not award the contract to the apparent lowest responsive bidder, the Department reserves the right to award the contract to the next lowest responsive bidder that can satisfy to the Department that the DBE goal can be met or that an adequate good faith effort has been made to meet the DBE goal.

Non-Good Faith Appeal

The State Contractual Services Engineer will notify the contractor verbally and in writing of non-good faith. A contractor may appeal a determination of non-good faith made by the Goal Compliance Committee. If a contractor wishes to appeal the determination made by the Committee, they shall provide written notification to the State Contractual Services Engineer or at DBE@ncdot.gov. The appeal shall be made within 2 business days of notification of the determination of non-good faith.

Counting DBE Participation Toward Meeting DBE Goal**(A) Participation**

The total dollar value of the participation by a committed DBE will be counted toward the contract goal requirement. The total dollar value of participation by a committed DBE will be based upon the value of work actually performed by the DBE and the actual payments to DBE firms by the Contractor.

(B) Joint Checks

Prior notification of joint check use shall be required when counting DBE participation for services or purchases that involves the use of a joint check. Notification shall be through submission of Form JC-1 (*Joint Check Notification Form*) and the use of joint checks shall be in accordance with the Department's Joint Check Procedures.

(C) Subcontracts (Non-Trucking)

A DBE may enter into subcontracts. Work that a DBE subcontracts to another DBE firm may be counted toward the contract goal requirement. Work that a DBE subcontracts to a non-DBE firm does not count toward the contract goal requirement. If a DBE contractor or subcontractor subcontracts a significantly greater portion of the work of the contract than would be expected on the basis of standard industry practices, it shall be presumed that the DBE is not performing a commercially useful function. The DBE may present evidence to rebut this presumption to the Department. The Department's decision on the rebuttal of this presumption is subject to review by the Federal Highway Administration but is not administratively appealable to USDOT.

(D) Joint Venture

When a DBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement a portion of the total value of participation with the DBE in the joint venture, that portion of the total dollar value being a distinct clearly defined portion of work that the DBE performs with its forces.

(E) Suppliers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement 60 percent of its expenditures for materials and supplies required to complete the contract and obtained from a DBE regular dealer and 100 percent of such expenditures from a DBE manufacturer.

(F) Manufacturers and Regular Dealers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement the following expenditures to DBE firms that are not manufacturers or regular dealers:

- (1) The fees or commissions charged by a DBE firm for providing a *bona fide* service, such as professional, technical, consultant, or managerial services, or for providing bonds or insurance specifically required for the performance of a DOT-assisted contract, provided the fees or commissions are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees and commissions customarily allowed for similar services.
- (2) With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a DBE, which is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site (but not the cost of the materials and supplies themselves), provided the fees are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services.

Commercially Useful Function

(A) DBE Utilization

The Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement only expenditures to DBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of a contract. A DBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of the work of the contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved. To perform a commercially useful function, the DBE shall also be responsible with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself. To determine whether a DBE is performing a commercially useful function, the Department will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid under the contract is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the DBE credit claimed for its performance of the work, and any other relevant factors.

(B) DBE Utilization in Trucking

The following factors will be used to determine if a DBE trucking firm is performing a commercially useful function:

- (1) The DBE shall be responsible for the management and supervision of the entire trucking operation for which it is responsible on a particular contract, and there shall not be a contrived arrangement for the purpose of meeting DBE goals.
- (2) The DBE shall itself own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the contract.
- (3) The DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services it provides on the contract using trucks it owns, insures, and operates using drivers it employs.
- (4) The DBE may subcontract the work to another DBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a DBE. The DBE who subcontracts work to another DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the subcontracted DBE provides on the contract.
- (5) The DBE may also subcontract the work to a non-DBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The DBE who subcontracts the work to a non-DBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by the non-DBE subcontractor not to exceed the value of transportation services provided by DBE-owned trucks on the contract. Additional participation by non-DBE subcontractors receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as a result of the subcontract arrangement. The value of services performed under subcontract agreements between the DBE and the Contractor will not count towards the DBE contract requirement.
- (6) A DBE may lease truck(s) from an established equipment leasing business open to the general public. The lease must indicate that the DBE has exclusive use of and control over the truck. This requirement does not preclude the leased truck from working for others during the term of the lease with the consent of the DBE, so long as the lease gives the DBE absolute priority for use of the leased truck. This type of lease may count toward the DBE's credit as long as the driver is under the DBE's payroll.
- (7) Subcontracted/leased trucks shall display clearly on the dashboard the name of the DBE that they are subcontracted/leased to and their own company name if it is not identified on the truck itself. Magnetic door signs are not permitted.

DBE Replacement

When a Contractor has relied on a commitment to a DBE subcontractor (or an approved substitute DBE subcontractor) to meet all or part of a contract goal requirement, the contractor shall not terminate the DBE subcontractor for convenience. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the Contractor seeks to perform the work of the terminated subcontractor with another

DBE subcontractor, a non-DBE subcontractor, or with the Contractor's own forces or those of an affiliate.

The Contractor must give notice in writing both by certified mail and email to the DBE subcontractor, with a copy to the Engineer of its intent to request to terminate and/or substitute, and the reason for the request. The Contractor must give the DBE subcontractor five (5) business days to respond to the Contractor's Notice of Intent to Request Termination and/or Substitution. If the DBE subcontractor objects to the intended termination/substitution, the DBE, within five (5) business days must advise the Contractor and the Department of the reasons why the action should not be approved. The five-day notice period shall begin on the next business day after written notice is provided to the DBE subcontractor.

A committed DBE subcontractor may only be terminated after receiving the Department's written approval based upon a finding of good cause for the proposed termination and/or substitution. For purposes of this section, good cause shall include the following circumstances:

- (a) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to execute a written contract;
- (b) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to perform the work of its subcontract in a way consistent with normal industry standards. Provided, however, that good cause does not exist if the failure or refusal of the DBE subcontractor to perform its work on the subcontract results from the bad faith or discriminatory action of the prime contractor;
- (c) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to meet the prime contractor's reasonable, nondiscriminatory bond requirements;
- (d) The listed DBE subcontractor becomes bankrupt, insolvent, or exhibits credit unworthiness;
- (e) The listed DBE subcontractor is ineligible to work on public works projects because of suspension and debarment proceedings pursuant to 2 CFR Parts 180, 215 and 1,200 or applicable state law;
- (f) The listed DBE subcontractor is not a responsible contractor;
- (g) The listed DBE voluntarily withdraws from the project and provides written notice of withdrawal;
- (h) The listed DBE is ineligible to receive DBE credit for the type of work required;
- (i) A DBE owner dies or becomes disabled with the result that the listed DBE contractor is unable to complete its work on the contract;
- (j) Other documented good cause that compels the termination of the DBE subcontractor. Provided, that good cause does not exist if the prime contractor seeks to terminate a DBE it relied upon to obtain the contract so that the prime contractor can self-perform the work for which the DBE contractor was engaged or so that the prime contractor can substitute another DBE or non-DBE contractor after contract award.

The Contractor shall comply with the following for replacement of a committed DBE:

(A) Performance Related Replacement

When a committed DBE is terminated for good cause as stated above, an additional DBE that was submitted at the time of bid may be used to fulfill the DBE commitment. A good faith effort will only be required for removing a committed DBE if there were no additional

DBEs submitted at the time of bid to cover the same amount of work as the DBE that was terminated.

If a replacement DBE is not found that can perform at least the same amount of work as the terminated DBE, the Contractor shall submit a good faith effort documenting the steps taken. Such documentation shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (1) Copies of written notification to DBEs that their interest is solicited in contracting the work defaulted by the previous DBE or in subcontracting other items of work in the contract.
 - (2) Efforts to negotiate with DBEs for specific subbids including, at a minimum:
 - (a) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs who were contacted.
 - (b) A description of the information provided to DBEs regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed.
 - (3) A list of reasons why DBE quotes were not accepted.
 - (4) Efforts made to assist the DBEs contacted, if needed, in obtaining bonding or insurance required by the Contractor.
- (B) Decertification Replacement
- (1) When a committed DBE is decertified by the Department after the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) has been received by the Department, the Department will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement DBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement.
 - (2) When a committed DBE is decertified prior to the Department receiving the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) for the named DBE firm, the Contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to replace the DBE subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work to meet the DBE goal requirement. If a DBE firm is not found to do the same amount of work, a good faith effort must be submitted to NCDOT (see A herein for required documentation).

All requests for replacement of a committed DBE firm shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval on Form RF-1 (*DBE Replacement Request*). If the Contractor fails to follow this procedure, the Contractor may be disqualified from further bidding for a period of up to 6 months.

Changes in the Work

When the Engineer makes changes that result in the reduction or elimination of work to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor will not be required to seek additional

participation. When the Engineer makes changes that result in additional work to be performed by a DBE based upon the Contractor's commitment, the DBE shall participate in additional work to the same extent as the DBE participated in the original contract work.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in extra work, which has more than a minimal impact on the contract amount, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in an alteration of plans or details of construction, and a portion or all of the work had been expected to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor shall seek participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Contractor requests changes in the work that result in the reduction or elimination of work that the Contractor committed to be performed by a DBE, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs equal to the reduced DBE participation caused by the changes.

Reports and Documentation

A SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) shall be submitted for all work which is to be performed by a DBE subcontractor. The Department reserves the right to require copies of actual subcontract agreements involving DBE subcontractors.

When using transportation services to meet the contract commitment, the Contractor shall submit a proposed trucking plan in addition to the SAF. The plan shall be submitted prior to beginning construction on the project. The plan shall include the names of all trucking firms proposed for use, their certification type(s), the number of trucks owned by the firm, as well as the individual truck identification numbers, and the line item(s) being performed.

Within 30 calendar days of entering into an agreement with a DBE for materials, supplies or services, not otherwise documented by the SAF as specified above, the Contractor shall furnish the Engineer a copy of the agreement. The documentation shall also indicate the percentage (60% or 100%) of expenditures claimed for DBE credit.

Reporting Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Participation

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with an accounting of payments made to all DBE firms, including material suppliers and contractors at all levels (prime, subcontractor, or second tier subcontractor). This accounting shall be furnished to the Engineer for any given month by the end of the following month. Failure to submit this information accordingly may result in the following action:

- (A) Withholding of money due in the next partial pay estimate; or
- (B) Removal of an approved contractor from the prequalified bidders' list or the removal of other entities from the approved subcontractors list.

While each contractor (prime, subcontractor, 2nd tier subcontractor) is responsible for accurate accounting of payments to DBEs, it shall be the prime contractor's responsibility to report all monthly and final payment information in the correct reporting manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from further bidding until the required information is submitted.

Failure on the part of any subcontractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from being approved for work on future DOT projects until the required information is submitted.

Contractors reporting transportation services provided by non-DBE lessees shall evaluate the value of services provided during the month of the reporting period only.

At any time, the Engineer can request written verification of subcontractor payments.

The Contractor shall report the accounting of payments through the Department's DBE Payment Tracking System.

Failure to Meet Contract Requirements

Failure to meet contract requirements in accordance with Subarticle 102-15(J) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* may be cause to disqualify the Contractor.

CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS:

(3-21-90)

SP1 G85

The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

- (A) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
- (B) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, *Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying*, in accordance with its instructions.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by *Section 1352, Title 31, U.S. Code*. Any person who

fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

The prospective participant also agrees by submitting his or her bid or proposal that he or she shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS:

(7-1-95)

102-14

SP1 G88

If the successful bidder does not hold the proper license to perform any plumbing, heating, air conditioning, or electrical work in this contract, he will be required to sublet such work to a contractor properly licensed in accordance with *Article 2 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of heating, plumbing, and air conditioning contractors) and *Article 4 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of electrical contractors).

USE OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS):

(8-20-19)

SP1 G092

The Contractor shall adhere to all Federal, State and Local regulations and guidelines for the use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS). This includes but is not limited to US 14 CFR Part 107 *Small UAS Rule*, NC GS 15A-300.2 *Regulation of launch and recovery sites*, NC GS 63-95 *Training required for the operation of unmanned aircraft systems*, NC GS 63-96 *Permit required for commercial operation of unmanned aircraft system*, and NCDOT UAS Policy. The required operator certifications include possessing a current Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Remote Pilot Certificate, a NC UAS Operator Permit as well as operating a UAS registered with the FAA.

Prior to beginning operations, the Contractor shall complete the NCDOT UAS – Flight Operation Approval Form and submit it to the Engineer for approval. All UAS operations shall be approved by the Engineer prior to beginning the operations.

All contractors or subcontractors operating UAS shall have UAS specific general liability insurance to cover all operations under this contract.

The use of UAS is at the Contractor's discretion. No measurement or payment will be made for the use of UAS. In the event that the Department directs the Contractor to utilize UAS, payment will be in accordance with Article 104-7 Extra Work.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE:

(11-22-94)

108-5

SP1 G100

To report bid rigging activities call: **1-800-424-9071**

The U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) operates the above toll-free hotline Monday through Friday, 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. eastern time. Anyone with knowledge of possible bid rigging, bidder collusion, or other fraudulent activities should use the hotline to report such activities.

The hotline is part of the DOT's continuing effort to identify and investigate highway construction contract fraud and abuse is operated under the direction of the DOT Inspector General. All information will be treated confidentially and caller anonymity will be respected.

CARGO PREFERENCE ACT:

(2-16-16)

Privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels transporting cargoes are subject to the Cargo Preference Act (CPA) of 1954 requirements and regulations found in 46 CFR 381.7. Contractors are directed to clause (b) of 46 CFR 381.7 as follows:

(b) Contractor and Subcontractor Clauses. "Use of United States-flag vessels: The contractor agrees-

" (1) To utilize privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to this contract, to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-flag commercial vessels.

(2) To furnish within 20 days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating outside the United States a legible copy of a rated, 'on-board' commercial ocean bill-of-lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in paragraph (b) (1) of this section to both the Contracting Officer (through the prime contractor in the case of subcontractor bills-of-lading) and to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590.

(3) To insert the substance of the provisions of this clause in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract."

SUBSURFACE INFORMATION:

(7-1-95)

450

SP1 G112 D

Subsurface information is available on the roadway and structure portions of this project.

PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER - (Partial Payments for Materials):

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-16-11)

1170-4

SP1 G121

When so authorized by the Engineer, partial materials payments will be made up to 95 percent of the delivered cost of portable concrete barrier, provided that these materials have been delivered on the project and stored in an acceptable manner, and further provided the documents listed in Subarticle 109-5(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* have been furnished to the Engineer.

The provisions of Subarticle 109-5(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* will apply to the portable concrete barrier.

REMOVABLE PAVEMENT MARKINGS - (Partial Payments for Materials):

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-16-11)

1205-10

SP1 G124

When so authorized by the Engineer, partial materials payments will be made up to 95 percent of the delivered cost of pavement marking tape, provided that these materials have been delivered on or in the vicinity of the project, stored in an acceptable manner, not to exceed the shelf life recommended by the manufacturer, and further provided the documents listed in Subarticle 109-5(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* have been furnished to the Engineer.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the material and the satisfactory performance of the material when used in the work.

The provisions of Article 109-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* will not apply to removable pavement marking materials.

MAINTENANCE OF THE PROJECT:

(11-20-07) (Rev. 1-17-12)

104-10

SP1 G125

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-39, Article 104-10 Maintenance of the Project, line 25, add the following after the first sentence of the first paragraph:

All guardrail/guiderail within the project limits shall be included in this maintenance.

Page 1-39, Article 104-10 Maintenance of the Project, line 30, add the following as the last sentence of the first paragraph:

The Contractor shall perform weekly inspections of guardrail and guiderail and shall report damages to the Engineer on the same day of the weekly inspection. *Where damaged guardrail or guiderail is repaired or replaced as a result of maintaining the project in accordance with this article, such repair or replacement shall be performed within 7 consecutive calendar days of such inspection report.*

Page 1-39, Article 104-10 Maintenance of the Project, lines 42-44, replace the last sentence of the last paragraph with the following:

The Contractor will not be directly compensated for any maintenance operations necessary, except for maintenance of guardrail/guiderail, as this work will be considered incidental to the work covered by the various contract items. The provisions of Article 104-7, Extra Work, and Article 104-8, Compensation and Record Keeping will apply to authorized maintenance of guardrail/guiderail. Performance of weekly inspections of guardrail/guiderail, and the damage reports required as described above, will be considered to be an incidental part of the work being paid for by the various contract items.

COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS:

(7-1-95)

105-7

SP1 G133

The Contractor's attention is directed to Article 105-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

I-4700 (C204266) is currently under construction and located adjacent to this project. I-4700 is not anticipated to be complete prior to the letting of this project.

I-5925 (Henderson County) is located in the vicinity of this project and is anticipated to be let prior to the completion of this project.

Green River Bridge Project 15BPR.20, Replacement of Bridge # 112 & 108 over Green River.

The Contractor on this project shall cooperate with the Contractor working within or adjacent to the limits of this project to the extent that the work can be carried out to the best advantage of all concerned.

ELECTRONIC BIDDING:

(2-19-19)

101, 102, 103

SP1 G140

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-4, Article 101-3, DEFINITIONS, BID (OR PROPOSAL) *Electronic Bid*, line 1, replace “Bid Express®” with “the approved electronic bidding provider”.

Page 1-15, Subarticle 102-8(B), Electronic Bids, lines 39-40, replace “to Bid Express®” with “via the approved electronic bidding provider”.

Page 1-15, Subarticle 102-8(B)(1), Electronic Bids, line 41, delete “from Bid Express®”

Page 1-17, Subarticle 102-9(C)(2), Electronic Bids, line 21, replace “Bid Express® miscellaneous folder within the .ebs” with “electronic submittal”.

Page 1-29, Subarticle 103-4(C)(2), Electronic Bids, line 32, replace “.ebs miscellaneous data file of Expedite” with “electronic submittal file”

BID DOCUMENTATION:

(1-1-02) (Rev.8-18-15)

103

SP1 G142

General

The successful Bidder (Contractor) shall submit the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation used to prepare the bid for this contract to the Department within 10 days after receipt of notice of award of contract. Such documentation shall be placed in escrow with a banking institution or other bonded document storage facility selected by the Department.

The Department will not execute the contract until the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation has been received by the Department.

Terms

Bid Documentation - Bid Documentation shall mean all written information, working papers, computer printouts, electronic media, charts, and all other data compilations which contain or reflect information, data, and calculations used by the Bidder in the preparation of the bid. The term *bid documentation* includes, but is not limited to, contractor equipment rates, contractor overhead rates, labor rates, efficiency or productivity factors, arithmetical calculations, and quotations from subcontractors and material suppliers to the extent that such rates and quotations were used by the Bidder in formulating and determining the bid. The term *bid documentation* also includes any manuals, which are standard to the industry used by the Bidder in determining the bid. Such manuals may be included in the bid documentation by reference. Such reference shall include the name and date of the publication and the publisher. *Bid Documentation* does not include bid documents provided by the Department for use by the Bidder in bidding on this project. The Bid Documentation can be in the form of electronic submittal (i.e. thumb drive) or paper. If the Bidder elects to submit the Bid Documentation in electronic format, the Department requires a backup submittal (i.e. a second thumb drive) in case one is corrupted.

Contractor's Representative - Officer of the Contractor's company; if not an officer, the Contractor shall supply a letter signed and notarized by an officer of the Contractor's company, granting permission for the representative to sign the escrow agreement on behalf of the Contractor.

Escrow Agent - Officer of the select banking institution or other bonded document storage facility authorized to receive and release bid documentation.

Escrow Agreement Information

A draft copy of the Escrow Agreement will be mailed to the Bidder after the notice of award for informational purposes. The Bidder and Department will sign the actual Escrow Agreement at the time the bid documentation is delivered to the Escrow Agent.

Failure to Provide Bid Documentation

The Bidder's failure to provide the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation within 10 days after the notice of award is received may be just cause for rescinding the award of the contract and may result in the removal of the Bidder from the Department's list of qualified bidders for a period of up to 180 days. Award may then be made to the next lowest responsible bidder or the work may be readvertised and constructed under the contract or otherwise, as the Department may decide.

Submittal of Bid Documentation

- (A) Appointment – Email specs@ncdot.gov or call 919.707.6900 to schedule an appointment.
- (B) Delivery - A representative of the Bidder shall deliver the original, unaltered bid documentation or a certified copy of the original, unaltered bid documentation to the Department, in a container suitable for sealing, within 10 days after the notice of award is received.

- (C) Packaging – The container shall be no larger than 15.5 inches in length by 12 inches wide by 11 inches high and shall be water resistant. The container shall be clearly marked on the face and the back of the container with the following information: Bid Documentation, Bidder's Name, Bidder's Address, Date of Escrow Submittal, Contract Number, TIP Number if applicable, and County.

Affidavit

Bid documentation will be considered a certified copy if the Bidder includes an affidavit stating that the enclosed documentation is an EXACT copy of the original documentation used by the Bidder to determine the bid for this project. The affidavit shall also list each bid document with sufficient specificity so a comparison may be made between the list and the bid documentation to ensure that all of the bid documentation listed in the affidavit has been enclosed for escrow. The affidavit shall attest that the affiant has personally examined the bid documentation, that the affidavit lists all of the documents used by the Bidder to determine the bid for this project, and that all bid documentation has been included. The affidavit shall be signed by a chief officer of the company, have the person's name and title typed below the signature, and the signature shall be notarized at the bottom of the affidavit.

Verification

Upon delivery of the bid documentation, the Department's Contract Officer and the Bidder's representative will verify the accuracy and completeness of the bid documentation compared to the affidavit. Should a discrepancy exist, the Bidder's representative shall immediately furnish the Department's Contract Officer with any other needed bid documentation. The Department's Contract Officer upon determining that the bid documentation is complete will, in the presence of the Bidder's representative, immediately place the complete bid documentation and affidavit in the container and seal it. Both parties will deliver the sealed container to the Escrow Agent for placement in a safety deposit box, vault, or other secure accommodation.

Confidentiality of Bid Documentation

The bid documentation and affidavit in escrow are, and will remain, the property of the Bidder. The Department has no interest in, or right to, the bid documentation and affidavit other than to verify the contents and legibility of the bid documentation unless the Contractor gives written notice of intent to file a claim, files a written claim, files a written and verified claim, or initiates litigation against the Department. In the event of such written notice of intent to file a claim, filing of a written claim, filing a written and verified claim, or initiation of litigation against the Department, or receipt of a letter from the Contractor authorizing release, the bid documentation and affidavit may become the property of the Department for use in considering any claim or in litigation as the Department may deem appropriate.

Any portion or portions of the bid documentation designated by the Bidder as a *trade secret* at the time the bid documentation is delivered to the Department's Contract Officer shall be protected from disclosure as provided by *G.S. 132-1.2*.

Duration and Use

The bid documentation and affidavit shall remain in escrow until 60 calendar days from the time the Contractor receives the final estimate; or until such time as the Contractor:

- (A) Gives written notice of intent to file a claim,
- (B) Files a written claim,
- (C) Files a written and verified claim,
- (D) Initiates litigation against the Department related to the contract; or
- (E) Authorizes in writing its release.

Upon the giving of written notice of intent to file a claim, filing a written claim, filing a written and verified claim, or the initiation of litigation by the Contractor against the Department, or receipt of a letter from the Contractor authorizing release, the Department may obtain the release and custody of the bid documentation.

The Bidder certifies and agrees that the sealed container placed in escrow contains all of the bid documentation used to determine the bid and that no other bid documentation shall be relevant or material in litigation over claims brought by the Contractor arising out of this contract.

Release of Bid Documentation to the Contractor

If the bid documentation remains in escrow 60 calendar days after the time the Contractor receives the final estimate and the Contractor has not filed a written claim, filed a written and verified claim, or has not initiated litigation against the Department related to the contract, the Department will instruct the Escrow Agent to release the sealed container to the Contractor.

The Contractor will be notified by certified letter from the Escrow Agent that the bid documentation will be released to the Contractor. The Contractor or his representative shall retrieve the bid documentation from the Escrow Agent within 30 days of the receipt of the certified letter. If the Contractor does not receive the documents within 30 days of the receipt of the certified letter, the Department will contact the Contractor to determine final disposition of the bid documentation.

Payment

The cost of the escrow will be borne by the Department. There will be no separate payment for all costs of compilation of the data, container, or verification of the bid documentation. Payment at the various contract unit or lump sum prices in the contract will be full compensation for all such costs.

TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:

(7-15-03)

108

SP1 G145

- (A) The Contractor shall guarantee materials and workmanship against latent and patent defects arising from faulty materials, faulty workmanship or negligence for a period of twelve months following the date of final acceptance of the work for maintenance and shall replace such defective materials and workmanship without cost to the Department. The Contractor will not be responsible for damage due to faulty design, normal wear and tear, for negligence on the part of the Department, and/or for use in excess of the design.
- (B) Where items of equipment or material carry a manufacturer's guarantee for any period in excess of twelve months, then the manufacturer's guarantee shall apply for that particular piece of equipment or material. The Department's first remedy shall be through the manufacturer although the Contractor is responsible for invoking the warranted repair work with the manufacturer. The Contractor's responsibility shall be limited to the term of the manufacturer's guarantee. NCDOT would be afforded the same warranty as provided by the Manufacturer.

This guarantee provision shall be invoked only for major components of work in which the Contractor would be wholly responsible for under the terms of the contract. Examples would include pavement structures, bridge components, and sign structures. This provision will not be used as a mechanism to force the Contractor to return to the project to make repairs or perform additional work that the Department would normally compensate the Contractor for. In addition, routine maintenance activities (i.e. mowing grass, debris removal, ruts in earth shoulders,) are not parts of this guarantee.

Appropriate provisions of the payment and/or performance bonds shall cover this guarantee for the project.

To ensure uniform application statewide the Division Engineer will forward details regarding the circumstances surrounding any proposed guarantee repairs to the Chief Engineer for review and approval prior to the work being performed.

EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION:

(1-16-07) (Rev 04-01-19)

105-16, 225-2, 16

SP1 G180

General

Schedule and conduct construction activities in a manner that will minimize soil erosion and the resulting sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters. Comply with the requirements herein regardless of whether or not a National Pollution discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit for the work is required.

Establish a chain of responsibility for operations and subcontractors' operations to ensure that the *Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan* is implemented and maintained over the life of the contract.

- (A) *Certified Supervisor* - Provide a certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor to manage the Contractor and subcontractor operations, insure compliance with

Federal, State and Local ordinances and regulations, and manage the Quality Control Program.

- (B) *Certified Foreman* - Provide a certified, trained foreman for each construction operation that increases the potential for soil erosion or the possible sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters.
- (C) *Certified Installer* - Provide a certified installer to install or direct the installation for erosion or sediment/stormwater control practices.
- (D) *Certified Designer* - Provide a certified designer for the design of the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of reclamation plans and, if applicable, for the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Roles and Responsibilities

- (A) *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor* - The Certified Supervisor shall be Level II and responsible for ensuring the erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan is adequately implemented and maintained on the project and for conducting the quality control program. The Certified Supervisor shall be on the project within 24 hours notice from initial exposure of an erodible surface to the project's final acceptance. Perform the following duties:
 - (1) **Manage Operations** - Coordinate and schedule the work of subcontractors so that erosion and sediment control/stormwater measures are fully executed for each operation and in a timely manner over the duration of the contract.
 - (a) Oversee the work of subcontractors so that appropriate erosion and sediment control/stormwater preventive measures are conformed to at each stage of the work.
 - (b) Prepare the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Inspection Record and submit to the Engineer.
 - (c) Attend all weekly or monthly construction meetings to discuss the findings of the NPDES inspection and other related issues.
 - (d) Implement the erosion and sediment control/stormwater site plans requested.
 - (e) Provide any needed erosion and sediment control/stormwater practices for the Contractor's temporary work not shown on the plans, such as, but not limited to work platforms, temporary construction, pumping operations, plant and storage yards, and cofferdams.
 - (f) Acquire applicable permits and comply with requirements for borrow pits, dewatering, and any temporary work conducted by the Contractor in jurisdictional areas.
 - (g) Conduct all erosion and sediment control/stormwater work in a timely and workmanlike manner.
 - (h) Fully perform and install erosion and sediment control/stormwater work prior to any suspension of the work.

- (i) Coordinate with Department, Federal, State and Local Regulatory agencies on resolution of erosion and sediment control/stormwater issues due to the Contractor's operations.
 - (j) Ensure that proper cleanup occurs from vehicle tracking on paved surfaces or any location where sediment leaves the Right-of-Way.
 - (k) Have available a set of erosion and sediment control/stormwater plans that are initialed and include the installation date of Best Management Practices. These practices shall include temporary and permanent groundcover and be properly updated to reflect necessary plan and field changes for use and review by Department personnel as well as regulatory agencies.
- (2) Requirements set forth under the NPDES Permit - The Department's NPDES Stormwater permit (NCS000250) outlines certain objectives and management measures pertaining to construction activities. The permit references *NCG010000, General Permit to Discharge Stormwater* under the NPDES, and states that the Department shall incorporate the applicable requirements into its delegated Erosion and Sediment Control Program for construction activities disturbing one or more acres of land. The Department further incorporates these requirements on all contracted bridge and culvert work at jurisdictional waters, regardless of size. Some of the requirements are, but are not limited to:
- (a) Control project site waste to prevent contamination of surface or ground waters of the state, i.e. from equipment operation/maintenance, construction materials, concrete washout, chemicals, litter, fuels, lubricants, coolants, hydraulic fluids, any other petroleum products, and sanitary waste.
 - (b) Inspect erosion and sediment control/stormwater devices and stormwater discharge outfalls at least once every 7 calendar days and within 24 hours after a rainfall event of greater than 1.0 inch that occurs within a 24 hour period. Additional monitoring may be required at the discretion of Division of Water Resources personnel if the receiving stream is 303(d) listed for turbidity and the project has had documented problems managing turbidity.
 - (c) Maintain an onsite rain gauge or use the Department's Multi-Sensor Precipitation Estimate website to maintain a daily record of rainfall amounts and dates.
 - (d) Maintain erosion and sediment control/stormwater inspection records for review by Department and Regulatory personnel upon request.
 - (e) Implement approved reclamation plans on all borrow pits, waste sites and staging areas.
 - (f) Maintain a log of turbidity test results as outlined in the Department's Procedure for Monitoring Borrow Pit Discharge.
 - (g) Provide secondary containment for bulk storage of liquid materials.
 - (h) Provide training for employees concerning general erosion and sediment control/stormwater awareness, the Department's NPDES Stormwater Permit NCS000250 requirements, and the applicable requirements of the *General Permit, NCG010000*.
 - (i) Report violations of the NPDES permit to the Engineer immediately who will notify the Division of Water Quality Regional Office within 24 hours of becoming aware of the violation.

- (3) Quality Control Program - Maintain a quality control program to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow provisions/conditions of permits. The quality control program shall:
- (a) Follow permit requirements related to the Contractor and subcontractors' construction activities.
 - (b) Ensure that all operators and subcontractors on site have the proper erosion and sediment control/stormwater certification.
 - (c) Notify the Engineer when the required certified erosion and sediment control/stormwater personnel are not available on the job site when needed.
 - (d) Conduct the inspections required by the NPDES permit.
 - (e) Take corrective actions in the proper timeframe as required by the NPDES permit for problem areas identified during the NPDES inspections.
 - (f) Incorporate erosion control into the work in a timely manner and stabilize disturbed areas with mulch/seed or vegetative cover on a section-by-section basis.
 - (g) Use flocculants approved by state regulatory authorities where appropriate and where required for turbidity and sedimentation reduction.
 - (h) Ensure proper installation and maintenance of temporary erosion and sediment control devices.
 - (i) Remove temporary erosion or sediment control devices when they are no longer necessary as agreed upon by the Engineer.
 - (j) The Contractor's quality control and inspection procedures shall be subject to review by the Engineer. Maintain NPDES inspection records and make records available at all times for verification by the Engineer.
- (B) *Certified Foreman* - At least one Certified Foreman shall be onsite for each type of work listed herein during the respective construction activities to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow permit provisions:
- (1) Foreman in charge of grading activities
 - (2) Foreman in charge of bridge or culvert construction over jurisdictional areas
 - (3) Foreman in charge of utility activities
- The Contractor may request to use the same person as the Level II Supervisor and Level II Foreman. This person shall be onsite whenever construction activities as described above are taking place. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.
- The Contractor may request to name a single Level II Foreman to oversee multiple construction activities on small bridge or culvert replacement projects. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.
- (C) *Certified Installers* - Provide at least one onsite, Level I Certified Installer for each of the following erosion and sediment control/stormwater crew:
- (1) Seeding and Mulching
 - (2) Temporary Seeding

- (3) Temporary Mulching
- (4) Sodding
- (5) Silt fence or other perimeter erosion/sediment control device installations
- (6) Erosion control blanket installation
- (7) Hydraulic tackifier installation
- (8) Turbidity curtain installation
- (9) Rock ditch check/sediment dam installation
- (10) Ditch liner/matting installation
- (11) Inlet protection
- (12) Riprap placement
- (13) Stormwater BMP installations (such as but not limited to level spreaders, retention/detention devices)
- (14) Pipe installations within jurisdictional areas

If a Level I *Certified Installer* is not onsite, the Contractor may substitute a Level II Foreman for a Level I Installer, provided the Level II Foreman is not tasked to another crew requiring Level II Foreman oversight.

- (D) *Certified Designer* - Include the certification number of the Level III-B Certified Designer on the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of all reclamation plans and if applicable, the certification number of the Level III-A Certified Designer on the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Preconstruction Meeting

Furnish the names of the *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* and notify the Engineer of changes in certified personnel over the life of the contract within 2 days of change.

Ethical Responsibility

Any company performing work for the North Carolina Department of Transportation has the ethical responsibility to fully disclose any reprimand or dismissal of an employee resulting from improper testing or falsification of records.

Revocation or Suspension of Certification

Upon recommendation of the Chief Engineer to the certification entity, certification for *Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* may be revoked or suspended with the issuance of an *Immediate Corrective Action (ICA)*, *Notice of Violation (NOV)*, or *Cease and Desist Order* for erosion and sediment control/stormwater related issues.

The Chief Engineer may recommend suspension or permanent revocation of certification due to the following:

- (A) Failure to adequately perform the duties as defined within this certification provision.
- (B) Issuance of an ICA, NOV, or Cease and Desist Order.

- (C) Failure to fully perform environmental commitments as detailed within the permit conditions and specifications.
- (D) Demonstration of erroneous documentation or reporting techniques.
- (E) Cheating or copying another candidate's work on an examination.
- (F) Intentional falsification of records.
- (G) Directing a subordinate under direct or indirect supervision to perform any of the above actions.
- (H) Dismissal from a company for any of the above reasons.
- (I) Suspension or revocation of one's certification by another entity.

Suspension or revocation of a certification will be sent by certified mail to the certificant and the Corporate Head of the company that employs the certificant.

A certificant has the right to appeal any adverse action which results in suspension or permanent revocation of certification by responding, in writing, to the Chief Engineer within 10 calendar days after receiving notice of the proposed adverse action.

Chief Engineer
1536 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1536

Failure to appeal within 10 calendar days will result in the proposed adverse action becoming effective on the date specified on the certified notice. Failure to appeal within the time specified will result in a waiver of all future appeal rights regarding the adverse action taken. The certificant will not be allowed to perform duties associated with the certification during the appeal process.

The Chief Engineer will hear the appeal and make a decision within 7 days of hearing the appeal. Decision of the Chief Engineer will be final and will be made in writing to the certificant.

If a certification is temporarily suspended, the certificant shall pass any applicable written examination and any proficiency examination, at the conclusion of the specified suspension period, prior to having the certification reinstated.

Measurement and Payment

Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor, Certified Foremen, Certified Installers and Certified Designer will be incidental to the project for which no direct compensation will be made.

PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 4-5-19)

105-16, 230, 801

SP1 G181

Water discharge from borrow pit sites shall not cause surface waters to exceed 50 NTUs (nephelometric turbidity unit) in streams not designated as trout waters and 10 NTUs in streams, lakes or reservoirs designated as trout waters. For lakes and reservoirs not designated as trout waters, the turbidity shall not exceed 25 NTUs. If the turbidity exceeds these levels due to natural background conditions, the existing turbidity level shall not be increased.

If during any operating day, the downstream water quality exceeds the standard, the Contractor shall do all of the following:

- (A) Either cease discharge or modify the discharge volume or turbidity levels to bring the downstream turbidity levels into compliance, or
- (B) Evaluate the upstream conditions to determine if the exceedance of the standard is due to natural background conditions. If the background turbidity measurements exceed the standard, operation of the pit and discharge can continue as long as the stream turbidity levels are not increased due to the discharge.
- (C) Measure and record the turbidity test results (time, date and sampler) at all defined sampling locations 30 minutes after startup and at a minimum, one additional sampling of all sampling locations during that 24-hour period in which the borrow pit is discharging.
- (D) Notify DWQ within 24 hours of any stream turbidity standard exceedances that are not brought into compliance.

During the Environmental Assessment required by Article 230-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, the Contractor shall define the point at which the discharge enters into the State's surface waters and the appropriate sampling locations. Sampling locations shall include points upstream and downstream from the point at which the discharge enters these waters. Upstream sampling location shall be located so that it is not influenced by backwater conditions and represents natural background conditions. Downstream sampling location shall be located at the point where complete mixing of the discharge and receiving water has occurred.

The discharge shall be closely monitored when water from the dewatering activities is introduced into jurisdictional wetlands. Any time visible sedimentation (deposition of sediment) on the wetland surface is observed, the dewatering activity will be suspended until turbidity levels in the stilling basin can be reduced to a level where sediment deposition does not occur. Staining of wetland surfaces from suspended clay particles, occurring after evaporation or infiltration, does not constitute sedimentation. No activities shall occur in wetlands that adversely affect the functioning of a wetland. Visible sedimentation will be considered an indication of possible adverse impacts on wetland use.

The Engineer will perform independent turbidity tests on a random basis. These results will be maintained in a log within the project records. Records will include, at a minimum, turbidity test results, time, date and name of sampler. Should the Department's test results exceed those of the Contractor's test results, an immediate test shall be performed jointly with the results superseding the previous test results of both the Department and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall use the *NCDOT Turbidity Reduction Options for Borrow Pits Matrix*, available at <https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/FieldOperationsDocuments/TurbidityReductionOptionSheet.pdf> to plan, design, construct, and maintain BMPs to address water quality standards. Tier I Methods include stilling basins which are standard compensatory BMPs. Other Tier I methods are noncompensatory and shall be used when needed to meet the stream turbidity standards. Tier II Methods are also noncompensatory and are options that may be needed for protection of rare or unique resources or where special environmental conditions

exist at the site which have led to additional requirements being placed in the DWQ's 401 Certifications and approval letters, Isolated Wetland Permits, Riparian Buffer Authorization or a DOT Reclamation Plan's Environmental Assessment for the specific site. Should the Contractor exhaust all Tier I Methods on a site exclusive of rare or unique resources or special environmental conditions, Tier II Methods may be required by regulators on a case by case basis per supplemental agreement.

The Contractor may use cation exchange capacity (CEC) values from proposed site borings to plan and develop the bid for the project. CEC values exceeding 15 milliequivalents per 100 grams of soil may indicate a high potential for turbidity and should be avoided when dewatering into surface water is proposed.

No additional compensation for monitoring borrow pit discharge will be paid.

NOTES TO CONTRACTOR:

- The contractor will be required to be an active participant in the Project Management Plan and Incident Management Plan that is being developed for this project.
- Any bat roost trees that are documented within 0.25 miles of the project area, regardless of the time of the year, the National Park Service will seek consultation with the US Fish and Wildlife Service before work proceeds.
- The United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) shall be notified of any injured or dead bats that are found on the project. In addition, the USFWS shall be notified of any new information regarding the gray bats.
- Lighting shall only be used in areas where active construction is occurring. For paving operations conducted at night, the area to be lit shall be directly adjacent to the paving machine.
- All Sediment and Erosion Control measures throughout the project limits shall be cleaned out when half full of sediment.
- The United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) shall be notified of any project modifications.
- A United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) biologist shall invited (with a 7 day notice) to any preconstruction meetings to review the permit conditions and discuss any questions regarding the implementation of the project. The biologist will review and provide comments on any plans submitted by the contractor and invited to attend any meetings to discuss implementation of the plans.
- During construction, the culvert inlets and outlets will be evaluated by the Department with regard to stream stability immediately following installation and quarterly for 1 year at each location. Indicators of instability, such as head cutting, scour, aggradation or degradation, shall be used to determine the need for corrective action.

- A final field inspection shall be held to evaluate the culvert placement and stream stability before the project is considered complete. If instability is detected, corrective actions shall be performed as directed by the Engineer.
- Contractor shall coordinate -Y- Line closures in the TMP to ensure that detour routes of adjacent -Y- Lines remain open during detour phasing.
- Notify Jeffrey Wait (828-225-2763, jlwait@ncdot.gov) 30 days prior to closing Rest Area and 6 months prior to completing work on Rest Area.
- The Department will provide snow and ice removal for the Rest Area location while it is open to the public. During all times of Rest Area closure, snow and ice removal is the responsibility of the Contractor.

DELAY IN RIGHT OF ENTRY:

(7-1-95)

108

SP1 G22 B

The Contractor will not be allowed right of entry to the following parcels prior to the listed dates unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer.

<u>Parcel No.</u>	<u>Property Owner</u>	<u>Date</u>
I-4400C 26	WARRIOR GOLF MANAGEMENT	01-01-2020
I-4400BB 110	ASHEVILLE SOUTH SE STORAGE VI, LLC	10-07-2019

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**ROADWAY****RESPONSE FOR GUARDRAIL/GUIDERAIL MAINTENANCE:****Description**

Furnish the labor, materials, tools and equipment necessary to move personnel, equipment, and supplies to the project necessary for guardrail/guiderail maintenance.

Construction Methods

In accordance with Article 104-10 of the 2018 Standard Specifications and the Maintenance of the Project Special Provision the Contractor shall perform weekly inspections of guardrail and guiderail and shall report damages to the Engineer on the same day of the weekly inspection.

Where damaged guardrail or guiderail must be repaired or replaced as a result of maintaining the project, such repair or replacement shall be performed within 7 consecutive calendar days of such inspection report.

Measurement and Payment

Response for Guardrail/Guiderail Maintenance will be measured and paid for by counting the actual number of times the contractor moves onto the project specifically for guardrail/guiderail maintenance. Payment for the labor, materials, and equipment necessary to complete the repair or replacement will be made with the various guardrail/guiderail contract items. No additional payment will be made for traffic control for guardrail/guiderail maintenance outside of the various contract items included in the contract.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Response for Guardrail/Guiderail Maintenance	Each

SNOW AND ICE REMOVAL:**Description**

Performance of snow and ice removal in accordance with the contract.

Materials

The Department of Transportation will provide all necessary deicing chemical materials and/or abrasives necessary for snow and ice control operations. The Contractor's Equipment will be loaded with deicing materials. abrasives in the same manner, and at the same locations as the Department of Transportation's equipment. The contractor shall return all unused materials to the Department.

Equipment

The Contractor shall provide the following types of equipment:

A minimum of 4 multi-rear-axel dump trucks, with operators, equipped with 12.0-ft. snowplow, tire chains, and 10.0 cubic yard (minimum truck capacity) material spreader. (*spreaders with tanks that allow the application of liquid chemicals at the spinner are required*)

- A minimum of 4 trucks, as described above, will be assigned to I-26 within the project limits or as determined by the Engineer.

Upon approval of the Engineer, the Contractor may provide additional units in accordance with the terms and conditions of this contract. The Engineer reserves the right to reassign equipment within the routes and maintenance yards as needs dictate.

All snowplows provided under this agreement shall be hydraulic powered, reversible, hydraulic angling, moldboard type plows, with a dual trip spring assembly, which will automatically return the plow to the normal plowing position. The trip spring assembly is intended to reduce the potential for damage to the plowing equipment resulting from collision with roadway structure, such as, but not limited to, manholes and valve boxes. The Department will not be responsible for damage to the Contractor's equipment resulting from collisions with such structures. Also, the snowplow operating, heights will be determined by the NCDOT. In some cases, the Contractor may be directed to have the snowplow in direct contact with the pavement surface.

All material spreaders provided under this agreement shall be truck engine driven, hydraulic pump powered, in-body style spreaders with a calibrated, adjustable, locking feed gate, which controls the amount of material being discharged.

All vehicles provided by the Contractor shall be equipped with permanent mounted Global Positioning Devices (GPS) such as the Motorola Locator 2000 or equivalent model.

The GPS units must be accompanied with an annual monitoring subscription that will begin and cover the period between October 15 and April 15 of each year. The GPS unit and monitoring subscription must demonstrate the following capabilities:

- Generate reports in a spreadsheet format
- Generate mapping
- Report every two (2) minutes or less
- Turn-by-turn tracking
- Roadway surface temperature monitoring (Vaisala surface patrol pavement temperature sensor or equivalent model)
- Internet monitoring with NCDOT management access
- Ability to track vehicle operating speed
- Software must send alert via email or text message when desired speed has been exceeded Software or web application must be capable of Zone Assignments and notification
- Tampering alert notification
- Operate during extreme temperatures
- Battery backup system

If, at any time, the Engineer finds that the monitoring software subscription does not satisfactorily meet the requirements set forth in this contract, or is not in operation for the specified timeframe, the Contractor will update or renew the GPS monitoring software system at the Contractor's expense.

A copy of the DOT specifications for snowplows and material spreaders will be made available to the contractor upon request.

All equipment provided by the Contractor shall be equipped with warning lights visible from 360 degrees in accordance with NCDOT standards. All trucks shall have headlights mounted to provide forward lighting over the snowplow/blade. Lighting shall be installed and adjusted to minimize glare. Communication devices shall be available in each piece of equipment to accommodate continuous communication between operators and the Contractors designated supervisor. All equipment shall also be equipped with operable, audible back-up warning devices. Each vehicle shall be equipped with a set of tire chains for at least one drive axle.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all cost or changes incurred in the operation and maintenance of the equipment during the term of the contract including but not limited to fuel, oil, snowplow blades, tire chains, equipment repairs, communication equipment, etc.

Construction Methods

(A) Supervisor

The Contractor will provide a designated supervisor that will coordinate this work with the County Maintenance Engineer and Department of Transportation's snow and ice removal operations

(B) Operators

Operators of all trucks shall have a valid Commercial's Driver's License of the appropriate class. The Contractor shall provide enough operators, per piece of equipment provided under this provision, to operate 24 hours per day during a storm event. Operators are limited to a maximum 12-hour shift within a 24-hour period.

(C) Training

The Department of Transportation shall provide training session(s) to familiarize all Contractor personnel (both operators and supervisors) with snow removal and ice control methods, equipment, and assigned routes. Training sessions consist of classroom style instruction on snow removal and ice control method and materials, snowplow and spreader operation, calibration and safety issues. Training session(s) will be scheduled and completed as determined by the Engineer and the Contractor will be given a minimum of 2 weeks' notice of scheduled training.

(D) Outfitting Fee

A capital recovery fee for the investment and administrative costs associated with the purchase, installation, maintenance and storage of the equipment appurtenances (spreaders, snow plows, plow blades, etc.) specified herein will be paid to the Contractor. All equipment covered by this pay item will remain the property of the Contractor upon the completion of the project.

The snowplows and material spreaders will be inspected and approved by the Engineer during the scheduled dry run(s). The Engineer will also periodically inspect all equipment provided. If, at any time, the Engineer finds that the equipment is not satisfactory, or has not been maintained in operating condition, the Contractor will repair or replace the unsatisfactory equipment at the Contractor's cost.

The Department of Transportation shall conduct dry run(s) to familiarize all the Contractor's personnel (both operators and supervisors) with snow removal and ice control methods, equipment, and assigned routes. Dry runs include the use of equipment. At a dry run, equipment is inspected; calibrated, and plowing routes are reviewed and driven for operators to note potential plowing patterns and changes. Dry run(s) will be scheduled and completed as determined by the Engineer, typically held during the months of October and November each year. The Department will provide the Contractor with a minimum two (2) week notice of scheduled dry runs.

(E) Response for Snow and Ice Removal

The Engineer will notify the Contractor when impending inclement weather is forecasted, and when and where, according to the forecast, to mobilize his/her equipment in preparation for snow and ice removal. The Engineer will notify the Contractor a minimum of three (3) hours before the equipment is needed to begin the work.

Payment for Response for Snow and Ice Removal shall include rigging the dump truck with the specified appurtenances and having the trucks ready for operation (loading and plowing) at the designated Department facility. Payment for Response for Snow in Ice Removal shall include the cleanup of the trucks and appurtenances at the conclusion of the current storm event and unrigging the specified appurtenances from the dump trucks.

All equipment, including any specified appurtenances (plows, spreaders, etc.), shall be rigged fitted and ready for operation (loading, plowing, etc.) and delivered to the pre-designated Department of Transportation Facilities within three (3) hours of notification.

Measurement and Payment

Outfitting Fee will be paid at the contract unit price per each, for each piece of equipment provided, approved, and accepted under this contract. Payment for Outfitting Fee includes furnishing, operating, repairing, and maintaining all required equipment and subscription fees as defined in the contract. Payment for Outfitting Fee will be made for each piece of equipment upon satisfactory inspection and the completion of all scheduled training sessions and dry runs established by the Engineer. Payment for *Outfitting Fees* will be made on the following schedule:

- A. 50% of the unit bid upon completion of the first dry run
- B. 30% of the unit bid when the project is 50% complete
- C. 20% of the unit bid when the project is 100% complete

Response for Snow and Ice Removal will be measured and paid per each for each piece of equipment mobilized at the request of the Engineer and ready for operation within the timeframe established in this provision.

Equipment Operating Rate for Snow and Ice Removal will be measured and paid for the actual number of hours of satisfactory operation of each piece of equipment per hour. All charges shall be determined to the nearest one-quarter (1/4) hour based upon the time the equipment was in actual productive operation or authorized stand-by time. The Contractor will not be paid for downtime due to meals, equipment failure, accidents, or other conditions. Costs associated with the maintenance and repair of the equipment and appurtenances shall be considered incidental to the operating costs of the equipment.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Outfitting Fee	Each
Response for Snow and Ice Removal	Each
Equipment Operating Rate for Snow and Ice Removal	Hour

VACUUM SWEEPING:**Description**

The work consist of sweeping, cleaning, vacuuming, shoveling, removing or picking up of all foreign material not intentionally bonded to the shoulder pavement surface which is not required for the operation or maintenance of the highway as directed.

Equipment

The Contractor shall furnish a “Vacuum Sweeper Unit” of sufficient type, capacity, and quantity to safely and efficiently perform and complete the sweeping work as specified in this provisions with acceptable levels of prosecution and progress.

All sweepers shall be equipped with the following: adequate water systems for dust control, dual steering and dual brooms.

The Contractor shall display the Company name on each piece of equipment.

The Contractor must demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Engineer that the sweeping equipment to be used in the work is in good working condition and suitable for performing the work required within the required cycle schedule. All such equipment is subject to inspection and final approval by the Engineer. Such approval will require an onsite demonstration of the capability of any proposed equipment.

Support vehicles, including safety trucks, debris transfer vehicles, pick-up trucks, sweeper truck, and any other vehicles used in the sweeping operation, shall be properly equipped in accordance with the 2018 Roadway Standard Drawings and the 2018 Standard Specifications.

Operation of Equipment

The Contractor shall operate the equipment in a safe manner so as not to create a hazard to the traveling public.

Crossing lanes of traffic and erratic driving between the median and outside shoulders shall be strictly prohibited.

Insofar as possible, the equipment wheels are to remain off the travel way during sweeping operations.

The Department shall, at its discretion, establish and/or change schedules because of citizen complaints of noise or similar discomforts affecting their property adjacent to the roadway. Special events may delay or cause the postponement of sweeping on a given period of time.

All sweeping operations shall be accomplished “with” or in the same direction as the traffic flow. Sweeping against or opposing the traffic shall not be permitted.

The sweeping operation shall not cause material to be thrown into travel lane. Material shall not be swept across a travel lane.

If an accident occurs as a result of or in the vicinity of the sweeping operation, the Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Engineer immediately.

No work is to be performed during adverse weather such as heavy rains, fog, high winds, snow and ice storms, and other inclement weather conditions.

Construction Method

The Contractor shall sweep the designated pavement areas identified on each Sweeping Request. The designated area will be a swath along paved shoulders, areas adjacent to a barrier wall, curb and gutter, shoulder berm and gutter, bridge curb/rail, and median. A swath shall be a minimum of eight (8) feet in width.

Foreign material to be swept includes, but is not limited to: loose aggregate, any undesirable grasses, and other accumulated material or foreign matter, from designated pavement areas and the disposal of such material at a location outside of the right-of way.

When foreign material, too large for the sweeper to remove, are encountered, the Contractor shall remove this larger material by hand. Such larger foreign material may include, but are not limited to: tires, tire parts, hub caps, large stones, boxes, tree limbs/bark, wood, cable, and large silt & grass combination accumulations.

The Contractor will be responsible for the disposal of all debris.

This provision is not intended as payment for and does not alleviate the Contractor from the requirements of Article 104-10 of the 2018 Standard Specifications "Maintenance of the Project"

Measurement and Payment

Sweeping will be measured and paid for as the actual number of shoulder miles, measured along the surface of the ground which have been swept and accepted.

Sweeping will be paid for at the contract unit price per shoulder mile for the various highway systems included in the contract. Such price and payment will be full compensation for the work covered by this provision, including but not limited to, supervision, labor, transportation, support vehicles, fuels, lubricants, repair parts, equipment, signage, machinery, tools, traffic control, disposal of debris, and any incidentals necessary for the prosecution and completion of the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Vacuum Sweeping

Pay Unit
Shoulder Mile

CLEARING AND GRUBBING - METHOD II:

(9-17-02) (Rev.8-18-15)

200

SP2 R02A

Perform clearing on this project to the limits established by Method "II" shown on Standard Drawing No. 200.02 of the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Conventional clearing methods may be used except where permit drawings or conditions have been included in the proposal which require certain areas to be cleared by hand methods.

BURNING RESTRICTIONS:

(7-1-95)

200, 210, 215

SP2 R05

Open burning is not permitted on any portion of the right-of-way limits established for this project. Do not burn the clearing, grubbing or demolition debris designated for disposal and generated from the project at locations within the project limits, off the project limits or at any waste or borrow sites in this county. Dispose of the clearing, grubbing and demolition debris by means other than burning, according to state or local rules and regulations.

TEMPORARY DETOURS:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 11-19-13)

1101

SP2 R30B

Construct temporary detours required on this project in accordance with the typical sections in the plans or as directed.

After the detours have served their purpose, remove the portions deemed unsuitable for use as a permanent part of the project as directed by the Engineer. Salvage and stockpile the aggregate base course removed from the detours at locations within the right of way, as directed by the Engineer, for removal by State Forces. Place pavement and earth material removed from the detour in embankments or dispose of in waste areas furnished by the Contractor.

Aggregate base course and earth material that is removed will be measured and will be paid at the contract unit price per cubic yard for *Unclassified Excavation*. Pavement that is removed will be measured and will be paid at the contract unit price per square yard for *Removal of Existing _____ Pavement*. Pipe culverts removed from the detours remain the property of the Contractor. Pipe culverts that are removed will be measured and will be paid at the contract unit price per linear foot for *Pipe Removal*. Payment for the construction of the detours will be made at the contract unit prices for the various items involved.

Such prices and payments will be full compensation for constructing the detours and for the work of removing, salvaging, and stockpiling aggregate base course; removing pipe culverts; and for placing earth material and pavement in embankments or disposing of earth material and pavement in waste areas.

SHOULDER AND FILL SLOPE MATERIAL:

(5-21-02)

235, 560

SP2 R45 B

Description

Perform the required shoulder and slope construction for this project in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 560 and Section 235 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

When the Contractor elects to obtain material from an area located beneath a proposed fill sections which does not require excavation for any reason other than to generate acceptable shoulder and fill slope material, the work of performing the excavation will be considered incidental to the item of *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*. If there is no pay item for *Borrow* or *Shoulder Borrow* in the contract, this work will be considered incidental to *Unclassified Excavation*. Stockpile the excavated material in a manner to facilitate measurement by the Engineer. Fill the void created by the excavation of the shoulder and fill slope material with suitable material. Payment for material used from the stockpile will be made at the contract unit price for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*. If there is no pay item for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*, then the material will be paid for at the contract unit price for *Unclassified Excavation*. The material used to fill the void created by the excavation of the shoulder and fill slope material will be made at the contract unit price for *Unclassified Excavation*, *Borrow Excavation*, or *Shoulder Borrow*, depending on the source of the material.

Material generated from undercut excavation, unclassified excavation or clearing and grubbing operations that is placed directly on shoulders or slope areas, will not be measured separately for payment, as payment for the work requiring the excavation will be considered adequate compensation for depositing and grading the material on the shoulders or slopes.

When undercut excavation is performed at the direction of the Engineer and the material excavated is found to be suitable for use as shoulder and fill slope material, and there is no area on the project currently prepared to receive the material generated by the undercut operation, the Contractor may construct a stockpile for use as borrow at a later date. Payment for the material used from the stockpile will be made at the contract unit price for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow*.

When shoulder material is obtained from borrow sources or from stockpiled material, payment for the work of shoulder construction will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard for *Borrow Excavation* or *Shoulder Borrow* in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 230 or Section 560 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

COAL COMBUSTION PRODUCTS IN EMBANKMENTS:

(4-16-02) (Rev. 5-19-15)

235

SP02 R70

Description

This specification allows the Contractor an option, with the approval of the Engineer, to use coal combustion products (CCPs) in embankments as a substitute for conventional borrow material. The amount of CCPs allowed to be used for this project will be less than 80,000 tons total and less than 8,000 tons per acre.

Materials

Supply coal combustion products from the Department list of potential suppliers maintained by the Value Management Unit. Site specific approval of CCP material will be required prior to beginning construction.

The following CCPs are unacceptable:

- (A) Frozen material,
- (B) Ash from boilers fired with both coal and petroleum coke, and
- (C) Material with a maximum dry unit weight of less than 65 pounds per cubic foot when tested in accordance with AASHTO T-99 Method A or C.

Collect and transport CCPs in a manner that will prevent nuisances and hazards to public health and safety. Moisture condition the CCPs as needed and transport in covered trucks to prevent dusting.

Preconstruction Requirements

When CCPs are to be used as a substitute for earth borrow material, request written approval from the Engineer at least ninety (90) days in advance of the intent to use CCPs and include the following details using the NCDOT Form #CCP-2015-V1 in accordance with NCGS § 130A-309.219(b)(1):

- (A) Description, purpose and location of project.
- (B) Estimated start and completion dates of project.
- (C) Estimated volume of CCPs to be used on project with specific locations and construction details of the placement.
- (D) Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure analysis from a representative sample of each different CCP source to be used in the project for, at minimum, all of the following constituents: arsenic, barium, cadmium, lead, chromium, mercury, selenium, and silver.
- (E) The names, address, and contact information for the generator of the CCPs.
- (F) Physical location of the project at which the CCPs were generated.

Submit the form to the Engineer and the State Value Management Engineer at valuemanagementunit@ncdot.gov for review. The Engineer and the State Value Management Engineer will coordinate the requirements of NCGS § 130A-309.219(a)(1) and notify the Contractor that all the necessary requirements have been met before the placement of structural fill using coal combustion products is allowed.

Construction Methods

In accordance with the detail in the plans, place CCPs in the core of the embankment section with at least 4 feet of earth cover to the outside limits of the embankments or subgrade and at least 5 feet above the seasonal high ground-water table. CCPs used in embankments shall not be placed as follows:

- (A) Within 50 feet of any property boundary.
- (B) Within 300 horizontal feet of a private dwelling or well.
- (C) Within 50 horizontal feet of the top of the bank of a perennial stream or other surface water body.
- (D) Within a 100-year floodplain except as authorized under NCGS § 143-215.54A(b). A site located in a floodplain shall not restrict the flow of the 100-year floodplain or result in washout of solid waste so as to pose a hazard to human life, wildlife or land and water resources.

- (E) Within 50 horizontal feet of a wetland, unless, after consideration of the chemical and physical impact on the wetland, the United States Army Corps of Engineers issues a permit or waiver for the fill.

Construct embankments by placing CCPs in level uniform lifts with no more than a lift of 10 inches and compacted to at least a density of 95 percent as determined by test methods in AASHTO T-99, Determination of Maximum Dry Density and Optimum Moisture Content, Method A or C depending upon particle size of the product. Provide a moisture content at the time of compaction of within 4 percent of optimum but not greater than one percent above optimum as determined by AASHTO T-99, Method A or C.

Divert surface waters resulting from precipitation from the CCPs placement area during filling and construction activities. Construct embankments such that rainfall will not run directly off of the CCPs. Provide dust control to minimize airborne emissions. Construct fill in a manner that prevents water from accumulating and ponding and do not pump nor discharge waters from CCP's filling and construction areas.

Measurement and Payment

Borrow Excavation will be measured by truck volume and paid in cubic yards in accordance with Article 230-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

MANUFACTURED QUARRY FINES IN EMBANKMENTS:

(01-17-17)

235

SP02 R72

Description

This specification addresses the use of manufactured quarry fines that are not classified as select materials. The specification allows the Contractor an option, with the approval of the Engineer, to use manufactured quarry fines (MQFs) in embankments as a substitute for conventional borrow material. Furnish and place geotextile for pavement stabilization in accordance with the Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision and detail. Geotextile for pavement stabilization is required to prevent pavement cracking and provide separation between the subgrade and pavement section at embankment locations where manufactured quarry fines are utilized and as directed by the Engineer.

Materials

Manufactured Quarry Fines.

Site specific approval of MQFs material will be required prior to beginning construction as detailed in the preconstruction requirements of this provision.

The following MQFs are unacceptable:

- (A) Frozen material,
- (B) Material with a maximum dry unit weight of less than 90 pounds per cubic foot when tested in accordance with AASHTO T-99 Method A or C.
- (C) Material with greater than 80% by weight Passing the #200 sieve

Collect and transport MQFs in a manner that will prevent nuisances and hazards to public health and safety. Moisture condition the MQFs as needed and transport in covered trucks to prevent dusting. If MQFs are blended with natural earth material, follow Borrow Criteria in Section 1018 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Geotextiles

Areas of embankment where MQFs are incorporated, Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization shall be used. If the Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision is not included elsewhere in this contract, then it along with a detail will be incorporated as part of the contractors request to use. Notification of subgrade elevation, sampling and waiting period as required in the Construction Methods section of the Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision are not required.

Preconstruction Requirements

When MQFs are to be used as a substitute for earth borrow material, request written approval from the Engineer at least ninety (90) days in advance of the intent to use MQFs and include the following details:

- (A) Description, purpose and location of project.
- (B) Estimated start and completion dates of project.
- (C) Estimated volume of MQFs to be used on project with specific locations and construction details of the placement.
- (D) The names, address, and contact information for the generator of the MQFs.
- (E) Physical location of the site at which the MQFs were generated.

The Engineer will forward this information to the State Materials Engineer for review and material approval.

Construction Methods

Place MQFs in the core of the embankment section with at least 4 feet of earth cover to the outside limits of the embankments or subgrade.

Construct embankments by placing MQFs in level uniform lifts with no more than a lift of 10 inches and compacted to at least a density of 95 percent as determined by test methods in AASHTO T-99, Determination of Maximum Dry Density and Optimum Moisture Content, Method A or C depending upon particle size of the product. Provide a moisture content at the time of compaction of within 4 percent of optimum but not greater than one percent above optimum as determined by AASHTO T-99, Method A or C.

Areas of embankment where MQFs are incorporated, Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization shall be used. See Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision for geotextile type and construction method.

Measurement and Payment

Borrow Excavation will be measured by truck volume and paid in cubic yards in accordance with Article 230-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. As an alternate weigh tickets can be provided and payment made by converting weight to cubic yards based on the verifiable unit weight.

Where the pay item of *Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization* is included in the original contract

the material will be measured and paid in square yards (see Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization special provision). Where the pay item of *Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization* is not included in the original contract then no payment will be made for this item and will be considered incidental to the use of MQFs in embankment.

C.S. SLOTTED DRAIN:

Description

Furnish and install ___" C. S. Slotted Drain, ___" Thick, that has been fabricated in accordance with the requirements of Section 310 of the *Standard Specifications* and the details in the plans. Install the slotted drain in accordance with the requirements of Section 300 of the *Standard Specifications* except as noted in this provision. Embed the slotted drain in a bedding of lean grout, consisting of a mixture of 1 part portland cement to 6 parts of mortar sand with no more water added than is necessary to make a workable mixture.

Measurement and Payment

___" *C. S. Slotted Drain*, ___" will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of slotted drain which have been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. Measurement will be made in accordance with Article 310-6. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work, including but not limited to furnishing, hauling, placing the slotted drain, bedding the drain in grout, making all joint connections, all excavation and backfill.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
___" C. S. Slotted Drain, ___" Thick	Linear Foot

SPECIAL PROVISION FOR PIPE REHABILITATION

I. DESCRIPTION

This work shall consist of the rehabilitation of existing storm water pipes, or culverts by the method or methods specified at the designated locations described in the Contract.

Pipe liner systems used for rehabilitation shall be from the NCDOT Approved Products List and may be subject to limitations for use as specified herein, by site-specific limitations for those locations listed in the Contract, or limitations as shown on the NCDOT Approved Products List for the specific liner system. The Contractor shall consult the Contract to determine the method or methods that are permitted at each rehabilitation location.

Liners provided per this special provisions shall be designed per the *NCDOT Manual for Pipe Rehabilitation*.

The Contractor shall receive approval from NCDOT in writing for substituting the type or size of the liner specified for any specific location prior to procurement of said liner.

The Contractor shall provide contract submittals as called for herein to the Engineer a minimum of 10 days prior to start of installation.

Designated Locations and Allowable Methods Location of pipes to be lined are shown in the I-4700 Plan Sheets and the Drainage Summary Sheets

The liners as specified for the two existing pipes on Plan Sheet 10 near Station 914+15 shall not be changed without written approval from both the Engineer of Record and the NCDOT Division Construction Engineer.

Category A (CIPP) liners may be substituted for Category C and Category F liners with written approval from the NCDOT Division Construction Engineer.

Category C and Category F liners may be substituted for Category A (CIPP) liners with written approval from both the Engineer of Record and the NCDOT Division Construction Engineer.

II. MATERIALS

Category A - Cured-In-Place Pipe (CIPP) liners are lining an existing culvert by either pulling or inverting a resin-impregnated fabric tube and curing the tube in place. When CIPP liners are specified, the liner system supplied by the Contractor shall conform to the following requirements as supported by contract submittals:

- Must list host pipe diameter ranges for which the product is applicable.
- Must indicate corrosion potential/acid reaction potential.
- Must list cure method (e.g., UV, steam, hot water, etc.).
- Must list typical, minimum, maximum application thicknesses.
- Calculated minimum thickness of liner
- Designation of air or water inversion or pull-in-place method
- Maximum allowable pulling force
- Site specific cure time
- Minimum pressure to hold liner tight against the host pipe
- Maximum pressure to ensure liner does not sustain damage
- Maximum and minimum cure temperatures
- Ambient temperature range allowable during installation
- Post cure temperature
- Temperature cure profile.
- Sample of temperature and pressure log to be used for monitoring the curing process
- Certification on manufacturer's letterhead indicating that the contractor is approved by the fabric tube and resin manufacturer to perform CIPP installation work.
- Manufacturer moisture limitations (e.g. installation in the dry, humidity restrictions, etc.).
- Material safety data sheets for all hazardous chemicals that will be used on the job site including resin, catalyst, cleaners, and repair agents. Identify the proposed use for each hazardous chemical and where it will be used in the work.
- Must provide and comply with specification for installation, and provide NCDOT Type 1 or Type 4 Certificates of compliance with material specifications as applicable to the below, or equivalent as approved by the Engineer:

- ASTM D5813
 - ASTM F1216 for inverted CIPP
 - ASTM F1743 for pulled-in-place CIPP
 - ASTM F2019 for pulled-in-place GRP CIPP
 - ASTM F2599 for sectional inverted CIPP (applies to pipe sections, not full length)
- Long Term Modulus of Elasticity for calculations = 150,000 psi. NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications may be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of alternate Long Term Modulus of Elasticity extrapolated from ASTM D2990, 10000-hour test. Design value of Long Term Modulus of Elasticity may be no greater than 50% of Initial Modulus of Elasticity. Tested value must be greater than or equal to value used in design equations.
 - Initial Modulus of Elasticity for calculations = 300,000 psi. NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications may be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of alternate Initial Modulus of Elasticity based on ASTM D790. Tested value must be greater than or equal to value used in design equations.
 - Long Term Flexural Strength = 2250 psi. NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications may be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of alternate Long Term Flexural Strength extrapolated from ASTM D2990, 10000-hour test. Tested value must be greater than or equal to value used in design equations.

When **Category C HDPE, PE, PP, solid wall slip liners** are specified, the liner system supplied by the Contractor shall conform to the following requirements as supported by contract submittals (**NO PVC ALLOWED on this Contract**):

- Must list host pipe diameter ranges for which the product is applicable.
 - Must indicate corrosion potential/acid reaction potential.
 - Must be closed profile; i.e. no definable bell and spigot that protrudes from the outer wall of the pipe.
 - Certification on manufacturer's letterhead indicating that the contractor is approved by the manufacturer to perform installation work.
 - Material safety data sheets for all hazardous chemicals that will be used on the job site. Identify the proposed use for each hazardous chemical and where it will be used in the work.
 - Calculated minimum thickness of liner.
 - Maximum allowable pulling and/or pushing force
 - Grouting mix design and manufacturer recommendations
 - Installation procedures and recommendations.
 - Must provide inside diameter and outside diameter of pipe.
- Must provide and comply with specification for installation, and provide NCDOT Type 1 or Type 4 Certificates of compliance with material specifications as applicable to the below, or equivalent as approved by the Engineer:
 - ASTM D3350 defines PE cell class referenced below

- ASTM F714 for solid wall polyethylene min cell classification 345464 and 2–4% carbon black
 - AASHTO M326 for solid wall polyethylene
 - ASTM F585 for polyethylene slip-line
 - ASTM F2620 for polyethylene heat fusion joining
- NCDOT Type 2 or Type 5 certifications must be submitted by vendors or contractors for proof of Long Term Modulus of Elasticity, 50-year sustained loading value, if the following values are not used in design calculations: 22,000 psi shall be used for HDPE, PE, and PP per AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications 8th ed., Table 12.12.3.3-1.

Category F - Smooth-wall steel pipe liner rehabilitation materials shall conform to 1032-5 of the Standard Specifications, except as altered herein.

Grade B pipe shall be used with minimum wall thicknesses as listed in the *NCDOT Manual for Pipe Rehabilitation*.

The Contractor shall submit the following items to the Engineer:

- Material safety data sheets for all hazardous chemicals that will be used on the job site. Identify the proposed use for each hazardous chemical and where it will be used in the work.
- Grouting mix design and manufacturer recommendations.

III. CONSTRUCTION

Pre-Installation Inspection – The Contractor shall perform a pre-installation video inspection of pipe using NASSCO certified personnel. The camera shall be situated at the centerline of the pipe and shall be mounted on a rubber tired or tracked pipe rover that allows for a 360-degree inspection. Inspection equipment shall be capable of measuring protrusions and obstructions of ½ inch or greater. Provide a pipe profile, on which deflections that may affect the installation of the liner are located and noted. The inspection shall be performed in the presence of the Engineer, unless waived by the Engineer. Dewater the host pipe to the satisfaction of the Engineer, and in accordance with NCDOT Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities. A thorough culvert inspection is required to determine the number of existing “pipe to pipe” connections and the extent, if any, of obstruction removal and voids. The inspection shall be performed by experienced personnel trained in locating breaks, obstacles, voids and service connections. Video inspections shall be clearly labeled on the media with the time, date, and location of the pipe inspected. A copy of the video inspection shall be furnished to the Engineer at least 10 days prior to the start of rehabilitative construction. In the event the Contractor’s inspection shows the method of rehabilitation the Contractor has selected is no longer viable at that location as verified by the Engineer, the Contractor shall select another allowable method, if specified, from those designated in the Contract.

Pipe Clean-out - The Contractor shall clear the existing pipe(s) designated for rehabilitation of any debris, sediment, protrusions greater than ½ inch in height, and any other potential obstructions prior to the start of rehabilitation efforts. The Contractor shall then thoroughly clean and prepare the host pipe prior to the liner installation. Cleaning shall conform to the recommendations of the liner manufacturer, and any additional requirements of this special

provision. In the absence of manufacturer recommendations, the Contractor shall submit his/her proposed method for cleaning and preparing the host pipe for the Engineer's review and acceptance at least 10 working days prior to beginning the work at that location.

Grouting Host Pipe - The Contractor shall perform grouting work described in the contract, prior to pipe liner installation to correct existing deficiencies, such as voids.

Inlet & Outlet Sealing – All pipe liner installations shall be sealed to the host pipe at the terminal ends of the liner to prevent flow between the liner and host pipe.

De-Watering – All pipe liners and grout shall be installed in dry conditions. The Contractor shall de-water by diverting, pumping, or bypassing any water flow through an existing pipe or drainage system prior to and during the lining process. The method of de-watering is to be determined by the contractor but must be approved by the Engineer prior to implementing. No separate measurement or payment will be made for dewatering site as cost shall be included in contract price per linear foot. ((Size inches) Pipe Rehabilitation _____)

Disposal Plan – The Contractor shall submit a Disposal Plan to the Engineer a minimum of 10 days prior to installation. The Disposal Plan shall indicate how by-products and waste are to be contained, captured, transported offsite, and disposed of in accordance with project permits and local, state and federal regulations. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to report and take appropriate corrective actions to remediate any water quality alteration resulting from lining operations in accordance with project permits and applicable local, state or federal regulations. The cost for such remediation shall be at the Contractor's expense.

Category A – Cured-In-Place Pipe liner method. The Cured-In-Place Pipe liner system shall be fabricated and installed in such a manner as to result in a maintained full contact tight fit to the internal circumference of the host pipe for its entire length. The installation shall adhere to the cure times and temperatures stipulated in the manufacturer's recommended installation and cure specifications and the finished product shall be free of de-lamination, bubbling, rippling or other signs of installation failure.

Install per specification or standard practice for installation (ASTM F1216 inverted CIPP, or F1743 pulled-in-place CIPP, or F2019 pulled-in-place GRP CIPP, or F2599 sectional inverted CIPP for example).

Pulled-in-place liner installation must be accomplished without significant liner twisting or stretching the liner greater than 1% of its original length during installation. At no time shall the pulling force, as measured by a contractor-provided dynamometer or load cell, exceed that established by the liner manufacturer. For liner lengths greater than 100 feet, protect the pipe liner end using a device that uniformly distributes the applied load around the perimeter of the liner.

Curing for styrene-based, epoxy-based, and vinyl ester-based CIPP may be accomplished by water, steam or ultraviolet light and shall be in accordance with the liner manufacturer's recommendations.

Installation and curing requirements of pipe sections shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the specific product, as applicable. The Contractor shall furnish installation and curing requirements for the various flexible liners including individual components of the system, tube type (reinforced or non-reinforced), manufacturer name and type of resin including catalyst, volume of resin required to achieve proper impregnation and curing. All components of the systems shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific system used, and all components shall include lot numbers and expiration dates.

The Contractor shall place an impermeable barrier immediately upstream and downstream of the host pipe, prior to liner insertion, to capture any possible raw resin spillage during installation and shall dispose of any materials in accordance with the submitted disposal plan.

Where the pulled-in-place method of installation is used, the Contractor shall install a semi-rigid plastic slip sheet over any interior portions of the host pipe that could tear the outer film or over any significant voids in the host pipe.

Reconnect the existing storm drain lateral connections immediately after the liner has been cured in place. Use robotic cutting devices to re-establish tie-ins in non-man accessible pipes.

The Contractor shall monitor temperature via a minimum of three thermocouples on the outer surface (interface between the host pipe and liner) of the liner (one each at the upstream and downstream ends and one approximately mid-length of the host pipe). The Contractor shall monitor pressure during inversion and curing and maintain pressure between minimum and maximum allowable pressures as provided by the manufacturer. The Contractor shall automatically log cure time-temperature and time-pressure data at 30 second intervals with a data logger and provide such information in a format acceptable to the Engineer.

Submit the tape and log of recorded temperatures and pressure to the Engineer within 48 hours after completing the resin-curing process.

The Contractor shall thoroughly rinse the cured lined pipe with clean water prior to re-introducing flow.

The Contractor shall capture all cure water and/or steam condensate and rinse water and dispose of, in accordance with the submitted disposal plan.

Within 21 days of completing the resin curing at a given culvert location, submit the test results from an ISO 17025 lab suitable to the Engineer. The report must be signed by a representative of the independent testing lab. The report must include:

- Flexural strength and flexural modulus test results for field samples.
- Thickness measurements for the liner using prepared core samples.
- Description of the defects in the tested samples in terms of the effect on CIPP performance.

Make cured samples from the identical materials (tube, resin and catalyst) to be used for the CIPP. Identify each sample by date, contract number, drainage system number of the corresponding culvert, thickness, name of resin, and name of catalyst.

The samples must be 6 by 16 inches in size: Comply with the following sampling procedures unless UV cured:

- Place 3 aluminum-plate clamped molds, each containing a flat plate sample, inside the downtube when heated circulated water is used, and in the silencer when steam is used during the resin curing period
- Seal each flat plate sample in a heavy-duty plastic envelope inside the mold

- Remove the 3 cured flat plate samples after draining all the moisture from the cured CIPP

If UV cured, comply with field sampling procedures under ASTM F2019, Section 7: Recommended Inspection Practices.

Test the samples for flexural properties under ASTM D790, ASTM D5813, ASTM F1216, ASTM F1743, or ASTM F2019. Verify that physical properties of the field samples comply with the minimum values under:

- ASTM F1216, Table 1 (modified values), for heat cured polyester, vinyl ester, and epoxy resins. The flexural strength must be at least 5,000 psi. The flexural modulus must be at least 300,000 psi.
- ASTM F2019, Table 1, for UV cured CIPP. The flexural strength must be at least 6,500 psi. The flexural modulus must be at least 725,000 psi. Comply with sampling and testing procedures under ASTM F2019, Section 7: Recommended Inspection Practices.

Take core samples in the presence of the Engineer. Comply with the following core sample requirements:

- Take 2 samples. Take the samples at least 1 foot from each end of the culvert at a location near the top of the culvert. Samples must be at least 2 inches in diameter.
- If culvert material is corrugated metal, obtain samples at the corrugation crests.

Prepare the core samples by separating the CIPP material from the culvert material. If heat cured, remove the film from the inner lining or preliner. If UV cured, remove the film from the inner and outer foil.

Measure the thickness of the liner at 3 spots on each sample. If the culvert material is corrugated metal, measure the thickness at 3 spots that are along a line corresponding to the corrugation crests. Calculate the thickness as an average of at least 6 measurements.

If UV cured, comply with sampling and testing procedures under ASTM F2019, Section 7: Recommended Inspection Practices. If the culvert material is corrugated metal, measure the thickness at 3 spots that are along a line corresponding to the corrugation crests. Calculate the thickness as an average of at least 6 measurements.

All voids from core samples are to be filled with TYPE 1 epoxy resin as specified in NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures (2018)– Section 1081.

CIPP may be rejected if any of:

- Actual temperature and curing time and schedule do not comply with those shown in the authorized work plan
- Pressure deviates more than 1 psi from the required pressure
- At any time during installation the manufacturer's required minimum cool-down time or maximum cool-down rate is violated
- There are defects including:
 - Concentrated ridges, including folds and wrinkles exceeding 8 percent of the CIPP diameter
 - Dry spots
 - Lifts
 - Holes
 - Tears
 - Soft spots
 - Blisters or bubbles
 - Delaminations
 - Gaps in the length of the CIPP
 - Gaps or a loose fit between the exterior of the CIPP and the culvert
- Test results indicate one of the following:

- If heat cured, 2 of the 3 flat plate samples do not have any of the following:
 - the specified modulus of elasticity
 - the specified flexural strength
 - either the specified modulus of elasticity or the specified flexural strength
- If UV cured, 2 of the 3 cured samples do not have any of the following:
 - the specified modulus of elasticity
 - the specified flexural strength
 - either the specified modulus of elasticity or the specified flexural strength
- The liner thickness is less than the greater of either one of the following:
 - Specified thickness
 - Calculated minimum thickness shown in your authorized work plan
- Materials and installation methods are not those shown in your authorized installation plan
- Defects are excessive or unrepairable
- CIPP is not continuous or does not fit tightly for the full length of the culvert

If UV cured, and post installation inspections reveal signs of incomplete curing (dripping resin, etc.), contractor will trim liner obscuring uncured liner, re-wet, and re-cure with UV.

Category C – HDPE, PE, or PP solid wall slip liner shall be installed per specification or standard practice for installation (ASTM F585 polyethylene slip-line, ASTM F2620 polyethylene heat fusion joining, for example).

Installation requirements of pipe sections shall be according the manufacturer recommendations for the specific product as applicable. All components of the systems shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific system used, and all components shall include lot numbers.

Before lining, pull or push a mandrel through the existing pipe or perform laser survey to verify liner clearance. The liner must be positioned and secured to facilitate its complete encapsulation by grout. Follow the Manufacturer's recommendations for handling and assembling the pipe, and all provisions included in the design calculations. Reconnect the existing storm drain lateral connections immediately after the liner has been installed in place. Use robotic cutting devices to re-establish tie-ins in non-man accessible pipes. Prior to filling the annular space, connect and seal all laterals between the new liner pipe and the existing lateral.

Grout the entire annular space with non-shrink grout or an expansive admixture approved by the Manufacturer for use with the liner system. In the absence of Manufacturer recommendations for grout, refer to Section 1003 of Standard Specifications. Provide a minimum annular space of 1 inch for grouting between the new and existing pipes. Provide details on how to hold the liner pipe to line and grade until the grout has set. Ensure the maximum pressure developed by the grout does not exceed the manufacturer's recommendation for the maximum allowable external pressure for the liner pipe. If the volume of the grout used is less than the anticipated (calculated) volume, or an inspection of the relined culvert indicates that there are voids in the annular space, the Contractor must provide the Engineer with a plan to rehabilitate all identified voids. Depending on the location and size of the voids, additional grouting may be required in these areas. This may be accomplished by re-grouting in those areas from within the culvert. The voids must be filled to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no additional cost. Grouting is included with the cost of pipe liner installation.

Lining with HDPE or PP: Field cuts will be permitted only at the terminal ends. No pipe sections less than 3 feet long will be allowed in any lining projects. Perform all butt fusion, welding and extrusion welding of pipe in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendation.

Based on existence of alignment breaks or pinch points in the host pipe, all joints shall be butt fusion welded, or extrusion welded unless alternate joining methods are approved by the Engineer, in which case limit joint separations to less than ½ inch between adjoining sections.

Category F – Smooth wall steel pipe liner rehabilitation methods shall conform to Section 330 of the Standard Specifications, except as altered herein. The work shall be rehabilitation by the insertion of a smooth wall steel pipe into a host pipe. Where field welding is required, pipe shall be joined by butt welds in accordance with AWWA C-206. Field welded butt joints shall be complete joint penetration (CJP) and the adjoining members shall be assembled so that the seams in the adjacent pipe sections are offset from each other by at least five (5) times the thickness of the thinner member.

Welding procedures employed for welding shall be qualified by testing or prequalified in accordance with AWS D1.1

Personnel performing field welding operations shall have been tested and qualified by the Department.

The contractor shall provide a Certified Welding Inspector (CWI) on site during all welding and inspection operations to perform the necessary quality control examinations. Non-destructive testing/examination for testing to include visual outlined in the AWWA C-206 shall be provided at the contractor's expense.

Personnel performing these functions shall be qualified in accordance with AWS QC1 and/or the recommendations of the current edition of ASNT SNT-TC-1A. Radiographic and Hydrostatic testing is not required.

Before lining, pull or push a mandrel through the existing pipe to verify liner clearance. The liner must be positioned and secured to facilitate its complete encapsulation by grout. Follow the Manufacturer's recommendations for handling and assembling the pipe, and all provisions included in the design calculations. Reconnect the existing storm drain lateral connections after the liner has been installed in place. Use robotic cutting devices to re-establish tie-ins in non-man accessible pipes. Prior to filling the annular space, connect and seal all laterals between the new liner pipe and the existing lateral.

Grout the entire annular space with non-shrink grout approved by the Manufacturer for use with the liner system. In the absence of Manufacturer recommendations for grout, refer to Section 1003 of Standard Specifications. Provide a minimum annular space of 1 inch for grouting between the new and existing pipes. Provide details on how to hold the liner pipe to line and grade until the grout has set. Ensure the maximum pressure developed by the grout does not exceed the manufacturer's recommendation for the maximum allowable external pressure for the liner pipe. If the volume of the grout used is less than the anticipated (calculated) volume, or an inspection of the relined culvert indicates that there are voids in the annular space, the Contractor must provide the Engineer with a plan to rehabilitate all identified voids. Depending on the location and size of the voids, additional grouting may be required in these areas. This may be accomplished by re-grouting in those areas from within the culvert. The voids must be filled to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no additional cost. Grouting is included with the cost of pipe liner installation.

Post Installation Inspection – In addition to the inspection performed by the Department, the Contractor shall perform two post-installation video inspections using NASSCO certified personnel. The first inspection shall take place between 90 and 100 calendar days after completion of installation for each culvert or system to a single outfall. The second inspection shall take place 30 calendar days prior to the end of the liner warranty period (5 years, secured by construction bond). The camera shall be situated at the centerline of the pipe and shall be mounted on a rubber tired or tracked pipe rover that allows for a 360-degree inspection. Inspection equipment shall be capable of measuring protrusions and obstructions of ½ inch or greater. The inspection shall be performed in the presence of the Engineer. Dewater the host pipe to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Video inspections shall be clearly labeled on the media with the time, date, and location of the pipe inspected. A copy of the video inspection shall be furnished to the Engineer prior to acceptance of the work.

The finished liner may be rejected if not continuous over its entire length and free from visual defects such as foreign inclusions, joint separation, cracks, insufficient liner thickness, material loss, roughness, deformation, dry spots, pinholes, insufficient bonding to host pipe, delamination, or other material or installation deficiencies as described herein.

Remedies for rejection of liner - In the event the first post inspection of the installation reveals defects in localized areas of the liner pipe (comprising less than 20 percent of the pipe length) the localized defects shall be repaired as specified by the manufacturer. Where defects occur on 20 percent or more of the pipe length the defects shall be repaired, however, the Contractor will not be allowed to continue with his methodology of installation and/or the liner system used until he/she can demonstrate to the Engineer that he/she has remedied his/her operations to a sufficient level of quality as determined by the engineer. All such remedial efforts shall be at the Contractor's expense. Further failure(s) to perform a proper installation may result in the disallowance of the use of that liner system and an adjustment in the cost or non-payment of the failed installations depending on the severity of the failure.

In the event the first post installation inspection is not conducted until all or most of the locations in the Contract permitting this methodology have been performed, and the inspection reveals defects on 20 percent or more of the host pipe's length, then an adjustment in the cost or non-payment of the failed installations may be made by the Engineer depending on the severity of the failure.

In the event the second post inspection of the installation reveals defects, the Department may execute the option to call the construction bond to reimburse the Department for repairs or corrections, or to act as an adjustment in the cost, or both.

IV. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Pre Installation Inspection will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of pipe inspected, including mobilization of equipment, and production of records. Linear footage is not increased for multiple passes of inspection equipment through a length of pipe.

Pipe Rehabilitation will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of pipe for the Size, and Method that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. Note: At locations shown in the Contract where multiple methods are permitted, the Contractor may select

any of the methods specified, however, if only one method is specified, this will be the only method permitted at that location. This price shall include post installation inspection, cleaning and preparation of the host pipe, furnishing and installing the liner, lateral reconnection, coupling and expansion devices, annular cement grout, design (if necessary) and shop drawing preparation, furnishing and installing liner and all components of the liner system, capturing any discharges or releases during installation or curing operations, furnishing any documentation or fees required for effluent or condensate disposal, all testing and sampling including furnishing reports and pre and post installation video inspections, waste disposal costs, excavation, sheeting, shoring, disposing of surplus and unsuitable material; backfilling and backfill material; compaction, restoring existing surfaces, and clearing debris and obstructions.

De-Watering, water diversions or bypasses required to complete Pipe Rehabilitation work shall not be measured or paid separately. All materials, equipment, labor, or other resources required to de-watering a site shall be incidental to the Linear Foot unit cost for Pipe Rehabilitation.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Pre Installation Inspection	Linear Foot
___ ” Pipe Rehabilitation CIPP Liner	Linear Foot
___ ” OD Pipe Rehabilitation Solid Wall Thermoplastic Slip Liner	Linear Foot
___ ” Pipe Rehabilitation Smooth Wall Steel Slip Liner	Linear Foot

FLOWABLE FILL:

(9-17-02) (Rev 1-17-12)

300, 340, 1000, 1530, 1540, 1550

SP3 R30

Description

This work consists of all work necessary to place flowable fill in accordance with these provisions, the plans, and as directed.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Flowable Fill	1000-6

Construction Methods

Discharge flowable fill material directly from the truck into the space to be filled, or by other approved methods. The mix may be placed full depth or in lifts as site conditions dictate. The Contractor shall provide a method to plug the ends of the existing pipe in order to contain the flowable fill.

Measurement and Payment

At locations where flowable fill is called for on the plans and a pay item for flowable fill is included in the contract, *Flowable Fill* will be measured in cubic yards and paid as the actual number of cubic yards that have been satisfactorily placed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this provision including, but not limited to, the mix design, furnishing, hauling, placing and containing the flowable fill.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Flowable Fill	Cubic Yard

POLYPROPYLENE CULVERT PIPE:

(8-20-19)

305,310

SP3 R35

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 3-5, Article 305-1 DESCRIPTION, lines 12-14, replace with the following:

Where shown in the plans, the Contractor may use reinforced concrete pipe, aluminum alloy pipe, aluminized corrugated steel pipe, HDPE pipe, Polypropylene Pipe, or PVC pipe in accordance with the following requirements.

Page 3-5, Article 305-2 MATERIALS, add the following after line 16:

Item	Section
Polypropylene Pipe	1032-9

Page 3-6, Article 310-2 MATERIALS, add the following after line 9:

Item	Section
Polypropylene Pipe	1032-9

Page 3-6, Article 310-4 SIDE DRAIN PIPE, lines 24-25, replace the first sentence of the second paragraph with the following:

Where shown in the plans, side drain pipe may be Class II reinforced concrete pipe, aluminized corrugated steel pipe, corrugated aluminum alloy pipe, polypropylene pipe, HDPE pipe or PVC pipe.

Page 3-7, Article 310-5 PIPE END SECTIONS, lines 2-4, replace the second sentence with the following:

Both corrugated steel and concrete pipe end sections will work on concrete pipe, corrugated steel pipe, polypropylene pipe, and HDPE smooth lined corrugated plastic pipe.

Page 3-7, Article 310-6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, add the following after line 14:

Pay Item

__" Polypropylene Pipe

Pay Unit

Linear Foot

Page 10-60, add Article 1032-9:**(A) General**

Use polypropylene pipe from sources participating in the Department's Polypropylene Pipe QA/QC Program. A list of participating sources is available from the Materials and Tests Unit. The Department will remove a manufacturer of polypropylene pipe from this program if the monitoring efforts indicated that non-specification material is being provided or test procedures are not being followed.

Use polypropylene culvert pipe that meets AASHTO M 330 for Type S or Type D, or ASTM F2881 or ASTM F2764 Double or Triple wall; and has been evaluated by NTPEP.

(B) End Treatments, Pipe Tees and Elbows

End treatments, pipe tees and elbows shall meet AASHTO M 330, Section 7.7, or ASTM F2764, Section 6.6.

(C) Marking

Clearly mark each section of pipe, end section, tee and elbow and other accessories according to the Department's Polypropylene Pipe QC/QA Program:

- (1) AASHTO or ASTM Designation
- (2) The date of manufacture
- (3) Name or trademark of the manufacturer

When polypropylene pipe, end sections, tees and elbows have been inspected and accepted a sticker will be applied to the inside of the pipe. Do not use pipe sections, flared end sections, tees or elbows which do not have this seal of approval.

BRIDGE APPROACH FILLS:

(10-19-10) (Rev. 1-16-18)

422

SP4 R02A

Description

Bridge approach fills consist of backfilling behind bridge end bents with select material or aggregate to support all or portions of bridge approach slabs. Install drains to drain water from bridge approach fills and geotextiles to separate approach fills from embankment fills, ABC and natural ground as required. For bridge approach fills behind end bents with mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) abutment walls, reinforce bridge approach fills with MSE wall reinforcement connected to end bent caps. Construct bridge approach fills in accordance with the contract, accepted submittals and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 422.01 or 422.02 or Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Define bridge approach fill types as follows:

Approach Fills – Bridge approach fills in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 422.01 or 422.02 or Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10;

Standard Approach Fill – Type I Standard Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.01;

Modified Approach Fill – Type II Modified Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.02 and

Reinforced Approach Fill – Type III Reinforced Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geotextiles, Type 1	1056
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Select Materials	1016
Subsurface Drainage Materials	1044

Provide Type 1 geotextile for separation geotextiles and Class B concrete for outlet pads. Use Class V or Class VI select material for standard and modified approach fills. For an approach fill behind a bridge end bent with an MSE abutment wall, backfill the reinforced approach fill with the same aggregate type approved for the reinforced zone in the accepted MSE wall submittal. For MSE wall aggregate, reinforcement and connector materials, see the *Mechanically Stabilized Earth Retaining Walls* provision. Provide PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes for subsurface drainage materials. For PVC drain pipes, use pipes with perforations that meet AASHTO M 278.

Construction Methods

Excavate as necessary for approach fills in accordance with the contract. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place separation geotextiles or aggregate until approach fill dimensions and foundation material are approved.

For reinforced approach fills, cast MSE wall reinforcement or connectors into end bent cap backwalls within 3" of locations shown in the accepted MSE wall submittals. Install MSE wall reinforcement with the orientation, dimensions and number of layers shown in the accepted MSE wall submittals. If a reinforced approach fill is designed with geogrid reinforcement embedded in an end bent cap, cut geogrids to the required lengths and after securing ends of geogrids in place, reroll and rewrap portions of geogrids not embedded in the cap to protect geogrids from damage. Before placing aggregate, pull geosynthetic reinforcement taut so that it is in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases.

Attach separation geotextiles to end bent cap backwalls and wing walls with adhesives, tapes or other approved methods. Overlap adjacent separation geotextiles at least 18" with seams oriented

parallel to the roadway centerline. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed. Contact the Engineer when existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with separation geotextiles or MSE wall reinforcement.

Install continuous perforated PVC drain pipes with perforations pointing down in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 422.01 or 422.02. Connect drain pipes to outlet pipes just beyond wing walls. Connect PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes with solvent cement in accordance with Article 815-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and place outlet pads in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 815.03.

Install drain pipes so water drains towards outlets. If the groundwater elevation is above drain pipe elevations, raise drains up to maintain positive drainage towards outlets. Place pipe sleeves in or under wing walls so water drains towards outlets. Use sleeves that can withstand wing wall loads.

Place select material or aggregate in 8" to 10" thick lifts. Compact fine aggregate for reinforced approach fills in accordance with Subarticle 235-3(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except compact fine aggregate to a density of at least 98%. Compact select material for standard or modified approach fills and coarse aggregate for reinforced approach fills with a vibratory compactor to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Do not displace or damage geosynthetics, MSE wall reinforcement or drains when placing and compacting select material or aggregate. End dumping directly on geosynthetics is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on geosynthetics or drain pipes until they are covered with at least 8" of select material or aggregate. Replace any damaged geosynthetics or drains to the satisfaction of the Engineer. When approach fills extend beyond bridge approach slabs, wrap separation geotextiles over select material or aggregate as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.01 or 2018 Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Measurement and Payment

Type I Standard Approach Fill, Station ____, *Type II Modified Approach Fill, Station ____* and *Type III Reinforced Approach Fill, Station ____* will be paid at the contract lump sum price. The lump sum price for each approach fill will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and approach fill materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials, installing geotextiles and drains, compacting backfill and supplying select material, aggregate, separation geotextiles, drain pipes, pipe sleeves, outlet pipes and pads and any incidentals necessary to construct approach fills behind bridge end bents.

The contract lump sum price for *Type III Reinforced Approach Fill, Station ____* will also be full compensation for supplying and connecting MSE wall reinforcement to end bent caps but not designing MSE wall reinforcement and connectors. The cost of designing reinforcement and connectors for reinforced approach fills behind bridge end bents with MSE abutment walls will be incidental to the contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. ____*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Type I Standard Approach Fill, Station _____	Lump Sum
Type II Modified Approach Fill, Station _____	Lump Sum
Type III Reinforced Approach Fill, Station _____	Lump Sum

ALTERNATE BRIDGE APPROACH FILLS FOR INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS:

(1-16-18)

422

SP4 R02B

Description

At the Contractors option, use Type A Alternate Bridge Approach Fills instead of Type I or II Bridge Approach Fills to support bridge approach slabs for integral bridge abutments. An alternate bridge approach fill consists of constructing an approach fill with a temporary geotextile wall before placing all or a portion of the concrete for the backwall and wing walls of the integral end bent cap. The temporary geotextile wall is designed for a crane surcharge, remains in place and aligned so the wall face functions as a form for the end bent cap backwall and wing walls. Install drains, welded wire facing and geotextiles and backfill approach fills and temporary walls with select material as required. Define “geotextiles” as separation or reinforcement geotextiles, “temporary wall” as a temporary geotextile wall and “alternate approach fill” as a Type A Alternate Bridge Approach Fill in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geotextiles	1056
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Select Materials	1016
Subsurface Drainage Materials	1044
Welded Wire Reinforcement	1070-3

For temporary walls, use welded wire reinforcement for welded wire facing and Type 5 geotextile for reinforcement geotextiles. Use Type 5 geotextile with lengths and an ultimate tensile strength as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Provide Type 1 geotextile for separation geotextiles and Class B concrete for outlet pads. Use Class V or Class VI select material for alternate approach fills and temporary walls. Provide PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes for subsurface drainage materials. For PVC drain pipes, use pipes with perforations that meet AASHTO M 278.

Construction Methods

Excavate as necessary for alternate approach fills and temporary walls in accordance with the contract. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place geotextiles until approach fill dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Install geotextiles as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Attach separation geotextiles to end bent cap backwalls and wing walls as needed with adhesives, tapes or other

approved methods. Overlap adjacent geotextiles at least 18" with seams oriented parallel to the roadway centerline. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed. Contact the Engineer when existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with geotextiles.

Install continuous perforated PVC drain pipes with perforations pointing down in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Connect drain pipes to outlet pipes just beyond wing walls. Connect PVC pipes, fittings and outlet pipes with solvent cement in accordance with Article 815-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and place outlet pads in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 815.03.

Install drain pipes so water drains towards outlets. If the groundwater elevation is above drain pipe elevations, raise drains up to maintain positive drainage towards outlets. Place pipe sleeves in or under wing walls so water drains towards outlets. Use sleeves that can withstand wing wall loads.

At the Contractor's option, construct bottom portion of integral end bents before temporary walls as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawings No. 422.03. Erect and set welded wire facing so facing functions as a form for the end bent cap backwall. Place welded wire facing adjacent to each other in the horizontal and vertical directions to completely cover the temporary wall face. Stagger welded wire facing to create a running bond by centering facing over joints in the row below.

Wrap reinforcement geotextiles at the temporary wall face in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03 and cover geotextiles with at least 3" of select material. Place layers of reinforcement geotextiles within 3" of locations shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Before placing select material, pull reinforcement geotextiles taut so they are in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Install reinforcement geotextiles with the direction shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. Do not splice or overlap reinforcement geotextiles so seams are parallel to the temporary wall face.

Place select material in 8" to 10" thick lifts and compact select material with a vibratory compactor to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Do not displace or damage geotextiles or drains when placing and compacting select material. End dumping directly on geotextiles is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on geotextiles or drain pipes until they are covered with at least 8" of select material. Replace any damaged geotextiles or drains to the satisfaction of the Engineer. When alternate approach fills extend beyond bridge approach slabs, wrap separation geotextiles over select material as shown in 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03.

Temporary walls are designed for a surcharge pressure in accordance with 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 422.03. If the crane surcharge will exceed the wall design, contact the Engineer before positioning the crane over reinforcement geotextiles.

Measurement and Payment

Alternate approach fills will be paid at the contract lump sum for either *Type I Standard Approach Fill, Station ____* or *Type II Modified Approach Fill, Station ____* based on the approach fill type that the alternate approach fill is replacing. The lump sum price for each approach fill will be full

compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and alternate approach fill materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials, constructing temporary walls, installing wall facing, geotextiles and drains, compacting backfill and supplying select material, separation and reinforcement geotextiles, welded wire facing, drain pipes, pipe sleeves, outlet pipes and pads and any incidentals necessary to construct alternate approach fills for integral abutments.

AGGREGATE SUBGRADE:

(5-15-18)

505

SP5 R8

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 5-8, Article 505-1 DESCRIPTION, lines 4-6, replace the paragraph with the following:

Construct aggregate subgrades in accordance with the contract. Install geotextile for soil stabilization and place Class IV subgrade stabilization at locations shown in the plans and as directed.

Undercut natural soil materials if necessary to construct aggregate subgrades. Define “subbase” as the portion of the roadbed below the Class IV subgrade stabilization. For Type 2 aggregate subgrades, undercut subbases as needed. The types of aggregate subgrade with thickness and compaction requirements for each are as shown below.

Type 1 – A 6 to 24 inch thick aggregate subgrade with Class IV subgrade stabilization compacted to 92% of AASHTO T 180 as modified by the Department or to the highest density that can be reasonably obtained.

Type 2 – An 8 inch thick aggregate subgrade on a proof rolled subbase with Class IV subgrade stabilization compacted to 97% of AASHTO T 180 as modified by the Department.

Page 5-8, Article 505-3 CONSTRUCTION METHODS, line 12, insert the following after the first sentence of the first paragraph:

For Type 2 aggregate subgrades, proof roll subbases in accordance with Section 260 before installing geotextile for soil stabilization.

Page 5-8, Article 505-3 CONSTRUCTION METHODS, lines 16-17, replace the last sentence of the first paragraph with the following:

Compact ABC as required for the type of aggregate subgrade constructed.

Page 5-8, Article 505-4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 26, insert the following after the last sentence of the first paragraph:

Undercut Excavation of natural soil materials from subbases for Type 2 aggregate subgrades will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 225-7 or 226-3. No measurement will be made for any undercut excavation of fill materials from subbases.

PRICE ADJUSTMENT - ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX:

(11-21-00)

620

SP6 R25

Price adjustments for asphalt binder for plant mix will be made in accordance with Section 620 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

The base price index for asphalt binder for plant mix is \$ **532.92** per ton.

This base price index represents an average of F.O.B. selling prices of asphalt binder at supplier's terminals on **July 1, 2019**.

MILLING ASPHALT PAVEMENT:

(1-15-19)

607

SP6 R59

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 6-5, Article 607-2, EQUIPMENT, lines 14-16, delete the seventh sentence of this Article and replace with the following:

Use either a non-contacting laser or sonar type ski system with a minimum of three referencing stations mounted on the milling machine at a length of at least 24 feet.

ASPHALT CONCRETE PLANT MIX PAVEMENTS:

(2-20-18) (Rev.1-15-19)

610, 1012

SP6 R65

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 6-14, Table 609-3, LIMITS OF PRECISION FOR TEST RESULTS, replace with the following:

Mix Property	Limits of Precision
25.0 mm sieve (Base Mix)	± 10.0%
19.0 mm sieve (Base Mix)	± 10.0%
12.5 mm sieve (Intermediate & Type P-57)	± 6.0%
9.5 mm sieve (Surface Mix)	± 5.0%
4.75 mm sieve (Surface Mix)	± 5.0%
2.36 mm sieve (All Mixes, except S4.75A)	± 5.0%
1.18 mm sieve (S4.75A)	± 5.0%
0.075 mm sieve (All Mixes)	± 2.0%
Asphalt Binder Content	± 0.5%
Maximum Specific Gravity (G_{mm})	± 0.020
Bulk Specific Gravity (G_{mb})	± 0.030
TSR	± 15.0%
QA retest of prepared QC Gyratory Compacted Volumetric Specimens	± 0.015
Retest of QC Core Sample	± 1.2% (% Compaction)
Comparison QA Core Sample	± 2.0% (% Compaction)

QA Verification Core Sample	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
Density Gauge Comparison of QC Test	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
QA Density Gauge Verification Test	± 2.0% (% Compaction)

Page 6-17, Table 610-1, MIXING TEMPERATURE AT THE ASPHALT PLANT, replace with the following:

Binder Grade	JMF Temperature
PG 58-28; PG 64-22	250 - 290°F
PG 76-22	300 - 325°F

Page 6-17, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), lines 38-39, delete the fourth paragraph.

Page 6-18, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), line 12, replace “SF9.5A” with “S9.5B”.

Page 6-18, Table 610-3, MIX DESIGN CRITERIA, replace with the following:

Mix Type	Design ESALs millions ^A	Binder PG Grade	Compaction Levels		Max. Rut Depth (mm)	Volumetric Properties ^B			
			G _{mm} @			VMA % Min.	VTM %	VFA Min.-Max.	%G _{mm} @ N _{ini}
			N _{ini}	N _{des}					
S4.75A	< 1	64 - 22	6	50	11.5	16.0	4.0 - 6.0	65 - 80	≤ 91.5
S9.5B	0 - 3	64 - 22	6	50	9.5	16.0	3.0 - 5.0	70 - 80	≤ 91.5
S9.5C	3 - 30	64 - 22	7	65	6.5	15.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
S9.5D	> 30	76 - 22	8	100	4.5	15.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.0
I19.0C	ALL	64 - 22	7	65	-	13.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
B25.0C	ALL	64 - 22	7	65	-	12.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
Design Parameter						Design Criteria			
All Mix Types	Dust to Binder Ratio (P _{0.075} / P _{be})					0.6 - 1.4 ^C			
	Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR) ^D					85% Min. ^E			

A. Based on 20 year design traffic.

B. Volumetric Properties based on specimens compacted to N_{des} as modified by the Department.

C. Dust to Binder Ratio (P_{0.075} / P_{be}) for Type S4.75A is 1.0 - 2.0.

D. NCDOT-T-283 (No Freeze-Thaw cycle required).

E. TSR for Type S4.75A & B25.0C mixes is 80% minimum.

Page 6-20, Table 610-5, BINDER GRADE REQUIREMENTS (BASED ON RBR%), replace with the following:

Mix Type	%RBR ≤ 20%	21% ≤ %RBR ≤ 30%	%RBR ≥ 30%
S4.75A, S9.5B, S9.5C, I19.0C, B25.0C	PG 64-22	PG 64-22 ^A	PG-58-28
S9.5D, OGFC	PG 76-22 ^B	n/a	n/a

- A. If the mix contains any amount of RAS, the virgin binder shall be PG 58-28.
- B. Maximum Recycled Binder Replacement (%RBR) is 18% for mixes using PG 76-22 binder.

Page 6-20, Table 610-6, PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-6 PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT	
Asphalt Concrete Mix Type	Minimum Surface and Air Temperature
B25.0C	35°F
I19.0C	35°F
S4.75A, S9.5B, S9.5C	40°F ^A
S9.5D	50°F

- A. For the final layer of surface mixes containing recycled asphalt shingles (RAS), the minimum surface and air temperature shall be 50°F.

Page 6-21, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, lines 34-35, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Use an MTV for all surface mix regardless of binder grade on Interstate, US Routes, and NC Routes (primary routes) that have 4 or more lanes and median divided.

Page 6-21, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, lines 36-38, delete the fourth sentence and replace with the following:

Use MTV for all ramps, loops, Y-line that have 4 or more lanes and are median divided, full width acceleration lanes, full width deceleration lanes, and full width turn lanes that are greater than 1000 feet in length.

Page 6-23, Table 610-7, DENSITY REQUIREMENTS, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-7 DENSITY REQUIREMENTS	
Mix Type	Minimum % G_{mm} (Maximum Specific Gravity)
S4.75A	85.0 ^A
S9.5B	90.0
S9.5C, S9.5D, I19.0C, B25.0C	92.0

- A. Compaction to the above specified density will be required when the S4.75A mix is applied at a rate of 100 lbs/sy or higher.

Page 6-24, Article 610-13, FINAL SURFACE TESTING, lines 35-36, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Final surface testing is not required on ramps, loops and turn lanes.

Page 6-26, Subarticle 610-13(A)(1), Acceptance for New Construction, lines 29-30, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Areas excluded from testing by the profiler may be tested using a 10-foot straightedge in accordance with Article 610-12.

Page 6-27, Subarticle 610-13(B), Option 2- North Carolina Hearne Straightedge, lines 41-46, delete the eighth and ninth sentence of this paragraph and replace with the following:

Take profiles over the entire length of the final surface travel lane pavement exclusive of structures, approach slabs, paved shoulders, tapers, or other irregular shaped areas of pavement, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Test in accordance with this provision all mainline travel lanes, full width acceleration or deceleration lanes and collector lanes.

Page 6-28, Subarticle 610-13(B), Option 2- North Carolina Hearne Straightedge, lines 1-2, delete these two lines.

Page 6-32, Article 610-16 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, replace with the following:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type B25.0C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type I19.0C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S4.75A	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5B	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5D	Ton

Page 10-30, Table 1012-1, AGGREGATE CONSENSUS PROPERTIES, replace with the following:

**TABLE 1012-1
AGGREGATE CONSENSUS PROPERTIES^A**

Mix Type	Coarse Aggregate Angularity^B	Fine Aggregate Angularity % Minimum	Sand Equivalent % Minimum	Flat and Elongated 5 : 1 Ratio % Maximum
<i>Test Method</i>	<i>ASTM D5821</i>	<i>AASHTO T 304</i>	<i>AASHTO T 176</i>	<i>ASTM D4791</i>
S4.75A; S9.5B	75 / -	40	40	-
S9.5C; I19.0C; B25.0C	95 / 90	45	45	10
S9.5D	100 / 100	45	50	10
OGFC	100 / 100	45	45	10
UBWC	100 / 85	45	45	10

A. Requirements apply to the design aggregate blend.

B. 95 / 90 denotes that 95% of the coarse aggregate has one fractured face and 90% has 2 or more fractured faces.

DIAMOND GRINDING CONCRETE PAVEMENT:

(4-15-08) (Rev 08-16-16)

SPI 7-9A

Description

Perform the work covered by this provision including but not limited to diamond grinding and regrinding concrete pavement to meet final surface acceptable smoothness requirements detailed in Article 710-7, selecting diamond tipped saw blades and configuration of cutting head; continual removal of residual slurry from pavement and disposal; furnishing all labor, materials, supplies, tools, equipment and incidentals as necessary. Perform this work on all new concrete pavement or as directed by the Engineer.

Prior to beginning any diamond grinding operations, schedule a pre-grind meeting with grinding subcontractor, Division Construction Engineer, Project Engineer, Area Roadway Engineer, State Pavement Construction Engineer, representatives from the Roadside Environmental Unit and the Materials and Tests Unit.

Equipment

Use equipment with diamond tipped saw blades gang mounted on a power driven self-propelled machine with a minimum wheel base length of 15 feet that is specifically designed to smooth and texture Portland Cement Concrete pavement. Utilize equipment that does not cause ravels; aggregate fracture; spalls or disturbance to the longitudinal or transverse joints; or damage and/or strain to the underlying surface of the pavement. Should any of the above problems occur immediately suspend operations.

Provide a minimum 3 feet wide grinding head with 50 to 60 evenly spaced grooves per foot. Prior to designing the grinding head, evaluate the aggregate hardness of the concrete pavement and select the appropriate diamond size, diamond concentration and bond hardness for the individual saw blades.

Provide vacuuming equipment to continuously remove slurry residue and excess water from the pavement as part of the grinding operation. Transport slurry material off-site and dispose of this material appropriately. Do not allow the slurry material to flow into a travel lane occupied by traffic or into any drainage facility.

Method of Construction

Grind the pavement surface to a uniform appearance with a high skid resistant longitudinal corduroy type texture. Provide grooves between 0.09 and 0.15 inches wide with the land area between the grooves between 0.06 and 0.13 inches wide. Ensure a ridge peak of approximately 0.0625 inches higher than the bottom of the grooves.

Begin and end diamond grinding at lines normal to the pavement centerline. Grind only in the longitudinal direction. All grooves and adjacent passes shall be parallel to each other with no variation. Completely lap adjacent passes with no unground surface remaining between passes and no overlap of more than 1½ inches. Adjacent passes shall be within 1/8 inch of the same height as measured with a 3 foot straightedge. Maintain positive cross-slope drainage for the duration of the grinding operation.

Grind all travel lanes to include auxiliary lanes, ramps and loops with not less than 98 percent of the specified surface being textured by grinding. Grinding of the bridge decks and concrete shoulders will not be required. Remove a minimum 0.0625 inches at all locations except dips. Extra grinding to eliminate minor depressions is not required. It is anticipated that extra grinding will be required on the high side of existing faults in the pavement. There shall be no ridge between lanes. In a separate operation, transition the grinding of any remaining ridges greater than 1/8 inch in height on the outside edge next to the shoulder or at a tie to an existing facility to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Final surface testing is required on this project in accordance with Article 710-7 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Disposal of Residual Slurry

Diamond grinding slurry disposal shall be in accordance with the Statewide Permit for Land Application of Diamond Grinding Slurry (DGS), Permit No. WQ0035749 dated June 3, 2014. Submit a slurry disposal plan to the Engineer detailing method of handling and disposing of slurry from the diamond grinding operation a minimum of 60 days prior to beginning the diamond grinding operation. Engineer shall review the slurry disposal plan. Plan must be accepted prior to beginning the diamond grinding operation. DGS shall be transported beyond the project limits to an approved permitted site. No additional payment will be made for transporting this slurry material for disposal.

Disposal options are:

- (A) Concrete grinding residues (CGR) that are not liquid and otherwise not hazardous may be disposed of in a municipal solid waste landfill or utilized as an alternate daily cover (ADC). The sanitary landfill operator that requests the use of this material as ADC shall contact the N.C. Department of Environmental Quality (DEQ) inspector for approval. The

definition of a solid, for solid waste disposal purposes, is a material that passes a Paint Filter test. CGR's may be eligible for disposal or use as ADC in an unlined sanitary landfill or a construction and demolition debris landfill. If CGR is disposed in an unlined-landfill, the Contractor shall submit samples of the material to a certified laboratory to verify that the CGR does not exceed Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) regulatory limits for the following metals: Arsenic, Barium, Cadmium, Chromium, Lead, Mercury, Selenium and Silver.

- (B) Upon the Engineer's approval, dewatered CGR's may be beneficially reused within the DOT project boundary or areas under DOT control at agronomic rates suitable for the establishment of vegetation. Dewatered CGR's that meet the solid waste definition for inert debris, North Carolina General Statute 130A-290(a)(14), may also be used within the roadbed at rates approved by the Engineer for soil modification purposes. If CGR is disposed as beneficial reuse within DOT project boundaries, the Contractor shall submit samples of the material to a certified laboratory to verify that the CGR does not exceed RCRA regulatory limits for the following metals: Arsenic, Barium, Cadmium, Chromium, Lead, Mercury, Selenium and Silver.

To prevent the migration of any direct discharge from the diamond grinding machine DGS from entering a drainage inlet or structure, the contractor shall install coir fiber wattles and silt fence at the direction of the Engineer. Silt Fence shall be installed in accordance with Section 1605 of the *NCDOT 2012 Standard Specifications*

Measurement and Payment

The quantity of *Diamond Grinding PCC Pavement* to be paid for will be the actual number of square yards of pavement which has been satisfactorily diamond ground, measured along the final top surface of the pavement. No separate payment will be made for any overlapping, regrinding, or for extra grinding on the high side of existing faults.

Payment will be full compensation for the work, including but is not limited to grinding, disposal of slurry, final surface testing, furnishing all materials, equipment, labor and all incidentals necessary to satisfactorily complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Diamond Grinding PCC Pavement

Pay Unit

Square Yard

AUTOMATED MACHINE GUIDANCE

(1-2-11)

801

SP8 R01

General

This Special Provision contains requirements to be followed if the Contractor elects to use Global Positioning System (GPS) machine control grading and shall be used in conjunction with Section 801 of the *Standard Specifications*. The use of this technology is referenced as Automated Machine Guidance (AMG).

All equipment using AMG shall be able to generate end results that meet the *Standard Specifications*. Perform test sections for each type of work to be completed with AMG to demonstrate that the system has the capability to achieve acceptable results. If acceptable results cannot be achieved, conform to the requirements for conventional stakeout.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all errors resulting from the use of AMG and shall correct deficiencies to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no cost to the Department.

Submittals

If the Contractor elects to use AMG, a Digital Terrain Model (DTM) of the design surface and all intermediate surfaces shall be developed and submitted to the Engineer for review.

At least 90 days prior to beginning grading operations, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer an AMG work plan to include, but not limited to, proposed equipment, control software manufacturer and version, types of work to be completed using AMG, project site calibration report, repetitive calibration methods for construction equipment and rover units to be used for the duration of the project, and local GPS base station to be used for broadcasting differential correction data to rover units (this may include the NC Network RTK). All surveys must be tied to existing project control as established by NCDOT.

Inspection

The Engineer will perform quality assurance checks of all work associated with AMG. If it is determined that work is not being performed in a manner that will assure accurate results, the Engineer may require corrective action at no cost to the Department.

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with one GPS rover unit for use during the duration of the contract. The rover will be loaded with the same model that is used with the AMG and have the same capability as rover units used by the Contractor. The rover will be kept in the possession of the Engineer and will be returned to the Contractor upon completion of the contract. Any maintenance or repairs required for the rover will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Formal training of at least 8 hours shall be provided to the Engineer by the Contractor on the use of the proposed AMG system.

Subgrade and Base Controls

If the Contractor elects to use AMG for fine grading and placement of base or other roadway materials, the GPS shall be supplemented with a laser or robotic total station. Include details of the proposed system in the AMG work plan. In addition, the following requirements apply for the use of AMG for subgrade and base construction.

Provide control points at intervals along the project not to exceed 1,000 feet. The horizontal position of these points shall be determined by static GPS sessions or by traverse connection from the original base line control points. The elevation of these control points shall be established using differential leveling from project benchmarks, forming closed loops where practical. A copy of all new control point information shall be provided to the Engineer prior to construction activities.

Provide control points and conventional survey grade stakes at 500 foot intervals and at critical points such as, but not limited to, PCs, PTs, superelevation transition points, and other critical points as requested by the Engineer.

Provide hubs at the top of the finished subgrade at all hinge points on the cross section at 500 foot intervals. These hubs shall be established using conventional survey methods for use by the Engineer to check the accuracy of construction.

Measurement and Payment

No direct payment will be made for work required to utilize this provision. All work will be considered incidental to various grading operations.

ENERGY DISSIPATOR:

(1-1-02)

SPI

Description

Construct a concrete energy dissipator according to the details and in the locations shown on the plans. Provide all excavation, backfill, labor and material to complete this item of work. Structure may be cast-in-place or precast.

Material

Provide all material in accordance with Section 840-2 or Section 1077-3 as applicable. Use Class B concrete for cast-in-place or 4000 psi (27.6 Mpa) for precast.

Construction Methods

Perform all work in accordance with Section 840 or Section 1077 of the *Standard Specifications* as applicable.

Measurement and Payment

Energy Dissipator will be measured and paid for on an each basis completed and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Energy Dissipator	Each

MEDIAN HAZARD PROTECTION

Description

Furnish and install *Median Hazard Protection* at the concrete barrier transition sections as shown on the plans in accordance with the detail in the plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Median Hazard Protection will be measured and paid for per linear foot that are completed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all labor, materials (including, but not limited to concrete barrier, earth material, #57 stone, concrete cover, galvanized bar and grout) and all incidentals necessary construct the Median Hazard Protection.

Concrete barrier transition sections will be measured and paid for as provided elsewhere in the contract. No separate measurement or payment will be made for concrete cover at barrier transition sections as the cost of such shall be included in the unit price bid per each for *Concrete Barrier Transition Section*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Median Hazard Protection	Linear Foot

ADA FRAME AND GRATE:**Description**

Furnish and Install ADA Frames and Grates that have slot openings ½” or less in one direction for use with NCDOT Standard DWG 840.14 Drop Inlets located near the Rest Area Buildings and /or locations designated on the plans and in quantities on the itemized proposal and in accordance with this provision.

Materials

The Frame and Grate shall be fabricated using cast Iron with Grate and Frame meeting the requirements of Gray Iron ASTM A48 CL35B and comply with *NCDOT Standard Specification 1074-7*.

Measurement and Payment

ADA Frame and Grate shall be measured and paid for in units of each that have been installed and incorporated into the completed and accepted work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
ADA Frame and Grate	Each

GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE - TL-2:

(10-21-08) (Rev. 7-1-17)

862

SP8 R64

Description

Furnish and install guardrail end units in accordance with the details in the plans, the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish guardrail end units listed on the NCDOT Approved Products List at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal.

Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each guardrail end unit certifying it meets the requirements of the AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware, Test Level 2 in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each guardrail end unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the guardrail end unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans, and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

Guardrail end delineation is required on all approach and trailing end sections for both temporary and permanent installations. Guardrail end delineation consists of yellow reflective sheeting applied to the entire end section of the guardrail in accordance with Article 1088-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and is incidental to the cost of the guardrail end unit.

Measurement and Payment

Measurement and payment will be made in accordance with Article 862-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail End Units, Type TL-2

Pay Unit

Each

GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE - TL-3:

(4-20-04) (Rev. 7-1-17)

862

SP8 R65

Description

Furnish and install guardrail end units in accordance with the details in the plans, the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish guardrail end units listed on the NCDOT Approved Products List at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal.

Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each guardrail end unit certifying it meets the requirements of the AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware, Test Level 3, in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each guardrail end unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the guardrail end unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans, and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

Guardrail end delineation is required on all approach and trailing end sections for both temporary and permanent installations. Guardrail end delineation consists of yellow reflective sheeting applied to the entire end section of the guardrail in accordance with Article 1088-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and is incidental to the cost of the guardrail end unit.

Measurement and Payment

Measurement and payment will be made in accordance with Article 862-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail End Units, Type TL-3

Pay Unit

Each

GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS AND TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS:

(1-16-2018)

862

SP8 R70

Guardrail anchor units will be in accordance with the details in the plans and the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 8-42, Article 862-6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, add the following:

Guardrail Anchor Units, Type ___ and Temporary Guardrail Anchor Units Type ___ will be measured and paid as units of each completed and accepted. No separate measurement will be made of any rail, terminal sections, posts, offset blocks, concrete, hardware or any other components of the completed unit that are within the pay limits shown in the plans for the unit as all such components will be considered to be part of the unit.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail Anchor Units, Type _____
Temporary Guardrail Anchor Units, Type _____

Pay Unit

Each
Each

IMPACT ATTENUATOR UNITS, TYPE TL-3:

(4-20-04) (Rev. 12-18-18)

SP8 R75

Description

Furnish and install impact attenuator units and any components necessary to connect the impact attenuator units in accordance with the manufacturer's requirement, the details in the plans and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish impact attenuator units listed on the Approved Products List at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal. Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each impact attenuator unit certifying it meets the requirements of the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH-16), Test Level 3, in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each impact attenuator unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the impact attenuator unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

If the median width is 40 feet or less, the Contractor shall supply NON-GATING Impact Attenuator Units.

If the median width is greater than 40 feet, the Contractor may use GATING or NON-GATING Impact Attenuator Units.

Measurement and Payment

Impact Attenuator Unit, Type TL-3 will be measured and paid at the contract unit price per each. Such prices and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this provision including, but not limited to, furnishing, installing and all incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Impact Attenuator Units, Type TL-3	Each

FOUNDATIONS AND ANCHOR ROD ASSEMBLIES FOR METAL POLES:

(1-17-12) (Rev. 1-16-18)

9, 14, 17

SP9 R05

Description

Foundations for metal poles include foundations for signals, cameras, overhead and dynamic message signs (DMS) and high mount and light standards supported by metal poles or upright trusses. Foundations consist of footings with pedestals and drilled piers with or without grade beams or wings. Anchor rod assemblies consist of anchor rods (also called anchor bolts) with nuts and washers on the exposed ends of rods and nuts and a plate or washers on the other ends of rods embedded in the foundation.

Construct concrete foundations with the required resistances and dimensions and install anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Construct drilled piers consisting of cast-in-place reinforced concrete cylindrical sections in excavated holes. Provide temporary casings or polymer slurry as needed to stabilize drilled pier excavations. Use a prequalified Drilled Pier Contractor to construct drilled piers for metal poles. Define "excavation" and "hole" as a drilled pier excavation and "pier" as a drilled pier.

This provision does not apply to foundations for signal pedestals; see Section 1743 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1743.01.

Materials

Refer to the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Conduit	1091-3
Grout, Type 2	1003

Item	Section
Polymer Slurry	411-2(B)(2)
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Rollers and Chairs	411-2(C)
Temporary Casings	411-2(A)

Provide Type 3 material certifications in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* for conduit, rollers, chairs and anchor rod assemblies. Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store foundation and anchor rod assembly materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

Use conduit type in accordance with the contract. Use Class A concrete for footings and pedestals, Class Drilled Pier concrete for drilled piers and Class AA concrete for grade beams and wings including portions of drilled piers above bottom of wings elevations. Corrugated temporary casings may be accepted at the discretion of the Engineer. A list of approved polymer slurry products is available from:

connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Products.aspx

Provide anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the contract consisting of the following:

- (A) Straight anchor rods,
- (B) Heavy hex top and leveling nuts and flat washers on exposed ends of rods, and
- (C) Nuts and either flat plates or washers on the other ends of anchor rods embedded in foundations.

Do not use lock washers. Use steel anchor rods, nuts and washers that meet ASTM F1554 for Grade 55 rods and Grade A nuts. Use steel plates and washers embedded in concrete with a thickness of at least 1/4". Galvanize anchor rods and exposed nuts and washers in accordance with Article 1076-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. It is not necessary to galvanize nuts, plates and washers embedded in concrete.

Construction Methods

Install the required size and number of conduits in foundations in accordance with the plans and accepted submittals. Construct top of piers, footings, pedestals, grade beams and wings flat, level and within 1" of elevations shown in the plans or approved by the Engineer. Provide an Ordinary Surface finish in accordance with Subarticle 825-6(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* for portions of foundations exposed above finished grade. Do not remove anchor bolt templates or pedestal or grade beam forms or erect metal poles or upright trusses onto foundations until concrete attains a compressive strength of at least 3,000 psi.

(A) Drilled Piers

Before starting drilled pier construction, hold a predrill meeting to discuss the installation, monitoring and inspection of the drilled piers. Schedule this meeting after the Drilled Pier Contractor has mobilized to the site. The Resident or Division Traffic Engineer, Contractor and Drilled Pier Contractor Superintendent will attend this predrill meeting.

Do not excavate holes, install piles or allow equipment wheel loads or vibrations within 20 ft of completed piers until 16 hours after Drilled Pier concrete reaches initial set.

Check for correct drilled pier alignment and location before beginning drilling. Check plumbness of holes frequently during drilling.

Construct drilled piers with the minimum required diameters shown in the plans. Install piers with tip elevations no higher than shown in the plans or approved by the Engineer.

Excavate holes with equipment of the sizes required to construct drilled piers. Depending on the subsurface conditions encountered, drilling through rock and boulders may be required. Do not use blasting for drilled pier excavations.

Contain and dispose of drilling spoils and waste concrete as directed and in accordance with Section 802 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Drilling spoils consist of all materials and fluids removed from excavations.

If unstable, caving or sloughing materials are anticipated or encountered, stabilize holes with temporary casings and/or polymer slurry. Do not use telescoping temporary casings. If it becomes necessary to replace a temporary casing during drilling, backfill the excavation, insert a larger casing around the casing to be replaced or stabilize the excavation with polymer slurry before removing the temporary casing.

If temporary casings become stuck or the Contractor proposes leaving casings in place, temporary casings should be installed against undisturbed material. Unless otherwise approved, do not leave temporary casings in place for mast arm poles and cantilever signs. The Engineer will determine if casings may remain in place. If the Contractor proposes leaving temporary casings in place, do not begin drilling until a casing installation method is approved.

Use polymer slurry and additives to stabilize holes in accordance with the slurry manufacturer's recommendations. Provide mixing water and equipment suitable for polymer slurry. Maintain the required slurry properties at all times except for sand content.

Define a "sample set" as slurry samples collected from mid-height and within 2 ft of the bottom of holes. Take sample sets from excavations to test polymer slurry immediately after filling holes with slurry, at least every 4 hours thereafter and immediately before placing concrete. Do not place Drilled Pier concrete until both slurry samples from an excavation meet the required polymer slurry properties. If any slurry test results do not meet the requirements, the Engineer may suspend drilling until both samples from a sample set meet the required polymer slurry properties.

Remove soft and loose material from bottom of holes using augers to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Assemble rebar cages and place cages and Drilled Pier concrete in accordance with Subarticle 411-4(E) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except for the following:

- (1) Inspections for tip resistance and bottom cleanliness are not required,
- (2) Temporary casings may remain in place if approved, and
- (3) Concrete placement may be paused near the top of pier elevations for anchor rod assembly installation and conduit placement or
- (4) If applicable, concrete placement may be stopped at bottom of grade beam or wings elevations for grade beam or wing construction.

If wet placement of concrete is anticipated or encountered, do not place Drilled Pier concrete until a concrete placement procedure is approved. If applicable, temporary casings and fluids may be removed when concrete placement is paused or stopped in accordance with the exceptions above provided holes are stable. Remove contaminated concrete from exposed Drilled Pier concrete after removing casings and fluids. If holes are unstable, do not remove temporary casings until a procedure for placing anchor rod assemblies and conduit or constructing grade beams or wings is approved.

Use collars to extend drilled piers above finished grade. Remove collars after Drilled Pier concrete sets and round top edges of piers.

If drilled piers are questionable, pile integrity testing (PIT) and further investigation may be required in accordance with Article 411-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. A drilled pier will be considered defective in accordance with Subarticle 411-5(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and drilled pier acceptance is based in part on the criteria in Article 411-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except for the top of pier tolerances in Subarticle 411-6(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

If a drilled pier is under further investigation, do not grout core holes, backfill around the pier or perform any work on the drilled pier until the Engineer accepts the pier. If the drilled pier is accepted, dewater and grout core holes and backfill around the pier with approved material to finished grade. If the Engineer determines a pier is unacceptable, remediation is required in accordance with Article 411-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for remediation of unacceptable drilled piers or post repair testing.

Permanently embed a plate in or mark top of piers with the pier diameter and depth, size and number of vertical reinforcing bars and the minimum compressive strength of the concrete mix at 28 days.

(B) Footings, Pedestals, Grade Beams and Wings

Excavate as necessary for footings, grade beams and wings in accordance with the plans, accepted submittals and Section 410 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. If unstable, caving or sloughing materials are anticipated or encountered, shore foundation excavations

as needed with an approved method. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place concrete or reinforcing steel until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Construct cast-in-place reinforced concrete footings, pedestals, grade beams and wings with the dimensions shown in the plans and in accordance with Section 825 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Use forms to construct portions of pedestals and grade beams protruding above finished grade. Provide a chamfer with a 3/4" horizontal width for pedestal and grade beam edges exposed above finished grade. Place concrete against undisturbed soil or backfill and fill in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Proper compaction around footings and wings is critical for foundations to resist uplift and torsion forces.

(C) Anchor Rod Assemblies

Size anchor rods for design and the required projection above top of foundations. Determine required anchor rod projections from nut, washer and base plate thicknesses, the protrusion of 3 to 5 anchor rod threads above top nuts after tightening and the distance of one nut thickness between top of foundations and bottom of leveling nuts.

Protect anchor rod threads from damage during storage and installation of anchor rod assemblies. Before placing anchor rods in foundations, turn nuts onto and off rods past leveling nut locations. Turn nuts with the effort of one workman using an ordinary wrench without a cheater bar. Report any thread damage to the Engineer that requires extra effort to turn nuts.

Arrange anchor rods symmetrically about center of base plate locations as shown in the plans. Set anchor rod elevations based on required projections above top of foundations. Securely brace and hold rods in the correct position, orientation and alignment with a steel template. Do not weld to reinforcing steel, temporary casings or anchor rods.

Install top and leveling (bottom) nuts, washers and the base plate for each anchor rod assembly in accordance with the following procedure:

- (1) Turn leveling nuts onto anchor rods to a distance of one nut thickness between the top of foundation and bottom of leveling nuts. Place washers over anchor rods on top of leveling nuts.
- (2) Determine if nuts are level using a flat rigid template on top of washers. If necessary, lower leveling nuts to level the template in all directions or if applicable, lower nuts to tilt the template so the metal pole or upright truss will lean as shown in the plans. If leveling nuts and washers are not in full contact with the template, replace washers with galvanized beveled washers.
- (3) Verify the distance between the foundation and leveling nuts is no more than one nut thickness.
- (4) Place base plate with metal pole or upright truss over anchor rods on top of washers. High mount luminaires may be attached before erecting metal poles but do not attach cables, mast arms or trusses to metal poles or upright trusses at this time.

- (5) Place washers over anchor rods on top of base plate. Lubricate top nut bearing surfaces and exposed anchor rod threads above washers with beeswax, paraffin or other approved lubricant.
- (6) Turn top nuts onto anchor rods. If nuts are not in full contact with washers or washers are not in full contact with the base plate, replace washers with galvanized beveled washers.
- (7) Tighten top nuts to snug-tight with the full effort of one workman using a 12" wrench. Do not tighten any nut all at once. Turn top nuts in increments. Follow a star pattern cycling through each nut at least twice.
- (8) Repeat (7) for leveling nuts.
- (9) Replace washers above and below the base plate with galvanized beveled washers if the slope of any base plate face exceeds 1:20 (5%), any washer is not in firm contact with the base plate or any nut is not in firm contact with a washer. If any washers are replaced, repeat (7) and (8).
- (10) With top and leveling nuts snug-tight, mark each top nut on a corner at the intersection of 2 flats and a corresponding reference mark on the base plate. Mark top nuts and base plate with ink or paint that is not water-soluble. Use the turn-of-nut method for pretensioning. Do not pretension any nut all at once. Turn top nuts in increments for a total turn that meets the following nut rotation requirements:

NUT ROTATION REQUIREMENTS (Turn-of-Nut Pretensioning Method)	
Anchor Rod Diameter, inch	Requirement
$\leq 1 \frac{1}{2}$	1/3 turn (2 flats)
$> 1 \frac{1}{2}$	1/6 turn (1 flat)

Follow a star pattern cycling through each top nut at least twice.

- (11) Ensure nuts, washers and base plate are in firm contact with each other for each anchor rod. Cables, mast arms and trusses may now be attached to metal poles and upright trusses.
- (12) Between 4 and 14 days after pretensioning top nuts, use a torque wrench calibrated within the last 12 months to check nuts in the presence of the Engineer. Completely erect mast arm poles and cantilever signs and attach any hardware before checking top nuts for these structures. Check that top nuts meet the following torque requirements:

TORQUE REQUIREMENTS	
Anchor Rod Diameter, inch	Requirement, ft-lb
7/8	180
1	270
1 1/8	380
1 1/4	420
$\geq 1 \frac{1}{2}$	600

If necessary, retighten top nuts in the presence of the Engineer with a calibrated torque wrench to within ± 10 ft-lb of the required torque. Do not overtighten top nuts.

- (13) Do not grout under base plate.

Measurement and Payment

Foundations and anchor rod assemblies for metal poles and upright trusses will be measured and paid for elsewhere in the contract.

No payment will be made for temporary casings that remain in drilled pier excavations. No payment will be made for PIT. No payment will be made for further investigation of defective piers. Further investigation of piers that are not defective will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No payment will be made for remediation of unacceptable drilled piers or post repair testing.

OVERHEAD AND DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN FOUNDATIONS:

(1-16-18)

SP9 R07

Description

Sign foundations include foundations for overhead and dynamic message signs (DMS) supported by metal poles or upright trusses. Sign foundations consist of footings with pedestals or drilled piers with or without grade beams or wings, conduit and anchor rod assemblies. Construct sign foundations in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Define “cantilever sign” as an overhead cantilever sign support in accordance with Figure 1-1 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Materials

Use sign foundation materials that meet the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

Subsurface Conditions

Assume the following soil parameters and groundwater elevation for sign foundations unless these subsurface conditions are not applicable to sign locations:

- (A) Unit weight (γ) = 120 pcf,
- (B) Friction angle (ϕ) = 30°,
- (C) Cohesion (c) = 0 psf and
- (D) Groundwater 7 feet below finished grade.

A subsurface investigation is required if the Engineer determines these assumed subsurface conditions do not apply to a sign location and the sign cannot be moved. Subsurface conditions requiring a subsurface investigation include but are not limited to weathered or hard rock, boulders, very soft or loose soil, muck or shallow groundwater. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for subsurface investigations.

Subsurface Investigations

Use a prequalified geotechnical consultant to perform one standard penetration test (SPT) boring in accordance with ASTM D1586 at each sign location requiring a subsurface investigation. Rough grade sign locations to within 2 feet of finished grade before beginning drilling. Drill

borings to 2 drilled pier diameters below anticipated pier tip elevations or refusal, whichever is higher.

Use the computer software gINT version V8i or later manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs. Provide boring logs sealed by a geologist or engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Sign Foundation Designs

Design sign foundations for the wind zone and clearances shown in the plans and the slope of finished grade at each sign location. Use the assumed soil parameters and groundwater elevation above for sign foundation designs unless a subsurface investigation is required. For sign locations requiring a subsurface investigation, design sign foundations for the subsurface conditions at each sign location. Design footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings in accordance with the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*. In some instances, conflicts with drainage structures may dictate sign foundation types.

Design footings in accordance with Section 4.4 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Do not use an allowable bearing pressure of more than 3,000 psf for footings. Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* except reduce ultimate side resistance by 25% for uplift. Use the computer software LPILE version 2016 or later manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers. Provide drilled pier designs with a horizontal deflection of less than 1" at top of piers. For cantilever signs with single drilled pier foundations supporting metal poles, use wings to resist torsion forces. Provide drilled pier designs with a factor of safety of at least 2.0 for torsion.

For drilled pier sign foundations supporting upright trusses, use dual drilled piers connected with a grade beam having a moment of inertia approximately equal to that of either pier. The Broms' method is acceptable to analyze drilled piers with grade beams instead of LPILE. Use a safety factor of at least 3.5 for the Broms' design method in accordance with C13.6.1.1 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Submit boring logs, if any, working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, required foundation dimensions and elevations and typical sections with reinforcement, conduit and anchor rod assembly details. Include all boring logs, design calculations and LPILE output for sign foundation design submittals. Have sign foundations designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Construct footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings and install anchor rod assemblies for sign foundations in accordance with the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

Measurement and Payment

Overhead Footings will be measured and paid in cubic yards. Sign foundations will be measured as the cubic yards of foundation concrete for footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings shown in the accepted submittals. The contract unit price for *Overhead Footings* will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and foundation materials, stabilizing or shoring excavations, supplying and placing concrete, reinforcing steel, conduit, anchor rod assemblies and any incidentals necessary to construct sign foundations. Subsurface investigations required by the Engineer will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Overhead Footings	Cubic Yard

THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIAL – COLOR TESTING:

3-19-19

1087

SP10 R05

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Pages 10-183 and 10-184, Subarticle 1087-7(D)(1)(b) Yellow, lines 9-11, delete and replace with the following:

Obtain Color Values $Y_{x,y}$ per ASTM E1349 using $C/2^\circ$ illuminant/observer. Results shall be $Y \geq 45\%$, and x,y shall fall within PR#1 chart chromaticity limits.

POLYUREA PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIAL – TYPE 2 TYPICAL CERTIFIED MILL TEST REPORT:

3-19-19

1087

SP10 R06

Amend the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 10-184, Subarticle 1087-8 Material Certification, in accordance with Subarticle 106-3 provide a Type 2 Typical Certified Mill Test Report and a Type 3 Manufacturer's Certification for Polyurea pavement marking material.

When tested, the material shall meet the physical and chemical characteristics provided by the manufacturer. NCDOT reserves the right to compare these test results to baseline test results gathered by the NCDOT Materials and Test Unit.

TEMPORARY SHORING:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 1-16-18)

SP11 R02

Description

Temporary shoring includes cantilever, braced and anchored shoring and temporary mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) walls. Temporary shoring does not include trench boxes. At the Contractor's option, use any type of temporary shoring unless noted otherwise in the plans or as directed. Design and construct temporary shoring based on actual elevations and shoring

dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Construct temporary shoring at locations shown in the plans and as directed. Temporary shoring is required to maintain traffic when a 2:1 (H:V) slope from the top of an embankment or bottom of an excavation will intersect the existing ground line less than 5 feet from the edge of pavement of an open travelway. This provision does not apply to pipe, inlet or utility installation unless noted otherwise in the plans.

Positive protection includes concrete barrier and temporary guardrail. Provide positive protection for temporary shoring at locations shown in the plans and as directed. Positive protection is required if temporary shoring is located in the clear zone in accordance with the *AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*.

(A) Cantilever and Braced Shoring

Cantilever shoring consists of steel sheet piles or H-piles with timber lagging. Braced shoring consists of sheet piles or H-piles with timber lagging and bracing such as beams, plates, walers, struts, rakers, etc. Define “piles” as sheet piles or H-piles.

(B) Anchored Shoring

Anchored shoring consists of sheet piles with walers or H-piles with timber lagging anchored with ground or helical anchors. Driven anchors may be accepted at the discretion of the Engineer. A ground anchor consists of a grouted steel bar or multi-strand tendon with an anchorage. A helical anchor consists of a lead section with a central steel shaft and at least one helix steel plate followed by extensions with only central shafts (no helixes) and an anchorage. Anchorages consist of steel bearing plates with washers and hex nuts for bars or steel wedge plates and wedges for strands. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Contractor to install ground anchors. Define “anchors” as ground, helical or driven anchors.

(C) Temporary MSE Walls

Temporary MSE walls include temporary geosynthetic and wire walls. Define “temporary wall” as a temporary MSE wall and “Temporary Wall Vendor” as the vendor supplying the temporary MSE wall. Define “reinforcement” as geotextile, geogrid, welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement.

Temporary geosynthetic walls consist of geotextile or geogrid reinforcement wrapped behind welded wire facing. Define “temporary geotextile wall” as a temporary geosynthetic wall with geotextile reinforcement and “temporary geogrid wall” as a temporary geosynthetic wall with geogrid reinforcement.

Temporary wire walls consist of welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement connected to welded wire facing. Define “Wire Wall Vendor” as the vendor supplying the temporary wire wall.

(D) Embedment

Define “embedment” for cantilever, braced and anchored shoring as the pile depth below the grade in front of shoring. Define “embedment” for temporary walls as the wall height below the grade in front of walls.

(E) Positive Protection

Define “unanchored or anchored portable concrete barrier” as portable concrete barrier (PCB) that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1170.01. Define “concrete barrier” as unanchored or anchored PCB or an approved equal. Define “temporary guardrail” as temporary steel beam guardrail that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 862.02.

Materials

Refer to the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Concrete Barrier Materials	1170-2
Flowable Fill, Excavatable	1000-6
Geosynthetics	1056
Neat Cement Grout	1003
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Select Materials	1016
Steel Beam Guardrail Materials	862-2
Steel Plates	1072-2
Steel Sheet Piles and H-Piles	1084
Untreated Timber	1082-2
Welded Wire Reinforcement	1070-3

Provide Type 6 material certifications for shoring materials in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Use Class IV select material for temporary guardrail. Use neat cement grout for Type 2 grout for ground anchors. Use Class A concrete that meets Article 450-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* or Type 1 grout for drilled-in piles. Provide untreated timber with a thickness of at least 3 inches and a bending stress of at least 1,000 pounds per square inch for timber lagging. Provide steel bracing that meets ASTM A36.

(A) Shoring Backfill

Use Class II, Type 1, Class III, Class V or Class VI select material or material that meets AASHTO M 145 for soil classification A-2-4 with a maximum PI of 6 for shoring backfill except do not use A-2-4 soil for backfill around culverts.

(B) Anchors

Store anchor materials on blocking a minimum of 12 inches above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt,

dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store anchor materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

(1) Ground Anchors

Use high-strength deformed steel bars that meet AASHTO M 275 or seven-wire strands that meet ASTM A886 or Article 1070-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Splice bars in accordance with Article 1070-9 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Do not splice strands. Use bondbreakers, spacers and centralizers that meet Article 6.3.5 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*.

(2) Helical Anchors

Use helical anchors with an ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. (ICC-ES) report. Provide couplers, thread bar adapters and bolts recommended by the Anchor Manufacturer to connect helical anchors together and to piles.

(3) Anchorages

Provide steel plates for bearing plates and steel washers, hex nuts, wedge plates and wedges recommended by the Anchor Manufacturer.

(C) Temporary Walls

(1) Welded Wire Facing

Use welded wire reinforcement for welded wire facing, struts and wires. For temporary wire walls, provide welded wire facing supplied by the Wire Wall Vendor or a manufacturer approved or licensed by the vendor. For temporary wire walls with separate reinforcement and facing components, provide connectors (e.g., bars, clamps, plates, etc.) and fasteners (e.g., bolts, nuts, washers, etc.) required by the Wire Wall Vendor.

(2) Geotextiles

Provide Type 2 geotextile for separation and retention geotextiles. Provide Type 5 geotextile for geotextile reinforcement with ultimate tensile strengths in accordance with the accepted submittals.

(3) Geogrid Reinforcement

Use geogrids with a roll width of at least 4 feet and an “approved” or “approved for provisional use” status code. The list of approved geogrids is available from: connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Materials/Pages/Materials-Manual-by-Material.aspx

Provide geogrids for geogrid reinforcement with design strengths in accordance with the accepted submittals. Geogrids are typically approved for ultimate tensile strengths in the machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD) or short-term design strengths for a 3-year design life in the MD based on material type. Define material type from the website above for shoring backfill as follows:

Material Type	Shoring Backfill
Borrow	A-2-4 Soil
Fine Aggregate	Class II, Type 1 or Class III Select Material
Coarse Aggregate	Class V or VI Select Material

(4) **Welded Wire Grid and Metallic Strip Reinforcement**

Provide welded wire grid and metallic strip reinforcement supplied by the Wire Wall Vendor or a manufacturer approved or licensed by the vendor. Use welded wire grid reinforcement (“mesh”, “mats” and “ladders”) that meet Article 1070-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and metallic strip reinforcement (“straps”) that meet ASTM A572 or A1011.

Preconstruction Requirements

(A) **Concrete Barrier**

Define “clear distance” behind concrete barrier as the horizontal distance between the barrier and edge of pavement. The minimum required clear distance for concrete barrier is shown in the plans. At the Contractor’s option or if the minimum required clear distance is not available, set concrete barrier next to and up against traffic side of temporary shoring except for barrier above temporary walls. Concrete barrier with the minimum required clear distance is required above temporary walls.

(B) **Temporary Guardrail**

Define “clear distance” behind temporary guardrail as the horizontal distance between guardrail posts and temporary shoring. At the Contractor’s option or if clear distance for cantilever, braced and anchored shoring is less than 4 feet, attach guardrail to traffic side of shoring as shown in the plans. Place ABC in clear distance and around guardrail posts instead of pavement. Do not use temporary guardrail above temporary walls.

(C) **Temporary Shoring Designs**

Before beginning temporary shoring design, survey existing ground elevations in the vicinity of shoring locations to determine actual design heights (H). Submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations for temporary shoring designs in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, shoring profiles, typical sections and details of temporary shoring design and construction sequence. Do not begin shoring construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Have cantilever and braced shoring designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Design Consultant to design anchored shoring. Provide anchored shoring designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for an Anchored Wall Design Consultant. Include details in anchored shoring working drawings of anchor locations and lock-off loads, unit grout/ground bond strengths for ground anchors or minimum installation torque and torsional strength rating for helical anchors and if necessary, obstructions extending through shoring or interfering with anchors. Include details in the anchored shoring construction sequence of pile and anchor installation, excavation and anchor testing.

Provide temporary wall designs sealed by a Design Engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina and employed or contracted by the Temporary Wall Vendor. Include details in temporary wall working drawings of geotextile and reinforcement types, locations and directions and obstructions extending through walls or interfering with reinforcement.

(1) Soil Parameters

Design temporary shoring for the assumed soil parameters and groundwater elevations shown in the plans. Assume the following soil parameters for shoring backfill:

(a) Unit weight (γ) = 120 pcf;

Friction Angle (ϕ)	Shoring Backfill
30°	A-2-4 Soil
34°	Class II, Type 1 or Class III Select Material
38°	Class V or VI Select Material

(c) Cohesion (c) = 0 psf.

(2) Traffic Surcharge

Design temporary shoring for a traffic surcharge of 250 pounds per square foot if traffic will be above and within H of shoring. This traffic surcharge does not apply to construction traffic. Design temporary shoring for any construction surcharge if construction traffic will be above and within H of shoring. For LRFD shoring designs, apply traffic (live load) surcharge in accordance with Figure C11.5.5-3 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*.

(3) Cantilever, Braced and Anchored Shoring Designs

Use shoring backfill for fill sections and voids between cantilever, braced and anchored shoring and the critical failure surface. Use concrete or grout for embedded portions of drilled-in H-piles. Do not use drilled-in sheet piles.

Define “top of shoring” for cantilever, braced and anchored shoring as where the grade intersects the back of sheet piles or H-piles and timber lagging. Design cantilever, braced and anchored shoring for a traffic impact load of 2,000 pounds per foot applied 18 inches above top of shoring if concrete barrier is above and next

to shoring or temporary guardrail is above and attached to shoring. For anchored shoring designs, apply traffic impact load as horizontal load (P_{HI}) in accordance with Figure 3.11.6.3-2(a) of the AASHTO LRFD specifications.

Extend cantilever, braced and anchored shoring at least 32 inches above top of shoring if shoring is designed for traffic impact. Otherwise, extend shoring at least 6 inches above top of shoring.

Design cantilever, braced and anchored shoring for a maximum deflection of 3 inches if the horizontal distance to the closest edge of pavement or structure is less than H. Otherwise, design shoring for a maximum deflection of 6 inches. Design cantilever and braced shoring in accordance with the plans and *AASHTO Guide Specifications for Bridge Temporary Works*.

Design anchored shoring in accordance with the plans and Article 11.9 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Use a resistance factor of 0.80 for tensile resistance of anchors with bars, strands or shafts. Extend the unbonded length for ground anchors and the shallowest helix for helical anchors at least 5 feet behind the critical failure surface. Do not extend anchors beyond right-of-way or easement limits. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail posts, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with anchors, maintain a clearance of at least 6 inches between obstructions and anchors.

(4) Temporary Wall Designs

Use shoring backfill in the reinforced zone of temporary walls. Separation geotextiles are required between shoring backfill and backfill, natural ground or culverts along the sides of the reinforced zone perpendicular to the wall face. For Class V or VI select material in the reinforced zone, separation geotextiles are also required between shoring backfill and backfill or natural ground on top of and at the back of the reinforced zone.

Design temporary walls in accordance with the plans and Article 11.10 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Embed temporary walls at least 18 inches except for walls on structures or rock as determined by the Engineer. Use a uniform reinforcement length throughout the wall height of at least 0.7H or 6 feet, whichever is longer. Extend the reinforced zone at least 6 inches beyond end of reinforcement. Do not locate the reinforced zone outside right-of-way or easement limits.

Use the simplified method for determining maximum reinforcement loads in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications. For geotextile reinforcement, use geotextile properties approved by the Department or default values in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications. For geogrid reinforcement, use approved geogrid properties available from the website shown elsewhere in this provision. If the website does not list a short-term design strength for an approved geogrid, use a short-term design strength equal to the ultimate tensile strength divided by 3.5 for the geogrid reinforcement. Use geosynthetic properties for the

direction reinforcement will be installed, a 3-year design life and shoring backfill to be used in the reinforced zone.

Do not use more than 4 different reinforcement strengths for each temporary geosynthetic wall. Design temporary geotextile walls for a reinforcement coverage ratio (R_c) of 1.0. For temporary geogrid walls with an R_c of less than 1.0, use a maximum horizontal clearance between geogrids of 3 feet and stagger reinforcement so geogrids are centered over gaps in the reinforcement layer below.

For temporary geosynthetic walls, use “L” shaped welded wire facing with 18 to 24 inch long legs. Locate geotextile or geogrid reinforcement so reinforcement layers are at the same level as the horizontal legs of welded wire facing. Use vertical reinforcement spacing equal to facing height. Wrap geotextile or geogrid reinforcement behind welded wire facing and extend reinforcement at least 3 feet back behind facing into shoring backfill.

For temporary wire walls with separate reinforcement and facing components, attach welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement to welded wire facing with a connection approved by the Department. For temporary geogrid and wire walls, retain shoring backfill at welded wire facing with retention geotextiles and extend geotextiles at least 3 feet back behind facing into backfill.

(D) Preconstruction Meeting

The Engineer may require a shoring preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction, inspection and testing of the temporary shoring. If required and if this meeting occurs before all shoring submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of temporary shoring without accepted submittals. The Resident, District or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and Shoring Contractor Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

Construction Methods

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of shoring. Direct run off away from shoring and shoring backfill. Contain and maintain backfill and protect material from erosion.

Install positive protection in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use PCB in accordance with Section 1170 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1170.01. Use temporary guardrail in accordance with Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing Nos. 862.01, 862.02 and 862.03.

(A) Tolerances

Construct shoring with the following tolerances:

- (1) Horizontal wires of welded wire facing are level in all directions,
- (2) Shoring location is within 6 inches of horizontal and vertical alignment shown in the accepted submittals, and
- (3) Shoring plumbness (batter) is not negative and within 2 degrees of vertical.

(B) Cantilever, Braced and Anchored Shoring Installation

If overexcavation behind cantilever, braced or anchored shoring is shown in the accepted submittals, excavate before installing piles. Otherwise, install piles before excavating for shoring. Install cantilever, braced or anchored shoring in accordance with the construction sequence shown in the accepted submittals. Remove piles and if applicable, timber lagging when shoring is no longer needed.

(1) Pile Installation

Install piles with the minimum required embedment and extension in accordance with Subarticles 450-3(D) and 450-3(E) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except that a pile driving equipment data form is not required. Piles may be installed with a vibratory hammer as approved by the Engineer.

Do not splice sheet piles. Use pile excavation to install drilled-in H-piles. After filling holes with concrete or grout to the elevations shown in the accepted submittals, remove any fluids and fill remaining portions of holes with flowable fill. Cure concrete or grout at least 7 days before excavating.

Notify the Engineer if refusal is reached before pile excavation or driven piles attain the minimum required embedment. When this occurs, a revised design submittal may be required.

(2) Excavation

Excavate in front of piles from the top down in accordance with the accepted submittals. For H-piles with timber lagging and braced and anchored shoring, excavate in staged horizontal lifts with a maximum height of 5 feet. Remove flowable fill and material in between H-piles as needed to install timber lagging. Position lagging with at least 3 inches of contact in the horizontal direction between the lagging and pile flanges. Do not excavate the next lift until timber lagging for the current lift is installed and if applicable, bracing and anchors for the current lift are accepted. Backfill behind cantilever, braced or anchored shoring with shoring backfill.

(3) Anchor Installation

If applicable, install foundations located behind anchored shoring before installing anchors. Fabricate and install ground anchors in accordance with the accepted submittals, Articles 6.4 and 6.5 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications* and the following unless otherwise approved:

- (a) Materials in accordance with this provision are required instead of materials conforming to Articles 6.4 and 6.5.3 of the AASHTO LRFD Specifications,
- (b) Encapsulation-protected ground anchors in accordance with Article 6.4.1.2 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications are not required, and
- (c) Corrosion protection for unbonded lengths of ground anchors and anchorage covers are not required.
- (d) Measure grout temperature, density and flow during grouting with at least the same frequency grout cubes are made for compressive strength. Perform density and flow field tests in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with American National Standards Institute/American Petroleum Institute Recommended Practice 13B-1 (Section 4, Mud Balance) and ASTM C939 (Flow Cone), respectively.

Install helical anchors in accordance with the accepted submittals and Anchor Manufacturer's instructions. Measure torque during installation and do not exceed the torsional strength rating of the helical anchor. Attain the minimum required installation torque and penetration before terminating anchor installation. When replacing a helical anchor, embed last helix of the replacement anchor at least 3 helix plate diameters past the location of the first helix of the previous anchor.

(4) Anchor Testing

Proof test and lock-off anchors in accordance with the accepted submittals and Article 6.5.5 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications* except for the acceptance criteria in Article 6.5.5.5. For the AASHTO LRFD specifications, "ground anchor" refers to a ground or helical anchor and "tendon" refers to a bar, strand or shaft.

(a) Anchor Acceptance

Anchor acceptance is based in part on the following criteria.

- (i) For ground and helical anchors, total movement is less than 0.04 inches between the 1 and 10 minute readings or less than 0.08 inches between the 6 and 60 minute readings.
- (ii) For ground anchors, total movement at maximum test load exceeds 80% of the theoretical elastic elongation of the unbonded length.

(b) Anchor Test Results

Submit PDF files of anchor test records including movement versus load plots for each load increment within 24 hours of completing each row of anchors. The Engineer will review the test records to determine if the anchors are acceptable.

If the Engineer determines an anchor is unacceptable, revise the anchor design or installation methods. Submit a revised anchored shoring design for acceptance and provide an acceptable anchor with the revised design or installation methods. If required, replace the anchor or provide additional anchors with the revised design or installation methods.

(C) Temporary Wall Installation

Excavate as necessary for temporary walls in accordance with the plans and accepted submittals. If applicable, install foundations located in the reinforced zone before placing shoring backfill or reinforcement unless otherwise approved. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place shoring backfill or reinforcement until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Erect welded wire facing so the wall position is as shown in the plans and accepted submittals. Set welded wire facing adjacent to each other in the horizontal and vertical direction to completely cover the wall face with facing. Stagger welded wire facing to create a running bond by centering facing over joints in the row below.

Wrap geotextile reinforcement and retention geotextiles behind welded wire facing as shown in the plans and accepted submittals and cover geotextiles with at least 3" of shoring backfill. Overlap adjacent geotextile reinforcement and retention and separation geotextiles at least 18 inches with seams oriented perpendicular to the wall face. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed.

Place reinforcement within 3 inches of locations shown in the plans and accepted submittals. Before placing shoring backfill, pull reinforcement taut so it is in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Install reinforcement with the direction shown in the plans and accepted submittals. For temporary wire walls with separate reinforcement and facing components, attach welded wire grid or metallic strip reinforcement to welded wire facing as shown in the accepted submittals. Do not splice or overlap reinforcement so seams are parallel to the wall face. Contact the Engineer when unanticipated existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with reinforcement.

Place shoring backfill in the reinforced zone in 8 to 10 inch thick lifts. Compact A-2-4 soil and Class II, Type 1 and Class III select material in accordance with Subarticle 235-3(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Use only hand operated compaction equipment to compact backfill within 3 feet of welded wire facing. At a distance greater than 3 feet, compact shoring backfill with at least 4 passes of an 8 to 10 ton vibratory roller in a direction parallel to the wall face. Smooth wheeled or rubber tired rollers are also

acceptable for compacting backfill. Do not use sheepsfoot, grid rollers or other types of compaction equipment with feet. Do not displace or damage reinforcement when placing and compacting shoring backfill. End dumping directly on geotextile or geogrid reinforcement is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on reinforcement until it is covered with at least 8 inches of shoring backfill. Replace any damaged reinforcement to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Backfill for temporary walls outside the reinforced zone in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Bench temporary walls into the sides of excavations where applicable. For temporary geosynthetic walls with top of wall within 5 feet of finished grade, remove top facing and incorporate top reinforcement layer into fill when placing fill in front of wall. Temporary walls remain in place permanently unless otherwise required.

Measurement and Payment

Temporary Shoring will be measured and paid in square feet. Temporary walls will be measured as the square feet of exposed wall face area. Cantilever, braced or anchored shoring will be measured as the square feet of exposed shoring face area with the shoring height equal to the difference between the top and bottom of shoring elevations. Define “top of shoring” as where the grade intersects the back of sheet piles or H-piles and timber lagging. Define “bottom of shoring” as where the grade intersects front of sheet piles or H-piles and timber lagging. No measurement will be made for any embedment, shoring extension above top of shoring or pavement thickness above temporary walls.

The contract unit price for *Temporary Shoring* will be full compensation for providing shoring designs, submittals and materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials and supplying all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to construct temporary shoring.

No payment will be made for temporary shoring not shown in the plans or required by the Engineer including shoring for OSHA reasons or the Contractor’s convenience. No value engineering proposals will be accepted based solely on revising or eliminating shoring locations shown in the plans or estimated quantities shown in the bid item sheets as a result of actual field measurements or site conditions.

PCB will be measured and paid in accordance with Section 1170 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No additional payment will be made for anchoring PCB for temporary shoring. Costs for anchoring PCB will be incidental to temporary shoring.

Temporary guardrail will be measured and paid for in accordance with Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Temporary Shoring

Pay Unit
Square Foot

EXTRUDED THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING THICKNESS:

3-19-19

1205

SP12 R05

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 12-6, Subarticle 1205-4(A)(1) General, lines 5-8, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Use application equipment that provides multiple width settings ranging from 4 inches to 12 inches and multiple thickness settings to achieve a minimum pavement marking thickness of 0.090 inch above the surface of the pavement.

Page 12-7, Table 1205-3, THICKNESS REQUIREMENTS FOR THERMOPLASTIC, replace with the following:

TABLE 1205-3 MINIMUM THICKNESS REQUIREMENTS FOR THERMOPLASTIC	
Thickness	Location
240 mils	In-lane and shoulder-transverse pavement markings (rumble strips). May be placed in 2 passes.
90 mils	Center lines, skip lines, transverse bands, mini-skip lines, characters, bike lane symbols, crosswalk lines, edge lines, gore lines, diagonals, and arrow symbols

ROADWAY LIGHTING FOUNDATIONS:

(1-16-18)

SP14 R04

Description

Roadway lighting foundations include foundations for high mount and light standards. High mount foundations for high mount standards and standard foundations for light standards consist of drilled piers or footings with pedestals, conduit and anchor rod assemblies. Construct roadway lighting foundations in accordance with the contract, *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings* and accepted submittals. Define “high mount foundation” as a drilled pier including the conduit and anchor rod assembly that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1402.01. Define “standard foundation” as a drilled pier or footing with pedestal including the conduit and anchor rod assembly that meets 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1405.01.

Materials

Use roadway lighting foundation materials that meet the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision. Provide metal shrouds for median mounted light standards in accordance with Subarticle 1400-4(I) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Roadway Lighting Foundations**(A) High Mount Foundations**

Construct high mount foundations for the wind zone and high mount heights shown in the plans unless the following assumed site conditions are not applicable to high mount

locations:

- (E) Soil with unit weight (γ) \geq 120 pcf and friction angle (ϕ) \geq 30°,
- (F) Groundwater at least 7 feet below finished grade and
- (G) Slope of finished grade 6:1 (H:V) or flatter.

A subsurface investigation and high mount foundation design are required if the Engineer determines these assumed site conditions do not apply to a high mount location and the high mount cannot be moved. Subsurface conditions requiring a high mount foundation design include but are not limited to weathered or hard rock, boulders, very soft or loose soil, muck or shallow groundwater. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for subsurface investigations or high mount foundation designs.

(B) Standard Foundations

Construct standard foundation types for the light standard types shown in the plans and the site conditions at each light standard location. When weathered or hard rock, boulders or obstructions conflict with standard foundations, submit an alternate standard foundation design for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for alternate standard foundations.

Subsurface Investigations

Use a prequalified geotechnical consultant to perform one standard penetration test (SPT) boring in accordance with ASTM D1586 at each high mount location requiring a subsurface investigation. Rough grade high mount locations to within 2 ft of finished grade before beginning drilling. Drill borings to 2 drilled pier diameters below anticipated pier tip elevations or refusal, whichever is higher.

Use the computer software gINT version V8i or later manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs. Provide boring logs sealed by a geologist or engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

High Mount Foundation Designs

Design high mount foundations for the wind zone and high mount heights shown in the plans and the slope of finished grade and subsurface conditions at each high mount location. Design drilled piers, footings and pedestals in accordance with the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals*.

Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Use the computer software LPILE version 2016 or later manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers. Provide drilled pier designs with a horizontal deflection of less than 0.5" at top of piers.

Design footings in accordance with Section 4.4 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Do not use an allowable bearing pressure of more than 3,000 psf for footings.

Submit boring logs, working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, required foundation dimensions and elevations and typical sections with reinforcement, conduit and anchor rod assembly details. Include all boring logs, design calculations and LPILE output for high mount foundation design submittals. Have high mount foundations designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Grade around roadway lighting locations with cut and fill slopes as shown on 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1402.01 or 1405.01. Construct drilled piers, footings and pedestals and install anchor rod assemblies for roadway lighting foundations in accordance with the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

For median mounted light standards, place concrete for median barriers and underlying pedestals in the same pour. Construct concrete barriers in accordance with the contract and make concrete median barriers continuous through standard foundations. Coordinate construction of median mounted light standards with sign structures, concrete barriers, drainage structures, etc. to avoid conflicts.

Measurement and Payment

High Mount Foundations will be measured and paid in cubic yards. High mount foundations will be measured as the cubic yards of concrete shown on 2018 Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1402.01 for the high mount height and wind zone shown in the plans. All other high mount foundations will be measured as the cubic yards of foundation concrete for drilled piers, footings and pedestals shown in the accepted submittals. Subsurface investigations and high mount foundation designs required by the Engineer will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Standard Foundation ____ will be measured and paid in units of each. Standard foundations will be measured as the number of each standard foundation type. Alternate standard foundations will be measured as 1.5 times the number of each standard foundation type replaced.

The contract unit prices for *High Mount Foundations* and *Standard Foundation* ____ will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and foundation materials, stabilizing or shoring excavations, supplying and placing concrete, reinforcing steel, conduit, anchor rod assemblies and any incidentals necessary to construct roadway lighting foundations.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

High Mount Foundations
Standard Foundation ____

Pay Unit

Cubic Yard
Each

PERMANENT SEEDING AND MULCHING:

(7-1-95)

1660

SP16 R02

The Department desires that permanent seeding and mulching be established on this project as soon as practical after slopes or portions of slopes have been graded. As an incentive to obtain an early stand of vegetation on this project, the Contractor's attention is called to the following:

For all permanent seeding and mulching that is satisfactorily completed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1660 in the *2018 Standard Specifications* and within the following percentages of elapsed contract times, an additional payment will be made to the Contractor as an incentive additive. The incentive additive will be determined by multiplying the number of acres of seeding and mulching satisfactorily completed times the contract unit bid price per acre for Seeding and Mulching times the appropriate percentage additive.

Percentage of Elapsed Contract Time	Percentage Additive
0% - 30%	30%
30.01% - 50%	15%

Percentage of elapsed contract time is defined as the number of calendar days from the date of availability of the contract to the date the permanent seeding and mulching is acceptably completed divided by the total original contract time.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION
AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS

(5-20-08)

Z-2

General Statute 143C-6-11. (h) Highway Appropriation is hereby incorporated verbatim in this contract as follows:

(h) Amounts Encumbered. – Transportation project appropriations may be encumbered in the amount of allotments made to the Department of Transportation by the Director for the estimated payments for transportation project contract work to be performed in the appropriation fiscal year. The allotments shall be multiyear allotments and shall be based on estimated revenues and shall be subject to the maximum contract authority contained in *General Statute 143C-6-11(c)*. Payment for transportation project work performed pursuant to contract in any fiscal year other than the current fiscal year is subject to appropriations by the General Assembly. Transportation project contracts shall contain a schedule of estimated completion progress, and any acceleration of this progress shall be subject to the approval of the Department of Transportation provided funds are available. The State reserves the right to terminate or suspend any transportation project contract, and any transportation project contract shall be so terminated or suspended if funds will not be available for payment of the work to be performed during that fiscal year pursuant to the contract. In the event of termination of any contract, the contractor shall be given a written notice of termination at least 60 days before completion of scheduled work for which funds are available. In the event of termination, the contractor shall be paid for the work already performed in accordance with the contract specifications.

Payment will be made on any contract terminated pursuant to the special provision in accordance with Subarticle 108-13(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION
NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY

(5-17-11)

Z-3

Seed shall be sampled and tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory. When said samples are collected, the vendor shall supply an independent laboratory report for each lot to be tested. Results from seed so sampled shall be final. Seed not meeting the specifications shall be rejected by the Department of Transportation and shall not be delivered to North Carolina Department of Transportation warehouses. If seed has been delivered it shall be available for pickup and replacement at the supplier's expense.

Any re-labeling required by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory, that would cause the label to reflect as otherwise specified herein shall be rejected by the North Carolina Department of Transportation.

Seed shall be free from seeds of the noxious weeds Johnsongrass, Balloonvine, Jimsonweed, Witchweed, Itchgrass, Serrated Tussock, Showy Crotalaria, Smooth Crotalaria, Sicklepod, Sandbur, Wild Onion, and Wild Garlic. Seed shall not be labeled with the above weed species on the seed analysis label. Tolerances as applied by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will NOT be allowed for the above noxious weeds except for Wild Onion and Wild Garlic.

Tolerances established by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will generally be recognized. However, for the purpose of figuring pure live seed, the found pure seed and found germination percentages as reported by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory will be used. Allowances, as established by the NCDOT, will be recognized for minimum pure live seed as listed on the following pages.

The specifications for restricted noxious weed seed refers to the number per pound as follows:

<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. Of Seed</u>	<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. of Seed</u>
Blessed Thistle	4 seeds	Cornflower (Ragged Robin)	27 seeds
Cocklebur	4 seeds	Texas Panicum	27 seeds
Spurred Anoda	4 seeds	Bracted Plantain	54 seeds
Velvetleaf	4 seeds	Buckhorn Plantain	54 seeds
Morning-glory	8 seeds	Broadleaf Dock	54 seeds
Corn Cockle	10 seeds	Curly Dock	54 seeds
Wild Radish	12 seeds	Dodder	54 seeds
Purple Nutsedge	27 seeds	Giant Foxtail	54 seeds
Yellow Nutsedge	27 seeds	Horsenettle	54 seeds
Canada Thistle	27 seeds	Quackgrass	54 seeds
Field Bindweed	27 seeds	Wild Mustard	54 seeds
Hedge Bindweed	27 seeds		

Seed of Pensacola Bahiagrass shall not contain more than 7% inert matter, Kentucky Bluegrass, Centipede and Fine or Hard Fescue shall not contain more than 5% inert matter whereas a maximum of 2% inert matter will be allowed on all other kinds of seed. In addition, all seed shall

not contain more than 2% other crop seed nor more than 1% total weed seed. The germination rate as tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture shall not fall below 70%, which includes both dormant and hard seed. Seed shall be labeled with not more than 7%, 5% or 2% inert matter (according to above specifications), 2% other crop seed and 1% total weed seed.

Exceptions may be made for minimum pure live seed allowances when cases of seed variety shortages are verified. Pure live seed percentages will be applied in a verified shortage situation. Those purchase orders of deficient seed lots will be credited with the percentage that the seed is deficient.

FURTHER SPECIFICATIONS FOR EACH SEED GROUP ARE GIVEN BELOW:

Minimum 85% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 83% pure live seed will not be approved.

Sericea Lespedeza
Oats (seeds)

Minimum 80% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 78% pure live seed will not be approved.

Tall Fescue (all approved varieties)	Bermudagrass
Kobe Lespedeza	Browntop Millet
Korean Lespedeza	German Millet – Strain R
Weeping Lovegrass	Clover – Red/White/Crimson
Carpetgrass	

Minimum 78% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 76% pure live seed will not be approved.

Common or Sweet Sundangrass

Minimum 76% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 74% pure live seed will not be approved.

Rye (grain; all varieties)
Kentucky Bluegrass (all approved varieties)
Hard Fescue (all approved varieties)
Shrub (bicolor) Lespedeza

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 70% pure live seed will not be approved.

Centipedegrass	Japanese Millet
Crownvetch	Reed Canary Grass
Pensacola Bahiagrass	Zoysia
Creeping Red Fescue	

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 5% inert matter; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound.

Barnyard Grass
Big Bluestem
Little Bluestem
Bristly Locust
Birdsfoot Trefoil
Indiangrass
Orchardgrass
Switchgrass
Yellow Blossom Sweet Clover

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION

ERRATA

(10-16-18) (Rev.1-15-19)

Z-4

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Division 6

Page 6-7, Article 609-1 DESCRIPTION, line 29, replace article number “609-10” with “609-9”.

Division 7

Page 7-27, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 4, replace article number “725-1” with “724-4”.

Page 7-28, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 10, replace article number “725-1” with “725-3”.

Division 10

Page 10-78, Article 1056-4 GEOTEXTILES, TABLE 1056-1, Permittivity, Type 2, replace “Table 6^D” with “Table 7^D” and **Permittivity, Type 3^B,** replace “Table 7^D” with “Table 8^D”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-50 PAINT FOR VERTICAL MARKERS, line 1, replace article number “1080-50” with “1080-10”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-61 EPOXY RESIN FOR REINFORCING STEEL, line 5, replace article number “1080-61” with “1080-11”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-72 ABRASIVE MATERIALS FOR BLAST CLEANING STEEL, line 22, replace article number “1080-72” with “1080-12”.

Page 10-163, Article 1080-83 FIELD PERFORMANCE AND SERVICES, line 25, replace article number “1080-83” with “1080-13”.

Division 17

Page 17-15, Article 1715-4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, lines 42-44, replace the second sentence with the following:

An example is an installation of a single 1.25 inch HDPE conduit would be paid as:

Directional Drill (1)(1.25”) Linear Foot

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES****(Imported Fire Ant, Gypsy Moth, Witchweed, Emerald Ash Borer, Guava Root Knot Nematode, And Other Noxious Weeds)**

(3-18-03) (Rev. 5-21-19)

Z-04a

Within Quarantined Area

This project may be within a county regulated for plant and/or pests. If the project or any part of the Contractor's operations is located within a quarantined area, thoroughly clean all equipment prior to moving out of the quarantined area. Comply with federal/state regulations by obtaining a certificate or limited permit for any regulated article moving from the quarantined area.

Originating in a Quarantined County

Obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture. Have the certificate or limited permit accompany the article when it arrives at the project site.

Contact

Contact the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture at 1-800-206-9333, 919-707-3730, or <https://www.ncagr.gov/plantindustry/Plant/quaran/table2.htm> to determine those specific project sites located in the quarantined area or for any regulated article used on this project originating in a quarantined county.

Regulated Articles Include

1. Soil, sand, gravel, compost, peat, humus, muck, and decomposed manure, separately or with other articles. This includes movement of articles listed above that may be associated with cut/waste, ditch pulling, and shoulder cutting.
2. Plants with roots including grass sod.
3. Plant crowns and roots.
4. Bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers of ornamental plants.
5. Hay, straw, fodder, and plant litter of any kind.
6. Clearing and grubbing debris.
7. Used agricultural cultivating and harvesting equipment.
8. Used earth-moving equipment.
9. Any other products, articles, or means of conveyance, of any character, if determined by an inspector to present a hazard of spreading imported fire ant, gypsy moth, witchweed, emerald ash borer, guava root knot nematode, or other noxious weeds.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION:**

(6-28-77)(Rev 6/19/2018)

Z-6

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace Article 103-4(B) with the following:

The North Carolina Department of Transportation is committed to carrying out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts.

The provisions of this section related to United States Department of Transportation (US DOT) Order 1050.2A, Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) part 21, 23 United States Code (U.S.C.) 140 and 23 CFR part 200 (or 49 CFR 303, 49 U.S.C. 5332 or 49 U.S.C. 47123) are applicable to all North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) contracts and to all related subcontracts, material supply, engineering, architectural and other service contracts, regardless of dollar amount. Any Federal provision that is specifically required not specifically set forth is hereby incorporated by reference.

(1) **Title VI Assurances (USDOT Order 1050.2A, Appendix A)**

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

(a) Compliance with Regulations

The contractor (hereinafter includes consultants) shall comply with the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), as they may be amended from time to time, which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

(b) Nondiscrimination

The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by the Acts and the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers any activity, project, or program set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 21.

(c) Solicitations for Subcontractors, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment

In all solicitations, either by competitive bidding, or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials, or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

(d) Information and Reports

The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Recipient or the FHWA to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Acts,

Regulations, and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish the information, the contractor shall so certify to the Recipient or the FHWA, as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

(e) Sanctions for Noncompliance:

In the event of a contractor's noncompliance with the Non-discrimination provisions of this contract, the Recipient will impose such contract sanctions as it and/or the FHWA may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

- (i) Withholding payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies; and/or
- (ii) Cancelling, terminating, or suspending a contract, in whole or in part.

(f) Incorporation of Provisions

The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (a) through (f) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Acts, the Regulations and directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Recipient or the FHWA may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, that if the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation by a subcontractor, or supplier because of such direction, the contractor may request the Recipient to enter into any litigation to protect the interests of the Recipient. In addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(2) **Title VI Nondiscrimination Program (23 CFR 200.5(p))**

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) has assured the USDOT that, as a condition to receiving federal financial assistance, NCDOT will comply with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and all requirements imposed by Title 49 CFR part 21 and related nondiscrimination authorities to ensure that no person shall, on the ground of race, color, national origin, limited English proficiency, sex, age, or disability (including religion/creed or income-level, where applicable), be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any programs, activities, or services conducted or funded by NCDOT. Contractors and other organizations under contract or agreement with NCDOT must also comply with Title VI and related authorities, therefore:

(a) During the performance of this contract or agreement, contractors (e.g., subcontractors, consultants, vendors, prime contractors) are responsible for complying with NCDOT's Title VI Program. Contractors are not required to prepare or submit Title VI Programs. To comply with this section, the prime contractor shall:

1. Post NCDOT's Notice of Nondiscrimination and the Contractor's own Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Policy in conspicuous locations accessible to all employees, applicants and subcontractors on the jobsite.
2. Physically incorporate the required Title VI clauses into all subcontracts on federally-assisted and state-funded NCDOT projects, and ensure inclusion by subcontractors into all lower-tier subcontracts.
3. Required Solicitation Language. The Contractor shall include the following notification in all solicitations for bids and requests for work or material, regardless of funding source:

“The North Carolina Department of Transportation, in accordance with the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252, 42 US.C. §§

2000d to 2000d-4) and the Regulations, hereby notifies all bidders that it will affirmatively ensure that any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, disadvantaged business enterprises will be afforded full and fair opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and will not be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in consideration for an award. In accordance with other related nondiscrimination authorities, bidders and contractors will also not be discriminated against on the grounds of sex, age, disability, low-income level, creed/religion, or limited English proficiency in consideration for an award.”

4. Physically incorporate the FHWA-1273, in its entirety, into all subcontracts and subsequent lower tier subcontracts on Federal-aid highway construction contracts only.
 5. Provide language assistance services (i.e., written translation and oral interpretation), free of charge, to LEP employees and applicants. Contact NCDOT OCR for further assistance, if needed.
 6. For assistance with these Title VI requirements, contact the NCDOT Title VI Nondiscrimination Program at 1-800-522-0453.
- (b) Subrecipients (e.g. cities, counties, LGAs, planning organizations) may be required to prepare and submit a Title VI Plan to NCDOT, including Title VI Assurances and/or agreements. Subrecipients must also ensure compliance by their contractors and subrecipients with Title VI. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(7))
- (c) If reviewed or investigated by NCDOT, the contractor or subrecipient agrees to take affirmative action to correct any deficiencies found within a reasonable time period, not to exceed 90 calendar days, unless additional time is granted by NCDOT. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(15))
- (d) The Contractor is responsible for notifying subcontractors of NCDOT’s External Discrimination Complaints Process.
1. Applicability
Title VI and related laws protect participants and beneficiaries (e.g., members of the public and contractors) from discrimination by NCDOT employees, subrecipients and contractors, regardless of funding source.
 2. Eligibility
Any person—or class of persons—who believes he/she has been subjected to discrimination based on race, color, national origin, Limited English Proficiency (LEP), sex, age, or disability (and religion in the context of employment, aviation, or transit) may file a written complaint. The law also prohibits intimidation or retaliation of any sort.
 3. Time Limits and Filing Options
Complaints may be filed by the affected individual(s) or a representative and must be filed no later than 180 calendar days after the following:
 - (i) The date of the alleged act of discrimination; or
 - (ii) The date when the person(s) became aware of the alleged discrimination; or
 - (iii) Where there has been a continuing course of conduct, the date on which that conduct was discontinued or the latest instance of the conduct.Title VI and related discrimination complaints may be submitted to the following entities:

- North Carolina Department of Transportation, Office of Civil Rights, Title VI Program, 1511 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1511; toll free 1-800-522-0453
 - Federal Highway Administration, North Carolina Division Office, 310 New Bern Avenue, Suite 410, Raleigh, NC 27601, 919-747-7010
 - US Department of Transportation, Departmental Office of Civil Rights, External Civil Rights Programs Division, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590; 202-366-4070
4. Format for Complaints
Complaints must be in writing and signed by the complainant(s) or a representative, and include the complainant's name, address, and telephone number. Complaints received by fax or e-mail will be acknowledged and processed. Allegations received by telephone will be reduced to writing and provided to the complainant for confirmation or revision before processing. Complaints will be accepted in other languages, including Braille.
5. Discrimination Complaint Form
Contact NCDOT Civil Rights to receive a full copy of the Discrimination Complaint Form and procedures.
6. Complaint Basis
Allegations must be based on issues involving race, color, national origin (LEP), sex, age, disability, or religion (in the context of employment, aviation or transit). "Basis" refers to the complainant's membership in a protected group category.

**TABLE 103-1
COMPLAINT BASIS**

Protected Categories	Definition	Examples	Applicable Nondiscrimination Authorities
Race and Ethnicity	An individual belonging to one of the accepted racial groups; or the perception, based usually on physical characteristics that a person is a member of a racial group	Black/African American, Hispanic/Latino, Asian, American Indian/Alaska Native, Native Hawaiian/Pacific Islander, White	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 49 CFR Part 21; 23 CFR 200; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123. (<i>Executive Order 13166</i>)
Color	Color of skin, including shade of skin within a racial group	Black, White, brown, yellow, etc.	
National Origin (<i>Limited English Proficiency</i>)	Place of birth. Citizenship is not a factor. (<i>Discrimination based on language or a person's accent is also covered</i>)	Mexican, Cuban, Japanese, Vietnamese, Chinese	
Sex	Gender. The sex of an individual. <i>Note: Sex under this program does not include sexual orientation.</i>	Women and Men	1973 Federal-Aid Highway Act; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Age	Persons of any age	21-year-old person	Age Discrimination Act of 1975 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Disability	Physical or mental impairment, permanent or temporary, or perceived.	Blind, alcoholic, para-amputee, epileptic, diabetic, arthritic	Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990

<p>Religion (in the context of employment) <i>(Religion/ Creed in all aspects of any aviation or transit-related construction)</i></p>	<p>An individual belonging to a religious group; or the perception, based on distinguishable characteristics that a person is a member of a religious group. In practice, actions taken as a result of the moral and ethical beliefs as to what is right and wrong, which are sincerely held with the strength of traditional religious views. Note: Does not have to be associated with a recognized religious group or church; if an individual sincerely holds to the belief, it is a protected religious practice.</p>	<p>Muslim, Christian, Sikh, Hindu, etc.</p>	<p>Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 23 CFR 230; FHWA-1273 Required Contract Provisions. <i>(49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123)</i></p>
--	---	---	---

(3) Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities, including, but not limited to:

- (a) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000d et seq., 78 stat. 252), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin); and 49 CFR Part 21.
- (b) The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 U.S.C. § 4601), (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
- (c) Federal-Aid Highway Act of 1973, (23 U.S.C. § 324 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of sex);
- (d) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, (29 U.S.C. § 794 et seq.), as amended, (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability) and 49 CFR Part 27;
- (e) The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 6101 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
- (f) Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, (49 USC § 471, Section 47123), as amended, (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
- (g) The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, (PL 100-209), (Broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms "programs or activities" to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);
- (h) Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act, which prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities (42 U.S.C. §§ 12131-12189) as implemented by Department of Transportation regulations at 49 C.F.R. parts 37 and 38;
- (i) The Federal Aviation Administration's Nondiscrimination statute (49 U.S.C. § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
- (j) Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, which ensures Nondiscrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with

disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations;

- (k) Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of Limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs (70 Fed. Reg. at 74087 to 74100);
- (l) Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq).
- (m) Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000e et seq., Pub. L. 88-352), (prohibits employment discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin).

(4) Additional Title VI Assurances

***The following Title VI Assurances (Appendices B, C and D) shall apply, as applicable*

- (a) Clauses for Deeds Transferring United States Property (1050.2A, Appendix B)
The following clauses will be included in deeds effecting or recording the transfer of real property, structures, or improvements thereon, or granting interest therein from the United States pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 4.

NOW, THEREFORE, the U.S. Department of Transportation as authorized by law and upon the condition that the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) will accept title to the lands and maintain the project constructed thereon in accordance with the North Carolina General Assembly, the Regulations for the Administration of the Federal-Aid Highway Program, and the policies and procedures prescribed by the Federal Highway Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation in accordance and in compliance with all requirements imposed by Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation pertaining to and effectuating the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. § 2000d to 2000d-4), does hereby remise, release, quitclaim and convey unto the NCDOT all the right, title and interest of the U.S. Department of Transportation in and to said lands described in Exhibit A attached hereto and made a part hereof.

(HABENDUM CLAUSE)

TO HAVE AND TO HOLD said lands and interests therein unto the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) and its successors forever, subject, however, to the covenants, conditions, restrictions and reservations herein contained as follows, which will remain in effect for the period during which the real property or structures are used for a purpose for which Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits and will be binding on the NCDOT, its successors and assigns.

The NCDOT, in consideration of the conveyance of said lands and interests in lands, does hereby covenant and agree as a covenant running with the land for itself, its successors and assigns, that (1) no person will on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination with regard to any facility located wholly or in part on, over, or under such lands hereby conveyed [,] [and]* (2) that the NCDOT will use the lands and interests in lands and interests in lands so conveyed, in compliance with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Non-discrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, and as said Regulations and Acts may be amended [, and (3) that in the event of breach of any of the above-mentioned nondiscrimination conditions, the Department will have a right to enter or re-enter said lands and facilities on said land, and that above described land and facilities will thereon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the U.S. Department of Transportation and its assigns as such interest existed prior to this instruction].*

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary in order to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

(b) Clauses for Transfer of Real Property Acquired or Improved Under the Activity, Facility, or Program (1050.2A, Appendix C)

The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, leases, permits, or similar instruments entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(a):

1. The (grantee, lessee, permittee, etc. as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree [in the case of deeds and leases add "as a covenant running with the land"] that:
 - (i.) In the event facilities are constructed, maintained, or otherwise operated on the property described in this (deed, license, lease, permit, etc.) for a purpose for which a U.S. Department of Transportation activity, facility, or program is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits, the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will maintain and operate such facilities and services in compliance with all requirements imposed by the Acts and Regulations (as may be amended) such that no person on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities.
2. With respect to licenses, leases, permits, etc., in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (lease, license, permit, etc.) and to enter, re-enter, and repossess said lands and facilities thereon, and hold the same as if the (lease, license, permit, etc.) had never been made or issued. *
3. With respect to a deed, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to enter or re-enter the lands and facilities thereon, and the above described lands and facilities will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. *

- (*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)
- (c) Clauses for Construction/Use/Access to Real Property Acquired Under the Activity, Facility or Program (1050.2A, Appendix D)

The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, permits, or similar instruments/ agreements entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(b):

1. The (grantee, licensee, permittee, etc., as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree (in the case of deeds and leases add, "as a covenant running with the land") that (1) no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities, (2) that in the construction of any improvements on, over, or under such land, and the furnishing of services thereon, no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination, (3) that the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will use the premises in compliance with all other requirements imposed by or pursuant to the Acts and Regulations, as amended, set forth in this Assurance.
2. With respect to (licenses, leases, permits, etc.), in the event of breach of any of the above Non-discrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) and to enter or re-enter and repossess said land and the facilities thereon, and hold the same as if said (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) had never been made or issued. *
3. With respect to deeds, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. *

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS**

Z-7

NOTICE OF REQUIREMENTS FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (*EXECUTIVE NUMBER 11246*)

1. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, see as shown on the attached sheet entitled "Employment Goals for Minority and Female participation".

These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and nonfederally involved construction.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4* shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in *41 CFR 60-4.3(a)*, and its effort to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4*. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

2. As used in this Notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is the county or counties shown on the cover sheet of the proposal form and contract.

**EMPLOYMENT GOALS FOR MINORITY
AND FEMALE PARTICIPATION**

Economic Areas

Area 023 29.7%

Bertie County
Camden County
Chowan County
Gates County
Hertford County
Pasquotank County
Perquimans County

Area 024 31.7%

Beaufort County
Carteret County
Craven County
Dare County
Edgecombe County
Green County
Halifax County
Hyde County
Jones County
Lenoir County
Martin County
Nash County
Northampton County
Pamlico County
Pitt County
Tyrrell County
Washington County
Wayne County
Wilson County

Area 025 23.5%

Columbus County
Duplin County
Onslow County
Pender County

Area 026 33.5%

Bladen County
Hoke County
Richmond County
Robeson County
Sampson County
Scotland County

Area 027 24.7%

Chatham County
Franklin County
Granville County
Harnett County
Johnston County
Lee County
Person County
Vance County
Warren County

Area 028 15.5%

Alleghany County
Ashe County
Caswell County
Davie County
Montgomery County
Moore County
Rockingham County
Surry County
Watauga County
Wilkes County

Area 029 15.7%

Alexander County
Anson County
Burke County
Cabarrus County
Caldwell County
Catawba County
Cleveland County
Iredell County
Lincoln County
Polk County
Rowan County
Rutherford County
Stanly County

Area 0480 8.5%

Buncombe County
Madison County

Area 030 6.3%

Avery County
Cherokee County
Clay County
Graham County
Haywood County
Henderson County
Jackson County
McDowell County
Macon County
Mitchell County
Swain County
Transylvania County
Yancey County

SMSA Areas

Area 5720 26.6%

Currituck County

Area 9200 20.7%

Brunswick County

New Hanover County

Area 2560 24.2%

Cumberland County

Area 6640 22.8%

Durham County

Orange County

Wake County

Area 1300 16.2%

Alamance County

Area 3120 16.4%

Davidson County

Forsyth County

Guilford County

Randolph County

Stokes County

Yadkin County

Area 1520 18.3%

Gaston County

Mecklenburg County

Union County

Goals for Female

Participation in Each Trade

(Statewide) 6.9%

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL - AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS**

FHWA - 1273 Electronic Version - May 1, 2012

Z-8

- I. General
- II. Nondiscrimination
- III. Nonsegregated Facilities
- IV. Davis-Bacon and Related Act Provisions
- V. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act Provisions
- VI. Subletting or Assigning the Contract
- VII. Safety: Accident Prevention
- VIII. False Statements Concerning Highway Projects
- IX. Implementation of Clean Air Act and Federal Water Pollution Control Act
- X. Compliance with Governmentwide Suspension and Debarment Requirements
- XI. Certification Regarding Use of Contract Funds for Lobbying

ATTACHMENTS

- A. Employment and Materials Preference for Appalachian Development Highway System or Appalachian Local Access Road Contracts (included in Appalachian contracts only)

I. GENERAL

1. Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated in each construction contract funded under Title 23 (excluding emergency contracts solely intended for debris removal). The contractor (or subcontractor) must insert this form in each subcontract and further require its inclusion in all lower tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services).
The applicable requirements of Form FHWA-1273 are incorporated by reference for work done under any purchase order, rental agreement or agreement for other services. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.
Form FHWA-1273 must be included in all Federal-aid design-build contracts, in all subcontracts and in lower tier subcontracts (excluding subcontracts for design services, purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services). The design-builder shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.
Contracting agencies may reference Form FHWA-1273 in bid proposal or request for proposal documents, however, the Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated (not referenced) in all contracts, subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services related to a construction contract).
2. Subject to the applicability criteria noted in the following sections, these contract provisions shall apply to all work performed on the contract by the contractor's own organization and with the assistance of workers under the contractor's immediate superintendence and to all work performed on the contract by piecework, station work, or by subcontract.
3. A breach of any of the stipulations contained in these Required Contract Provisions may be sufficient grounds for withholding of progress payments, withholding of final payment, termination of the contract, suspension / debarment or any other action determined to be appropriate by the contracting agency and FHWA.
4. Selection of Labor: During the performance of this contract, the contractor shall not use convict labor for any purpose within the limits of a construction project on a Federal-aid highway unless it is labor performed by convicts who are on parole, supervised release, or probation. The term Federal-aid highway does not include roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors.

II. NONDISCRIMINATION

The provisions of this section related to 23 CFR Part 230 are applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more. The provisions of 23 CFR Part 230 are not applicable to material supply, engineering, or architectural service contracts.

In addition, the contractor and all subcontractors must comply with the following policies: Executive Order 11246, 41 CFR 60, 29 CFR 1625-1627, Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The contractor and all subcontractors must comply with: the requirements of the Equal Opportunity Clause in 41 CFR 60-1.4(b) and, for all construction contracts exceeding \$10,000, the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications in 41 CFR 60-4.3.

Note: The U.S. Department of Labor has exclusive authority to determine compliance with Executive Order 11246 and the policies of the Secretary of Labor including 41 CFR 60, and 29 CFR 1625-1627. The contracting agency and the FHWA have the authority and the responsibility to ensure compliance with Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), and Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The following provision is adopted from 23 CFR 230, Appendix A, with appropriate revisions to conform to the U.S. Department of Labor (US DOL) and FHWA requirements.

1. **Equal Employment Opportunity:** Equal employment opportunity (EEO) requirements not to discriminate and to take affirmative action to assure equal opportunity as set forth under laws, executive orders, rules, regulations (28 CFR 35, 29 CFR 1630, 29 CFR 1625-1627, 41 CFR 60 and 49 CFR 27) and orders of the Secretary of Labor as modified by the provisions prescribed herein, and imposed pursuant to 23 U.S.C. 140 shall constitute the EEO and specific affirmative action standards for the contractor's project activities under this contract. The provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) set forth under 28 CFR 35 and 29 CFR 1630 are incorporated by reference in this contract. In the execution of this contract, the contractor agrees to comply with the following minimum specific requirement activities of EEO:
 - a. The contractor will work with the contracting agency and the Federal Government to ensure that it has made every good faith effort to provide equal opportunity with respect to all of its terms and conditions of employment and in their review of activities under the contract.
 - b. The contractor will accept as its operating policy the following statement:

"It is the policy of this Company to assure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, religion, sex, color, national origin, age or disability. Such action shall include: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship, pre-apprenticeship, and/or on-the-job training."

2. **EEO Officer:** The contractor will designate and make known to the contracting officers an EEO Officer who will have the responsibility for and must be capable of effectively administering and promoting an active EEO program and who must be assigned adequate authority and responsibility to do so.
3. **Dissemination of Policy:** All members of the contractor's staff who are authorized to hire, supervise, promote, and discharge employees, or who recommend such action, or who are substantially involved in such action, will be made fully cognizant of, and will implement, the contractor's EEO policy and contractual responsibilities to provide EEO in each grade and classification of employment. To ensure that the above agreement will be met, the following actions will be taken as a minimum:
 - a. Periodic meetings of supervisory and personnel office employees will be conducted before the start of work and then not less often than once every six months, at which time the contractor's EEO policy and its implementation will be reviewed and explained. The meetings will be conducted by the EEO Officer.
 - b. All new supervisory or personnel office employees will be given a thorough indoctrination by the EEO Officer, covering all major aspects of the contractor's EEO obligations within thirty days following their reporting for duty with the contractor.
 - c. All personnel who are engaged in direct recruitment for the project will be instructed by the EEO Officer in the contractor's procedures for locating and hiring minorities and women.
 - d. Notices and posters setting forth the contractor's EEO policy will be placed in areas readily accessible to employees, applicants for employment and potential employees.
 - e. The contractor's EEO policy and the procedures to implement such policy will be brought to the attention of employees by means of meetings, employee handbooks, or other appropriate means.
4. **Recruitment:** When advertising for employees, the contractor will include in all advertisements for employees the notation: "An Equal Opportunity Employer." All such advertisements will be placed in publications having a large circulation among minorities and women in the area from which the project work force would normally be derived.
 - a. The contractor will, unless precluded by a valid bargaining agreement, conduct systematic and direct recruitment through public and private employee referral sources likely to yield qualified minorities and women. To meet this requirement, the contractor will identify sources of potential minority group employees, and establish with such identified sources procedures whereby minority and women applicants may be referred to the contractor for employment consideration.
 - b. In the event the contractor has a valid bargaining agreement providing for exclusive hiring hall referrals, the contractor is expected to observe the provisions of that agreement to the extent that the system meets the contractor's compliance with EEO contract provisions. Where implementation of such an agreement has the effect of discriminating against minorities or women, or obligates the contractor to do the same, such implementation violates Federal nondiscrimination provisions.
 - c. The contractor will encourage its present employees to refer minorities and women as applicants for employment. Information and procedures with regard to referring such applicants will be discussed with employees.
5. **Personnel Actions:** Wages, working conditions, and employee benefits shall be established and administered, and personnel actions of every type, including hiring, upgrading, promotion, transfer, demotion, layoff, and termination, shall be taken without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability. The following procedures shall be followed:
 - a. The contractor will conduct periodic inspections of project sites to insure that working conditions and employee facilities do not indicate discriminatory treatment of project site personnel.
 - b. The contractor will periodically evaluate the spread of wages paid within each classification to determine any evidence of discriminatory wage practices.
 - c. The contractor will periodically review selected personnel actions in depth to determine whether there is evidence of discrimination. Where evidence is found, the contractor will promptly take corrective action. If the review indicates that the discrimination may extend beyond the actions reviewed, such corrective action shall include all affected persons.
 - d. The contractor will promptly investigate all complaints of alleged discrimination made to the contractor in connection with its obligations under this contract, will attempt to resolve such complaints, and will take appropriate corrective action within a reasonable time. If the investigation indicates that the discrimination may affect persons other than the complainant, such corrective action shall include such other persons. Upon completion of each investigation, the contractor will inform every complainant of all of their avenues of appeal.
6. **Training and Promotion:**
 - a. The contractor will assist in locating, qualifying, and increasing the skills of minorities and women who are applicants for employment or current employees. Such efforts should be aimed at developing full journey level status employees in the type of trade or job classification involved.
 - b. Consistent with the contractor's work force requirements and as permissible under Federal and State regulations, the contractor shall make full use of training programs, i.e., apprenticeship, and on-the-job training programs for the geographical area of contract performance. In the event a special provision for training is provided under this contract, this subparagraph will be superseded as indicated in the special provision. The contracting agency may reserve training positions for persons who receive welfare assistance in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 140(a).
 - c. The contractor will advise employees and applicants for employment of available training programs and entrance requirements for each.
 - d. The contractor will periodically review the training and promotion potential of employees who are minorities and women and will encourage eligible employees to apply for such training and promotion.
7. **Unions:** If the contractor relies in whole or in part upon unions as a source of employees, the contractor will use good faith efforts to obtain the cooperation of such unions to increase opportunities for minorities and women. Actions by the contractor, either directly or through a contractor's association acting as agent, will include the procedures set forth below:
 - a. The contractor will use good faith efforts to develop, in cooperation with the unions, joint training programs aimed toward qualifying more minorities and women for membership in the unions and increasing the skills of minorities and women so that they may qualify for higher paying employment.
 - b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to incorporate an EEO clause into each union agreement to the end that such union will be contractually bound to refer applicants without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability.
 - c. The contractor is to obtain information as to the referral practices and policies of the labor union except that to the extent such information is within the exclusive possession of the labor union and such labor union refuses to furnish such information to the contractor, the contractor shall so certify to the contracting agency and shall set forth what efforts have been made to obtain such information.

- d. In the event the union is unable to provide the contractor with a reasonable flow of referrals within the time limit set forth in the collective bargaining agreement, the contractor will, through independent recruitment efforts, fill the employment vacancies without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability; making full efforts to obtain qualified and/or qualifiable minorities and women. The failure of a union to provide sufficient referrals (even though it is obligated to provide exclusive referrals under the terms of a collective bargaining agreement) does not relieve the contractor from the requirements of this paragraph. In the event the union referral practice prevents the contractor from meeting the obligations pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and these special provisions, such contractor shall immediately notify the contracting agency.
8. **Reasonable Accommodation for Applicants / Employees with Disabilities:** The contractor must be familiar with the requirements for and comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act and all rules and regulations established there under. Employers must provide reasonable accommodation in all employment activities unless to do so would cause an undue hardship.
9. **Selection of Subcontractors, Procurement of Materials and Leasing of Equipment:** The contractor shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurement of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure nondiscrimination in the administration of this contract.
- a. The contractor shall notify all potential subcontractors and suppliers and lessors of their EEO obligations under this contract.
- b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to ensure subcontractor compliance with their EEO obligations.
10. **Assurance Required by 49 CFR 26.13(b):**
- a. The requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 and the State DOT's U.S. DOT-approved DBE program are incorporated by reference.
- b. The contractor or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as the contracting agency deems appropriate.
11. **Records and Reports:** The contractor shall keep such records as necessary to document compliance with the EEO requirements. Such records shall be retained for a period of three years following the date of the final payment to the contractor for all contract work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the contracting agency and the FHWA.
- a. The records kept by the contractor shall document the following:
- (1) The number and work hours of minority and non-minority group members and women employed in each work classification on the project;
- (2) The progress and efforts being made in cooperation with unions, when applicable, to increase employment opportunities for minorities and women; and
- (3) The progress and efforts being made in locating, hiring, training, qualifying, and upgrading minorities and women;
- b. The contractors and subcontractors will submit an annual report to the contracting agency each July for the duration of the project, indicating the number of minority, women, and non-minority group employees currently engaged in each work classification required by the contract work. This information is to be reported on Form FHWA-1391. The staffing data should represent the project work force on board in all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July. If on-the-job training is being required by special provision, the contractor will be required to collect and report training data. The employment data should reflect the work force on board during all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July.

III. NONSEGREGATED FACILITIES

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more.

The contractor must ensure that facilities provided for employees are provided in such a manner that segregation on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin cannot result. The contractor may neither require such segregated use by written or oral policies nor tolerate such use by employee custom. The contractor's obligation extends further to ensure that its employees are not assigned to perform their services at any location, under the contractor's control, where the facilities are segregated. The term "facilities" includes waiting rooms, work areas, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, restrooms, washrooms, locker rooms, and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing provided for employees. The contractor shall provide separate or single-user restrooms and necessary dressing or sleeping areas to assure privacy between sexes.

IV. DAVIS-BACON AND RELATED ACT PROVISIONS

This section is applicable to all Federal-aid construction projects exceeding \$2,000 and to all related subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (regardless of subcontract size). The requirements apply to all projects located within the right-of-way of a roadway that is functionally classified as Federal-aid highway. This excludes roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors, which are exempt. Contracting agencies may elect to apply these requirements to other projects.

The following provisions are from the U.S. Department of Labor regulations in 29 CFR 5.5 "Contract provisions and related matters" with minor revisions to conform to the FHWA-1273 format and FHWA program requirements.

1. Minimum wages

- a. All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work, will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph 1.d. of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under paragraph 1.b. of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

- b. (1) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:
 - (i) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and
 - (ii) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and
 - (iii) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.
 - (2) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
 - (3) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Wage and Hour Administrator for determination. The Wage and Hour Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
 - (4) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs 1.b.(2) or 1.b.(3) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.
- c. Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.
 - d. If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program. Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.
2. **Withholding.** The contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract, or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the contracting agency may, after written notice to the contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.
 3. **Payrolls and basic records**
 - a. Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.
 - b. (1) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the contracting agency. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (e.g. , the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site at <http://www.dol.gov/esa/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm> or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the contracting agency for transmission to the State DOT, the FHWA or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the contracting agency.
 - (2) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:
 - (i) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under §5.5 (a)(3)(ii) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, the appropriate information is being maintained under §5.5 (a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, and that such information is correct and complete;
 - (ii) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR part 3;
 - (iii) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

- (3) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph 3.b.(2) of this section.
- (4) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.
- c. The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph 3.a. of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the contracting agency, the State DOT, the FHWA, or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the FHWA may, after written notice to the contractor, the contracting agency or the State DOT, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.
4. **Apprentices and trainees**
- a. Apprentices (programs of the USDOL). Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice.
- The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed.
- Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination.
- In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- b. Trainees (programs of the USDOL). Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration.
- The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration.
- Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed.
- In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- c. Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.
- d. Apprentices and Trainees (programs of the U.S. DOT). Apprentices and trainees working under apprenticeship and skill training programs which have been certified by the Secretary of Transportation as promoting EEO in connection with Federal-aid highway construction programs are not subject to the requirements of paragraph 4 of this Section IV. The straight time hourly wage rates for apprentices and trainees under such programs will be established by the particular programs. The ratio of apprentices and trainees to journeymen shall not be greater than permitted by the terms of the particular program.
5. **Compliance with Copeland Act requirements.** The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.
6. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert Form FHWA-1273 in any subcontracts and also require the subcontractors to include Form FHWA-1273 in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.
7. **Contract termination:** debarment. A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.
8. **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements.** All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
9. **Disputes concerning labor standards.** Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
10. **Certification of eligibility.**
- a. By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

- b. No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
- c. The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

V. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

The following clauses apply to any Federal-aid construction contract in an amount in excess of \$100,000 and subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. These clauses shall be inserted in addition to the clauses required by 29 CFR 5.5(a) or 29 CFR 4.6. As used in this paragraph, the terms laborers and mechanics include watchmen and guards.

1. **Overtime requirements.** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.
2. **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages.** In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section.
3. **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages.** The FHWA or the contacting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2.) of this section.
4. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraph (1.) through (4.) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1.) through (4.) of this section.

VI. SUBLETTING OR ASSIGNING THE CONTRACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts on the National Highway System.

1. The contractor shall perform with its own organization contract work amounting to not less than 30 percent (or a greater percentage if specified elsewhere in the contract) of the total original contract price, excluding any specialty items designated by the contracting agency. Specialty items may be performed by subcontract and the amount of any such specialty items performed may be deducted from the total original contract price before computing the amount of work required to be performed by the contractor's own organization (23 CFR 635.116).
 - a. The term "perform work with its own organization" refers to workers employed or leased by the prime contractor, and equipment owned or rented by the prime contractor, with or without operators. Such term does not include employees or equipment of a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor, agents of the prime contractor, or any other assignees. The term may include payments for the costs of hiring leased employees

from an employee leasing firm meeting all relevant Federal and State regulatory requirements. Leased employees may only be included in this term if the prime contractor meets all of the following conditions:

- (1) the prime contractor maintains control over the supervision of the day-to-day activities of the leased employees;
 - (2) the prime contractor remains responsible for the quality of the work of the leased employees;
 - (3) the prime contractor retains all power to accept or exclude individual employees from work on the project; and
 - (4) the prime contractor remains ultimately responsible for the payment of predetermined minimum wages, the submission of payrolls, statements of compliance and all other Federal regulatory requirements.
- b. "Specialty Items" shall be construed to be limited to work that requires highly specialized knowledge, abilities, or equipment not ordinarily available in the type of contracting organizations qualified and expected to bid or propose on the contract as a whole and in general are to be limited to minor components of the overall contract.
2. The contract amount upon which the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of Section VI is computed includes the cost of material and manufactured products which are to be purchased or produced by the contractor under the contract provisions.
 3. The contractor shall furnish (a) a competent superintendent or supervisor who is employed by the firm, has full authority to direct performance of the work in accordance with the contract requirements, and is in charge of all construction operations (regardless of who performs the work) and (b) such other of its own organizational resources (supervision, management, and engineering services) as the contracting officer determines is necessary to assure the performance of the contract.
 4. No portion of the contract shall be sublet, assigned or otherwise disposed of except with the written consent of the contracting officer, or authorized representative, and such consent when given shall not be construed to relieve the contractor of any responsibility for the fulfillment of the contract. Written consent will be given only after the contracting agency has assured that each subcontract is evidenced in writing and that it contains all pertinent provisions and requirements of the prime contract.
 5. The 30% self-performance requirement of paragraph (1) is not applicable to design-build contracts; however, contracting agencies may establish their own self-performance requirements.

VII. SAFETY: ACCIDENT PREVENTION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

1. In the performance of this contract the contractor shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws governing safety, health, and sanitation (23 CFR 635). The contractor shall provide all safeguards, safety devices and protective equipment and take any other needed actions as it determines, or as the contracting officer may determine, to be reasonably necessary to protect the life and health of employees on the job and the safety of the public and to protect property in connection with the performance of the work covered by the contract.
2. It is a condition of this contract, and shall be made a condition of each subcontract, which the contractor enters into pursuant to this contract, that the contractor and any subcontractor shall not permit any employee, in performance of the contract, to work in surroundings or under conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to his/her health or safety, as determined under construction safety and health standards (29 CFR 1926) promulgated by the Secretary of Labor, in accordance with Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704).
3. Pursuant to 29 CFR 1926.3, it is a condition of this contract that the Secretary of Labor or authorized representative thereof, shall have right of entry to any site of contract performance to inspect or investigate the matter of compliance with the construction safety and health standards and to carry out the duties of the Secretary under Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C.3704).

VIII. FALSE STATEMENTS CONCERNING HIGHWAY PROJECTS

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

In order to assure high quality and durable construction in conformity with approved plans and specifications and a high degree of reliability on statements and representations made by engineers, contractors, suppliers, and workers on Federal-aid highway projects, it is essential that all persons concerned with the project perform their functions as carefully, thoroughly, and honestly as possible. Willful falsification, distortion, or misrepresentation with respect to any facts related to the project is a violation of Federal law. To prevent any misunderstanding regarding the seriousness of these and similar acts, Form FHWA-1022 shall be posted on each Federal-aid highway project (23 CFR 635) in one or more places where it is readily available to all persons concerned with the project:

18 U.S.C. 1020 reads as follows:

"Whoever, being an officer, agent, or employee of the United States, or of any State or Territory, or whoever, whether a person, association, firm, or corporation, knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, or false report as to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of the material used or to be used, or the quantity or quality of the work performed or to be performed, or the cost thereof in connection with the submission of plans, maps, specifications, contracts, or costs of construction on any highway or related project submitted for approval to the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, false report or false claim with respect to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of any work performed or to be performed, or materials furnished or to be furnished, in connection with the construction of any highway or related project approved by the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement or false representation as to material fact in any statement, certificate, or report submitted pursuant to provisions of the Federal-aid Roads Act approved July 1, 1916, (39 Stat. 355), as amended and supplemented;

Shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than 5 years or both."

IX. IMPLEMENTATION OF CLEAN AIR ACT AND FEDERAL WATER POLLUTION CONTROL ACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

By submission of this bid/proposal or the execution of this contract, or subcontract, as appropriate, the bidder, proposer, Federal-aid construction contractor, or subcontractor, as appropriate, will be deemed to have stipulated as follows:

1. That any person who is or will be utilized in the performance of this contract is not prohibited from receiving an award due to a violation of Section 508 of the Clean Water Act or Section 306 of the Clean Air Act.
2. That the contractor agrees to include or cause to be included the requirements of paragraph (1) of this Section X in every subcontract, and further agrees to take such action as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such requirements.

X. CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts, design-build contracts, subcontracts, lower-tier subcontracts, purchase orders, lease agreements, consultant contracts or any other covered transaction requiring FHWA approval or that is estimated to cost \$25,000 or more – as defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200.

1. Instructions for Certification – First Tier Participants:

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective first tier participant is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The inability of a person to provide the certification set out below will not necessarily result in denial of participation in this covered transaction. The prospective first tier participant shall submit an explanation of why it cannot provide the certification set out below. The certification or explanation will be considered in connection with the department or agency's determination whether to enter into this transaction. However, failure of the prospective first tier participant to furnish a certification or an explanation shall disqualify such a person from participation in this transaction.
- c. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when the contracting agency determined to enter into this transaction. If it is later determined that the prospective participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the contracting agency may terminate this transaction for cause of default.
- d. The prospective first tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the contracting agency to whom this proposal is submitted if any time the prospective first tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- e. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).
- f. The prospective first tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency entering into this transaction.
- g. The prospective first tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include the clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transactions," provided by the department or contracting agency, entering into this covered transaction, without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- h. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- i. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require the establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of the prospective participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- j. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph (f) of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default.

* * * * *

2. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion – First Tier Participants:

- a. The prospective first tier participant certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief, that it and its principals:
 - (1) Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
 - (2) Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
 - (3) Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this certification; and
 - (4) Have not within a three-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- b. Where the prospective participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

2. Instructions for Certification - Lower Tier Participants:

(Applicable to all subcontracts, purchase orders and other lower tier transactions requiring prior FHWA approval or estimated to cost \$25,000 or more - 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200)

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective lower tier is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was entered into. If it is later determined that the prospective lower tier participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department, or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.
- c. The prospective lower tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the person to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the prospective lower tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- d. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. You may contact the person to which this proposal is submitted for assistance in obtaining a copy of those regulations. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of

Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers to any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).

- e. The prospective lower tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated.
- f. The prospective lower tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include this clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transaction," without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- g. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- h. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- i. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph e of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

* * * * *

Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion--Lower Tier Participants:

1. The prospective lower tier participant certifies, by submission of this proposal, that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency.
2. Where the prospective lower tier participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

* * * * *

XI. CERTIFICATION REGARDING USE OF CONTRACT FUNDS FOR LOBBYING

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts which exceed \$100,000 (49 CFR 20).

1. The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:
 - a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
 - b. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.
2. This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.
3. The prospective participant also agrees by submitting its bid or proposal that the participant shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**ON-THE-JOB TRAINING**

(10-16-07) (Rev. 4-21-15)

Z-10

Description

The North Carolina Department of Transportation will administer a custom version of the Federal On-the-Job Training (OJT) Program, commonly referred to as the Alternate OJT Program. All contractors (existing and newcomers) will be automatically placed in the Alternate Program. Standard OJT requirements typically associated with individual projects will no longer be applied at the project level. Instead, these requirements will be applicable on an annual basis for each contractor administered by the OJT Program Manager.

On the Job Training shall meet the requirements of 23 CFR 230.107 (b), 23 USC – Section 140, this provision and the On-the-Job Training Program Manual.

The Alternate OJT Program will allow a contractor to train employees on Federal, State and privately funded projects located in North Carolina. However, priority shall be given to training employees on NCDOT Federal-Aid funded projects.

Minorities and Women

Developing, training and upgrading of minorities and women toward journeyman level status is a primary objective of this special training provision. Accordingly, the Contractor shall make every effort to enroll minority and women as trainees to the extent that such persons are available within a reasonable area of recruitment. This training commitment is not intended, and shall not be used, to discriminate against any applicant for training, whether a member of a minority group or not.

Assigning Training Goals

The Department, through the OJT Program Manager, will assign training goals for a calendar year based on the contractors' past three years' activity and the contractors' anticipated upcoming year's activity with the Department. At the beginning of each year, all contractors eligible will be contacted by the Department to determine the number of trainees that will be assigned for the upcoming calendar year. At that time the Contractor shall enter into an agreement with the Department to provide a self-imposed on-the-job training program for the calendar year. This agreement will include a specific number of annual training goals agreed to by both parties. The number of training assignments may range from 1 to 15 per contractor per calendar year. The Contractor shall sign an agreement to fulfill their annual goal for the year.\

Training Classifications

The Contractor shall provide on-the-job training aimed at developing full journeyman level workers in the construction craft/operator positions. Preference shall be given to providing training in the following skilled work classifications:

Equipment Operators	Office Engineers
Truck Drivers	Estimators
Carpenters	Iron / Reinforcing Steel Workers
Concrete Finishers	Mechanics
Pipe Layers	Welders

The Department has established common training classifications and their respective training requirements that may be used by the contractors. However, the classifications established are not all-inclusive. Where the training is oriented toward construction applications, training will be allowed in lower-level management positions such as office engineers and estimators. Contractors shall submit new classifications for specific job functions that their employees are performing. The Department will review and recommend for acceptance to FHWA the new classifications proposed by contractors, if applicable. New classifications shall meet the following requirements:

Proposed training classifications are reasonable and realistic based on the job skill classification needs, and

The number of training hours specified in the training classification is consistent with common practices and provides enough time for the trainee to obtain journeyman level status.

The Contractor may allow trainees to be trained by a subcontractor provided that the Contractor retains primary responsibility for meeting the training and this provision is made applicable to the subcontract. However, only the Contractor will receive credit towards the annual goal for the trainee.

Where feasible, 25 percent of apprentices or trainees in each occupation shall be in their first year of apprenticeship or training. The number of trainees shall be distributed among the work classifications on the basis of the contractor's needs and the availability of journeymen in the various classifications within a reasonable area of recruitment.

No employee shall be employed as a trainee in any classification in which they have successfully completed a training course leading to journeyman level status or in which they have been employed as a journeyman.

Records and Reports

The Contractor shall maintain enrollment, monthly and completion reports documenting company compliance under these contract documents. These documents and any other information as requested shall be submitted to the OJT Program Manager.

Upon completion and graduation of the program, the Contractor shall provide each trainee with a certification Certificate showing the type and length of training satisfactorily completed.

Trainee Interviews

All trainees enrolled in the program will receive an initial and Trainee/Post graduate interview conducted by the OJT program staff.

Trainee Wages

Contractors shall compensate trainees on a graduating pay scale based upon a percentage of the prevailing minimum journeyman wages (Davis-Bacon Act). Minimum pay shall be as follows:

60 percent	of the journeyman wage for the first half of the training period
75 percent	of the journeyman wage for the third quarter of the training period
90 percent	of the journeyman wage for the last quarter of the training period

In no instance shall a trainee be paid less than the local minimum wage. The Contractor shall adhere to the minimum hourly wage rate that will satisfy both the NC Department of Labor (NCDOL) and the Department.

Achieving or Failing to Meet Training Goals

The Contractor will be credited for each trainee employed by him on the contract work who is currently enrolled or becomes enrolled in an approved program and who receives training for at least 50 percent of the specific program requirement. Trainees will be allowed to be transferred between projects if required by the Contractor's scheduled workload to meet training goals.

If a contractor fails to attain their training assignments for the calendar year, they may be taken off the NCDOT's Bidders List.

Measurement and Payment

No compensation will be made for providing required training in accordance with these contract documents.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION
MINIMUM WAGES
GENERAL DECISION NC190087 01/04/2019 NC87

Z-087

Date: January 4, 2019

General Decision Number: NC190087 01/4/2019 NC87

Superseded General Decision Numbers: NC20180100

State: North Carolina

Construction Type: HIGHWAY

COUNTIES:

Alexander	Caldwell	Henderson
Buncombe	Catawba	Madison
Burke	Haywood	

HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (excluding tunnels, building structures in rest area projects & railroad construction; bascule, suspension & spandrel arch bridges designed for commercial navigation, bridges involving marine construction; and other major bridges).

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of \$10.60 for calendar year 2019 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least \$10.60 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract for calendar year 2019. If this contract is covered by the EO and a classification considered necessary for performance of work on the contract must pay workers in that classification at least the wage rate determined through the conformance process set forth in 29 CFR.5.5(a)(1)(ii) (or the EO minimum wage rate, if it is higher than the conformed wage rate). The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Please note that this EO applies to the above-mentioned types of contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but it does not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(2) – (60). Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Modification Number
0

Publication Date
01/04/2019

SUNC2014-002 11/13/2014

	Rates	Fringes
BLASTER	20.93	
CARPENTER	13.48	
CEMENT MASON/CONCRETE FINISHER	14.40	
ELECTRICIAN		
Electrician	18.79	2.62
Telecommunications Technician	14.67	1.67
IRONWORKER	12.48	
LABORER		

	Rates	Fringes
Asphalt Raker and Spreader	11.76	
Asphalt Screed/Jackman	15.38	.08
Carpenter Tender	10.50	
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher Tender	11.04	
Common or General	11.90	
Guardrail/Fence Installer	13.09	
Pipelayer	12.87	
Traffic Signal/Lighting Installer	15.33	.22
PAINTER		
Bridge	20.67	
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATORS		
Asphalt Broom Tractor	10.00	
Bulldozer Fine	16.28	
Bulldozer Rough	14.51	
Concrete Grinder/Groover	19.20	
Crane Boom Trucks	18.19	
Crane Other	18.69	
Crane Rough/All-Terrain	19.19	
Drill Operator Rock	15.00	
Drill Operator Structure	21.07	
Excavator Fine	16.02	
Excavator Rough	14.67	
Grader/Blade Fine	19.86	
Grader/Blade Rough	15.12	
Loader 2 Cubic Yards or Less	12.38	
Loader Greater Than 2 Cubic Yards	17.91	
Material Transfer Vehicle (Shuttle Buggy)	15.44	
Mechanic	17.86	
Milling Machine	15.08	
Off-Road Hauler/Water Tanker	11.95	
Oiler/Greaser	15.05	
Pavement Marking Equipment	11.99	
Paver Asphalt	17.84	.08
Paver Concrete	18.20	
Roller Asphalt Breakdown	15.00	.08
Roller Asphalt Finish	16.08	.07
Roller Other	12.51	.03
Scraper Finish	12.86	
Scraper Rough	13.83	
Slip Form Machine	20.38	
Tack Truck/Distributor Operator	14.81	.02
TRUCK DRIVER		
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Greater	13.65	
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Less	12.48	

Welders – Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave

for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii)).

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of "identifiers" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than "SU" or "UAVG" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the "SU" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union

average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- * an existing published wage determination
- * a survey underlying a wage determination
- * a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- * a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations
Wage and Hour Division
U. S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

END OF GENERAL DECISION

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

GEOTECHNICAL

I-4400C

SCARIFY/MIX EXISTING ABC AND SAND LAYERS (SPECIAL)	GT-1.1 - GT-1.1
GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STABILIZATION	GT-2.1 - GT-2.2
(SPECIAL)STANDARD SHORING - (1/16/2018)	GT-3.1 - GT-3.4
TEMPORARY SOIL NAIL WALLS - (1/16/2018)	GT-4.1 - GT-4.9
MSE RETAINING WALLS - (1-16-2018)	GT-5.1 - GT-5.12
SOIL NAIL RETAINING WALLS (SPECIAL)	GT-6.1 - GT-6.12
ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE SURFACE TREATMENT (SPECIAL)	GT-7.1 - GT-7.6

I-4400BB

GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STABILIZATION (SPECIAL)	GT-8.1 - GT-8.2
ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE SURFACE TREATMENT (SPECIAL)	GT-9.1 - GT-9.6
SOIL NAIL RETAINING WALLS (SPECIAL)	GT-10.1 - GT-10.12
MSE RETAINING WALLS - (1-16-2018)	GT-11.1 - GT-11.12
SCARIFY/MIX EXISTING ABC AND SAND LAYERS (SPECIAL)	GT-12.1 - GT-12.1

DocuSigned by:
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
 E06538624A11498...
 7/1/2019

SCARIFY/MIX EXISTING ABC AND SAND LAYERS

(SPECIAL)

1.0 GENERAL

Upon removal of the existing concrete pavement, incorporate the existing ABC and sand layers into the underlying soils to a minimum depth of 12 inches. The existing ABC and sand should be scarified into the proposed subgrade to a minimum depth of 12 inches. Scarification will require a minimum of 2 passes over the same area to create a homogenous mixture of ABC, Sand and soil or to the discretion of the Engineer.

2.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Work is incidental to fine grading and payment will be made in accordance with Article, 500-5 of the Standard Specifications.



DocuSigned by:

Jeffrey Brian Barfield 19

09B33DEB8C824D1...



DocuSigned by:

John Pilipchuk 31/2019

52C44B94B8BE444...

GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STABILIZATION:**(SPECIAL)****Description**

Supply and install geotextile for pavement stabilization in accordance with the contract. Geotextile for pavement stabilization may be required above chemically stabilized subgrades or below Class IV subgrade stabilization to prevent pavement cracking at locations shown in the plans and as directed. Define “subbase” as the portion of the roadbed below the Class IV subgrade stabilization.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geotextiles	1056
Select Material, Class IV	1016

Use Class IV select material for Class IV subgrade stabilization. Provide Type 5 geotextile for geotextile for pavement stabilization that meets the following tensile strength requirements in the machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD):

GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STABILIZATION REQUIREMENTS		
Tensile Strength	Requirement (MARV^A)	Test Method
Tensile Strength @ 5% Strain (MD & CD ^A)	1,900 lb/ft	ASTM D4595
Ultimate Tensile Strength (MD & CD ^A)	4,800 lb/ft	ASTM D4595

A. MD, CD and MARV per Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Construction Methods

Geotextile for pavement stabilization may be required at locations shown in the plans and other locations as directed. For locations with ABC on chemically stabilized subgrades, use of geotextile for pavement stabilization will be based on sampling and testing for chemical stabilization. **For all other locations, notify the Engineer when the embankment is completed to within 12 inches of subgrade elevation and allow 15 days for the Engineer to determine if geotextile for pavement stabilization is required.**

Before placing geotextile for pavement stabilization below Class IV subgrade stabilization, proof roll subbases in accordance with Section 260 of the *Standard Specifications*. Place geotextile for pavement stabilization above chemically stabilized subgrades or below Class IV subgrade stabilization as shown in the plans. Pull geotextiles taut so they are in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Install geotextile for pavement stabilization perpendicular to the survey or lane line in the MD and adjacent to each other in the CD as shown in the plans. Continuous geotextiles are required in the MD, i.e., do not splice or overlap geotextiles so seams are parallel to the survey or lane line. Completely cover stabilized subgrades or subbases with geotextile for pavement stabilization. Overlapping geotextiles in the CD is permitted but not required. Overlap geotextiles in the direction that aggregate will be placed to prevent lifting the edge of the top geotextile. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed.

Do not damage geotextile for pavement stabilization when placing ABC or Class IV subgrade stabilization. Place and compact ABC in accordance with the contract and *Standard*

Specifications. Place, compact and maintain Class IV subgrade stabilization in accordance with Article 505-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for a Type 2 aggregate subgrade. Do not operate heavy equipment on geotextiles any more than necessary to construct base courses or subgrades. Replace any damaged geotextiles to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization will be measured and paid in square yards. Geotextiles will be measured along subgrades or subbases as the square yards of exposed geotextiles installed before placing ABC or Class IV subgrade stabilization. No measurement will be made for overlapping geotextiles. The contract unit price for *Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization* will be full compensation for providing, transporting and installing geotextiles, wire staples and anchor pins.

Class IV Subgrade Stabilization will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 505-4 of the *Standard Specifications*. No measurement will be made for any undercut excavation of fill materials from subbases.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization

Pay Unit

Square Yard



DocuSigned by:

Jeffrey Brian Barfield

1/31/2019

09B33DEB8C824D1...

DocuSigned by:

John Pilipchuk

1/31/2019

52C44B94B8BE444...

STANDARD SHORING:**(1-16-18)****Description**

Standard shoring includes standard temporary shoring and standard temporary mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) walls. At the Contractor's option, use standard shoring as noted in the plans or as directed. When using standard shoring, a temporary shoring design submittal is not required. Construct standard shoring based on actual elevations and shoring dimensions in accordance with the contract and Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.01 or 1801.02.

Define "standard temporary shoring" as cantilever shoring that meets the standard temporary shoring detail (Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.01). Define "standard temporary wall" as a temporary MSE wall with geotextile or geogrid reinforcement that meets the standard temporary wall detail (Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.02). Define "standard temporary geotextile wall" as a standard temporary wall with geotextile reinforcement and "standard temporary geogrid wall" as a standard temporary wall with geogrid reinforcement.

Provide positive protection for standard shoring at locations shown in the plans and as directed. See *Temporary Shoring* provision for positive protection types and definitions.

Materials

Refer to the *Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Concrete Barrier Materials	1170-2
Flowable Fill, Excavatable	1000-6
Geosynthetics	1056
Neat Cement Grout, Type 1	1003
Portland Cement Concrete, Class A	1000
Select Materials	1016
Steel Beam Guardrail Materials	862-2
Steel Sheet Piles and H-Piles	1084
Untreated Timber	1082-2
Welded Wire Reinforcement	1070-3

Provide Type 6 material certifications for shoring materials. Use Class IV select material for temporary guardrail. Use Class A concrete that meets Article 450-2 of the *Standard Specifications* or grout for drilled-in piles.

Based on actual shoring height, positive protection, groundwater elevation, slope or surcharge case and traffic impact at each standard temporary shoring location, use sheet piles with the minimum required section modulus or H-piles with the sizes shown in Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.01. Use untreated timber with a thickness of at least 3" and a bending stress of at least 1,000 psi for timber lagging.

(A) Shoring Backfill

Use Class II, Type 1, Class III, Class V or Class VI select material or material that meets AASHTO M 145 for soil classification A-2-4 with a maximum PI of 6 for shoring backfill except do not use the following:

- (1) A-2-4 soil for backfill around culverts,

- (2) A-2-4 soil in the reinforced zone of standard temporary walls with a back slope and
- (3) Class VI select material in the reinforced zone of standard temporary geotextile walls.

(B) Standard Temporary Walls

Use welded wire reinforcement for welded wire facing, struts and wires with the dimensions and minimum wire sizes shown in Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.02. Provide Type 2 geotextile for separation and retention geotextiles. Do not use more than 4 different reinforcement strengths for each standard temporary wall.

(1) Geotextile Reinforcement

Provide Type 5 geotextile for geotextile reinforcement with a mass per unit area of at least 8 oz/sy in accordance with ASTM D5261. Based on actual wall height, groundwater elevation, slope or surcharge case and shoring backfill to be used in the reinforced zone at each standard temporary geotextile wall location, provide geotextiles with ultimate tensile strengths as shown in Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.02.

(2) Geogrid Reinforcement

Use geogrids with a roll width of at least 4 ft and an “approved” or “approved for provisional use” status code. The list of approved geogrids is available from: connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Materials/Pages/Materials-Manual-by-Material.aspx

Based on actual wall height, groundwater elevation, slope or surcharge case and shoring backfill to be used in the reinforced zone at each standard temporary geogrid wall location, provide geogrids for geogrid reinforcement with short-term design strengths as shown in Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.02. Geogrids are typically approved for ultimate tensile strengths in the machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD) or short-term design strengths for a 3-year design life in the MD based on material type. Define material type from the website above for shoring backfill as follows:

Material Type	Shoring Backfill
Borrow	A-2-4 Soil
Fine Aggregate	Class II, Type 1 or Class III Select Material
Coarse Aggregate	Class V or VI Select Material

If the website does not list a short-term design strength for an approved geogrid, use a short-term design strength equal to the ultimate tensile strength divided by 3.5 for the geogrid reinforcement.

Preconstruction Requirements

(A) Concrete Barrier

Define “clear distance” behind concrete barrier as the horizontal distance between the barrier and edge of pavement. The minimum required clear distance for concrete barrier is shown in the plans. At the Contractor’s option or if the minimum required clear

distance is not available, set concrete barrier next to and up against traffic side of standard shoring except for barrier above standard temporary walls. Concrete barrier with the minimum required clear distance is required above standard temporary walls.

(B) Temporary Guardrail

Define “clear distance” behind temporary guardrail as the horizontal distance between guardrail posts and standard shoring. At the Contractor’s option or if clear distance for standard temporary shoring is less than 4 ft, attach guardrail to traffic side of shoring as shown in the plans. Place ABC in clear distance and around guardrail posts instead of pavement. Do not use temporary guardrail above standard temporary walls.

(C) Standard Shoring Selection Forms

Before beginning standard shoring construction, survey existing ground elevations in the vicinity of standard shoring locations to determine actual shoring or wall heights (H). Submit a standard shoring selection form for each location at least 7 days before starting standard shoring construction. Standard shoring selection forms are available from:
connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Geotech_Forms_Details.aspx

Construction Methods

Construct standard shoring in accordance with the *Temporary Shoring* provision.

(A) Standard Temporary Shoring Installation

Based on actual shoring height, positive protection, groundwater elevation, slope or surcharge case and traffic impact at each standard temporary shoring location, install piles with the minimum required embedment and extension for each shoring section in accordance with Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.01. For concrete barrier above and next to standard temporary shoring and temporary guardrail above and attached to standard temporary shoring, use “surcharge case with traffic impact” in accordance with Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.01. Otherwise, use “slope or surcharge case with no traffic impact” in accordance with Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.01. If refusal is reached before driven piles attain the minimum required embedment, use drilled-in H-piles with timber lagging for standard temporary shoring.

(B) Standard Temporary Walls Installation

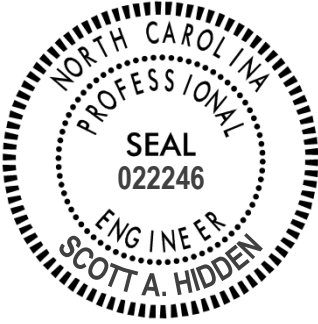
Based on actual wall height, groundwater elevation, slope or surcharge case, geotextile or geogrid reinforcement and shoring backfill in the reinforced zone at each standard temporary wall location, construct walls with the minimum required reinforcement length and number of reinforcement layers for each wall section in accordance with Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.02. For standard temporary walls with pile foundations in the reinforced zone, drive piles through reinforcement after constructing temporary walls.

For standard temporary walls with interior angles less than 90°, wrap geosynthetics at acute corners as directed by the Engineer. Place geosynthetics as shown in Geotechnical Standard Detail No. 1801.02. Place separation geotextiles between shoring backfill and backfill, natural ground or culverts along the sides of the reinforced zone perpendicular to the wall face. For Class V or VI select material in the reinforced zone, place separation geotextiles between shoring backfill and backfill or natural ground on top of and at the

back of the reinforced zone.

Measurement and Payment

Standard shoring will be measured and paid in accordance with the *Temporary Shoring* provision.



DocuSigned by:
Scott A. Hidden
F760CAEB96FC4D3...
6/21/2019

TEMPORARY SOIL NAIL WALLS:**(1-16-18)****Description**

Construct temporary soil nail walls consisting of soil nails spaced at a regular pattern and connected to a reinforced shotcrete face. A soil nail consists of a steel bar grouted in a drilled hole inclined at an angle below horizontal. At the Contractor's option, use temporary soil nail walls instead of temporary shoring for full cut sections. Design and construct temporary soil nail walls based on actual elevations and wall dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Contractor to construct temporary soil nail walls. Define "soil nail wall" as a temporary soil nail wall and "Soil Nail Wall Contractor" as the Anchored Wall Contractor installing soil nails and applying shotcrete. Define "nail" as a soil nail.

Provide positive protection for soil nail walls at locations shown in the plans and as directed. See *Temporary Shoring* provision for positive protection types and definitions.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geocomposites	1056
Neat Cement Grout, Type 2	1003
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Shotcrete	1002
Select Material, Class IV	1016
Steel Plates	1072-2

Use Class IV select material for temporary guardrail. Provide soil nails consisting of grouted steel bars and nail head assemblies. Use deformed steel bars that meet AASHTO M 275 or M 31, Grade 60 or 75. Splice bars in accordance with Article 1070-9 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Fabricate centralizers from schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe or tube, steel or other material not detrimental to steel bars (no wood). Size centralizers to position bars within 1" of drill hole centers and allow tremies to be inserted to ends of holes. Use centralizers that do not interfere with grout placement or flow around bars.

Provide nail head assemblies consisting of nuts, washers and bearing plates. Use steel plates for bearing plates and steel washers and hex nuts recommended by the Soil Nail Manufacturer.

Provide Type 6 material certifications for soil nail materials in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications*. Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store soil nail wall materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

Preconstruction Requirements**(A) Concrete Barrier**

Define "clear distance" behind concrete barrier as the horizontal distance between the

barrier and edge of pavement. The minimum required clear distance for concrete barrier is shown in the plans. At the Contractor's option or if the minimum required clear distance is not available, set concrete barrier next to and up against traffic side of soil nail walls except for barrier above walls. Concrete barrier with the minimum required clear distance is required above soil nail walls.

(B) Temporary Guardrail

Define "clear distance" behind temporary guardrail as the horizontal distance between guardrail posts and soil nail walls. At the Contractor's option or if clear distance for soil nail walls is less than 4 ft, use temporary guardrail with 8 ft posts and a clear distance of at least 2.5 ft. Place ABC in clear distance and around guardrail posts instead of pavement.

(C) Soil Nail Wall Designs

Before beginning soil nail wall design, survey existing ground elevations in the vicinity of wall locations to determine actual design heights (H). Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Design Consultant to design soil nail walls. Provide designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for the Anchored Wall Design Consultant.

Submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations for soil nail wall designs in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, wall profiles, typical sections and details of soil nail wall design and construction sequence. Include details in working drawings of soil nail locations, unit grout/ground bond strengths, shotcrete reinforcement and if necessary, obstructions extending through walls or interfering with nails. Include details in construction sequence of excavation, grouting, installing reinforcement, nail testing and shotcreting with mix designs and shotcrete nozzleman certifications. Do not begin soil nail wall construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Design soil nail walls in accordance with the plans and allowable stress design method in the *FHWA Geotechnical Engineering Circular No. 7 "Soil Nail Walls"* (Publication No. FHWA-IF-03-017) unless otherwise required.

Design soil nails that meet the following unless otherwise approved:

- (1) Horizontal and vertical spacing of at least 3 ft,
- (2) Inclination of at least 12° below horizontal and
- (3) Diameter of 4" to 10".

Do not extend nails beyond right-of-way or easement limits. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with nails, maintain a clearance of at least 6" between obstructions and nails.

Design soil nail walls for a traffic surcharge of 250 psf if traffic will be above and within H of walls. This traffic surcharge does not apply to construction traffic. Design soil nail walls for any construction surcharge if construction traffic will be above and within H of walls. For temporary guardrail with 8 ft posts above soil nail walls, analyze walls for a horizontal load of 300 lb/ft of wall.

Place geocomposite drain strips with a horizontal spacing of no more than 10 ft and center strips between adjacent nails. Attach drain strips to excavation faces. Use shotcrete at least 4" thick and reinforce shotcrete with #4 waler bars around nail heads. Two waler bars (one on each side of nail head) in the horizontal and vertical directions are required for a total of 4 bars per nail.

(D) Preconstruction Meeting

Before starting soil nail wall construction, hold a preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction, inspection and testing of the soil nail walls. If this meeting occurs before all soil nail wall submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of soil nail walls without accepted submittals. The Resident, District or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and Soil Nail Wall Contractor Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

(E) Preconstruction Meeting

Before beginning wall construction, provide preconstruction test panels in accordance with Subarticle 1002-3(D) of the *Standard Specifications*.

Construction Methods

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of soil nail walls. Direct run off away from soil nail walls and areas above and behind walls.

Install foundations located behind soil nail walls before beginning wall construction. Do not excavate behind soil nail walls. If overexcavation occurs, repair walls with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design may be required.

Install positive protection in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use PCB in accordance with Section 1170 of the *Standard Specifications* and Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1170.01. Use temporary guardrail in accordance with Section 862 of the *Standard Specifications* and Roadway Standard Drawing No. 862.01, 862.02 and 862.03.

(A) Excavation

Excavate for soil nail walls from the top down in accordance with the accepted submittals. Excavate in staged horizontal lifts with no negative batter (excavation face leaning forward). Excavate lifts in accordance with the following:

- (1) Heights not to exceed vertical nail spacing,
- (2) Bottom of lifts no more than 3 ft below nail locations for current lift and
- (3) Horizontal and vertical alignment within 6" of location shown in the accepted submittals.

Remove any cobbles, boulders, rubble or debris that will protrude more than 2" into the required shotcrete thickness. Rocky ground such as colluvium, boulder fills and weathered rock may be difficult to excavate without leaving voids.

Apply shotcrete to excavation faces within 24 hours of excavating each lift unless otherwise approved. Shotcreting may be delayed if it can be demonstrated that delays will not adversely affect excavation stability. If excavation faces will be exposed for

more than 24 hours, use polyethylene sheets anchored at top and bottom of lifts to protect excavation faces from changes in moisture content.

If an excavation becomes unstable at any time, suspend soil nail wall construction and temporarily stabilize the excavation by immediately placing an earth berm up against the unstable excavation face. When this occurs, repair walls with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design may be required.

Do not excavate the next lift until nail installations and testing and shotcrete application for the current lift are accepted and grout and shotcrete for the current lift have cured at least 3 days and 1 day, respectively.

(B) Soil Nails

Drill and grout nails the same day and do not leave drill holes open overnight. Control drilling and grouting to prevent excessive ground movements, damaging structures and pavements or fracturing rock and soil formations. If ground heave or subsidence occurs, suspend soil nail wall construction and take corrective action to minimize movement. If property damage occurs, make repairs with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design may be required.

(1) Drilling

Use drill rigs of the sizes necessary to install soil nails and with sufficient capacity to drill through whatever materials are encountered. Drill straight and clean holes with the dimensions and inclination shown in the accepted submittals. Drill holes within 6" of locations and 2° of inclination shown in the accepted submittals unless otherwise approved.

Stabilize drill holes with temporary casings if unstable, caving or sloughing material is anticipated or encountered. Do not use drilling fluids to stabilize drill holes or remove cuttings.

(2) Steel Bars

Center steel bars in drill holes with centralizers. Securely attach centralizers along bars at no more than 8 ft centers. Attach uppermost and lowermost centralizers 18" from excavation faces and ends of holes.

Do not insert steel bars into drill holes until hole locations, dimensions, inclination and cleanliness are approved. Do not vibrate, drive or otherwise force bars into holes. If a steel bar cannot be completely and easily inserted into a drill hole, remove the bar and clean or redrill the hole.

(3) Grouting

Remove oil, rust inhibitors, residual drilling fluids and similar foreign materials from holding tanks/hoppers, stirring devices, pumps, lines, tremie pipes and any other equipment in contact with grout before use. Measure grout temperature, density and flow during grouting with at least the same frequency grout cubes are made for compressive strength. Perform density and flow field tests in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with American National Standards Institute/American Petroleum Institute Recommended Practice 13B-1 (Section 4,

Mud Balance) and ASTM C939 (Flow Cone), respectively.

Inject grout at the lowest point of drill holes through tremies, e.g., grout tubes, casings, hollow-stem augers or drill rods, in one continuous operation. Fill drill holes progressively from ends of holes to excavation faces and withdraw tremies at a slow even rate as holes are filled to prevent voids in grout. Extend tremies into grout at least 5 ft at all times except when grout is initially placed in holes.

Provide grout free of segregation, intrusions, contamination, structural damage or inadequate consolidation (honeycombing). Cold joints in grout are not allowed except for test nails. Remove any temporary casings as grout is placed and record grout volume for each drill hole.

(4) Nail Heads

Install nail head assemblies after shotcreting. Before shotcrete reaches initial set, seat bearing plates and tighten nuts so plates contact shotcrete uniformly. If uniform contact is not possible, install nail head assemblies on mortar pads so nail heads are evenly loaded.

(C) Drain Strips

Install geocomposite drain strips as shown in the accepted submittals. Before installing shotcrete reinforcement, place drain strips with the geotextile side against excavation faces. For highly irregular faces and at the discretion of the Engineer, drain strips may be placed after shotcreting over weep holes through the shotcrete. Hold drain strips in place with anchor pins so strips are in continuous contact with surfaces to which they are attached and allow for full flow the entire height of soil nail walls. Discontinuous drain strips are not allowed. If splices are needed, overlap drain strips at least 12" so flow is not impeded. Cut off excess drain strip length and expose strip ends below shotcrete when soil nail wall construction is complete.

(D) Shotcrete

Clean ungrouted zones of drill holes and excavation faces of loose materials, mud, rebound and other foreign material. Moisten surfaces to receive shotcrete. Install shotcrete reinforcement in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Secure reinforcing steel so shooting does not displace or vibrate reinforcement. Install approved thickness gauges on 5 ft centers in the horizontal and vertical directions to measure shotcrete thickness.

Apply shotcrete in accordance with the contract, accepted submittals and Subarticle 1002-3(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use approved shotcrete nozzlemen who made satisfactory preconstruction test panels to apply shotcrete. Direct shotcrete at right angles to excavation faces except when shooting around reinforcing steel. Rotate nozzle steadily in small circular patterns and apply shotcrete from bottom of lifts up.

Make shotcrete surfaces uniform and free of sloughing or sagging. Completely fill ungrouted zones of drill holes and any other voids with shotcrete. Taper construction joints to a thin edge over a horizontal distance of at least the shotcrete thickness. Wet joint surfaces before shooting adjacent sections.

Repair surface defects as soon as possible after shooting. Remove any shotcrete which

lacks uniformity, exhibits segregation, honeycombing or lamination or contains any voids or sand pockets and replace with fresh shotcrete to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Protect shotcrete from freezing and rain until shotcrete reaches initial set.

(E) Construction Records

Provide 2 copies of soil nail wall construction records within 24 hours of completing each lift. Include the following in construction records:

- (1) Names of Soil Nail Wall Contractor, Superintendent, Nozzleman, Drill Rig Operator, Project Manager and Design Engineer;
- (2) Wall description, county, Department's contract, TIP and WBS element number;
- (3) Wall station and number and lift location, dimensions, elevations and description;
- (4) Nail locations, dimensions and inclinations, bar types, sizes and grades and temporary casing information;
- (5) Date and time drilling begins and ends, steel bars are inserted into drill holes, grout and shotcrete are mixed and arrives on-site and grout placement and shotcrete application begins and ends;
- (6) Grout volume, temperature, flow and density records;
- (7) Ground and surface water conditions and elevations if applicable;
- (8) Weather conditions including air temperature at time of grout placement and shotcrete application; and
- (9) All other pertinent details related to soil nail wall construction.

After completing each soil nail wall or stage of a wall, provide a PDF file of all corresponding construction records.

Nail Testing

“Proof tests” are performed on nails incorporated into walls, i.e., production nails. Define “test nail” as a nail tested with a proof test. Proof tests are typically required for at least one nail per nail row per soil nail wall or at least 5% of production nails, whichever is greater. More or less test nails may be required depending on subsurface conditions encountered. The Engineer will determine the number and locations of proof tests required. Do not test nails until grout and shotcrete attain the required 3 day compressive strength.

(A) Test Equipment

Use the following equipment to test nails:

- (1) Two dial gauges with rigid supports,
- (2) Hydraulic jack and pressure gauge and
- (3) Jacking block or reaction frame.

Provide dial gauges with enough range and precision to measure the maximum test nail movement to 0.001". Use pressure gauges graduated in 100 psi increments or less. Submit identification numbers and calibration records for load cells, jacks and pressure gauges with the soil nail wall design. Calibrate each jack and pressure gauge as a unit.

Align test equipment to uniformly and evenly load test nails. Use a jacking block or reaction frame that does not damage or contact shotcrete within 3 ft of nail heads. Place dial gauges opposite each other on either side of test nails and align gauges within 5° of bar inclinations. Set up test equipment so resetting or repositioning equipment during nail testing is not needed.

(B) Test Nails

Test nails include both unbonded and bond lengths. Grout only bond lengths before nail testing. Provide unbonded and bond lengths of at least 3 ft and 10 ft, respectively.

Steel bars for production nails may be overstressed under higher test nail loads. If necessary, use larger size or higher grade bars with more capacity for test nails instead of shortening bond lengths to less than the minimum required.

(C) Proof Tests

Determine maximum bond length (L_B) using the following:

$$L_B \leq (C_{RT} \times A_t \times f_y) / (Q_{ALL} \times 1.5)$$

Where,

- L_B = bond length (ft),
- C_{RT} = reduction coefficient, 0.9 for Grade 60 and 75 bars or 0.8 for Grade 150 bars,
- A_t = bar area (in²),
- f_y = bar yield stress (ksi) and
- Q_{ALL} = allowable unit grout/ground bond strength (kips/ft).

Determine design test load (DTL) based on as-built bond length and allowable unit grout/ground bond strength using the following:

$$DTL = L_B \times Q_{ALL}$$

Where,

- DTL = design test load (kips).

Perform proof tests by incrementally loading nails to failure or a load of 150% of DTL based on the following schedule:

Load	Hold Time
AL*	Until movement stabilizes
0.25 DTL	Until movement stabilizes
0.50 DTL	Until movement stabilizes
0.75 DTL	Until movement stabilizes
1.00 DTL	Until movement stabilizes
1.25 DTL	Until movement stabilizes
1.50 DTL	10 or 60 minutes (creep test)
AL*	1 minute

* Alignment load (AL) is the minimum load needed to align test equipment and should not exceed 0.05 DTL.

Reset dial gauges to zero after applying alignment load. Record test nail movement at

each load increment and monitor test nails for creep at the 1.5 DTL load increment. Measure and record movement during creep test at 1, 2, 3, 5, 6 and 10 minutes. If test nail movement between 1 and 10 minutes is greater than 0.04", maintain the 1.5 DTL load increment for an additional 50 minutes and record movement at 20, 30, 50 and 60 minutes. Repump jack as needed to maintain load during hold times.

(D) Test Nail Acceptance

Submit 2 copies of test nail records including load versus movement and time versus creep movement plots within 24 hours of completing each proof test. The Engineer will review the test nail records to determine if test nails are acceptable. Test nail acceptance is based in part on the following criteria.

- (1) Total movement during creep test is less than 0.04" between the 1 and 10 minute readings or less than 0.08" between the 6 and 60 minute readings and creep rate is linear or decreasing throughout hold time.
- (2) Total movement at maximum load exceeds 80% of the theoretical elastic elongation of the unbonded length.
- (3) Pullout failure does not occur at or before the 1.5 DTL load increment. Define "pullout failure" as the inability to increase load while movement continues. Record pullout failure load as part of test nail data.

Maintain stability of unbonded lengths for subsequent grouting. If a test nail is accepted but the unbonded length cannot be satisfactorily grouted, do not incorporate the test nail into the soil nail wall and add another production nail to replace the test nail.

If the Engineer determines a test nail is unacceptable, either perform additional proof tests on adjacent production nails or revise the soil nail design or installation methods for the production nails represented by the unacceptable test nail as determined by the Engineer. Submit a revised soil nail wall design for acceptance, provide an acceptable test nail with the revised design or installation methods and install additional production nails for the nails represented by the unacceptable test nail.

After completing nail testing for each soil nail wall or stage of a wall, provide a PDF file of all corresponding test nail records.

Measurement and Payment

Temporary soil nail walls will be measured and paid in square feet. Temporary soil nail walls will be paid for at the contract unit price for *Temporary Shoring*. Temporary soil nail walls will be measured as the square feet of exposed wall face area. No measurement will be made for any embedment or pavement thickness above soil nail walls.

The contract unit price for *Temporary Shoring* will be full compensation for providing soil nail wall designs, submittals, labor, tools, equipment and soil nail wall materials, excavating, hauling and removing excavated materials, installing and testing soil nails, grouting, shotcreting and supplying drain strips and any incidentals necessary to construct soil nail walls. No additional payment will be made and no extension of completion date or time will be allowed for repairing property damage, overexcavations or unstable excavations, unacceptable test nails or thicker shotcrete.

No payment will be made for temporary shoring not shown in the plans or required by the Engineer including shoring for OSHA reasons or the Contractor's convenience. No value engineering proposals will be accepted based solely on revising or eliminating shoring locations shown in the plans or estimated quantities shown in the bid item sheets as a result of actual field measurements or site conditions.

PCB will be measured and paid in accordance with Section 1170 of the *Standard Specifications*. No additional payment will be made for anchoring PCB for soil nail walls. Costs for anchoring PCB will be incidental to soil nail walls.

Temporary guardrail will be measured and paid for in accordance with Section 862 of the *Standard Specifications*.



DocuSigned by:
Scott A. Hidden
F760CAEB96FC4D3...
6/21/2019

MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH RETAINING WALLS**(1-16-18)****1.0 GENERAL**

Construct mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) retaining walls consisting of steel or geosynthetic reinforcement in the reinforced zone connected to vertical facing elements. Use precast concrete panels for vertical facing elements and coarse aggregate in the reinforced zone unless noted otherwise in the plans. Provide reinforced concrete coping and pile sleeves as required. Design and construct MSE retaining walls based on actual elevations and wall dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use a prequalified MSE Wall Installer to construct MSE retaining walls.

Define MSE wall terms as follows:

Geosynthetic or Geogrid Reinforcement – Polyester Type (PET), HDPE or Polypropylene (PP) geogrid reinforcement,

Geogrid – PET, HDPE or PP geogrid,

Reinforcement – Steel or geogrid reinforcement,

Aggregate – Coarse or fine aggregate,

Panel – Precast concrete panel,

Coping – Precast or CIP concrete coping,

MSE Wall – Mechanically stabilized earth retaining wall,

MSE Wall Vendor – Vendor supplying the chosen MSE wall system,

MSE Panel Wall – MSE wall with panels,

MSE Segmental Wall – MSE wall with segmental retaining wall (SRW) units and

Abutment Wall – MSE wall with bridge foundations in any portion of the reinforced zone or an MSE wall connected to an abutment wall (Even if bridge foundations only penetrate a small part of the reinforced zone, the entire MSE wall is considered an abutment wall).

For bridge approach fills behind end bents with MSE abutment walls, design reinforcement connected to end bent caps in accordance with the plans and this provision. Construct Type III Reinforced Bridge Approach Fills in accordance with the *Bridge Approach Fills* provision and Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Use an approved MSE wall system in accordance with the plans and any NCDOT restrictions or exceptions for the chosen system. Value engineering proposals for other MSE wall systems will not be considered. Do not use MSE wall systems with an “approved for provisional use” status for abutment walls or MSE walls subject to scour, walls with design heights greater than 35 ft or walls supporting or adjacent to railroads or interstate highways. The list of approved MSE wall systems with approval status is available from:

connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Products.aspx

2.0 MATERIALS

Refer to the *Standard Specifications*.

Item

Aggregate

Section

1014

Corrugated Steel Pipe	1032-3
Epoxy, Type 3A	1081
Geosynthetics	1056
Grout, Type 3	1003
Joint Materials	1028
Portland Cement Concrete, Class A	1000
Precast Retaining Wall Coping	1077
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Retaining Wall Panels	1077
Segmental Retaining Wall Units	1040-4
Select Material, Class V	1016
Shoulder Drain Materials	816-2
Steel Pipe	1036-4(A)

Use galvanized corrugated steel pipe with a zinc coating weight of 2 oz/sf (G200) for pile sleeves. Provide Type 2 geotextile for filtration and separation geotextiles. Use Class A concrete for CIP coping, leveling concrete and pads. Use galvanized steel pipe, threaded rods and nuts for the PET geogrid reinforcement vertical obstruction detail. Provide galvanized Grade 36 anchor rods and Grade A hex nuts that meet AASHTO M 314 for threaded rods and nuts.

Use panels and SRW units from producers approved by the Department and licensed by the MSE Wall Vendor. Provide steel strip connectors embedded in panels fabricated from structural steel that meets the requirements for steel strip reinforcement. Unless required otherwise in the contract, produce panels with a smooth flat final finish that meets Article 1077-11 of the *Standard Specifications*. Accurately locate and secure reinforcement connectors in panels and maintain required concrete cover. Produce panels within 1/4" of the panel dimensions shown in the accepted submittals.

Damaged panels or SRW units with excessive discoloration, chips or cracks as determined by the Engineer will be rejected. Do not damage reinforcement connection devices or mechanisms in handling or storing panels and SRW units.

Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Handle and store geotextiles and geogrids in accordance with Article 1056-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Load, transport, unload and store MSE wall materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

A. Aggregate

Use standard size No. 57, 57M, 67 or 78M that meets Table 1005-1 of the *Standard Specifications* for coarse aggregate and the following for fine aggregate:

1. Standard size No. 1S, 2S, 2MS or 4S that meets Table 1005-2 of the *Standard Specifications* or

2. Gradation that meets Class III, Type 3 select material in accordance with Article 1016-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Fine aggregate is exempt from mortar strength in Subarticle 1014-1(E) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use fine aggregate with a maximum organic content of 1.0%. Provide aggregate with electrochemical properties that meet the following requirements:

AGGREGATE pH REQUIREMENTS		
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	Reinforcement or Connector Material	pH
Coarse or Fine	Steel	5 – 10
Coarse or Fine	PET	5 – 8
Coarse or Fine	Polyolefin (HDPE or Polypropylene)	4.5 – 9

AGGREGATE CHEMICAL REQUIREMENTS (Steel Reinforcement/Connector Materials Only)			
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	Resistivity	Chlorides	Sulfates
Coarse	$\geq 5,000 \Omega \cdot \text{cm}$	$\leq 100 \text{ ppm}$	$\leq 200 \text{ ppm}$
Fine	$\geq 3,000 \Omega \cdot \text{cm}$		

Use aggregate from sources participating in the Department’s Aggregate QC/QA Program as described in Section 1006 of the *Standard Specifications*. Sample and test aggregate in accordance with the *Mechanically Stabilized Earth Wall Aggregate Sampling and Testing Procedures*. Electrochemical testing is only required for coarse aggregate from sources in the Coastal Plain as defined by Subarticle 1018-2(B)(1).

B. Reinforcement

Provide steel or geosynthetic reinforcement supplied by the MSE Wall Vendor or a manufacturer approved or licensed by the vendor. Use reinforcement approved for the chosen MSE wall system. The list of approved reinforcement for each MSE wall system is available from the website shown elsewhere in this provision.

1. Steel Reinforcement

Provide Type 1 material certifications in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for steel reinforcement. Use welded wire grid reinforcement (“mesh”, “mats” and “ladders”) that meet Article 1070-3 of the *Standard Specifications* and steel strip reinforcement (“straps”) that meet ASTM A572, A1011 or A463. Use 10 gauge or heavier structural steel Grade 50 or higher for steel strip reinforcement. Galvanize steel reinforcement in accordance with Section 1076 of the *Standard Specifications* or provide aluminized steel strip reinforcement that meet ASTM A463, Type 2-100.

2. Geosynthetic Reinforcement

Use HDPE or PP geogrid for geogrid reinforcement connected to backwalls of end bent caps. Use PET or HDPE geogrid for geogrid reinforcement connected to SRW units and only HDPE geogrid for geogrid reinforcement connected to panels.

Define machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD) for geogrids per Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications*. Provide Type 1 material certifications and identify geogrid reinforcement in accordance with Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Provide extruded geogrids manufactured from punched and drawn polypropylene sheets for PP geogrids that meet the following:

PP GEOGRID REQUIREMENTS		
Property	Requirement¹	Test Method
Aperture Dimensions ²	1" x 1.2"	N/A
Minimum Rib Thickness ²	0.07" x 0.07"	N/A
Tensile Strength @ 2% Strain ²	580 lb/ft x 690 lb/ft	ASTM D6637, Method A
Tensile Strength @ 5% Strain ²	1,200 lb/ft x 1,370 lb/ft	
Ultimate Tensile Strength ²	1,850 lb/ft x 2,050 lb/ft	
Junction Efficiency ³ (MD)	93%	ASTM D7737
Flexural Rigidity ⁴	2,000,000 mg-cm	ASTM D7748
Aperture Stability Modulus ⁵	0.55 lb-ft/degrees	ASTM D7864
UV Stability (Retained Strength)	100% (after 500 hr of exposure)	ASTM D4355

- MARV per Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications* except dimensions and thickness are nominal.
- Requirement for MD x CD.
- Junction Efficiency (%) = (Average Junction Strength ($X_{j_{ave}}$) / Ultimate Tensile Strength in the MD from ASTM D6637, Method A) × 100.
- Test specimens two ribs wide, with transverse ribs cut flush with exterior edges of longitudinal ribs, and sufficiently long to enable measurement of the overhang dimension.
- Applied moment of 17.7 lb-inch (torque increment).

C. Bearing Pads

For MSE panel walls, use bearing pads that meet Section 3.6.1.a of the *FHWA Design and Construction of Mechanically Stabilized Earth Walls and Reinforced Soil Slopes – Volume I* (Publication No. FHWA-NHI-10-024) except durometer hardness for rubber pads may be 60 or 80 ± 5 and density testing for HDPE pads may be in accordance with ASTM D1505 or D792. Provide bearing pads with thicknesses that meet the following:

BEARING PAD THICKNESS	
Facing Area per Panel (A)	Minimum Pad Thickness After Compression (based on 2 times panel weight above pads)

$A \leq 30$ sf	1/2"
$30 \text{ sf} < A \leq 75$ sf	3/4"

D. Miscellaneous Components

Miscellaneous components may include connectors (e.g., anchors, bars, clamps, pins, plates, ties, etc.), fasteners (e.g., bolts, nuts, washers, etc.) and any other MSE wall components not included above. Galvanize steel components in accordance with Section 1076 of the *Standard Specifications*. Provide miscellaneous components approved for the chosen MSE wall system. The list of approved miscellaneous components for each MSE wall system is available from the website shown elsewhere in this provision.

3.0 PRECONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. MSE Wall Surveys

The Retaining Wall Plans show a plan view, typical sections, details, notes and an elevation or profile view (wall envelope) for each MSE wall. Before beginning MSE wall design, survey existing ground elevations shown in the plans and other elevations in the vicinity of MSE wall locations as needed. For proposed slopes above or below MSE walls, survey existing ground elevations to at least 10 ft beyond slope stake points. Based on these elevations, finished grades and actual MSE wall dimensions and details, submit revised wall envelopes for acceptance. Use accepted wall envelopes for design.

B. MSE Wall Designs

For MSE wall designs, submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations at least 30 days before the preconstruction meeting. Note name and NCDOT ID number of the panel or SRW unit production facility on working drawings. Do not begin MSE wall construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Use a prequalified MSE Segmental Wall Design Consultant to design MSE segmental walls. Provide MSE segmental wall designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for the MSE Segmental Wall Design Consultant. Provide MSE panel wall designs sealed by a Design Engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina and employed or contracted by the MSE Wall Vendor.

Design MSE walls in accordance with the plans, *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and any NCDOT restrictions for the chosen MSE wall system unless otherwise required. Design MSE walls for seismic if walls are located in seismic zone 2 based on Figure 2-1 of the *Structure Design Manual*. Connect reinforcement to panels or SRW units with methods or devices approved for the chosen system. Use a uniform reinforcement length throughout the wall height of at least 0.7H with H as shown in the plans or 6 ft, whichever is longer, unless noted otherwise in the plans. Extend the reinforced zone at least 6" beyond end of reinforcement. Do not locate

drains, the reinforced zone or leveling pads outside right-of-way or easement limits.

Use the simplified method for determining maximum reinforcement loads and design parameters approved for the chosen MSE wall system or default values in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications. Design steel components including reinforcement and connectors for the design life noted in the plans and aggregate type in the reinforced zone. If an MSE wall system with geogrid reinforcement includes any steel parts for obstructions, bin walls, connections or other components, design steel exposed to aggregate for the design life noted in the plans and aggregate type in the reinforced zone. Use “loss of galvanizing” metal loss rates for nonaggressive backfill in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications for galvanized and aluminized steel and metal loss rates for carbon steel in accordance with the following:

CARBON STEEL CORROSION RATES	
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	Carbon Steel Loss Rate (after coating depletion)
Coarse	0.47 mil/year
Fine (except abutment walls)	0.58 mil/year
Fine (abutment walls)	0.70 mil/year

For PET or HDPE geogrid reinforcement and geosynthetic connectors, use approved geosynthetic properties for the design life noted in the plans and aggregate type in the reinforced zone. For geogrid reinforcement connected to end bent caps, embed geosynthetic reinforcement or connectors in caps as shown in the plans. For PP geogrid reinforcement connected to end bent caps, use the following design parameters for the aggregate type in the reinforced approach fill.

PP GEOGRID REINFORCEMENT DESIGN PARAMETERS				
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	T_{al} (MD)	F*	α	ρ
Coarse	400 lb/ft	0.70	0.8	32.0°
Fine	428 lb/ft	0.54	0.8	28.35°

Where,

- T_{al} = long-term design strength (LTDS),
 F* = pullout resistance factor,
 α = scale effect correction factor and
 ρ = soil-geogrid friction angle.

When noted in the plans, design MSE walls for a live load (traffic) surcharge of 250 psf in accordance with Figure C11.5.6-3(b) of the AASHTO LRFD specifications. For steel beam guardrail with 8 ft posts or concrete barrier rail above MSE walls, analyze top 2 reinforcement layers for traffic impact loads in accordance with Section 7.2 of the FHWA MSE wall manual shown elsewhere in this provision except use the following for geosynthetic reinforcement rupture:

$$\phi T_{al} R_c \geq T_{max} + (T_I / RF_{CR})$$

Where,

- ϕ = resistance factor for tensile resistance in accordance with Section 7.2.1 of the FHWA MSE wall manual,
- T_{al} = long-term geosynthetic design strength approved for chosen MSE wall system,
- R_c = reinforcement coverage ratio = 1 for continuous geosynthetic reinforcement,
- T_{max} = factored static load in accordance with Section 7.2 of the FHWA MSE wall manual,
- T_i = factored impact load in accordance with Section 7.2 of the FHWA MSE wall manual and
- RF_{CR} = creep reduction factor approved for chosen MSE wall system.

When shown in the plans for abutment walls, use pile sleeves to segregate piles from aggregate in the reinforced zone. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail, fence or handrail posts, moment slabs, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with reinforcement, maintain a clearance of at least 3" between obstructions and reinforcement unless otherwise approved. Design reinforcement for obstructions and locate reinforcement layers so all of reinforcement length is within 3" of corresponding connection elevations. Modify PET geogrid reinforcement for obstructions as shown in the plans.

Use 6" thick CIP unreinforced concrete leveling pads beneath panels and SRW units that are continuous at steps and extend at least 6" in front of and behind bottom row of panels or SRW units. Unless required otherwise in the plans, embed top of leveling pads in accordance with the following requirements:

EMBEDMENT REQUIREMENTS		
Front Slope¹ (H:V)	Minimum Embedment Depth² (whichever is greater)	
6:1 or flatter (except abutment walls)	H/20	1 ft for $H \leq 10$ ft 2 ft for $H > 10$ ft
6:1 or flatter (abutment walls)	H/10	2 ft
> 6:1 to < 3:1	H/10	2 ft
3:1 to 2:1	H/7	2 ft

1. Front slope is as shown in the plans.
2. Define "H" as the maximum design height plus embedment per wall with the design height and embedment as shown in the plans.

When noted in the plans, locate a continuous aggregate shoulder drain along the base of the reinforced zone behind the aggregate. Provide wall drainage systems consisting of drains and outlet components in accordance with Roadway Standard Drawing No. 816.02.

For MSE panel walls, cover joints at back of panels with filtration geotextiles at least 12" wide. If the approval of the chosen MSE wall system does not require a minimum

number of bearing pads, provide the number of pads in accordance with the following:

NUMBER OF BEARING PADS		
Facing Area per Panel (A)	Maximum Wall Height Above Horizontal Panel Joint	Minimum Number of Pads per Horizontal Panel Joint
$A \leq 30$ sf	25 ft	2
	35 ft ¹	3
$30 \text{ sf} < A \leq 75$ sf	25 ft	3
	35 ft ¹	4

1. Additional bearing pads per horizontal panel joint may be required for wall heights above joints greater than 35 ft.

For MSE segmental walls, coarse aggregate is required in any SRW unit core spaces and between and behind SRW units for a horizontal distance of at least 18". Separation geotextiles are required between the aggregate and overlying fill or pavement sections except when concrete pavement, full depth asphalt or cement treated base is placed directly on aggregate. When noted in the plans, separation geotextiles are also required at the back of the reinforced zone between the aggregate and backfill or natural ground. Unless required otherwise in the plans, use reinforced concrete coping at top of walls that meets the following requirements:

1. Coping dimensions as shown in the plans,
2. At the Contractor's option, coping that is precast or CIP concrete for MSE panel walls unless CIP coping is required as shown in the plans,
3. CIP concrete coping for MSE segmental walls and
4. At the Contractor's option and when shown in the plans, CIP concrete coping that extends down back of panels or SRW units or connects to panels or SRW units with dowels.

For MSE segmental walls with dowels, attach dowels to top courses of SRW units in accordance with the following:

1. Set dowels in core spaces of SRW units filled with grout instead of coarse aggregate or
2. Embed adhesively anchored dowels in holes of solid SRW units with epoxy.

For MSE panel walls with coping, connect CIP concrete coping or leveling concrete for precast concrete coping to top row of panels with dowels cast into panels. When concrete barrier rail is required above MSE walls, use concrete barrier rail with moment slab as shown in the plans.

Submit working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, wall profiles with foundation pressures, typical sections with reinforcement and

connection details, aggregate locations and types, geotextile locations and details of leveling pads, panels or SRW units, coping, bin walls, slip joints, pile sleeves, etc. If necessary, include details on working drawings for concrete barrier rail with moment slab, reinforcement splices if allowed for the chosen MSE wall system, reinforcement connected to end bent caps, curved MSE walls with tight (short) radii and obstructions extending through walls or interfering with reinforcement, leveling pads, barriers or moment slabs. Submit design calculations for each wall section with different surcharge loads, geometry or material parameters. At least one analysis is required for each wall section with different reinforcement lengths. When designing MSE walls with computer software other than MSEW, use MSEW, version 3.0 with update 14.96 or later, manufactured by ADAMA Engineering, Inc. to verify the design. At least one MSEW analysis is required per 100 ft of wall length with at least one analysis for the wall section with the longest reinforcement. Submit electronic MSEW input files and PDF output files with design calculations.

C. Preconstruction Meeting

Before starting MSE wall construction, hold a preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction and inspection of the MSE walls. If this meeting occurs before all MSE wall submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of MSE walls without accepted submittals. The Resident or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and MSE Wall Installer Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

4.0 CORROSION MONITORING

Corrosion monitoring is required for MSE walls with steel reinforcement. The Engineer will determine the number of monitoring locations and where to install the instrumentation. Contact M&T before beginning wall construction. M&T will provide the corrosion monitoring instrumentation kits and if necessary, assistance with installation.

5.0 SITE ASSISTANCE

Unless otherwise approved, an MSE Wall Vendor representative is required to assist and guide the MSE Wall Installer on-site for at least 8 hours when the first panels or SRW units and reinforcement layer are placed. If problems are encountered during construction, the Engineer may require the vendor representative to return to the site for a time period determined by the Engineer.

6.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of MSE walls. Direct run off away from MSE walls, aggregate and backfill. Contain and maintain aggregate and backfill and protect material from erosion.

Excavate as necessary for MSE walls in accordance with the accepted submittals. If applicable and at the Contractor's option, use temporary shoring for wall construction

instead of temporary slopes to construct MSE walls. Define “temporary shoring for wall construction” as temporary shoring not shown in the plans or required by the Engineer including shoring for OSHA reasons or the Contractor’s convenience.

Unless required otherwise in the plans, install foundations and if required, pile sleeves located in the reinforced zone before placing aggregate or reinforcement. Brace piles in the reinforced zone to maintain alignment when placing and compacting aggregate. Secure piles together with steel members near top of piles. Clamp members to piles instead of welding if bracing is at or below pile cut-off elevations.

Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place leveling pad concrete, aggregate or reinforcement until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Construct CIP concrete leveling pads at elevations and with dimensions shown in the accepted submittals and in accordance with Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Cure leveling pads at least 24 hours before placing panels or SRW units.

Erect and support panels and stack SRW units so the final wall position is as shown in the accepted submittals. Stagger SRW units to create a running bond by centering SRW units over joints in the row below as shown in the accepted submittals. Space bearing pads in horizontal panel joints as shown in the accepted submittals and cover all panel joints with filtration geotextiles as shown in the accepted submittals. Attach filtration geotextiles to back of panels with adhesives, tapes or other approved methods.

Construct MSE walls with the following tolerances:

- A. SRW units are level from front to back and between units when checked with a 4 ft long level,
- B. Vertical joint widths are 1/4" maximum for SRW units and 3/4", $\pm 1/4$ " for panels,
- C. Final wall face is within 3/4" of horizontal and vertical alignment shown in the accepted submittals when measured along a 10 ft straightedge and
- D. Final wall plumbness (batter) is not negative (wall face leaning forward) and within 0.5° of vertical unless otherwise approved.

Place reinforcement at locations and elevations shown in the accepted submittals and within 3" of corresponding connection elevations. Install reinforcement with the direction shown in the accepted submittals. Before placing aggregate, pull geogrid reinforcement taut so it is in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Reinforcement may be spliced once per reinforcement length if shown in the accepted submittals. Use reinforcement pieces at least 6 ft long. Contact the Engineer when unanticipated existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail, fence or handrail posts, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with reinforcement. To avoid obstructions, deflect, skew or modify reinforcement as shown in the accepted submittals.

Place aggregate in the reinforced zone in 8" to 10" thick lifts. Compact fine aggregate in accordance with Subarticle 235-3(C) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use only hand

operated compaction equipment to compact aggregate within 3 ft of panels or SRW units. At a distance greater than 3 ft, compact aggregate with at least 4 passes of an 8 ton to 10 ton vibratory roller in a direction parallel to the wall face. Smooth wheeled or rubber tired rollers are also acceptable for compacting aggregate. Do not use sheepsfoot, grid rollers or other types of compaction equipment with feet. Do not displace or damage reinforcement when placing and compacting aggregate. End dumping directly on geogrids is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on reinforcement until it is covered with at least 8" of aggregate. Replace any damaged reinforcement to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Backfill for MSE walls outside the reinforced zone in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *Standard Specifications*. If a drain is required, install wall drainage systems as shown in the accepted submittals and in accordance with Section 816 of the *Standard Specifications*. If pile sleeves are required, fill sleeves with loose uncompacted sand before constructing end bent caps.

Install dowels as necessary for SRW units and place and construct coping and leveling concrete as shown in the accepted submittals. Construct leveling concrete in accordance with Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Construct CIP concrete coping in accordance with Subarticle 452-4(B) of the *Standard Specifications*. When single faced precast concrete barrier is required in front of and against MSE walls, stop coping just above barrier so coping does not interfere with placing barrier up against wall faces. If the gap between a single faced barrier and wall face is wider than 2", fill gap with Class V select material (standard size No. 78M stone). Otherwise, fill gap with backer rod and seal joint between barrier and MSE wall with silicone sealant.

When separation geotextiles are required, overlap adjacent geotextiles at least 18" and hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed. Seal joints above and behind MSE walls between coping and concrete slope protection with silicone sealant.

7.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

MSE Retaining Wall No. ___ will be measured and paid in square feet. MSE walls will be measured as the square feet of wall face area with the pay height equal to the difference between top of wall and top of leveling pad elevations. Define "top of wall" as top of coping or top of panels or SRW units for MSE walls without coping.

The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. ___* will be full compensation for providing designs, submittals, labor, tools, equipment and MSE wall materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials and supplying site assistance, leveling pads, panels, SRW units, reinforcement, aggregate, wall drainage systems, geotextiles, bearing pads, coping, miscellaneous components and any incidentals necessary to construct MSE walls. The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. ___* will also be full compensation for reinforcement and connector design for reinforcement connected to end bent caps, wall modifications for obstructions, pile sleeves filled with sand, joints sealed with silicone sealant and gaps between barriers and MSE walls filled with backer rod or No. 78M stone, if required.

No separate payment will be made for temporary shoring for wall construction. Temporary shoring for wall construction will be incidental to the contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. __*.

The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. __* does not include the cost for ditches, fences, handrails, barrier or guardrail associated with MSE walls as these items will be paid for elsewhere in the contract. The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. __* also does not include the cost for constructing bridge approach fills behind end bents with MSE abutment walls. See *Bridge Approach Fills* provision for measurement and payment of Type III Reinforced Bridge Approach Fills.

Where it is necessary to provide backfill material behind the reinforced zone from sources other than excavated areas or borrow sources used in connection with other work in the contract, payment for furnishing and hauling such backfill material will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Placing and compacting such backfill material is not considered extra work but is incidental to the work being performed.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

MSE Retaining Wall No. __

Pay Unit

Square Foot



DocuSigned by:
Scott A. Hidden
F760CAEB96FC4D3...
6/21/2019

SOIL NAIL RETAINING WALLS**(SPECIAL)****1.0 GENERAL**

Construct soil nail retaining walls consisting of soil nails spaced at a regular pattern and connected to a CIP reinforced concrete face. A soil nail consists of a steel bar grouted in a drilled hole inclined at an angle below horizontal. Use shotcrete for temporary support of excavations during construction. Design and construct soil nail retaining walls based on actual elevations and wall dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Contractor to construct soil nail retaining walls. Define “soil nail wall” as a soil nail retaining wall and “Soil Nail Wall Contractor” as the Anchored Wall Contractor installing soil nails and applying shotcrete. Define “nail” as a soil nail and “concrete facing” as a CIP reinforced concrete face.

Soil nail wall AASHTO design references and soil nail AASHTO material and testing requirements referred to in this provision are included in the 8th Edition of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and the 4th Edition of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*, respectively as approved AASHTO ballot items available from: connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Geotech_Requirements_References.aspx

2.0 MATERIALS

Refer to the *Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geosynthetics	1056
Joint Materials	1028
Masonry	1040
Portland Cement	1024-1
Portland Cement Concrete, Class A	1000
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Select Material, Class VI	1016
Shotcrete	1002
Shoulder Drain Materials	816-2
Steel Plates	1072-2
Water	1024-4
Welded Stud Shear Connectors	1072-6

Provide Class VI select material (standard size No. 57 stone) for leveling pads. Use neat cement grout that only contains cement and water with a water cement ratio of 0.4 to 0.5 which is approximately 5.5 gallons of water per 94 lb of Portland cement. Provide grout with a compressive strength at 3 and 28 days of at least 1,500 psi and 4,000 psi, respectively.

Provide soil nails consisting of grouted steel bars and nail head assemblies. Use deformed steel bars that meet AASHTO M 275 or M 31, Grade 60, 75 or 80. Splice bars in accordance with Article 1070-9 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Provide epoxy coated bars that meet Article 1070-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Provide

Class A corrosion protection (encapsulated bar) or Class B corrosion protection (epoxy coated bar only, no galvanized bar) for soil nails in accordance with Article X.3.3 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*. Use centralizers that meet Article X.3.4 of the *AASHTO LRFD specifications*.

Provide nail head assemblies consisting of nuts, washers and bearing plates with welded stud shear connectors. Use steel plates for bearing plates and steel washers and hex nuts recommended by the Soil Nail Manufacturer.

Provide Type 3 material certifications for soil nail materials in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications*. Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store soil nail wall materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Do not crack, fracture or otherwise damage grout inside sheaths of encapsulated nails. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

3.0 PRECONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. Soil Nail Wall Surveys

The Retaining Wall Plans show a plan view, typical sections, details, notes and an elevation or profile view (wall envelope) for each soil nail wall. Before beginning soil nail wall design, survey existing ground elevations shown in the plans and other elevations in the vicinity of soil nail wall locations as needed. For proposed slopes above or below soil nail walls, survey existing ground elevations to at least 10 ft beyond slope stake points. Based on these elevations, finished grades and actual soil nail wall dimensions and details, submit revised wall envelopes for acceptance. Use accepted wall envelopes for design.

B. Soil Nail Wall Designs

For soil nail wall designs, submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations at least 30 days before the preconstruction meeting. Do not begin soil nail wall construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Design Consultant to design soil nail walls. Provide designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for the Anchored Wall Design Consultant.

Design soil nail walls in accordance with the plans and the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* unless otherwise required. Design soil nail walls for seismic if walls are located in seismic zone 2 based on Figure 2-1 of the *Structure Design Manual*.

Design soil nails that meet the following unless otherwise approved:

1. Horizontal and vertical spacing of at least 3 ft,
2. Inclination of at least 12° below horizontal,

3. Clearance between ends of bars and drill holes of at least 6",
4. Grout cover between epoxy coated bars and drill hole walls of at least 1" or in accordance with Article 11.12.8 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications for encapsulated bars and
5. Diameter of 6" to 10".

Four inch diameter soil nails may be approved for nails in rock at the discretion of the Engineer. Do not extend nails beyond right-of-way or easement limits. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail, fence or handrail posts, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with nails, maintain a clearance of at least 6" between obstructions and nails.

When noted in the plans, design soil nail walls for a live load (traffic) surcharge of 250 psf. For steel beam guardrail with 8 ft posts above soil nail walls, analyze walls for a nominal horizontal load of 300 lb/ft of wall with a load factor of 1.0. For concrete barrier rail above soil nail walls, analyze walls for a nominal horizontal load of 500 lb/ft of wall with a load factor of 1.0.

Provide wall drainage systems consisting of geocomposite sheet drains, an aggregate shoulder drain and outlet components. Place sheet drains with a horizontal spacing of no more than 10 ft and center drains between adjacent nails. Attach sheet drains to excavation faces and connect drains to aggregate leveling pads. Locate a continuous aggregate shoulder drain along the base of concrete facing in front of leveling pads. Provide aggregate shoulder drains and outlet components in accordance with Roadway Standard Drawing No. 816.02.

Use No. 57 stone for aggregate leveling pads. Use 6" thick leveling pads beneath concrete facing. Unless required otherwise in the plans, embed top of leveling pads at least 12" below bottom of walls shown in the plans.

Design shotcrete and concrete facing in accordance with the plans and Article 11.12.6.2 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Use shotcrete and concrete facing with the dimensions shown in the plans and attach facing to nail heads with welded stud shear connectors. When concrete barrier rail is required above soil nail walls, use concrete barrier rail with moment slab as shown in the plans.

Submit working drawings and design calculations including unit grout/ground bond strengths for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, wall profiles with nail locations including known test nail locations, typical sections and details of nails, drainage, shotcrete, leveling pads and concrete facing. If necessary, include details on working drawings for concrete barrier rail with moment slab and obstructions extending through walls or interfering with nails, barriers or moment slabs. Submit design calculations for each wall section with different surcharge loads, geometry or material parameters. Include analysis of temporary conditions in design calculations. At least one analysis is required for each wall section with different nail lengths. Analyze internal and compound stability with a

computer software program that uses limit equilibrium methods and submit all PDF output files from the program with the design calculations. See Article C11.12.2 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications for determining the maximum soil nail force, $T_{\max sn}$.

When designing soil nail walls with computer software Snail manufactured by the California Department of Transportation (CALTRANS), use Snail, version 2.2.0 or later, to calculate factors of safety and $T_{\max sn}$ values in accordance with the following:

1. Allowable Stress Design for Analysis Method,
2. Perform Below Toe Search option selected when any soil layer has a friction angle less than 30° and
3. Default value of 0.33 for Interface Friction Reduction Factor.

When designing soil nail walls with computer software other than Snail, use bi-linear (or tri-linear, as applicable) search surfaces intended to reproduce Snail results. Factors of safety and $T_{\max sn}$ values are acceptable if they are within 5% of the factors of safety and $T_{\max sn}$ values calculated by the Engineer using the computer software Slide2 manufactured by Rocscience, Inc.

C. Soil Nail Wall Construction Plan

Submit a PDF file of a soil nail wall construction plan at least 30 days before the preconstruction meeting. Do not begin soil nail wall construction until the construction plan submittal is accepted. Provide detailed project specific information in the soil nail wall construction plan that includes the following:

1. Overall description and sequence of soil nail wall construction;
2. List and sizes of excavation equipment, drill rigs and tools, tremies and grouting equipment;
3. Procedures for excavations, drilling and grouting, soil nail and wall drainage system installation and facing construction;
4. Details of shotcrete equipment and application including mix process, test panels, thickness gauges and shooting methods;
5. Shotcrete nozzleman with certification in accordance with Article 1002-1 of the *Standard Specifications*;
6. Plan and methods for nail testing with calibration certificates dated within 90 days of the submittal date;
7. Examples of construction and test nail records to be used in accordance with Sections 4.0(F) and 5.0(E) of this provision;
8. Grout mix design with acceptable ranges for grout flow and density;
9. Shotcrete mix design that meets Section 1002 of the *Standard Specifications*; and
10. Other information shown in the plans or requested by the Engineer.

If alternate construction procedures are proposed or necessary, a revised soil nail wall construction plan submittal may be required. If the work deviates from the accepted submittal without prior approval, the Engineer may suspend soil nail wall construction until a revised plan is accepted.

D. Preconstruction Meeting

Before starting soil nail wall construction, hold a preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction, inspection and testing of the soil nail walls. If this meeting occurs before all soil nail wall submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of soil nail walls without accepted submittals. The Resident or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and Soil Nail Wall Contractor Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of soil nail walls. Direct run off away from soil nail walls and areas above and behind walls.

Notify the Engineer before blasting in the vicinity of soil nail walls. Perform blasting in accordance with the contract. Unless required otherwise in the plans, install foundations located behind soil nail walls before beginning wall construction.

Install soil nail walls in accordance with the accepted submittals and as directed. Do not excavate behind soil nail walls. If overexcavation occurs, repair walls with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan may be required.

A. Excavation

Excavate for soil nail walls from the top down in accordance with the accepted submittals. Excavate in staged horizontal lifts with no negative batter (excavation face leaning forward). Excavate lifts in accordance with the following:

1. Heights not to exceed vertical nail spacing,
2. Bottom of lifts no more than 3 ft below nail locations for current lift and
3. Horizontal and vertical alignment within 2" of location shown in the accepted submittals.

Remove any cobbles, boulders, rubble or debris that will protrude more than 2" into the required shotcrete thickness. Rocky ground such as colluvium, boulder fills and weathered rock may be difficult to excavate without leaving voids.

Apply shotcrete to excavation faces within 24 hours of excavating each lift unless otherwise approved. Shotcreting may be delayed if it can be demonstrated that delays will not adversely affect excavation stability. If excavation faces will be exposed for more than 24 hours, use polyethylene sheets anchored at top and bottom of lifts to protect

excavation faces from changes in moisture content.

If an excavation becomes unstable at any time, suspend soil nail wall construction and temporarily stabilize the excavation by immediately placing an earth berm up against the unstable excavation face. When this occurs, repair walls with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan may be required.

Do not excavate the next lift until nail installations and testing and shotcrete application for the current lift are accepted and grout and shotcrete for the current lift have cured at least 3 days and 1 day, respectively.

B. Soil Nails

Install soil nails in the same way as acceptable test nails. Drill and grout nails the same day and do not leave drill holes open overnight.

Control drilling and grouting to prevent excessive ground movements, damaging structures and pavements or fracturing rock and soil formations. If ground heave or subsidence occurs, suspend soil nail wall construction and take corrective action to minimize movement. If property damage occurs, make repairs with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan may be required.

1. Drilling

Use drill rigs of the sizes necessary to install soil nails and with sufficient capacity to drill through whatever materials are encountered. Drill straight and clean holes with the dimensions and inclination shown in the accepted submittals. Drill holes within 6" of locations and 2° of inclination shown in the accepted submittals unless otherwise approved.

Stabilize drill holes with temporary casings if unstable, caving or sloughing material is anticipated or encountered. Do not use drilling fluids to stabilize drill holes or remove cuttings.

2. Steel Bars

Center steel bars in drill holes with centralizers. Securely attach centralizers along bars at no more than 8 ft centers. Attach uppermost and lowermost centralizers 18" from excavation faces and ends of holes.

Do not insert steel bars into drill holes until hole locations, dimensions, inclination and cleanliness are approved. Do not vibrate, drive or otherwise force bars into holes. If a steel bar cannot be completely and easily inserted into a drill hole, remove the bar and clean or redrill the hole.

3. Grouting

Mix and place grout in accordance with Subarticles 1003-5, 1003-6 and 1003-7 of

the *Standard Specifications*. Remove oil, rust inhibitors, residual drilling fluids and similar foreign materials from holding tanks/hoppers, stirring devices, pumps, lines, tremie pipes and any other equipment in contact with grout before use. Measure grout temperature, density and flow during grouting with at least the same frequency grout cubes are made for compressive strength. Perform density and flow field tests in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with American National Standards Institute/American Petroleum Institute Recommended Practice 13B-1 (Section 4, Mud Balance) and ASTM C939 (Flow Cone), respectively.

Inject grout at the lowest point of drill holes through tremies, e.g., grout tubes, casings, hollow-stem augers or drill rods, in one continuous operation. Fill drill holes progressively from ends of holes to excavation faces and withdraw tremies at a slow even rate as holes are filled to prevent voids in grout. Extend tremies into grout at least 5 ft at all times except when grout is initially placed in holes.

Provide grout free of segregation, intrusions, contamination, structural damage or inadequate consolidation (honeycombing). Cold joints in grout are not allowed except for test nails. Remove any temporary casings as grout is placed and record grout volume for each drill hole.

4. Nail Heads

Weld stud shear connectors to bearing plates of nails in accordance with Article 1072-6 of the *Standard Specifications*. Install nail head assemblies after shotcreting. Before shotcrete reaches initial set, seat bearing plates and tighten nuts so plates contact shotcrete uniformly. If uniform contact is not possible, install nail head assemblies on mortar pads so nail heads are evenly loaded.

C. Wall Drainage Systems

Install wall drainage systems as shown in the accepted submittals and in accordance with Section 816 of the *Standard Specifications*. Before installing shotcrete reinforcement, place geocomposite sheet drains with the geotextile side against excavation faces. For highly irregular faces and at the discretion of the Engineer, sheet drains may be placed after shotcreting over weep holes through the shotcrete. Hold sheet drains in place with anchor pins so drains are in continuous contact with surfaces to which they are attached and allow for full flow the entire height of soil nail walls. Discontinuous sheet drains are not allowed. If splices are needed, overlap sheet drains at least 12" so flow is not impeded. Connect sheet drains to aggregate leveling pads by embedding drain ends at least 4" into No. 57 stone.

D. Shotcrete

Clean ungrouted zones of drill holes and excavation faces of loose materials, mud, rebound and other foreign material. Moisten surfaces to receive shotcrete. Install shotcrete reinforcement in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Secure reinforcing steel so shooting does not displace or vibrate reinforcement. Install approved thickness gauges on 5 ft centers in the horizontal and vertical directions to measure

shotcrete thickness.

Apply shotcrete in accordance with the contract, accepted submittals and Subarticle 1002-3(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use approved shotcrete nozzlemen who made satisfactory preconstruction test panels to apply shotcrete. Direct shotcrete at right angles to excavation faces except when shooting around reinforcing steel. Rotate nozzle steadily in small circular patterns and apply shotcrete from bottom of lifts up.

Make shotcrete surfaces uniform and free of sloughing or sagging. Completely fill ungrouted zones of drill holes and any other voids with shotcrete. Taper construction joints to a thin edge over a horizontal distance of at least the shotcrete thickness. Wet joint surfaces before shooting adjacent sections.

Repair surface defects as soon as possible after shooting. Remove any shotcrete which lacks uniformity, exhibits segregation, honeycombing or lamination or contains any voids or sand pockets and replace with fresh shotcrete to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Protect shotcrete from freezing and rain until shotcrete reaches initial set.

E. Leveling Pads and Concrete Facing

Construct aggregate leveling pads at elevations and with dimensions shown in the accepted submittals. Compact leveling pads with a vibratory compactor to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Construct concrete facing in accordance with the accepted submittals and Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Do not remove forms until concrete attains a compressive strength of at least 2,400 psi. Unless required otherwise in the plans, provide a Class 2 surface finish for concrete facing that meets Subarticle 420-17(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. Construct concrete facing joints at a spacing of 10 ft to 12 ft unless required otherwise in the plans. Make 1/2" thick expansion joints that meet Article 420-10 of the *Standard Specifications* for every third joint and 1/2" deep grooved contraction or sawed joints that meet Subarticle 825-10(B) or 825-10(E) respectively for the remaining joints. Stop reinforcing steel for concrete facing 2" on either side of expansion joints.

If a brick veneer is required, construct brick masonry in accordance with Section 830 of the *Standard Specifications*. Anchor brick veneers to soil nail walls in accordance with Subarticle 453-4 of the *Standard Specifications*. Seal joints above and behind soil nail walls between concrete facing and slope protection with silicone sealant.

F. Construction Records

Provide 2 copies of soil nail wall construction records within 24 hours of completing each lift. Include the following in construction records:

1. Names of Soil Nail Wall Contractor, Superintendent, Nozzleman, Drill Rig Operator, Project Manager and Design Engineer;
2. Wall description, county, Department's contract, TIP and WBS element number;

3. Wall station and number and lift location, dimensions, elevations and description;
4. Nail locations, dimensions and inclinations, bar types, sizes and grades, corrosion protection and temporary casing information;
5. Date and time drilling begins and ends, steel bars are inserted into drill holes, grout and shotcrete are mixed and arrives on-site and grout placement and shotcrete application begins and ends;
6. Grout volume, temperature, flow and density records;
7. Ground and surface water conditions and elevations if applicable;
8. Weather conditions including air temperature at time of grout placement and shotcrete application; and
9. All other pertinent details related to soil nail wall construction.

After completing each soil nail wall or stage of a wall, provide a PDF file of all corresponding construction records.

5.0 NAIL TESTING

Test soil nails in accordance with the contract and as directed. "Verification tests" are performed on nails not incorporated into soil nail walls, i.e., sacrificial nails and "proof tests" are performed on nails incorporated into walls, i.e., production nails. Define "verification test nail" and "proof test nail" as a nail tested with either a verification or proof test, respectively. Define "test nails" as verification or proof test nails.

Verification tests are typically required for at least one nail per soil type per soil nail wall or 2 nails per wall, whichever is greater. Proof tests are typically required for at least one nail per nail row per soil nail wall or at least 5% of production nails, whichever is greater. More or less test nails may be required depending on subsurface conditions encountered. The Engineer will determine the number and locations of verification and proof tests required. The approximate known test nail locations may be shown in the plans.

Do not test nails until grout and shotcrete attain the required 3-day compressive strength. Do not install any production nails until verification tests are accepted.

A. Test Equipment

Use the following equipment to test nails:

1. Two dial gauges with rigid supports,
2. Hydraulic jack and pressure gauge,
3. Jacking block or reaction frame and
4. Electrical resistance load cell (verification tests only).

Provide dial gauges with enough range and precision to measure the maximum test nail movement to 0.001". Use pressure gauges graduated in 100 psi increments or less.

Submit identification numbers and calibration records for load cells, jacks and pressure gauges with the soil nail wall construction plan. Calibrate each jack and pressure gauge as a unit.

Align test equipment to uniformly and evenly load test nails. Use a jacking block or reaction frame that does not damage or contact shotcrete within 3 ft of nail heads. Place dial gauges opposite each other on either side of test nails and align gauges within 5° of bar inclinations. Set up test equipment so resetting or repositioning equipment during nail testing is not needed.

B. Test Nails

Test nails include both unbonded and bond lengths. Grout only bond lengths before nail testing. Provide unbonded and bond lengths of at least 3 ft and 10 ft, respectively.

Steel bars for production nails may be overstressed under higher test nail loads. If necessary, use larger size or higher grade bars with more capacity for test nails instead of shortening bond lengths to less than the minimum required.

C. Nail Tests

Install verification test nails with the same equipment, installation methods and drill hole diameter and inclination as production nails. Test verification and proof test nails in accordance with the accepted submittals and Articles X.5.5.2 and X.5.5.3, respectively of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*.

D. Test Nail Acceptance

Submit 2 copies of test nail records including load versus movement and time versus creep movement plots within 24 hours of completing each verification or proof test. The Engineer will review the test nail records to determine if test nails are acceptable. Test nail acceptance is based in part on the acceptance criteria in Article X5.5.4 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*.

For proof test nails, maintain stability of unbonded lengths for subsequent grouting. If a proof test nail is accepted but the unbonded length cannot be satisfactorily grouted, do not incorporate the proof test nail into the soil nail wall and add another production nail to replace the test nail.

If the Engineer determines a verification test nail is unacceptable, revise the soil nail design or installation methods. Submit a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan for acceptance and provide acceptable verification test nails with the revised design or installation methods.

If the Engineer determines a proof test nail is unacceptable, either perform additional proof tests on adjacent production nails or revise the soil nail design or installation

methods for the production nails represented by the unacceptable proof test nail as determined by the Engineer. Submit a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan for acceptance, provide an acceptable proof test nail with the revised design or installation methods and install additional production nails for the nails represented by the unacceptable proof test nail.

After completing nail testing for each soil nail wall or stage of a wall, provide a PDF file of all corresponding test nail records.

6.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Soil Nail Retaining Walls will be measured and paid in square feet. Soil nail walls will be measured as the square feet of wall face area with the pay height equal to the difference between top of wall and top of leveling pad elevations. Define “top of wall” as top of concrete facing.

The contract unit price for *Soil Nail Retaining Walls* will be full compensation for providing designs, submittals, labor, tools, equipment and soil nail wall materials, excavating, hauling and removing excavated materials, installing soil nails, grouting, shotcreting and supplying wall drainage systems, leveling pads, concrete facing and any incidentals necessary to construct soil nail walls. The contract unit price for *Soil Nail Retaining Walls* will also be full compensation for brick veneers, if required. No additional payment will be made and no extension of completion date or time will be allowed for repairing property damage, overexcavations or unstable excavations, unacceptable test nails or thicker shotcrete or concrete facing.

The contract unit price for *Soil Nail Retaining Walls* does not include the cost for ditches, fences, handrails, barrier or guardrail associated with soil nail walls as these items will be paid for elsewhere in the contract.

Soil Nail Verification Tests and *Soil Nail Proof Tests* will be measured and paid in units of each. Soil nail testing will be measured as the number of initial verification or proof tests performed. The contract unit prices for *Soil Nail Verification Tests* and *Soil Nail Proof Tests* will be full compensation for initial nail testing. No payment will be made for subsequent nail testing performed on the same or replacement test nails.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Soil Nail Retaining Walls
Soil Nail Verification Tests
Soil Nail Proof Tests

Pay Unit

Square Foot
Each
Each



DocuSigned by:
Shane C. Clark
1F4E87E6D6AD4EA...
7/1/2019

ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE SURFACE TREATMENT**(SPECIAL)****1.0 GENERAL**

The work covered by this special provision consists of constructing textured surfaces on formed reinforced concrete surfaces as indicated on the Plans and in this Special Provision. The wall faces will be textured and the copings will be smooth, natural concrete, or as directed by the Engineer. The Contractor shall furnish all materials, labor, equipment, and incidentals necessary for the construction of architectural concrete surface treatment using simulated stone masonry form liners (molds) and a compatible concrete coloring system.

The architectural concrete surface treatment should match the appearance (stone size and shape, stone color, and stone texture, pattern, and relief) of natural stone and rock, in the project vicinity, or as directed by the Engineer. Grout pattern joints (mortar joints) and bed thickness should re-create the appearance and color of natural stone on the cast-in-place and/or precast concrete panels for the Soil Nail Retaining Wall No. -Y- as indicated in the Plans, this Special Provision, or as directed by the Engineer.

2.0 SUBMITTALS

Shop Drawings - The Contractor shall submit for review and acceptance, plan and elevation views and details showing overall simulated stone pattern, joint locations, form tie locations, and end, edge or other special conditions. The drawings should include typical cross sections of applicable surfaces, joints, corners, stone relief, stone size, pitch/working line, mortar joint and bed depths. If necessary, the Contractor shall revise the shop drawings until the proposed form liner patterns and arrangement have been accepted by the Engineer. Shop drawings should be of sufficient scale to show the detail of all stone and joints patterns. The size of the sheets used for the shop drawings shall be 22" x 34".

The form liner shall be patterned such that long continuous horizontal or vertical lines do not occur on the finished exposed surface. The line pattern shall be random in nature and shall conceal construction joint lines. Special attention should be given to details for wrapping form liners around corners.

Shop drawings shall be reviewed and accepted prior to fabrication of form liners.

Sample Panels – After the shop drawings have been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer, the Contractor shall construct 24" x 24" transportable sample panel(s) at the project site. The materials used in construction of the sample panel(s) shall comply with section 420 of the Standard Specifications. The sample panel(s) shall be constructed using approved form liners. Sample panels will be required for each different form liner pattern that is to be used on the project. Any sample panel that is not accepted by the Engineer is to be removed from the project site and a new sample panel produced at no additional expense to the Department.

Architectural surface treatments and patterns of the finished work shall achieve the same final effect as demonstrated on the accepted sample panel(s). Upon acceptance by the

Engineer, the sample panel(s) shall be used as the quality standard for the project. After the acceptance of the completed structure, the Contractor shall dispose of the sample panels as directed by the Engineer.

3.0 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Form Liner – The form liner shall be a high quality, re-useable product manufactured of high strength urethane rubber or other approved material which attaches easily to the form work system, and shall not compress more than ¼” when concrete is poured at a rate of 10 vertical feet (3 vertical meters) per hour. The form liners shall be removable without causing deterioration of the surface or underlying concrete.

The Contractor is required to use the same source of form liner for all required elements. The architectural concrete surface treatment should match the appearance (stone size and shape, stone texture, pattern and relief) of cut and mortared natural stone to resemble a pattern similar to the #439 Sierra Drystack by Sika Corporation, as shown below.



All texture is to be in addition to the nominal thickness of each element within tolerances. Maximum relief of the textured surface shall be 1 1/2 inch or less.

The form liners are to be patterned as referenced above and as directed by the Engineer.

The Contractor may choose one of the following manufactures to supply the stone-textured surface treatment as specified above. One form liner pattern will be used on this project.

- Sika Corporation <http://www.sika.com>
- Architectural Polymers <http://www.apformliner.com/>
- Custom Rock <http://www.customrock.com/>
- Fitzgerald <http://www.formliners.com/>
- Scott System <http://www.scottsystem.com/>
- Spec Formliners <http://www.specformliners.com/>
- U.S. Formliner <http://www.usformliner.com/>
- American Formliners <http://www.americanformliners.com/>

Form Release Agent – Form release agent shall be a nonstaining petroleum distillate free from water, asphaltic, and other insoluble residue, or an equivalent product. Form release agents shall be compatible with the color system applied and any special surface finish.

Form Ties - Form ties shall be set back a minimum of 2” from the finished concrete surface. The ties shall be designed so that all material in the device to a depth of at least 2” back of the concrete face (bottom of simulated mortar groove) can be disengaged and removed without spalling or damaging the concrete. The Contractor shall submit the type of form ties to the Engineer for approval.

Concrete Color – The final coloration of the wall is to consist of a two tone mix of Federal Colors #36373 and 36173 and shall be placed in such a way as to appear as natural stone. Stain the sample panel using the proposed colors and once approved by the Engineer they can be used on the wall.

Color stains shall be a special penetrating stain mix as provided by the manufacturer and shall be in multiple colors of gray, brown, white, and black to achieve a full, natural color variation in the finished surface. The stain shall create a surface finish that is breathable (allowing water vapor transmission), and that resists deterioration from water, acid, alkali, fungi, sunlight, or weathering. Stain mix shall meet the requirements for mildew resistance of Federal Test Method Standard 144, Method 6271, and requirements for weathering resistance of 1.000 hours accelerated exposure measures by Weatherometer in accordance with ASTM G 26. Color samples must be submitted for approval. Concrete stains shall be supplied by one of the following or as approved by the Engineer.

Sherwin Williams
H & C Shield Plus
101 Prospect Ave., NW
Cleveland, OH 44115

Canyon Tone Stain
United Coatings
E 1901 Cataldo
Green Acres, Washington 90016

Cementrate Acrylic Stain
Fosroc, Inc.
55 Skyline Drive
Plainview, New York 11803

Hydroshield Stain
Robson-Downes Associates, Inc.
Oxford, Maryland 21654

Anti-Graffiti Coating Application – The coating shall be applied after full cure of the color coating. Apply the anti-graffiti coating by brush, roller or airless spray when ambient temperature is between 45 and 90 degrees F, and the surface temperature is between 50 and 100 degrees F. Ensure the surface is clean and dry before applying the anti-graffiti coating. The minimum dry film thickness of the anti-graffiti coating shall be 2.0 mils.

Quality Standards - Manufacturer of simulated stone masonry form liners and custom coloring system shall have at least five years experience making stone masonry molds and color stains to create formed concrete surfaces to match natural stone shapes, surface textures and colors. The Contractor shall schedule

A pre-installation conference with manufacturer representative and the Engineer to assure understanding of simulated stone masonry form liner use, color application, requirements for construction of sample panel(s), and to coordinate the work. The Contractor shall be required to disclose their source of simulated stone masonry manufacturer and final coloration contractor at the Preconstruction Conference.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION

Simulated Stone Form Liner System and Surface Finish

The Contractor shall demonstrate his workmanship by first constructing a sample panel of the simulated stone masonry form liner pattern and coloration. The sample panel shall be constructed on site a minimum of six weeks prior to the construction of the walls. The sample panel shall measure 3' height by 5' length by 8" thick and shall be unreinforced, vertically cast, and of concrete construction to determine the surface texture resulting from the use of form liners. Sample panels shall be cast, finished, and stained until approved by the Engineer. The approved sample panel shall remain on site as the basis for comparison for work constructed on the project. The architectural surface treatment and pattern of the finished work shall achieve the same final effect as demonstrated on the approved sample panel. Upon completion of all work, the panel shall be removed from the site.

The simulated stone form liners are to be capable of withstanding anticipated concrete pour pressures without leakage or without causing physical or visual defects. The

simulated stone form liners are to be removable without causing concrete surface deterioration or weakness in the substrate. Form release agents, form stripping methods, patching materials, as well as related construction are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or as directed by the Engineer.

Linear butt joints shall be carefully blended into the approved pattern and finished off the final concrete surface. No visible vertical or horizontal seams or conspicuous form marks created by butt joining will be permitted.

The Contractor shall submit the type of form ties to be used in this construction to the Engineer for approval prior to use. Form tie holes shall be finished in accordance with standard concreting practices and shall be acceptable to the Engineer. All patching material shall exactly match the color and appearance of the poured concrete surface.

Concrete surfaces shall be clean, free of laitance, dirt, dust, grease, efflorescence, paint, or other foreign material, following manufacturer's specifications for surface preparation prior to application of color stain. The surface area shall also be free of blemishes, discolorations, surface voids, and unnatural form marks. The Contractor is advised that sandblasting will not be allowed for cleaning concrete surfaces. Pressure washing for removal of laitance shall be used.

If required on the plans, the Contractor shall provide a Color Application Artist who is trained in the special techniques to achieve realistic surface appearances, if requested by the Engineer. To avoid contaminating or damaging the wall surfaces, color stain application shall be scheduled when all concrete work is completed, the concrete has cured a minimum of 28 days, the surface has been determined to be acceptable for coloring, and after adjacent earthwork is complete. The Contractor is to coordinate coloring applications without interference from other work. The Contractor is required to apply coloring to an appropriate test area of 50 square feet and as designated by the Engineer, which will serve as a quality standard for the remaining surface to be colored. Upon approval of the test area by the Engineer, the remaining surfaces may be colored. Stains shall be applied when ambient air temperatures are in accordance with manufacturer's specifications or as directed by the Engineer. The number of coats of stain applied shall be in accordance with manufacturer's specifications or as directed by the Engineer. Treated surfaces located adjacent to exposed soil or pavement shall be temporarily covered to prevent dirt or soil splatter from rain.

Following the completion of all work, repairs of any damage made by other construction operations shall be made to the form lined and colored surfaces as directed by the Engineer.

Experience and Qualifications - The Contractor shall have a minimum of three consecutive years of experience in architectural concrete surface treatment construction on similar types of projects. The Contractor shall furnish to the Engineer 5 references who were responsible for supervision of similar projects and will testify to the successful completion of these projects. Include name, address, telephone number, and specific type of application.

5.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Architectural concrete surface treatment as described in this Special Provision will be paid for at the contract unit price bid for “Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment”. The payment quantity will be equal to the final installed wall face quantity. Payment will include the furnishing and use of all form liners, the construction, finishing, staining, anti-graffiti coating and removal of all sample panels, and all equipment, materials, labor, and incidentals necessary to complete the work in conformance with the Contract Documents.

Payment will be made under:

Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment.....Square Feet



DocuSigned by:
Shane C. Clark
1F4E87E6D6AD4EA...
6/26/2019

GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STABILIZATION:**(SPECIAL)****Description**

Supply and install geotextile for pavement stabilization in accordance with the contract. Geotextile for pavement stabilization may be required above chemically stabilized subgrades or below Class IV subgrade stabilization to prevent pavement cracking at locations shown in the plans and as directed. Define “subbase” as the portion of the roadbed below the Class IV subgrade stabilization.

Materials

Refer to Division 10 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geotextiles	1056
Select Material, Class IV	1016

Use Class IV select material for Class IV subgrade stabilization. Provide Type 5 geotextile for geotextile for pavement stabilization that meets the following tensile strength requirements in the machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD):

GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STABILIZATION REQUIREMENTS		
Tensile Strength	Requirement (MARV^A)	Test Method
Tensile Strength @ 5% Strain (MD & CD ^A)	1,900 lb/ft	ASTM D4595
Ultimate Tensile Strength (MD & CD ^A)	4,800 lb/ft	ASTM D4595

A. MD, CD and MARV per Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Construction Methods

Geotextile for pavement stabilization may be required at locations shown in the plans and other locations as directed. For locations with ABC on chemically stabilized subgrades, use of geotextile for pavement stabilization will be based on sampling and testing for chemical stabilization. **For all other locations, notify the Engineer when the embankment is completed to within 12 inches of subgrade elevation and allow 15 days for the Engineer to determine if geotextile for pavement stabilization is required.**

Before placing geotextile for pavement stabilization below Class IV subgrade stabilization, proof roll subbases in accordance with Section 260 of the *Standard Specifications*. Place geotextile for pavement stabilization above chemically stabilized subgrades or below Class IV subgrade stabilization as shown in the plans. Pull geotextiles taut so they are in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Install geotextile for pavement stabilization perpendicular to the survey or lane line in the MD and adjacent to each other in the CD as shown in the plans. Continuous geotextiles are required in the MD, i.e., do not splice or overlap geotextiles so seams are parallel to the survey or lane line. Completely cover stabilized subgrades or subbases with geotextile for pavement stabilization. Overlapping geotextiles in the CD is permitted but not required. Overlap geotextiles in the direction that aggregate will be placed to prevent lifting the edge of the top geotextile. Hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed.

Do not damage geotextile for pavement stabilization when placing ABC or Class IV subgrade stabilization. Place and compact ABC in accordance with the contract and *Standard*

Specifications. Place, compact and maintain Class IV subgrade stabilization in accordance with Article 505-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for a Type 2 aggregate subgrade. Do not operate heavy equipment on geotextiles any more than necessary to construct base courses or subgrades. Replace any damaged geotextiles to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization will be measured and paid in square yards. Geotextiles will be measured along subgrades or subbases as the square yards of exposed geotextiles installed before placing ABC or Class IV subgrade stabilization. No measurement will be made for overlapping geotextiles. The contract unit price for *Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization* will be full compensation for providing, transporting and installing geotextiles, wire staples and anchor pins.

Class IV Subgrade Stabilization will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 505-4 of the *Standard Specifications*. No measurement will be made for any undercut excavation of fill materials from subbases.

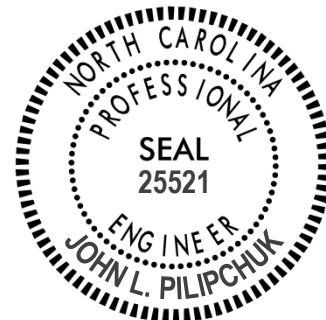
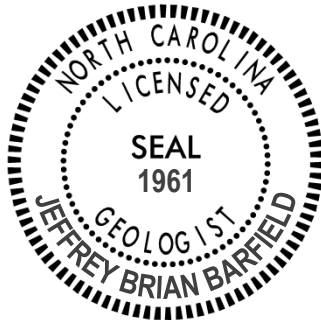
Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Geotextile for Pavement Stabilization

Pay Unit

Square Yard



DocuSigned by:

Jeffrey Brian Barfield 6/26/2019

09B33DEB8C824D1...

DocuSigned by:

John Pilipchuk

6/26/2019

52C44B94B8BE444...

ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE SURFACE TREATMENT**(SPECIAL)****1.0 GENERAL**

The work covered by this special provision consists of constructing textured surfaces on formed reinforced concrete surfaces as indicated on the Plans and in this Special Provision. The wall faces will be textured and the copings will be smooth, natural concrete, or as directed by the Engineer. The Contractor shall furnish all materials, labor, equipment, and incidentals necessary for the construction of architectural concrete surface treatment using simulated stone masonry form liners (molds) and a compatible concrete coloring system.

The architectural concrete surface treatment should match the appearance (stone size and shape, stone color, and stone texture, pattern, and relief) of natural stone and rock, in the project vicinity, or as directed by the Engineer. Grout pattern joints (mortar joints) and bed thickness should re-create the appearance and color of natural stone on the cast-in-place and/or precast concrete panels for the Soil Nail Retaining Wall No. -Y- as indicated in the Plans, this Special Provision, or as directed by the Engineer.

2.0 SUBMITTALS

Shop Drawings - The Contractor shall submit for review and acceptance, plan and elevation views and details showing overall simulated stone pattern, joint locations, form tie locations, and end, edge or other special conditions. The drawings should include typical cross sections of applicable surfaces, joints, corners, stone relief, stone size, pitch/working line, mortar joint and bed depths. If necessary, the Contractor shall revise the shop drawings until the proposed form liner patterns and arrangement have been accepted by the Engineer. Shop drawings should be of sufficient scale to show the detail of all stone and joints patterns. The size of the sheets used for the shop drawings shall be 22" x 34".

The form liner shall be patterned such that long continuous horizontal or vertical lines do not occur on the finished exposed surface. The line pattern shall be random in nature and shall conceal construction joint lines. Special attention should be given to details for wrapping form liners around corners.

Shop drawings shall be reviewed and accepted prior to fabrication of form liners.

Sample Panels – After the shop drawings have been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer, the Contractor shall construct 24" x 24" transportable sample panel(s) at the project site. The materials used in construction of the sample panel(s) shall comply with section 420 of the Standard Specifications. The sample panel(s) shall be constructed using approved form liners. Sample panels will be required for each different form liner pattern that is to be used on the project. Any sample panel that is not accepted by the Engineer is to be removed from the project site and a new sample panel produced at no additional expense to the Department.

Architectural surface treatments and patterns of the finished work shall achieve the same final effect as demonstrated on the accepted sample panel(s). Upon acceptance by the

Engineer, the sample panel(s) shall be used as the quality standard for the project. After the acceptance of the completed structure, the Contractor shall dispose of the sample panels as directed by the Engineer.

3.0 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Form Liner – The form liner shall be a high quality, re-useable product manufactured of high strength urethane rubber or other approved material which attaches easily to the form work system, and shall not compress more than $\frac{1}{4}$ " when concrete is poured at a rate of 10 vertical feet (3 vertical meters) per hour. The form liners shall be removable without causing deterioration of the surface or underlying concrete.

The Contractor is required to use the same source of form liner for all required elements. The architectural concrete surface treatment should match the appearance (stone size and shape, stone texture, pattern and relief) of cut and mortared natural stone to resemble a pattern similar to the #439 Sierra Drystack by Sika Corporation, as shown below.



All texture is to be in addition to the nominal thickness of each element within tolerances. Maximum relief of the textured surface shall be 1 1/2 inch or less.

The form liners are to be patterned as referenced above and as directed by the Engineer.

The Contractor may choose one of the following manufactures to supply the stone-textured surface treatment as specified above. One form liner pattern will be used on this project.

- Sika Corporation <http://www.sika.com>
- Architectural Polymers <http://www.apformliner.com/>
- Custom Rock <http://www.customrock.com/>
- Fitzgerald <http://www.formliners.com/>
- Scott System <http://www.scottsystem.com/>
- Spec Formliners <http://www.specformliners.com/>
- U.S. Formliner <http://www.usformliner.com/>
- American Formliners <http://www.americanformliners.com/>

Form Release Agent – Form release agent shall be a nonstaining petroleum distillate free from water, asphaltic, and other insoluble residue, or an equivalent product. Form release agents shall be compatible with the color system applied and any special surface finish.

Form Ties - Form ties shall be set back a minimum of 2” from the finished concrete surface. The ties shall be designed so that all material in the device to a depth of at least 2” back of the concrete face (bottom of simulated mortar groove) can be disengaged and removed without spalling or damaging the concrete. The Contractor shall submit the type of form ties to the Engineer for approval.

Concrete Color – The final coloration of the wall is to consist of a two tone mix of Federal Colors #36373 and 36173 and shall be placed in such a way as to appear as natural stone. Stain the sample panel using the proposed colors and once approved by the Engineer they can be used on the wall.

Color stains shall be a special penetrating stain mix as provided by the manufacturer and shall be in multiple colors of gray, brown, white, and black to achieve a full, natural color variation in the finished surface. The stain shall create a surface finish that is breathable (allowing water vapor transmission), and that resists deterioration from water, acid, alkali, fungi, sunlight, or weathering. Stain mix shall meet the requirements for mildew resistance of Federal Test Method Standard 144, Method 6271, and requirements for weathering resistance of 1.000 hours accelerated exposure measures by Weatherometer in accordance with ASTM G 26. Color samples must be submitted for approval. Concrete stains shall be supplied by one of the following or as approved by the Engineer.

Sherwin Williams
H & C Shield Plus
101 Prospect Ave., NW
Cleveland, OH 44115

Canyon Tone Stain
United Coatings
E 1901 Cataldo
Green Acres, Washington 90016

Cementrate Acrylic Stain
Fosroc, Inc.
55 Skyline Drive
Plainview, New York 11803

Hydroshield Stain
Robson-Downes Associates, Inc.
Oxford, Maryland 21654

Anti-Graffiti Coating Application – The coating shall be applied after full cure of the color coating. Apply the anti-graffiti coating by brush, roller or airless spray when ambient temperature is between 45 and 90 degrees F, and the surface temperature is between 50 and 100 degrees F. Ensure the surface is clean and dry before applying the anti-graffiti coating. The minimum dry film thickness of the anti-graffiti coating shall be 2.0 mils.

Quality Standards - Manufacturer of simulated stone masonry form liners and custom coloring system shall have at least five years experience making stone masonry molds and color stains to create formed concrete surfaces to match natural stone shapes, surface textures and colors. The Contractor shall schedule

A pre-installation conference with manufacturer representative and the Engineer to assure understanding of simulated stone masonry form liner use, color application, requirements for construction of sample panel(s), and to coordinate the work. The Contractor shall be required to disclose their source of simulated stone masonry manufacturer and final coloration contractor at the Preconstruction Conference.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION

Simulated Stone Form Liner System and Surface Finish

The Contractor shall demonstrate his workmanship by first constructing a sample panel of the simulated stone masonry form liner pattern and coloration. The sample panel shall be constructed on site a minimum of six weeks prior to the construction of the walls. The sample panel shall measure 3' height by 5' length by 8" thick and shall be unreinforced, vertically cast, and of concrete construction to determine the surface texture resulting from the use of form liners. Sample panels shall be cast, finished, and stained until approved by the Engineer. The approved sample panel shall remain on site as the basis for comparison for work constructed on the project. The architectural surface treatment and pattern of the finished work shall achieve the same final effect as demonstrated on the approved sample panel. Upon completion of all work, the panel shall be removed from the site.

The simulated stone form liners are to be capable of withstanding anticipated concrete pour pressures without leakage or without causing physical or visual defects. The

simulated stone form liners are to be removable without causing concrete surface deterioration or weakness in the substrate. Form release agents, form stripping methods, patching materials, as well as related construction are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or as directed by the Engineer.

Linear butt joints shall be carefully blended into the approved pattern and finished off the final concrete surface. No visible vertical or horizontal seams or conspicuous form marks created by butt joining will be permitted.

The Contractor shall submit the type of form ties to be used in this construction to the Engineer for approval prior to use. Form tie holes shall be finished in accordance with standard concreting practices and shall be acceptable to the Engineer. All patching material shall exactly match the color and appearance of the poured concrete surface.

Concrete surfaces shall be clean, free of laitance, dirt, dust, grease, efflorescence, paint, or other foreign material, following manufacturer's specifications for surface preparation prior to application of color stain. The surface area shall also be free of blemishes, discolorations, surface voids, and unnatural form marks. The Contractor is advised that sandblasting will not be allowed for cleaning concrete surfaces. Pressure washing for removal of laitance shall be used.

If required on the plans, the Contractor shall provide a Color Application Artist who is trained in the special techniques to achieve realistic surface appearances, if requested by the Engineer. To avoid contaminating or damaging the wall surfaces, color stain application shall be scheduled when all concrete work is completed, the concrete has cured a minimum of 28 days, the surface has been determined to be acceptable for coloring, and after adjacent earthwork is complete. The Contractor is to coordinate coloring applications without interference from other work. The Contractor is required to apply coloring to an appropriate test area of 50 square feet and as designated by the Engineer, which will serve as a quality standard for the remaining surface to be colored. Upon approval of the test area by the Engineer, the remaining surfaces may be colored. Stains shall be applied when ambient air temperatures are in accordance with manufacturer's specifications or as directed by the Engineer. The number of coats of stain applied shall be in accordance with manufacturer's specifications or as directed by the Engineer. Treated surfaces located adjacent to exposed soil or pavement shall be temporarily covered to prevent dirt or soil splatter from rain.

Following the completion of all work, repairs of any damage made by other construction operations shall be made to the form lined and colored surfaces as directed by the Engineer.

Experience and Qualifications - The Contractor shall have a minimum of three consecutive years of experience in architectural concrete surface treatment construction on similar types of projects. The Contractor shall furnish to the Engineer 5 references who were responsible for supervision of similar projects and will testify to the successful completion of these projects. Include name, address, telephone number, and specific type of application.

5.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Architectural concrete surface treatment as described in this Special Provision will be paid for at the contract unit price bid for “Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment”. The payment quantity will be equal to the final installed wall face quantity. Payment will include the furnishing and use of all form liners, the construction, finishing, staining, anti-graffiti coating and removal of all sample panels, and all equipment, materials, labor, and incidentals necessary to complete the work in conformance with the Contract Documents.

Payment will be made under:

Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment.....Square Feet



DocuSigned by:
Shane C. Clark
1F4E87E6D6AD4EA...
6/26/2019

SOIL NAIL RETAINING WALLS**(SPECIAL)****1.0 GENERAL**

Construct soil nail retaining walls consisting of soil nails spaced at a regular pattern and connected to a CIP reinforced concrete face. A soil nail consists of a steel bar grouted in a drilled hole inclined at an angle below horizontal. Use shotcrete for temporary support of excavations during construction. Design and construct soil nail retaining walls based on actual elevations and wall dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Contractor to construct soil nail retaining walls. Define “soil nail wall” as a soil nail retaining wall and “Soil Nail Wall Contractor” as the Anchored Wall Contractor installing soil nails and applying shotcrete. Define “nail” as a soil nail and “concrete facing” as a CIP reinforced concrete face.

Soil nail wall AASHTO design references and soil nail AASHTO material and testing requirements referred to in this provision are included in the 8th Edition of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and the 4th Edition of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*, respectively as approved AASHTO ballot items available from: connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Geotech_Requirements_References.aspx

2.0 MATERIALS

Refer to the *Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Geosynthetics	1056
Joint Materials	1028
Masonry	1040
Portland Cement	1024-1
Portland Cement Concrete, Class A	1000
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Select Material, Class VI	1016
Shotcrete	1002
Shoulder Drain Materials	816-2
Steel Plates	1072-2
Water	1024-4
Welded Stud Shear Connectors	1072-6

Provide Class VI select material (standard size No. 57 stone) for leveling pads. Use neat cement grout that only contains cement and water with a water cement ratio of 0.4 to 0.5 which is approximately 5.5 gallons of water per 94 lb of Portland cement. Provide grout with a compressive strength at 3 and 28 days of at least 1,500 psi and 4,000 psi, respectively.

Provide soil nails consisting of grouted steel bars and nail head assemblies. Use deformed steel bars that meet AASHTO M 275 or M 31, Grade 60, 75 or 80. Splice bars in accordance with Article 1070-9 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Provide epoxy coated bars that meet Article 1070-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Provide

Class A corrosion protection (encapsulated bar) or Class B corrosion protection (epoxy coated bar only, no galvanized bar) for soil nails in accordance with Article X.3.3 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*. Use centralizers that meet Article X.3.4 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications.

Provide nail head assemblies consisting of nuts, washers and bearing plates with welded stud shear connectors. Use steel plates for bearing plates and steel washers and hex nuts recommended by the Soil Nail Manufacturer.

Provide Type 3 material certifications for soil nail materials in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications*. Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store soil nail wall materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Do not crack, fracture or otherwise damage grout inside sheaths of encapsulated nails. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

3.0 PRECONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. Soil Nail Wall Surveys

The Retaining Wall Plans show a plan view, typical sections, details, notes and an elevation or profile view (wall envelope) for each soil nail wall. Before beginning soil nail wall design, survey existing ground elevations shown in the plans and other elevations in the vicinity of soil nail wall locations as needed. For proposed slopes above or below soil nail walls, survey existing ground elevations to at least 10 ft beyond slope stake points. Based on these elevations, finished grades and actual soil nail wall dimensions and details, submit revised wall envelopes for acceptance. Use accepted wall envelopes for design.

B. Soil Nail Wall Designs

For soil nail wall designs, submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations at least 30 days before the preconstruction meeting. Do not begin soil nail wall construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Use a prequalified Anchored Wall Design Consultant to design soil nail walls. Provide designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for the Anchored Wall Design Consultant.

Design soil nail walls in accordance with the plans and the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* unless otherwise required. Design soil nail walls for seismic if walls are located in seismic zone 2 based on Figure 2-1 of the *Structure Design Manual*.

Design soil nails that meet the following unless otherwise approved:

1. Horizontal and vertical spacing of at least 3 ft,
2. Inclination of at least 12° below horizontal,

3. Clearance between ends of bars and drill holes of at least 6",
4. Grout cover between epoxy coated bars and drill hole walls of at least 1" or in accordance with Article 11.12.8 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications for encapsulated bars and
5. Diameter of 6" to 10".

Four inch diameter soil nails may be approved for nails in rock at the discretion of the Engineer. Do not extend nails beyond right-of-way or easement limits. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail, fence or handrail posts, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with nails, maintain a clearance of at least 6" between obstructions and nails.

When noted in the plans, design soil nail walls for a live load (traffic) surcharge of 250 psf. For steel beam guardrail with 8 ft posts above soil nail walls, analyze walls for a nominal horizontal load of 300 lb/ft of wall with a load factor of 1.0. For concrete barrier rail above soil nail walls, analyze walls for a nominal horizontal load of 500 lb/ft of wall with a load factor of 1.0.

Provide wall drainage systems consisting of geocomposite sheet drains, an aggregate shoulder drain and outlet components. Place sheet drains with a horizontal spacing of no more than 10 ft and center drains between adjacent nails. Attach sheet drains to excavation faces and connect drains to aggregate leveling pads. Locate a continuous aggregate shoulder drain along the base of concrete facing in front of leveling pads. Provide aggregate shoulder drains and outlet components in accordance with Roadway Standard Drawing No. 816.02.

Use No. 57 stone for aggregate leveling pads. Use 6" thick leveling pads beneath concrete facing. Unless required otherwise in the plans, embed top of leveling pads at least 12" below bottom of walls shown in the plans.

Design shotcrete and concrete facing in accordance with the plans and Article 11.12.6.2 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*. Use shotcrete and concrete facing with the dimensions shown in the plans and attach facing to nail heads with welded stud shear connectors. When concrete barrier rail is required above soil nail walls, use concrete barrier rail with moment slab as shown in the plans.

Submit working drawings and design calculations including unit grout/ground bond strengths for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, wall profiles with nail locations including known test nail locations, typical sections and details of nails, drainage, shotcrete, leveling pads and concrete facing. If necessary, include details on working drawings for concrete barrier rail with moment slab and obstructions extending through walls or interfering with nails, barriers or moment slabs. Submit design calculations for each wall section with different surcharge loads, geometry or material parameters. Include analysis of temporary conditions in design calculations. At least one analysis is required for each wall section with different nail lengths. Analyze internal and compound stability with a

computer software program that uses limit equilibrium methods and submit all PDF output files from the program with the design calculations. See Article C11.12.2 of the AASHTO LRFD specifications for determining the maximum soil nail force, $T_{\max sn}$.

When designing soil nail walls with computer software Snail manufactured by the California Department of Transportation (CALTRANS), use Snail, version 2.2.0 or later, to calculate factors of safety and $T_{\max sn}$ values in accordance with the following:

1. Allowable Stress Design for Analysis Method,
2. Perform Below Toe Search option selected when any soil layer has a friction angle less than 30° and
3. Default value of 0.33 for Interface Friction Reduction Factor.

When designing soil nail walls with computer software other than Snail, use bi-linear (or tri-linear, as applicable) search surfaces intended to reproduce Snail results. Factors of safety and $T_{\max sn}$ values are acceptable if they are within 5% of the factors of safety and $T_{\max sn}$ values calculated by the Engineer using the computer software Slide2 manufactured by Rocscience, Inc.

C. Soil Nail Wall Construction Plan

Submit a PDF file of a soil nail wall construction plan at least 30 days before the preconstruction meeting. Do not begin soil nail wall construction until the construction plan submittal is accepted. Provide detailed project specific information in the soil nail wall construction plan that includes the following:

1. Overall description and sequence of soil nail wall construction;
2. List and sizes of excavation equipment, drill rigs and tools, tremies and grouting equipment;
3. Procedures for excavations, drilling and grouting, soil nail and wall drainage system installation and facing construction;
4. Details of shotcrete equipment and application including mix process, test panels, thickness gauges and shooting methods;
5. Shotcrete nozzleman with certification in accordance with Article 1002-1 of the *Standard Specifications*;
6. Plan and methods for nail testing with calibration certificates dated within 90 days of the submittal date;
7. Examples of construction and test nail records to be used in accordance with Sections 4.0(F) and 5.0(E) of this provision;
8. Grout mix design with acceptable ranges for grout flow and density;
9. Shotcrete mix design that meets Section 1002 of the *Standard Specifications*; and
10. Other information shown in the plans or requested by the Engineer.

If alternate construction procedures are proposed or necessary, a revised soil nail wall construction plan submittal may be required. If the work deviates from the accepted submittal without prior approval, the Engineer may suspend soil nail wall construction until a revised plan is accepted.

D. Preconstruction Meeting

Before starting soil nail wall construction, hold a preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction, inspection and testing of the soil nail walls. If this meeting occurs before all soil nail wall submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of soil nail walls without accepted submittals. The Resident or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and Soil Nail Wall Contractor Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of soil nail walls. Direct run off away from soil nail walls and areas above and behind walls.

Notify the Engineer before blasting in the vicinity of soil nail walls. Perform blasting in accordance with the contract. Unless required otherwise in the plans, install foundations located behind soil nail walls before beginning wall construction.

Install soil nail walls in accordance with the accepted submittals and as directed. Do not excavate behind soil nail walls. If overexcavation occurs, repair walls with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan may be required.

A. Excavation

Excavate for soil nail walls from the top down in accordance with the accepted submittals. Excavate in staged horizontal lifts with no negative batter (excavation face leaning forward). Excavate lifts in accordance with the following:

1. Heights not to exceed vertical nail spacing,
2. Bottom of lifts no more than 3 ft below nail locations for current lift and
3. Horizontal and vertical alignment within 2" of location shown in the accepted submittals.

Remove any cobbles, boulders, rubble or debris that will protrude more than 2" into the required shotcrete thickness. Rocky ground such as colluvium, boulder fills and weathered rock may be difficult to excavate without leaving voids.

Apply shotcrete to excavation faces within 24 hours of excavating each lift unless otherwise approved. Shotcreting may be delayed if it can be demonstrated that delays will not adversely affect excavation stability. If excavation faces will be exposed for more than 24 hours, use polyethylene sheets anchored at top and bottom of lifts to protect

excavation faces from changes in moisture content.

If an excavation becomes unstable at any time, suspend soil nail wall construction and temporarily stabilize the excavation by immediately placing an earth berm up against the unstable excavation face. When this occurs, repair walls with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan may be required.

Do not excavate the next lift until nail installations and testing and shotcrete application for the current lift are accepted and grout and shotcrete for the current lift have cured at least 3 days and 1 day, respectively.

B. Soil Nails

Install soil nails in the same way as acceptable test nails. Drill and grout nails the same day and do not leave drill holes open overnight.

Control drilling and grouting to prevent excessive ground movements, damaging structures and pavements or fracturing rock and soil formations. If ground heave or subsidence occurs, suspend soil nail wall construction and take corrective action to minimize movement. If property damage occurs, make repairs with an approved method and a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan may be required.

1. Drilling

Use drill rigs of the sizes necessary to install soil nails and with sufficient capacity to drill through whatever materials are encountered. Drill straight and clean holes with the dimensions and inclination shown in the accepted submittals. Drill holes within 6" of locations and 2° of inclination shown in the accepted submittals unless otherwise approved.

Stabilize drill holes with temporary casings if unstable, caving or sloughing material is anticipated or encountered. Do not use drilling fluids to stabilize drill holes or remove cuttings.

2. Steel Bars

Center steel bars in drill holes with centralizers. Securely attach centralizers along bars at no more than 8 ft centers. Attach uppermost and lowermost centralizers 18" from excavation faces and ends of holes.

Do not insert steel bars into drill holes until hole locations, dimensions, inclination and cleanliness are approved. Do not vibrate, drive or otherwise force bars into holes. If a steel bar cannot be completely and easily inserted into a drill hole, remove the bar and clean or redrill the hole.

3. Grouting

Mix and place grout in accordance with Subarticles 1003-5, 1003-6 and 1003-7 of

the *Standard Specifications*. Remove oil, rust inhibitors, residual drilling fluids and similar foreign materials from holding tanks/hoppers, stirring devices, pumps, lines, tremie pipes and any other equipment in contact with grout before use. Measure grout temperature, density and flow during grouting with at least the same frequency grout cubes are made for compressive strength. Perform density and flow field tests in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with American National Standards Institute/American Petroleum Institute Recommended Practice 13B-1 (Section 4, Mud Balance) and ASTM C939 (Flow Cone), respectively.

Inject grout at the lowest point of drill holes through tremies, e.g., grout tubes, casings, hollow-stem augers or drill rods, in one continuous operation. Fill drill holes progressively from ends of holes to excavation faces and withdraw tremies at a slow even rate as holes are filled to prevent voids in grout. Extend tremies into grout at least 5 ft at all times except when grout is initially placed in holes.

Provide grout free of segregation, intrusions, contamination, structural damage or inadequate consolidation (honeycombing). Cold joints in grout are not allowed except for test nails. Remove any temporary casings as grout is placed and record grout volume for each drill hole.

4. Nail Heads

Weld stud shear connectors to bearing plates of nails in accordance with Article 1072-6 of the *Standard Specifications*. Install nail head assemblies after shotcreting. Before shotcrete reaches initial set, seat bearing plates and tighten nuts so plates contact shotcrete uniformly. If uniform contact is not possible, install nail head assemblies on mortar pads so nail heads are evenly loaded.

C. Wall Drainage Systems

Install wall drainage systems as shown in the accepted submittals and in accordance with Section 816 of the *Standard Specifications*. Before installing shotcrete reinforcement, place geocomposite sheet drains with the geotextile side against excavation faces. For highly irregular faces and at the discretion of the Engineer, sheet drains may be placed after shotcreting over weep holes through the shotcrete. Hold sheet drains in place with anchor pins so drains are in continuous contact with surfaces to which they are attached and allow for full flow the entire height of soil nail walls. Discontinuous sheet drains are not allowed. If splices are needed, overlap sheet drains at least 12" so flow is not impeded. Connect sheet drains to aggregate leveling pads by embedding drain ends at least 4" into No. 57 stone.

D. Shotcrete

Clean ungrouted zones of drill holes and excavation faces of loose materials, mud, rebound and other foreign material. Moisten surfaces to receive shotcrete. Install shotcrete reinforcement in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Secure reinforcing steel so shooting does not displace or vibrate reinforcement. Install approved thickness gauges on 5 ft centers in the horizontal and vertical directions to measure

shotcrete thickness.

Apply shotcrete in accordance with the contract, accepted submittals and Subarticle 1002-3(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use approved shotcrete nozzlemen who made satisfactory preconstruction test panels to apply shotcrete. Direct shotcrete at right angles to excavation faces except when shooting around reinforcing steel. Rotate nozzle steadily in small circular patterns and apply shotcrete from bottom of lifts up.

Make shotcrete surfaces uniform and free of sloughing or sagging. Completely fill ungrouted zones of drill holes and any other voids with shotcrete. Taper construction joints to a thin edge over a horizontal distance of at least the shotcrete thickness. Wet joint surfaces before shooting adjacent sections.

Repair surface defects as soon as possible after shooting. Remove any shotcrete which lacks uniformity, exhibits segregation, honeycombing or lamination or contains any voids or sand pockets and replace with fresh shotcrete to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Protect shotcrete from freezing and rain until shotcrete reaches initial set.

E. Leveling Pads and Concrete Facing

Construct aggregate leveling pads at elevations and with dimensions shown in the accepted submittals. Compact leveling pads with a vibratory compactor to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Construct concrete facing in accordance with the accepted submittals and Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Do not remove forms until concrete attains a compressive strength of at least 2,400 psi. Unless required otherwise in the plans, provide a Class 2 surface finish for concrete facing that meets Subarticle 420-17(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. Construct concrete facing joints at a spacing of 10 ft to 12 ft unless required otherwise in the plans. Make 1/2" thick expansion joints that meet Article 420-10 of the *Standard Specifications* for every third joint and 1/2" deep grooved contraction or sawed joints that meet Subarticle 825-10(B) or 825-10(E) respectively for the remaining joints. Stop reinforcing steel for concrete facing 2" on either side of expansion joints.

If a brick veneer is required, construct brick masonry in accordance with Section 830 of the *Standard Specifications*. Anchor brick veneers to soil nail walls in accordance with Subarticle 453-4 of the *Standard Specifications*. Seal joints above and behind soil nail walls between concrete facing and slope protection with silicone sealant.

F. Construction Records

Provide 2 copies of soil nail wall construction records within 24 hours of completing each lift. Include the following in construction records:

1. Names of Soil Nail Wall Contractor, Superintendent, Nozzleman, Drill Rig Operator, Project Manager and Design Engineer;
2. Wall description, county, Department's contract, TIP and WBS element number;

3. Wall station and number and lift location, dimensions, elevations and description;
4. Nail locations, dimensions and inclinations, bar types, sizes and grades, corrosion protection and temporary casing information;
5. Date and time drilling begins and ends, steel bars are inserted into drill holes, grout and shotcrete are mixed and arrives on-site and grout placement and shotcrete application begins and ends;
6. Grout volume, temperature, flow and density records;
7. Ground and surface water conditions and elevations if applicable;
8. Weather conditions including air temperature at time of grout placement and shotcrete application; and
9. All other pertinent details related to soil nail wall construction.

After completing each soil nail wall or stage of a wall, provide a PDF file of all corresponding construction records.

5.0 NAIL TESTING

Test soil nails in accordance with the contract and as directed. "Verification tests" are performed on nails not incorporated into soil nail walls, i.e., sacrificial nails and "proof tests" are performed on nails incorporated into walls, i.e., production nails. Define "verification test nail" and "proof test nail" as a nail tested with either a verification or proof test, respectively. Define "test nails" as verification or proof test nails.

Verification tests are typically required for at least one nail per soil type per soil nail wall or 2 nails per wall, whichever is greater. Proof tests are typically required for at least one nail per nail row per soil nail wall or at least 5% of production nails, whichever is greater. More or less test nails may be required depending on subsurface conditions encountered. The Engineer will determine the number and locations of verification and proof tests required. The approximate known test nail locations may be shown in the plans.

Do not test nails until grout and shotcrete attain the required 3-day compressive strength. Do not install any production nails until verification tests are accepted.

A. Test Equipment

Use the following equipment to test nails:

1. Two dial gauges with rigid supports,
2. Hydraulic jack and pressure gauge,
3. Jacking block or reaction frame and
4. Electrical resistance load cell (verification tests only).

Provide dial gauges with enough range and precision to measure the maximum test nail movement to 0.001". Use pressure gauges graduated in 100 psi increments or less.

Submit identification numbers and calibration records for load cells, jacks and pressure gauges with the soil nail wall construction plan. Calibrate each jack and pressure gauge as a unit.

Align test equipment to uniformly and evenly load test nails. Use a jacking block or reaction frame that does not damage or contact shotcrete within 3 ft of nail heads. Place dial gauges opposite each other on either side of test nails and align gauges within 5° of bar inclinations. Set up test equipment so resetting or repositioning equipment during nail testing is not needed.

B. Test Nails

Test nails include both unbonded and bond lengths. Grout only bond lengths before nail testing. Provide unbonded and bond lengths of at least 3 ft and 10 ft, respectively.

Steel bars for production nails may be overstressed under higher test nail loads. If necessary, use larger size or higher grade bars with more capacity for test nails instead of shortening bond lengths to less than the minimum required.

C. Nail Tests

Install verification test nails with the same equipment, installation methods and drill hole diameter and inclination as production nails. Test verification and proof test nails in accordance with the accepted submittals and Articles X.5.5.2 and X.5.5.3, respectively of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*.

D. Test Nail Acceptance

Submit 2 copies of test nail records including load versus movement and time versus creep movement plots within 24 hours of completing each verification or proof test. The Engineer will review the test nail records to determine if test nails are acceptable. Test nail acceptance is based in part on the acceptance criteria in Article X5.5.4 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*.

For proof test nails, maintain stability of unbonded lengths for subsequent grouting. If a proof test nail is accepted but the unbonded length cannot be satisfactorily grouted, do not incorporate the proof test nail into the soil nail wall and add another production nail to replace the test nail.

If the Engineer determines a verification test nail is unacceptable, revise the soil nail design or installation methods. Submit a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan for acceptance and provide acceptable verification test nails with the revised design or installation methods.

If the Engineer determines a proof test nail is unacceptable, either perform additional proof tests on adjacent production nails or revise the soil nail design or installation

methods for the production nails represented by the unacceptable proof test nail as determined by the Engineer. Submit a revised soil nail wall design or construction plan for acceptance, provide an acceptable proof test nail with the revised design or installation methods and install additional production nails for the nails represented by the unacceptable proof test nail.

After completing nail testing for each soil nail wall or stage of a wall, provide a PDF file of all corresponding test nail records.

6.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Soil Nail Retaining Walls will be measured and paid in square feet. Soil nail walls will be measured as the square feet of wall face area with the pay height equal to the difference between top of wall and top of leveling pad elevations. Define “top of wall” as top of concrete facing.

The contract unit price for *Soil Nail Retaining Walls* will be full compensation for providing designs, submittals, labor, tools, equipment and soil nail wall materials, excavating, hauling and removing excavated materials, installing soil nails, grouting, shotcreting and supplying wall drainage systems, leveling pads, concrete facing and any incidentals necessary to construct soil nail walls. The contract unit price for *Soil Nail Retaining Walls* will also be full compensation for brick veneers, if required. No additional payment will be made and no extension of completion date or time will be allowed for repairing property damage, overexcavations or unstable excavations, unacceptable test nails or thicker shotcrete or concrete facing.

The contract unit price for *Soil Nail Retaining Walls* does not include the cost for ditches, fences, handrails, barrier or guardrail associated with soil nail walls as these items will be paid for elsewhere in the contract.

Soil Nail Verification Tests and *Soil Nail Proof Tests* will be measured and paid in units of each. Soil nail testing will be measured as the number of initial verification or proof tests performed. The contract unit prices for *Soil Nail Verification Tests* and *Soil Nail Proof Tests* will be full compensation for initial nail testing. No payment will be made for subsequent nail testing performed on the same or replacement test nails.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Soil Nail Retaining Walls
Soil Nail Verification Tests
Soil Nail Proof Tests

Pay Unit

Square Foot
Each
Each



DocuSigned by:

Shane C. Clark

1F4E87E6D6AD4EA...

6/26/2019

MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH RETAINING WALLS**(1-16-18)****1.0 GENERAL**

Construct mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) retaining walls consisting of steel or geosynthetic reinforcement in the reinforced zone connected to vertical facing elements. Use precast concrete panels for vertical facing elements and coarse aggregate in the reinforced zone unless noted otherwise in the plans. Provide reinforced concrete coping and pile sleeves as required. Design and construct MSE retaining walls based on actual elevations and wall dimensions in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Use a prequalified MSE Wall Installer to construct MSE retaining walls.

Define MSE wall terms as follows:

Geosynthetic or Geogrid Reinforcement – Polyester Type (PET), HDPE or Polypropylene (PP) geogrid reinforcement,

Geogrid – PET, HDPE or PP geogrid,

Reinforcement – Steel or geogrid reinforcement,

Aggregate – Coarse or fine aggregate,

Panel – Precast concrete panel,

Coping – Precast or CIP concrete coping,

MSE Wall – Mechanically stabilized earth retaining wall,

MSE Wall Vendor – Vendor supplying the chosen MSE wall system,

MSE Panel Wall – MSE wall with panels,

MSE Segmental Wall – MSE wall with segmental retaining wall (SRW) units and

Abutment Wall – MSE wall with bridge foundations in any portion of the reinforced zone or an MSE wall connected to an abutment wall (Even if bridge foundations only penetrate a small part of the reinforced zone, the entire MSE wall is considered an abutment wall).

For bridge approach fills behind end bents with MSE abutment walls, design reinforcement connected to end bent caps in accordance with the plans and this provision. Construct Type III Reinforced Bridge Approach Fills in accordance with the *Bridge Approach Fills* provision and Roadway Detail Drawing No. 422D10.

Use an approved MSE wall system in accordance with the plans and any NCDOT restrictions or exceptions for the chosen system. Value engineering proposals for other MSE wall systems will not be considered. Do not use MSE wall systems with an “approved for provisional use” status for abutment walls or MSE walls subject to scour, walls with design heights greater than 35 ft or walls supporting or adjacent to railroads or interstate highways. The list of approved MSE wall systems with approval status is available from:

connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Products.aspx

2.0 MATERIALS

Refer to the *Standard Specifications*.

Item

Aggregate

Section

1014

Corrugated Steel Pipe	1032-3
Epoxy, Type 3A	1081
Geosynthetics	1056
Grout, Type 3	1003
Joint Materials	1028
Portland Cement Concrete, Class A	1000
Precast Retaining Wall Coping	1077
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Retaining Wall Panels	1077
Segmental Retaining Wall Units	1040-4
Select Material, Class V	1016
Shoulder Drain Materials	816-2
Steel Pipe	1036-4(A)

Use galvanized corrugated steel pipe with a zinc coating weight of 2 oz/sf (G200) for pile sleeves. Provide Type 2 geotextile for filtration and separation geotextiles. Use Class A concrete for CIP coping, leveling concrete and pads. Use galvanized steel pipe, threaded rods and nuts for the PET geogrid reinforcement vertical obstruction detail. Provide galvanized Grade 36 anchor rods and Grade A hex nuts that meet AASHTO M 314 for threaded rods and nuts.

Use panels and SRW units from producers approved by the Department and licensed by the MSE Wall Vendor. Provide steel strip connectors embedded in panels fabricated from structural steel that meets the requirements for steel strip reinforcement. Unless required otherwise in the contract, produce panels with a smooth flat final finish that meets Article 1077-11 of the *Standard Specifications*. Accurately locate and secure reinforcement connectors in panels and maintain required concrete cover. Produce panels within 1/4" of the panel dimensions shown in the accepted submittals.

Damaged panels or SRW units with excessive discoloration, chips or cracks as determined by the Engineer will be rejected. Do not damage reinforcement connection devices or mechanisms in handling or storing panels and SRW units.

Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Handle and store geotextiles and geogrids in accordance with Article 1056-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Load, transport, unload and store MSE wall materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Bent, damaged or defective materials will be rejected.

A. Aggregate

Use standard size No. 57, 57M, 67 or 78M that meets Table 1005-1 of the *Standard Specifications* for coarse aggregate and the following for fine aggregate:

1. Standard size No. 1S, 2S, 2MS or 4S that meets Table 1005-2 of the *Standard Specifications* or

2. Gradation that meets Class III, Type 3 select material in accordance with Article 1016-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Fine aggregate is exempt from mortar strength in Subarticle 1014-1(E) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use fine aggregate with a maximum organic content of 1.0%. Provide aggregate with electrochemical properties that meet the following requirements:

AGGREGATE pH REQUIREMENTS		
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	Reinforcement or Connector Material	pH
Coarse or Fine	Steel	5 – 10
Coarse or Fine	PET	5 – 8
Coarse or Fine	Polyolefin (HDPE or Polypropylene)	4.5 – 9

AGGREGATE CHEMICAL REQUIREMENTS (Steel Reinforcement/Connector Materials Only)			
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	Resistivity	Chlorides	Sulfates
Coarse	$\geq 5,000 \Omega \cdot \text{cm}$	$\leq 100 \text{ ppm}$	$\leq 200 \text{ ppm}$
Fine	$\geq 3,000 \Omega \cdot \text{cm}$		

Use aggregate from sources participating in the Department's Aggregate QC/QA Program as described in Section 1006 of the *Standard Specifications*. Sample and test aggregate in accordance with the *Mechanically Stabilized Earth Wall Aggregate Sampling and Testing Procedures*. Electrochemical testing is only required for coarse aggregate from sources in the Coastal Plain as defined by Subarticle 1018-2(B)(1).

B. Reinforcement

Provide steel or geosynthetic reinforcement supplied by the MSE Wall Vendor or a manufacturer approved or licensed by the vendor. Use reinforcement approved for the chosen MSE wall system. The list of approved reinforcement for each MSE wall system is available from the website shown elsewhere in this provision.

1. Steel Reinforcement

Provide Type 1 material certifications in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for steel reinforcement. Use welded wire grid reinforcement ("mesh", "mats" and "ladders") that meet Article 1070-3 of the *Standard Specifications* and steel strip reinforcement ("straps") that meet ASTM A572, A1011 or A463. Use 10 gauge or heavier structural steel Grade 50 or higher for steel strip reinforcement. Galvanize steel reinforcement in accordance with Section 1076 of the *Standard Specifications* or provide aluminized steel strip reinforcement that meet ASTM A463, Type 2-100.

2. Geosynthetic Reinforcement

Use HDPE or PP geogrid for geogrid reinforcement connected to backwalls of end bent caps. Use PET or HDPE geogrid for geogrid reinforcement connected to SRW units and only HDPE geogrid for geogrid reinforcement connected to panels.

Define machine direction (MD) and cross-machine direction (CD) for geogrids per Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications*. Provide Type 1 material certifications and identify geogrid reinforcement in accordance with Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Provide extruded geogrids manufactured from punched and drawn polypropylene sheets for PP geogrids that meet the following:

PP GEOGRID REQUIREMENTS		
Property	Requirement¹	Test Method
Aperture Dimensions ²	1" x 1.2"	N/A
Minimum Rib Thickness ²	0.07" x 0.07"	N/A
Tensile Strength @ 2% Strain ²	580 lb/ft x 690 lb/ft	ASTM D6637, Method A
Tensile Strength @ 5% Strain ²	1,200 lb/ft x 1,370 lb/ft	
Ultimate Tensile Strength ²	1,850 lb/ft x 2,050 lb/ft	
Junction Efficiency ³ (MD)	93%	ASTM D7737
Flexural Rigidity ⁴	2,000,000 mg-cm	ASTM D7748
Aperture Stability Modulus ⁵	0.55 lb-ft/degrees	ASTM D7864
UV Stability (Retained Strength)	100% (after 500 hr of exposure)	ASTM D4355

1. MARV per Article 1056-3 of the *Standard Specifications* except dimensions and thickness are nominal.
2. Requirement for MD x CD.
3. Junction Efficiency (%) = (Average Junction Strength ($X_{j_{ave}}$) / Ultimate Tensile Strength in the MD from ASTM D6637, Method A) × 100.
4. Test specimens two ribs wide, with transverse ribs cut flush with exterior edges of longitudinal ribs, and sufficiently long to enable measurement of the overhang dimension.
5. Applied moment of 17.7 lb-inch (torque increment).

C. Bearing Pads

For MSE panel walls, use bearing pads that meet Section 3.6.1.a of the *FHWA Design and Construction of Mechanically Stabilized Earth Walls and Reinforced Soil Slopes – Volume I* (Publication No. FHWA-NHI-10-024) except durometer hardness for rubber pads may be 60 or 80 ± 5 and density testing for HDPE pads may be in accordance with ASTM D1505 or D792. Provide bearing pads with thicknesses that meet the following:

BEARING PAD THICKNESS	
Facing Area per Panel (A)	Minimum Pad Thickness After Compression (based on 2 times panel weight above pads)

$A \leq 30$ sf	1/2"
$30 \text{ sf} < A \leq 75$ sf	3/4"

D. Miscellaneous Components

Miscellaneous components may include connectors (e.g., anchors, bars, clamps, pins, plates, ties, etc.), fasteners (e.g., bolts, nuts, washers, etc.) and any other MSE wall components not included above. Galvanize steel components in accordance with Section 1076 of the *Standard Specifications*. Provide miscellaneous components approved for the chosen MSE wall system. The list of approved miscellaneous components for each MSE wall system is available from the website shown elsewhere in this provision.

3.0 PRECONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. MSE Wall Surveys

The Retaining Wall Plans show a plan view, typical sections, details, notes and an elevation or profile view (wall envelope) for each MSE wall. Before beginning MSE wall design, survey existing ground elevations shown in the plans and other elevations in the vicinity of MSE wall locations as needed. For proposed slopes above or below MSE walls, survey existing ground elevations to at least 10 ft beyond slope stake points. Based on these elevations, finished grades and actual MSE wall dimensions and details, submit revised wall envelopes for acceptance. Use accepted wall envelopes for design.

B. MSE Wall Designs

For MSE wall designs, submit PDF files of working drawings and design calculations at least 30 days before the preconstruction meeting. Note name and NCDOT ID number of the panel or SRW unit production facility on working drawings. Do not begin MSE wall construction until a design submittal is accepted.

Use a prequalified MSE Segmental Wall Design Consultant to design MSE segmental walls. Provide MSE segmental wall designs sealed by a Design Engineer approved as a Geotechnical Engineer (key person) for the MSE Segmental Wall Design Consultant. Provide MSE panel wall designs sealed by a Design Engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina and employed or contracted by the MSE Wall Vendor.

Design MSE walls in accordance with the plans, *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and any NCDOT restrictions for the chosen MSE wall system unless otherwise required. Design MSE walls for seismic if walls are located in seismic zone 2 based on Figure 2-1 of the *Structure Design Manual*. Connect reinforcement to panels or SRW units with methods or devices approved for the chosen system. Use a uniform reinforcement length throughout the wall height of at least 0.7H with H as shown in the plans or 6 ft, whichever is longer, unless noted otherwise in the plans. Extend the reinforced zone at least 6" beyond end of reinforcement. Do not locate

drains, the reinforced zone or leveling pads outside right-of-way or easement limits.

Use the simplified method for determining maximum reinforcement loads and design parameters approved for the chosen MSE wall system or default values in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications. Design steel components including reinforcement and connectors for the design life noted in the plans and aggregate type in the reinforced zone. If an MSE wall system with geogrid reinforcement includes any steel parts for obstructions, bin walls, connections or other components, design steel exposed to aggregate for the design life noted in the plans and aggregate type in the reinforced zone. Use “loss of galvanizing” metal loss rates for nonaggressive backfill in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD specifications for galvanized and aluminized steel and metal loss rates for carbon steel in accordance with the following:

CARBON STEEL CORROSION RATES	
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	Carbon Steel Loss Rate (after coating depletion)
Coarse	0.47 mil/year
Fine (except abutment walls)	0.58 mil/year
Fine (abutment walls)	0.70 mil/year

For PET or HDPE geogrid reinforcement and geosynthetic connectors, use approved geosynthetic properties for the design life noted in the plans and aggregate type in the reinforced zone. For geogrid reinforcement connected to end bent caps, embed geosynthetic reinforcement or connectors in caps as shown in the plans. For PP geogrid reinforcement connected to end bent caps, use the following design parameters for the aggregate type in the reinforced approach fill.

PP GEOGRID REINFORCEMENT DESIGN PARAMETERS				
Aggregate Type (in reinforced zone)	T_{al} (MD)	F*	α	ρ
Coarse	400 lb/ft	0.70	0.8	32.0°
Fine	428 lb/ft	0.54	0.8	28.35°

Where,

- T_{al} = long-term design strength (LTDS),
 F* = pullout resistance factor,
 α = scale effect correction factor and
 ρ = soil-geogrid friction angle.

When noted in the plans, design MSE walls for a live load (traffic) surcharge of 250 psf in accordance with Figure C11.5.6-3(b) of the AASHTO LRFD specifications. For steel beam guardrail with 8 ft posts or concrete barrier rail above MSE walls, analyze top 2 reinforcement layers for traffic impact loads in accordance with Section 7.2 of the FHWA MSE wall manual shown elsewhere in this provision except use the following for geosynthetic reinforcement rupture:

$$\phi T_{al} R_c \geq T_{max} + (T_I / RF_{CR})$$

Where,

- ϕ = resistance factor for tensile resistance in accordance with Section 7.2.1 of the FHWA MSE wall manual,
- T_{al} = long-term geosynthetic design strength approved for chosen MSE wall system,
- R_c = reinforcement coverage ratio = 1 for continuous geosynthetic reinforcement,
- T_{max} = factored static load in accordance with Section 7.2 of the FHWA MSE wall manual,
- T_i = factored impact load in accordance with Section 7.2 of the FHWA MSE wall manual and
- RF_{CR} = creep reduction factor approved for chosen MSE wall system.

When shown in the plans for abutment walls, use pile sleeves to segregate piles from aggregate in the reinforced zone. If existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail, fence or handrail posts, moment slabs, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with reinforcement, maintain a clearance of at least 3" between obstructions and reinforcement unless otherwise approved. Design reinforcement for obstructions and locate reinforcement layers so all of reinforcement length is within 3" of corresponding connection elevations. Modify PET geogrid reinforcement for obstructions as shown in the plans.

Use 6" thick CIP unreinforced concrete leveling pads beneath panels and SRW units that are continuous at steps and extend at least 6" in front of and behind bottom row of panels or SRW units. Unless required otherwise in the plans, embed top of leveling pads in accordance with the following requirements:

EMBEDMENT REQUIREMENTS		
Front Slope¹ (H:V)	Minimum Embedment Depth² (whichever is greater)	
6:1 or flatter (except abutment walls)	H/20	1 ft for $H \leq 10$ ft 2 ft for $H > 10$ ft
6:1 or flatter (abutment walls)	H/10	2 ft
> 6:1 to < 3:1	H/10	2 ft
3:1 to 2:1	H/7	2 ft

1. Front slope is as shown in the plans.
2. Define "H" as the maximum design height plus embedment per wall with the design height and embedment as shown in the plans.

When noted in the plans, locate a continuous aggregate shoulder drain along the base of the reinforced zone behind the aggregate. Provide wall drainage systems consisting of drains and outlet components in accordance with Roadway Standard Drawing No. 816.02.

For MSE panel walls, cover joints at back of panels with filtration geotextiles at least 12" wide. If the approval of the chosen MSE wall system does not require a minimum

number of bearing pads, provide the number of pads in accordance with the following:

NUMBER OF BEARING PADS		
Facing Area per Panel (A)	Maximum Wall Height Above Horizontal Panel Joint	Minimum Number of Pads per Horizontal Panel Joint
$A \leq 30$ sf	25 ft	2
	35 ft ¹	3
$30 \text{ sf} < A \leq 75$ sf	25 ft	3
	35 ft ¹	4

1. Additional bearing pads per horizontal panel joint may be required for wall heights above joints greater than 35 ft.

For MSE segmental walls, coarse aggregate is required in any SRW unit core spaces and between and behind SRW units for a horizontal distance of at least 18". Separation geotextiles are required between the aggregate and overlying fill or pavement sections except when concrete pavement, full depth asphalt or cement treated base is placed directly on aggregate. When noted in the plans, separation geotextiles are also required at the back of the reinforced zone between the aggregate and backfill or natural ground. Unless required otherwise in the plans, use reinforced concrete coping at top of walls that meets the following requirements:

1. Coping dimensions as shown in the plans,
2. At the Contractor's option, coping that is precast or CIP concrete for MSE panel walls unless CIP coping is required as shown in the plans,
3. CIP concrete coping for MSE segmental walls and
4. At the Contractor's option and when shown in the plans, CIP concrete coping that extends down back of panels or SRW units or connects to panels or SRW units with dowels.

For MSE segmental walls with dowels, attach dowels to top courses of SRW units in accordance with the following:

1. Set dowels in core spaces of SRW units filled with grout instead of coarse aggregate or
2. Embed adhesively anchored dowels in holes of solid SRW units with epoxy.

For MSE panel walls with coping, connect CIP concrete coping or leveling concrete for precast concrete coping to top row of panels with dowels cast into panels. When concrete barrier rail is required above MSE walls, use concrete barrier rail with moment slab as shown in the plans.

Submit working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, wall profiles with foundation pressures, typical sections with reinforcement and

connection details, aggregate locations and types, geotextile locations and details of leveling pads, panels or SRW units, coping, bin walls, slip joints, pile sleeves, etc. If necessary, include details on working drawings for concrete barrier rail with moment slab, reinforcement splices if allowed for the chosen MSE wall system, reinforcement connected to end bent caps, curved MSE walls with tight (short) radii and obstructions extending through walls or interfering with reinforcement, leveling pads, barriers or moment slabs. Submit design calculations for each wall section with different surcharge loads, geometry or material parameters. At least one analysis is required for each wall section with different reinforcement lengths. When designing MSE walls with computer software other than MSEW, use MSEW, version 3.0 with update 14.96 or later, manufactured by ADAMA Engineering, Inc. to verify the design. At least one MSEW analysis is required per 100 ft of wall length with at least one analysis for the wall section with the longest reinforcement. Submit electronic MSEW input files and PDF output files with design calculations.

C. Preconstruction Meeting

Before starting MSE wall construction, hold a preconstruction meeting to discuss the construction and inspection of the MSE walls. If this meeting occurs before all MSE wall submittals have been accepted, additional preconstruction meetings may be required before beginning construction of MSE walls without accepted submittals. The Resident or Bridge Maintenance Engineer, Area Construction Engineer, Geotechnical Operations Engineer, Contractor and MSE Wall Installer Superintendent will attend preconstruction meetings.

4.0 CORROSION MONITORING

Corrosion monitoring is required for MSE walls with steel reinforcement. The Engineer will determine the number of monitoring locations and where to install the instrumentation. Contact M&T before beginning wall construction. M&T will provide the corrosion monitoring instrumentation kits and if necessary, assistance with installation.

5.0 SITE ASSISTANCE

Unless otherwise approved, an MSE Wall Vendor representative is required to assist and guide the MSE Wall Installer on-site for at least 8 hours when the first panels or SRW units and reinforcement layer are placed. If problems are encountered during construction, the Engineer may require the vendor representative to return to the site for a time period determined by the Engineer.

6.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Control drainage during construction in the vicinity of MSE walls. Direct run off away from MSE walls, aggregate and backfill. Contain and maintain aggregate and backfill and protect material from erosion.

Excavate as necessary for MSE walls in accordance with the accepted submittals. If applicable and at the Contractor's option, use temporary shoring for wall construction

instead of temporary slopes to construct MSE walls. Define “temporary shoring for wall construction” as temporary shoring not shown in the plans or required by the Engineer including shoring for OSHA reasons or the Contractor’s convenience.

Unless required otherwise in the plans, install foundations and if required, pile sleeves located in the reinforced zone before placing aggregate or reinforcement. Brace piles in the reinforced zone to maintain alignment when placing and compacting aggregate. Secure piles together with steel members near top of piles. Clamp members to piles instead of welding if bracing is at or below pile cut-off elevations.

Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place leveling pad concrete, aggregate or reinforcement until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Construct CIP concrete leveling pads at elevations and with dimensions shown in the accepted submittals and in accordance with Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Cure leveling pads at least 24 hours before placing panels or SRW units.

Erect and support panels and stack SRW units so the final wall position is as shown in the accepted submittals. Stagger SRW units to create a running bond by centering SRW units over joints in the row below as shown in the accepted submittals. Space bearing pads in horizontal panel joints as shown in the accepted submittals and cover all panel joints with filtration geotextiles as shown in the accepted submittals. Attach filtration geotextiles to back of panels with adhesives, tapes or other approved methods.

Construct MSE walls with the following tolerances:

- A. SRW units are level from front to back and between units when checked with a 4 ft long level,
- B. Vertical joint widths are 1/4" maximum for SRW units and 3/4", $\pm 1/4$ " for panels,
- C. Final wall face is within 3/4" of horizontal and vertical alignment shown in the accepted submittals when measured along a 10 ft straightedge and
- D. Final wall plumbness (batter) is not negative (wall face leaning forward) and within 0.5° of vertical unless otherwise approved.

Place reinforcement at locations and elevations shown in the accepted submittals and within 3" of corresponding connection elevations. Install reinforcement with the direction shown in the accepted submittals. Before placing aggregate, pull geogrid reinforcement taut so it is in tension and free of kinks, folds, wrinkles or creases. Reinforcement may be spliced once per reinforcement length if shown in the accepted submittals. Use reinforcement pieces at least 6 ft long. Contact the Engineer when unanticipated existing or future obstructions such as foundations, guardrail, fence or handrail posts, pavements, pipes, inlets or utilities will interfere with reinforcement. To avoid obstructions, deflect, skew or modify reinforcement as shown in the accepted submittals.

Place aggregate in the reinforced zone in 8" to 10" thick lifts. Compact fine aggregate in accordance with Subarticle 235-3(C) of the *Standard Specifications*. Use only hand

operated compaction equipment to compact aggregate within 3 ft of panels or SRW units. At a distance greater than 3 ft, compact aggregate with at least 4 passes of an 8 ton to 10 ton vibratory roller in a direction parallel to the wall face. Smooth wheeled or rubber tired rollers are also acceptable for compacting aggregate. Do not use sheepsfoot, grid rollers or other types of compaction equipment with feet. Do not displace or damage reinforcement when placing and compacting aggregate. End dumping directly on geogrids is not permitted. Do not operate heavy equipment on reinforcement until it is covered with at least 8" of aggregate. Replace any damaged reinforcement to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Backfill for MSE walls outside the reinforced zone in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *Standard Specifications*. If a drain is required, install wall drainage systems as shown in the accepted submittals and in accordance with Section 816 of the *Standard Specifications*. If pile sleeves are required, fill sleeves with loose uncompacted sand before constructing end bent caps.

Install dowels as necessary for SRW units and place and construct coping and leveling concrete as shown in the accepted submittals. Construct leveling concrete in accordance with Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Construct CIP concrete coping in accordance with Subarticle 452-4(B) of the *Standard Specifications*. When single faced precast concrete barrier is required in front of and against MSE walls, stop coping just above barrier so coping does not interfere with placing barrier up against wall faces. If the gap between a single faced barrier and wall face is wider than 2", fill gap with Class V select material (standard size No. 78M stone). Otherwise, fill gap with backer rod and seal joint between barrier and MSE wall with silicone sealant.

When separation geotextiles are required, overlap adjacent geotextiles at least 18" and hold geotextiles in place with wire staples or anchor pins as needed. Seal joints above and behind MSE walls between coping and concrete slope protection with silicone sealant.

7.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

MSE Retaining Wall No. ___ will be measured and paid in square feet. MSE walls will be measured as the square feet of wall face area with the pay height equal to the difference between top of wall and top of leveling pad elevations. Define "top of wall" as top of coping or top of panels or SRW units for MSE walls without coping.

The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. ___* will be full compensation for providing designs, submittals, labor, tools, equipment and MSE wall materials, excavating, backfilling, hauling and removing excavated materials and supplying site assistance, leveling pads, panels, SRW units, reinforcement, aggregate, wall drainage systems, geotextiles, bearing pads, coping, miscellaneous components and any incidentals necessary to construct MSE walls. The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. ___* will also be full compensation for reinforcement and connector design for reinforcement connected to end bent caps, wall modifications for obstructions, pile sleeves filled with sand, joints sealed with silicone sealant and gaps between barriers and MSE walls filled with backer rod or No. 78M stone, if required.

No separate payment will be made for temporary shoring for wall construction. Temporary shoring for wall construction will be incidental to the contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. __*.

The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. __* does not include the cost for ditches, fences, handrails, barrier or guardrail associated with MSE walls as these items will be paid for elsewhere in the contract. The contract unit price for *MSE Retaining Wall No. __* also does not include the cost for constructing bridge approach fills behind end bents with MSE abutment walls. See *Bridge Approach Fills* provision for measurement and payment of Type III Reinforced Bridge Approach Fills.

Where it is necessary to provide backfill material behind the reinforced zone from sources other than excavated areas or borrow sources used in connection with other work in the contract, payment for furnishing and hauling such backfill material will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Placing and compacting such backfill material is not considered extra work but is incidental to the work being performed.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

MSE Retaining Wall No. __

Pay Unit

Square Foot



DocuSigned by:
Scott A. Hidden
F760CAEB96FC4D3...

6/21/2019

SCARIFY/MIX EXISTING ABC AND SAND LAYERS

(SPECIAL)

1.0 GENERAL

Upon removal of the existing concrete pavement, incorporate the existing ABC and sand layers into the underlying soils to a minimum depth of 12 inches. The existing ABC and sand should be scarified into the proposed subgrade to a minimum depth of 12 inches. Scarification will require a minimum of 2 passes over the same area to create a homogenous mixture of ABC, Sand and soil or to the discretion of the Engineer.

2.0 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Work is incidental to fine grading and payment will be made in accordance with Article, 500-5 of the Standard Specifications.



DocuSigned by:
Jeffrey Brian Barfield
09B33DEB8C824D1... 6/26/2019

DocuSigned by:
John Pilipchuk
52C44B94B8BE444... 6/26/2019

ROCK EMBANKMENT:**(SPECIAL)****Description**

Construct rock buttress embankments for fill slopes designated as 1.5:1.0 (H:V) in accordance with the contract at locations shown on the plans.

Materials

Refer to Section 10 of the *Standard Specifications*:

Items	Section
Select Material, Class VII	1016
Type IV, Geotextile	1056
Type V, Geotextile for rock embankments	1056

Use Class VII Select Material for rock embankments.

Construction Methods

Type V Geotextile shall be placed as shown on the Rock Embankment Typical drawing before placing material. General undercutting will not be required except in unsuitable or high PI soils as determined by the Engineer. Place Type IV at top of embankment as shown.

Construct 1.5:1.0 rock buttress embankments above in accordance with the slopes, dimensions and elevations shown on the plans and Section 235 of the *Standard Specifications*. Place and grade rock so smaller pieces are uniformly distributed throughout rock embankments. Provide a uniform surface free of obstructions, debris and groups of large rocks that could cause voids within embankments. When placing rock embankments in lifts, place core material to the top of the lift elevation before placing the next lift of rock embankment.

Geotextile for Soil Stabilization shall be placed at the top lift as shown on the Rock Embankment Special Typical drawing.

Measurement and Payment

Select Material, Class VII will be measured and paid for in tons. Select material will be measured by weighing material in trucks in accordance with Article 106-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. The contract unit prices for *Select Material, Class VII* will be full compensation for providing, hauling, handling, placing, compacting and maintaining select material.

I-4400BB

GT-13.2

Henderson

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

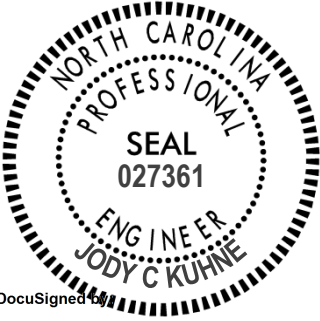
Rock Embankment

Geotextile for Rock Embankments

Pay Unit

Ton

Square Yard



DocuSigned by

4F9C0666A1BC400... 7/23/2019

I-4400BB&C**SN-1****Henderson County****OPEN CLOSED SIGN RELOCATION****1. DESCRIPTION**

Demount existing open closed sign, sign enclosure and erect on proposed overhead sign structure as shown in the contract plans. Demount existing open closed sign control box and erect on proposed wood post. Furnish and install all composite communication cable, control hardware, wire entrance fittings, conduit, grounding, and mounting brackets and all other necessary hardware.

2. MATERIALS**A. General**

When power is applied to the relocated open closed sign, the desired text "OPEN" or "CLOSED" shall be displayed. The existing sign is a two-message sign.

B. Enclosures and Finishes

All modified openings in the existing sign enclosure shall be gasketed or sealed. The sign and sign enclosure shall be mounted to the overhead sign panel "Z" bars with a user-defined mounting fixture. Provide strain relief and grommets on all proposed or relocated cable entrances into the control box or switch housing.

C. Power Requirements

Existing power runs from the scale house to the existing open closed sign control box. Re-route and terminate existing power into the relocated open closed sign control box. Install surge protection in the relocated open closed sign control box if not present.

D. Operator Control

A rotary manual switch in the open closed control box at the sign is used a technician to select messages. The switch position shall clearly be aligned with the labels, so it is clear what message has been selected.

The technician manual switch labels shall match the existing switches in the scale house and shall select one of the following messages:

Open – station open and sign displays "OPEN" message

Closed – station closed, sign displays "CLOSED" message

Off – sign displays no message

The switches shall be permanently labeled.

3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS**A. General**

Ensure legibility and message blackout of the open closed sign at a distance of 300ft regardless of the lighting conditions or limited viewing.

Relocate existing control box on a new 4x4 wood post within 4 feet of the proposed overhead sign structure such that a technician can easily and comfortably access the control box and

I-4400BB&C**SN-2****Henderson County**

any existing guardrail can deflect properly when hit. Erect existing control box at a mounting height of 5' from the ground to the center of the control box.

Erect the relocated open closed sign enclosure and sign to the overhead static sign mounted to the overhead sign assembly as shown in the contract plans.

Match and extend the current composite cable from the relocated control box through the proposed conduit to the relocated open closed sign location.

B. Operator Control

Permanently secure the manual switch in the open closed sign cabinet to the control box if not already secured.

Verify the manual rotary switch in the open sign closed control box allows for a technician to manually select an "OPEN" or "CLOSED" message. Verify the existing manual switch installed in the scale house allows the operator or officer to select any message as described above.

C. Conduit

Install the conduit system in accordance with Section 1715 of the *Standard Specifications* and NEC requirements for an approved watertight raceway.

Make bends in the conduit so as not to damage it or change its internal diameter. Install watertight and continuous conduit with as few couplings as standard lengths permit.

Clean conduit before, during, and after installation. Install conduit in such a manner that temperature changes will not cause elongation or contraction that might damage the system.

Attach the conduit system to the structural components of the sign structure assemblies with beam clamps or stainless-steel strapping or inside the structure if there is available space. Install strapping according to the strapping manufacturer's recommendations. Do not use welding or drilling to fasten conduit to structural components. Space the fasteners at no more than 4 feet for conduit 1.5 inches and larger. or 6 feet for conduit smaller than 1.25 inches. Place fasteners no more than 3 feet from the center of bends, fittings, boxes, switches, and devices.

Flexible conduit will only be allowed in the following transitions:

- From the vertical structure segment to the horizontal sign support frame; and,
- From the horizontal sign support frame to the rear entrance of the open closed sign when installing the communications and feeder cables.

The maximum length of flexible conduit allowed at each transition will be 5 feet.

Do not exceed the appropriate fill ratio on all cable installed in conduit as specified in the NEC.

D. Wiring Methods

Do not pull permanent wire through a conduit system until the system is complete and has been cleaned.

Color-code all conductors per the NEC. Use approved marking tape, paint, sleeves or continuous colored conductors for No.8 AWG and larger. Do not mark a white conductor in a cable assembly with any other color.

I-4400BB&C

SN-3

Henderson County

Bury underground circuits at the depth shown in the contract plans and surround it with at least 3 inches of sand or earth backfill that is free of rocks and debris. Compact backfill in 6 inch layers. Do not splice underground circuits unless specifically noted in the contract plans.

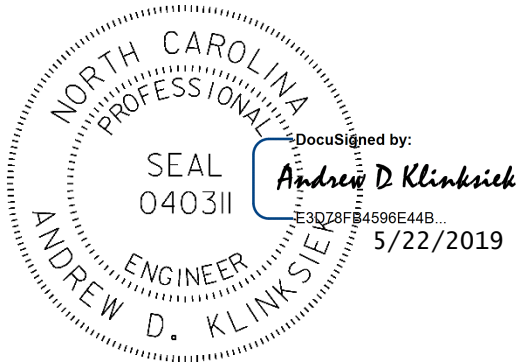
4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Relocate Open Closed Sign will be measured and paid per unit demounted from the existing sign supports, erected on the proposed overhead sign assembly, and accepted.

No measurement will be made for mounting hardware, communication cable, conduit, control hardware, manual rotary switches, wire entrance fittings, and wood posts, as these will be considered incidental to relocating the existing open closed sign and control box.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Relocate Open Closed Sign	Each



Document not considered final unless all signatures completed.

NON-CAST IRON SNOWPLOWABLE PAVEMENT MARKERS:**DESCRIPTION**

Furnish, install and maintain non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers in accordance with the contract.

MATERIALS

Epoxy shall meet the requirements of Section 1081 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Pages 10-177 and 10-178, Subarticle 1086-3 SNOWPLOWABLE PAVEMENT MARKERS, delete items (A), (B) and (C)(1) and replace with the following:

(A) General

Use non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers evaluated by NTPEP. The non-cast iron snowplowable pavement marker shall consist of a housing with one or more glass or plastic face lens type reflective lenses to provide the required color designation. Plastic lens faces shall use an abrasion resistant coating.

Use recycled non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers that meet all the requirements of new non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers except Subarticle 1086-3(B)(1). Recycled non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers with minimal variation in dimensions are acceptable only when the reflector fits in the housing of the recycled non-cast iron snowplowable pavement marker as originally designed.

(B) Housings**(1) Dimensions**

The dimension, slope and minimum area of reflecting surface shall conform to dimensions as shown in the plans. The minimum area of each reflecting surface shall be 1.44 sq.in.

(2) Materials

Use non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers that are on the NCDOT Approved Products List.

(3) Surface

The surface of the housing shall be free of scale, dirt, rust, oil, grease or any other contaminant which might reduce its bond to the epoxy adhesive.

(4) Identification

Mark the housing with the manufacturer's name and model number of marker.

(C) Reflectors

(1) General

Laminate the reflector to an elastomeric pad and attach with adhesive to the housing. The thickness of the elastomeric pad shall be 0.04".

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

(A) General

Bond marker housings to the pavement with epoxy adhesive. Mechanically mix and dispense epoxy adhesives as required by the manufacturer's specifications. Place the markers immediately after the adhesive has been mixed and dispensed.

Install snowplowable pavement marker housings into slots sawcut into the pavement. Make slots in the pavement to exactly duplicate the shape of the housing of the snowplowable pavement markers.

Promptly remove all debris resulting from the saw cutting operation from the pavement surface. Install the marker housings within 7 calendar days after saw cutting slots in the pavement. Remove and dispose of loose material from the slots by brushing, blow cleaning or vacuuming. Dry the slots before applying the epoxy adhesive. Fill the cleaned slots totally with epoxy adhesive flush with the surface of the existing pavement. Install snowplowable pavement markers according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Protect the snowplowable pavement markers until the epoxy has initially cured and is track free.

(B) Reflector Replacement

In the event that a reflector is damaged, replace the damaged reflector by using adhesives and methods recommended by the manufacturer of the markers and approved by the Engineer. This work is considered incidental if damage occurs during the initial installation of the marker housings and maintenance of initial snowplowable markers specified in this section. This work will be paid for under the pay item for the type of reflector replacement if the damage occurred after the initial installation of the snowplowable pavement marker.

Missing housings shall be replaced. Broken housings shall be removed and replaced. In both cases the slot for the housings shall be properly prepared prior to installing the new housing. Removal of broken housings and preparation of slots will be considered incidental to the work of replacing housings.

(C) Recycled Snowplowable Pavement Marker Housings

Use properly refurbished snowplowable pavement marker housings as approved by the Engineer such that approved new reflectors can be installed inside the housings.

MAINTENANCE

Maintain all installed snowplowable pavement markers before acceptance.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Non-cast iron Snowplowable Pavement Markers will be measured and paid as the actual number of non-cast iron snowplowable pavement markers satisfactorily placed and accepted by the Engineer.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Non-cast iron Snowplowable Pavement Marker

Pay Unit

Each



6/14/2019

TC-1

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

WORK ZONE TRAFFIC CONTROL Project Special Provisions Table of Contents

Special Provision	Page
Sequential Flashing Warning Lights	TC-2
Work Zone Presence Lighting	TC-5
Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings	TC-9
High Visibility Devices	TC-14
Connected Lane Closure Devices	TC-16
Typical Median Access Areas	TC-18
Traffic Control Supervisor	TC-28



DocuSigned by:
Don A. Parker
4DD48286261841D...
6/13/2019

TC-2

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

SEQUENTIAL FLASHING WARNING LIGHTS:

(10/08/2016)

Description

Furnish and install Sequential Flashing Warning Lights on drums used for merging tapers during nightly work activities on interstates and freeways with speed limits greater than 55 MPH and or facilities that have significant traffic volumes.

The purpose of these lights is to assist the motorist in determining which direction to merge when approaching a lane closure. It's also designed to reduce the number of late merges resulting in devices being struck and having to be reset to maintain positive guidance at the merge point. The successive flashing of the lights shall occur from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the merging taper in order to identify the desired vehicle path.

Materials

The Sequential Flashing Warning Lights shall meet all of the requirements for warning lights within the current edition of the Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD).

Each light unit shall be capable of operating fully and continuously for a minimum of 200 hours when equipped with a standard battery set.

Each light in the sequence shall be flashed at a rate of not less than 55 times per minute and not more than 75 times per minute. The flash rate and flash duration shall be consistent throughout the sequence.

Supply a Type 3 Certification (Independent Test Lab results) documenting all actual test results for the specified parameters contained in the Institute of Transportation Engineer's (ITE's) *Purchase Specification for Flashing and Steady Burn Warning Lights*. The laboratory shall also identify all manufacturer codes and part numbers for the incandescent lamp or LED clusters, lenses, battery, and circuitry, and the total width of the light with the battery in place. The complete assembly shall be certified as crashworthy when firmly affixed to the channelizing device.

All Sequential Flashing Warning Lights shall be on the NCDOT Work Zone Traffic Control Approved Products List.

Construction Methods

Sequential Flashing Warning Lights are to be used for night time lane closures.

These lights shall flash sequentially beginning with the first light and continuing until the final light.

The Sequential Flashing Warning Lights shall automatically flash in sequence when placed on the drums that form the merging taper.

TC-3

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

The number of lights used in the drum taper shall equal the number of drums used in the taper.

Drums are the only channelizing device allowed to mount sequential flashing warning lights.

The Sequential Flashing Warning Lights shall be weather independent and visual obstructions shall not interfere with the operation of the lights.

The Sequential Flashing Warning Lights shall automatically sequence when placed in line in an open area with a distance between lights of 10 to 100 feet. A 10 foot stagger in the line of lights shall have no adverse effect on the operation of the lights.

If one light fails, the flashing sequence shall continue. If more than 1 light fails, all of the lights are to be automatically turned to the "off" mode. Non-sequential flashing is prohibited.

When lane closures are not in effect, the Sequential Flashing Warning Lights shall be deactivated.

Measurement and Payment

Sequential Flashing Warning Lights will be measured and paid as the maximum number of sequential flashing warning lights satisfactorily installed and properly functioning at any one time during the life of the project.

This includes all materials and labor to install, maintain and remove all the Sequential Flashing Warning Lights.

Pay Item

Sequential Flashing Warning Lights

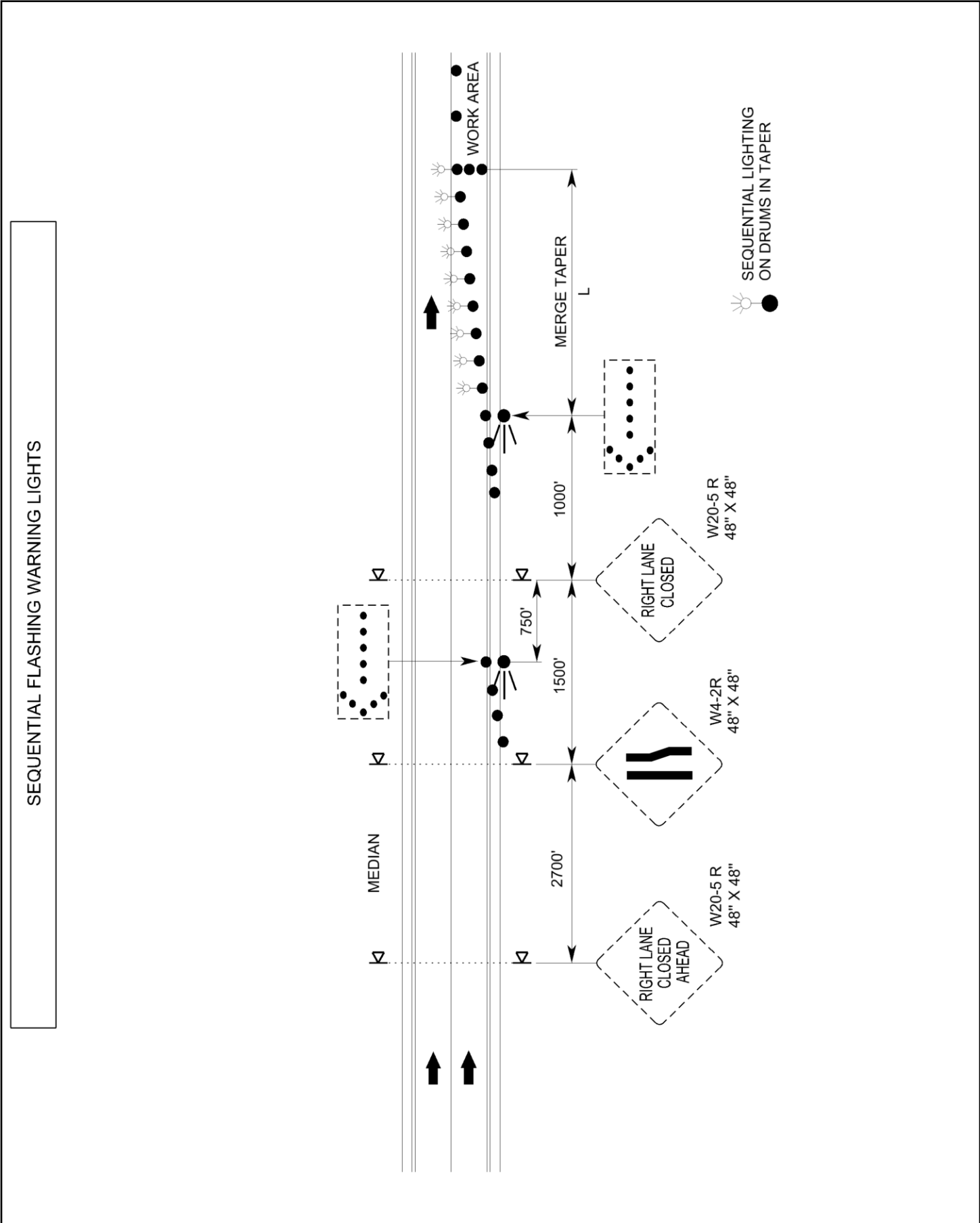
Pay Unit

Each

TC-4

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties



TC-5

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

WORK ZONE PRESENCE LIGHTING:

(05/31/18)

DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install Work Zone Presence Lighting to supplement the Contractor's construction/task (Portable Construction Lighting) and equipment lighting during nightly work activities on high speed (greater than 55 MPH) facilities and/or facilities that have significant traffic volumes and impacts. The purpose of Work Zone Presence Lighting is to alert the motorist to the existence of an active work zone, improve worker visibility, and to assist in compliance of the work zone speed limit by providing lighting throughout the length of the lane closure.

MATERIALS

Anti-glare lighting systems are required. Work Zone Presence Lighting is in addition to the Contractors' Portable Construction Lighting. Work Zone Presence Lighting shall be installed in accordance with the attached detail and Manufacturer's recommendations.

All Work Zone Presence Lighting shall be supplied with a power source to provide the light output as described in the chart below.

Each light unit shall be capable of providing a minimum of 14,000 lumens illuminating a minimum area of approximately 3,000 square feet. The light shall be capable of being elevated to a height of 14 feet above the pavement.

Each light unit support base or mounting stand shall have the capability of being leveled.

Provide Work Zone Presence Lighting listed on the NCDOT APL.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

The purpose of Work Zone Presence Lighting is to illuminate areas of the lane closure where construction/task lights are not located. Typical use is during lane closures for resurfacing and milling operations in locations where the pavement is being prepped for paving or milling, as well as where these operations have passed through that involve remaining work items such as rolling, coring/inspecting, shoulder and striping activities.

In addition, Work Zone Presence Lighting is permitted to be installed after the necessary traffic control has been installed for the lane closure(s). Once the lane(s) is closed and the Contractor's operations have begun, the Work Zone Presence Lights can be installed according to the installation locations below.

At the end of the work night, the Work Zone Presence Lights may be removed, up to 1 hour, before the lane closure(s) is removed or removed after the lane(s) has been reopened since the lights are located outside of the travel lanes and do not give any misinformation to the traveling public.

TC-6

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Immediately replace any lighting unit that is not operational.

Installation Locations

1. Standard Lane Closure Lengths of 2 miles or less

Position #1: Initially, place the work zone presence lighting starting 1 mile downstream of the merge taper and continue until the end of the lane closure. See attached detail-Position #1.

Position #2: Once paving operations progress to the point where the construction/task lighting has to be relocated to finish paving for the night, the Work Zone Presence Lighting shall be relocated to the beginning of the lane closure. See Attached Drawing-Position #2.

2. Lane Closures exceeding 2 miles (Must be approved by the Engineer)

Single Work Operations: If the lane closure is longer than 2 miles within a single work operation, begin installing the work zone presence lighting at the halfway point of the lane closure length and continue placing the lights until the end of the lane closure. Same procedure for relocation shall be followed as described above.

3. Multiple Work Operations exceeding 2 miles (Must be approved by the Engineer)

If the lane closure is longer than 2 miles and 2 separate operations are working concurrently, treat as 2 separate locations. The Work Zone Presence Lights are installed at the halfway point in each operation. The lights in the 1st operation will end where the 2nd operation begins. The lights in the 2nd operation will terminate with the end of the lane closure. Same procedure for relocation shall be followed as described above.

Lighting Unit Installation Requirements

The lighting units shall be installed inside the lane closure as shown on the attached detail and spaced according to the chart below:

SPACING CHART

Light Output (Lumens)	Illuminated Fixture Area-Minimum (Square Feet)	Maximum Spacing (Feet)	Light Units (Per Mile)
14,000 to 35,000	4'	750'	7
35,001 to 59,999	5'	1,000'	5
60,000 and above	6' or greater	1,320	4

Whenever possible, each light unit shall be placed on the 10' paved shoulder according to the above spacing based on the amount of light output for each unit.

TC-7

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Each light unit shall be installed and moved as necessary to allow for efficient paving operations to take place as well as to not interfere with the Contractor's ability to light the work area. At no time shall Work Zone Presence Lighting be located in the same area as the Contractor's construction/task lighting or conflict with his work operations.

If the Contractor provides sufficient construction/task lighting to meet the luminance requirements of Section 1413-3 for the full length of the lane closure or if sufficient existing overhead lighting is present, Work Zone Presence Lighting may be eliminated as directed by the Engineer.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Work Zone Presence Lighting will be measured and paid as the maximum number of lighting units satisfactorily placed, accepted by the Engineer, and in use at any one time during the life of the project.

Relocation, replacement, repair, removal, and maintenance of Work Zone Presence Lighting units will be incidental to the work of this section. No measurement or separate payment will be made for power generators, batteries, or other power supply devices.

Pay Item

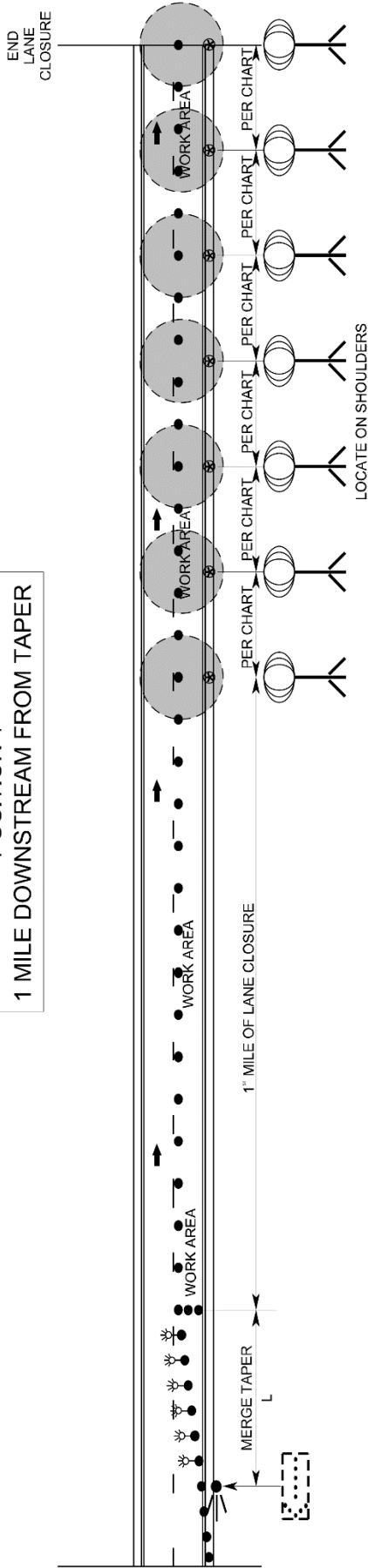
Work Zone Presence Lighting

Pay Unit

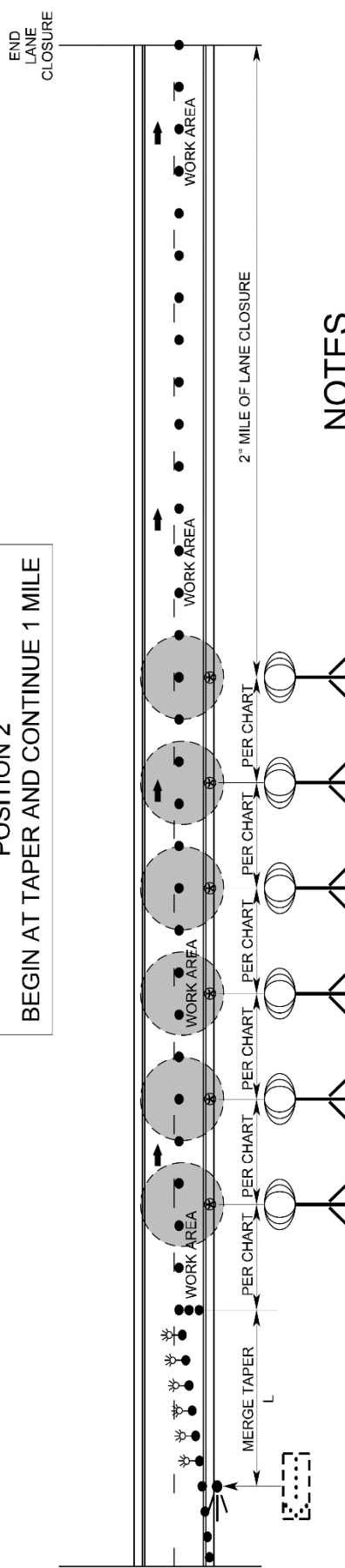
Each

SEQUENTIAL FLASHING WARNING LIGHTS AND WORK ZONE PRESENCE LIGHTING

POSITION 1
1 MILE DOWNSTREAM FROM TAPER



POSITION 2
BEGIN AT TAPER AND CONTINUE 1 MILE



NOTES

- 1) WORK ZONE PRESENCE LIGHTING MAY BE OMITTED FOR THE ENTIRE LANE CLOSURE IF THE CONTRACTOR PROVIDES SUFFICIENT CONSTRUCTION/TASK LIGHTING TO MEET THE LUMINANCE REQUIREMENTS OF SECTION 1413-3 FOR THE FULL LENGTH OF THE LANE CLOSURE. IF EXISTING OVERHEAD ROADWAY LIGHTING IS FUNCTIONAL AND EXTENDS FOR THE FULL LENGTH OF THE LANE CLOSURE, OR AS DIRECTED BY THE ENGINEER.
- 2) PLACE ON PAVED OUTSIDE SHOULDER IF POSSIBLE.
- 3) IF THE LANE CLOSURE IS LONGER THAN 2 MILES USE ADDITIONAL PRESENCE LIGHTING AT THE RECOMMENDED SPACING. BEGIN INSTALLING WORK ZONE PRESENCE LIGHTING AT THE HALFWAY POINT OF THE LANE CLOSURE LENGTH FOR POSITION 1. POSITION 2 WILL BE THE FIRST HALF OF THE LANE CLOSURE LENGTH.

SPACING CHART

LIGHT OUTPUT (LUMENS)	MINIMUM LIGHTED FIXTURE AREA (SQUARE FEET)	MAXIMUM SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM LIGHT UNITS (PER MILE)
14,000 TO 35,000	4	750	7
35,001 TO 60,000	5	1,000	5
ABOVE 60,000	6 AND GREATER	1,320	4

TC-9

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

WORK ZONE PERFORMANCE PAVEMENT MARKINGS:

(10/08/2016)

(Rev. 10/9/18)

Description

Furnish and install Work Zone Performance pavement markings that delineate the travel way for work zone traffic patterns on interstates and freeways along with the ramps and loops. They may also be used on roadways with significant alterations of traffic patterns. The purpose of Work Zone Performance pavement marking is to provide a more durable work zone pavement marking that lasts the full duration of a traffic pattern without requiring replacement or reapplication for a period of up to 12 months. Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall also provide a higher performance level in terms of retroreflectivity throughout the required 12 month duration than standard traffic paints to improve nighttime work zone visibility.

Materials

A) General

Use materials in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations that will retain both durability and a minimum retroreflectivity as described elsewhere in this RFP for a period of at least 12 months.

The Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall be manufactured to bond successfully to both concrete and asphalt pavements. The following are approved materials to be used for Work Zone Performance pavement markings:

- Polyurea
- Thermoplastic (Extruded and Sprayed)
- Epoxy
- Polymer (Single System)
- Cold Applied Plastic (Type IV)

B) Material Qualifications/Certifications

Use Work Zone Performance pavement marking materials, as listed above, which are on the NCDOT Approved Products List at the time of installation.

In accordance with Article 106-3, and Section 1087-4 of the 2018 NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, provide a Type 3 Material Certification for all materials and a Type 3 and Type 4 certification for all reflective media.

(C) Performance

TC-10

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Poor performance of a Work Zone Performance pavement marking material at any site, whether or not related to a specific contract, may be grounds for removing the material from any project under contract and the NCDOT Approved Products List.

Construction Methods

Do not use hand applied methods or any other non-truck mounted application equipment /device to install Work Zone Performance pavement markings for applications longer than 1000 feet.

All Work Zone Performance pavement markings are to be installed in a single application.

Multiple passes are not allowed.

“No track” dry times shall be 10 minutes or less. Traffic shall not be placed on any material until it’s sufficiently dry/cured to eliminate wheel tracking.

A) Testing Procedures

All Work Zone Performance pavement marking installations will be tested by the Department through an independent Mobile Retroreflective Contractor. The Work Zone Performance pavement markings will be scanned to ensure the retroreflectivity requirements in Section C below are met.

B) Application Equipment

Application equipment shall be in accordance with Section 1205 of the 2018 NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C) Material Application

The Work Zone Performance pavement marking material shall be applied at the following minimum thicknesses:

Polyurea =	20 mils wet
Epoxy =	20 mils wet
Thermoplastic =	50 mils (Extruded or Sprayed)
Polymer =	20 mils wet
Cold Applied Plastic (IV) =	Manufacturer’s recommendation

The Work Zone Performance pavement marking line widths for interstates and freeways shall be as follows:

Edge lines, Solid Lane Lines, Skip and Mini-Skip Lines = 6”

TC-11

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Gorelines =

12''

All other facilities shall utilize 4'' line widths.

D) Retroreflectivity Requirements

Retroreflectivity Requirements for Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings

Color	Initial	6 Months	12 Months
White	375 mcd/lux/m ²	275 mcd/lux/m ²	150 mcd/lux/m ²
Yellow	250 mcd/lux/m ²	150 mcd/lux/m ²	100 mcd/lux/m ²

The minimum level of retroreflectivity for any Work Zone Performance pavement marking system selected shall meet the initial requirements in the chart above. In addition, the Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall maintain the corresponding retroreflectivity requirements for a period of up to 12 months.

The Contractor shall notify the Engineer a minimum of 7-10 days prior to the installation of Work Zone Performance pavement markings.

The Department will measure initial retroreflectivity within 30 days after placement to ensure compliance with the initial retroreflectivity levels in the chart above.

If the markings appear to be non-performing, the Engineer may request additional retroreflectivity readings. If measured and found to be noncompliant, the Contractor shall replace the Work Zone Performance pavement markings at no cost to the Department. Non-compliant retroreflectivity occurs when the average readings for the project are more than 15% below the requirements in the chart. Pay deductions are appropriate for deficiencies up to the 15% level.

If the Work Zone Performance pavement markings need to remain in place longer than 12 months, the markings are to be scanned by the Mobile Retroreflective Contractor to determine if they are meeting the minimum retroreflectivity levels. If they remain at or above these levels, the Work Zone Performance pavement markings may remain in place. If not, they shall be replaced by the Contractor within 15 days of the 12 month duration and compensation will be made at the contract unit price.

If and when this becomes necessary, the same notification procedure as described above shall be used to have the Work Zone Performance pavement markings scanned for the required retroreflectivity.

E) Snowplow Damage

TC-12

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

All Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall be durable enough to withstand a single snow event requiring snow plowing without showing excessive fatigue in either bonding or retroreflectivity.

The Contractor shall replace the Work Zone Performance pavement markings if a single snowplow occurrence results in more than 25% of the pavement marking edgelines or skips being physically removed and/or the Work Zone Performance pavement markings do not meet the following minimum retroreflectivity values:

Retroreflective Requirements for Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings after a Single Snowplow Occurrence

Color	MINIMUM
White	150 mcd/lux/m ²
Yellow	100 mcd/lux/m ²

Unless the temporary traffic pattern is to be modified within 30 days, the Contractor shall replace all non-compliant Work Zone Performance pavement markings within 30 days of determining they are non-compliant.

If the work zone experiences more than one snow event requiring snow plowing, the retroreflectivity values in the chart above will no longer apply. The Engineer will determine if the pavement markings are performing adequately and/or if replacement is necessary due to excessive damage caused solely by snowplow activities.

If the Work Zone Performance pavement markings are found to be deficient, they shall be replaced. In such case, compensation will be made at the contract unit price. Unless the temporary traffic pattern is to be modified within 30 days, the Contractor shall replace all Work Zone Performance pavement markings damaged due to multiple snowplow events within 30 days.

F) Surface Preparation

Prior to installation, all pavement surfaces to receive Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall be swept clean and prepared in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendation.

G) Temperature and Weather Limitations

Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall only be applied unless the ambient air temperature and the pavement temperature is 50°F or higher for thermoplastic and is 40°F or higher for all other materials. Do not install unless the pavement surface is completely dry and

TC-13

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

not within 4 hours of a heavy rain event such as a thunderstorm with rainfall intensities greater than 1 inch/per hour.

In the event a traffic shift has to take place when the air and pavement temperatures are below the required minimums or if a rain event occurs prior to or during a planned traffic shift, upon approval by the Engineer, an acceptable alternative is to install temporary pavement markings. Use 1 application of standard traffic paint to produce a 4" line at 15 mils (wet). Beads shall also be applied to provide proper retroreflectivity until the performance material can be installed. NCDOT will provide compensation for the 4", 15 mil temporary paint. The Work Zone Performance pavement markings shall be applied within 90 days of installation of the temporary pavement markings.

Maintenance

Replace any Work Zone Performance pavement material that prematurely fails due to debonding or excessive wearing where it doesn't maintain its retroreflectivity for the required 12 month duration. Any traffic control and Work Zone Performance pavement marking costs due to replacement is at no cost to the Department unless it's due to excessive damage caused by snowplow damage.

Measurement and Payment

Work Zone Performance pavement marking lines will be measured and paid by the linear foot that's satisfactorily placed and accepted by the Engineer. The quantity of Work Zone Performance pavement marking-solid lines, will be the summation of the linear feet of solid line measured end-to-end of the line. The quantity of skip or broken lines will be the summation of the linear feet derived by multiplying the nominal length of a line by the number of broken lines satisfactorily placed.

Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking *Symbols* will be measured as the actual number of pavement marking symbols satisfactorily placed and accepted by the Engineer. Payment for Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking *Symbols* will be made at the same contract unit price used for the Pavement Marking Symbol pay items used on the final wearing surface.

Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking *Characters* will be measured as the actual number of pavement marking characters satisfactorily placed and accepted by the Engineer. A character is considered to be one letter or one number of a word message. Payment for Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking *Characters* will be made at the same contract unit price used for the Pavement Marking Character pay item used on the final wearing surface.

Payment will be made under:

TC-14

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Pay Item

Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking Lines, 4”
Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking Lines, 6”
Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking Lines, 12”

Pay Unit

Linear Foot
Linear Foot
Linear Foot

HIGH VISIBILITY DEVICES:

(5/10/18)

Description

Furnish and install High Visibility devices for projects on Interstates and Freeways with durations of 24 months or more. High Visibility devices include drums, stationary work zone signs and portable work zone signs. All of these devices shall be new. Used devices are not acceptable.

The purpose of High Visibility devices is to enhance the conspicuity of the devices in order to improve both safety and mobility through the Interstate and Freeway work zones. In addition, using new devices help to ensure they remain in compliance with required retroreflective properties for the full life of the project and to improve the overall appearance of Significant Work Zones throughout the State.

Materials

A) General

Use materials in accordance with the Manufacturer’s recommendations that will retain both durability and retroreflectivity as described elsewhere in this specification for a period of at least 36 months.

The following are required High Visibility devices to be used for Work Zone Performance applications.

- Drums (Type XI fluorescent orange sheeting)
- Stationary Work Zone Signs
- Rigid Portable Work Zone Signs

All drums shall be new and meet the existing requirements of Section 1089-5 of the North Carolina Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and shall have Type XI fluorescent orange sheeting that meets the retroreflective requirements of Section 1092-2.

All stationary work zone signs shall be new and meet the existing requirements of Section 1089-1. Legend overlays are prohibited and shall not be accepted on the Interstate/Freeway or associated intersecting roadways.

TC-15

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

All portable work zone signs shall be new and have composite substrates as described in Section 1089-1. The remainder of the existing requirements of Section 1089-1 remain. Used sign stands are acceptable.

B) Material Qualifications/Certifications

Only use materials as listed above that are on the NCDOT Approved Products List. In addition, provide a Type 3 Material Certification for all materials in accordance with Section 106-3 and Section 1087-4.

(C) Performance

Poor performance of any device or sign at any site, whether or not related to a specific contract may be grounds for removing the material from the NCDOT Approved Products List and/or removing from any project under contract.

Construction Methods

All requirements of Section 1110-3 and Section 1130-3 shall apply except roll up signs are not permitted for use.

The use of skinny drums are prohibited for any nighttime lane closures on Interstates and Freeways.

Maintenance

Replace any sign or drum that prematurely fails due to any damage or defect that causes it to perform unsatisfactorily with an “in kind” device of similar quality and age according to the guidelines set forth in the American Traffic Safety Service Association’s (ATSSA) Quality Guidelines for Work Zone Traffic Control Devices. An “in kind” replacement sign or drum is not required to be new, however, it shall be less than 1 year old and have 100% of its original sheeting area and at least 85% of the retroreflective qualities of a new device, so that it is undetectable adjacent to the original devices and signs placed on the project.

Measurement and Payment

High Visibility Drums will be measured and paid as the maximum number of drums placed and in use at any one time during the life of the project.

High Visibility Stationary Signs will be measured as the actual number of square feet satisfactorily installed at each location and accepted by the Engineer. Where a particular sign is used at more than one location, measurement will be made at each location.

TC-16

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

High Visibility Work Zone Signs will be measured and paid as the actual number of square feet satisfactorily installed and accepted by the Engineer. Payment will be made for the initial installation only. Relocation of signs, will incidental the measurement of the quantity of signs.

No direct payment will be made for stationary work zone sign supports or portable work zone sign stands. All stationary work zone sign support or portable work zone sign stands will be incidental to the work of providing work zone signs.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item:	Pay Unit
High Visibility Drums	Each
High Visibility Stationary Signs	Square Foot
High Visibility Portable Signs	Square Foot

CONNECTED LANE CLOSURE DEVICES:

(10/29/2018)

Description

Furnish, install, operate, maintain, relocate, and remove connected lane closure devices for use on Interstate and Freeway lane closures. The connected lane closure devices shall transmit the location of the lane closure to navigational companies such as WAZE, Google Maps, Inrix, Here, TrafficCast, TomTom, Apple Maps, Panasonic, the Statewide Transportation Operations Center, (STOC), and any other navigational companies that requests it. A connected lane closure device shall be installed on the flashing arrow board identifying the beginning of a lane closure, and another connected lane closure device shall be installed on a crashworthy traffic control device (such as a drum) at the end of the same lane closure.

Materials

The connected lane closure devices shall be designed and built to transmit the location of the lane closure to the navigational companies as well as the STOC. The format of the information received by each of these shall be approved by each entity, and at minimum, consist of an XML file. The connected lane closure devices shall be capable of obtaining wireless communication by either cellular or satellite technology.

The initial connected device shall be designed and attached to the flashing arrow board in such a manner that it is only activated when either the left or right arrows are displayed, not when the flashing arrow board is operated in caution mode. When the lane closure is removed, and the flashing arrow board turned off or changed to caution mode, the connected device shall automatically turn off simultaneously.

TC-17

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

The second connected device in a lane closure shall be installed on a crashworthy traffic control device. It shall have an easily accessible power switch and a small status indicator light mounted such that it is visible when passing by in a vehicle at operating speed. When switched to the ON position, the light shall indicate that device has established communication and is transmitting. The light may be either steady burn or flashing and shall not exceed one (1) inch in diameter.

The devices shall have battery life sufficient to maintain operation for the duration of the lane closure, or have the ability to be recharged without deactivating the device.

Construction Methods

Connected lane closure devices shall be used on all lane closures on freeways and interstates throughout the project.

Two connected lane closure devices shall be installed per grouping of lane closures (single, double, or triple); one attached and wired into the flashing arrow board at the beginning of the first taper, and the other at the last traffic control device at the end of the lane closure(s). Supplemental flashing arrow boards in advance of the first lane closure taper or flashing arrow boards in subsequent lane closures (for double and triple lane closures) shall not have connected devices. Subsequent lane closures occurring downstream of where all lanes have been reopened and lane closures in the opposite direction of travel will require additional connected devices.

The second connected lane closure device shall be manually turned ON and OFF by crews installing and removing the lane closure, unless the device can be controlled by the initial connected device. The unit shall be turned on immediately upon installation of the lane closure and turned off immediately upon removal of the lane closure.

Once installed, the Contractor shall verify that the connected lane closure devices are transmitting information prior to leaving the device unattended and re-verify transmission every 72 hours for long-term installations.

Technical Requirements

The connected devices shall be run continuously during any active lane closures for the length of the contract.

The GPS within the connected devices shall have a horizontal accuracy of 50 feet, 95% of the time.

The connected device information, including the location, transmission status, and battery status shall be transmitted within five (5) minutes of initiation and updated every fifteen (15) minutes. In addition to transmitting information to the Department, the Contractor shall keep the retain device information for one (1) year after the contract ends. Information shall include timestamps, device name, and GPS location. This information shall be made available to the Department upon request.

TC-18

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

The battery voltage shall be collected at least once an hour. The information shall be stored and available for troubleshooting. The system shall transmit an alert if the battery voltage of a device is under a specified threshold.

The connected devices shall emit an audible alert if a device is not transmitting its position for a period of 1 hour.

The outputs from the connected device on the arrow board and the downstream connected device at the end of the lane closure shall be easily identifiable as a single pair, either by sequential device IDs, identical project names, or other method as approved by the Engineer. Additional pairs on the project shall have unique identifiable information such that it is not confused with another project pair.

Measurement and Payment

Connected Lane Closure Devices will be measured and paid as the maximum number of connected devices acceptably placed and in use at any one time during the life of the project. Each group of lane closures will require two (2) connected lane closure devices; one connected to the flashing arrow board and the other on a crashworthy device at the downstream end of the lane closure. No payment will be made for either device unless both devices are satisfactorily installed.

The price for each connected lane closure device will cover all material, labor, maintenance, relocation, removal, and communication costs required for the duration of the project.

Flashing Arrow Boards will be measured and paid in accordance with Section 1115.

Crashworthy devices (such as drums) used to mount the downstream connected lane closure device shall be considered be incidental.

Pay Item

Connected Lane Closure Device

Pay Unit

Each

TYPICAL MEDIAN ACCESS AREAS:

(12/18/18)

Description

Perform the work covered by this section including, but not limited to, constructing, maintaining, and removing Typical Median Access Areas for construction vehicle ingress to and egress from the median to/from active travel lanes on controlled access facilities.

Typical Median Access Areas are not required when construction vehicle ingress and egress is conducted using lane closures as shown on detail 1101.05, Sheet 2 of 2 of the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings*.

Materials

TC-19

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Refer to Divisions 5, 6, 10, 11, 12, and 17 in the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*.

Provide temporary traffic control devices listed on the NCDOT Approved Products List (APL).

Provide Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings. (Refer to Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings Special Provisions)

Provide High Visibility Devices. (Refer to High Visibility Devices Special Provision)

Flashing Beacon and Detection System:

(A) General

Provide flashing beacon and detection system components listed on the NCDOT ITS and Signals Qualified Products List (QPL).

Provide a trailer mounted flashing beacon and warning sign assembly that meets or exceeds the physical and operational requirements of the MUTCD, or other mounting method approved by the Department. The following specifications supplement those basic requirements.

Provide a totally mobile complete unit capable of being located as traffic conditions demand.

The warning sign height shall comply with detail 1110.01, sheet 1 of 3 of the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings* when raised in the upright position.

The flashing beacon housing assembly shall be of weather resistant construction.

(B) Power System

Provide a unit that is solar powered and supplemented with a battery backup system that includes a 110/120 VAC powered on-board charging system. The unit shall also be capable of being powered by standard 110/120 VAC power source.

The batteries, when fully charged, shall be capable of powering the display for 20 continuous days with no solar power. Store the battery bank and charging system in a lockable, weather, and vandal resistant box.

(C) Controller

Provide automatic brightness/dimming of the display and a manual override dimming switch. The controller shall provide a battery-charge status indicator. Mobile radio or any other radio transmissions shall not affect the controller. Store the controller in a lockable, weather and vandal resistant box.

TC-20

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

(D) Trailer

Finish all exterior metal surfaces with Federal orange enamel per Federal Standard 595a, color chip ID# 13538 or 12473 respectively. The trailer shall be able to support a 100 mph wind load with the display fully extended.

The trailer shall be equipped with leveling jacks capable of stabilizing the unit in a horizontal position when located on slopes 6:1 or flatter.

The trailer shall be properly equipped in compliance with North Carolina Law governing motor vehicles.

Provide a minimum 4 inch wide strip of fluorescent orange retroreflective sheeting to the frame of the trailer. Apply the sheeting to all sides of the trailer. The retroreflective sheeting shall be Grade B that conforms to Article 1092-2 in the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*. Drums may be supplemented around the unit in place of the sheeting.

(E) Reliability

Provide a sign unit, flashing beacons, and detection system with all components rated to operate at temperatures ranging from -30°F to 165°F.

Construction Methods

See Typical Median Access Detail (attached).

Temporary Acceleration Lane

Construct a temporary acceleration lane with a minimum length of 1720' and a minimum clear width of 12' for the full length of the Temporary Acceleration Lane. At least 920' of parallel merge/diverge area is required adjacent to the active travel lanes. The detection zone will be located from the beginning of the paved area to within 100' of the end of the PCB. It shall have protection separating it from the active travel lanes for the first 500'.

The Temporary Acceleration Lane shall use either existing or proposed pavement, where available. If existing or proposed pavement is not available, construct temporary pavement. For truck volumes that do not exceed 100 trucks per day for a duration that does not exceed 1 year, use the following temporary pavement design: 1.25" S9.5B, 2.5" I19.0C, and 8" ABC. For truck volumes/durations that exceed the parameters stated above, contact the State Work Zone Engineer at 919-814-4937. Install and maintain pavement in accordance with Division 6.

Using Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings, install 12" yellow diagonals lines (2:1 slope) at 100' intervals throughout the upstream half of the parallel merge/diverge area, and at 55' intervals throughout the downstream half of the parallel merge/diverge area. Remove any conflicting markings in accordance with Section 1205.

TC-21

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

Flashing Beacons and Detection System

Flashing Beacons and Detection System are required only at active median access locations and may be relocated to other median access locations as necessary.

Provide High Visibility advance warning signage as shown in the attached detail. Provide a flashing beacon system with two (2) flashing lights per sign to alert motorists in the active travel lanes of work vehicles entering from the median.

Provide a non-intrusive detection system capable of detecting vehicles in the work area in advance of the parallel merge/diverge area. The detection system shall be programmed such that passing public traffic in active travel lanes and vehicles in the work area not intending to use the parallel merge/diverge area are not detected.

Once detection occurs, the beacons on the advance warning sign(s) shall begin flashing immediately at a rate of not less than 50 or more than 60 times per minute. The beacons on the advance warning sign(s) shall flash continuously in an alternating pattern at all times that work vehicles are detected. The beacons shall continue flashing for thirty (30) seconds after detection ceases before turning off, and personnel on site shall have the ability to adjust this time based on field conditions. The flashing beacon system shall remain dark when idle.

Expedite repairs due to failure, malfunction or damage to the flashing beacons and/or detection system. Furnish another flashing beacon system or detection system approved by the Department during the repair time. Repair or replace flashing beacon system and/or detection systems immediately; otherwise, suspend all construction activities requiring the use of the Median Access Area until the flashing beacon system and/or detection system is restored to operation.

Perform all maintenance operations recommended by the manufacturer of the flashing beacon system and detection system.

Location, Placement, and Use

Typical Median Access Areas shall not be located within one-half (1/2) mile of any interchange acceleration or deceleration lanes, unless approved by the Department. All proposed locations for Typical Median Access Areas shall be reviewed and approved by the Engineer prior to installation.

Work vehicles using a particular Median Access Area shall not utilize any interchange ramp (on-ramp or off-ramp) within one (1) mile of the Median Access area.

Typical Median Access Areas installed in accordance with this section will not require the use of temporary lane closures for ingress/egress of work vehicles.

TC-22

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

The Contractor shall comply with multiple and single vehicle hauling restrictions as shown in the TMP when performing hauling of equipment or materials to or from the project while using Typical Median Access Areas.

Measurement and Payment

Typical Median Access Area will be measured and paid as the actual number of *Flashing Beacon and Detection Systems* satisfactorily installed and accepted by the Engineer as described in this provision. Payment will be made for the initial installation only. Relocation of the system(s) will be incidental to the measurement of the quantity of systems.

Aggregate Base Course will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 520-11.

Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type I19.0C and Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5B will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 610-16.

High Visibility Drums, Stationary Signs and Portable Signs will be measured and paid for in accordance with the High Visibility Devices Special Provision found elsewhere in the contract.

Portable Concrete Barrier will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 1170-4.

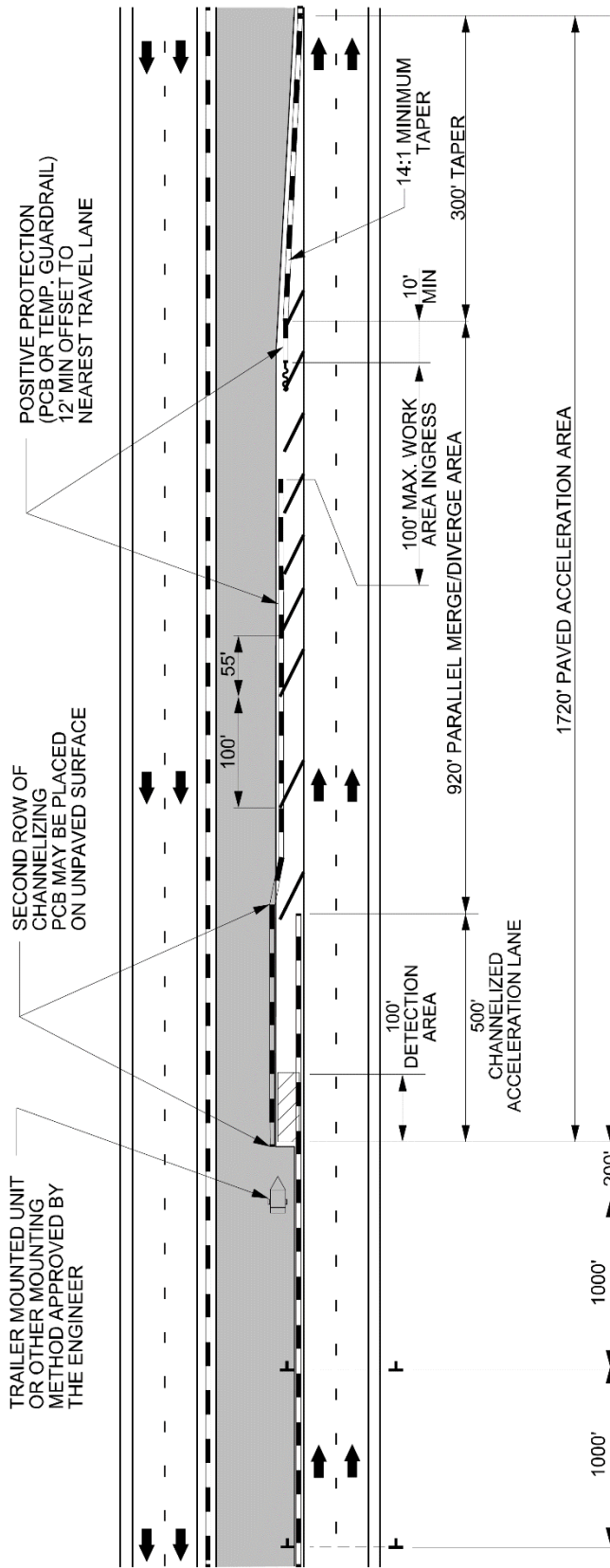
Temporary Crash Cushion will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 1160-4.

Work Zone Performance Pavement Marking Lines, 12” will be measured and paid for in accordance with the Work Zone Performance Pavement Markings Special Provision found elsewhere in the contract.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Flashing Beacons and Detection System	Each

TYPICAL MEDIAN ACCESS DETAIL



TRAILER MOUNTED UNIT OR OTHER MOUNTING METHOD APPROVED BY THE ENGINEER

SECOND ROW OF CHANNELIZING PCB MAY BE PLACED ON UNPAVED SURFACE

POSITIVE PROTECTION (PCB OR TEMP. GUARDRAIL) 12' MIN OFFSET TO NEAREST TRAVEL LANE

100' MAX. WORK AREA INGRESS

14:1 MINIMUM TAPER

10' MIN

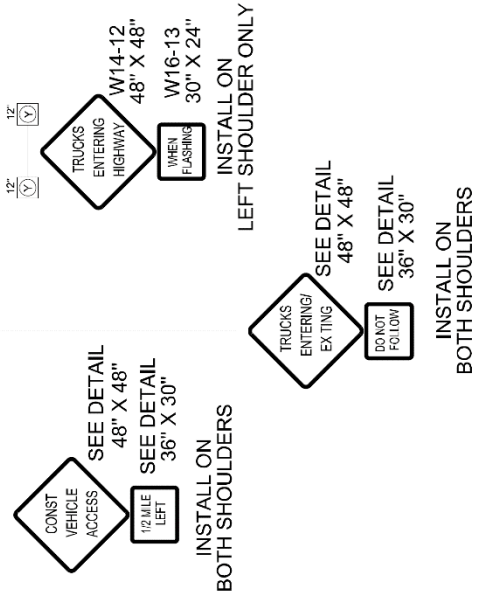
300' TAPER

100' DETECTION AREA

500' CHANNELIZED ACCELERATION LANE

920' PARALLEL MERGE/DIVERGE AREA

1720' PAVED ACCELERATION AREA



NOTES:

1. RELOCATE MEDIAN ACCESS POINTS, AS NEEDED, TO COMPLETE MEDIAN CONSTRUCTION AS APPROVED BY THE ENGINEER.
2. PLACE YELLOW DIAGONAL PAVEMENT MARKINGS THROUGHOUT ACCESS LANE. SPACING FOR UPSTREAM HALF OF LANE SHALL BE 100', AND 55' FOR DOWNSTREAM HALF OF LANE.
3. WHEN NOT IN USE FOR MORE THAN 72 HOURS, DRUMS SHALL BE USED ALONG THE SHOULDER TO CLOSE THE PARALLEL ACCELERATION/DECELERATION AREA.
4. ALL WORK VEHICLES ATTEMPTING TO RE-ENTER AN OPEN TRAVEL LANE SHALL PASS THROUGH THE DETECTION AREA. WORK VEHICLES SHALL NOT LEAVE THE WORK AREA USING THE INGRESS POINT AT ANY TIME.

TC-28

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

TRAFFIC CONTROL SUPERVISOR

(12/12/2018)

This provision supersedes the requirements of Article 1101-13.

Provide the services of at least one Traffic Control Supervisor for the project who is knowledgeable of TMP design, devices and application, and has full authority to ensure traffic is maintained in accordance with the plans and specifications and ensure all employees working inside NCDOT right of way have received the proper training appropriate to the job decisions each individual is required to make.

The Traffic Control Supervisor shall be on the project site overseeing all lane and road closures and median crossover operations to ensure traffic control devices are properly installed and adjusted as necessary. The Traffic Control Supervisor shall also make necessary changes to the traffic control operations and aide in the monitoring of traffic queuing.

At the Pre-Construction Conference, the Contractor shall identify a Traffic Control Supervisor that has the following qualifications:

- (1) A minimum 24 months of On-the-Job Training in supervision and work zone set up and implementation on similar projects.
- (2) Be certified by responsible party (contractor or NCDOT) to have the required experience and training and is qualified to perform the duties of this position. If certified by the Contractor, a notarized certification letter shall be furnished to the Engineer at the preconstruction meeting. The letter shall state the Traffic Control Supervisor is qualified, and state that the Traffic Control Supervisor has the authority to ensure traffic is maintained in accordance with the contract documents.

The Traffic Control Supervisor for the project shall perform the following:

- (1) During construction, be available or on call 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to address mobility and / or safety concerns within the work zone and direct / make any necessary changes in the traffic control operations in a timely and safe manner. The Contractor shall provide NCDOT the name of the Traffic Control Supervisor and support personnel, and the phone number(s) where they can be reached 24 hours per day, seven days per week.
- (2) Coordinate and cooperate with traffic control supervisors of adjacent, and overlapping construction projects, as well as construction projects in proximity to the subject project, to ensure safe and adequate traffic control setup is maintained throughout the project at all times, including periods of construction inactivity.
- (3) Coordinate and Cooperate with the Engineer, the Regional Traffic Management Center (RTMC), and the Statewide Operations Center (STOC) for the utilization of RTMC/STOC Managed Portable Changeable Message Signs on I-26 and along alternate routes for the purpose of Incident Management.

TC-29

I-4400BB & C

Buncombe and Henderson Counties

- (3) Coordinate with the Engineer, Law Enforcement, first responders, and other city and state agencies during emergencies.
- (4) Provide traffic control setup that ensures safe traffic operations and workers' safety throughout the construction area.
- (5) Attend all scheduled traffic control coordination meetings, as required by the Engineer.
- (6) Monitor traffic delays and backups within the work zone.

**PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS
LIGHTING**

1.00 DESCRIPTION

The work covered by this Section consists of furnishing, installing, connecting, and placing into satisfactory operating condition roadway and rest area lighting at locations shown on the plans. Perform all work in accordance with these Special Provisions, the Plans, the National Electrical Code, and North Carolina Department of Transportation "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" (*2018 Standard Specifications*).

Perform all work in conformance with Division 14 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except as modified or added to by these Special Provisions. Install all bore pits outside the clear zone, as defined in the AASHTO Roadside Design Guide or as directed by the Engineer.

In addition to the requirements of Division 1400, other specific Sections of the *2018 Standard Specifications* applicable to the work on this project are listed below.

Section 1401	High Mount Standard and Portable Drive Unit
Section 1404	Light Standards
Section 1407	Electric Service Pole and Lateral
Section 1408	Light Control System
Section 1409	Electrical Duct
Section 1410	Feeder Circuits
Section 1411	Electrical Junction Boxes

1.10 ELECTRICAL POWER AT REST AREAS

Electrical power for site and roadway lighting at the two rest areas will be provided through the building electrical service.

2.00 LIGHT STANDARD LIGHT EMITTING DIODE (LED) LUMINAIRES**2.10 DESCRIPTION**

The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and installing LED roadway and post top luminaires on new metal single arm and post top light standards described in other sections of these Project Special Provisions. Mounting height for roadway single arm and twin arm standards to be installed at the US 25 (Asheville Highway) interchange is 45'. Mounting height for davit light standards to be installed at the rest areas is 35'. Mounting height for post top standards to be installed at the rest areas is 15'.

Furnish, install and place into satisfactory operation luminaire, either on a bracket arm or directly mounted to the standard, complete with all light sources, drivers, wiring inside standard from circuit conductors to luminaire, in-line breakaway fuseholders and fuses and ground wiring at the pole.

Type	HPS Replacement Equivalent	Color Temp	Min. % of initial output at 70k hours	Min. Maintained Delivered Lumens
185W LED	250W	3500K ±500K	83%	15,500
285W LED	400W	3500K ±500K	83%	19,150

Third party certified photometric files in IES format are required to be submitted with the catalog cuts for the proposed LED roadway luminaire. Photometric files must show that proposed luminaire will meet or exceed the design shown in the plans.

The LED post top luminaire shall have a contemporary look such as the Cree THE EDGE Area Round or the Beacon Slide luminaires. This is not meant as a specification for these luminaires. These manufacturers and models are provided for reference only.

The manufacturer shall state the Light Loss Factor (LLF) used in the photometric calculations for the proposed luminaire. LLF shall be calculated as follows:

$$\text{LLF} = \text{Lamp Lumen Depreciation (LLD)} \times \text{Luminaire Dirt Depreciation (LDD)}$$

- Lamp Lumen Depreciation (LLD) shall be the value calculated and reported by the manufacturer based on the LM-80 and TM-21 reports for the proposed fixture for 70,000 hours at 25° C.
- Luminaire Dirt Depreciation (LDD) = 0.90

2.20 MATERIALS

2.21 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

Unless stated otherwise, the requirements below apply to roadway, davit and post top luminaires.

A. General Requirements

- LM-79 photometric test reports shall be provided for all LED luminaires. LM-79 luminaire photometric reports shall be produced by an independent test laboratory and include the following:
 - Name of test laboratory. The test laboratory must hold National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) accreditation for the IES LM-79 test procedure or must be qualified, verified, and recognized through the U.S. Department of Energy's CALiPER program.
 - Report number
 - Date
 - Complete luminaire catalog number. Catalog number tested must match the catalog number of the luminaire submitted, except for variations which do not affect performance.
 - Description of luminaire, LED light source(s), and LED driver(s)
 - Goniophotometry

- Colorimetry
- LM-80 lumen maintenance test report shall be provided for each respective LED light source.
- Luminaire shall be constructed of a single piece die cast aluminum housing. Each luminaire shall be finished gray in color unless otherwise noted.
- The luminaire shall have a 7 pin ANSI C136.41 compliant photocontrol receptacle for future expansion capabilities. Provide a shorting cap for all luminaires installed in the rest areas.
- Provide a summary of reliability testing performed for LED driver.
- Roadway luminaire maximum total power consumption shall not exceed the values shown in the table above. Post top luminaire maximum power consumption shall not exceed 100W. Nominal luminaire input wattage shall account for nominal applied voltage and any reduction in driver efficiency due to sub-optimal driver loading.
- Roadway luminaire shall have a maximum Backlight, Uplight & Glare (BUG) rating of 3-0-3 and an IESNA distribution of Type III. Post top luminaire shall have a maximum BUG rating of 3-0-3 and an IESNA distribution of Type V.
- Minimum Ingress Protection (IP) dust and moisture ratings for the luminaire electrical components (driver and surge protection) and luminaire optical components shall be IP65 and IP66, respectively, as specified in ANSI C136.25.
- Roadway luminaire shall have an external label per ANSI C136.15.
- All luminaires shall have an internal label per ANSI C136.22, respectively. Internal label shall identify the manufacturer, year and month of manufacture and the manufacturer's part number.
- Luminaires shall start and operate in -20°C to +40°C ambient.
- Luminaires shall be rated for continuous service at an ambient temperature of 40°C (104°F)
- Electrically test fully assembled luminaires before shipment from factory.
- Effective Projected Area (EPA) and weight of the luminaires shall not exceed 1.4 square feet and 46 lbs.
- Luminaires shall be designed for ease of electrical component replacement.
- Luminaires shall be rated for minimum 2G vibration, minimum, per ANSI C136.31.
- LED light sources and drivers shall be RoHS compliant.
- The luminaire manufacturer shall have no less than five (5) years of experience in manufacturing LED-based lighting products and the manufacturing facility must be ISO 9001 certified.
- Luminaire shall have a 1.25" to 2.0" adjustable tenon mount for connection to luminaire bracket arm assembly.
- Pole hardware, nuts, bolts, and washers, etc. shall be made from 18-8 stainless steel, or steel conforming to ASTM A307 galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153.
- Grommets shall be installed in cable entry holes. Cable entry holes shall be free from sharp edges which might cut conductors or an ungloved hand.

- All conductors inside the luminaire shall be neatly secured with tie-wraps as needed to prevent pinch points and assist in trouble shooting.
- B. Driver
- Shall be 0V-10V dimmable.
 - Rated case temperature shall be suitable for operation in the luminaire operating in the ambient temperature range of -20°C to +40°C.
 - Luminaires installed at the US 25 interchange shall be rated for 480VAC at 50/60 Hz, and shall operate normally for input voltage fluctuations of $\pm 10\%$.
 - Luminaires installed at the rest areas shall be rated for 240VAC at 50/60 Hz, and shall operate normally for input voltage fluctuations of $\pm 10\%$.
 - Shall have a minimum Power Factor (PF) of 0.90 at full input power and across specified voltage range.
 - Shall provide UL Class II output.
- C. Surge Suppression
- Integral surge protection shall meet ANSI/IEEE C62.45 procedures based on ANSI/IEEE C62.41.2 definitions for standard and optional waveforms for location category C-High 10kV/10kA test, IEC 61000-4-2 (Electrostatic Discharge) 8kV Air/4kV Contact test and IEC 61000-4-4 (Fast Transients).
- D. Electromagnetic interference
- Luminaires shall have a maximum Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) of 20% at full input power and across specified voltage range.
 - Luminaires shall comply with FCC 47 CFR part 15 non-consumer RFI/EMI standards.
- E. Electrical safety testing
- Luminaires shall be listed for wet locations.
 - Luminaires shall be UL listed and labeled.
- F. Finish
- Luminaires shall be painted with a corrosion resistant polyester powdered paint with a minimum 2.0 mil thickness.
 - Luminaires shall exceed a rating of six per ASTM D1654 after 1000 hours of salt spray fog testing per ASTM B117.
 - The coating shall exhibit no greater than 30% reduction of gloss per ASTM D523, after 500 hours of QUV testing at ASTM G154 Cycle 6.
 - Exterior surfaces shall be smooth and free of burrs.
- G. Thermal management
- Mechanical design of protruding external surfaces (heat sink fins) on roadway luminaries shall facilitate hose-down cleaning and discourage debris accumulation.
 - Liquids or moving parts will not be allowed for thermal management.

H. Color Quality

- Minimum Color Rendering Index (CRI) of 70 with a Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) of 3000K to 4000K

I. Optics

- Transmissive optical components shall be applied in accordance with OEM design guidelines to ensure suitability for the thermal/mechanical/chemical environment.

J. The following shall be in accordance with corresponding sections of ANSI C136.37

- All internal components shall be assembled and pre-wired using modular electrical connections.
- Terminal blocks shall be used for incoming AC lines. Terminal blocks shall be easily accessible to installers or repair personnel. Wire nuts are prohibited inside the luminaire housing.

K. Latching and hinging

- Refractor and housing door holders and hinges shall be designed to maintain positive control of door to the luminaire body so as not to allow the accidental disengagement of either door.
- Drivers shall be mounted to a housing door designed to be opened from the bottom of the luminaire. Housing door shall allow easy removal for troubleshooting/repair on the ground.

L. Manufacturer or local sales representative shall provide installation and troubleshooting support via telephone and/or email.**2.30 WARRANTY**

Provide a minimum ten-year warranty covering maintained integrity and functionality of the luminaire housing, wiring, and connections, LED light source(s) and LED driver. Negligible light output from more than 10 percent of the LED packages constitutes luminaire failure.

Warranty period shall begin after project acceptance by the Department. Supplier shall furnish documentation of warranty procedures to the Contractor stating that warranty is for NCDOT.

2.40 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Level and secure each luminaire in all directions. Adjust any luminaires, as directed by the Engineer, to provide optimal illumination distribution.

All LED packages on all luminaires must be operating normally at contract completion. Any luminaire displaying improper operating characteristics prior to contract completion will be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Department.

2.50 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The quantity of Post Top LED luminaires, measured as provided above, will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "Post Top Luminaires, LED, Type V" of the appropriate type and style. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of furnishing and installing the luminaire, wiring inside the standard from circuit conductors to luminaire, in-line breakaway fuses and ground wiring at the pole.

The quantity of Roadway LED luminaires, measured as provided above, will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "Roadway Luminaires, LED, Type III" of the appropriate type and style. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of furnishing and installing the luminaire, wiring inside the standard from circuit conductors to luminaire, in-line breakaway fuses and ground wiring at the pole.

Payment will be made under:

Roadway Luminaries, LED, Type III.....	Each
Post Top Luminaire, LED, Type V.....	Each

3.00 HIGH MAST LIGHT EMITTING DIODE (LED) LUMINAIRES

3.10 DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install and place into satisfactory operation, LED luminaires on high mount standards as detailed in these Special Provisions.

The Contractor shall supply Holophane or Cooper LED high mount luminaires as specified below or approved equal.

Mounting Height	# of Fixtures	Holophane Part Number	Cooper Part Number
120'	8	HMLED3-PK3-40K-HVOLT-G-AW-P7	GAN-AF-10-LED-8-5WQ-AP-MA-4N7
100'	6	HMLED3-PK3-40K-HVOLT-G-AW-P7	GAN-AF-10-LED-8-5WQ-AP-MA-4N7
80'	8	HMLED3-PK1-40K-HVOLT-G-AW-P7	GAN-AF-06-LED-8-5WQ-AP-MA-4N7
60'	4	HMLED3-PK1-40K-HVOLT-G-AW-P7	GAN-AF-06-LED-8-5WQ-AP-MA-4N7

Any alternate luminaire submitted for approval must meet the minimum requirements in the table and sections below.

Mounting Height	Max. LED Fixture Wattage	Number & HPS Replacement Equivalent	Color Temp	Min. % of initial output at 70k hours	Min. Maintained Delivered Lumens (per fixture)
120'	560W	8 x 750W	3500K \pm 500K	87%	54,000
100'	560W	6 x 750W	3500K \pm 500K	87%	54,000
80'	335W	8 x 400W	3500K \pm 500K	87%	27,000
60'	335W	4 x 400W	3500K \pm 500K	87%	27,000

The Contractor shall supply the Department with current catalog cuts and 3rd party certified photometric data files in Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) format for any alternate high mount luminaire submitted for approval. The Department will thoroughly evaluate alternate luminaires to determine if proposed alternate high mount luminaire meets or exceeds design criteria.

The manufacturer shall state the Light Loss Factor (LLF) used in the photometric calculations for the proposed luminaire. LLF shall be calculated as follows:

$$\text{LLF} = \text{Lamp Lumen Depreciation (LLD)} \times \text{Luminaire Dirt Depreciation (LDD)}$$

- Lamp Lumen Depreciation (LLD) shall be the value calculated and reported by the manufacturer based on the LM-80 and TM-21 reports for the proposed fixture for 70,000 hours at 25° C.
- Luminaire Dirt Depreciation (LDD) = 0.90

High mount luminaire retrofit LED kits are not an acceptable alternative.

3.20 MATERIALS

3.21 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Requirements

- LM-79 photometric test reports shall be provided for all LED luminaires. LM-79 luminaire photometric reports shall be produced by an independent test laboratory and include the following:
 - Name of test laboratory. The test laboratory must hold National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) accreditation for the IES LM-79 test procedure or must be qualified, verified, and recognized through the U.S. Department of Energy's CALiPER program.
 - Report number
 - Date
 - Complete luminaire catalog number. Catalog number tested must match the catalog number of the luminaire submitted, except for variations which do not affect performance.
 - Description of luminaire, LED light source(s), and LED driver(s)
 - Goniophotometry
 - Colorimetry

- LM-80 lumen maintenance test report shall be provided for each respective LED light source.
- Luminaire shall be constructed of aluminum. Each luminaire shall be finished gray in color unless otherwise noted.
- The luminaire shall have a 7 pin ANSI C136.41 compliant photocontrol receptacle for future expansion capabilities.
- Provide a summary of reliability testing performed for LED driver.
- Luminaires maximum total power consumption shall not exceed the values shown in the table above. Nominal luminaire input wattage shall account for nominal applied voltage and any reduction in driver efficiency due to sub-optimal driver loading.
- Luminaire shall have a maximum Backlight, Uplight & Glare (BUG) rating of 5-0-5 and an IESNA distribution of Type V as required to meet the spacing, the average maintained footcandle level and the average to minimum uniformity ratio requirements shown on the plans. The same BUG rating and distribution type shall be used throughout the project.
- Luminaire LED modules shall meet dust and moisture rating of IP-66, minimum.
- Luminaire shall have an external label per ANSI C136.15.
- Luminaires shall have an internal label per ANSI C136.22.
- Luminaires shall start and operate in -20°C to +40°C ambient.
- Electrically test fully assembled luminaires before shipment from factory.
- Effective Projected Area (EPA) and weight of the luminaires shall not exceed 1.3 square feet and 65 lbs.
- Luminaires shall be designed for ease of electrical component replacement.
- Luminaires shall be rated for minimum 2G vibration, minimum, per ANSI C136.31-2010
- LED light sources and drivers shall be RoHS compliant.
- The luminaire manufacturer shall have no less than five (5) years of experience in manufacturing LED-based lighting products and the manufacturing facility must be ISO 9001 certified.
- Pole hardware, nuts, bolts, and washers, etc. shall be made from 18-8 stainless steel, or steel conforming to ASTM A307 galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153.

B. Driver

- Shall be 0V-10V dimmable.
- Rated case temperature shall be suitable for operation in the luminaire operating in the ambient temperature range of -20°C to +40°C.
- Shall be rated for 480VAC at 50/60 Hz, and shall operate normally for input voltage fluctuations of $\pm 10\%$.
- Shall have a minimum Power Factor (PF) of 0.90 at full input power and across specified voltage range.

C. Surge Suppression

- Integral surge protection shall meet ANSI/IEEE C62.45 procedures based on ANSI/IEEE C62.41.2 definitions for standard and optional waveforms for location

category C-High 10kV/10kA test, IEC 61000-4-2 (Electrostatic Discharge) 8kV Air/4kV Contact test and IEC 61000-4-4 (Fast Transients).

D. Electromagnetic interference

- Luminaires shall have a maximum Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) of 20% at full input power and across specified voltage range.
- Luminaires shall comply with FCC 47 CFR part 15 non-consumer RFI/EMI standards.

E. Electrical safety testing

- Luminaires shall be listed for wet locations.
- Luminaires shall be UL listed and labeled.

F. Finish

- Luminaires shall be painted with a corrosion resistant polyester powdered paint with a minimum 2.0 mil thickness.
- Luminaires shall exceed a rating of six per ASTM D1654 after 1000 hours of salt spray fog testing per ASTM B117.
- The coating shall exhibit no greater than 30% reduction of gloss per ASTM D523, after 500 hours of QUV testing at ASTM G154 Cycle 6.

G. Thermal management

- Mechanical design of protruding external surfaces (heat sink fins) shall facilitate hose-down cleaning and discourage debris accumulation.

H. Color Quality

- Minimum Color Rendering Index (CRI) of 70 with a Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) of 3000K to 4000K

I. Optics

- Transmissive optical components shall be applied in accordance with OEM design guidelines to ensure suitability for the thermal/mechanical/chemical environment.

J. The following shall be in accordance with corresponding sections of ANSI C136.37

- All internal components shall be assembled and pre-wired using modular electrical connections.
- Terminal blocks shall be used for incoming AC lines
- Latching and hinging

K. Manufacturer or local sales representative shall provide installation and troubleshooting support via telephone and/or email.

3.30 WARRANTY

Provide a minimum five-year warranty covering maintained integrity and functionality of the luminaire housing, wiring, and connections, LED light source(s) and LED driver. Negligible light output from more than 10 percent of the LED packages constitutes luminaire failure.

Warranty period shall begin after project acceptance by the Department.

3.40 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Level and secure each luminaire in all directions. Securely terminate the wiring for each high mount luminaire and include an equipment grounding conductor to bond the housing to the supply cord grounding conductor.

Adjust any luminaires, as directed by the Engineer, to provide optimal illumination distribution.

All LED packages on all luminaires must be operating normally at contract completion. Any luminaire displaying improper operating characteristics prior to contract completion will be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Department.

3.50 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The high mount luminaires measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price per each “(height) High Mount Luminaires – LED”. Such price and payment will be considered full compensation for providing and installing the LED high mount luminaire on the carrier ring tenon arm and connecting the LED high mount luminaire to the supply cord on the carrier ring.

Payment will be made under:

(height) High Mount Luminaire – LED Each

4.00 ROADWAY LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

4.10 DESCRIPTION

The work covered under this section consists of furnishing and installing an entire control system, including enclosure, control panel, breakers, terminal blocks, wiring, conduits, lightning arrester, a concrete foundation, metal pole and galvanized slotted channel is also included.

The control system will be standard electrical components in a stainless steel enclosure mounted on a metal pole with a concrete foundation as shown in the contract.

4.20 MATERIALS

Refer to Division 10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Conduit	1091-3
Portland Cement Concrete, Class A	1000-4
Wire and Cable	1091-2, 1400-2

Provide concrete foundations and wire in accordance with the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Use a piece of 4" rigid galvanized steel conduit (RGC), embedded in concrete as shown in the plans, for mounting the control system.

Provide a NEMA type 3R stainless steel enclosure with external stainless mounting flanges, drip shield, back panel and continuous hinge door with a print pocket. Provide a door closing mechanism interlocked with a flange mounted operator handle to prevent the opening of the door with the service circuit breaker in the ON position, except by use of safety override devices.

Provide an enclosure approximately 36" (h) x 30" (w) x 10" (d) unless noted otherwise in the plans. Provide only openings necessary for the entrance of conduits as shown in the plans. Do not use knockouts. Ensure the enclosure conforms with NEC Article 312 and mount the devices so the NEC clearances will be provided, except use 1.5" where not specified or noted in the tables for minimum wire bending space.

Use minimum 1-5/8" x 1-5/8" galvanized slotted steel framing channel with straps and bolts for the mounting brackets and hardware for attaching the enclosure. Use galvanized finish on the brackets and hardware and coat all field cuts or scratches with organic zinc repair paint.

Provide a neutral bar, bonded to the panel, with sufficient box lug type terminals to accept the required number of wires.

Mount components to the back panel with manufacturer supplied mounting brackets or permanently attached screw studs.

Use a service circuit breaker providing an minimum interrupting rating of 22,000 A. Provide thermal magnetic, molded case, permanent trip breakers. Provide multi-tap, solderless, load side box lugs or distribution terminal blocks of the appropriate size. Use insulating material approved for NEMA 3R applications. Provide a breaker with a voltage and amperage rating as indicated in the plans.

Use feeder circuit breakers which are rated 14,000 A minimum interrupting capacity and have an open type molded case with a non-adjustable thermal magnetic trip setting as noted in the plans.

Where Communication Gateways are required, provide a single pole, open type gateway circuit breaker rated at 240 VAC phase to ground with a minimum interrupting current capacity of 5,000 A and a high magnetic trip setting of 15 A.

Use a Type 1 surge protection device (SPD) meeting UL 1449 and UL 96A, designed to contain and arrest an arc of 20,000 A. Install the SPD on the load side of the service breaker.

Use terminals and lugs rated for the connection of the appropriate size copper conductors. All conductors shall be made of copper and neatly wrapped in bundles or run in plastic raceways.

Perform all galvanizing in accordance with Section 1076.

Provide a drawing to scale showing the location, brand and catalog number of each component of the control system for approval. The completed light control system shall be marked "Suitable for Use as Service Equipment", in a prominent location in the enclosure, in accordance with NEC Article 409.110. If the control system is not made in a certified UL 60947-4-1A Panel Shop, a third party, recognized by the Department of Insurance as having the authority, shall label the control systems.

4.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Construct the new control system foundation at the new location as shown in Standard Drawing 1408 of the Roadway Standard Drawings, with the top of the foundation 3 inches above finished grade.

Fasten the enclosure to the pole by means of a galvanized bracket assembly as shown in the plans. Make all cuts square and remove all rough edges. Have mounting holes match existing mounting holes of the enclosure.

Arrange all conduits entering the enclosure in a neat symmetrical manner and extend directly downward into the foundation. Install six RGC feeder circuit conduits as shown in the Roadway Standard Drawings.

Install a Control System Junction Box as shown in the plans. Stub all feeder circuit conduits and spare conduits from Control System in the Control System Junction Box. See Section 1412 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* for junction box construction methods. See plans for conduit sizes. Place pull cord in any unused conduits and cap unused conduit in junction box.

To prevent the creation of electrically parallel paths, install a bonded conduit choke on the underground termination point of the system grounding conductor conduit in accordance with NEC Article 250.64(E). Do not terminate the system grounding conduit under the concrete foundation pad.

Install a grounding electrode system consisting of a minimum of two ground rods spaced not less than 6 feet apart at all new lighting control system panels. Connect ground rods with an appropriately sized bonding jumper.

Apply two coats of organic zinc repair paint to all field cut metal and conduit threads as specified in Article 1076-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Install a 4” to 2” galvanized reducing bushing to the top of the 4” RGC the control system enclosure is mounted to. Install a 10’ section of 2” RGC on the reducing bushing and install a cap on the top of the 2” RGC.

4.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Lighting Control System will be measured and paid for as the actual number of the lighting control systems that have been provided, installed and accepted. Such price and payment shall be considered full compensation for the foundation, conduits, enclosure with components and mounting hardware.

Payment will be made under:

Roadway Lighting Control System..... Each

5.00 COMMUNICATION GATEWAY

5.10 DESCRIPTION

The Contractor shall provide and install a communication gateway at the roadway lighting control panels noted on the plans. The communication gateway will be used to provide communication from the control nodes on the luminaires to a centralized monitoring software package. The communication gateway will be mounted on a piece of rigid galvanized conduit installed above the lighting control panel.

5.20 MATERIAL

The communication gateway shall be a GE LightGrid gateway rated for the voltage shown in the plans.

Use conduit and conductors as specified in Article 1400-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Provide stainless steel straps, galvanized conduit hangers, galvanized bolts, washers and nuts, and liquid-tight flexible metallic conduit (LFMC).

5.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Mount the communication gateway to the 2” RGC pole, installed as part of the control system special provision, using the bands included with the gateway. Remove an existing cable gland in the bottom of the gateway enclosure and replace with a ½” RGC fitting. Install ½” RGC and appurtenances required to route conduit to bottom of lighting control panel enclosure. Transition RGC to LFMC to make the turn into the bottom of the enclosure. Secure LFMC to bottom of enclosure using a weatherproof fitting. Install a bonding bushing on the LFMC fitting inside the enclosure and attach to bonding jumper inside the enclosure.

Strap standoffs with rigid conduit hangers to the 2” RGC and secure ½” conduit to the conduit hanger. Install #12 THWN conductors inside the ½” RGC for power from the gateway circuit breaker in the control system enclosure to the gateway. Use a UV resistant cable tie to secure the magnetic GPS antenna to the frame.

See Section 7.00 below for commissioning requirements.

5.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Communication Gateway will be measured and paid as the actual number of communication gateways installed and accepted. Such price and payment includes mounting of the communication gateway on the 2” RGC pipe, installation of the RGC conduit from the gateway into the control system and installation of the conductors.

Payment will be made under:

Communication Gateway.....Each

6.00 CONTROL NODE

6.10 DESCRIPTION

The Contractor shall provide and install a communication node with each LED luminaire installed at the US 25 (Asheville Highway) interchange. The communication node will be used to interface with the Department’s Statewide lighting control system.

6.20 MATERIALS

The communication node shall be a GE LightGrid version 2.0 (or higher) node rated for the same service voltage as the luminaire. No other materials are required for this section.

6.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install communication node on the seven-pin photocell receptacle of the luminaire. The communication node utilizes a twist-lock connection to ensure positive connection to the luminaire.

See Section 7.00 below for commissioning requirements.

6.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Control Node will be measured and paid for as the actual number of control nodes provided, installed and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

Control Node Each

7.00 SMART CONTROL SYSTEM INITIALIZATION AND COMMISSIONING

7.10 DESCRIPTION

The Communication Gateway(s) and Control Nodes as described in the prior sections require commissioning to enable communication with the existing Statewide lighting control system.

The Contractor shall coordinate with Brady/Trane Services (Brady) at 919-232-5764 or warranty.request@bradyservices.com to have Brady commission the smart controls system, incorporate new gateways and smart nodes into the LightGrid infrastructure and troubleshoot communication issues. Brady shall bill the contractor directly for these services.

7.20 MATERIALS

No materials are required for this section.

7.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

As part of this contract, the Contractor shall provide new GE LightGrid gateways and control nodes. See Sections 5.00 and 6.00, respectfully, of these Project Special Provisions for gateway and control node requirements.

As a function of the LightGrid system, the Contractor is unable to turn the lights on for testing during the day. The luminaires installed as part of this project are powered 24/7; however, the control node installed on each luminaire has an integral photocontrol, preventing the luminaire from operating during daylight hours.

The Contractor shall notify Brady at least two weeks prior to beginning the construction work. Brady will remotely commission the new LightGrid system, override the internal control node photocontrol and turn all of the control nodes on for 24/7 operation for the duration of the lighting construction. This will allow the Contractor to turn the lighting circuits on and off during the day via the breakers in the lighting control panel.

The Contractor shall notify Brady again when lighting work is complete. At that point Brady will remotely confirm that there is communication between the control nodes and the gateway, and will place the system to normal dusk to dawn operation.

In the event that a communication failure of some, or all, smart nodes or the gateway is encountered, the Contractor shall coordinate with Brady to troubleshoot and resolve the failure.

7.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The Contractor will be reimbursed by the Department for the actual verified cost of charges by Brady for LightGrid service charges. The service charges may include efforts by Brady to: commission the newly installed gateways and control nodes; place the GE LightGrid system into

24/7 operation; place the system in normal dusk to dawn operation; troubleshoot communication issues with the LightGrid system.

8.00 DAVIT STYLE LIGHT STANDARD

8.10 DESCRIPTION

The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and installing light standards complete with davit style arms 35 foot mounting height with breakaway bases.

8.20 MATERIALS

Provide a standard that meets the 80-mph design criteria of the AASHTO "Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals." Provide all poles from the same manufacturer.

Provide 35 foot mounting height, tapered shaft poles with 6-foot davit arms and breakaway base.

The standard shaft shall be one piece round tapered shaft from seamless tubing. The davit arm shall be one piece round tapered that slip fits onto a tapered pole top tenon where it is fastened with stainless steel through bolts. Both shall be designed to support a luminaire with minimum weight, projected area and center of gravity as indicated in the section of these Special Provisions titles "LED Luminaire" for the light standard luminaire.

Provide a protective grommet at the arm-to-pole connection, to protect wiring during installation and maintenance.

Provide a cast aluminum transformer base that complies with AASHTO "Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals." Use anchor bolts, washers, nuts and shims which comply with the Specifications and details shown in the plans. Use connecting bolts as recommended by the light standard and transformer base manufacturer(s).

The shaft and the davit arm shall be 6063 aluminum alloy tubing. The finish shall be smooth and shall be free of scratches or dents and shall have suitable protection for handling during erection.

Pole hardware, nuts, bolts, and washers, etc. shall be made from 18-8 stainless steel, or steel conforming to ASTM A307 galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153.

Drawings submitted for approval shall show material specifications for each component and shall have a certification statement concerning conformance with AASHTO design criteria.

All davit style light standards shall be UL listed in the "Luminaire Poles" Category.

8.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Lay out and identify light standards as shown on the plans. Adjust final location as per direction of the Engineer to avoid conflicts with other objects. Protect the shaft during storage and installation to ensure against scratches or dents. Use proper blocking and protection to prevent warping or discoloration when laid on the ground, and to prevent damage by other construction work.

Install standards vertically plumb, and use connecting bolts, washers and nuts compatible with the transformer base as recommended by the light standard manufacturer and which comply with the contract. Provide the required luminaire mounting height which is defined as vertical distance from luminaire to pavement surface.

8.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The quantity of light standards to be paid for will be the actual number of light standards with davit style arms and transformer bases that have been installed and accepted.

The quantity of light standards measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "Davit Style Light Standard, MH 35', SA 6'" of the appropriate type. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of furnishing and installing the standard with davit style arm and transformer base. The ground rod to be installed near the pole is incidental to the davit light standard.

Payment will be made under:

Davit Style Light Standard, MH 35', SA 6' Each

9.00 POST TOP STANDARDS

9.10 DESCRIPTION

The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and installing post top light standards with contemporary style post top luminaires and breakaway base.

9.20 MATERIALS

Provide a 6063 aluminum alloy round tubing post top light standard that meets the 80-mph design criteria of the AASHTO "Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals."

The pole shall be sized to provide a nominal luminaire mounting height of 15 ft. when adding transformer base height. The pole shall have a top mounted tenon (minimum 2 3/8" O.D. x 3") for mounting the luminaire.

Use pole hardware, nuts, bolts, and washers, etc. made from 18-8 stainless steel, aluminum alloy 2024-T4, or steel conforming to ASTM A307 and galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 153.

Drawings submitted for approval shall show material specifications, dimensions and shall have a certification statement concerning conformance with AASHTO design criteria. Only reviewed and approved materials will be used.

Provide a cast aluminum transformer base for each post top light standard that complies with AASHTO "Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals." Use anchor bolts, washers, nuts and shims which comply with the Specifications and details shown in the plans. Use connecting bolts as recommended by the post top light standard and transformer base manufacturer(s).

All post top light standards shall be UL listed in the "Luminaire Poles" Category.

9.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Identify light standards as shown on the plans. Use scaled dimensions to locate light standards. Adjust final location as per direction of the Engineer to avoid conflicts with other objects. Protect the shaft during storage and installation to ensure against scratches or dents. Use proper blocking and protection to prevent warping or discoloration when laid on the ground, and to prevent damage by other construction work.

Install all standards vertically plumb, and provide the required luminaire mounting height.

9.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The quantity of post top standards to be paid for will be the actual number that have been installed and accepted.

The quantity of post top standards measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "Post Top Light Standard" of the appropriate type. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of furnishing and installing the standard and the breakaway base.

Payment will be made under:

Post Top Light Standard, Type AB, 15' MH Each

10.00 REST AREA LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

10.10 DESCRIPTION

The work covered by this section includes the furnishing and installing of all materials necessary to provide a wall mounted lighting control system in a rest area service building as shown on the plans.

10.20 MATERIALS

Provide a 5/8" thick Exterior Grade AD plywood back panel slightly larger than the layout of the control system components.

Provide a 6" x 6" x 4' wire trough. The wire trough shall be long enough to accommodate all components and connections. The trough shall be constructed of formed and welded steel that is painted or galvanized, with one removable side plate that is secured in place with corrosion resistant screws, and has only the holes necessary for the conduits shown in the plans. Wire trough with knockouts is not acceptable.

Provide a lighting panel consisting of a surface mount load center, with copper bus, factory installed main breaker, 22,000 Amps short circuit current rating sized as shown in the plans, a minimum of 16 single-pole branch breaker spaces and an equipment ground bar. Use double-pole branch breakers with 10,000 Amps short circuit current rating sized as shown in the plans.

Provide electrically operated, mechanically held contactors with coil clearing contacts. Ensure latching without the use of hooks or semi-permanent magnets. Use contactors rated for 240 VAC, 30 amps, with 120 VAC coils and 4 poles each.

Provide a control relay rated at 120 VAC, with one normally open contact, one normally closed contact, and "continuous load" rating and "inductive make and break" rating greater than that required by the mechanically held contactors. Install control relay in a NEMA 1 enclosure.

Use a control selector switch rated standard duty, with three positions, and maintained contacts, in a surface mount NEMA 1 enclosure. Provide contacts with an inductive rating of 5 amps continuous, 3600 VA make, and 3600 VA break. Provide a legend plate that indicates "On-Off-Auto".

Use a "dual voltage" photocontrol with surge protection and single pole, single throw, contact with a minimum contact rating of 1000 watts. Provide a normally closed contact that is "daylight energized," with a turn on range of approximately 3 footcandles. Mount the photocontrol in a three-prong locking type receptacle, conforming to NEMA Standard C136.10.

Use number 8 AWG type THHN stranded copper conductors on the line side of the mechanically held contactors, and number 12 AWG stranded copper conductors for the control circuit, conforming to the requirements of Article 1400-2C of the Standard Specifications titled "Wire". Size all other conductors as shown in the plans.

Use rigid galvanized steel conduit in accordance with Article 1400-2B of the Standard Specifications titled "Conduit".

10.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Use the plywood panel for mounting components on all walls other than masonry. Arrange the components as shown on the equipment layout detail in the plans.

Install conductors and conduit in accordance with Articles 1400-4F of the Standard Specifications titled "Wiring Methods" and 1400-4E "Conduit Installation". Clearly identify the phase, neutral, and contact conductors for the photocontrol in the wire trough.

Install flashing around the conduit extended through the roof to the photo control.

Securely fasten each component to the wall or panel with corrosion resistant bolts and inserts. Utilize all mounting holes in each component. Install a galvanized washer between the component and masonry walls to assure a minimum of 1/4" air space.

Paint the plywood panel the same color as the wall. After the control system components are installed, clean, prime, and paint all exposed surfaces of enclosures and conduit with a premium quality paint that best matches the color of the adjacent walls. Mask all legend plates, nameplates, etc. while painting.

10.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The quantity of rest area lighting control systems to be paid for will be the actual number of rest area lighting control systems that have been installed and accepted.

The quantity of rest area lighting control systems, measured as provided above, will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "Lighting Control Equipment, Type RA 120/240V" of the appropriate type. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of furnishing and installing an entire control system, including mounting panel, control circuit, photocontrol, contactors, breakers, and selector switch.

Payment will be made under:

Lighting Control Equipment, Type RA 120V/240V Each

11.00 STANDARD FOUNDATION TYPE R1S AND R1S2

11.10 DESCRIPTION

Work covered by this section shall be in conformance with the Special Provision titled "Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles" found in other sections of this contract.

11.20 MATERIALS

Same as the Special Provision titled "Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles" found in other sections of this contract.

11.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Light standard foundation type R1S for post top lights shall be equal to type R1 on standard drawing 1405.01 except as stated below.

The type R1S foundation shall be 24” diameter by 48” deep.

Anchor bolts supplied by the post top light manufacturer shall be cast into the concrete base and positioned per the manufacturer’s template.

Light standard foundation type R1S1 for flag pole lights shall be equal to type R1 on standard drawing 1405.01 except as stated below.

The type R1S1 foundation shall be 16” diameter by 24” deep. Integral anchor bolts are not required.

11.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The quantity of R1S and R1S1 foundations to be paid for will be the actual number that have been installed and accepted.

The quantity of R1S and R1S1 foundations measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price each for “R1S Foundation” and “R1S1 Foundation” of the appropriate type. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work and material required for excavating, furnishing and installing the foundation.

Payment will be made under:

R1S Foundation	Each
R1S1 Foundation	Each

12.00 FLAG POLE LUMINAIRE

12.10 DESCRIPTION

The work covered by this section includes furnishing and installing all materials necessary to provide a LED flood luminaire mounted on a concrete foundation near the flag pole at each rest area on the project. This luminaire is used to provide nighttime illumination on the United States flag.

The Contractor shall supply LED flood luminaires similar to the one specified below or approved equal. Manufacturer’s name and model number are given for descriptive purposes, to indicate a quality standard and are not intended to limit products to a particular manufacturer. Products deemed equal and approved by the Engineer will be accepted.

Beacon Lighting Product Description	Beacon Part Number
Alpha (LED) Floodlight	AL-U/36NB-80/5K/4X4/UNV/PCR-SC/PM/FV/GYS

Any alternate luminaire submitted for approval must meet the minimum requirements below.

12.20 MATERIALS

12.20.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Requirements

- LM-79 photometric test reports shall be provided for all LED luminaires. LM-79 luminaire photometric reports shall be produced by an independent test laboratory and include the following:
 - Name of test laboratory. The test laboratory must hold National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) accreditation for the IES LM-79 test procedure or must be qualified, verified, and recognized through the U.S. Department of Energy's CALiPER program.
 - Report number
 - Date
 - Complete luminaire catalog number. Catalog number tested must match the catalog number of the luminaire submitted, except for variations which do not affect performance.
 - Description of luminaire, LED light source(s), and LED driver(s)
 - Goniophotometry
 - Colorimetry
- LM-80 lumen maintenance test report shall be provided for each respective LED light source.
- Luminaire shall be constructed of die cast aluminum housing. Luminaire shall be finished gray in color unless otherwise noted.
- Luminaire shall provide a minimum of 9,440 lumens.
- Luminaires shall have a maximum lamp lumen depreciation (LLD) factor of 0.85 at 70,000 hours & 25°C. Provide a summary of reliability testing performed for LED driver.
- Nominal luminaire input wattage shall account for nominal applied voltage and any reduction in driver efficiency due to sub-optimal driver loading.
- Luminaires shall start and operate in -20° C to +40° C ambient.
- Luminaires shall be rated for continuous service at an ambient temperature of 40° C (104° F)
- Electrically test fully assembled luminaires before shipment from factory.
- Effective Projected Area (EPA) and weight of the luminaires shall not exceed 1.5 square feet and 30 pounds.
- Luminaires shall be designed for ease of electrical component replacement.

- Luminaires shall be rated for minimum 2G vibration, minimum, per ANSI C136.31.
- LED light sources and drivers shall be RoHS compliant.
- The luminaire manufacturer shall have no less than five (5) years of experience in manufacturing LED-based lighting products and the manufacturing facility must be ISO 9001 certified.
- Luminaire shall have a yoke or knuckle mount.
- Grommets shall be installed in cable entry holes. Cable entry holes shall be free from sharp edges which might cut conductors or an ungloved hand.
- All conductors inside the luminaire shall be neatly secured with tie-wraps as needed to prevent pinch points and assist in trouble shooting.

B. Driver

- Rated case temperature shall be suitable for operation in the luminaire operating in the ambient temperature range of -20°C to $+40^{\circ}\text{C}$.
- Shall be rated for 240VAC at 50/60 Hz, and shall operate normally for input voltage fluctuations of $\pm 10\%$.
- Shall have a minimum Power Factor (PF) of 0.90 at full input power and across specified voltage range.
- Shall provide UL Class II output.

C. Surge Suppression

- Integral surge protection shall meet ANSI/IEEE C62.45 procedures based on ANSI/IEEE C62.41.2 definitions for standard and optional waveforms for location category C 10kV/5kA test, IEC 61000-4-2 (Electrostatic Discharge) 8kV Air/4kV Contact test and IEC 61000-4-4 (Fast Transients).

D. Electromagnetic interference

- Luminaires shall have a maximum Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) of 20% at full input power and across specified voltage range.
- Luminaires shall comply with FCC 47 CFR part 15 non-consumer RFI/EMI standards.

E. Electrical safety testing

- Luminaires shall be listed for outside type locations.
- Luminaires shall be UL listed and labeled.

F. Finish

- Luminaires shall be painted with a corrosion resistant polyester powdered paint with a minimum 2.0 mil thickness.

- Luminaires shall exceed a rating of six per ASTM D1654 after 1000 hours of salt spray fog testing per ASTM B117.
- The coating shall exhibit no greater than 30% reduction of gloss per ASTM D523, after 500 hours of QUV testing at ASTM G154 Cycle 6.
- Exterior surfaces shall be smooth and free of burrs.

G. Thermal management

- Mechanical design of protruding external surfaces (heat sink fins) shall discourage debris accumulation.
- Liquids or moving parts will not be allowed for thermal management.

H. Color Quality

- Minimum Color Rendering Index (CRI) of 70 with a Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) of 5000K

I. Optics

- Transmissive optical components shall be applied in accordance with OEM design guidelines to ensure suitability for the thermal / mechanical / chemical environment.
- The LED light engines shall be contained behind a sealed and gasketed optical enclosure with an IP66 rating.

J. The following shall be in accordance with corresponding sections of ANSI C136.37

- All internal components shall be assembled and pre-wired using modular electrical connections.
- Terminal blocks shall be used for incoming AC lines. Terminal blocks shall be easily accessible to installers or repair personnel. Wire nuts shall be prohibited inside the luminaire housing.

K. Latching and hinging

- Refractor and housing hinges shall be designed to maintain positive control of door to the luminaire body so as not to allow the accidental disengagement.

Do not use aluminum conductors. Use single copper conductor with XHHW insulation from the nearby junction box to the flag light fixture.

12.30 WARRANTY

Provide a minimum five-year warranty covering maintained integrity and functionality of the luminaire housing, wiring, and connections, LED light source(s) and LED driver. Negligible light output from more than ten percent of the LED packages constitutes luminaire failure.

Warranty period shall begin after project acceptance by the Department. Supplier shall furnish documentation of warranty procedures to the Contractor stating that warranty is for NCDOT.

All LED packages on all luminaires must be operating normally at contract completion. Any luminaire displaying improper operating characteristics prior to contract completion will be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Department.

12.40 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Mount luminaire to a type R1S2 foundation. See Section 11.00 of these Special Provisions for R1S2 foundation requirements.

Flag pole luminaire shall be mounted to the R1S2 foundation using a 3” pier mount. The pier mount shall consist of a 2-3/8” tenon on a 12” square mounting plate. Follow manufacturer’s installation instructions for securing fixture and sealing fixture to prevent water infiltration.

Install PVC conduit from ground mounted junction box to and in the R1S2 foundation. Extend conduit in the foundation to the top of the foundation. See Roadway Lighting Plan Sheet E12 for details.

Level and secure each flag pole luminaire in all directions. Securely terminate the wiring for each flag pole luminaire and include an equipment grounding conductor to bond the housing to the supply cord grounding conductor.

Adjust any flag light luminaires, as directed by the Engineer, to provide optimal illumination distribution to the United States Flag.

All LED flag light luminaires must be operating normally at contract completion. Any flag light luminaire displaying improper operating characteristics prior to contract completion will be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Department.

12.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The flag pole luminaires measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price per each “Flag Pole Light”. Such price and payment will be considered full compensation for providing and installing the flag pole luminaire on the concrete base, and connection of circuitry.

Payment will be made under:

Flag Pole Light.....Each

13.00 REMOVE LIGHT STANDARDS

13.10 DESCRIPTION

The work covered by this section consists of the removal of existing single arm and twin arm metal light standards on breakaway bases and concrete foundations and existing fiberglass post top light standards at locations shown on the plans. The twin arm and single arm standards are less than 55' mounting height, and are attached to the foundations with anchor bolts. The post top light standards are less than 25' in mounting height. A number of the post top light standards are direct buried and a portion are on a base attached to a concrete foundation with anchor bolts.

13.20 MATERIALS

No materials are required for this work except such miscellaneous items as tape and terminal devices to dead-end circuits serving the light standards.

13.30 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Maintain operation of the existing lighting system until such time that it becomes in conflict with the actual construction work, or it becomes a hazard to traffic as determined by the Engineer.

Coordinate work with the NCDOT Traffic Services Supervisor and the Roadside Environmental Rest Area Engineer to assure that circuits can be de-energized where and when necessary.

Remove luminaire, light standard and arm(s), couplings, anchor nuts, washers, transformer bases with doors and connecting bolts and fuse holders.

Removed equipment shall be delivered, in good condition, to the gated NCDOT storage facility at mile marker 31 on I-26 in Asheville. The Contractor shall notify the Traffic Services Office by phone at 828-298-0094 during normal working hours at least 48 hours in advance to schedule pole delivery.

All hoisting and lifting shall be with rope or web slings fastened in such a manner as to prevent damaging or marking any of the salvaged materials. The Contractor shall provide proper transportation, protection and supports so that rain, etc. will not damage removed equipment. The Contractor shall furnish labor, blocking materials and equipment to unload and properly store all removed materials at the NCDOT storage facility.

Remove or abandon existing concrete light standard foundations as defined in Standard Specifications Article 1400-10. Dispose of the removed concrete, reinforcing steel and anchor bolts in a manner acceptable to the Engineer. Backfill the holes with suitable material and compact backfill as required.

Abandon or remove the conductors and the conduit for the removed light standards as shown on the plans. Refer to Standard Specifications Article 1400-10.

13.40 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The quantity of removed light standards to be paid for will be the actual number which have been dismantled from existing foundations and delivered in good condition to the NCDOT storage facility.

The quantity of removed foundations to be paid for will be the actual number which have been removed or abandoned and accepted.

The removed single arm light standards measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price per each "Remove Single Arm Light Standard". Such price and payment will be considered full compensation for disassembly and delivery of the shaft, arm, luminaire, fuseholders, transformer base and hardware.

The removed twin arm light standards measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price per each "Remove Twin Arm Light Standard". Such price and payment will be considered full compensation for disassembly and delivery of the shaft, arms, luminaires, fuseholders, transformer base and hardware.

The removed post top light standards measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price per each "Remove Post Top Light Standard". Such price and payment will be considered full compensation for disassembly and delivery of the shaft, luminaire, fuseholders, transformer base (where used) and hardware.

The removed foundations measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price per each "Remove Light Standard Foundation". Such price and payment will be considered full compensation for removing or abandoning foundation concrete, reinforcing steel and anchor bolts. It also includes backfilling the holes with suitable material and compaction the backfill material as required.

Payment will be made under:

- Remove Single Arm Light Standard.....Each
- Remove Twin Arm Light Standard.....Each
- Remove Post Top Light Standard.....Each
- Remove Light Standard Foundation.....Each



DocuSigned by:
Paul Chan
 F83C4985EEEF4A2...

5/23/2019

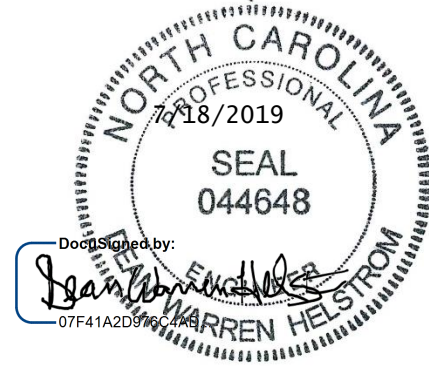
DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL
UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED

Project: I-4400BB & C

UC-1

County: Henderson

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS
Utility Construction



(Seal)

DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL
UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED

127 Bob Fitz Road, Suite 2
Gray, Tennessee 37615
Tel: (423) 467-8401 / Fax: (423) 467-8402

Revise the 2018 Standard Specifications as follows:

Division 15, Section 1500-General Utility Requirements

Page 15-1, Sub-article 1500-1 Description

Add the following sentences:

Construction of all water and sewer systems shall be in accordance with the NCDOT standards or the local jurisdictional standards whichever is more stringent and Special Provisions in effect at the time of bid.

Information regarding the City of Asheville is located at:

<https://www.ashevellenc.gov/departments/water/>

The latest copy of the City of Asheville Technical Specification is located at:

<https://www.ashevellenc.gov/civicax/filebank/blobload.aspx?BlobID=22960>

City of Asheville Approved Water Manufactures Product list as located at the following:

<https://www.ashevellenc.gov/civicax/filebank/blobload.aspx?BlobID=28642>

Cane Creek Sewer District (CCSD)

CCSD Technical Specifications:

<https://files.nc.gov/ncdeq/Water%20Quality/Surface%20Water%20Protection/PERCS/WCS%20%28Sewer%20Extension%29/MDCGS.pdf>

City of Hendersonville contact Brent Detwiler, P.E. at 828-697-3065 to obtain the current technical specification and a list of approved manufactures list.

Project: I-4400BB & C

UC-2

County: Henderson

Page 15-1, Sub-article 1500-2 Cooperation with the Utility Owner, paragraph 2:

add the following sentences:

For work in Buncombe County the Water utility owner is the City of Asheville (COA). The contact person is Chad Pierce and can be reached by phone at (828) 259-5420.

For work in Henderson County the Sewer utility owners are:

City of Hendersonville (COH) the contact person is Lee Smith and can be reached by phone at (828) 697-3073 Business Hours or (828) 891-7779 after hours.

Cane Creek Sewer District the contact person is Greg Wiggins and can be reached by phone at (828) 694-6608.

For work in Henderson County the Water utility owner is:

City of Hendersonville (COH) the contact person is Lee Smith and can be reached by phone at (828) 697-3073 Business Hours or (828) 891-7779 after hours.

All water and sewer lines are to remain active during construction of the project. To accomplish this the Contractor may elect to utilize bypass pumping, line stops, inserting valves, temporary water or other methods to complete the work. These methods and means of construction must be approved by the engineer prior to commencement of the work and all such work shall be considered incidental to various other utility pay items included in the contract. All proposed water line and sewer line relocation work shall be performed at a time to be coordinated with the utility owner. Water lines or sewer lines shall not be taken out of service without prior approval of the utility owner and service interruptions shall not exceed four hours.

Page 15-2, Sub-article 1500-7 SUBMITTALS AND RECORDS, paragraph 3:

Add the following sentences:

As-built plans shall be provided to the City of Hendersonville showing the size and type of material installed and the coordinates of all utility horizontal and vertical locations of all installed piping and appurtenances. As-built plans and associated documentation shall be provided to the Engineer prior to acceptance of the work

Page 15-4, Sub-article 1505-3 (E) Thrust Restraint for Ductile Iron Water Pipe paragraph 3

Add the following:

Thrust Collars shall be installed on water line pipe at all points recommended by the ENGINEER. Thrust collars shall be considered an integral part of the water line work. Work shall include a minimum of 3,000 psi concrete, reinforcement bars, threaded rod, retainer gland (mega-lug) and anchor ring i.e. mega-lug as shown in detail.

Measurement & Payment:

Thrust Collars shall be constructed as shown in the detail, paid per each and installed in place at the location shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

Page 15-6, Sub-article 1510-3(B) Testing and Sterilization: add the following:

After the pipeline has been satisfactorily constructed compete with the required fire hydrants, services, and all other appurtenances, and the trench backfilled satisfactorily, and after line flushing and approval by the Engineer, the newly constructed pipeline and valved sections shall be subjected to a hydrostatic pressure leakage test. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer when the work is ready for testing with all testing done in the presence of the Engineer. All labor, equipment, water and materials, including meters and gauges shall be furnished by the Contractor at his own expense.

Ductile iron pipe will be tested in accordance with AWWA C600.

Each completed section of the pipeline shall be plugged at both ends and slowly filled with water. As the main is being filed with water in preparation of the tests, all air shall be expelled from the pipe. The main shall be subjected to hydrostatic pressure of 200 pounds per square inch for a period of two (2) hours unless otherwise specified. Pressure shall be applied to the main by means of a hand pump for small lines or by use of a gasoline pump or fire engine for larger lines.

The rate of leakage shall be determined at fifteen (15) minute intervals by means of volumetric measurement of the water added during the test until the rate has stabilized at the constant value for three (3) consecutive fifteen (15) minute periods.

Leakage is defined as the quantity of water to be supplied into the newly laid pipe, or any valved section, necessary to maintain the specified leakage test pressure after the pipe has been filled with water and the air expelled. No piping installation will be accepted until the leakage is less than ten (10) gallons per inch of pipe diameter per mile of pipe per twenty-four (24) hours.

Cracked or defective pipe, joints, fittings, valves, or hydrants discovered in consequence of this test shall be removed and replaced with sound materials, and the test shall be repeated until the test results are satisfactory. Precautions shall be taken to remove or otherwise protect equipment in, or attached to, pipe to prevent damage or injury.

Pipe interiors, fittings, and valves shall be protected from contamination. Pipe delivered for construction shall be strung so as to minimize entrance of foreign matter. When pipe laying is not in progress for more than one hour, all openings in the pipeline shall be closed by watertight plugs. Joint of all pipe in the trench shall be completed before work is stopped. If water accumulates in the trench, the plug shall remain in place until the trench is dry.

If dirt enters the pipe that, in the opinion of the Engineer, will not be removed by flushing operations, the interior of the pipe shall be cleaned and swabbed as necessary, with a 5% hypochlorite disinfecting solution.

Sampling taps may be used as blow-offs. The number and locations of the taps/blow-offs must be approved by the Engineer. Hydrants may not be used for bacterial sampling.

Project: I-4400BB & C

UC-4

County: Henderson

The Contractor shall construct taps so that bacteriological samples can be easily collected without danger to personnel or likelihood of sample contamination. The Contractor shall legibly mark each sample tap with identifying letters or numbers for sample reference purposes. The Contractor shall not designate hydrants as taps for bacteriological sampling purposes. If the service or corporation taps are installed before the laboratory tests are completed, each tap will be tested for coliform bacterial.

Before being placed in service, all new mains and existing piping disturbed in any manner by the work shall be disinfected. Draining the water from existing piping or even lowering the water pressure more than one-half will constitute disturbance of the piping.

The disinfecting of water mains, valves and other appurtenances incorporated into the main construction shall be done by means of a chlorinating measuring apparatus, with proper devices for regulating the flow and providing an effective diffusion into the water within the main being disinfected by an application of chlorine-bearing compound bearing a high-test calcium hypochlorite (65-70% available chlorine). In the preparation of the solution, the powder shall first be made into a paste and then gradually thinned with water to approximately 1% chlorine solution (10,000 parts per pound of powder). This will require about 7.50 gallons of water to each one pound of powder. Solution shall be applied to the main through a rubber hose by gravity, siphonage, injection or by suitable pump feeder.

The point of chlorine application shall be at the beginning of the water main construction and/or any valve section thereof, through corporation cock installed close to and on the downstream side of the regulating gate valve controlling the flow of such proportion to the rate of water flow entering the main that the chlorine applied shall produce fifty (50) parts per million (420 pounds per million gallons) chlorine concentration in the water within the main.

During the disinfecting operation, valves, hydrants, and other mechanical devices controlling the flow of water shall be operated to permit full effectiveness of the chlorine. Valves shall be manipulated so that the strong solution within the main being sterilized will not flow back into the supply line nor flow into mains already in service. A chlorine concentration test shall be made, in turn, at each of the hydrants and/or taps provided for that purpose.

The tablet method of disinfection may be utilized for disinfection provided the total length of potable water main to be laid is less than 2,000 linear feet of pipe less than 12" in diameter. This method will be suitable only, if in the opinion of the Engineer, the pipeline has been maintained suitable free from foreign matter and any other contaminants during construction.

The Contractor shall provide sampling taps, Generally, sampling taps shall be provided on the water main every 1,000' and at the end of each main and at the end of each branch, in order to afford representative water testing and sample collection.

Project: I-4400BB & C

UC-5

County: Henderson

Page 15-8, Sub-article 1515-2 Materials

Add the following paragraph:

(A) 4” Electromagnetic Flow Meter Vault Complete

Measurement and Payment:

Payment for 4” **Electromagnetic Flow Meter Vault Complete**, shall include the vault, purchase of 4” Electromagnetic Meter from City of Asheville, gate valves, waterproof access door, pipe supports, and all other appurtenances as identified in the detail and specifications. City of Asheville detail W.04 Revised 2/2015. Contractor shall provide shop drawing for Engineers approval. Such price and payments will be full compensation for all labor, materials, excavation, backfilling and any incidentals necessary to complete the work, as required.

Pay Item:

4” Electromagnetic Flow Meter Vault Complete

Pay Unit

Each

(B) Below Ground Backflow Enclosure Complete

Measurement and Payment:

Payment for **Below Ground Backflow Enclosure Complete** Shall include the vault, pressure reducing valve, gate valves, double check valve, waterproof access door, pipe supports, and all other appurtenances as identified in the detail and specifications. City of Asheville detail W.09 Revised 6/2015. Contractor shall provide shop drawing for Engineers approval. Such price and payments will be full compensation for all labor, materials, excavation, backfilling and any incidentals necessary to complete the work, as required.

Pay Item:

Below Ground Backflow Enclosure Complete

Pay Unit

Each

Page 15-8, Sub-article 1515-3(B) Meters: add the following sentences:

All relocated water meters shall be installed with new service water line back to the main. No connections or splices to existing water service lines will be permitted.

Page 15-10, Sub-article 1520-3(A) Gravity Sanitary Sewer: add the following sentences:

Air-testing will be conducted as the project is being installed. This includes all mainline between manholes, future mainline stubs and laterals out of manholes. The air testing shall be in accordance with ASTM F 1417.

Project: I-4400BB & C

UC-6

County: Henderson

Deflection testing of all new PVC sewer pipe shall be conducted 30 days after installation and backfilling of the pipe or as otherwise directed by the Engineer.

The contractor shall furnish all necessary equipment including an approvable mandrel or other approved device and conduct the deflection tests at the direction of the Engineer.

The maximum allowable limits for deflection of installed pipe under this specification shall be 7.5%. Base inside diameters and 7.5% deflection mandrel dimensions shall be per ASTM F-679 (latest edition). Deflection shall be measured with a rigid mandrel (Go/No Go) device cylindrical in shape and constructed with a minimum of nine evenly spaced arms or prongs. Drawings of the mandrel with complete dimensions shall be submitted to the Engineer for each diameter of pipe to be tested. The mandrel shall be hand pulled through all sewer lines.

Any section of sewer not passing the mandrel shall be uncovered and the bedding and backfill replaced to prevent excessive deflection. Repaired pipe shall be retested to ensure that acceptable deflection limits are not exceeded.

The Contractor shall furnish and install during backfill operation for all gravity mainline sewers and laterals printed polyethylene green (SEWER) tape above the bedding material, three (3) feet above the crown of the pipe.

All testing of pipe and associated sewer manholes and appurtenances shall be considered incidental to the applicable pay items for gravity sanitary sewer pipe.

Page 15-14, Sub-article 1525-3(B) Installation of Precast Units: add the following sentences: No doghouse manholes will be allowed on this project.

Air Testing of all new manholes is required and shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1244. Manholes shall be sealed with plate-style sealing equipment on top of the casting so that the adjustment rings can also be tested. Bladder-style sealers are not acceptable. If a lateral is extended out of a manhole to a property the lateral shall be air tested with the manhole test, i.e. the lateral shall not be sealed off during the test.

All testing of manholes and appurtenances shall be considered incidental to the applicable pay items for utility manholes.

END OF SECTION

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**Utility Special****Utility Coordinator****Description:**

The contractor shall provide a Utility Coordinator to coordinate the physical utility relocations and the protection of utility facilities with the highway project construction. The Coordinator shall facilitate and provide construction oversight through completion of the utility relocations with the highway project construction to resolve all utility conflicts, expedite the project schedule and to maintain the safety of the workers and roadway users. The Coordinator shall promote communications between parties, i.e. the Contractor's personnel, the utility owners' personnel and contractors, and the Department's personnel.

The Utilities by Others (UbO) plans and special provisions detail the utility relocations to be performed by others, and the Utility Construction (UC) plans and special provisions detail the utility relocations to be constructed under this contract. The Utility Coordinator is responsible for oversight and fulfillment of this provision in regard to all utilities detailed in the UbO plans, UC plans, and corresponding special provisions. In accordance with 105-8, the Department has coordinated the design and construction of the relocations up to the date of the UO Special Provisions.

Tasks include:

- Facilitate the exchange of information on the status of the work, the upcoming plans, and the needs of the parties.
- Maintain a schedule of activities and of relationships between the parties.
- Document the status and events as they occur and the effect of events upon the parties, reporting weekly to the Engineer.
- Participate in monthly status meeting per the Project Management Plan.
- Provide decision makers of the parties with information to assure that timely decisions are made, and actions are taken.
- Inspect daily operations and coordinating utility relocations with project construction.
- Ensure compliance with the "Underground Utility Safety and Damage Prevention Act" for damage prevention.
- Review Utility Owners' plans for conflict resolution and constructability
- Ensure utilities are located (vertically and horizontally) per plans or plans as modified to ensure conflicts with construction are resolved.
- Communicate closely with Division 13 Utility Engineer and the Construction

Management Team.

- Coordinate conflict resolution with construction activities.
- Arrange for the provision of surveying information as needed to assist with utility relocations.
- Identify and coordinating field adjustments necessary due to site conditions and construction operations.
- Ensure that all Traffic Control and Erosion Control requirements are adhered to by the Utility Owners and their Agents.

Recommended Methods for accomplishing the tasks include:

- Provide facilities for meetings.
- Conduct meetings as required and/or recommended by the Engineer.
- Provide schedules and documents to all parties, as recommended by the Engineer.
- Provide minutes of meetings to all parties within 1 week of meeting.
- Obtain and update NC811 Notices for damage prevention.
- Inspect for maintenance of utility location markings on the ground.
- Coordinate the traffic controls of the Contractor and Utility Owners.
- Be a clearinghouse for utility related information exchange.

Submittals:

Provide monthly reports at the monthly status meeting to the Construction Management Team detailing:

- Utility relocation activities completed for the month separated by utility owner.
- Utility relocation activities planned for the next month separated by utility owner.
- An overall assessment of utility relocation progress and the effect on the highway project.
- Critical needs and recommended actions to maintain the contract schedule.
- Establish and provide a clearly defined timeline for utility relocations to occur which identifies the critical path.

Measurement and Payment:

Utility Coordinator will be measured and paid at the contract lump sum price. Partial payments will be made on each particular payment estimate based upon the percentage complete of the utility relocations. The Contractor shall submit a certified statement each month indicating the percentage of work completed. The Resident Engineer will determine if the amount indicated is reasonably correct and the Resident Engineer will pay accordingly on the next partial pay estimate.

Payment will be made under:

Utility Coordinator:Lump Sum



PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

Utilities by Others



1318-F Patton Avenue
Asheville, North Carolina 28806
www.vaughnmelton.com

General:

The following utility companies have facilities that will be in conflict with the construction of this project:

- A) Duke Energy – Power (Distribution)
- B) AT&T - Communications
- C) Morris Broadband - Communications

The conflicting facilities of these concerns will be adjusted prior to the date of availability, unless otherwise noted and are therefore listed in these special provisions for the benefit of the Contractor. All utility work listed herein will be done by the utility owners. All utilities are shown on the plans from the best available information.

The Contractor's attention is directed to Article 105-8 of the 2018 Standard Specifications.

Utilities Requiring Adjustment:

Utility relocations are shown on the Utilities by Others Plans.

- A) Duke Energy – Power (Distribution)
 - 1) Duke Energy will relocate facilities by November 29, 2019.
 - 2) See UbO Plans for details.
 - 3) Contact person for Duke Energy is Mr. Bob Mabry at (828) 698-2055.

- B) AT&T – Communications
 - 1) AT&T will relocate facilities by April 30, 2020.
 - 2) See UbO Plans for details.
 - 3) Contact person for AT&T is Mr. TJ Shumate at (828) 287-5113.

- C) Morris Broadband – Communications
 - 1) Morris Broadband will relocate facilities by April 30, 2020.
 - 2) See UbO Plans for details.
 - 3) Contact person for Morris Broadband is Mr. Chris McCall at (828) 697-3600 ext. 646.

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

Utilities by Others

Utilities Not Requiring Adjustment:

A) Duke Energy – Power (Transmission)

- 1) There is one transmission line in near the construction of I-4400C near -L- Sta. 711+00+/- . This site is shown on sheet UO-8 (I-4400C).
- 2) This transmission line will remain in place.
- 3) Sequence construction to maintain access to Duke Energy transmission easements.
- 4) No equipment shall encroach within 25' of any Duke Energy transmission structure. This includes, but is not limited to poles, cross-braces, down guys, or any other appurtenance associated with the structure of Duke Energy's transmission system.
- 5) Contact person for Duke Energy is Ms. Lisa Plumley at (980) 373-1219.

**Project Special Provisions
Erosion Control****STABILIZATION REQUIREMENTS:**

(4-30-2019)

Stabilization for this project shall comply with the time frame guidelines as specified by the NCG-010000 general construction permit effective April 1, 2019 issued by the North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Division of Water Resources. Temporary or permanent ground cover stabilization shall occur within 7 calendar days from the last land-disturbing activity, with the following exceptions in which temporary or permanent ground cover shall be provided in 14 calendar days from the last land-disturbing activity:

- Slopes between 2:1 and 3:1, with a slope length of 10 ft. or less
- Slopes 3:1 or flatter, with a slope of length of 50 ft. or less
- Slopes 4:1 or flatter

The stabilization timeframe for High Quality Water (HQW) Zones shall be 7 calendar days with no exceptions for slope grades or lengths. High Quality Water Zones (HQW) Zones are defined by North Carolina Administrative Code 15A NCAC 04A.0105 (25). Temporary and permanent ground cover stabilization shall be achieved in accordance with the provisions in this contract and as directed.

SEEDING AND MULCHING:**(WestEd)**

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

Shoulder and Median Areas**August 1 - June 1**

20#	Kentucky Bluegrass
75#	Hard Fescue
25#	Rye Grain
500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone

May 1 - September 1

20#	Kentucky Bluegrass
75#	Hard Fescue
10#	German or Browntop Millet
500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone

Areas Beyond the Mowing Pattern, Waste and Borrow Areas:**August 1 - June 1**

100#	Tall Fescue
15#	Kentucky Bluegrass
30#	Hard Fescue
25#	Rye Grain
500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone

May 1 - September 1

100#	Tall Fescue
15#	Kentucky Bluegrass
30#	Hard Fescue
10#	German or Browntop Millet
500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone

Approved Tall Fescue Cultivars

06 Dust	Escalade	Justice	Serengeti
2 nd Millennium	Essential	Kalahari	Shelby
3 rd Millennium	Evergreen 2	Kitty Hawk 2000	Sheridan
Apache III	Falcon IV	Legitimate	Signia
Avenger	Falcon NG	Lexington	Silver Hawk
Barlexas	Falcon V	LSD	Sliverstar
Barlexas II	Faith	Magellan	Shenandoah Elite
Bar Fa	Fat Cat	Matador	Sidewinder
Barrera	Festnova	Millennium SRP	Skyline
Barrington	Fidelity	Monet	Solara
Barrobusto	Finelawn Elite	Mustang 4	Southern Choice II
Barvado	Finelawn Xpress	Ninja 2	Speedway
Biltmore	Finesse II	Ol' Glory	Spyder LS
Bingo	Firebird	Olympic Gold	Sunset Gold
Bizem	Firecracker LS	Padre	Taccoa
Blackwatch	Firenza	Patagonia	Tanzania
Blade Runner II	Five Point	Pedigree	Trio
Bonsai	Focus	Picasso	Tahoe II
Braveheart	Forte	Piedmont	Talladega
Bravo	Garrison	Plantation	Tarheel
Bullseye	Gazelle II	Proseeds 5301	Terrano
Cannavaro	Gold Medallion	Prospect	Titan ltd
Catalyst	Grande 3	Pure Gold	Titanium LS
Cayenne	Greenbrooks	Quest	Tracer
Cessane Rz	Greenkeeper	Raptor II	Traverse SRP
Chipper	Gremlin	Rebel Exeda	Tulsa Time
Cochise IV	Greystone	Rebel Sentry	Turbo
Constitution	Guardian 21	Rebel IV	Turbo RZ
Corgi	Guardian 41	Regiment II	Tuxedo RZ
Corona	Hemi	Regenerate	Ultimate
Coyote	Honky Tonk	Rendition	Venture
Darlington	Hot Rod	Rhambler 2 SRP	Umbrella
Davinci	Hunter	Rembrandt	Van Gogh
Desire	Inferno	Reunion	Watchdog
Dominion	Innovator	Riverside	Wolfpack II
Dynamic	Integrity	RNP	Xtremegreen
Dynasty	Jaguar 3	Rocket	
Endeavor	Jamboree	Scorpion	

Approved Kentucky Bluegrass Cultivars:

4-Season	Blue Velvet	Gladstone	Quantum Leap
Alexa II	Blueberry	Granite	Rambo
America	Boomerang	Hampton	Rhapsody
Apollo	Brilliant	Harmonie	Rhythm
Arcadia	Cabernet	Impact	Rita
Aries	Champagne	Jefferson	Royce
Armada	Champlain	Juliet	Rubicon
Arrow	Chicago II	Jump Start	Rugby II
Arrowhead	Corsair	Keeneland	Shiraz
Aura	Courtyard	Langara	Showcase
Avid	Delight	Liberator	Skye
Award	Diva	Madison	Solar Eclipse
Awesome	Dynamo	Mercury	Sonoma
Bandera	Eagleton	Midnight	Sorbonne
Barduke	Emblem	Midnight II	Starburst
Barnique	Empire	Moon Shadow	Sudden Impact
Baroness	Envicta	Moonlight SLT	Total Eclipse
Barrister	Everest	Mystere	Touche
Barvette HGT	Everglade	Nu Destiny	Tsunami
Bedazzled	Excursion	NuChicago	Unique
Belissimo	Freedom II	NuGlade	Valor
Bewitched	Freedom III	Odyssey	Voyager II
Beyond	Front Page	Perfection	Washington
Blacksburg II	Futurity	Pinot	Zinfandel
Blackstone	Gaelic	Princeton 105	
Blue Note	Ginney II	Prosperity	

Approved Hard Fescue Cultivars:

Aurora II	Eureka II	Oxford	Scaldis II
Aurora Gold	Firefly	Reliant II	Spartan II
Berkshire	Granite	Reliant IV	Stonehenge
Bighorn GT	Heron	Rescue 911	
Chariot	Nordic	Rhino	

On cut and fill slopes 2:1 or steeper add 20# Sericea Lespedeza and 15# Crown Vetch January 1 - December 31.

The Crown Vetch Seed should be double inoculated if applied with a hand seeder. Four times the normal rate of inoculant should be used if applied with a hydroseeder. If a fertilizer-seed slurry is used, the required limestone should also be included to prevent fertilizer acidity from killing the inoculant bacteria. Caution should be used to keep the inoculant below 80° F to prevent harm to the bacteria. The rates and grades of fertilizer and limestone shall be the same as specified for *Seeding and Mulching*.

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

Native Grass Seeding And Mulching

(West)

Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall be performed on the disturbed areas of wetlands and riparian areas, and adjacent to Stream Relocation and/or trout stream construction within a 50 foot zone on both sides of the stream or depression, measured from top of stream bank or center of depression. The stream bank of the stream relocation shall be seeded by a method that does not alter the typical cross section of the stream bank. Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall also be performed in the permanent soil reinforcement mat section of preformed scour holes, and in other areas as directed.

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

August 1 - June 1

18# Creeping Red Fescue
8# Big Bluestem
6# Indiangrass
4# Switchgrass
35# Rye Grain
500# Fertilizer
4000# Limestone

May 1 – September 1

18# Creeping Red Fescue
8# Big Bluestem
6# Indiangrass
4# Switchgrass
25# German or Browntop Millet
500# Fertilizer
4000# Limestone

Approved Creeping Red Fescue Cultivars:

Aberdeen

Boreal

Epic

Cindy Lou

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall be performed in accordance with Section 1660 of the *Standard Specifications* and vegetative cover sufficient to restrain erosion shall be installed immediately following grade establishment.

Measurement and Payment

Native Grass *Seeding and Mulching* will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1660-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

TEMPORARY SEEDING:

Fertilizer shall be the same analysis as specified for *Seeding and Mulching* and applied at the rate of 400 pounds and seeded at the rate of 50 pounds per acre. German Millet, or Browntop Millet shall be used in summer months and rye grain during the remainder of the year. The Engineer will determine the exact dates for using each kind of seed.

FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING:

Fertilizer used for topdressing shall be 16-8-8 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 2-1-1 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 16-8-8 analysis and as directed.

SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING:

The kinds of seed and proportions shall be the same as specified for *Seeding and Mulching*, and the rate of application may vary from 25# to 75# per acre. The actual rate per acre will be determined prior to the time of topdressing and the Contractor will be notified in writing of the rate per acre, total quantity needed, and areas on which to apply the supplemental seed. Minimum tillage equipment, consisting of a sod seeder shall be used for incorporating seed into the soil as to prevent disturbance of existing vegetation. A clodbuster (ball and chain) may be used where degree of slope prevents the use of a sod seeder.

MOWING:

The minimum mowing height on this project shall be six inches.

LAWN TYPE APPEARANCE:

All areas adjacent to lawns must be hand finished as directed to give a lawn type appearance. Remove all trash, debris, and stones $\frac{3}{4}$ " and larger in diameter or other obstructions that could interfere with providing a smooth lawn type appearance. These areas shall be reseeded to match their original vegetative conditions, unless directed otherwise by the Field Operations Engineer.

REFORESTATION:**Description**

Reforestation will be planted in areas as directed. *Reforestation* is not shown on the plan sheets. See the Reforestation Detail Sheet.

All non-maintained riparian buffers impacted by the placement of temporary fill or clearing activities shall be restored to the preconstruction contours and revegetated with native woody species.

The entire *Reforestation* operation shall comply with the requirements of Section 1670 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Materials

Reforestation shall be bare root seedlings 12"-18" tall.

Construction Methods

Reforestation shall be planted as soon as practical following permanent *Seeding and Mulching*. The seedlings shall be planted in a 16-foot wide swath adjacent to mowing pattern line, or as directed.

Root dip: The roots of reforestation seedlings shall be coated with a slurry of water, and either a fine clay (kaolin) or a superabsorbent that is designated as a bare root dip. The type, mixture ratio, method of application, and the time of application shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

With the approval of the Engineer, seedlings may be coated before delivery to the job or at the time of planting, but at no time shall the roots of the seedlings be allowed to dry out. The roots shall be moistened immediately prior to planting.

Seasonal Limitations: *Reforestation* shall be planted from November 15 through March 15.

Measurement and Payment

Reforestation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1670-17 of the *Standard Specifications*.

RESPONSE FOR EROSION CONTROL:

Description

Furnish the labor, materials, tools and equipment necessary to move personnel, equipment, and supplies to the project necessary for the pursuit of any or all of the following work as shown herein, by an approved subcontractor.

Section	Erosion Control Item	Unit
1605	Temporary Silt Fence	LF
1606	Special Sediment Control Fence	LF/TON
1615	Temporary Mulching	ACR
1620	Seed - Temporary Seeding	LB
1620	Fertilizer - Temporary Seeding	TN
1631	Matting for Erosion Control	SY

SP	Coir Fiber Mat	SY
1640	Coir Fiber Baffles	LF
SP	Permanent Soil Reinforcement Mat	SY
1660	Seeding and Mulching	ACR
1661	Seed - Repair Seeding	LB
1661	Fertilizer - Repair Seeding	TON
1662	Seed - Supplemental Seeding	LB
1665	Fertilizer Topdressing	TON
SP	Safety/Highly Visible Fencing	LF
SP	Response for Erosion Control	EA

Construction Methods

Provide an approved subcontractor who performs an erosion control action as described in the NPDES Inspection Form SPPP30. Each erosion control action may include one or more of the above work items.

Measurement and Payment

Response for Erosion Control will be measured and paid for by counting the actual number of times the subcontractor moves onto the project, including borrow and waste sites, and satisfactorily completes an erosion control action described in Form 1675. The provisions of Article 104-5 of the *Standard Specifications* will not apply to this item of work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Response for Erosion Control

Pay Unit

Each

MINIMIZE REMOVAL OF VEGETATION:

The Contractor shall minimize removal of vegetation within project limits to the maximum extent practicable. Vegetation along stream banks and adjacent to other jurisdictional resources outside the construction limits shall only be removed upon approval of Engineer. No additional payment will be made for this minimization work.

STOCKPILE AREAS:

The Contractor shall install and maintain erosion control devices sufficient to contain sediment around any erodible material stockpile areas as directed.

ACCESS AND HAUL ROADS:

At the end of each working day, the Contractor shall install or re-establish temporary diversions or earth berms across access/haul roads to direct runoff into sediment devices. Silt fence sections that are temporarily removed shall be reinstalled across access/haul roads at the end of each working day.

CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS MANAGEMENT

(3-19-19) (rev. 04-27-19)

Description

The requirements set forth shall be adhered to in order to meet the applicable materials handling requirements of the NCG010000 permit. Structural controls installed to manage construction materials stored or used on site shall be shown on the E&SC Plan. Requirements for handling materials on construction sites shall be as follows:

Polyacrylamides (PAMS) and Flocculants

Polyacrylamides (PAMS) and flocculants shall be stored in leak-proof containers that are kept under storm-resistant cover or surrounded by secondary containment structures designed to protect adjacent surface waters. PAMS or other flocculants used shall be selected from the NC DWR List of Approved PAMS/Flocculants. The concentration of PAMS and other flocculants used shall not exceed those specified in the NC DWR List of Approved PAMS/Flocculants and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The NC DWR List of Approved PAMS/Flocculants is available at:

https://files.nc.gov/ncdeq/Water%20Quality/Environmental%20Sciences/ATU/ApprovedPAMS_4_1_2017.pdf

Equipment Fluids

Fuels, lubricants, coolants, and hydraulic fluids, and other petroleum products shall be handled and disposed of in a manner so as not to enter surface or ground waters and in accordance with applicable state and federal regulations. Equipment used on the site must be operated and maintained properly to prevent discharge of fluids. Equipment, vehicle, and other wash waters shall not be discharged into E&SC basins or other E&SC devices. Alternative controls should be provided such that there is no discharge of soaps, solvents, or detergents.

Waste Materials

Construction materials and land clearing waste shall be disposed of in accordance with North Carolina General Statutes, Chapter 130A, Article 9 - Solid Waste Management, and rules governing the disposal of solid waste (15A NCAC 13B). Areas dedicated for managing construction material and land clearing waste shall be at least 50 feet away from storm drain inlets and surface waters unless it can be shown that no other alternatives are reasonably available. Paint

and other liquid construction material waste shall not be dumped into storm drains. Paint and other liquid construction waste washouts should be located at least 50 feet away from storm drain inlets unless there is no alternative. Other options are to install lined washouts or use portable, removable bags or bins. Hazardous or toxic waste shall be managed in accordance with the federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) and NC Hazardous Waste Rules at 15A NCAC, Subchapter 13A. Litter and sanitary waste shall be managed in a manner to prevent it from entering jurisdictional waters and shall be disposed of offsite.

Herbicide, Pesticide, and Rodenticides

Herbicide, pesticide, and rodenticides shall be stored and applied in accordance with the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act, North Carolina Pesticide Law of 1971 and labeling restrictions.

Concrete Materials

Concrete materials onsite, including excess concrete, must be controlled and managed to avoid contact with surface waters, wetlands or buffers. No concrete or cement slurry shall be discharged from the site. (Note that discharges from onsite concrete plants require coverage under a separate NPDES permit – NCG140000.) Concrete wash water shall be managed in accordance with the *Concrete Washout Structure* provision. Concrete slurry shall be managed and disposed of in accordance with *NCDOT DGS and HOS DCAR Distribution of Class A Residuals Statewide* (Permit No. WQ0035749). Any hardened concrete residue will be disposed of, or recycled on site, in accordance with state solid waste regulations.

Earthen Material Stock Piles

Earthen material stock piles shall be located at least 50 feet away from storm drain inlets and surface waters unless it can be shown that no other alternatives are reasonably available.

Measurement and Payment

Conditions set within the *Construction Materials Management* provision are incidental to the project for which no direct compensation will be made.

WASTE AND BORROW SOURCES:

Payment for temporary erosion control measures, except those made necessary by the Contractor's own negligence or for his own convenience, will be paid for at the appropriate contract unit price for the devices or measures utilized in borrow sources and waste areas.

No additional payment will be made for erosion control devices or permanent seeding and mulching in any commercial borrow or waste pit. All erosion and sediment control practices that may be required on a commercial borrow or waste site will be done at the Contractor's expense.

All offsite Staging Areas, Borrow and Waste sites shall be in accordance with “Borrow and Waste Site Reclamation Procedures for Contracted Projects” located at:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/FieldOperationsDocuments/ContractedReclamationProcedures.pdf>

All forms and documents referenced in the “Borrow and Waste Site Reclamation Procedures for Contracted Projects” shall be included with the reclamation plans for offsite staging areas, and borrow and waste sites.

TEMPORARY DIVERSION:

This work consists of installation, maintenance, and cleanout of *Temporary Diversions* in accordance with Section 1630 of the *Standard Specifications*. The quantity of excavation for installation and cleanout will be measured and paid for as *Silt Excavation* in accordance with Article 1630-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

CLEAN WATER DIVERSION:

Description

This work consists of installing, maintaining, and removing any and all material required for the construction of clean water diversions. The clean water diversions shall be used to direct water flowing from offsite around/away from specific area(s) of construction.

Materials

Refer to Division 10

Item	Section
Geotextile for Soil Stabilization, Type 4	1056

Construction Methods

The Contractor shall install the clean water diversions in accordance with the details in the plans and at locations indicated in the plans, and as directed. Upon installation, the excavated material shall be immediately stabilized as provided in Section 1620 of the *Standard Specifications*. Other stabilization methods may be utilized with prior approval from the Engineer.

Line clean water diversion with geotextile unrolled in the direction of flow and lay smoothly but loosely on soil surface without creases. Bury top of slope geotextile edge in a trench at least 5" deep and tamp securely. Make vertical overlaps a minimum of 18" with upstream geotextile overlapping the downstream geotextile.

Secure geotextile with eleven gauge wire staples shaped into a *u* shape with a length of not less than 6" and a throat not less than 1" in width. Place staples along outer edges and throughout the geotextile a maximum of 3 ft. horizontally and vertically.

Measurement and Payment

Silt Excavation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1630-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Geotextile for Soil Stabilization will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 270-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Stabilization of the excavated material will be paid for as *Temporary Seeding* as provided in Section 1620 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Such price and payment shall be considered full compensation for all work covered by this section including all materials, construction, maintenance, and removal of the clean water diversions.

SAFETY FENCE AND JURISDICTIONAL FLAGGING:

Description

Safety Fence shall consist of furnishing materials, installing and maintaining polyethylene or polypropylene fence along the outside riparian buffer, wetland, or water boundary, or other boundaries located within the construction corridor to mark the areas that have been approved to infringe within the buffer, wetland, endangered vegetation, culturally sensitive areas or water. The fence shall be installed prior to any land disturbing activities.

Interior boundaries for jurisdictional areas noted above shall be delineated by stakes and highly visible flagging.

Jurisdictional boundaries at staging areas, waste sites, or borrow pits, whether considered outside or interior boundaries shall be delineated by stakes and highly visible flagging.

Materials

(A) Safety Fencing

Polyethylene or polypropylene fence shall be a highly visible preconstructed safety fence approved by the Engineer. The fence material shall have an ultraviolet coating.

Either wood posts or steel posts may be used. Wood posts shall be hardwood with a wedge or pencil tip at one end, and shall be at least 5 ft. in length with a minimum nominal 2" x 2" cross section. Steel posts shall be at least 5 ft. in length, and have a minimum weight of 0.85 lb/ft of length.

(B) Boundary Flagging

Wooden stakes shall be 4 feet in length with a minimum nominal 3/4" x 1-3/4" cross section. The flagging shall be at least 1" in width. The flagging material shall be vinyl and shall be orange in color and highly visible.

Construction Methods

No additional clearing and grubbing is anticipated for the installation of this fence. The fence shall be erected to conform to the general contour of the ground.

(A) Safety Fencing

Posts shall be set at a maximum spacing of 10 ft., maintained in a vertical position and hand set or set with a post driver. Posts shall be installed a minimum of 2 ft. into the ground. If hand set, all backfill material shall be thoroughly tamped. Wood posts may be sharpened to a dull point if power driven. Posts damaged by power driving shall be removed and replaced prior to final acceptance. The tops of all wood posts shall be cut at a 30-degree angle. The wood posts may, at the option of the Contractor, be cut at this angle either before or after the posts are erected.

The fence geotextile shall be attached to the wood posts with one 2" galvanized wire staple across each cable or to the steel posts with wire or other acceptable means.

Place construction stakes to establish the location of the safety fence in accordance with Article 105-9 or Article 801-1 of the *Standard Specifications*. No direct pay will be made for the staking of the safety fence. All stakeouts for safety fence shall be considered incidental to the work being paid for as "Construction Surveying", except that where there is no pay item for construction surveying, all safety fence stakeout will be performed by state forces.

The Contractor shall be required to maintain the safety fence in a satisfactory condition for the duration of the project as determined by the Engineer.

(B) Boundary Flagging

Boundary flagging delineation of interior boundaries shall consist of wooden stakes on 25 feet maximum intervals with highly visible orange flagging attached. Stakes shall be installed a minimum of 6" into the ground. Interior boundaries may be staked on a tangent that runs parallel to buffer but must not encroach on the buffer at any location. Interior boundaries of hand clearing shall be identified with a different colored flagging to distinguish it from mechanized clearing.

Boundary flagging delineation of interior boundaries will be placed in accordance with Article 105-9 or Article 801-1 of the *Standard Specifications*. No direct pay will be made for delineation of the interior boundaries. This delineation will be considered incidental to the work being paid for as *Construction Surveying*, except that where there is no pay item or construction surveying the cost of boundary flagging delineation shall be included in the unit prices bid for the various items in the contract. Installation for delineation of all jurisdictional boundaries at staging areas,

waste sites, or borrow pits shall consist of wooden stakes on 25 feet maximum intervals with highly visible orange flagging attached. Stakes shall be installed a minimum of 6" into the ground. Additional flagging may be placed on overhanging vegetation to enhance visibility but does not substitute for installation of stakes.

Installation of boundary flagging for delineation of all jurisdictional boundaries at staging areas, waste sites, or borrow pits shall be performed in accordance with Subarticle 230-4(B)(5) or Subarticle 802-2(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. No direct pay will be made for this delineation, as the cost of same shall be included in the unit prices bid for the various items in the contract.

The Contractor shall be required to maintain alternative stakes and highly visible flagging in a satisfactory condition for the duration of the project as determined by the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Safety Fence will be measured and paid as the actual number of linear feet of polyethylene or polypropylene fence installed in place and accepted. Such payment will be full compensation including but not limited to furnishing and installing fence geotextile with necessary posts and post bracing, staples, tie wires, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete this work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Safety Fence	Linear Foot

SKIMMER BASIN WITH BAFFLES:

Description

Provide a skimmer basin to remove sediment from construction site runoff at locations shown in the erosion control plans. See the Skimmer Basin with Baffles Detail sheet provided in the erosion control plans. Work includes constructing sediment basin, installation of temporary slope drain pipe and coir fiber baffles, furnishing, installation and cleanout of skimmer, providing and placing stone pad on bottom of basin underneath skimmer device, providing and placing a geotextile spillway liner, providing coir fiber mat stabilization for the skimmer outlet, disposing of excess materials, removing temporary slope drain, coir fiber baffles, geotextile liner and skimmer device, backfilling basin area with suitable material and providing proper drainage when basin area is abandoned.

Materials

Item	Section
Stone for Erosion Control, Class B	1042
Geotextile for Soil Stabilization, Type 4	1056
Fertilizer for Temporary Seeding	1060-2
Seed for Temporary Seeding	1060-4

Seeding and Mulching	1060-4
Matting for Erosion Control	1060-8
Staples	1060-8
Coir Fiber Mat	1060-14
Temporary Slope Drain	1622-2
Coir Fiber Baffle	1640

Provide appropriately sized and approved skimmer device.

Provide Schedule 40 PVC pipe with a length of 6 ft. to attach to the skimmer and the coupling connection to serve as the arm pipe. For skimmer sizes of 2.5 in. and smaller, the arm pipe diameter shall be 1.5 inches. For skimmer sizes of 3 in. and larger, refer to manufacturer recommendation.

Provide 4" diameter Schedule 40 PVC pipe to attach to coupling connection of skimmer to serve as the barrel pipe through the earthen dam.

Anchors: Staples, stakes, or reinforcement bars shall be used as anchors.

Wooden Stakes:

Provide hardwood stakes 12"- 24" long with a 2" x 2" nominal square cross section. One end of the stake must be sharpened or beveled to facilitate driving through the coir fiber mat and down into the underlying soil. The other end of the stake needs to have a 1"- 2" long head at the top with a 1"- 2" notch following to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Steel Reinforcement Bars:

Provide uncoated #10 steel reinforcement bars 24" nominal length. The bars shall have a 4" diameter bend at one end with a 4" straight section at the tip to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Staples:

Provide staples made of 0.125" diameter new steel wire formed into a *u* shape not less than 12" in length with a throat of 1" in width.

Construction Methods

Excavate basin according to the erosion control plans with basin surface free of obstructions, debris, and pockets of low-density material. Install temporary slope drain pipe and construct the primary spillway according to the Skimmer Basin with Baffles Detail sheet in the erosion control plans. Temporary slope drain pipe at inlet of basin may be replaced by geotextile as directed. Construct the coir fiber baffles according to *Roadway Standard Drawings* No. 1640.01 and Section 1640 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Install skimmer device according to manufacturer recommendations. Install 4" Schedule 40 PVC pipe into dam on the lower side of basin 1 ft. from the bottom of the basin and according to the detail, and extend the pipe so the basin will drain. Attach a 6 ft. arm pipe to the coupling connection and skimmer according to manufacturer recommendations. The coupling shall be rigid and non-buoyant and not exceed a diameter of 4" and 12" in length. Attach the rope included with the skimmer to the tee between the vent socket and the tube inlet, and the other end to a wooden stake or metal post. Clean out skimmer device when it becomes clogged with sediment and/or debris and is unable to float at the top of water in skimmer basin. Take appropriate measures to avoid ice accumulation in the skimmer device. Construct a stone pad of Class B stone directly underneath the skimmer device at bottom of basin. The pad shall be a minimum of 12" in height, and shall have a minimum cross sectional area of 4 ft. by 4 ft.

Line primary spillway with geotextile unrolled in the direction of flow and lay smoothly but loosely on soil surface without creases. Bury edges of geotextile in a trench at least 5" deep and tamp firmly. If geotextile for the primary spillway is not one continuous piece of material, make horizontal overlaps a minimum of 18" with upstream geotextile overlapping the downstream geotextile. Secure geotextile with eleven gauge wire staples shaped into a *u* shape with a length of not less than 12" and a throat not less than 1" in width. Place staples along outer edges and throughout the geotextile a maximum of 3 ft. horizontally and vertically. Geotextile shall be placed to the bottom and across the entire width of the basin according to the Skimmer Basin with Baffles detail. Place sealant inside basin around barrel pipe on top of geotextile with a minimum width of 6 in.

At the skimmer outlet, provide a smooth soil surface free from stones, clods, or debris that will prevent contact of the coir fiber matting with the soil. Unroll the matting and apply without stretching such that it will lie smoothly but loosely on the soil surface. Wooden stakes, reinforcement bars, or staples may be used as anchors in accordance with the details in the plans and as directed. Place anchors across the matting at the ends approximately 1 ft. apart. Place anchors along the outer edges and down the center of the matting 3 ft. apart.

All bare side slope sections of the skimmer basin shall be seeded with a temporary or permanent seed mix as directed and in accordance with Articles 1620-3, 1620-4, 1620-5, 1660-4, 1660-5 and 1660-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Straw or excelsior matting shall be installed on all bare side slope sections immediately upon the completion of seeding and in accordance with Article 1631-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Silt Excavation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1630-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, as calculated from the typical section throughout the length of the basin as shown on the final approved plans.

Geotextile for Soil Stabilization will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 270-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Coir Fiber Baffles will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1640-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

__" *Skimmer* will be measured in units of each. __" *Skimmer* will be measured and paid for as the maximum number of each size skimmer acceptably installed and in use at any one time during the life of the project. Barrel and arm pipe, cleanout, relocation and reinstallation of __" *Skimmer* is considered incidental to the measurement of the quantity of __" *Skimmer* and no separate payment will be made. No separate payment shall be made if __" *Skimmer*, barrel and/or arm pipe(s) are damaged by ice accumulation.

Coir Fiber Mat will be measured and paid for as the actual number of square yards measured along the surface of the ground over which coir fiber mat is installed and accepted.

Temporary Slope Drain will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1622-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Stone for Erosion Control, Class __ will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1610-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Seeding and Mulching will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1660-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Seed for Temporary Seeding will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1620-6 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Fertilizer for Temporary Seeding will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1620-6 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Matting for Erosion Control will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

No measurement will be made for other items or for over excavation or stockpiling.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
__" Skimmer	Each
Coir Fiber Mat	Square Yard

TIERED SKIMMER BASIN WITH BAFFLES:

Description

Provide a tiered skimmer basin to remove sediment from construction site runoff at locations shown in the erosion control plans. See the Tiered Skimmer Basin Detail sheet provided in the erosion control plans. Tiered Skimmer Basins shall be installed in areas where topography creates

a large elevation difference between the inlet and outlet of a single skimmer basin. Work includes constructing sediment basins, installation of coir fiber baffles, installation of temporary slope drain pipe, furnishing, installation and cleanout of skimmer, providing and placing stone pad on bottom of basin underneath skimmer device, providing and placing geotextile spillway liners, providing coir fiber mat stabilization for the skimmer outlet, disposing of excess materials, removing temporary slope drain pipe, coir fiber baffles, geotextile liner and skimmer device, backfilling basin area with suitable material and providing proper drainage when basin area is abandoned.

Materials

Item	Section
Stone for Erosion Control, Class B	1042
Geotextile for Soil Stabilization, Type 4	1056
Fertilizer for Temporary Seeding	1060-2
Seed for Temporary Seeding	1060-4
Seeding and Mulching	1060-4
Matting for Erosion Control	1060-8
Staples	1060-8
Coir Fiber Mat	1060-14
Temporary Slope Drain	1622-2
Coir Fiber Baffle	1640

Provide appropriately sized and approved skimmer device.

Provide Schedule 40 PVC pipe with a length of 6 ft. to attach to the skimmer and the coupling connection to serve as the arm pipe. For skimmer sizes of 2.5 in. and smaller, the arm pipe diameter shall be 1.5 inches. For skimmer sizes of 3 in. and larger, refer to manufacturer recommendation.

Provide 4" diameter Schedule 40 PVC pipe to attach to coupling connection of skimmer to serve as the barrel pipe through the earthen dam.

Anchors: Staples, stakes, or reinforcement bars shall be used as anchors.

Wooden Stakes:

Provide hardwood stakes 12"- 24" long with a 2" x 2" nominal square cross section. One end of the stake must be sharpened or beveled to facilitate driving through the coir fiber mat and down into the underlying soil. The other end of the stake needs to have a 1"- 2" long head at the top with a 1"- 2" notch following to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Steel Reinforcement Bars:

Provide uncoated #10 steel reinforcement bars 24" nominal length. The bars shall have a 4" diameter bend at one end with a 4" straight section at the tip to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Staples:

Provide staples made of 0.125" diameter new steel wire formed into a *u* shape not less than 12" in length with a throat of 1" in width.

Construction Methods

Excavate basins according to the erosion control plans with basin surface free of obstructions, debris, and pockets of low-density material. Install temporary slope drain pipe and construct the primary spillways according to the Tiered Skimmer Basin Detail sheet in the erosion control plans. Construct the coir fiber baffles according to *Roadway Standard Drawings* No. 1640.01 and Section 1640 of the *Standard Specifications*. Multiple upper basins, or Modified Silt Basins Type 'B' as labeled on the detail, may be required based on site conditions and as directed.

Install skimmer device according to manufacturer recommendations. Install 4" Schedule 40 PVC pipe into dam on the lower side of basin 1 ft. from the bottom of the basin and according to the detail, and extend the pipe so the basin will drain. Attach a 6 ft. arm pipe to the coupling connection and skimmer according to manufacturer recommendations. The coupling shall be rigid and non-buoyant and not exceed a diameter of 4" and 12" in length. Attach the rope included with the skimmer to the tee between the vent socket and the tube inlet, and the other end to a wooden stake or metal post. Clean out skimmer device when it becomes clogged with sediment and/or debris and is unable to float at the top of water in skimmer basin. Take appropriate measures to avoid ice accumulation in the skimmer device. Construct a stone pad of Class B stone directly underneath the skimmer device at bottom of basin. The pad shall be a minimum of 12" in height, and shall have a minimum cross sectional area of 4 ft. by 4 ft.

Line primary spillways with geotextile unrolled in the direction of flow and lay smoothly but loosely on soil surface without creases. Bury edges of geotextile in a trench at least 5" deep and tamp firmly. If geotextile for primary spillways is not one continuous piece of material, make horizontal overlaps a minimum of 18" with upstream geotextile overlapping the downstream geotextile. Secure geotextile with eleven gauge wire staples shaped into a *u* shape with a length of not less than 12" and a throat not less than 1" in width. Place staples along outer edges and throughout the geotextile a maximum of 3 ft. horizontally and vertically. Geotextile shall be placed to the bottom and across the entire width of the basin according to the Tiered Skimmer Basin with Baffles detail.

At the skimmer outlet, provide a smooth soil surface free from stones, clods, or debris that will prevent contact of the coir fiber matting with the soil. Unroll the matting and apply without stretching such that it will lie smoothly but loosely on the soil surface. Wooden stakes, reinforcement bars, or staples may be used as anchors in accordance with the details in the plans and as directed. Place anchors across the matting at the ends approximately 1 ft. apart. Place anchors along the outer edges and down the center of the matting 3 ft. apart. Place sealant inside basin around barrel pipe on top of geotextile with a minimum width of 6 in.

All bare side slope sections of the skimmer basin shall be seeded with a temporary or permanent seed mix as directed and in accordance with Articles 1620-3, 1620-4, 1620-5, 1660-4, 1660-5 and

1660-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Straw or excelsior matting shall be installed on all bare side slope sections immediately upon the completion of seeding and in accordance with Article 1631-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Silt Excavation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1630-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, as calculated from the typical section throughout the length of the basin as shown on the final approved plans.

Geotextile for Soil Stabilization will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 270-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Coir Fiber Baffles will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1640-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

___" *Skimmer* will be measured in units of each. ___" *Skimmer* will be measured and paid for as the maximum number of each size skimmer acceptably installed and in use at any one time during the life of the project. Barrel and arm pipe, cleanout, relocation and reinstallation of ___" *Skimmer* is considered incidental to the measurement of the quantity of ___" *Skimmer* and no separate payment will be made. No separate payment shall be made if ___" *Skimmer*, barrel and/or arm pipe(s) are damaged by ice accumulation.

Coir Fiber Mat will be measured and paid for as the actual number of square yards measured along the surface of the ground over which coir fiber mat is installed and accepted.

Temporary Slope Drain will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1622-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Stone for Erosion Control, Class ___ will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1610-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Seeding and Mulching will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1660-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Seed for Temporary Seeding will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1620-6 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Fertilizer for Temporary Seeding will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1620-6 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Matting for Erosion Control will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

No measurement will be made for other items or for over excavation or stockpiling.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
___" Skimmer	Each
Coir Fiber Mat	Square Yard

STORMWATER BASIN EROSION CONTROL:

Description

Provide a skimmer to remove sediment from construction site runoff in permanent stormwater basins at locations shown in the erosion control plans. Work includes constructing basin, installation of coir fiber baffles, furnishing, installation and cleanout of skimmer, providing and placing stone pad on bottom of basin underneath skimmer device, stabilizing side slopes of basin with matting and seed, disposing of excess materials, removing coir fiber baffles, and skimmer device.

Materials

Item	Section
Seeding and Mulching	1060-4
Matting for Erosion Control	1060-8
Staples	1060-8
Coir Fiber Baffle	1640

Provide appropriately sized and approved skimmer device.

Provide Schedule 40 PVC pipe with a length of 6 ft. to attach to the skimmer and the coupling connection to serve as the arm pipe. For skimmer sizes of 2.5 in. and smaller, the arm pipe diameter shall be 1.5 inches. For skimmer sizes of 3 in. and larger, refer to manufacturer recommendation.

Provide 4" diameter Schedule 40 PVC pipe to attach to coupling connection of skimmer to serve as the barrel pipe through the earthen dam.

Construction Methods

Construct permanent stormwater basin according to the plans with basin surface free of obstructions, debris, and pockets of low-density material. Construct the coir fiber baffles according to *Roadway Standard Drawings* No. 1640.01 and Section 1640 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Install skimmer device according to manufacturer recommendations. Install the coupling connection provided with the skimmer 1 ft. from the bottom of the basin and attach to permanent stormwater drainage structure. Attach the 6 ft. arm pipe to the coupling connection and skimmer according to manufacturer recommendations. The coupling shall be rigid and non-buoyant and not exceed a diameter of 4" and 12" in length. Attach the rope included with the skimmer to the

tee between the vent socket and the tube inlet, and the other end to a wooden stake or metal post. Clean out skimmer device when it becomes clogged with sediment and/or debris and is unable to float at the top of water in basin. Take appropriate measures to avoid ice accumulation in the skimmer device. Construct a stone pad of Class B stone directly underneath the skimmer device at bottom of basin. The pad shall be a minimum of 12" in height, and shall have a minimum cross sectional area of 4 ft. by 4 ft.

All bare side slope sections of the stormwater basin shall be seeded with a permanent seed mix as directed and in accordance with Articles 1660-4, 1660-5 and 1660-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. Straw or excelsior matting shall be installed on all bare side slope sections immediately upon the completion of seeding and in accordance with Article 1631-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Silt Excavation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1630-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, as calculated from the typical section throughout the length of the basin as shown on the final approved plans.

Coir Fiber Baffles will be measured and paid for in Accordance with Article 1640-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

___" *Skimmer* will be measured in units of each. ___" *Skimmer* will be measured and paid for as the maximum number of each size skimmer acceptably installed and in use at any one time during the life of the project. Barrel and arm pipe, cleanout, relocation and reinstallation of ___" *Skimmer* is considered incidental to the measurement of the quantity of ___" *Skimmer* and no separate payment will be made. No separate payment shall be made if ___" *Skimmer*, barrel and/or arm pipe(s) are damaged by ice accumulation.

Stone for Erosion Control, Class ___ will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1610-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Seeding and Mulching will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1660-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Matting for Erosion Control will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

No measurement will be made for other items or for over excavation or stockpiling.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

___" Skimmer

Pay Unit

Each

COIR FIBER WATTLES WITH POLYACRYLAMIDE (PAM):**Description**

Coir Fiber Wattles are tubular products consisting of coir fibers (coconut fibers) encased in coir fiber netting. Coir Fiber Wattles are used on slopes or channels to intercept runoff and act as a velocity break. Coir Fiber Wattles are to be placed at locations shown on the plans or as directed. Installation shall follow the detail provided in the plans and as directed. Work includes furnishing materials, installation of coir fiber wattles, matting installation, PAM application, and removing wattles.

Materials

Coir Fiber Wattle shall meet the following specifications:

100% Coir (Coconut) Fibers	
Minimum Diameter	12 in.
Minimum Density	3.5 lb/ft ³ +/- 10%
Net Material	Coir Fiber
Net Openings	2 in. x 2 in.
Net Strength	90 lbs.
Minimum Weight	2.6 lbs./ft. +/- 10%

Anchors: Stakes shall be used as anchors.

Wooden Stakes:

Provide hardwood stakes a minimum of 2-ft. long with a 2 in. x 2 in. nominal square cross section. One end of the stake must be sharpened or beveled to facilitate driving down into the underlying soil.

Matting shall meet the requirements of Article 1060-8 of the *Standard Specifications*, or shall meet specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Provide staples made of 0.125" diameter new steel wire formed into a *u* shape not less than 12" in length with a throat of 1" in width.

Polyacrylamide (PAM) shall be applied in powder form and shall be anionic or neutrally charged. Soil samples shall be obtained in areas where the wattles will be placed, and from offsite material used to construct the roadway, and analyzed for the appropriate PAM flocculant to be utilized with each wattle. The PAM product used shall be listed on the North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Division of Water Resources web site as an approved PAM product for use in North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Coir Fiber Wattles shall be secured to the soil by wire staples approximately every 1 linear foot and at the end of each section of wattle. A minimum of 4 stakes shall be installed on the downstream side of the wattle with a maximum spacing of 2 linear feet along the wattle, and according to the detail. Install a minimum of 2 stakes on the upstream side of the wattle according to the detail provided in the plans. Stakes shall be driven into the ground a minimum of 10 in. with no more than 2 in. projecting from the top of the wattle. Drive stakes at an angle according to the detail provided in the plans.

Only install coir fiber wattle(s) to a height in ditch so flow will not wash around wattle and scour ditch slopes and according to the detail provided in the plans and as directed. Overlap adjoining sections of wattles a minimum of 6 in.

Installation of matting shall be in accordance with the detail provided in the plans, and in accordance with Article 1631-3 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Apply PAM over the lower center portion of the coir fiber wattle where the water is going to flow over at a rate of 2 ounces per wattle, and 1 ounce of PAM on matting on each side of the wattle. PAM applications shall be done during construction activities after every rainfall event that is equal to or exceeds 0.50 in.

The Contractor shall maintain the coir fiber wattles until the project is accepted or until the wattles are removed, and shall remove and dispose of silt accumulations at the wattles when so directed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1630 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Coir Fiber Wattles will be measured and paid for by the actual number of linear feet of wattles which are installed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section, including, but not limited to, furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to install the *Coir Fiber Wattles*.

Matting will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Polyacrylamide(PAM) will be measured and paid for by the actual weight in pounds of PAM applied to the coir fiber wattles. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section, including, but not limited to, furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to apply the *Polyacrylamide(PAM)*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Polyacrylamide(PAM)	Pound
Coir Fiber Wattle	Linear Foot

TEMPORARY ROCK SILT CHECK TYPE A WITH EXCELSIOR MATTING AND POLYACRYLAMIDE (PAM):

Description

Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and Polyacrylamide (PAM) are devices utilized in temporary and permanent ditches to reduce runoff velocity and incorporate PAM into the construction runoff to increase settling of sediment particles and reduce turbidity of runoff. Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM are to be placed at locations shown on the plans or as directed. Installation shall follow the detail provided in the plans and as directed. Work includes furnishing materials, installation of Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A, matting installation, PAM application, and removing Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM.

Materials

Structural stone shall be class B stone that meets the requirements of Section 1042 of the *Standard Specifications* for Stone for Erosion Control, Class B.

Sediment control stone shall be #5 or #57 stone, which meets the requirements of Section 1005 of the *Standard Specifications* for these stone sizes.

Matting shall meet the requirements of Excelsior Matting in Subarticle 1060-8(B) of the *Standard Specifications*, or shall meet specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Polyacrylamide (PAM) shall be applied in powder form and shall be anionic or neutrally charged. Soil samples shall be obtained in areas where the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM will be placed, and from offsite material used to construct the roadway, and analyzed for the appropriate PAM flocculant to be utilized with each Temporary Rock Silt Check Type A. The PAM product used shall be listed on the North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Division of Water Resources web site as an approved PAM product for use in North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A shall be installed in accordance with Subarticle 1633-3(A) of the *Standard Specifications*, Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1633.01 and the detail provided in the plans.

Installation of matting shall be in accordance with the detail provided in the plans, and anchored by placing Class B stone on top of the matting at the upper and lower ends.

Apply PAM at a rate of 4 ounces over the center portion of the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A and matting where the water is going to flow over. PAM applications shall be done during construction activities and after every rainfall event that is equal to or exceeds 0.50 in.

The Contractor shall maintain the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM until the project is accepted or until the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM are removed, and shall remove and dispose of silt accumulations at the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM when so directed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1630 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1633-5 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Matting will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Polyacrylamide(PAM) will be measured and paid for by the actual weight in pounds of PAM applied to the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section, including, but not limited to, furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to apply the *Polyacrylamide(PAM)*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Polyacrylamide(PAM)	Pound

IMPERVIOUS DIKE:

Description

This work consists of furnishing, installing, maintaining, and removing an *Impervious Dike* for the purpose of diverting normal stream flow around the construction site. The Contractor shall construct an impervious dike in such a manner approved by the Engineer. The impervious dike shall not permit seepage of water into the construction site or contribute to siltation of the stream. The impervious dike shall be constructed of an acceptable material in the locations noted on the plans or as directed.

Materials

Acceptable materials shall include but not be limited to sheet piles, sandbags, and/or the placement of an acceptable size stone lined with polypropylene or other impervious geotextile.

Earth material shall not be used to construct an impervious dike when it is in direct contact with the stream unless vegetation can be established before contact with the stream takes place.

Measurement and Payment

Impervious Dike will be measured and paid as the actual number of linear feet of impervious dike(s) constructed, measured in place from end to end of each separate installation that has been completed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work including but not limited to furnishing materials, construction, maintenance, and removal of the impervious dike.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Impervious Dike	Linear Foot

TEMPORARY PIPE FOR CULVERT CONSTRUCTION:**Description**

This work consists of furnishing, installing, maintaining and removing any and all temporary pipe used on this project in conjunction with the culvert construction.

Construction Methods

The Contractor shall install temporary pipe in locations shown on the plans in such a manner approved by the Engineer. The temporary pipe shall provide a passageway for the stream through the work-site. The minimum size requirements will be as stated on the erosion control plans.

Measurement and Payment

___" *Temporary Pipe* will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per linear foot of temporary pipe approved by the Engineer and measured in place from end to end. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section including but not limited to furnishing all materials required for installation, construction, maintenance, and removal of temporary pipe.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
___" Temporary Pipe	Linear Foot

PUMP AROUND OPERATION:**Description**

The work covered by this section consists of furnishing, installing, maintaining and removing any and all pump around systems used on this project. The Contractor shall install a pump around system in locations as shown in the plans and in other locations approved by the Engineer. The pump around system shall provide a passageway for the stream flow around the work site.

The quantity of pump around systems may be increased, decreased, or eliminated entirely as directed. Such variations in quantity will not be considered as alterations in the details of construction or a change in the character of the work. See NCDOT *Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities* manual for example pump around operation.

Materials

Item	Section
Special Stilling Basin	1639

Impervious Dike shall meet the specifications as provided elsewhere in this contract.

Pumps shall be of sufficient size to divert the stream flow around the work area, as approved by the Engineer.

Construction Methods

Install *impervious dike(s)* as shown on the plans or as directed. Pump water around the work site. If the water is turbid or exposed to bare soil, pump through a *special stilling basin*. Once the work is complete in an area remove the *impervious dike(s)* and pump system, and stabilize the area.

Measurement and Payment

Impervious Dike will be measured and paid for as provided elsewhere in this contract.

Special Stilling Basin will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1639-4 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Payment for pumping operations shall be considered incidental to the work of installing pipes and culverts. The pumping operations shall include but not be limited to, diverting the stream flow around the work area and pumping runoff from the work area into a stilling basin, special stilling basin or other sediment control device. No additional payment will be made for furnishing materials or maintenance of the pumping operations for the installation of pipes and culverts.

The above prices and payments will be full compensation for all work covered by this section including, but not limited to furnishing all of the necessary materials, construction, maintenance and removal of the impervious dike and pump around system.

COIR FIBER MAT:**Description**

Furnish material, install and maintain coir fiber mat in locations shown on the plans or in locations as directed. Work includes providing all materials, excavating and backfilling, and placing and securing coir fiber mat with stakes, steel reinforcement bars or staples as directed.

Materials

Item	Section
Coir Fiber Mat	1060-14

Anchors: Stakes, reinforcement bars, or staples shall be used as anchors.

Wooden Stakes:

Provide hardwood stakes 12"- 24" long with a 2" x 2" nominal square cross section. One end of the stake must be sharpened or beveled to facilitate driving through the coir fiber mat and down into the underlying soil. The other end of the stake needs to have a 1"- 2" long head at the top with a 1"- 2" notch following to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Steel Reinforcement Bars:

Provide uncoated #10 steel reinforcement bars 24" nominal length. The bars shall have a 4" diameter bend at one end with a 4" straight section at the tip to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Staples:

Provide staples made of 0.125" diameter new steel wire formed into a *u* shape not less than 12" in length with a throat of 1" in width.

Construction Methods

Place the coir fiber mat immediately upon final grading. Provide a smooth soil surface free from stones, clods, or debris that will prevent the contact of the mat with the soil. Unroll the mat and apply without stretching such that it will lie smoothly but loosely on the soil surface.

For stream relocation applications, take care to preserve the required line, grade, and cross section of the area covered. Bury the top slope end of each piece of mat in a narrow trench at least 6 in. deep and tamp firmly. Where one roll of matting ends and a second roll begins, overlap the end of the upper roll over the buried end of the second roll so there is a 6 in. overlap. Construct check trenches at least 12 in. deep every 50 ft. longitudinally along the edges of the mat or as directed. Fold over and bury mat to the full depth of the trench, close and tamp firmly. Overlap mat at least 6 in. where 2 or more widths of mat are installed side by side.

Place anchors across the mat at the ends approximately 1 ft. apart. Place anchors along the outer edges and down the center of the mat 3 ft. apart.

Adjustments in the trenching or anchoring requirements to fit individual site conditions may be required.

Measurement and Payment

Coir Fiber Mat will be measured and paid for as the actual number of square yards measured along the surface of the ground over which coir fiber mat is installed and accepted.

No measurement will be made for anchor items.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Coir Fiber Mat	Square Yard

FLOATING TURBIDITY CURTAIN:

Description

This work consists of furnishing a *Floating Turbidity Curtain* to deter silt suspension and movement of silt particles during construction. The floating turbidity curtain shall be constructed at locations as directed.

Materials

The curtain material shall be made of a tightly woven nylon, plastic or other non-deteriorating material meeting the following specifications:

Property	Value
Grab tensile strength	*md-370 lbs *cd-250 lbs
Mullen burst strength	480 psi
Trapezoid tear strength	*md-100 lbs *cd-60 lbs
Apparent opening size	70 US standard sieve
Percent open area	4% permittivity 0.28 sec-1

*md - machine direction

*cd - cross machine direction

In the event that more than one width of fabric is required, a 6" overlap of the material shall also be required.

The curtain material shall be supported by a flotation material having over 29 lbs/ft buoyancy. The floating curtain shall have a 5/16" galvanized chain as ballast and dual 5/16" galvanized wire ropes with a heavy vinyl coating as load lines.

Construction Methods

The Contractor shall maintain the *Floating Turbidity Curtain* in a satisfactory condition until its removal is requested by the Engineer. The curtain shall extend to the bottom of the jurisdictional resource. Anchor the curtain according to manufacturer recommendations.

Measurement and Payment

Floating Turbidity Curtain will be measured and paid for as the actual number of square yards of curtain furnished as specified and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for the work as described in this section including but not limited to furnishing all materials, tools, equipment, and all incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Floating Turbidity Curtain	Square Yard

CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE:

(01-03-19)

Description

Concrete washout structures are enclosures above or below grade to contain concrete waste water and associated concrete mix from washing out ready-mix trucks, drums, pumps, or other equipment. Concrete washouts must collect and retain all the concrete washout water and solids, so that this material does not migrate to surface waters or into the ground water. These enclosures are not intended for concrete waste not associated with wash out operations.

The concrete washout structure may include constructed devices above or below ground and or commercially available devices designed specifically to capture concrete wash water.

Materials

Item	Section
Temporary Silt Fence	1605

Safety Fence shall meet the specifications as provided elsewhere in this contract.

Geomembrane basin liner shall meet the following minimum physical properties for low permeability; it shall consist of a polypropylene or polyethylene 10 mil think geomembrane. If the

minimum setback dimensions can be achieved the liner is not required. (5 feet above groundwater, 50 feet from top of bank of perennial stream, other surface water body, or wetland.)

Construction Methods

Build an enclosed earthen berm or excavate to form an enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed.

Install temporary silt fence around the perimeter of the enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed if structure is not located in an area where existing erosion and sedimentation control devices are capable to containing any loss of sediment.

Post a sign with the words “Concrete Washout” in close proximity of the concrete washout area, so it is clearly visible to site personnel. Install safety fence as directed for visibility to construction traffic.

The construction details for the above grade and below grade concrete washout structures can be found on the following web page link:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/SoilWaterDocuments/ConcreteWashoutStructuredetail.pdf>

Alternate details for accommodating concrete washout may be submitted for review and approval. The alternate details shall include the method used to retain and dispose of the concrete waste water within the project limits and in accordance with the minimum setback requirements. (5 feet above groundwater, 50 feet from top of bank of perennial stream, other surface water body, or wetland.)

Maintenance and Removal

Maintain the concrete washout structure(s) to provide adequate holding capacity plus a minimum freeboard of 12 inches. Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition after reaching 75% capacity.

Inspect concrete washout structures for damage and maintain for effectiveness.

Remove the concrete washout structures and sign upon project completion. Grade the earth material to match the existing contours and permanently seed and mulch area.

Measurement and Payment

Concrete Washout Structure will be paid for per each enclosure installed in accordance with the details. If alternate details are approved then those details will also be paid for per each approved and installed device.

Temporary Silt Fence will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1605-5 of the *Standard Specifications*.

No measurement will be made for other items or for over excavation or stockpiling.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Concrete Washout Structure	Each

FABRIC INSERT INLET PROTECTION DEVICE (HIGH FLOW)

(6-29-17)

Description

This work shall consist of installing, maintaining, and removing *Fabric Inlet Protection Device*, of the type specified, in inlet structures (catch basins, drop inlets, etc) in areas where asphalt or concrete may prevent the proper installation of a Rock Inlet Sediment Traps Type C, or as directed.

Materials

The product shall be a fabric inlet protection device composed of a fitted woven polypropylene geotextile double sewn with nylon thread suspended sack. The *Fabric Inlet Protection Device* shall be manufactured to fit the opening of the catch basin or drop inlet or shall have a deflector to direct runoff from the curb opening into the fabric sack. The *Fabric Inlet Protection Device* shall have a rigid frame or support system to support the loaded weight of the product. The product shall have lifting loops for removing the device from the basin and will have dump straps attached at the bottom to facilitate the emptying of the device. The *Fabric Inlet Protection Device* shall have an overflow system to allow stormwater to enter the inlet structure and avoid ponding on the roadway when the device reaches capacity

The stitching shall meet the following physical properties:

Physical	Test Method	English
Average Wide Width Strength	ASTM D-4884	165 lb/in

The fitted filter assembly shall have the following physical properties:

Physical	Test Method	English
Grab Tensile	ASTM D-4632	255 x 275 lbs
Minimum Puncture Strength	ASTM D-4833	125 lbs
Mullen Burst	ASTM D-3786	420 PSI
Minimum UV Resistance	ASTM D-4355	70 %.
Flow Rate	ASTM D-4491	200 gal/min/ft ²
Apparent Opening	ASTM D-4751	20 US Sieve
Permittivity	ASTM D-4491	1.5 sec ⁻¹

Construction Methods

Strictly comply with manufacturer’s installation instructions and recommendations. Maintenance shall include regular daily inspections and after each qualifying rain event. The *Fabric Insert Inlet Protection Device* shall be emptied, cleaned and placed back into the basin when it reaches 50% capacity or as directed.

Measurement and Payment

This work will be paid for at the contract unit price per *Fabric Insert Inlet Protection Device* of the type specified, complete in place and accepted. Such payment shall be full compensation for furnishing and installing the *Fabric Insert Inlet Protection Device* in accordance with this specification and for all required maintenance.

Maintenance of the device, cleanout and disposal of accumulated sediments shall be paid for by *Fabric Insert Inlet Protection Device Cleanout*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Fabric Insert Inlet Protection Device	Each
Fabric Insert Inlet Protection Device Cleanout	Each

RA-1

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

State of North Carolina Department of Transportation

I – 26 East/West Bound

Henderson/Buncombe County

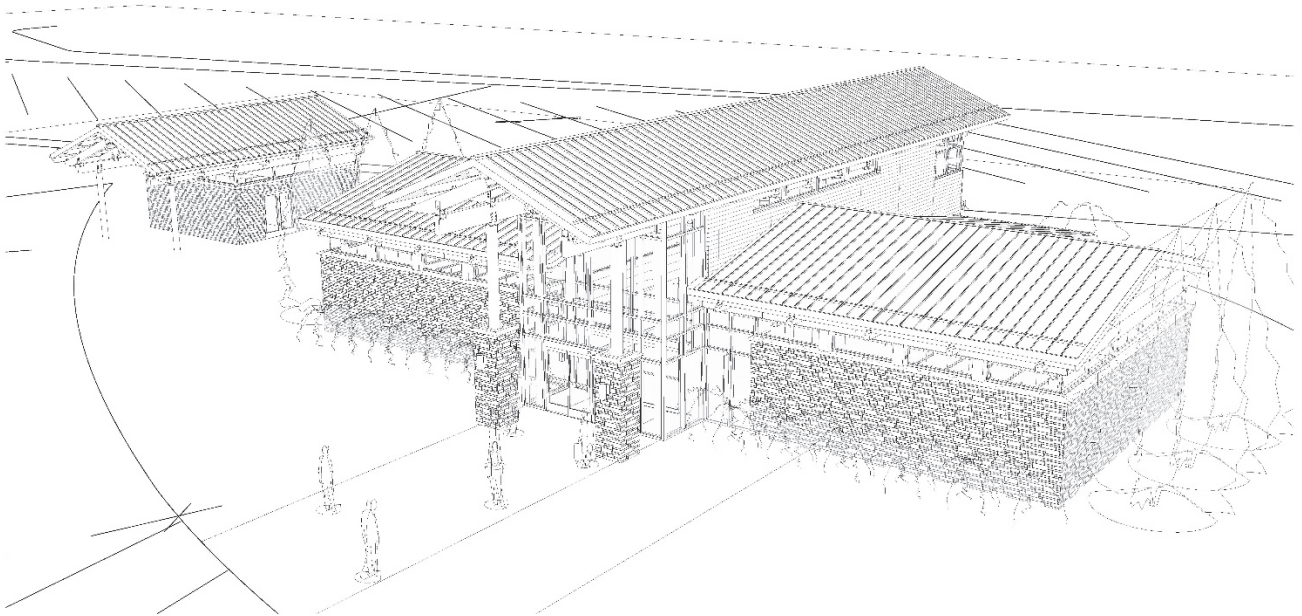
North Carolina 28732

United States

C204265

State Construction Project Number:

18-19751.01A



State of North Carolina Department of Transportation

1 South Wilmington Street

1557 Mail Service Center

Raleigh, North Carolina 27601

United States

RA-2

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Table of Contents

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING DOCUMENTS GROUP

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

003132	- Geotechnical Data	Pg. 1
004243	- Compensation Pages	Pg. 4

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

General Requirements Subgroup

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

012500	- Substitution Procedures	Pg. 4
012620	- Weather Delays	Pg. 2
012900	- Payment Procedures	Pg. 5
013100	- Project Management and Coordination	Pg. 9
013200	- Construction Progress Documentation	Pg. 9
013300	- Submittal Procedures	Pg. 10
014000	- Quality Requirements	Pg. 9
016000	- Product Requirements	Pg. 6
017300	- Execution	Pg. 10
017419	- Construction Waste Management and Disposal	Pg. 3
017700	- Closeout Procedures	Pg. 8
017823	- Operation and Maintenance Data	Pg. 9
017900	- Demonstration and Training	Pg. 7

Facility Construction Subgroup

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

033000	- Cast-In-Place Concrete	Pg. 15
--------	--------------------------	--------

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

040110	- Masonry Cleaning	Pg. 10
047200	- Cast Stone Masonry	Pg. 9
047313	- Calcium Silicate Manufactured Stone Masonry	Pg. 11

DIVISION 05 - METALS

051200	- Structural Steel Framing	Pg. 6
054000	- Cold-Formed Metal Framing	Pg. 10
055000	- Metal Fabrications	Pg. 9

RA-3

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061000	- Rough Carpentry	Pg. 7
061516	- Wood Roof Decking	Pg. 4
061800	- Glued-Laminated Construction	Pg. 5

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

072100	- Thermal Insulation	Pg. 7
072500	- Weather Barriers	Pg. 6
074113.16	- Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels	Pg. 16
074243	- Composite Wall Panels	Pg. 8
079200	- Joint Sealants	Pg. 9

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

081113	- Hollow Metal Frames and Doors	Pg. 8
084113	- Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts	Pg. 13
084413	- Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls	Pg. 12
087100	- Door Hardware	Pg. 10
087113	- Automatic Door Operators	Pg. 10
088000	- Glazing	Pg. 11
089119	- Fixed Louvers	Pg. 6
089516	- Wall Vents	Pg. 3

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

092216	- Non-Structural Metal Framing	Pg. 6
092900	- Gypsum Board	Pg. 10
096348	- Ultracompact Floor Finishes	Pg. 6
096513	- Resilient Base and Accessories	Pg. 4
099113	- Exterior Painting	Pg. 6
099123	- Interior Painting	Pg. 6
099300	- Staining and Transparent Finishing	Pg. 7

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

102100	- Display Cases	Pg. 5
102113	- Toilet Compartments	Pg. 5
104250	- Signs	Pg. 2
104413	- Fire Protection Cabinets	Pg. 5
104416	- Fire Extinguishers	Pg. 3

Measurement and Payment – General Construction	Pg. 1
--	-------

RA-4

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Facility Services Subgroup**DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

220513	- Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment	Pg. 2
220516	- Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 5
220517	- Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 3
220518	- Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 2
220519	- Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 5
220523.12	- Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 4
220523.13	- Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 3
220523.14	- Check Valves for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 4
220523.15	- Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping	Pg. 4
220529	- Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	Pg. 9
220553	- Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	Pg. 4
220719	- Plumbing Piping Insulation	Pg. 16
221113	- Facility Water Distribution Piping	Pg. 12
221116	- Domestic Water Piping	Pg. 13
221119	- Domestic Water Piping Specialties	Pg. 8
221123	- Domestic Water Pumps	Pg. 4
221316	- Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping	Pg. 9
221319	- Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping Specialties	Pg. 7
221319.13	- Sanitary Drains	Pg. 4
223300	- Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters	Pg. 7
224213.13	- Commercial Water Closets	Pg. 6
224213.16	- Commercial Urinals	Pg. 5
224216.13	- Commercial Lavatories	Pg. 5
224216.16	- Commercial Sinks	Pg. 5
224713	- Drinking Fountains	Pg. 3

Measurement and Payment – Plumbing Pg. 1

DIVISION 23 - HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

230130.51	- HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning	Pg. 4
230513	- Common Motor Requirements For HVAC Equipment	Pg. 3
230517	- Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping	Pg. 3
230518	- Escutcheons for HVAC Piping	Pg. 2
230529	- Hangers And Supports For HVAC Piping And Equipment	Pg. 7
230548.13	- Vibration Controls for HVAC	Pg. 3
230553	- Identification for HVAC Piping And Equipment	Pg. 4
230593	- Testing, Adjusting And Balancing	Pg. 11
230713	- Duct Insulation	Pg. 14

RA-5

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

230719	- HVAC Pipe Insulation	Pg. 14
230923.14	- Flow Instruments	Pg. 6
230923.22	- Position Instruments	Pg. 3
230923.23	- Pressure Instruments	Pg. 8
230923.27	- Temperature Instruments	Pg. 7
232113	- Hydronic Piping	Pg. 6
232300	- Refrigerant Piping	Pg. 12
233113	- Metal Ducts	Pg. 11
233300	- Air Duct Accessories	Pg. 9
233346	- Flexible Ducts	Pg. 3
233423	- HVAC Power Ventilators	Pg. 4
233713.13	- Air Diffusers	Pg. 2
233713.23	- Registers and Grilles	Pg. 3
233723	- HVAC Gravity Ventilators	Pg. 3
237200	- Air-To-Air Energy Recovery Equipment	Pg. 4
238126	- Split-System Air-Conditioners	Pg. 7

Measurement and Payment – Heating & Air Conditioning Pg. 1

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

260519	- Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	Pg. 5
260523	- Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables	Pg. 6
260526	- Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	Pg. 8
260529	- Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	Pg. 5
260533	- Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems	Pg. 11
260543	- Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems	Pg. 12
260544	- Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling	Pg. 4
260553	- Identification for Electrical Systems	Pg. 10
262416	- Panelboards	Pg. 7
262726	- Wiring Devices	Pg. 5
262816	- Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	Pg. 9
263600	- Transfer Switches	Pg. 12
265119	- LED Interior Lighting	Pg. 6
265219	- Emergency and Exit Lighting	Pg. 6
265619	- LED Exterior Lighting	Pg. 6

Measurement and Payment – Electrical Pg. 1

RA-6

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Flyleaf

Owner

State of North Carolina Department of Transportation
1 South Wilmington Street
1557 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601
United States
919-707-2929

Mechanical Engineer

Apogee Consulting Group (Paul L. Holloway)
1151 Kildaire Farm Road
Suite 120
Cary, North Carolina 27511
United States
919-858-7420



DocuSigned by:
Paul Holloway
6D2D8DFCD0BF49B...

7/15/2019

Electrical Engineer

Apogee Consulting Group (John Kevin Mason)
1151 Kildaire Farm Road
Suite 120
Cary, North Carolina 27511
United States
919-858-7420



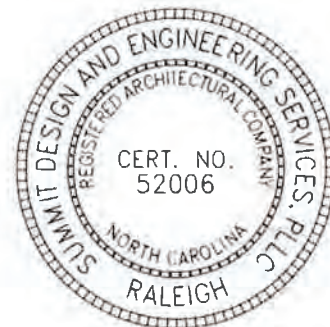
DocuSigned by:
John Kevin Mason
6051518131414E4...

7/15/2019

Architect

Summit Design & Engineering Services, PLLC (Brian Shepard, AIA, NCARB, LEED)
1110 Navaho Drive
Suite 600
Raleigh, North Carolina 27609
United States
919-322-0115

DocuSigned by:
Brian T. Shepard
31E0C73DAD144F0...



7/16/2019

01/22/2019

RA-7

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

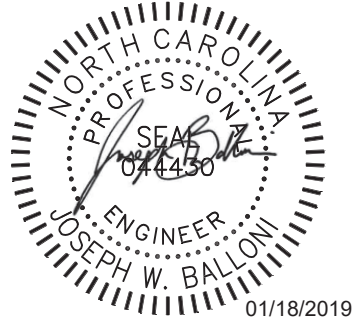
Bumcombe-Henderson County

Structural Engineer

Summit Design & Engineering Services, PLLC (Joseph Balloni)
1110 Navaho Drive
Suite 600
Raleigh, North Carolina 27609
United States
919-322-0115

DocuSigned by:
Joseph W. Balloni
D15A8AB9E9654F4...

7/16/2019



RA-8

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 003132 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA

PART 1 - Geotechnical Data

1.1 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

- A. This Document with its referenced attachments is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information, but are not a warranty of existing conditions. This Document and its attachments are not part of the Contract Documents.
- B. Soil-boring data is available upon request.

END OF SECTION 003132

RA-9

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Buncombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for General Construction of I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Service Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans ,Site Plans ,Site Utility Plans and Specifications, and in coordination with (NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures Dated January 2018) , Project Roadway Plans, Site Plans, and Site Utility Plans and when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for “Each”- "General Construction of Rest Area Service Building” and “Each”- “General Construction of Rest Area Vending Building”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of General Construction of the Rest Area Building and General Construction of the Vending Building, including but not limited to Building Site and Foundation Preparation, Concrete Footings / Concrete Slabs and furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of General Construction of Buildings.

Payment will be made under:

"GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING” EACH

"GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA VENDING BUILDING” EACH

RA-10

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for Plumbing Installation for the I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Service Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans / Plumbing Plans and Specifications and in coordination with ,Site Plans and Site Utility Plans, completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for “Each” -“Plumbing Installation for Rest Area Service Building” and “Each” - “Plumbing Installation for Rest Area Vending Building”. ***(Work shall include all Materials and Labor for connecting to Site Water / Sewer service, (5') Five Feet outside the Rest Area Building and all outside Plumbing Service Connections from the Vending Building to the Rest Area Building)*** Such price and payment will be full compensation for all Building Plumbing Installation work including but not limited to furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of Building Plumbing Installation.

Payment will be made under:

" PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING" EACH

"PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING" EACH

RA-11

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for Heating & Air Conditioning Installation for the I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Service Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans / Mechanical Plans ,Electrical Plans and Specifications and in coordination with Site Plans and Site Utility Plans ,completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for "Each" -" Heating & Air Conditioning Installation for Rest Area Service Building" and "Each" - Heating & Air Conditioning Installation for Rest Area Vending Building" Such price and payment will be full compensation for all Building Heating & Air Conditioning Installation work, including but not limited to furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of Building Heating & Air Conditioning Installation.

Payment will be made under:

**"HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA
SERVICE BUILDING" EACH**

**"HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA
VENDING BUILDING" EACH**

RA-12

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for Electrical Installation for the I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans / Electrical Plans and Specifications and in coordination with Site Plans and Site Utility Plans ,completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for "Each" -" Electrical Installation Rest Area Service Building" and "Each" - "Electrical Installation for Rest Area Vending Building". ***(Work shall include all Materials and Labor for connecting to Electric Service Meter Five Feet (5') outside Rest Area Building, Constructing Concrete Pad /Conduit / Wiring connecting to Electric Backup Generator (Generator By Others) and all outside Electrical Service Connections from the Vending Building to the Rest Area Building)*** Such price and payment will be full compensation for all Building Electrical Installation work, including but not limited to furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of Building Electrical Installation.

Payment will be made under:

"ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING" EACH

"ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING" EACH

RA-13

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:

RA-14

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports indicating evidence of compliance to the building code(s) in effect for Project, from 2016 NCSBC 's.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within five days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 10 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

RA-15

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 15 days after the Notice of Award. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.

- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied,

RA-16

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
- b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

RA-17

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 012620 - Weather Delays

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Extensions of Contract Time

- A. If the basis exists for an extension of time in accordance with section 1.2/C of the Conditions, an extension of time on the basis of weather may be granted only for the number of Weather Delay Days in excess of the number of days listed as the Standard Baseline for that month.

1.2 Standard Baseline for average climatic range

- A. The Architect has reviewed weather data available from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and determined a Standard Baseline of average climatic range for the projects location.
- B. Standard Baseline shall be regarded as the normal and anticipatable table number of calendar days for each month during which construction activity shall be expected to be prevented and suspended by cause of adverse weather. Suspension of construction activity for the number of days each month as listed in the Standard Baseline is included in the Work and is not eligible for extension of Contract Time.

- C. Standard Baseline is as follows:

Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May.	Jun.	Jul.	Aug.	Sep.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
5	3	5	6	6	7	7	7	6	4	5	5

1.3 Adverse Weather and Weather Delay Days

- A. Adverse Weather is defined as the occurrence of one or more of the following conditions which prevents exterior construction activity or access to the site within twenty-four (24) hours
 1. Precipitation (rain, snow, or ice) in excess of one-tenth inch (0.10") liquid measure
 2. Temperatures which do not rise above 32 degrees F by 10:00 a.m .
 3. Sustained wind in excess of twenty-five (25) m.p.h.
 4. Sanding snow that cannot be removed in excess of one inch (1.00")
- B. Adverse Weather may include, if appropriate, "dry-out" or "mud " days:
 1. For rain days above the standard baseline;

RA-18

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Only if there is a hindrance to site access or sitework, such as excavation, backfill, and footings; and,
 3. At a rate no greater than 1 make-up day for each day or consecutive days of rain beyond the standard baseline that total 1.0 inch or more, liquid measure, unless specifically recommended otherwise by the Architect
- C. A Weather Delay Day may be counted if adverse weather prevents work on the project for fifty percent (50%) or more of the contractor's scheduled work day, including a weekend day or holiday if Contractor has scheduled construction activity that day.

1.4 Documentation and Submittals

- A. Provide a Weather Delay Report, indicating for each calendar month the days on which construction activity affecting the critical path of the Work was prevented by weather conditions. Provide written general cause; and,, indicate the measurement of precipitation, temperature, wind, or other influencing factors, using NOAA climate data and the construction activity that was scheduled and delayed. At the end of the month, add up the number of days delay, subtract the baseline number given and show the resulting claimable days. Submit a copy of the completed report with the next application for payment and with subsequent claim for time extension. Claims for time extension based upon weather delays will be denied if a submitted report does not corroborate the claim or if no report was submitted when it was required in accordance with this paragraph.
- B. Submit daily jobsite work logs showing which and to what extent construction activities have been affected by weather included in the regular reports.
- C. Submit actual weather data to support claim for time extension obtained from nearest NOAA weather station or other independently verified source approved by Architect at beginning of project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 012620

RA-19

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
- 2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.

- 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
 - b. Submittal schedule.
 - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.

- 1) List of subcontractor's suppliers and fabricators.

- 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than 15 days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for

RA-20

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Payment. No payment will be made to Contractor until the schedule of values has been approved by Architect.

- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Architect's project number.
 - d. Contractor's name and address.
 - e. Date of submittal.

 2.
 - a. Generic Name Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - b. Related Specification Section or Division.
 - c. Description of the Work.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - f. Name of supplier.
 - g. Change Orders (numbers) that affect dollar value.
 - h. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.

 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
 4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.

 6. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.

RA-21

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

7. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
8. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
9. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.

RA-22

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.

- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 4. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.

- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
 1. List of subcontractors, suppliers and fabricators.
 2. Approved schedule of values.
 3. Approved contractor's construction schedule.
 4. Schedule of principal products.
 5. Schedule of unit prices.
 6. Submittal schedule.
 7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 9. Copies of building permits.
 10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 11. Initial progress report.
 12. Report of preconstruction conference.

- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.

RA-23

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 3. Completion of items specified for completion after Substantial Completion.
 4. Assurance that work not complete and accepted will be completed without undue delay.
 5. Transmittal of required project construction records to Owner.
 6. Removal of temporary facilities and services.
 7. Removal of surplus materials, rubbish and similar elements.
 8. Change of door locks to Owner's access.
 9. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 10. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
 11. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
 12. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
 13. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 14. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 15. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

RA-24

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A.

1. Administrative and supervisory personnel. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
2. General coordination procedures.
3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
4. Project meetings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for a description of the division of work among separate contracts and responsibility for coordination activities not in this Section.
2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
3. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
4. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.
5. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for coordinating the Work with Owner's Commissioning Authority.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

RA-25

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

RA-26

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.6 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. RFIs shall originate with Contractor. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 12. Contractor's signature.

RA-27

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Form bound in Project Manual.
 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow 7 working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include the following:
 1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 5. RFI description.
 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 7. Date Architect's response was received.

RA-28

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 10 days after execution of the Agreement. The conference will be held at the project site or another convenient location.

1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing (If any).
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - e. Lines of communications.
 - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - g. Procedures for RFIs.
 - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - l. Preparation of record documents.
 - m. Use of the premises.
 - n. Work restrictions.
 - o. Working hours.
 - p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - t. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - u. Parking availability.
 - v. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - x. First aid.
 - y. Security.
 - z. Progress cleaning.

RA-29

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Minutes: Architect will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- B. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect, and Owner's Commissioning Authority of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility requirements.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

RA-30

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Closeout Conference Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of record documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Submittal of written warranties.
 - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - i. Submittal procedures.
 - j. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - l. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at monthly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure

RA-31

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

- 1) Review schedule for next period.
- b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
- 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site utilization.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Progress cleaning.
 - 10) Quality and work standards.
 - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 12) Field observations.
 - 13) Status of RFIs.
 - 14) Status of proposal requests.
 - 15) Pending changes.
 - 16) Status of Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
- a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- E. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at seven days prior to events to occur intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

RA-32

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site utilization.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Work hours.
 - 10) Hazards and risks.
 - 11) Progress cleaning.
 - 12) Quality and work standards.
 - 13) Change Orders.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

RA-33

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.
 - 4. Site condition reports.
 - 5. Special reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for preparing a combined Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
 - 3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

RA-34

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for the completion of an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
 - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
 - 2. PDF electronic file.
 - 3. Two paper copies.
- B. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.

RA-35

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- 4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.
- C. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- D. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- E. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- F. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
 - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
 - 3. Discuss constraints, including interim milestones.
 - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
 - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
 - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
 - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
 - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
 - 9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures.
 - 10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
 - 11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

RA-36

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
 4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 6. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pre-Con Meeting
 - b. Progress Meetings - OAC (every 4 wks)
 - c. Pre-Slab Inspections - Spec Insp/MEP Eng/Struc Eng.
 - d. Sewer Inspection & Survey
 - e. Steel Inspection - Struc Eng.
 - f. Exterior Metal Framing Inspection - Subconsultant
 - g. Pre-Install Meeting - Roofing
 - h. Mock-up Roof Assembly
 - i. Dampproofing Inspection - Spec Insp/Arch
 - j. Pre-Install Meeting - Masonry Cleaning
 - k. Mock-up Review - Masonry/Precast
 - l. MEP Rough-in Inspection (walls) - MEP Eng
 - m. Pre-Install Meeting - Glazing
 - n. Pre-Install Meeting - Sealants
 - o. MEP Rough-in Inspection (clgs) - MEP Eng
 - p. Temp Power/HVAC start-up
 - q. Mock-up Painting - Exterior
 - r. Pre-Install Meeting - Flooring
 - s. Mock-up Flooring

RA-37

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- t. Pre-Install Meeting - Doors & Hdwr
- u. Pre-install Meeting - Landscaping
- v. Punchlist - GC
- w. Punchlist Work - GC
- x. Final Clean
- y. Certificate of Occupancy (Full or partial)
- z. Close Out Submittals Complete (O&M manuals)
- aa. Owner Training
- bb. Substantial Completion Inspection/Punch – Building
- cc. Owner Vendor - Security trim out
- dd. Punchlist work - Building
- ee. Substantial Completion Inspection/Punch - Site
- ff. Punchlist work - Site
- gg. Touch up Final Clean
- hh. Warranties Complete
- ii. Final Inspection - Building & Site
- jj. Owner Walk Thru
- kk. Final Acceptance/Polish the Door Pulls
- ll. Owner Move-In

C. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:

- 1. Unresolved issues.
- 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
- 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
- 4. Notations on returned submittals.
- 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.

D. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.

RA-38

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 14 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
 - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
 - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
 - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
 - c. Purchase of materials.
 - d. Delivery.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Utility interruptions.
 - g. Installation.
 - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
 - i. Testing.
 - j. Punch list and final completion.
 - k. Activities occurring following final completion.
 2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
 4. Identify adverse weather days built into the Project Construction Schedule per Month.

RA-39

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
 - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.
 1. For any day that the General Contractor considers that the Project is delayed by adverse weather conditions, the GC shall identify in writing the adverse weather conditions affecting each activity, the specific nature of the activity affected, and the number of hours lost by each responsibility or trade. The number of days affected by adverse weather condition, beyond the number built into the GC's approved schedule will be taken into consideration for a time extension to the project completion date. Such a request for time extension of the contract time shall be submitted by the tenth (10th) day of the following month in which the adverse weather occurred. The request shall include , but not limited to, the following information:
 - a. Detailed description of weather's effect on scheduled activities and its net effect on the critical path of the Project, and
 - b. Weather records from the official weather station nearest the Project site and records of actual observation as contained in the daily reports, correspondence, or other documentation.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
 1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 2. Description of activity.
 3. Main events of activity.
 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
 5. Early and late start dates.
 6. Early and late finish dates.
 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 8. Total float or slack time.
 9. Average size of workforce.
 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
 1. Identification of activities that have changed.
 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.

RA-40

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
5. Changes in the critical path.
6. Changes in total float or slack time.
7. Changes in the Contract Time.

H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.

1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
 - a. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

2.3 REPORTS

A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
4. Equipment at Project site.
5. Material deliveries.
6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
7. Accidents.
8. Meetings and significant decisions.
9. Unusual events (see special reports).
10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
12. Emergency procedures.
13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
14. Change Orders received and implemented.
15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
16. Services connected and disconnected.
17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
18. Partial completions and occupancies.
19. Substantial Completions authorized.

B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit

RA-41

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

2.4 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner and Architect within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

RA-42

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
 - 2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 4. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
 - 5. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard

RA-43

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.

- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. No product Samples for Verifications are required other than written statement from the contractor stating that the specified products are the ones to be installed on this project.
3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.

- a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.

4.

- a. Project name.Format: Use Summit Design and Engineering, PLLC "Submittal and Routing Form" for each submittal which will include following information.
- b. Scheduled date for first submittal.
- c. Specification Section number and title.
- d. Submittal category: Action; informational.
- e. Name of subcontractor.
- f. Description of the Work covered.
- g. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
- h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
- i. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
- j. Scheduled dates for installation.
- k. Activity or event number.

- B. Where substitutions are not permitted product submittals are not required other than a written statement from the contractor that the products installed will be exactly as specified.

RA-44

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will not be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 - 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 - 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 - 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 - 4. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
 - 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 - 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-

RA-45

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).

3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - c. Manufacturer name.
 - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- F. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.

RA-46

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- I. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 2. Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
 3. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.

RA-47

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), but no larger than 30 by 42 inches (750 by 1067 mm).
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.

RA-48

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one sets of Samples. Architect will retain one.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
- E. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
 - F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."
 - G. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 - H. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
 - I. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

RA-49

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- J. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- K. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- L. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- M. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- N. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- O. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- S. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.

RA-50

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- T. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- U. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- V. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- W. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to

RA-51

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Architect. Submittals submitted to Architect without Contractor's stamp indicating their action will be returned without review or comment.

- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents prior to submittal to Architect.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
 - 1. 1. No Exceptions Taken. 2. Make Corrections as Noted. 3. Revise and Resubmit. 4. Rejected..
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 013300

RA-52

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.

RA-53

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- F. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- G. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- H. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- I. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.

RA-54

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
 - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
 - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.

RA-55

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

RA-56

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.

RA-57

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.8 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 2. Payment for these services will be made by the Owner.
 3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 3. Notify testing agencies at least 48 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

RA-58

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. **Manufacturer's Field Services:** Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. **Manufacturer's Technical Services:** Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. **Retesting/Reinspecting:** Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. **Testing Agency Responsibilities:** Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. **Associated Services:** Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.

RA-59

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.

1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

1.9 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

A. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified special inspector as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections and in Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:

1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
2. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
3. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:

1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams

RA-60

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."

- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

RA-61

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract Documents, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 2. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance,

RA-62

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.

RA-63

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. This section includes administrative and procedural requirements for warranties required by the Contract Documents, including manufacturer's standard warranties on products and special warranties. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of warranty on Work that incorporates products. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve suppliers, manufacturers, and subcontractors required to countersign special warranties with the Contractor.
- B. Related Damages and Losses: When correcting failed or damaged warranted construction, remove and replace construction that has been damaged as a result of such failure or must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted construction.
- C. Reinstatement of Warranty: When work covered by warranty has failed and been corrected by replacement or rebuilding, reinstate warranty by written endorsement. Reinstated warranty shall be equal to original warranty with equitable adjustment for depreciation.
- D. Replacement Cost: Upon determination that Work covered by warranty has failed replace or rebuild Work to an acceptable condition complying with requirements of Contract Documents. Contractor is responsible for cost of replacing or rebuilding defective Work regardless of whether Owner has benefited from use of Work through portion of its anticipated useful service life.
- E. Owner's Recourse: Expressed warranties made to Owner are in addition to implied warranties, and shall not limit duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise available under law. Expressed warranty periods shall not be interpreted as limitations on the time in which the Owner can enforce such other duties, obligations, rights, or remedies.
- F. Rejection of Warranties: Owner reserves the right to reject warranties and to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with the requirements of Contract Documents.
- G. Submit written warranties to the Architect prior to date certified for Final Payment. If Architect's Certificate of Final Payment designates commencement date for warranties other than date of Final Payment for Work, or designated portion of Work, submit written warranties upon request of the Architect.

RA-64

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Form of Submittal: At Final Completion compile two(2) copies of each required warranty properly executed by Contractor, or by Contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or manufacturer. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on table of contents of Project Manual. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy duty, commercial quality, durable 3 ring vinyl covered loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized receive 8.5" x 11" paper.
1. Provide heavy paper dividers with celluloid covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify product or installation.
- I. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 5. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample" sample to be matched is Architect's.
 6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 3. Products:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for

RA-65

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
4. Manufacturers:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
 5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
 - D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.
- ## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS
- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

RA-66

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

RA-67

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A.

1. Site availability.
2. Site information and examination of conditions. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
3. Construction layout.
4. Field engineering and surveying.
5. Installation of the Work.
6. Cutting and patching.
7. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
8. Progress cleaning.
9. Starting and adjusting.
10. Protection of installed construction.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 1 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

RA-68

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 - 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
 - a. All structural steel framing..
 - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - c. Communication systems.
 - d. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - e. Electrical wiring systems.
 - f. Operating systems of special construction.
 - 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior storefront construction.
 - d. Equipment supports.
 - e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 - g. Demountable Partitions..
 - 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

RA-69

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Subsurface report: The Report of Subsurface Investigation prepared by NCDOT Geotechnical Unit, as listed below, is included as a separate document with the Project Manual and is made available for the convenience of the Contractor and is for information purposes only. It is expressly understood that neither the Architect nor Owner will be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn there from by the Contractor.
 - 1. Bore Logs and locational map for both East and West Bound sites - prepared 9/10/2018
- B. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- C. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator

RA-70

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- D. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
1. Description of the Work.
 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 4. Recommended corrections.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.

RA-71

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
 - 1. Contractor to establish benchmarks and control points and shall layout all work and make all surveys necessary for the satisfactory completion of the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be responsible for all measurements required for the execution of the work.
 - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.
- F. The Contractor shall provide competent and experienced personnel for all layout work. All surveys made by Contractor shall be made under the supervision of a licensed Professional Land Surveyor registered in the State of North Carolina.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
 - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.

RA-72

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of **96 inches (2440 mm)** in occupied spaces and in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

RA-73

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
 - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required,

RA-74

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 4. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- G. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
 2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive

RA-75

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

RA-76

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

RA-77

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Disposing of nonhazardous construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for coordination of responsibilities for waste management.
 - 2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.
 - 3. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Develop waste management plan that results to waste material and debris being promptly removed from the site and the Owner's property.

RA-78

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

B. General: 50 Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials.

1. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet and pad.
- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.
- l. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
 - 1) Paper.
 - 2) Cardboard.
 - 3) Boxes.
 - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
 - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
 - 6) Wood crates.
 - 7) Plastic pails.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
 - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

RA-79

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
2. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

3.2 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.
- D. The contractor shall be responsible for procurement of all permits or rights as governed by local ordinances for disposal of materials at said landfill or disposal sites.
- E. The contractor shall take appropriate measures, while hauling waste materials to landfill or disposal site, to prevent demolition debris from spilling and thus affecting the safe use of public and private roads. Debris control during course of disposal and removal from project site on public, private or haul roads will be considered incidental to the Work covered under the Contract Documents.

3.3 DUST, DEBRIS AND SMOKE CONTROL

- A. The Contractor shall control dust, debris and smoke throughout the life of the project within the project site. Dust, Debris and smoke control shall not be considered effective where the amount of dust, debris or smoke creates a potential or actual unsafe condition, public nuisance, or condition endangering the value, utility, or appearance of any property.

END OF SECTION 017419

RA-80

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
 - 6. Inspection procedures.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
 - 4. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.

RA-81

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
 - 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
 - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 - 7. Camera inspection of sanitary sewer system and the "jetting-out" of the sewer line after the final cleaning is completed. A copy of the video shall be saved in acceptable format on a disc or thumb drive.

RA-82

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

8. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.
- 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES
- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list),

RA-83

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.

3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance products, equipment and systems.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction. **[Use CSI Form 14.1A.]**

1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.
 - b. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.
 - c. Two paper copies. Architect will return one copies.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of

RA-84

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.

- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive **8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm)** paper.
 - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 - 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.10 Submittal of Record Drawings

- A. Provide and maintain on the jobsite one complete set of prints of all Drawings which form a part of the project. Immediately after each portion of the work is installed, indicate all deviations from the original design shown on the Drawings either by additional sketches or marked in red thereon. Upon completion of the job, deliver this record set to the Engineer or Architect of Work. The Engineer of Work will make the changes to the original Drawings indicating record conditions. Appropriate prints of the originals will then be delivered to the owner.
- B. Shop drawings, illustrations, schedules, performance charts, brochures, and other data which are prepared by the Contractor or any subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor and which illustrates some portion of the work. Submit shop drawings of all major building elements. Place all required shop drawings in one complete package that illustrates the full scope of the project. The intent of this requirement is to have one submittal package with all components of the project detailed in a single booklet.
 - 1. The submittals shall be reviewed first by the Contractor and then by the Architect. The submittal package shall be marked with an approval stamp, signed and dated by both the Contractor. After reviewed, submit the Record Drawing package to the Owner.

RA-85

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.

RA-86

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
- 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
 - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

RA-87

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 017700

RA-88

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for coordinating operation and maintenance manuals covering the Work of multiple contracts.
 - 2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.

RA-89

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer Comments on draft submittals.
 2. Two paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return one copies.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
1. List of documents.
 2. List of systems.
 3. List of equipment.
 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.

RA-90

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 - 6. Name and contact information for Architect.
 - 7. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 - 8. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
 - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

RA-91

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) white bond paper.
 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

RA-92

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
 2. Emergency instructions.
 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
 2. Flood.
 3. Gas leak.
 4. Water leak.
 5. Power failure.
 6. Water outage.
 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 3. Operating standards.
 4. Operating procedures.
 5. Operating logs.
 6. Wiring diagrams.
 7. Control diagrams.
 8. Piped system diagrams.

RA-93

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

RA-94

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Product name and model number.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 4. Material and chemical composition.
 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:

RA-95

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.

RA-96

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

RA-97

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 3. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.

RA-98

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and address of videographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Date of video recording.
2. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
3. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
4. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use in PDF electronic file format on compact disc.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 3. Review required content of instruction.
 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

RA-99

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
 - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.
 - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Operations manuals.
 - c. Maintenance manuals.
 - d. Project record documents.
 - e. Identification systems.
 - f. Warranties and bonds.

RA-100

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
 - a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnostic instructions.
 - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
 - a. Inspection procedures.
 - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
 - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - g. Instruction on use of special tools.

RA-101

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

8. Repairs: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnosis instructions.
 - b. Repair instructions.
 - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of an oral performance-based test.

RA-102

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and remove from Project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.

- 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.

- B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to format file type acceptable to Owner, on electronic media.

- 1. Electronic Media: Read-only format compact disc acceptable to Owner, with commercial-grade graphic label.
 - 2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to project manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
 - 3. File Names: Utilize file names based upon name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
 - 4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training DVD that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project table of contents:
 - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
 - b. Business address.
 - c. Business phone number.
 - d. Point of contact.
 - e. E-mail address.

- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.

- 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
 - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
 - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
 - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.

RA-103

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
 - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.
- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.
- G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

END OF SECTION 017900

RA-104

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements, and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
- C. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments. Mixtures submitted without proper documentation per ACI 318 WILL BE REJECTED
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

RA-105

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Form materials and form-release agents.
 - 4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
 - 5. Curing compounds.
 - 6. Vapor retarders.
 - 7. Repair materials.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

RA-106

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below **90 deg F (32 deg C)** at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
1. **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, **3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm)**, minimum.
- D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

RA-107

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

- 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete. Precast Concrete Bricks may be used in bottoms of footings ONLY, but not in slab to support WWF. SLAB ON GRADE WWF MUST BE CHAIRED AND MAY NOT BE "LIFTED" INTO PLACE DURING PLACEMENT

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I/II, gray.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: **1 inch (25 mm)** nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those

RA-108

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

F. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Sheet Vapor Retarder 10mil: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

2.7 CURING MATERIALS

A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** when dry.

B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

C. Water: Potable.

D. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm)** or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than **4100 psi (29 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

RA-109

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm)** or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.
1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use high-range water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** at 28 days.
 2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
 3. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm)**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
- B. Slabs-on-Grade: Normal-weight concrete.

RA-110

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
3. Slump Limit: 5 inches (125 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.12 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 (ACI 117M).
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 1. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 2. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

RA-111

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

RA-112

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Lap joints **6 inches (150 mm)** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire. WWF MUST BE SUPPORTED AND MAY NOT BE "LIFTED" INTO PLACE DURING PLACEMENT

3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete.
 - 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.

RA-113

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch-(3.2-mm)-wide** joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.
 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least **6 inches (150 mm)** into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement. - SLAB ON GRADE WWF MUST BE CHAIRED AND MAY NOT BE "LIFTED" INTO PLACE DURING PLACEMENT
 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.

RA-114

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to **ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M)**, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
 - b. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.
- C. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

RA-115

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.10 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

3.11 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- C. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
 - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
 - 2. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer [**unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project**].

RA-116

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.12 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to **3/4 inch (19 mm)**. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white Portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of **0.01 inch (0.25 mm)** wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and

RA-117

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.

6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes **1 inch (25 mm)** or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a **3/4-inch (19-mm)** clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes **1 inch (25 mm)** or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
- C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each **100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m)** or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** and below or **80 deg F (27 deg C)** and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.

RA-118

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Cast and laboratory cure a minimum of 5 standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days. Retain one cylinder for testing at 56 days in the event of low breaks at 28 days
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
7. Strength of each concrete mixture MAY be satisfactory (BASED ON THE ENGINEER'S APPROVAL) if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa). AND the strength of the concrete is adequate for the actual placed location. The engineer is under NO obligation to accept any concrete that falls below the specified 28 day strength.
8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 033000

RA-119

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 040110 - MASONRY CLEANING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning the following:
 - 1. Unit masonry surfaces.
 - 2. Stone surfaces.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Very Low-Pressure Spray: Under 100 psi (690 kPa).

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to cleaning masonry including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify masonry-cleaning equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, and sequencing.
 - c. Cleaning program.
 - d. Coordination with building occupants.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Work Sequence: Perform masonry-cleaning work in the following sequence:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Inspect for open mortar joints. Where repairs are required, delay further cleaning work until after repairs are completed, cured, and dried to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.

RA-120

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Remove paint.
4. Clean masonry surfaces.
5. Where water repellents are to be used on or near masonry, delay application of these chemicals until after cleaning.
6. Protection of landscaping and adjacent surfaces.

- B. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in masonry units according to masonry repair Sections. Patch holes in mortar joints according to masonry repointing Sections.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include material descriptions and application instructions.
 2. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For paint-remover manufacturer and chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
- B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For cleaning materials and methods.
- C. Cleaning program.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Chemical-Cleaner Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm regularly engaged in producing masonry cleaners that have been used for similar applications with successful results, and with factory-authorized service representatives who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection, preconstruction product testing, and on-site assistance.
- B. Cleaning Program: Prepare a written cleaning program that describes cleaning process in detail, including materials, methods, and equipment to be used; protection of surrounding materials; and control of runoff during operations. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
1. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of cleaning work, add a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

RA-121

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage one or more chemical-cleaner manufacturers to perform preconstruction testing on masonry surfaces.
 - 1. Use test areas as indicated and representative of proposed materials and existing construction.
 - 2. Propose changes to materials and methods to suit Project.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit masonry-cleaning work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Clean masonry surfaces only when air temperature is **40 deg F (4 deg C)** and above and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of cleaning.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANING MATERIALS

- A. Water: Potable.
- B. Hot Water: Water heated to a temperature of **140 to 160 deg F (60 to 71 deg C)**.
- C. Detergent Solution, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing **2 cups (0.5 L)** of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), **1/2 cup (125 mL)** of laundry detergent, and **20 quarts (20 L)** of hot water for every **5 gal. (20 L)** of solution required.
- D. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Remover, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing **2 cups (0.5 L)** of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), **5 quarts (5 L)** of 5 percent sodium hypochlorite (bleach), and **15 quarts (15 L)** of hot water for every **5 gal. (20 L)** of solution required.
- E. Nonacidic Gel Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard gel formulation, with pH between 6 and 9, that contains detergents with chelating agents and is specifically formulated for cleaning masonry surfaces.
- F. Nonacidic Liquid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mildly alkaline liquid cleaner formulated for removing mold, mildew, and other organic soiling from ordinary building materials, including polished stone, brick, aluminum, plastics, and wood.
- G. Mild-Acid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mild-acid cleaner containing no muriatic (hydrochloric), hydrofluoric, or sulfuric acid; or ammonium bifluoride or chlorine bleaches.

RA-122

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard acidic masonry cleaner composed of hydrofluoric acid or ammonium bifluoride blended with other acids, detergents, wetting agents, and inhibitors.
- I. One-Part Limestone Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard one-part acidic formulation for cleaning limestone.
- J. Two-Part Chemical Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of potassium- or sodium-hydroxide-based, alkaline prewash cleaner and acidic afterwash cleaner that does not contain hydrofluoric acid.

2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Liquid Strippable Masking Agent: Manufacturer's standard liquid, film-forming, strippable masking material for protecting glass, metal, glazed masonry, and polished stone surfaces from damaging effects of acidic and alkaline masonry cleaners.

2.3 CHEMICAL CLEANING SOLUTIONS

- A. Dilute chemical cleaners with water to produce solutions not exceeding concentration recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
- B. Acidic Cleaner Solution for Nonglazed Masonry and Unpolished Stone: Dilute acidic cleaner with water to produce hydrofluoric acid content of 3 percent or less, but not greater than that recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
 - 1. Stones: Use only on unpolished granite, unpolished dolomite marble, and siliceous sandstone.
- C. Acidic Cleaner for Glazed Masonry and Polished Stone: Dilute acidic cleaner with water to concentration demonstrated by testing that does not etch or otherwise damage glazed or polished surface, but not greater than that recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
 - 1. Stones: Use only on polished granite and polished dolomite marble.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Comply with each manufacturer's written instructions for protecting building and other surfaces against damage from exposure to its products. Prevent paint removers and chemical cleaning solutions from coming into contact with people, motor vehicles, landscaping, buildings, and other surfaces that could be harmed by such contact.
 - 1. Cover adjacent surfaces with materials that are proven to resist paint removers and chemical cleaners used unless products being used will not damage

RA-123

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

adjacent surfaces. Use protective materials that are waterproof and UV resistant. Apply masking agents according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid strippable masking agent to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking to prevent adhesive staining.

2. Do not apply chemical solutions during winds of enough force to spread them to unprotected surfaces.
3. Neutralize alkaline and acid wastes before disposal.
4. Dispose of runoff from operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.

B. Remove gutters and downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to immediate work area and store during masonry cleaning. Reinstall when masonry cleaning is complete.

1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

3.2 CLEANING MASONRY, GENERAL

A. Cleaning Appearance Standard: Cleaned surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from **20 feet (6 m)** away by Architect.

B. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from top to bottom of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other. Ensure that dirty residues and rinse water do not wash over dry, cleaned surfaces.

C. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.

1. Brushes: Do not use wire brushes or brushes that are not resistant to chemical cleaner being used.
2. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment that provides controlled application at volume and pressure indicated, measured at nozzle. Adjust pressure and volume to ensure that cleaning methods do not damage surfaces, including joints.
 - a. Equip units with pressure gages.
 - b. For chemical-cleaner spray application, use low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with nozzle having a cone-shaped spray.
 - c. For water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray that disperses water at an angle of 25 to 50 degrees.
 - d. For heated water-spray application, use equipment capable of maintaining temperature between **140 and 160 deg F (60 and 71 deg C)** at flow rates indicated.
 - e. For steam application, use steam generator capable of delivering live steam at nozzle.

D. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner that results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, and interstices, and that produces an even effect without streaking or damaging masonry surfaces. Keep wall wet below area being cleaned to prevent streaking from runoff.

RA-124

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Perform additional general cleaning, paint and stain removal, and spot cleaning of small areas that are noticeably different when viewed according to the "Cleaning Appearance Standard" Paragraph, so that cleaned surfaces blend smoothly into surrounding areas.
- F. Water Application Methods:
 - 1. Water-Soak Application: Soak masonry surfaces by applying water continuously and uniformly to limited area for time indicated. Apply water at low pressures and low volumes in multiple fine sprays using perforated hoses or multiple spray nozzles. Erect a protective enclosure constructed of polyethylene sheeting to cover area being sprayed.
 - 2. Water-Spray Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, hold spray nozzle at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from masonry surface and apply water in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
- G. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam to masonry surfaces at the very low pressures indicated for each type of masonry. Hold nozzle at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from masonry surface and apply steam in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
- H. Chemical-Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces according to chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions; use brush application. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- I. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upward from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting. Periodically during each rinse, test pH of rinse water running off of cleaned area to determine that chemical cleaner is completely removed.
 - 1. Apply neutralizing agent and repeat rinse if necessary to produce tested pH of between 6.7 and 7.5.
- J. After cleaning is complete, remove protection no longer required. Remove tape and adhesive marks.

3.3 PRELIMINARY CLEANING

- A. Removing Plant Growth: Completely remove visible plant, moss, and shrub growth from masonry surfaces. Carefully remove plants, creepers, and vegetation by cutting at roots and allowing remaining growth to dry as long as possible before removal. Remove loose soil and plant debris from open joints to whatever depth they occur.
- B. Preliminary Cleaning: Before beginning general cleaning, remove extraneous substances that are resistant to planned cleaning methods. Extraneous substances include paint, calking, asphalt, and tar.

RA-125

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Carefully remove heavy accumulations of rigid materials from masonry surface with sharp chisel. Do not scratch or chip masonry surface.
2. Remove paint and calking with Insert requirement.
 - a. Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
 - b. Repeat application up to two times if needed.
3. Remove asphalt and tar with Insert requirement.
 - a. Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
 - b. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for 10 to 30 minutes.
 - c. Repeat application if needed.

3.4 CLEANING MASONRY:

A. Cold-Water Soak:

1. Apply cold water by intermittent spraying to keep surface moist.
2. Use perforated hoses or other means that apply a fine water mist to entire surface being cleaned.
3. Apply water in cycles of five minutes on and 20 minutes off.
4. Continue spraying until surface encrustation has softened enough to permit its removal by water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
5. Remove soil and softened surface encrustation from surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.

B. Cold-Water Wash: Use cold water applied by low-pressure spray.

C. Hot-Water Wash: Use hot water applied by low-pressure spray.

D. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam at very low pressures not exceeding 30 psi (207 kPa). Remove dirt softened by steam with wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, or cold-water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.

E. Detergent Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Scrub surface with detergent solution using medium-soft brushes until soil is thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes to remove soil from mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in solution often to ensure that adequate fresh detergent is used and that surface remains wet.
3. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove detergent solution and soil.
4. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.

F. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Removal:

RA-126

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply mold, mildew, and algae remover by brush.
3. Scrub surface with medium-soft brushes until mold, mildew, and algae are thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes for mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in mold, mildew, and algae remover often to ensure that adequate fresh cleaner is used and that surface remains wet.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove mold, mildew, and algae remover and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.

G. Nonacidic Gel Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply gel cleaner in **1/8-inch (3-mm)** thickness by brush, working into joints and crevices. Apply quickly and do not brush out excessively, so area is uniformly covered with fresh cleaner and dwell time is uniform throughout area being cleaned.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Remove bulk of gel cleaner.
5. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
6. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

H. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

I. Mild-Acid Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.

J. Acidic Chemical Cleaning:

RA-127

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil. Rinse until all foaming, if any, stops and suds disappear.

K. One-Part Limestone Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface by brush.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Immediately repeat application of one-part limestone cleaner as indicated above over the same area.
5. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.

L. Two-Part Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply alkaline prewash cleaner to surface by brush or roller.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
5. Apply acidic afterwash cleaner to surface in two applications, while surface is still wet, using deep-nap roller or soft-fiber brush. Let neutralizer remain on surface for period recommended in writing by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
6. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil. Rinse until surface reaction value is between pH 5 and pH 9 according to pH-measuring paper, pen, or indicator solution.
7. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage chemical-cleaner manufacturer's factory-authorized service representatives for consultation and Project-site inspection, to perform preconstruction product testing, and provide on-site assistance when requested by Architect. Have chemical-cleaner manufacturer's factory-authorized service representatives visit Project site not less than once to observing progress and quality of the work.

RA-128

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.6 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces of spillage and debris. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- B. Remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- C. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

END OF SECTION 040110

RA-129

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cast-stone trim including the following:

- a. Window sills.
 - b. Wall caps.
 - c. Water tables.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast in Place Concrete."
 - 2. Section 040110 - "Masonry Cleaning"
 - 3. Section 047200 - "Cast Stone Masonry"
 - 4. Section 047313 - "Calcium Silicate Manufactured Manufactured Stone Masonry"

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast-stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.

- 1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.

- C. Samples for Verification:

- 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches (250 mm) square in size.
 - 2. For each trim shape required, 10 inches (250 mm) in length.

RA-130

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. For colored mortar, make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.

D. Full-Size Samples: For each color, texture, and shape of cast-stone unit required.

1. Make available for Architect's review at Project site.
2. Make Samples from materials to be used for units used on Project.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast-stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Architectural Precast Association.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work.

B. Pack, handle, and ship cast-stone units in suitable packs or pallets.

1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast-stone units if required, using dollies with wood supports.
2. Store cast-stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.

C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

RA-131

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast-stone units from single source from single manufacturer.
 1.
 - a. Product name: "Arris-Cast"Manufacturer of Cast Stone Masonry units is Arriscraft International"Georgia"
 - B. Defective Units: Referenced Cast Stone masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than the stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.
 - C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 CAST-STONE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce cast-stone color indicated.
- B. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33/C 33M; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast-stone textures and colors.
- C. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33/C 33M, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast-stone textures and colors.
- D. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979/C 979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- E. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.

RA-132

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
3. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
4. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
5. Water-Reducing, Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.

F. Water: Potable

G. Reinforcing Fibers: Nycon RC fibers @ .75", 1 lb per cubic yard.

H. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** of cast-stone material.

1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A 775/A 775M.
2. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A 767/A 767M.

I. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.

2.3 CAST-STONE UNITS

A. **Manufacturers**: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Manufacture: Arriscraft International, Georgia
 - a. Product: Aris-Cast
 - b. Style: Renaissance
 - c. Texture: smooth
 - d. Color: Cafe

B. Cast-Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C 1364.

1. Units shall be resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666/C 666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.

C. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.

RA-133

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

D. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, whichever is greater.
4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** on formed surfaces of units and **3/8 inch (10 mm)** on unformed surfaces.

E. Cure Units as Follows:

1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of **100 deg F (38 deg C)** for 12 hours or **70 deg F (21 deg C)** for 16 hours.
2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of **70 deg F (21 deg C)** or above.
 - b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of **60 deg F (16 deg C)** or above.
 - c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of **50 deg F (10 deg C)** or above.
 - d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of **45 deg F (7 deg C)** or above.

F. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Provide mortar materials that comply with Section 042113 "Brick Masonry."
- B. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- C. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 2. For joints less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
 4. Colored Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

RA-134

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Water: Potable.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Dowels: ~~1/2-inch-(12-mm-)~~diameter round bars, fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.

2.6 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.
- B. Do not use admixtures including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
 - 1. For setting mortar, use Type S.
 - 2. For pointing mortar, use Type N.
- D. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
 - 1. Mix to match approved mock-up.
 - 2. Application: Use colored-aggregate mortar for exposed mortar joints.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast-stone units according to ASTM C 1364.
 - 1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

RA-135

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.
- B. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- C. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Set units with joints **3/8 to 1/2 inch (10 to 13 mm)** wide unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
 - 4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
 - 5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 6. Keep head joints in copings and between other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
 - 7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- D. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- E. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- F. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness.
- G. Point joints with sealant to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide sealant joints at head joints of copings and other horizontal surfaces; at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints; and at locations indicated.
 - 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.

RA-136

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
4. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 SETTING ANCHORED CAST STONE WITH SEALANT-FILLED JOINTS

- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 2. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set cast stone in locations indicated with uniform joints.
- B. Keep cavities open where unfilled space is indicated between back of cast-stone units and backup wall; do not fill cavities with mortar or grout.
- C. Fill anchor holes with sealant.
 1. Where dowel holes occur at pressure-relieving joints, provide compressible material at ends of dowels.
- D. Set cast stone supported on clip or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths. Hold shims back from face of cast stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
- E. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials. Remove temporary shims and spacers from joints after anchors and supports are secured in place and cast-stone units are anchored. Do not begin sealant installation until temporary shims and spacers are removed.
 1. Form open joint of width indicated, but not less than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
- F. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.

RA-137

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than **1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm)** or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
 - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
 - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
 - 3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
 - 6. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 047200

RA-138

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 047313 - Calcium Silicate Manufactured Stone Masonry

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract Documents, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections, apply to Section.

1.2 Summary

- A. This section includes Calcium Silicate Masonry assemblies consisting of the following:

- 1. Calcium silicate masonry units.
 - a. Type : Arricraft "Citadel" rock face - full bed unit.

- B. Mortar and Grout

- C. Masonry joint reinforcement

- D. Ties and anchors

- E. Embedded flashing

- F. Miscellaneous masonry accessories including weeps and cavity protection.

- G.

- 1. 017419 - Construction Waste Management & Disposal.Related Sections
- 2. Section 047200 - Cast Stone Masonry.
- 3. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants.
- 4. Section 079500 - Expansion Control.

1.3 Action Submittals

- A. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:

- 1. Full width Masonry Stone Calcium Silicate Unit manufactured by Arricraft.
- 2. Special Calcium Silicate Masonry Shapes.
- 3. Pigmented mortar. Make Samples using sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.

RA-139

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 Quality Assurance

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Arriscraft International ONLY for the Calcium Silicate Manufactured Stone Masonry, Georgia Plant location.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- C. Installer: Company or person specializing in commercial masonry or stone work with five years document experience.
- D. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from one single manufacturer for each product required.
- E. Source Limitation for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
 - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Holcim

1.5 Delivery, Storage, and Handling

- A. Deliver calcium silicate masonry units in protective film. Prevent damage to units.
- B. Lift skids with proper and sufficiently long slings or forks with protection to prevent damage to units. Protect edges and corners.
- C. Store units in a manner designed to prevent damage and staining of units.
- D. Stack Units on timbers and platforms at least 3 inches above grade.
- E. Place polyethylene or other plastic film between wood and other finished surfaces of units when stored for extended periods of time.
- F. Cover stored units with protective enclosure if exposed to weather.
- G. Do not use salt or calcium-chloride to remove ice from masonry surfaces.
- H. Deliver pre-blended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store pre-blended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weather proof cover.
- I. Store masonry accessories in dry and protected location, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

RA-140

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.6 Project Conditions

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
 2. Where on wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 degree F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven(7) days after completing cleaning.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Manufacturer of calcium silicate masonry units is Arriscraft International distributed by Custom Brick Supply, Raleigh, North Carolina
1. No Substitutions
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified

RA-141

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

dimensions by more than the stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

2.2 Materials

A. Type 1 - Calcium Silicate Building Stone Unit Arriscraft(Georgia Plant): ASTM C73, Grade SW; solid units that have been pressure formed and autoclaved; five size configurations as follow:

1. Style: Citadel
2. Modular size: full bed, mixed size pieces. Consult with Architect and Arriscraft representative for wall arrangement.
3. Texture: rock face
4. Color: Iron Mountain

B. Mortar: 1:1:6 Portland cement-hydrated lime sand mix, as specified

1. Manufacturer: Holcim
 - a. Color: "Columbus Tan"
 - 1) Joint style: concave

C. Grout: maximum 6,500 psi at 28 days, as specified

D. Wall Ties and Anchorages: as specified

E. Joint Sealants and Backer Rods: non-staining type, as specified in Section 079200.

F. Flashing, Vents, and Masonry Accessories: as specified

2.3 Fabrication Tolerances

A. Fabricate calcium silicate masonry units to the following tolerances:

1. Unit Length: plus or minus 1/16 inch.
2. Unit Height: plus or minus 1/16 inch.
3. Deviation From Square: plus or minus 1/16 inch, with measurement taken using the longest edge as the base.
4. Bed Depth: plus or minus 1/8 inch.
5. Custom Unit Dimension: plus or minus 1/8 inch.

2.4 Source Quality Control

A. Test calcium silicate masonry units as specified in Section 014000.

B. Test compressive strength and absorption from specimens selected at random from plant production.

RA-142

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing conditions.

2.5 Mortar Materials

- A. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

2.6 Reinforcement

- A. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
 - 1. Exterior Walls: Hot-Dip galvanized steel.
 - 2. Wire size for Veneer Ties: W2.8 or 0.187-inch diameter.
 - 3. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches on center (o.c.)

2.7 Ties and Anchors

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 - 2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
 - 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B.
 - 1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to metal studs. Anchor welded to steel columns are to be furnished under Section 051200, Structural Steel. Adjustable Masonry Veneer Anchors
 - 2. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - a. Anchor welded to steel columns are to be furnished under Section 051200, Structural Steel.

2.8 Embedded Flashing Materials

- A. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-

RA-143

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but not limited to:

- 1) Heckmann, Number 82 Rubberized-asphalt flashing.
- 2) or approved Equal by Architect.

B. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:

1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counter-flashing, use metal flashing.
2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond wall face, use metal flashing.
3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing or flexible flashing with a metal sealant stop.
4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.

C. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashing as specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".

1. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing urethane sealant of type, grade, class, and use classification required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

D. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.9 Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories

A. Compressible Filler: Pre-molded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Weep/Vent products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of otter wythe, in color to match.

RA-144

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Hohmann & Barnard- #QV Quadro Vent
 - 2) Dur-O-Wall: DA1006 cell vents
 - 3) Heckmann- Number 85 - cell vents

- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity. Provide the following product to keep mortar from blocking/filling cavity between back of brick veneer and face of rigid insulation board.
 - 1. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
 - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) CavClear Masonry Mat, by Archovations.
 - 2) Equal as approved by Architect.

- 2.10 Mortar Mixes
 - A. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.

 - B. Pre-blended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a pre-blended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
 - 1. Product: Holcim "Columbus Tan" Type "S" mortar

 - C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type "S".
 - 2. For, exterior, above grade, load bearing and non-load bearing walls; for interior load bearing and non-load bearing partitions, and other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type "S".

 - D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476

RA-145

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type(fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimension of grout spaces and pour heights.
 2. Provide grout with slump of 8 to 11 inches in measure according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- 2.11 Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Examination

- A. Verify site conditions are ready to receive work.
- B. Inspect materials for fit and finish prior to installation. Do not set unacceptable units.
- C. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing conditions.
- D. Finish cut edges to match face when exposed in wall.

3.2 Cutting Masonry Units

- A. Cut masonry units with wet-saw.
- B. Pre-soak units using clean water prior to cutting.
- C. Clean cut units using a stiff fiber brush and clean water. Allow units to surface dry prior to placement.
- D. Finish cut edges to match face when exposed in wall.

3.3 Wetting Masonry Units

- A. Where the ambient air temperature exceeds 100 degrees F or exceeds 90 degrees F with wind velocity greater than 8 mph, pre-wet masonry.
- B. Lay wetted units when surface dry.

3.4 Coursing

- A. Place masonry to lines and levels indicated.

RA-146

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform width. Make vertical and horizontal joints equal and of uniform thickness.
- C. Lay masonry units in half-running bond.
- D. Course one masonry unit and on mortar joint to equal 4 inches for 3-5/8" units, 8 inches for 7-5/8" units and 12 inches for 11-5/8" units.
- E. Maintain mortar joint thickness of 3/8 inch.
- F. Tool joints when thumbprint hard, to a concave finish.

3.5 Placing and Bonding

- A. Lay masonry in full bed of mortar, properly jointed with other work. Buttering corners of joints and deep or excessive furrowing of mortar joints are not permitted.
- B. Fully bond intersections, and external corners.
- C. Do not adjust masonry units after laying. Where resetting of masonry is required, remove, clean units and reset in new mortar.
- D. Install loose steel lintels as scheduled.
- E. Install wall ties and anchorages as specified in Section 040519.
- F. Install flashing, vents, and masonry accessories as specified in Section 040523.
- G. Construct movement joints as specified in Section 040500.
 - 1. Movement/expansion joints in calcium silicate masonry walls are to be constructed as " elastic" joints, accommodating both expansion and contraction of the veneer materials.

3.6 Site Tolerances

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at the end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
- B. Stain prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come into contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base walls from rain-splash mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar drippings.

RA-147

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on to completed masonry.

C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/ TMS 062.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 degrees F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/ TMS 602.

3.7 Field Quality Control

A. Architect will inspect installed masonry and reject masonry that is chipped, cracked, or blemished(streaked, stained or otherwise damaged), as described below.

1. Masonry will be free of cracks or other blemishes on the finish face or front edges of masonry units exceeding 3/8 inch or that can be seen from distance of 10 feet.
2. Units shall exhibit a texture approximately equal to the approved sample when viewed under diffused daylight illumination at a 20 foot distance.
3. Minor chips shall not be obvious under diffused daylight illumination from a 20 foot distance.
4. Efflorescence will cause rejection.

B. Make Good rejected masonry as directed by Architect.

3.8 Repairing, Pointing, and Cleaning

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During tooling of joints, completely fill with mortar enlarge voids and holes; except weep holes. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and secured, clean exposed masonry as follow:

RA-148

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Protect adjacent stone and all other non masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean masonry by bucket and brush hand cleaning method as described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean masonry with proprietary acid cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 047313

RA-149

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Structural steel. (To meet Architecturally Exposed standards)
 - 2. Grout.
- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.

RA-150

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Include embedment Drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC 303.
2. AISC 360.
3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.

1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Construction: Combined system of braced frame and shear walls.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

RA-151

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B, structural tubing.
- D. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: **ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M)**, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S)** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
- B. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable.
 - 1. Configuration: Straight.
 - 2. Nuts: **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Plain.

2.4 PRIMER

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type II, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
 - 1. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 2. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

RA-152

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.7 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 1. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."

RA-153

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.038 mm)**. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- D. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than **1.5 mils (0.038 mm)**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- C. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

RA-154

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

D. Splice members only where indicated.

E. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.

F. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Bolted Connections: Inspect bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

END OF SECTION 051200

RA-155

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Load-bearing wall framing.
- 2. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
- 3. Soffit framing.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
- 2. Section 092116.23 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.
- 3. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
- 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.

RA-156

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
 - b. Interior Non Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
 - c. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
 - d. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span for live loads and 1/240 for total loads of the span.
 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of 1 inch (25 mm).
 5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
 1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
 2. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
 3. Headers: AISI S212.

RA-157

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Lateral Design: AISI S213.

D. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.

E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZ150), or GF30 (ZGF90).

B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G60 (Z180).

2.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Section Properties: As required for structural performance **<Insert minimum allowable calculated section modulus, moment of inertia, and allowable moment>**.

B. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, as designed as required for structural performance

1. Section Properties: as required for structural performance **<Insert minimum allowable calculated section modulus, moment of inertia, and allowable moment>**.

2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, material thickness, flange width and section properties as required by loading

RA-158

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, as required by loading
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm).
 - 2. Flange Width: 1 inch (25 mm) plus the design gap for one-story structures.
- E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

2.5 SOFFIT FRAMING

- A. Exterior Soffit Frame: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, with stiffened flanges, with material thickness, flange width and section properties as required

2.6 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 - 3. Web stiffeners.
 - 4. Anchor clips.
 - 5. End clips.
 - 6. Foundation clips.
 - 7. Stud kickers and knee braces.

2.7 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

RA-159

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.
- B. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
- C. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.

RA-160

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960)** and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- B. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.

RA-161

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- H. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- I. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960)** and as follows:
1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
- 3.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION
- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
1. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.

RA-162

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to **6 inches (150 mm)** deep.
- J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.

RA-163

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Connect vertical deflection clips to infill studs and anchor to building structure.
 - 3. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than **48 inches (1220 mm)** apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within **18 inches (450 mm)** of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
 - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

RA-164

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

RA-165

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
- 2. Steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction.
- 3. Metal ladders.
- 4. Ladder safety cages.
- 5. Bicycle rack.
- 6. Hardware for gates at dumpster enclosure.

- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

- 1. Loose steel lintels.
- 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- 3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

- C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
- 2. Division 04 - Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
- 3. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing."

RA-166

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
 - 2. Paint products.
 - 3. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
 - 1. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
 - 2. Steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction.
 - 3. Metal ladders.
 - 4. Ladder safety cages.
 - 5. Loose steel lintels.
 - 6. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

RA-167

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide exterior metal fabrications that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change(range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

RA-168

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)**.
- D. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

RA-169

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, **1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm)**, with a minimum **6-inch (150-mm)** embedment and **2-inch (50-mm)** hook, not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** from ends and corners of units and **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
 - 1. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide **1/2-inch (12.7-mm)** baseplates with four **5/8-inch (16-mm)** anchor bolts and **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** top plates.

2.7 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.
- B. Steel Ladders:
 - 1. Space siderails **16 inches (406 mm)** apart unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Siderails: Continuous, **3/8-by-2-1/2-inch (9.5-by-64-mm)** steel flat bars, with eased edges.

RA-170

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Rungs: **1-inch-(25-mm-)**diameter steel bars.
4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
6. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallically bonded to rung.
7. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** in least dimension.
8. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than **60 inches (1500 mm)** o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
9. Prime ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

2.8 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

A. General:

1. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than **20 feet (6 m)** o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than **48 inches (1200 mm)** o.c. between primary hoops.
3. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:

1. Primary Hoops: **1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm)** flat bar hoops.
2. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: **1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm)** flat bar hoops.
3. Vertical Bars: **3/16-by-1-1/2-inch (4.8-by-38-mm)** flat bars secured to each hoop.
4. Galvanize ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.
5. Prime ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

RA-171

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.10 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.11 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.
- C. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.12 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC_SP#, "Power Tool Cleaning".
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

RA-172

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.

RA-173

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

END OF SECTION 055000

RA-174

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood blocking and nailers.
 - 2. Wood furring.
 - 3. Wood sleepers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) size in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.

RA-175

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
 3. Power-driven fasteners.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.

RA-176

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - 3. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than **10.5 feet (3.2 m)** beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Concealed blocking.
 - 2. Plywood backing panels.

RA-177

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Furring.
 4. Grounds.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of the following species:
1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- C. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 3 grade; SPIB.
 2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Standard or No. 3 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Standard or No. 3 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **3/4-inch (19-mm)** nominal thickness.

RA-178

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.

RA-179

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- G. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c.
- I. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- J. Comply with AWWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- K. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- L. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
- M. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide and of thickness required to bring face

RA-180

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-(19-by-38-mm actual-)size furring vertically at 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

RA-181

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 061516 - WOOD ROOF DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glued-laminated wood roof decking
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with wood roof decking.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For glued-laminated wood roof decking, include installation instructions and data on lumber, adhesives, and fabrication.
- B. Samples: 24 inches (600 mm) long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of wood roof decking.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Schedule delivery of wood roof decking to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings. Stack wood roof decking with surfaces that are to be exposed in the final Work protected from exposure to sunlight.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD ROOF DECKING, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

RA-182

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 GLUED-LAMINATED WOOD ROOF DECKING

- A. Face Species: Southern pine.
- B. Roof Decking Nominal Size: 2 by 6.
- C. Face Grade: Decorative: Sound knots and natural characteristics are allowed, including chipped edge knots, short end splits, seasoning checks, and some pin holes. Face knot holes, stains, end slits, skips, roller splits, and planer burns are not allowed.
- D. Moisture Content: Provide wood roof decking with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- E. Face Surface: Saw textured.
- F. Edge Pattern: Vee grooved.
- G. Laminating Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat wood roof decking according to AWWA U1; Use Category UC2.
 - 1. For laminated roof decking, treat lumber before gluing.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use products that do not contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- C. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
- E. After treatment, redry materials to 15 percent maximum moisture content.
- F. After dressing and fabricating roof decking, apply copper naphthenate according to AWWA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Nails: As specified on drawings
- B. Sealants: Latex, complying with ASTM C 834 Type OP, Grade NF and with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," recommended by sealant manufacturer and manufacturer of substrates for intended application.

RA-183

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Penetrating Sealer: Clear sanding sealer complying with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" and compatible with topcoats specified for use over it.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Shop Fabrication: Where preservative-treated roof decking is indicated, complete cutting, trimming, surfacing, and sanding before treating.
- B. Predrill roof decking for lateral spiking to adjacent units to comply with AITC 112.
- C. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing roof decking, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer in fabrication shop.
- D. Apply indicated finish materials to comply with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" in fabrication shop.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and support framing in areas to receive wood roof decking for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of wood roof decking.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install laminated wood roof decking to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Locate end joints for controlled random lay-up.
 - 2. Nail each course of glued-laminated wood roof decking at each support with one nail slant nailed above the tongue and one nail straight nailed through the face.
- B. Where preservative-treated roof decking must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWWA M4.
 - 1. For laminated roof decking, use copper naphthenate.
- C. Apply joint sealant to seal roof decking at exterior walls at the following locations:
 - 1. Between roof decking and supports located at exterior walls.
 - 2. Between roof decking and exterior walls that butt against underside of roof decking.
 - 3. Between tongues and grooves of roof decking over exterior walls and supports at exterior walls.

RA-184

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged roof decking if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide water-resistive barrier over roof decking as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.

END OF SECTION 061516

RA-185

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 061800 - GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes framing using structural glued-laminated timber.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with structural glued-laminated timber.
 - 2. Section 061516 "Wood Roof Decking" for glued-laminated wood roof decking.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
 - 2. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
 - 3. For connectors. Include installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show layout of structural glued-laminated timber system and full dimensions of each member.
 - 2. Indicate species and laminating combination.

RA-186

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Conformance: Issued by a qualified testing and inspecting agency indicating that structural glued-laminated timber complies with requirements in AITC A190.1.
- B. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated wood products, from manufacturer. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An AITC- or APA-EWS-licensed firm.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with provisions in AITC 111.
- B. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

- A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with AITC A190.1 and AITC 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that are not exposed in the completed Work.
 - 2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from single species.
 - 3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.
 - 4. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with AITC A190.1.
- B. Species and Grades for Beams and Purlins:
 - 1. Species and Combination Symbol: 24F-V3 SP/SP Architectural Stock.
- C. Appearance Grade: Architectural, complying with AITC 110.
 - 1. For Premium and Architectural appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110.

RA-187

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment: Where preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber is indicated, comply with AWPA U1, Use Category 2.
 - 1. Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
 - 2. Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber or wood used to produce structural glued-laminated timber.
- B. Preservative: One of the following:
 - 1. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.
 - 2. Pentachlorophenol in light petroleum solvent.
- C. After dressing members, apply a copper naphthenate field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.

2.3 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: provide glulam connectors as detailed on the structural drawings

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.
 - 1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planing and surfacing marks.
- B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
- C. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length and after preservative treatment, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.

RA-188

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for preservative-treated wood where treatment included a water repellent.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Wiped Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard, dry-appearance, penetrating acrylic stain and sealer; oven dried and resistant to mildew and fungus.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, two-coat, clear varnish finish; resistant to mildew and fungus.
- C. Finishing materials shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
 - 1. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- C. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing [**and finishing**].
 - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
 - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
 - 3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.

RA-189

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.

D. Install timber connectors as indicated.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
 1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
 2. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

END OF SECTION 061800

RA-190

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board; Rigid Wall Insulation.
2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board; Rigid Roof Insulation.
3. Mineral-wool blanket; sound attenuation insulation, "Acoustical Batt Insulation"
4. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation; Open cell.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 054000 - "Cold-Formed Metal Framing".
2. Section 072119 "Foamed-in-Place Insulation" for spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation.
3. Section 092900 - "Gypsum Board".

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with

RA-191

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturer's

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce list, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but not limited to, products specified.

2.2 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD - "Rigid Board Insulation at Exterior Wall"

- A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards." Roman numeral designators in ASTM C 578 are assigned in a fixed random sequence, and their numeric order does not reflect increasing strength or other characteristics.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type X Exterior walls: ASTM C 578, Type X, 15-psi (104-kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company.
 - c. Owens Corning.
 - d. Pactiv Building Products Division.
- C. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type VI Below Slab & Footings: ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

RA-192

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. DiversiFoam Products
- b. Dow Chemical Company
- c. Owens Corning
- d. Pactiv Building Products Division

2.3 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Glass-Fiber-Mat Faced Roof Assembly: ASTM C 1289, glass-fiber-mat faced, Type II, Class 2.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 2. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johns Manville or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville
 - b. Firestone
 - c. GAF
 - d. Soprema
 - e. Atlas
 3. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.4 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKETS

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket, Unfaced Accoustical Batt designation on Drawings: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Roxul
 - b. RockWool Manufacturing Company

2.5 SPRAY-APPLIED CELLULOSIC INSULATION

- A. Self-Supported, Spray-Applied "Open" Cellulosic Insulation Wall cavities and where noted on drawings: ASTM C 1149, Type II (materials containing a dry adhesive activated by water during installation; intended only for enclosed or covered applications), chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

RA-193

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "SEALITE" spray applied polyurethane insulation, 0.5 PCF, R-4.1/inch as manufactured by NCFI Polyurethanes or approved equal. by the Architect, other manufacturers that produce like products that may be used:
 - a. ENERTITE by BASF
 - b. Icynene Inc.
 - c. Permax 5.0 by Henry Company
 - d. Sealection 500 by Demilec USA
 - e. Bayseal OC, by Bayer Material Science

2.6 Auxiliary Insulation Materials

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 1. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, open cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.
- C. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine substrate and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.
 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

RA-194

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of **24 inches (610 mm)** below exterior grade line.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of **24 inches (610 mm)** in from exterior walls.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates. Use in locations as noted and permitted by code.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.

RA-195

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Maintain **3-inch (76-mm)** clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
4. Attics: Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed **96 inches (2438 mm)**, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:

1. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

1. Fill wall cavities leaving no voids. Trim any excess insulation prior to the start of gypsum board installation.
2. Site Mix 2-Component Liquid Material: Polyisocyanate MDI base is combined with resin. Spray apply in walls in strict compliance with manufacture's instructions. Trim any excess material to leave wall stud surface ready to receive gypsum board installed under Division 9.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CURTAIN-WALL INSULATION

A. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Hold insulation in place by securing metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated on Drawings between insulation and glass.
2. Install insulation to fit snugly without bowing.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

RA-196

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 072100

RA-197

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Work of this section includes coated fiberglass-mat gypsum sheathing board system with integral weather-resistant barrier (WRB) and air barrier (AB) features, and all accessory materials required for covering sheathing joints, fasteners, penetrations, rough openings, and material transitions, for use under exterior wall claddings.
 - 2. Fluid-applied membrane air barrier.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier, from ICC-ES.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER AND AIR BARRIER GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Description: Coated fiberglass mat gypsum sheathing with integral weather-resistant barrier and air barrier complying with applicable requirements of ICC-ES AC212, ASTM E2178, ASTM E2357.
- B. Vapor Permeability: When tested as system in accordance with ASTM E96 (water method) the system has a minimum vapor permeance of 20 perms with sealed joints and fasteners.

RA-198

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. The WRB and Air Barrier Gypsum Sheathing has a moisture absorption rate < 6%
- D. Air Barrier performance requirements:
 - 1. Air permeance of sheathing: Sheathing with an air permeability not greater than 0.001 cfm/ft² (0.02L/s/m²) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 - 2. Air permeance of assembly: Assembly of sheathing and sealing components with an average air leakage not greater than 0.04 cfm/ft² (0.2L/s/m²) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357.
- E. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. **Products** ct to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific, DensElement Barrier System
 - b. USG Tremco, Securock ExoAir 430

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Substrate requirements:
 - 1. Sheathing joint and transition gaps to receive fluid-applied flashing shall be less than 1/4" (6.4 mm).
 - 2. Gaps that are more than 1/8" and less than 1/4" shall be filled with a backer rod to support the fluid applied flashing at the transition joint.
 - 3. For gaps larger than 1/4" use fluid-applied flashing as approved by manufacture.
- B. Fluid applied flashing for panel joints, inside and outside corners, and penetrations
 - 1. Description: Water based fluid applied flashing.
 - a. Acceptable substrate system
 - b. Adhesion to fiberglass mat faced sheathing: No delamination from face of sheathing.
 - c. Applied wet film thickness: 16 mils.
 - d. Air permeance: meets 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.02L/s/sq m), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 - e. Water vapor permeance: >10 perms (287 ng/(Pa s sq m)), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - f. Ultraviolet and weathering resistance: Approved for 12 months weather exposure.
 - g. Comply with applicable requirements of AAMA 714
 - 2. Primer: Provide primer to seal the cut edges of gypsum sheathing.

RA-199

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

C. Fluid applied flashing for sealing fasteners:

1. Description: Water based fluid applied flashing.
 - a. Acceptable substrate system
 - b. Adhesion to fiberglass mat faced sheathing: No delamination from face of sheathing.
 - c. Applied wet film thickness: 16 mils.
 - d. Air permeance: meets 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.02 L/s/sq m), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 - e. Water vapor permeance: >10 perms (287 ng/(Pa s sq m)), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - f. Ultraviolet and weathering resistance: Approved for 12 months weather exposure.
 - g. Comply with applicable requirements of AAMA 714.

D. Fluid applied flashing for sealing rough openings

1. Fluid applied flashing: Water based fluid applied flashing.
2. Primer: Water based primer to seal the cut edges of gypsum exposed in rough openings for windows and doors. Apply primer to raw gypsum board edges by brushing on a thin, uniform coat.
3. Properties:
 - a. Acceptable substrate system
 - b. Flashing adhesion to fiberglass mat faced sheathing: No delamination from face of sheathing.
 - c. Applied wet film thickness: 16 mils.
 - d. Flashing air permeance: meets 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.02 L/s/sq m), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 - e. Flashing water vapor permeance: >10 perms (287 ng/(Pa s sq m)), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
 - f. Ultraviolet and weathering resistance: Approved for 12 months weather exposure.
 - g. Flashing comply with applicable requirements of AAMA 714.

E. Material transitions using fluid applied flashing:

1. Refer to substrate requirements for treatment of gaps as specified herein. Gaps from 1/8" to 1/4" shall be filled with a backer rod prior to applying fluid applied flashing. Gaps greater than 1/4" shall be sealed with fluid-applied flashing as approved by manufacture.
2. Fluid applied flashing for material transitions: Water based fluid applied flashing.
3. Properties:
 - a. Acceptable substrate system.
 - b. Adhesion to fiberglass mat faced sheathing: No delamination from face of sheathing.
 - c. Applied wet film thickness: 16 mils

RA-200

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- d. Air permeance: 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.02L/s/sq m), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178
- e. Water vapor permeance: >10 perms (287 ng/(Pa s sq m)), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M
- f. Ultraviolet and weathering resistance: Approved for 12 months weather exposure
- g. Comply with applicable requirements of AAMA 714

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, loose or damaged sheathing material at edges of panel that might interfere with proper installation to seal joints, corners, fasteners, penetrations, openings, or material transitions.
- B. Wipe down the sheathing surface to receive sealing materials with a clean cloth.
- C. Ensure field conditions are met as outlined in Part 1 – General Requirements.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WEATHER-RESISTANT BARRIER AND AIR BARRIER SHEATHING

- A. Coated fiberglass mat sheathing:
 - 1. Install and fasten Sheathing according to manufacturer's detailed installation instructions
 - 2. Fastener and penetration treatment: Treat all countersunk fasteners (penetrating through the fiberglass mat) with specified fluid applied flashing used for sealing joints.

3.3 FLUID APPLIED FLASHING FOR SEALING SHEATHING JOINTS, INSIDE AND OUTSIDE CORNERS, FASTENERS, ROUGH OPENINGS, AND MATERIAL TRANSITIONS

- A. Sealing Sheathing Joints using recommended Fluid Applied Flashing
- B. Apply at a rate to achieve a wet mil thickness of 16 mils over the entire joint area.
 - 1. Cover a minimum of 1" on both sides of the joint.
 - 2. Cover a minimum of 2" on both sides of the corners.
- C. Sealing Sheathing Fasteners using specified Fluid Applied Flashing: Apply the fluid applied flashing material to fasteners, and wipe down with a straight edge tool; provide a minimum 16 mil thick coating over the fastener

RA-201

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

D. Sealing Sheathing Rough Openings using specified Fluid Applied Flashing

1. Prime exposed gypsum edges with specified primer
2. Apply a bead of fluid applied flashing into the entire width of the inside corners of the opening dispensed from a tube type container.
3. Apply fluid applied flashing onto:
 - a. Sills of openings
 - b. Jambs of openings
 - c. Headers of openings
4. Apply fluid applied flashing 2" over the entire width of the opening sill, jamb, and header on exterior set windows and doors. Apply fluid applied flashing over the entire width of the opening sill, jamb, and header on interior set windows and doors.
5. Apply fluid applied flashing over the sheathing adjacent to the opening sill, jamb, and header dispensed from a tube type container. Cover a minimum of 2" of the sheathing surface adjacent to the opening.
6. spread fluid applied flashing over entire width of the sill, jamb, header, and sheathing surface adjacent to the opening.
7. Apply at a rate to achieve a wet mil thickness of 16 mils over the opening area.

E. Sealing sheathing material transitions using specified Fluid Applied Flashing

1. Sheathing joint and transition gaps to receive fluid-applied flashing shall be less than 1/4" (6.4 mm).
2. For gaps larger than 1/4" use shall be sealed with fluid-applied flashing as approved by manufacture
3. Gaps that are more than 1/8" and less than 1/4" shall be filled with a backer rod to support the fluid applied flashing at the transition joint.
4. Ensure the flashing is a minimum of 2" on each substrate material surface.
5. Apply at a rate to achieve a wet mil thickness of 16 mils.

3.4 SEALING EXTERIOR WALL PENETRATIONS

- A. Exterior wall penetration shall be sealed to prevent air and water infiltration. Penetrations may be sealed with fluid applied flashing.
- B. For round or square pipe/duct penetrations use specified fluid applied flashing, refer to Barrier System Technical Guide for instructions for proper sealing.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Do not cover installed assembly until required inspections have been completed and installation has been accepted.

RA-202

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect assembly from damage during installation and during the construction period.

END OF SECTION 072500

RA-203

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes standing-seam metal roof panels.
 - 1. Standing Seam Metal Roofing.
 - 2. Glass-Mat Exterior Gypsum Roof Sheathing.
 - 3. Peel and Stick Rubberized underlayment.
 - 4. Ice and Snow Guards
 - 5. Warranty.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 074213.53 "Metal Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.
 - 2. Section 092900 - "Gypsum Board" for exterior wall and soffit sheathing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Architect, General Contractor, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions and review the qualifications of manufacturer's inspector whom will be performing the warranty inspections (min of 3 inspections).
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.

RA-204

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Review structural loading limitations of deck during and after roofing.
6. Review panel striations on tapered panels, flashings, radius trims, rain diverter, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
8. Review the timing for manufacturer technician to take field measurements for panel lengths and trims to meet field conditions (2 visits required – one visit for straight panels and one visit for tapered panels).
9. Review the schedule for the 3 watertight warranty inspections.
10. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
11. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
12. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide complete sheet metal roof system, including, but not limited to, factory-formed metal roof panels, cleats, clips, anchors, and fasteners, sheet metal flashing and trim components related to sheet metal roofing, underlayment, and accessories as indicated and as required for weather-tight installation. Manufacturer employee to take panel & trim measurements along with performing a minimum of 3 field watertight warranty inspections.
 1. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide NC PE sealed clip calculations showing that roof assembly complies with structural loading called for on project drawings.
 - a. Provide NC PE sealed design showing soffit panel assembly will meet wind loads specified on project drawings.
 2. Provide engineered calculations for thermal movements as required in B. below.
 3. Snow guards to be provided by manufacturer who shall also provide PE sealed calculations showing that the snow guards are designed to resist the sliding force of snow in accordance with the requirements of ASCE-7.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal roofing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change(range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, openings of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of sheet metal roofing thermal movements. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 degree F, ambient, 180 degree F, material surfaces.
 2. Thermal Cycling in accordance with ASTM E 1646 test.

RA-205

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that are UL 580 listed and manufacturer must be able to provide listing for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated to achieve approval.
1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- D. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592.
1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures.
 - a. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Water Infiltration: Provide sheet metal roofing that does not allow water infiltration to building interior, with metal flashing and connections of sheet metal roofing lapped to allow moisture to run over and off material.
1. Water Penetration and Air infiltration in accordance with ASTM E 1646 for Rolled-Formed Panels: No leakage at 5 gallons per hour per square foot and static pressure of 20.0 psf for 15 minutes.
 2. Water Penetration in accordance with ASTM E 2140 for Rolled-Formed Panels: Determination of the resistance to water penetration of exterior metal roof panel system side seams, end laps, and roof plane penetrations when a specified static water pressure head is applied to the outside face of the roof panel.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide sheet metal roofing that allows no more air infiltration to the building interior as listed:
1. Air infiltration for seam leakage in accordance with ASTM E 1680 for Roll-Formed Panels: 0.0017 scfm/sqft @ 20.0 psf.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels, including plans, elevations, details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10)**.

RA-206

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Details for joining and securing sheet metal roofing, including layout of fasteners, clips, ice guards, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
5. Details of roof penetrations.
6. Detail of edge conditions.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Metal Panels: 12 inches (305 mm) long by actual panel width. Samples to include tapered & straight soffit and straight & tapered roof panels. Include clips, fasteners, closures, and radius trims.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal roof panel assembly indicated and soffit panel attachment to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Snow Retention System Calculations: Include calculation of number and location of snow guards based on snow load, roof slope, panel length and finish, and seam type and spacing.

E. Include all testing specified and require that manufacturer provide testing documents certified by testing agency, specific to manufacturer.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Installer Workmanship Warranty: Contractor to provide sample copy with submittal to acknowledge willingness to sign attached document. Notarized copy to be provided with closeout documents.

C. Material Warranty: Provide sample copy with submittal and executed document at project completion.

D. Finish Warranty: Provide sample copy with submittal and executed document as project completion.

E. Weathertightness Warranty: Provide sample copy with submittal and executed document as project completion.

1. Manufacturer to provide (3) separate warranty inspections to include job site reports and photos prior to issuance of Weathertightness Warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

RA-207

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: not allowed. Site Formed Panels: Bidder will not be allowed to supply panels formed at the job-site on portable rollformers; metal panels must be factory premanufactured and engineered for this project.
1. Portable rollformers can induce significant oil canning and other poor performance and aesthetic qualities in the panels. For jobs which require panel lengths in excess of shipping limitations (45 feet to 80 feet, depending on location), contact Architect.
 2. Portable Roll-Forming Equipment is not allowed. Bidder will not be allowed to supply panels formed at the job-site on portable roll-formers; metal panels must be factory premanufactured and engineered for this project.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical roof area and eave and soffit as shown on Drawings; approximately 4'-0" x 6'-0" square by full thickness, including attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

RA-208

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Installer Workmanship Warranty: Submit an executed copy of two (2) year "Roofing Warranty" on form included at the end of this section. Warranty shall include the work of this section and agree to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This would include, but are not limited to, structural failures including rupturing, cracking or puncturing, deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from the date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Material Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Twenty-Five (25) years from the date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 35 years from date of Substantial Completion.

RA-209

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Amount: The warranty shall have no dollar amount.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Panel Material: Painted, Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy Coated (Galvalume) Steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M
- B. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
- C. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Imetco's Series 300 Painted, metallic-Coated Steel Sheet or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Petersen Aluminum, Pac Clad Standing Seam System.
 2. Centria ADP Architectural Design Panel Standing Pattern Roof System.
 3. McElroy Metal Medallion - Lok, Standing Seam System.
 4. MBCI, Standing Seam System.
 5. Metal Roof Systems, Inc.
- D. Finish: Painted, metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
- E. Thickness: 22 Gauge minimum.
- F. Panel Width: 18 inches. No other panel width will be considered. Manufactured tapered panels will be 18 inches at the eave and tapered as needed per drawings. Manufacturer to field measure the correct taper once full substrate is complete.
- G. Batten Height: 3 inch(nominal).
- H. Texture: Striations – Striations required on all panels, including tapered panels. Striations should run parallel to the center line of all panels.
- I. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

RA-210

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. 2-Coat Fluoropolymer (PVDF): Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Manufacturers' approved applicator to prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Coating system shall provide nominal 1.0 mil (0.025 mm) dry film thickness, consisting of primer and color coat.
3. Color: Imetco's Charcoal.
4. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

J. Provide factory applied sealant at each batten.

2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Substrate Board:

1. Glass-Mat Gypsum Exterior Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M
 - a. Type and Thickness: [Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm)]
 - b. The top surface of the substrate board shall be pre-primed to provide for adhesion of the self-adhering underlayment material.
 - c. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dens-Dek Prime by Georgia-Pacific Corporation.
2. Substrate-Board Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to substrate.

B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of **30 mils (0.76 mm)** thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at **240 deg F (116 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus **20 deg F (29 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
3. **Products**: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Grace Construction Products: "Grace Ultra", Peel and Stick self-healing 60 mil thick rubberized underlayment.
 - b. Tamko's rubberized "Peel and Stick" 60 mil underlayment.
 - c. Mid States rubberized "Peel and Stick" 60 mil underlayment.
4. Application is to be self adhered. Nailing or stapling is not permitted.
5. Self-adhered underlayment is to be flat and continuous over the entire top of Glass-Mat Gypsum Exterior Sheathing Substrate.

RA-211

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

6. OTHER UNDERLAYMENTS WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED, unless approved by Architect prior to receipt of bids as described in the General Conditions.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized)** coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, **Class AZ50 (Class AZM150)** coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material thickness of Galvalume material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
 1. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
 2. Note that all trim on curved surfaces shall be factory manufactured radius trim designed to fit to the curve without any field segmentation.
- D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch-(2400-mm)** long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of **36 inches (914 mm)** o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match roof fascia and rake trim.
- E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in **10-foot-(3-m)** long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- F. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
 1. Fasteners: Galvanized
- G. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

RA-212

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Sheet Metal Roof Accessories. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components approved by roof panel manufacturer and as required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Standard Anchor Clips: Clips must be 16 gauge (1.4 mm) [galvanized steel] [stainless steel alloy 410] ONE (1) piece clip with projecting legs for additional panel alignment and provision for unlimited thermal movement in each direction along the longitudinal dimension.
 - a. Clip design must isolate sealant in panel cap from clip to insure that no sealant damage occurs from the clip during expansion and contraction
 - b. Two-piece clips are NOT acceptable.
 - c. Clip must maintain a clearance of a minimum of 3/8" (9.5 mm) between panel and substrate for proper ventilation to help prevent condensation on underside of panel and eliminate the contact of panel fastener head to panel.
2. Seam cap: Snap-on cap shall be a minimum of 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide "T" shaped of continuous length up to 45 feet (11.4 m) according to job conditions and field seamed by means of manufacturer's standard seaming machine.
 - a. Cap shall be designed to receive two (2) beads of hot applied, high viscosity, pressure sensitive adhesive with high heat resistance during manufacturing which will not come in contact with the anchor clip.
 - b. In all cases, seam caps shall be factory formed to insure quality and precision in the process of sealant application
3. Gable anchor clips: 16 gauge (1.4 mm) [galvanized steel]
4. Cleats: Mechanically seamed cleats formed from galvanized steel.
5. Bearing Plates: Provide 4 inch square, 16 ga. galvanized steel bearing plates at four foot centers(maximum) if required by roofing manufacturer.
6. Penetrations: Per manufacturer's details and instruction, use same gauge and materials as roof panels.

RA-213

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material and gauge as roof panels, prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal roof panels.
- C. Snow Guards: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating metal roof panels, and complete with predrilled holes, clamps, or hooks for anchoring. Snow guards shall be illustrated with the panel manufacturer's installation drawings, and shall be designed to resist the sliding force of snow in accordance with the requirements of ASCE-7. Confirming calculations shall be provided by the panel manufacturer.
 - 1. Color: Match color of finish roof panels.
 - 2. Seam-Mounted, Bar-Type Snow Guards: Extruded Aluminum rods or bars held in place by aluminum clamps attached to vertical ribs of standing-seam metal roof panels.
 - 3. Sno Blockade Curved Snow Retention System , 1 inch Bar Clamp-to-seam wide body model, 1 inch bar tubes, end caps and barricade plates.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide striated roof panel profile, including both straight and tapered panels, for full length of panel. Striations should run parallel of center line of panel on both straight and tapered panels.
- C. Fabricate metal panel including batten cap with factory applied sealant that provides a weathertight seal.
- D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.

RA-214

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

- E. Provide flat soffit panel profile, including both straight and tapered soffit panels, with this the full length of panel. Vents should run parallel of center line of panel on both straight and tapered soffit panels.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

RA-215

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. RIGID BOARD INSULATION

1. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Repair tears or punctures immediately before concealment by other work.
2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board, Type II Class 2 installed and anchored per manufacturer's instructions.
3. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to cover entire roof. Comply with installation requirements in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Exterior Sheathing Board

1. Install Glass-Mat substrate on top of the metal roof deck with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slope with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt Glass-Mat sheets together.
 - a. Fasten Glass-Mat Gypsum Exterior sheathing boards to top of metal deck according to recommendations in FMG's "Approved Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classifications.
 - b. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Confirm type, size, spacing, etc. proposed for connection is compatible with the depths and arrangements of the structural metal roof deck.

- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than **6 inches (152 mm)** staggered **24 inches (610 mm)** between courses. Overlap side edges not less than **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)**. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days. Follow Manufacturer's written instructions as to the installation of their membrane system.

1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
2. Install membrane on a smooth, clean, dry surface free of any conditions that will hinder adhesion.

- D. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

RA-216

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. No panel splices; full length panels only.
 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
 9. Field cutting of sheet metal roofing by torch is not permitted.
 10. Provide metal closures at rake end.
 11. Install ridge caps as metal roof work proceeds.
 12. Coordinate with manufacturer for weathertightness warranty inspections during the installation process.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- C. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended as per PE sealed clip calculations for this project.
1. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 2. Watertight Installation:
 - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
 - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories as per manufacturer's weathertight warranty requirements.
 - c. No panel splices allowed.
- D. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

RA-217

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- E. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 feet (3 m)** with no joints allowed within **24 inches (610 mm)** of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- F. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than **36 inches (914 mm)** o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
- G. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely **1 inch (25 mm)** away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately **60 inches (1524 mm)** o.c. in between.
1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- H. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines as indicated and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to measure all panel lengths and trim components. Manufacturer representative to

RA-218

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories, and provide report results (with photos) in writing.

- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.16

RA-219

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 074243 - Composite Wall Panels

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Exterior, panelized fiber cement cladding system and accessories to complete a drained and back-ventilated rainscreen.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 05 41 00 - Structural Metal Stud Framing
- B. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry
- C. Section 06 16 00 - Sheathing
- D. Section 07 20 00 - Thermal Protection
- E. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers
- F. Section 07 60 00 - Flashing and Sheet Metal
- G. Section 07 90 00 - Joint Protection

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
 - 1. AAMA 509-14 - Voluntary Test and Classification Method of Drained and Back Ventilated Rain Screen Wall Cladding Systems
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - 1. ASTM C 518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.
 - 2. ASTM C 1185 - Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Non-Asbestos Fiber Cement.
 - a. ASTM C 1186 - Standard Specification for Flat Fiber-Cement Sheets.
 - 3. ASTM E-84 - Standard Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

RA-220

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. ASTM E 119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
5. ASTM E 228 - Standard Test Method for Linear Thermal Expansion of Solid Materials with a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer.
6. ASTM E 330 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
7. ASTM E 331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.

C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA 285 - Fire Test Method for Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Material.
2. NFPA 268 - Ignition Resistance of Exterior Wall Assemblies.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product description, storage and handling requirements, and installation instructions.
- C. Product Test Reports and Code Compliance: Documents demonstrating product compliance with local building code, such as test reports or Evaluation Reports from qualified, independent testing agencies.
- D. Manufacturer's Details: Submit drawings (.dwg, .rvt, and/or .pdf formats), including plans, sections, showing installation details that demonstrate product dimensions, edge/termination conditions/treatments, compression and control joints, corners, openings, and penetrations.
- E. Samples: Submit samples of each product type proposed for use.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. All fiber cement panels specified in this section must be supplied by a manufacturer with a minimum of 10 years of experience in fabricating and supplying fiber cement cladding systems.
 - a. Products covered under this section are to be manufactured in an ISO 9001 certified facility.
2. Provide technical and design support as needed regarding installation requirements and warranty compliance provisions.

RA-221

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer trained by manufacturer or representative.
- C. Mock-Up Wall: Provide a mock-up wall as evaluation tool for product and installation workmanship.
- D. Pre-Installation Meetings: Prior to beginning installation, conduct conference to verify and discuss substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions and warranty requirements, and project requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Panels must be stored flat and kept dry before installation. A waterproof cover over panels and accessories should be used at all times prior to installation. Do not stack pallets more than two high. Refer to the information included on each pallet.
- B. If panels are exposed to water or water vapor prior to installation, allow to completely dry before installing. Failure to do so may result in panel shrinkage at ship lap joints, and such action may void warranty.
- C. Panels MUST be carried on edge. Do not carry or lift panels flat. Improper handling may cause cracking or panel damage.
- D. Direct contact between the panels and the ground should be avoided at all times. It is necessary to keep panels clean during installation process.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's 15-year warranty against manufactured defects in fiber cement panels. Additional 5-year extension available when refinished in year 14-15.
- B. Provide manufacturer's 15-year warranty against manufactured defects in panel finish.
- C. Warranty provides for the original purchaser. See warranty for detailed information on terms, conditions and limitations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer's: Nichiha USA, Inc., 6465 E. Johns Crossing, Suite 250, Johns Creek, GA 30097. Toll free: 1.866.424.4421, Office: 770.805.9466, Fax: 770.805.9467, www.nichiha.com.
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: Nichiha VintageWood. See drawings for extent of this finish referred to as FC1
 - a. Profile colors: Cedar

RA-222

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Profiles: Wood plank texture with three, 3/8" grooves running lengthwise, spaced 5-5/8" apart.
 - c. Accessory/Component Options:
 - 1) Manufactured Corners with 3-1/2" returns for each profile color.
 - 2) Aluminum trim options: Corner Key, Open Outside Corner, H-Mold, J-Mold, Compression Joint, Inside Corner
 - a) Finish: Cedar
 - 3) Essential Flashing System: Starter, Overhang.
 - a) Finish: Matte black.
 - d. Dimensions - AWP-3030: 455mm (17-7/8") (h) x 3,030 mm (119-5/16") (l).
 - e. Panel Thickness: 16 mm (5/8").
 - f. Weight: 57.32 lbs. per panel.
 - g. Coverage: 14.81 sq. ft. per panel.
 - h. Factory sealed on six [6] sides.
2. Basis of Design Product: Nichiha Illumination Series. See drawings for extent of this finish referred to as FC2
- a. Profile colors: Designer-specified custom color (finished in U.S.).
 - b. Profiles: AWP-3030 Panel: Smooth, No score lines. Wider, soft-U chamfered edge at horizontal joints.
 - c. Accessory/Component Options:
 - 1) Manufactured Corners with 3-1/2" returns for each profile size and color.
 - 2) Aluminum trim options: Corner Key, Open Outside Corner, H-Mold, J-Mold, Compression Joint, Inside Corner
 - a) Finish: Same color as panel
 - 3) Essential Flashing System: Starter, Overhang.
 - a) Finish: Matte black.
 - d. Dimensions:
 - 1) AWP-3030: 455mm (17-7/8") (h) x 3,030 mm (119-5/16") (l).
 - e. Panel Thickness: 16 mm (5/8").
 - f. Weight: AWP-1818: 35.27 lbs. per panel, AWP-3030: 57.32 lbs. per panel.
 - g. Coverage: 8.88 sq. ft. per panel (1818), 14.81 sq. ft. per panel (3030).
- B. Substitutions: Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 60 00.

RA-223

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Fiber cement panels manufactured from a pressed, stamped, and autoclaved mix of Portland cement, fly ash, silica, recycled rejects, and wood fiber bundles.
- B. Panel surface pre-finished and machine applied.
- C. Panels profiled along 3030mm edges so that the long joints between the installed panels are ship-lapped.
- D. Factory-applied sealant gasket added to top panel edge; all 3030mm edge joints contain a factory sealant.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Fiber Cement Cladding - Must comply with ASTM C-1186, Type A, Grade II requirements:
 - 1. Wet Flexural Strength: Result: 1418 psi, Lower Limit: 1015 psi.
 - 2. Water Tightness: No water droplets observed on any specimen.
 - 3. Freeze-thaw: No damage or defects observed.
 - 4. Warm Water: No evidence of cracking, delamination, swelling, or other defects observed.
 - 5. Heat-Rain: No crazing, cracking, or other deleterious effects, surface or joint changes observed in any specimen.
- B. Mean Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion (ASTM E-228): Max 1.0×10^{-5} in./in. F.
- C. Surface Burning (CAN-ULC S102/ASTM E-84): Flame Spread: 0, Smoke Developed: 0.
- D. Wind Load (ASTM E-330): Contact manufacturer for ultimate test pressure data corresponding to framing type, dimensions, fastener type, and attachment clips. Project engineer(s) must determine Zone 4 and 5 design pressures based on project specifics.
 - 1. Minimum lateral deflection: L/120.
- E. Water Penetration (ASTM E-331): No water leakage observed into wall cavity.
- F. Steady-State Heat Flux and Thermal Transmission Properties Test (ASTM C-518): 16mm thick panel thermal resistance R Value of 0.47.
- G. Fire Resistant (ASTM E-119): The wall assembly must successfully endure 60-minute fire exposure without developing excessive unexposed surface temperature or allowing flaming on the unexposed side of the assembly.

RA-224

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Ignition Resistance (NFPA 268): No sustained flaming of panels, assembly when subjected to a minimum radiant heat flux of 12.5 kW/m² - 5% in the presence of a pilot ignition source for a 20-minute period.
- I. Fire Propagation (NFPA 285): Wall assembly of Nichiha AWP, Ultimate Clips and Starter Track, Tyvek Commercial Wrap, Densglass Gold Sheathing, 16" o.c. 18 gauge steel studs, mineral wool in-cavity insulation, and interior 5/8" Type X gypsum met the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285
- J. Fire Propagation (CAN/ULC S-134): Wall assembly of Nichiha AWP, Ultimate Clips and Starter Track, Tyvek Housewrap, 5/8" FRT plywood, 16" o.c. 2x wood studs, fiberglass in-cavity insulation, and interior 5/8" Type X gypsum met the acceptance criteria of CAN/ULC S-134.
- K. Drained and Back Ventilated Rainscreen (AAMA 509-14): System classifications: W1, V1.

2.4 INSTALLATION COMPONENTS

A. INSTALLATION COMPONENTS

- 1. Starter Track:
 - a. Horizontal Panel Installations - FA 700 - 3,030mm (l) galvalume coated steel.
- 2. Panel Clips: JEL 778 "Ultimate Clip II" (10mm rainscreen for 16mm AWP) - Zinc-Aluminum-Magnesium alloy coated steel.
 - a. Joint Tab Attachments (included) - used at all AWP-1818 panel to panel vertical joints - NOT used with AWP-3030 installations.
- 3. Corner Clips: JE 777C (10mm rainscreen for 5/8" AWP Manufactured Corners) -- Zinc-Aluminum-Magnesium alloy coated steel.
- 4. Single Flange Sealant Backer - FHK 1015 R (10mm) - 6.5" (l) fluorine coated galvalume.
- 5. Double Flange Sealant Backer - FH 1015 R (10mm) - 10" (l) fluorine coated galvalume.
- 6. Corrugated Spacer - FS 1005 (5mm), FS 1010 (10mm) - 4" (l).

B. Aluminum Trim (optional): Paint as specified in finish schedule.

C. Essential Flashing System (optional):

- 1. Starter - main segments (3,030mm), inside corners, outside corners
- 2. Overhang - main segments (3,030mm), inside corners, outside corners, joint clips

RA-225

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Fasteners: Corrosion resistant fasteners, such as hot-dipped galvanized screws appropriate to local building codes and practices must be used. Use Stainless Steel fasteners in high humidity and high-moisture regions. Panel manufacturer is not liable for corrosion resistance of fasteners. Do not use aluminum fasteners, staples or fasteners that are not rated or designed for intended use. See manufacturer's instructions for appropriate fasteners for construction method used.
- E. Flashing: Flash all areas specified in manufacturer's instructions. Do not use raw aluminum flashing. Flashing must be galvanized, anodized, or PVC coated.
- F. Sealant: Sealant shall comply with ASTM C920, Class 35.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
 - 1. Fiber cement panels can be installed over braced wood, steel studs and sheathing including plywood, OSB, plastic foam or fiberboard sheathing. Fiber cement panels can also be installed over Structural Insulated Panels (SIP's), Concrete Masonry Units (CMU's) and Concrete Block Structures (CBS's) with furring strips, and Pre-Engineered Metal Construction. Insulated Concrete Forms (ICFs) are NOT an approved substrate under any condition.
 - 2. Allowable stud spacing: 16" o.c. maximum.
 - 3. A weather resistive barrier is required when installing fiber cement panels. Use an approved weather resistive barrier (WRB) as defined by the 2015 IBC or IRC. Refer to local building codes.
 - 4. Appropriate metal flashing should be used to prevent moisture penetration around all doors, windows, wall bottoms, material transitions and penetrations. Refer to local building codes for best practices.
- B. Examine site to ensure substrate conditions are within alignment tolerances for proper installation.
- C. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- D. Do not install panels or components that appear to be damaged or defective. Do not install wet panels.

3.2 TOLERANCE

- A. Wall surface plane must be plumb and level within +/- ? inch in 20 feet in any direction.
 - 1. One layer of Nichiha 5mm (~3/16") Spacer may be used as shim.

RA-226

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install products in accordance with the latest installation guidelines of the manufacturer and all applicable building codes and other laws, rules, regulations and ordinances. Review all manufacturer installation, maintenance instructions, and other applicable documents before installation

1. Consult with your local dealer or Nichiha Technical Department before installing any Nichiha fiber cement product on a building higher than 45 feet or three stories or for conditions not matching prescribed standard installation guide requirements and methods. Special installation conditions may be required via a Technical Review and Special Applications Form (SAF) process.
2. Vertical Control/Expansion Joints are required within 2-10 feet of outside corners finished with metal trim and approximately every 30 feet thereafter.
3. Horizontal/Compression Joints are required for multi-story installations of AWP. Locate joints at floor lines. Joints are flashed minimum ?? breaks. Do not caulk. Refer to installation guide(s).
 - a. Wood framed buildings of three or more floors require a compression joint at each floor.
 - b. Steel framed buildings (including reinforced concrete core with LGMF exterior walls) of more than three floors (or 45 feet) require a compression joint every 25 feet at a floor line.

B. Panel Cutting

1. Always cut fiber cement panels outside or in a well ventilated area. Do not cut the products in an enclosed area.
2. Always wear safety glasses and NIOSH/OSHA approved respirator whenever cutting, drilling, sawing, sanding or abrading the products. Refer to manufacturer SDS for more information.
3. Use a dust-reducing circular saw with a diamond-tipped or carbide-tipped blade.
 - a. Recommended circular saw: Makita 7-1/4" Circular Saw with Dust Collector (#5057KB).
 - b. Recommended blade: Tenryu Board-Pro Plus PCD Blade (#BP-18505).
 - c. Shears (electric or pneumatic) or jig saw can be used for complicated cuttings, such as service openings, curves, radii and scrollwork.
4. Silica Dust Warning: Fiber cement products may contain some amounts of crystalline silica, a naturally occurring, potentially hazardous mineral when airborne in dust form. Consult product SDS or visit <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/topics/silicacrystalline/>.

3.4 CLEANING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Review manufacturer guidelines for detailed care instructions.

END OF SECTION 074243

RA-227

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section Includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section:

- 1. Exterior joints in the following surfaces:

- a. Control joints in unit masonry.
- b. Perimeter joints between metal and masonry.
- c. Other joints as indicated.

- 2. Interior joints in the following surfaces:

- a. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors.
- b. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
- c. No other interior joints are to receive sealants without Architects approval.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 079100 "Preformed Joint Seals" for preformed compressible foam and precured joint seals.
- 2. Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in sound-rated construction.
- 3. Section 042113 "Brick Masonry"

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain water-tight and air-tight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

RA-228

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in **1/2-inch-(13-mm-)**wide joints formed between two **6-inch-(150-mm-)**long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 - 4. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
 - 5. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

RA-229

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

RA-230

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following:
 - 1. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.

2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 600
 - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+
 - c. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonolac
 - d. Tremco; Tremflex 834

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

RA-231

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Cast Stone
 - b. Calcium Silicate Building Masonry.

RA-232

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:

- a. Metal.
- b. Glass.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Areas to receive sealants shall be masked on both sides of joint to provide a clean edge.

C. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

D. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

E. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

F. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

RA-233

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- G. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Finished joint shall be smooth and continuous without gaps, bubbles, blobs, or other visual defects.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces[.].
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces [<JS-#>].

RA-234

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - c. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - d. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - f. Control and expansion joints in ceilings.
 - g. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces [**JS-#**].
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces [**JS-#**].
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of [**unit masonry**], [**concrete**], [**walls**], [**and**] [**partitions**].
 - d. Joints on underside of plant-precast structural concrete [**beams**] [**and**] [**planks**].
 - e. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement [**JS-#**].
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.

RA-235

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and windows.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces [**<JS-#>**].
 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics [**<JS-#>**].
 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

RA-236

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hollow-metal work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.

RA-237

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

7. Details of accessories.
8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum **4-inch-(102-mm-)**high wood blocking. Provide minimum **1/4-inch (6-mm)** space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Curries
2. Steelcraft

B. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.

RA-238

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
 - c. Face: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm).
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
 - f. Core: Polystyrene.
 - g. Accessories: Stainless Steel Kick Plates
3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
 - b. Construction: Knocked down.
4. Exposed Finish: Prime.
 - a. Color: Finish coat to match interior steel column color.

2.3 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct exterior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Maximum-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 4. At locations indicated in plans.
 1. Physical Performance: Level A according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm.)
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.067 inch (1.7 mm), with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Vertical steel stiffener.
 - 1) Thermal-Rated Doors: Provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.1 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.370 K x sq. m/W) when tested according to ASTM C 1363.

3. Frames:

RA-239

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.067 inch (1.7 mm), with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
4. Exposed Finish: Prime.
- a. Color: Finish color to match storefront "Black"

2.4 HOLLOW-METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow-metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as adjacent door assemblies.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (51 mm) wide by 10 inches (254 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch (4.5 mm) thick.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-(9.5-mm)-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (51-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.

RA-240

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

C. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

D. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

B. Hollow-Metal Doors:

1. Steel-Stiffened Door Cores: Provide minimum thickness **0.026 inch (0.66 mm)**, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than **6 inches (152 mm)** apart. Spot weld to face sheets no more than **5 inches (127 mm)** o.c. Fill spaces between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
2. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Bevel edges **1/8 inch in 2 inches (3.2 mm in 51 mm)**.
3. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets.
4. Bottom Edge Closures: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
5. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.

C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.

1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
2. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
3. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:

RA-241

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than **18 inches (457 mm)** from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than **32 inches (813 mm)** o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to **60 inches (1524 mm)** high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from **60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm)** high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from **90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm)** high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each **24 inches (610 mm)** or fraction thereof above **96 inches (2438 mm)** high.
 - b. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each frame.
 - c. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than **6 inches (152 mm)** from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than **26 inches (660 mm)** o.c.
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
- 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 - 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
- B. Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, complying with SDI A250.3.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

RA-242

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - b. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - c. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 - 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.

RA-243

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
 5. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 6. In-Place Metal or Wood-Stud Partitions: Secure slip-on drywall frames in place according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

RA-244

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior storefront framing.
- 2. Storefront framing for ribbon walls.
- 3. Storefront framing for punched openings.
- 4. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.
 - a. Glazing is retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 079200 - "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed with aluminum-framed systems and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 087100 - "Door Hardware" for hardware to the extent not specified in this Section.
- 3. Section 088000 - "Glazing" for glazing requirements to the extent not specified in this Section.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. field quality control is part of testing and inspecting allowance.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

RA-245

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from **12-inch (300-mm)** lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 2. Anchorage.
 3. Expansion provisions.
 4. Glazing.
 5. Flashing and drainage.
- E. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

RA-246

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.

RA-247

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to **13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m)** and to 1/240 of clear span plus **1/4 inch (6.35 mm)** for spans greater than **13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m)** or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to **3/4 inch (19.1 mm)**, whichever is less.
- E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
 - 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of **0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.30 L/s per sq. m)** at a static-air-pressure differential of **6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa)**.

RA-248

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Entrance Doors:
 - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. (5.08 L/s per sq. m) at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
 - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. (2.54 L/s per sq. m) at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- G. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.55 W/sq. m x K) as determined according to NFRC 100.
 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.28 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 15 as determined according to NFRC 500.
- H. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E 90, with ratings determined by ASTM E 1332, as follows.
 1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 34.
- I. Blast Resistance:
 1. Hazard Rating: Minimal Hazard per ASTM F 1642.
 2. Performance Condition: 4 per GSA-TS01.
- J. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
 - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).

RA-249

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- c. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kawneer's Trifab 601T, Thermally Broken Framing System. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. United States Aluminum
 - 2. Old Castle Architectural Products.
 - 3. Graham Architectural Products
 - 4. EFCO
 - 5. Wausau Window and Wall System
- C. System Description: 2 inch x 6 inch nominal dimension, flush center glazed, integral weep system.

2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
 - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 3. Glazing Plane: 1 3/4" setback from front, see drawings.
 - 4. Finish: Color anodic finish. Black , See drawings
 - 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**.
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.

RA-250

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- e. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.
 - 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
 - E. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration, use self locking devices.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - F. Flashing: Manufacturer standards corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials. From exposed flashing from sheet metal finished to match framing and of sufficient thickness to maintain a flat appearance without visible deflection.
 - G. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacture's standard recommended by manufacturer for joint type.
- 2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS
- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
 - 1. Door Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2-inch (88.9-mm) nominal width.
 - 2. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
- 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE
- A. General: Provide heavy duty entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
 - 2. Opening-Force Requirements:

RA-251

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf (133 N) to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to open the door to its minimum required width.
 - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N) to fully open door.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:
1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
 2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- C. Butt Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, radius corner.
1. Nonremovable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while entrance door is closed.
 2. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin.
- D. Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
1. Keying: Master key system. Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include notation "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
- E. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- F. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- G. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to comply with field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- H. Concealed Overhead Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- I. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- J. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
 2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701/702, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

RA-252

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- K. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- L. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- M. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)**.
- N. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.
 - 1. Color: Match structural sealant.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

RA-253

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system exterior.
 - 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
 - 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using screw-spline system.
- G. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- H. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

RA-254

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- I. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- J. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 - 1. Color: Black.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. rill floor tile as needed to install hardware. Coordinate with floor tile installer for best practices to avoid damaging the tile.

RA-255

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Metal Protection:
1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system exterior.
- D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, without wrap or rack.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
1. Plumb: **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).**
 2. Level: **1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).**
 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch (1.6 mm).**
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from **1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/8 inch (3.2 mm).**
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to **1/4 inch (6 mm).**

RA-256

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Location: Limit variation from plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** over total length.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
 - b. Perform tests in each test area as directed by Architect. Perform at least three tests, prior to 50 percent completion..
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
 2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Use parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

END OF SECTION 084113

RA-257

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazed pressure equalized aluminum curtain walls as stick-built assemblies.
 - 1. Delegated Design: Curtain walls shall be designed by the manufacturer to comply with specified performance requirements and design criteria.
- B. Work provided under this section but specified under other sections:
 - 1. The work of this Section and applicable portions of the work of the following Sections that are related to this section, shall be performed by a Prime contractor providing window and curtain wall products, to establish a single source responsibility for glazed aluminum curtain walls and associated components.
 - a. Division 07 Section " Joint Sealants"
 - b. Division 08 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
 - c. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware"
 - d. Division 08 "Glazing"

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. field quality-control testing is part of testing and inspecting allowance.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

RA-258

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
1. Include 3 or more units in each sample set showing the extreme limits of variations expected in color and texture of finish.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from **12-inch (300-mm)** lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 2. Anchorage.
 3. Expansion provisions.
 4. Glazing.
 5. Flashing and drainage.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Show section moduli of wind-load-bearing members and calculations of stresses and deflections. Provide material properties and other information needed for structural analysis including computations.
 2. Submit statement by the Professional Engineer attesting that all materials provided under this section, and related Sections, meet specified requirements.

RA-259

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and field testing agency to demonstrate that they are qualified for the project.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- C. Product Test Reports: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Indicating compliance with structural and performance requirements based on comprehensive tests performed by preconstruction testing agency, on curtain wall units matching the system proposed on this projects.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers and Products: The products and Manufacturers specified in this Section establish the standard for quality for the Work. Subject to compliance with all requirements, provide specified products from the manufacturers named in Part 2.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Reference Standards: Products in this section shall be built, tested, and installed in compliance with the specified quality assurance standards; latest editions, unless otherwise noted.
 - 1. Glass Association of North America (GANA) "Glazing Manual".
 - 2. Applicable Standards of the American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA), including but not limited to:
 - a. AAMA 1503 Voluntary Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Condensation Resistance of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections.
 - b. AAMA 2605 Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels.

RA-260

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- c. AAMA 611 Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum.
3. Standards of ASTM International which are referenced in other Articles of this Section.
4. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC) Documents and Rating System, including but not limited to:
 - a. NFRC 100 Procedure for determining fenestration product U-Factors.
 - b. NFRC 200 procedure for determining fenestration product solar heat gain coefficient and visible transmittance at normal incidence.
 - c. NFRC 500-2010 procedure for determining fenestration product condensation resistance values.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025.
- E. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- F. Delegated Design: A qualified Professional Engineer registered in North Carolina, employed by the curtain wall manufacturer, shall design curtain wall assemble, doors, glazing and all accessories for this project. The curtain wall assembly shall be manufactured, assembled and installed to withstand the structural load requirements, as specified in this Section, the Building Code, and expected loads calculated for the building, based data indicated on the Drawings. Refer to Part 2 Performance Requirements for additional information.
- G. Curtain Wall Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating curtain walls that meet or exceed specified energy performance requirements and of documenting this performance.
- H. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel"
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum"

RA-261

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Assembly Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain wall that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
- b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
- e. Failure of operating components.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
- c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazed aluminum curtain walls.

B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.

2. Failure also includes the following:

- a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.

RA-262

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
- 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
- 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to **13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m)** and to 1/240 of clear span plus **1/4 inch (6.35 mm)** for spans greater than **13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m)** or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to **3/4 inch (19.1 mm)**, whichever is less.
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
- 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding **[0.2]<Insert number>** percent of span.
 - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than **[10]<Insert number>** seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
- 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of **0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.30 L/s per sq. m)** at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa)**.
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
- 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than **15 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa)**.
- H. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
- 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than **0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.55 W/sq. m x K)** as determined according to NFRC 100.

RA-263

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.40 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 60 as determined according to NFRC 500.
- I. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E 90, with ratings determined by ASTM E 1332, as follows:
1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 30.
- J. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
 - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of [180 deg F (82 deg C)]<Insert temperature>.
 - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: [0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)]<Insert temperature>.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Oldcastle Building Envelope - Reliance-IG SS Curtain Wall System 2-1/2" x 6-1/4" with 1" infill. or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa Company
 2. Wausau Window and Wall Systems
 3. Graham Architectural Products
 4. EFCO Corporation
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of curtain wall system, including framing entrances and accessories, from single manufacturer.

RA-264

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Construction: Thermally broken.
 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
 4. Finish: Color anodic finish.
 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- B. Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard aluminum components that mechanically retain glazing.
1. Include snap-on aluminum trim that conceals fasteners.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**.
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 ENTRANCES

- A. Entrances: Comply with Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."

2.5 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

RA-265

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for **30-mil (0.762-mm)** thickness per coat.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Fabricate components to resist water penetration as follows:

RA-266

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Pressure-equalized system or double barrier design with primary air and vapor barrier at interior side of glazed aluminum curtain wall and secondary seal weeped and vented to exterior.
 - E. Curtain-Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using manufacturer's standard assembly method.
 - F. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.
- 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES
- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 1. Color: Black.
 - B. Finish Aluminum storefront and entrances to match the curtain wall system. Division 08 Sections "Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts" shall comply with this Section for finish requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Do not install damaged components.
 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 6. Where welding is required, weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
 7. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer, applying sealant or tape, or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

RA-267

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Where aluminum is in contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 1. Plumb: **1/8 inch in 10 feet** (3.2 mm in 3 m); **1/4 inch in 40 feet** (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).
 2. Level: **1/8 inch in 20 feet** (3.2 mm in 6 m); **1/4 inch in 40 feet** (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).
 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from **1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet** (3.2 mm in 3.6 m); **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Test Area: Perform tests on one bay at least **30 feet (9.1 m)**, by one story.
- C. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of glazed aluminum curtain walls.
 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.

RA-268

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Perform a minimum of Five tests in areas as directed by Architect.
 - b. Perform tests in each test area as directed by Architect. Perform at least three tests, prior to 10, 35, and 70 percent completion.
2. Air Infiltration: ASTM E 783 at 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. (0.45 L/s per sq. m) at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
 - b. Perform tests in each test area as directed by Architect. Perform at least three tests, prior to 10, 35, and 70 percent completion.
3. Water Penetration: ASTM E 1105 at a minimum [uniform] [and] [cyclic] static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa), and shall not evidence water penetration.
- D. Glazed aluminum curtain walls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084413

RA-269

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:

- 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
 - a. Sliding doors.
- 2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for door silencers provided as part of hollow-metal frames.
- 2. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for installation of entrance door hardware, including cylinders.
- 3. Section 084229.23 "Sliding Automatic Entrances" for entrance door hardware, including cylinders.

- C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the products listed below. Coordinating and scheduling the purchase and delivery of these products remain requirements of this Section.

- 1. Pivots, thresholds, weather stripping, and lock cylinders to be installed under other Sections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Samples for Verification: For exposed door hardware of each type required, in each finish specified, prepared on Samples of size indicated below. Tag Samples with full

RA-270

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

description for coordination with the door hardware schedule. Submit Samples before, or concurrent with, submission of door hardware schedule.

1. Sample Size: Full-size units or minimum **2-by-4-inch (51-by-102-mm)** Samples for sheet and **4-inch (102-mm)** long Samples for other products.
 - a. Full-size Samples will be returned to Contractor. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process may, after final check of operation, be incorporated into the Work, within limitations of keying requirements.

C. Other Action Submittals:

1. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.
- C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Include final hardware and keying schedule.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
 1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
 2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from a single manufacturer.
- C. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than **15 lbf (67 N)** to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

RA-271

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.
1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than **5 lbf (22.2 N)**.
 2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
 - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: **5 lbf (22.2 N)** applied perpendicular to door.
 - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: **5 lbf (22.2 N)** applied parallel to door at latch.
 3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** high.
 4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point **3 inches (75 mm)** from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 2. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
- C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

RA-272

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Existing Openings: Where hardware components are scheduled for application to existing construction or where modifications to existing door hardware are required, field verify existing conditions and coordinate installation of door hardware to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door and door hardware operation. Provide parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Provide door hardware for each door as scheduled on Drawings to comply with requirements in this Section.

RA-273

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and products complying with BHMA designations referenced.
 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article.

2.2 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
1. Bored Locks: Minimum **1/2-inch (13-mm)** latchbolt throw.
- C. Lock Backset: **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)**, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lock Trim:
1. Description: XGT Series, Philadelphia Lever.
 2. Levers: Cast.
 - a. PDQ Manufacturing, Philadelphia.
 3. Escutcheons (Roses): Cast.
 4. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.
 5. Operating Device: Lever with escutcheons (roses).
- E. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
 3. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
 4. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.
- F. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2; Grade 1; Series 4000.

RA-274

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
 - 1. Master Key System: Change keys and a master key operate cylinders.
 - 2. Existing System:
 - a. Re-key Owner's existing master key system into new keying system.
 - 3. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.
- B. Keys: Brass.
 - 1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
 - a. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE."
 - 2. Quantity: In addition to one extra key blank for each lock, provide the following:
 - a. Master Keys: Five.

2.4 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Key Control Cabinet: BHMA A156.5; metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish; containing key-holding hooks, labels, 2 sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers; with key capacity of 120 percent of the number of locks.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Multiple-Drawer Cabinet: Cabinet with drawers equipped with key-holding panels and key envelope storage, and progressive-type ball-bearing suspension slides. Include single cylinder lock to lock all drawers.

2.5 OPERATING TRIM

- A. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6; bronze, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; air leakage not to exceed **0.50 cfm per foot (0.000774 cu. m/s per m)** of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.

RA-275

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.7 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated. At exterior doors only

2.8 SLIDING DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Sliding Door Hardware: BHMA A156.14; consisting of complete sets including rails, hangers, supports, bumpers, floor guides, and accessories indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Dormatic
 - b. Horton
 - c. Stanley

2.9 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from 0.050-inch-(1.3-mm-)thick bronze; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rated labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
 - 1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use

RA-276

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.

2. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
3. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."
4. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.11 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

RA-277

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every **30 inches (750 mm)** of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every **30 inches (750 mm)** of door height greater than **90 inches (2286 mm)**.
- E. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule.
 2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- F. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- G. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
- I. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- J. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- K. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

RA-278

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 - 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.6 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. See drawings for schedule.

END OF SECTION 087100

RA-279

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 087113 - AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Power door operators for swinging doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 084113 "Aluminum Framed Entrance and Storefronts" for sliding doors and frames packaged with automatic door operators.
 - 2. Division 26 "Electrical"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AAADM: American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers.
- B. Activation Device: A control that, when actuated, sends an electrical signal to the door operator to open the door.
- C. Double-Egress (Doors): A pair of doors that simultaneously swing with the two doors moving in opposite directions with no mullion between them.
- D. Safety Device: A control that, to avoid injury, prevents a door from opening or closing.
- E. For automatic door terminology, see BHMA A156.10 and BHMA A156.19 for definitions of terms.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared and reinforced for installing automatic door operators. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate

RA-280

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

provisions are made for locating and installing automatic door operators to comply with indicated requirements.

- B. Coordinate hardware for doors with operators to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish.
- C. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic door operators with connections to power supplies and access-control system.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for automatic door operators and activation and safety devices.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For automatic door operators.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware mounting heights, and attachment details.
 - 2. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Indicate locations of activation and safety devices.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 5. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details for guide rails.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For automatic door operators, safety devices, and control systems, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project and who employs a Certified Inspector.
 - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
- B. Certified Inspector Qualifications: Certified by AAADM.

RA-281

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic door operators that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty or sporadic operation of automatic door operator, including controls.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering or use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Besam Automated Entrance Systems, Inc.
 - 2. DORMA Architectural Hardware.
 - 3. Stanley Access Technologies
 - 4. Horton Automatics.
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product**: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Stanley Dura Glide 3000 AG - all glass door with sidelights or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Stanley Access Technologies
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic door operators, including activation and safety devices, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS, GENERAL

- A. General: Provide operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for occupancy type indicated; and according to UL 325. Coordinate operator mechanisms with door operation, hinges, and activation and safety devices.
 - 1. Emergency Breakaway: Where indicated for center-pivoted doors, provide emergency breakaway feature for reverse swing of doors. Equip system to discontinue power to automatic door operator when door is in emergency breakaway position, to return door to closed position after breakaway, and to automatically reset.

RA-282

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Wind Load: Provide door operators on exterior doors that will open and close doors and maintain them in fully closed position when subjected to wind load of 90 mph.
 - B. Electromechanical Operating System: Self-contained unit powered by permanent-magnet dc motor; with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train and dynamically by braking action of electric motor, connections for power and activation- and safety-device wiring, and manual operation including spring closing when power is off.
 - C. Cover for Surface-Mounted Operators: Fabricated from 0.125-inch-(3.2-mm-) thick, extruded or formed aluminum; continuous over full width of door opening including door jambs; with enclosed end caps, provision for maintenance access, and fasteners concealed when door is in closed position.
 1. Finish and Color: Match door and door frame.
 - D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Fabricated from aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
 - E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 2.3 POWER DOOR OPERATORS, Low-Energy.
- A. Performance Requirements:
 1. Opening Force:
 - a. Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf (222 N) required to manually set door in motion if power fails; not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to open door to minimum required width.
 - b. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf (222 N) required for breakaway door or panel to open.
 - B. Configuration: Operator to control single swinging door.
 1. Operator Mounting: Overhead concealed.
 - C. Microprocessor Control Unit: Solid-state controller.
 - D. Features:
 1. Adjustable opening and closing speed.
 2. Adjustable opening and closing force.
 3. Adjustable backcheck.
 4. Adjustable hold-open time from zero to 30 seconds.
 5. Adjustable time delay.

RA-283

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

6. Adjustable acceleration.
7. Adjustable limit switch.
8. Obstruction recycle.
9. Automatic door re-open if stopped while closing.
10. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator; key operated.

E. Controls: Activation and safety devices as indicated on Drawings and according to BHMA standards.

1. Activation Device: Motion sensor mounted on ingress side of door header to detect pedestrians in activating zone and to open door.
2. Safety Device: One photoelectric beam mounted in guide rails to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.

F. Exposed Finish: Class I, color anodic finish.

1. Color: Black.

2.4 LOW-ENERGY DOOR OPERATORS

A. Standard: BHMA A156.19.

B. Performance Requirements:

1. Opening Force if Power Fails: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to release latch if provided, not more than 30 lbf (133 N) required to manually set door in motion, and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to fully open door.
2. Entrapment-Prevention Force: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to prevent stopped door from closing or opening.

C. Configuration: Operator to control double swinging door.

1. Traffic Pattern: Two way.
2. Operator Mounting: Overhead concealed.

D. Operation: Power opening and power-assisted spring closing. Provide time delay for door to remain open before initiating closing cycle as required by BHMA A156.19. When not in automatic mode, door operator shall function as manual door closer, with or without electrical power.

E. Operating System: Electromechanical.

F. Microprocessor Control Unit: Solid-state controller.

G. Features:

1. Adjustable opening and closing speed.
2. Adjustable opening and closing force.
3. Adjustable backcheck.

RA-284

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Adjustable hold-open time from zero to 30 seconds.
5. Adjustable time delay.
6. Adjustable acceleration.
7. Obstruction recycle.

H. Activation Device: on each side of door to activate door operator.

I. Exposed Finish: Class I, color anodic finish.

1. Color: Black.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**.
2. Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**.

B. Fasteners and Accessories: Corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

2.6 CONTROLS

A. General: Provide controls, including activation and safety devices, according to BHMA standards; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for occupancy type indicated. Coordinate activation and safety devices with door operation and door operator mechanisms.

B. Motion Sensors: Self-contained, K-band-frequency, microwave-scanner units; fully enclosed in plastic housing; adjustable to provide detection field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10.

1. Provide capability for switching between bidirectional and unidirectional detection.
2. For one-way traffic, sensor on egress side shall not be active when doors are fully closed.

C. Presence Sensors: Self-contained, active-infrared scanner units; adjustable to provide detection field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10. Sensors shall remain active at all times.

D. Photoelectric Beams: Pulsed infrared, sender-receiver assembly for recessed mounting. Beams shall not be active when doors are fully closed.

E. Wireless or Remote Radio-Control Switch: Radio-control system consisting of header-mounted receiver and wall-mounted transmitter switch.

RA-285

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Wall-Mounted Transmitter Switch: One red-button, momentary-contact actuator enclosed in 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) junction box. Provide blue plastic cover engraved with "Press Button to Open" in white text and with international symbol of accessibility.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fabricate automatic door operators to comply with indicated standards.
- B. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
- C. Fabricate exterior components to drain condensation and water passing joints within operator enclosure to the exterior.
- D. Use concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws, finished to match operator.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Signage: As required by cited BHMA standard for type of door and its operation.
 1. Application Process: Operator manufacturer's standard process.
 2. Provide sign materials with instructions for field application when operators are installed.

2.9 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

RA-286

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, door and frame preparation and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of automatic door operators.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical systems to verify actual locations of power connections before automatic door operator installation.
- C. Verify that full-height finger guards are installed at each door with pivot hinges where door has a clearance at hinge side greater than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** and less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** with door in any position.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install automatic door operators according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for type of door operation and direction of pedestrian travel, including signage, controls, wiring, remote power units if any, and connection to building's power supply.
 - 1. Do not install damaged components. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 2. Install operators true in alignment with established lines and door geometry without warp or rack. Anchor securely in place.
- B. Controls: Install activation and safety devices according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for operator type and direction of pedestrian travel. Connect control wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Access-Control System: Connect operators to access-control system as specified in Section 281300 "Access Control."
- D. Signage: Apply on both sides of each door as required by cited BHMA standard for type of door operator and direction of pedestrian travel.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

RA-287

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Test and inspect each automatic door operator installation, using AAADM inspection forms, to determine compliance of installed systems with applicable BHMA standards.
- B. Automatic door operators will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust automatic door operators to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer; comply with requirements of applicable BHMA standards.
 1. Adjust operators on exterior doors for weathertight closure.
- B. After completing installation of automatic door operators, inspect exposed finishes on doors and operators. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- C. Readjust automatic door operators and controls after repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to three days' use by normal traffic (100 to 300 cycles).
- D. Occupancy Adjustment: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include three months' full maintenance by skilled employees of automatic door operator Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 1. Engage a Certified Inspector to perform safety inspection after each adjustment or repair and at end of maintenance period. Furnish completed inspection reports to Owner.
 2. Perform maintenance, including emergency callback service, during normal working hours.
 3. Include 24-hour-per-day, 7-day-per-week, emergency callback service.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic door operators.

RA-288

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 087113

RA-289

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glass for storefront framing glazed curtain walls.
 - a. Insulating Glass - Neutral/Clear
 - b. Insulated Glass -50% Opaque Film
 - c. Tempered Insulating Glass - Neutral/Clear
 - d. Mirror Glass.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 084113 - "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."
 - 2. Section 084413 - "Aluminum Curtain Walls"
 - 3. Section 087113 - Automatic Door Operations."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit which contains dehydrated air.
- E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to cause other than glass breakage

RA-290

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

- F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by reference laminated-glass standards.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of the following products; 12 inches (300 mm) square.
- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch (300-mm) lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program. The installers working on this project have a successful record of

RA-291

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

completed glazing similar in material, design, and the extent to that indicated for this project.

- B. Insulating glass shall have double edge seals. Primary seal shall be extruded polyisobutylene continuously bonded to glass surface and desiccant filled spacer, including corners. Minimum width of primary seal shall be 0.125 inch. Secondary seal shall be structural silicone. Secondary seal shall completely cover spacer with no gaps or voids, and shall be continuously bonded to both plates of glass. Where insulating glass is attached to a frame with a structural silicone, secondary seal shall be designed to transfer specified pressures from outdoor glass to indoor glass. Insulating glass shall have been tested in accordance with ASTM E774-97 (or ASTM E2188-02, ASTM E2189-02 and ASTM E2190-02), and compliance requirements of Classes C, B and A shall be indicated by a permanent label on spacer or glass using capitol letters with minimum height of 0.05 inch; label must be visible after installation.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Glass Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated in glass schedules or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Guardian SunGuard - Advanced Architectural Glass
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.

RA-292

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph (40 m/s).
 - c. Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - d. Exposure Category: B.
 3. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on drawings..
 4. Thickness of Patterned Glass: Base design of patterned glass on thickness at thinnest part of the glass.
 5. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less.
 6. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

RA-293

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 - 1. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

2.4 GLASS PANEL COMPOSITION, GLASS PRODUCTS AND SCHEDULES

- A. Insulating Glass - Type "I" - basis of design is Guardian Sunguard - SNX 51/23 - Ultra Clear
 - 1. Panel Composition: Interior 1/4 inch clear float glass, 1/2 inch air space, exterior 1/4 inch neutral float glass.
 - 2. Low-E coating on #2 Surface.
- B. Insulated Glass 50% Opaque - Type "O" - basis of design is Guardian Sunguard
 - 1. Panel Composition: 1/4 inch tempered float glass with 3/4 inch rigid insulation.
 - 2. 50% Film on #4 surface
 - 3. Total Panel Thickness: 1 inch
 - 4. Special Features: Gray in color on Surface #4.
- C. Tempered Insulated Glass - Type "T"- basis of design is Guardian Sunguard - SNX 51/23 - Ultra Clear
 - 1. Panel Composition: Interior 1/4 inch clear tempered float glass, 1/2 inch air space, exterior 1/4 inch grey tempered float glass.
 - 2. Low-E coating on #2 surface.
- D. Glass Products
 - 1. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (ultra-clear), Quality-Q3.
 - 2. Ultraclear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class I (ultra -clear), Quality-Q3; and with visible light transmission of not less than 91 percent
 - 3. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

2.5 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets. Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain water-tight seal.
 - 1. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
 - 2. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
 - 3. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM E 2203.

RA-294

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Any material indicated above.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed cell, integral-skinned gaskets of material indicated below; complying with ASTM C509, Type II, black; and of profile and hardness required to maintain water-tight seal.
1. EPDM
 2. Silicone
 3. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber
 4. Any material listed above.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

RA-295

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

RA-296

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances,

RA-297

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
 3. The use of intermittent spaces is permitted only at interior glazing. At exterior glazing provide continuous gaskets or continuous spacers.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- 3.4 TAPE GLAZING
- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
 - B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
 - C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
 - D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
 - E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
 - F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

RA-298

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 MIRRORS

- A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with reference GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
- B. For wall-mounted mirrors, install mirrors with mastic and mirror hardware.

RA-299

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on back of mirror.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088000

RA-300

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 089119 - FIXED LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers for exterior locations.

- B.

- 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants".Related Requirements:
 - 2. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for louvers in hollow-metal doors.
 - 3. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for field painting louvers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are vertical).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.

RA-301

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.

1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.

B. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Provide louvers that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change(range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime -sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

RA-302

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

2.3 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A.

1. Exterior Louver Manufacturer: Basis of Design:
 - a. American Warming and Ventilation, Inc. (Robert Bates Company 888-677-6277).Horizontal Storm-Resistant Louver(Exterior)
2. Louver Depth: 4 inches.
3. Frame Blade Nominal Thickness: As required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.125 inch for blades and 0.125 inch for frames.
 - a. Free Area: Not less than 48.5 percent (48.5%).
 - b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.11-inch wg static pressure drop at 730-fpm free-air velocity.
 - c. Water Penetration: Not more than 0.01 oz. per sq. ft. of free area at an air flow of 700 FPM free area velocity when tested for 15 minutes.

2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.

1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
2. Screening Type: Insect screening.

B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with stainless-steel machine screws, spaced a maximum of **6 inches (150 mm)** from each corner and at **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c.

C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.

1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
3. Type: Rewirable frames with a driven spline or insert.

D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

1. Bird Screening: Flattened, expanded aluminum, **3/4 by 0.050 inch (19 by 1.27 mm)** thick.
2. Insect Screening: Aluminum, **18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm)** mesh, **0.012-inch (0.30-mm)** wire.

RA-303

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 - 1. Use tamper-resistant screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions, reinforced with splice plates.
 - 1. Continuous Vertical Assemblies: Fabricate units without interrupting blade-spacing pattern where indicated.
- C. Maintain equal louver blade spacing to produce uniform appearance.
- D. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
 - 1. Frame Type: Exterior flange unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- F. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or **72 inches (1830 mm)** o.c., whichever is less.

RA-304

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Fully Recessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions fully recessed behind louver blades. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
 - G. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.
- 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES
- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
 - B. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 1. Color and Gloss: Match composite board material or adjacent surface. Architect to review color sample..

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.

RA-305

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
 - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 089119

RA-306

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 089516 - WALL VENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wall vents.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain vents from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 WALL VENTS (BRICK VENTS)

- A. Extruded-Aluminum Wall Vents:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Airolite Company
 - 2. Extruded-aluminum louvers and frames, not less than **0.125-inch (3.18-mm)** nominal thickness, assembled by welding; with **18-by-14-(1.4-by-1.8-mm-)**mesh, aluminum insect screening on inside face; incorporating weep holes, continuous drip at sill, and integral waterstop on inside edge of sill; of load-bearing design and construction.

RA-307

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Dampers: Aluminum blades and frames mounted on inside of wall vents; operated from exterior with Allen wrench in socket-head cap screw. Fabricate operating mechanism from Type 304 stainless-steel components.
4. Finish: same color as adjacent surface..

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 1. Color: same color as adjacent surface.
- B. Conversion-Coated Finish: AA-C12C42 (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place vents level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Protect unpainted surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- C. Build vents into masonry work as construction progresses; comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- D. Provide perimeter reveals of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, where indicated.
- E. Use concealed anchorages.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.

RA-308

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Restore vents damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

END OF SECTION 089516

RA-309

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
- 2. Suspensory systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs; floor joists; roof rafters and ceiling joists; and roof trusses.
- 2. Section 072100 - "Thermal Insulation"
- 3. Section "092900" for Gypsum Board supported by non-load-bearing steel framing including exterior wall sheathing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.

- 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.

- 1. Steel Studs and Runners:

RA-310

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm).
 - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
- 1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch-(51-mm-)deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
- D. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch (1.34-mm) minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-(13-mm-)wide flanges.
- 1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
 - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), 0.068-inch-(1.72-mm-)thick, galvanized steel.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
- 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch (0.45 mm).
 - 2. Depth: 7/8 inch (22.2 mm).
- F. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-(13-mm-)deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
- 1. Configuration: hat shaped.
- G. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch (1.34-mm) uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-(13-mm-)wide flanges.
- 1. Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 - 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch (0.8 mm).
 - 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-(1.59-mm-)diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-(1.21-mm-)diameter wire.
- H. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.018 inch (0.45 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-(1.59-mm-)diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-(1.21-mm-)diameter wire.
- B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch (4.12 mm) in diameter.

RA-311

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch (25 by 5 mm) by length indicated.
- D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch (1.34 mm) and minimum 1/2-inch-(13-mm-)wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
 - 1. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch (22 mm) deep.
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch (0.45 mm).
- F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries.; Drywall Grid Systems.
 - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; 640-C Drywall Furring System.
 - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspended System.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
 - 1. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

RA-312

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
 - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated on drawings, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

RA-313

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum **1/2-inch (13-mm)** clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
3. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Direct Furring:
- 1. Screw to wood framing.
 - 2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c.
- F. Z-Furring Members:
- 1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-furring members spaced **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c.
 - 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c.
 - 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than **12 inches (305 mm)** from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- 1. Hangers: **48 inches (1219 mm)** o.c.
 - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): **48 inches (1219 mm)** o.c.
 - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
- 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.

RA-314

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
6. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- E. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within **1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m)** measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

RA-315

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Exterior Glass Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing..
- 3. Exterior Glass Mat Gypsum Roof Sheathing
- 4. Tile backing panels.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 054000 - "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for load bearing steel framing that supports gypsum board and exterior glass-mat gypsum board.
- 2. Section 072100 - "Thermal Insulation", for insulation and vapor retarders installed in assemblies that incorporate exterior glass-mat gypsum roof sheathing.
- 3. Section 074113.16 - "Standing Seam Metal Roof".installed in assemblies that incorporate exterior glass-mat gypsum roof sheathing.
- 4. Section 072500 - "Weather Barriers"
- 5. Section 079200 - "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for acoustical sealants installed in assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
- 6. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
- 7. Section 099123 - " Interior Painting", for primer applied to gypsum board surfaces.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

RA-316

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- B. Low Emitting Materials: For ceiling and wall assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly and complying with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

RA-317

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Recycled Content of Gypsum Panel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than **<Insert number>** percent.
- B. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. G-P Gypsum.
 - 2. National Gypsum Company.
 - 3. USG Corporation.
 - 4. Temple-Inland.
 - 5. Certain Teed
 - 6. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - 7. American Gypsum.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR WALL, SOFFIT

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Georgia Pacific " DensGlass Gold" for Wall Sheathing
 - b. USG - SECUrock- Glass-mat wall sheathing
 - c. National Gypsum - "Gold Bond eXP"Glass-mat wall sheathing
 - 2. Core: **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)**, regular type.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. USG

RA-318

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. National Gypsum - cement board
- c. Georgia Pacific
2. Thickness: **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)**.
3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - e. Expansion (control) joint.

B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

RA-319

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.
- E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** thick.
 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

RA-320

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than **8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m)** in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow **1/4- to 3/8-inch-(6.4- to 9.5-mm-)**wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch-(6.4- to 12.7-mm-)**wide spaces at

RA-321

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Ceiling Type: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Cementitious panel board: as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
 - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:

RA-322

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, **16 inches (400 mm)** minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
 3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel steel screws.
- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 APPLYING EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.
1. Install with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
 2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.5 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.6 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:

RA-323

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners and as shown on the drawings.
2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

3.7 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

RA-324

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

RA-325

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 096348 - Ultracompact Floor Finishes

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ultracompact floor finishes.
2. Setting materials and accessories.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01: Administrative, procedural, and temporary work requirements.
 - a. Section 033000 - Cast-In-Place Concrete.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. A108.1B - Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex Portland Cement Mortar.
2. A108.10 - Installation of Grout in Tilework.
3. A118.4 - Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
4. A118.6 - Ceramic Tile Grouts.

B.

1. C97/C97M - Standard Test Methods for Absorption and Bulk Specific Gravity of Dimension Stone. ASTM International (ASTM):
2. C99/C99M - Standard Test Method for Modulus of Rupture of Dimension Stone.
3. C170/C170M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Dimension Stone.
4. C370 - Standard Test Method for Moisture Expansion of Fired Whiteware Products.
5. C373/C373M - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption, Bulk Density, Apparent Porosity, and Apparent Specific Gravity of Fired Whiteware Products.
6. C482 - Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement Paste.
7. C484 - Standard Test Method for Thermal Shock Resistance of Glazed Ceramic Tile.
8. C501 - Standard Test Method for Relative Resistance to Wear of Unglazed Ceramic Tile by the Taber Abraser.
9. C648 - Standard Test Method for Breaking Strength of Ceramic Tile.

RA-326

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

10. C650 - Standard Test Method for Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Chemical Substances.
11. C674 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Properties of Ceramic Whiteware Materials.
12. C880/C880M - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Dimension Stone.
13. C1028 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other Like Surfaces by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull-Meter Method.
14. C1353/C1353M - Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Dimension Stone Subjected to Foot Traffic Using a Rotary Platform, Double-Head Abraser.

C. Greenguard Environmental Institute (GEI) - Certification Programs.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals for Review:

1. Samples:

- a. 4 x 4 inch ultracompact sheet samples in Trillium and Danae.
- b. 3/8 x 3/8 x 4 inch grout samples.

1) Color: To be selected from manufacturer's matching color range and approved by architect.

c. 4 inch long joint sealer samples.

1) Color: To be selected from manufacturer's matching color range and approved by architect.

2. Shop Drawings

- a. from an approved source that accurately show tile pattern, sizes orientation and special circumstances.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Recycled Content: Certify percentages of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content.
2. Low-Emitting Materials: Certify volatile organic compound (VOC) content.

C. Closeout Submittals:

1. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning materials and procedures, and list of materials detrimental to ultracompact sheet.

RA-327

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum 10 years documented experience in manufacture of solid surfacing materials.
- B. Mockup:
 - 1. Construct floor finish mockup, 6 feet wide x 6 feet deep.
 - 2. Locate in Lobby --- and --- Mens Restroom.
 - 3. Approved mockup may remain as part of the Work.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's 10 year warranty against defects in materials and workmanship.
- B. Substitutions: Permitted, see Substitution Section

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Contract Documents are based on products by Cosentino USA, Inc. (www.dekton.com)

2.2 MATERIALS - ULTRACOMPACT SHEET (UC1 - Trillium), (UC1 - Trillium), (UC3 - Danae) & (UC4 - Aldem)

- A. Ultracompact Surfacing Sheet
 - 1. Product: Dekton by Cosentino.
 - 2. Composition: Selected raw materials formed into flat slabs utilizing sinterized particle technology.
 - 3. Collection: Solid.
 - 4. Color: [UC1. - Trillium] Lobby [UC2 - Trillium] Restrooms [UC3 - Danae] Restrooms [UC4 - Aldem] Lobby
 - 5. Surface finish: Slip resistant - Honed
 - 6. Thickness: 12 mm.
 - 7. Physical characteristics:
 - a. Moisture expansion: 0.02 percent average, tested to ASTM C370.
 - b. Breaking strength: 3963 lbf average, tested to ASTM C648.
 - c. Flexural strength: 10,828 psi average, tested to ASTM C674.
 - d. Water absorption: 0.03 percent average, tested to ASTM C373C373M.
 - e. Static coefficient of friction (slip resistance): 0.80 dry and 0.66 wet, tested to ASTM C1028.

RA-328

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- f. Wet dynamic coefficient of friction (DCOF): 0.57 average, tested to ANSI A137.1.
 - g. Resistance to wear: 182.2 average wear index, tested to ASTM C501.
 - h. Thermal shock resistance: No defects, tested to ASTM C484.
 - i. Bond strength: 423 psi average, tested to ASTM C482.
 - j. Specific absorption and gravity, tested to ASTM C97/C97M:
 - 1) Average percent of absorption per weight: 0.02 percent.
 - 2) Average density: 156 pounds per cubic foot.
 - k. Breaking module, tested to ASTM C99/C99M:
 - 1) Average dry breaking strength: 8128 PSI.
 - 2) Average wet breaking strength: 7490 PSI.
 - l. Flexural strength, tested to ASTM C880:
 - 1) Average dry flexural strength: 6840 PSI.
 - 2) Average wet flexural strength: 6205 PSI.
 - m. Resistance to compression, tested to ASTM C170/C170M:
 - 1) Average dry compression: 34,409 PSI.
 - 2) Average wet compression: 17,823 PSI.
 - n. Resistance to abrasion, tested to ASTM C1353/C1353M: 349 average abrasion index.
 - o. Resistance to chemical substances; tested to ASTM C650:
 - 1) Acetic acid, 3 percent: No affect.
 - 2) Acetic acid, 10 percent: No affect.
 - 3) Ammonium chloride, 100 g/L: No affect.
 - 4) Citric acid solution, 30 g/L n: No affect.
 - 5) Citric acid solution 100 g/L: No affect.
 - 6) Lactic acid, 5 percent: No affect.
 - 7) Phosphoric acid, 3 percent: No affect.
 - 8) Phosphoric acid, 10 percent: No affect.
 - 9) Sulphuric acid, 30 g/L: No affect.
 - 10) Sulphuric acid, 100 G/L: No affect.
 - 11) Chemical pool products: No affect.
 - 12) Sodium hydrochlorite solution, 20 mg/L: No affect.
 - 13) Hydrochloric acid solution, 3 percent: No affect.
 - 14) Hydrochloric acid solution, 18 percent: No affect.
 - 15) Potassium hydroxide, 30 g/L: No affect.
 - 16) Potassium hydroxide, 100 g/L: No affect.
8. Certifications:
- a. GEI Greenguard Certified.

RA-329

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. GEI Greenguard Gold Certified.

2.3 MATERIALS - MORTAR

A. Portland Cement Mortar:

1. Cement: ASTM C150, Type 1, black color.
2. Sand: ASTM C144.
3. Lime: ASTM C207, Type S, hydrated.

B. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4.

2.4 MATERIALS - GROUT

A. Grout:

1. ANSI A118.6, sanded.
2. Volatile organic compound (VOC) content: Maximum 50grams per liter.
3. Color: To be selected from manufacturer's color range matching ultracompact sheet.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Sealer:

1. Mapesil 100 Percent Silicone Sealant by Mapei.
2. Color: To be selected from manufacturer's color range matching ultracompact sheet.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Cut panels accurately to required shapes and dimensions as indicated on the drawings
- B. Fabricate with 1/4 inch joints.
- C. Cut flooring to fit at perimeter and around penetrations with maximum 1/4 inch gaps.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces to receive flooring; remove loose and foreign matter than could interfere with adhesion.

RA-330

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Remove ridges and projections. Fill voids and depressions with patching compound compatible with setting materials.
- C. Allowable Substrate Tolerances: Maximum 1/4 inch in 10 feet variation in substrate surface.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flooring in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set flooring in thick set mortar bed in accordance with ANSI A108.1.
- C. Lay flooring to pattern furnished by Architect. Do not interrupt pattern through openings.
- D. Install with 1/8 inch joints.
- E. Allow mortar to set for a minimum of 24 hours.
- F. Grout joints in accordance with ANSI A108.10; finish smooth and flush.
- G. Provide control joints at changes in plane, changes in substrate material, at joints between flooring and adjacent construction, over joints in substrate, and at maximum 20 feet on center. Fill with joint sealer; finish flush and smooth.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum variation from level and plumb: 1/4 inch in 10 feet, noncumulative.
- B. Maximum variation in plane between adjacent pieces at joint: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.
- C. Maximum variation in joint width: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 096348

RA-331

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Resilient base.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than **12 inches (300 mm)** long.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than **10 linear feet (3 linear m)** for every **500 linear feet (150 linear m)** or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** or more than **90 deg F (32 deg C)**.

RA-332

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **65 deg F (18.3 deg C)** or more than **85 deg F (29.4 deg C)**, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
1. 48 hours before installation.
 2. During installation.
 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **55 deg F (13 deg C)** or more than **85 deg F (29.4 deg C)**.
- C. Maintain the ambient relative humidity as per manufacturer's recommendations, but not less than 40% or more than 60% during installation.
- D. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE- RB1

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. [Armstrong World Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. [Burke Mercer Flooring Products; a division of Burke Industries Inc.](#)
 3. [Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.](#)
 4. Shaw Contract Group
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
- C. Thickness: **0.125 inch (3.2 mm)**.
- D. Height: **4 inches (102 mm)**.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.

RA-333

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Colors: Manufacturer's standard "Black" to be submitted for approval by architect..
- I. Color Stability: Meets or exceeds ASTM F 1861 requirements for color stability when tested to ASTM F 1515 Standard Test Method for Measuring Light Stability of Resilient Flooring protocols.
- J. Flexibility: Does not crack, break, or show any signs of fatigue when bent around a 1 1/4" diameter cylinder when tested according to ASTM F 137 Standard Test Method for Flexibility of Resilient Flooring Materials protocols.

2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- C. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

RA-334

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

RA-335

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on
 - 1. Steel and iron.
 - 2. Galvanized metal.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.

RA-336

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.

C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.

- a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
- b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.

- a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.

RA-337

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Benjamin Moore
 2. Sherwin Williams
 3. Dulux
 4. Duron
 5. Glidden
 6. Pratt and Lambert
 7. Wolf Gordon

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Colors: Exterior Architectural and Structural steel Color: Match Sherwin Williams 251-C7, SW 7069, Iron Ore.
- E. First and Second Coats: Alkyd semi-gloss enamel.

RA-338

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- B. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 1. SSPC-SP 3.

RA-339

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

RA-340

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Cement Board Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.3A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
- B. Steel and Iron Substrates:
 - 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.1D:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd enamel, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.

END OF SECTION 099113

RA-341

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Steel and iron.
 - 3. Gypsum board.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
 - 2. Section 055100 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal.
 - 3. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board"

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

RA-342

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore
 - 2. Sherwin Williams
 - 3. Duron
 - 4. Glidden
 - 5. Pratt & Lambert

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:

RA-343

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. Interior Finishes: As indicated in a color schedule.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

RA-344

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 1. SSPC-SP 3.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

RA-345

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:

1. Epoxy Floor Coating: Interior (Rooms 105,106, 108, 109, 110, 111 in main restroom building and Rooms 113 in vending Building).
 - a. Clean and Prepare floor as per coating's manufacturer's instruction.
 - b. Single Coat Application:
 - 1) Product: 1-part, self-priming epoxy floor paint, water-based, VOC compliant equal to "Epoxy Shield" by Rust-Oleum.
 - 2) Color/Finish: Battleship Grey. Satin Finish.
 - 3) Special Note: Follow coating Manufacturer's application and curing instructions.

B. Steel Substrates:

1. Alkyd System MPI INT 5.1EE:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #79.

RA-346

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #47.

C. Gypsum Board Substrates:

1. Latex over Latex Sealer System:

- a. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3) Eggshell., MPI #52.

END OF SECTION 099123

RA-347

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 099300 - STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and application of wood stains and transparent finishes on the following substrates:
 - 1. Exterior Substrates:
 - a. Exposed glued-laminated beams and columns.
 - b. Exposed framing.
 - 2. Interior Substrates:
 - a. Exposed glued-laminated beams and columns.
 - b. Exposed framing.
 - c. Dressed lumber (finish carpentry or woodwork).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for stains and transparent finishes on concrete floors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

RA-348

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required.
 - 1. Submit Samples on representative samples of actual wood substrates, **8 inches (200 mm)** square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to finish system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Stains and Transparent Finishes: 5 percent, but not less than **1 gal. (3.8 L)** of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each finish system indicated and each color selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of finish system and substrate.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least **100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m)**.
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of stain color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary stain color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional stain colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

RA-349

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply finishes when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Cabot's Australian Timber Oil Wood Finish 19400 Series or comparable products by one of the following:
 - 1. Sherwin Williams
 - 2. Benjamin Moore

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

RA-350

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior stains and finishes applied at project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base.
 - 1. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
 - 2. Shellacs, Clear: VOC not more than 730 g/L.
 - 3. Stains: VOC not more than 275 g/L.
 - 4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.

- D. Stain Colors: Transparent, to match Cabot's Australian Timber Oil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Exterior Wood Substrates: 15 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.

- C. Maximum Moisture Content of Interior Wood Substrates: 10 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.

- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

- E. Proceed with finish application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Beginning finish application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
 - 2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.

RA-351

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

C. Exterior Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - a. For solid hide stained wood, stain edges and ends after priming.
 - b. For varnish-coated stained wood, stain edges and ends and prime with varnish. Prime undersides and backsides with varnish.
3. Countersink steel nails, if used, and fill with putty or plastic wood filler tinted to final color. Sand smooth when dried.

D. Interior Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Apply wood filler paste to open-grain woods, as defined in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual," to produce smooth, glasslike finish.
3. Sand surfaces exposed to view and dust off.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dry.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
1. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
 2. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
 3. Do not apply finishes over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

RA-352

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR WOOD-FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Substrates: Glued-laminated construction.

- 1. Varnish System [**MPI EXT 6.1K**]:
 - a. Prime Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, with UV inhibitor, exterior, toned flat (MPI Gloss Level 1).
 - 1) Cabot; Australian Timber Oil Wood Finish.

- B. Wood Substrates: Exposed framing.

- 1. Varnish System:
 - a. Prime Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, with UV inhibitor, exterior, toned flat (MPI Gloss Level 1).
 - 1) Cabot; Australian Timber Oil Wood Finish.

3.6 INTERIOR WOOD -FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Substrates: Glued-laminated construction.

- 1. Alkyd Varnish System:
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd, sanding sealer, clear.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1).
 - 1) Cabot; Australian Timber Oil Wood Finish.

- B. Wood Substrates: Exposed framing.

- 1. Alkyd Varnish System:
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd, sanding sealer, clear[, **MPI #102**].
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1).
 - 1) Cabot; Australian Timber Oil Wood Finish.

RA-353

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

C. Wood Substrates: wood board paneling.

1. Alkyd Varnish System:

- a. Prime Coat: Alkyd, sanding sealer, clear.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Varnish matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1).

1) Cabot; Australian Timber Oil Wood Finish.

END OF SECTION 099300

RA-354

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 101200 - DISPLAY CASES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Display cases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Display Case: Glazed cabinet with tackboard panel back surface and.
- B. Tackboard Panel: A material for holding push-pins or tacks typically consisting of a facing; such as fabric, vinyl, or cork; adhered to a substrate; such as fiberboard, hardboard, particleboard.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for display cases. Include furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For display cases.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show location of seams and joints in tackboard panels.
 - 3. Include sections of typical trim members.
 - 4. Include diagrams for wiring of illuminated display cases.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; not less than **8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm)** for tackboard panels and **6 inches (150 mm)** long for trim with factory finish.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

RA-355

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Include Samples of tackboard panels and factory-finished trim involving color finish selection.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish for the following.

1. Tackboard Panel: Not less than 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), with facing and substrate indicated for final Work. Include one panel for each type, color, and texture required.
2. Trim: 6-inch-(150-mm-) long sections of each trim profile [including corner section].

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For [fabrics][tackboard panels], for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For display cases to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install display cases for indoor installations until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain display cases from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Electrical Components: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

RA-356

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 DISPLAY CASE <Insert drawing designation>

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Platinum Visual Systems or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Platinum Visual Systems or approved equal.
- C. Surface-Mounted Display Case: Factory-fabricated display case; with finished interior, and glazed doors at front.
 - 1. Construction: Vinyl surface to be Type II self-healing.
 - 2. Core Material: 1/4" natural cork.
 - 3. Backing Material: 1/4" medium density fiberboard.
 - 4. Metal Trim: 6063 aluminum alloy with a T5 temper.
 - 5. Color: To match anodized aluminum storefront system.
 - 6. Display Case Base: No base, for wall mounting.
- D. Glazed Hinged Doors: Tempered glass; set in frame matching cabinet material and finish. Equip each door with full-height continuous hinge and cylinder lock with two keys.
 - 1. Thickness: Not less than 1/4" thick.
 - 2. Number of Doors: Two.
- E. Back Panel: Natural-cork tackboard panel <Insert designation>.
- F. Size: 72 inches wide, by 48 inches high, by 3 inches deep

2.4 TACKBOARD PANELS

- A. Natural-Cork Tackboard Panel <Insert designation>: 1/4-inch-(6-mm-)thick, natural-cork sheet factory laminated to 1/4-inch-(6-mm-)thick particleboard backing.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Natural-Cork Sheet: Seamless, single-layer, compressed fine-grain cork sheet; bulletin board quality; face sanded for natural finish.
- B. Clear Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality Q3, with exposed edges seamed before tempering.
- C. Fasteners: Provide screws, bolts, and other fastening devices made from same material as items being fastened, except provide hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or

RA-357

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

aluminum fasteners for exterior applications. Provide types, sizes, and lengths to suit installation conditions. Use security fasteners where exposed to view.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate display cases to requirements indicated for dimensions, design, and thickness and finish of materials.
- B. Use metals and shapes of thickness and reinforcing required to produce flat surfaces, and to impart strength for size, design, and application indicated.
- C. Fabricate cabinets and door frames with reinforced corners, mitered to a hairline fit, with no exposed fasteners.
- D. Fabricate shelf standards plumb and at heights to align shelf brackets for level shelves.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation of illuminated units.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for proper backing for display cases.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

RA-358

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.

- 1. Mounting Height: 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished floor to top of cabinet.

- B. Surface-Mounted Display Cases: Attach units to wall surfaces with concealed clips, hangers, or grounds fastened at not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Secure tops and bottoms of display cases to walls.

- C. Comply with requirements specified elsewhere for connecting illuminated display cases.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors to operate smoothly without warp or bind and so contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged areas.

END OF SECTION 101200

RA-359

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 102113 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Stainless-steel toilet compartments configured as **[toilet enclosures]**, **[entrance screens]**, [and] **[urinal screens]**.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for supports that attach floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments to overhead structural system.
- 2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking and overhead support of floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments.
- 3. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 1. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
- 2. Show locations of reinforcements for compartment-mounted grab bars.
- 3. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

- 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for units, prepared on **6-inch-(152-mm)-square** Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
- 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.

RA-360

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements in GSA's CID-A-A-60003, "Partitions, Toilets, Complete."
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities" and ICC/ANSI A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- C. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

2.2 STAINLESS-STEEL UNITS.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Metpar-Dorian Privacy Stall Type FT700D, Floor Mounted Stainless Steel #301/304 series in #4 finish or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Metpar
 - 2. Bradley Corp.
 - 3. Bobrick
 - 4. AMPCO
- C. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor anchored overhead braced

RA-361

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Urinal-Screen Style: Floor anchored.
- E. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Seamless, metal facing sheets pressure laminated to core material; with continuous, interlocking molding strip or lapped-and-formed edge closures; corners secured by welding or clips and exposed welds ground smooth. **[Provide with no-sightline system.]** Exposed surfaces shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, telegraphing of core material, or other imperfections.
1. Core Material: Manufacturer's standard sound-deadening honeycomb of resin-impregnated kraft paper in thickness required to provide finished thickness of **1 inch (25 mm)** for doors and panels and **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** for pilasters.
 2. Grab-Bar Reinforcement: Provide concealed internal reinforcement for grab bars mounted on units.
 3. Tapping Reinforcement: Provide concealed reinforcement for tapping (threading) at locations where machine screws are used for attaching items to units.
- F. Urinal-Screen Construction:
1. Flat-Panel Urinal Screen: Matching panel construction.
- G. Facing Sheets and Closures: Stainless-steel sheet of nominal thicknesses as follows:
1. Pilasters, Unbraced at One End: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)**.
 2. Panels: **[Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.031 inch (0.79 mm)]****[0.038 inch (0.95 mm)]**.
 3. Doors: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than **0.031 inch (0.79 mm)**.
 4. Flat-Panel Urinal Screens: Thickness matching the panels.
- H. Pilaster **[Shoes]** [and] **[Sleeves (Caps)]**: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than **0.031-inch (0.79-mm)** nominal thickness and **3 inches (76 mm)** high, finished to match hardware.
- I. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of **[material matching the thickness and construction of pilasters]**, **[1-3/4-inch-(44-mm)-square, aluminum tube with satin finish]**, [or] **<Insert requirement>**; with shoe **[and sleeve (cap)]** matching that on the pilaster.
- J. Brackets (Fittings):
1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets; **[chrome-plated zamac]****[clear-anodized aluminum]****[stainless steel]****[chrome-plated brass]**.
 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- K. Stainless-Steel Finish: No. 4 bright, directional polish on exposed faces. Protect exposed surfaces from damage by application of strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.

RA-362

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard design, heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.
1. Material: Chrome-plated zamac.
 2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees.
 3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard recessed latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
 4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
 5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
 6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel or chrome-plated steel or brass, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Floor-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- B. Urinal-Screen Posts: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment at **[tops and]** bottoms of posts. Provide shoes **[and sleeves (caps)]** at posts to conceal anchorage.
- C. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide **24-inch-(610-mm-)**wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and **36-inch-(914-mm-)**wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum **32-inch-(813-mm-)**wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

RA-363

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels: **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
 - b. Panels and Walls: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
 - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than **2 inches (51 mm)** into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- C. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113

RA-364

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 104250 - Signs

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Interior aluminum plaques and aluminum letters.

B. Provide signage as indicated on the signage schedules.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit for each type of sign specified, including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show fabrication and erection of signs. Include plans, elevations, and large-scale sections of typical members and other components. Show anchors, grounds, layout, reinforcement, accessories, and installation details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Metal Custom Room Signs: Products of the following manufacturers or approved equal, provided they comply with requirements of the contract documents, will be among those considered acceptable (colors shall match those specified):

1. Sign-A-Rama; (919) 773-8014
2. Best Manufacturing Co.
3. Accusign, Inc.; (919) 872-2008

2.2 RAISED LETTER SIGNS

A. Base Material: Aluminum plate with brushed and polished mill finish (Sign Plaques):

1. Total Thickness: 1/2 and 1/4 inch.
2. Height: 1.5 to 7.5 inches.
3. Edges: Square room title with male/female caricatures on top.

B. Raised Character size and Style: Routed and painted aluminum:

RA-365

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Comply with applicable provisions of 2012 NC Building Code, Chapter 11, Accessibility, including International Symbol of Accessibility (restrooms, Family), and ANSI/ICC A117.1, including Tactile Characters and Braille.
2. Character Color: Black
3. Character Thickness: 1/32 inch minimum raised letters.
4. Height: 5/8 inch minimum.
5. Edges: Square.
6. Character Font: Calibri
7. Character Case: Upper case only.

2.3 INDIVIDUAL METAL LETTERS

A. Material: Aluminum plate with brushed mill finish:

1. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
2. Height: 9 inches & 12 inches
 - a. All individual metal letters to be 9 inches in height except sign indicated on 1/A200. Sign to be 12 inches in height.
3. Edges: Square

B. Character Styles:

1. Character Font: Calibri
2. Character Case: Title case only and solid arrows.
3. Surface mount to Beadboard panels.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mounting Hardware: Stainless steel or aluminum screws and double sided tape, permanent adhesive.
- B. Provide surface mounting for individual interior letters; 2-sets on the Beadboard panels.

2.5 SIGN SCHEDULE:

A. Sign custom aluminum plaques shall read as follows:

1. Location/Room No. - Quantity
 - a. FAMILY ROOM KNOCK BEFORE ENTRY** - 1
 - b. WOMEN* - 1
 - c. MEN* - 1
 - d. STORAGE - 2
 - e. ELECTRICAL - 1

RA-366

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. *Provide the male and female caricature at signs noted above with aluminum figure, mount to steel column adjacent to the doorway.
3. **Provide both caricatures (male & female) at signs noted above with aluminum figure, mount to wall 2" from the door frame.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Locate sign units and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of the type described and in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Install signs level, plumb, and at the height indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion or other defects in appearance.
3. Install project sign in locations indicated and using mounting methods indicated.

B. Aluminum Plaques and Individual Letters:

1. Mount plaques using the standard method recommended by the manufacturer for the type of wall surface indicated (stainless steel or aluminum screws and double sided tape).
2. Concealed mounting: Use double-sided foam tape and mount plaques at 60" above the floor adjacent to doors 2" from the latch side of the jamb for plaques and center individual letters as indicated.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to the manufacturer's instructions. Protect units from damage until acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 104250

RA-367

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguishers.

- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET:

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- FIRE PROTECTION 104413
CABINETS

RA-368

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
2. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide JI Industries, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. JI Industries, Inc.
 - b. Kidde Fyrnetics
 - c. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.

- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

- C. Cabinet Material: Aluminum sheet.

- D. Recessed Cabinet:
 1. Trimless with Hidden Flange: Flange of same metal and finish as box overlaps surrounding wall finish and is concealed from view by an overlapping door.

- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Aluminum sheet.

- F. Door Material: Aluminum sheet.

- G. Door Style: Flush opaque panel, frameless, with no exposed hinges.

- H. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 1. Provide projecting door pull and friction latch.
 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

- I. Accessories:
 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 2. Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
 3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words " FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Type A, Die Cut.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Black.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

- J. Materials:

RA-369

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Aluminum: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, with strength and durability characteristics of not less than Alloy 6063-T5 for aluminum sheet. **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)** for extruded shapes.
 - a. Finish: Color anodic.
 - b. Color: Charcoal Grey to match structure.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
 4. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

RA-370

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: **Install fire-protection specialties in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.** above finished floor to top of cabinet.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
 - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification: Apply lettering at locations described.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

RA-371

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

RA-372

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

RA-373

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. JI Industries, Inc.
 - b. Kiddie Fyrnetics
 - c. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
 - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Aluminum Container: UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, **5-lb (2.3-kg)** nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-aluminum container.

RA-374

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS:

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. JL Industries, Inc.
 - b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
 - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
 - a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

RA-375

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Buncombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for General Construction of I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Service Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans ,Site Plans ,Site Utility Plans and Specifications, and in coordination with (NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures Dated January 2018) , Project Roadway Plans, Site Plans, and Site Utility Plans and when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for “Each”- "General Construction of Rest Area Service Building” and “Each”- “General Construction of Rest Area Vending Building”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work of General Construction of the Rest Area Building and General Construction of the Vending Building, including but not limited to Building Site and Foundation Preparation, Concrete Footings / Concrete Slabs and furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of General Construction of Buildings.

Payment will be made under:

"GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING” EACH

"GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA VENDING BUILDING” EACH

RA-376

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

RA-377

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 2. Split phase.
 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

RA-378

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rubber union connector packless expansion joints.
2. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
3. Externally pressurized metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
4. Alignment guides and anchors.
5. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

RA-379

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Rubber Union Connector Expansion Joints [**RUEJ-01**] <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Material: Twin reinforced-rubber spheres[**with external restraining cables**].
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: [**150 psig at 170 deg F (1035 kPa at 77 deg C)**] <Insert value>, unless otherwise indicated.
4. End Connections for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded.

- B. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints [**FHEJ-01**] <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with [**solder-joint**] <Insert type> end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with **450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C)** and **340 psig at 450 deg F (2340 kPa at 232 deg C)** ratings.
5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Copper-alloy fittings with [**threaded**] <Insert type> end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with **300 psig at 70 deg F (2070 kPa at 21 deg C)** and **225 psig at 450 deg F (1550 kPa at 232 deg C)** ratings.
6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.

RA-380

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with **450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C)** and **325 psig at 600 deg F (2250 kPa at 315 deg C)** ratings.
7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150)**: Carbon-steel fittings with [**flanged**] [**welded**] end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with **200 psig at 70 deg F (1380 kPa at 21 deg C)** and **145 psig at 600 deg F (1000 kPa at 315 deg C)** ratings.
- C. Externally Pressurized Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints [**EPEJ-01**] **<Insert drawing designation>**:
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] [**200 psig (1379 kPa)**] [**300 psig (2068 kPa)**] **<Insert value>**, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Description:
 - a. Totally enclosed, externally pressurized, multi-ply, stainless-steel bellows isolated from fluid flow by an internal pipe sleeve.
 - b. Carbon-steel housing.
 - c. Drain plugs and lifting lug for **NPS 3 (DN 80)** and larger.
 - d. Bellows shall have operating clearance between the internal pipe sleeves and the external shrouds.
 - e. Joints shall be supplied with a built-in scale to confirm the starting position and operating movement.
 - f. Joint Axial Movement: [**4 inches (100 mm)**] [**6 inches (150 mm)**] [**8 inches (200 mm)**] **<Insert compression limit>** of compression and [**0.75 inch (19 mm)**] [**1 inch (25 mm)**] [**2 inches (50 mm)**] **<Insert extension limit>** of extension.
 4. Permanent Locking Bolts: Set locking bolts to maintain joint lengths during installation. Temporary welding tabs that are removed after installation in lieu of locking bolts are not acceptable.
 5. End Connection Configuration: Flanged; one raised, fixed and one floating flange.

2.3 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides [**AG-01**] **<Insert drawing designation>**:
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.
- B. Anchor Materials:

RA-381

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least [**five**] <Insert number> pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least [**four**] <Insert number> pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least [**four**] <Insert number> pipe fittings, including tee in main.

RA-382

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install [**one**] [**two**] guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than [**four**] <**Insert number**> pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 220516

RA-383

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
 - 3. The Metraflex Company.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.

RA-384

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

RA-385

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

RA-386

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

RA-387

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

RA-388

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

RA-389

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. WATTS.
 - b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
 - d. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Plastic, 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 3/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: [**Mixture of graphite and glycerin.**]

2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

RA-390

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
 - e. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass or plastic.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

RA-391

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Building water service entrance into building.
- K. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.
- L. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- M. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.2 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
 - 1. Plastic case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at building water service entrance into the building shall be the following:
 - 1. Plastic case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.3 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 200 deg F and 0 to plus 93 deg C.

RA-392

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
 - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be[**one of**] the following:
 - 1. Sealed, direct mounted, plastic case.
 - 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
 - 1. Sealed, direct mounted, plastic case.
 - 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

END OF SECTION 220519

RA-393

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Brass ball valves.
 - 2. Bronze ball valves.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 3. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
 - 4. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:

RA-394

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.

H. Valves in Insulated Piping:

1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. KITZ Corporation.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. WATTS.

RA-395

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.

3.3 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe **NPS 2** and Smaller:
 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

RA-396

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Brass ball valves, two-piece with full port and brass trim.
3. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and bronze or brass trim.

END OF SECTION 220523.12

RA-397

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220523.13 - BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
2. Chainwheels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
2. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
3. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.

D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

F. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
2. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to gear, handlever, or stem; of size and with chain for mounting height, according to "Valve Installation" Article.

RA-398

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- G. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.

2.2 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABZ Valve and Controls.
 - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Flo Fab Inc.
 - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - e. Bray.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

2.3 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain, and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to handwheels.
 1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc or epoxy coating.
 2. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

RA-399

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.3 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 250 CWP, EPDM seat, ductile-iron disc.

END OF SECTION 220523.13

RA-400

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze swing check valves.
2. Iron swing check valves.
3. Iron swing check valves with closure control.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.

D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

RA-401

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. Nibco, Inc.
 - d. Stockham.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

2.3 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. Nibco, Inc.
 - d. Stockham.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

RA-402

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hammond Valve.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. Nibco, Inc.
 - d. Stockham.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed exterior lever and spring.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install swing check valves for proper direction of flow in horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

RA-403

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. End Connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded or soldered.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.
 - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.

3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
 - 2. For valves installed in vertical orientation: Iron swing check valves with closure control, lever and spring, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.

END OF SECTION 220523.14

RA-404

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220523.15 - GATE VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze gate valves.
2. Iron gate valves.
3. Chainwheels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G[**and NSF 372**].

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G[**and NSF 372**] for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

RA-405

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. RS Valves in Insulated Piping: With **2-inch (50-mm)** stem extensions.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Bronze Gate Valves, NRS, Class 125:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
 - c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Bronze Gate Valves, RS, Class 125:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
 - c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Iron Gate Valves, NRS, Class 125:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
 - c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.

RA-406

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Iron Gate Valves, OS&Y, Class 125:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
 - c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.4 CHAINWHEELS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain[, **and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to hand wheels**].
 1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.[**Include zinc or epoxy coating.**]
 2. Chain: Hot-dip galvanized steel of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for gate valves [**NPS 4 (DN 100)**] **<Insert size>** and larger and more than [**96 inches (2400 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** above floor. Extend chains to [**60 inches (1520 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** above finished floor.

RA-407

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Use gate valves for shutoff service only.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

3.4 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS)

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, [NRS] [RS], Class 125 with [soldered] [threaded] ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valves, [NRS] [OS&Y], Class 125 with flanged ends.

3.5 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG (1035 TO 1380 kPa))

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, [NRS] [RS], Class 125 with [soldered] [threaded] ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valves, [NRS] [OS&Y], Class 125 with flanged ends.

3.6 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, [NRS] [RS], Class 125 with [soldered] [threaded] ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valves, [NRS] [OS&Y], Class 125 with flanged ends.

END OF SECTION 220523.15

RA-408

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe positioning systems.
6. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Equipment supports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

RA-409

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

RA-410

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

RA-411

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

RA-412

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

RA-413

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting", Section 099123 "Interior Painting", and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings".
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

RA-414

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 3. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 4. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 5. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 6. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 7. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

RA-415

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

RA-416

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

RA-417

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - d. Seton Identification Products.
 - 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 3. Letter Color: White.
 - 4. Background Color: Black.
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.

RA-418

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Brady Corporation.
 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 3. LEM Products Inc.
 4. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Red.
- D. Background Color: Yellow.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

RA-419

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.
 - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - 3. LEM Products Inc.
 - 4. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.2 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings".
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.

RA-420

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping
 - a. Background: Safety green.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Safety purple.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

END OF SECTION 220553

RA-421

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 3. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 4. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 5. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 6. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

RA-422

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. Knauf Insulation.
 - c. Owens Corning.
 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, maximum k-value of 0.23 at mean temperature of 75 Deg. F. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

RA-423

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

RA-424

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Vimasco Corporation.
- 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
- 5. Color: White or gray.

B. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

RA-425

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H.B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation.
 - c. UltraKote Products.

RA-426

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B 209**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.

 - 2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - 3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

 - 4. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - 5. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - c. Tee covers.
 - d. Flange and union covers.
 - e. End caps.
 - f. Beveled collars.
 - g. Valve covers.
 - h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

- C. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
 - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.

2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

RA-427

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - d. Knauf Insulation.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - d. Knauf Insulation.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

RA-428

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MVG Molded Products.
 - b. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Truebro.
 - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

RA-429

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.

RA-430

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

RA-431

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION
- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve

RA-432

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

RA-433

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER PREFORMED PIPE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

RA-434

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, two locations of threaded valves, and two locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

RA-435

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick for piping NPS 2 and less; 2 inches thick for piping greater than NPS 2.
- B. Domestic Water: Insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- C. Stormwater and Overflow: Insulation shall be [**one of**] the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 3. Polyolefin: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
- D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies: Insulation shall be [**one of**] the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 3. Polyolefin: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
- E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities: Insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- F. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Mineral-fiber, preformed pipe insulation, Type I, [**1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.

RA-436

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Water Piping: Insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- B. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Insulation shall be [**one of**] the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: [**2 inches (50 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: [**2 inches (50 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.

3.12 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, [**2 inches (50 mm)**] <Insert dimension> thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Piping, Exposed: Aluminum, smooth, 0.016 inch thick.

3.14 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

RA-437

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221113 - FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
 - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
 - 3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.

RA-438

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.
- F. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.
- G. All materials in contact with potable water shall be in conformance with Section 1417 of the Safe Drinking Water Act.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than three days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. For installation in the building: Hard copper pipe, ASTM B88, Type L, water pipe, drawn temper.
 - 1. Sweated Copper Fittings: Conforming to ASTM B88 for type and temper.
 - 2. Cast Copper Fittings: Conforming to ASTM B61 or ASTM B62.
- B. For buried piping: Soft annealed copper pipe or tube, ASTM B88, Type K.
 - 1. Flared or Compression Fittings: Conforming to ANSI/AWWA C800 and local plumbing codes.

RA-439

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series.
- C. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
- D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
 - 1. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.

2.4 GATE VALVES

- A. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
 - b. Flomatic Corporation.
 - c. Mueller Co.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves (for buried service):
 - a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and 2 inch square operating nuts.
 - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
 - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
 - 3) End Connections: Mechanical joint.

RA-440

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- 4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
 - 5) O-ring seals.
 - 6) Valves shall open by turning counter clockwise.
3. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, and bronze stem.
 - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
 - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
 - 3) End Connections: Flanged.

B. Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hammond Valve.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
2. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:
 - a. Description: Bronze body and bonnet and bronze stem.
 - 1) Standards: ASTM B62.
 - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
 - 3) End Connections: Threaded.
 - 4) Tee head operating nuts and solid wedges.

2.5 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
 - b. Flowserve Corporation.
 - c. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - d. Mueller Co.
2. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.

RA-441

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Standard: MSS SP-60.
 - b. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
 - c. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
- B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.
- 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.

2.6 CORPORATION VALVES AND CURB VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Amcast Industrial Corporation.
 - c. Mueller Co.
- B. Service-Saddle Assemblies: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
- 1. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
 - 2. Corporation Valve: Bronze body and ground-key plug, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
 - 3. Manifold: Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.
- C. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
- D. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches in diameter.

RA-442

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.

2.7 WATER METERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - b. Hays Fluid Controls.
 - c. Neptune Technology Group Inc.
 - d. Sensus Metering Systems.

B. Displacement-Type Water Meters:

1. Description: With bronze main case.
 - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
 - b. Registration: Flow in [gallons (liters)] [cubic feet (cubic meters)].

C. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C702.
 - b. Registration: Flow in [gallons (liters)] [cubic feet (cubic meters)].

2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Flowmatic Corporation.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Wilkins.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013 and AWWA C511.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum at design flow rate.
5. Size: NPS 3.
6. Design Flow Rate: 127 gpm.

RA-443

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

7. Body: Ductile iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. End Connections: Flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
9. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
10. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.

2.9 WATER METER BOXES

- A. Description: Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
 1. Option: Base section may be cast-iron, PVC, clay, or other pipe.
- B. Description: Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in top cover; and with separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Refer to Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
- B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
- D. Flanges, unions, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping.
- E. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be hard drawn copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

RA-444

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Water Meter Box Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be same as underground water-service piping.
- G. Aboveground Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 and larger underground installation. Use UL/FMG, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation.
- B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves with valve box.
 - 2. Use the following for valves in aboveground:
 - a. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, rising stem.
 - b. Gate Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated.

3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping-system common requirements.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
- B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
- C. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
 - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
 - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
 - 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.

RA-445

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- D. Make connections NPS 2 and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
1. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
 2. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
 3. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
 4. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
 5. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
 6. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.
- E. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
1. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- G. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration.
- H. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- I. Sleeves are specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- K. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- 3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Make pipe joints according to the following:
1. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

RA-446

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure.

3.7 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
 2. Locking mechanical joints.
 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
 4. Bolted flanged joints.
 5. Heat-fused joints.
 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- C. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.

3.9 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.
- B. Water Meters: Install displacement-type water meters, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller, in meter boxes with shutoff valves on water meter inlets. Include valves on water meter outlets and valved bypass around meters unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.

RA-447

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Water Meters: Install compound-type water meters, NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger, in meter vaults. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets and valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.

3.10 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.

3.11 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.
- B. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 2 inches above surface.

3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
- B. Connect water-distribution piping to utility water main. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
- C. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water piping.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
 - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts (1.89 L) per hour per 100

RA-448

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.

- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for identifying devices.

3.15 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
 - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
 - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.
 - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 221113

RA-449

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Direct-buried preinsulated soldered copper piping system.
3. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
4. Piping joining materials.
5. Transition fittings.
6. Dielectric fittings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For piping, tubing, transition fittings, and dielectric fittings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- ##### B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- ##### A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- ##### B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G.
- ##### C. Comply with NSF Standard 372 for low lead.

RA-450

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 COPPER PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Pipe: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Sweated Copper Fittings: Conforming to ASTM B88 for pipe type and temper.
- C. Cast Copper Fittings: Conforming to ASTM B61 or ASTM B62.
- D. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123.
 - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- E. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Cast-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end, conforming to ASTM B16.18 and ASTM B61 or ASTM B62.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or cast-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end, conforming to ASTM B16.18 and ASTM B61 or ASTM B62.
- F. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 and ASTM B61 or ASTM B62.
 - 2. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

2.3 DIRECT-BURIED PREINSULATED SOLDERED COPPER PIPING

- A. General: Direct buried piping shall be Rovanco Soldered Copper system or equal, Type K hard drawn copper tubing conforming to ASTM B-88.
- B. Insulation and Jacketing: Carrier pipe insulation shall be high-temperature foam insulation, k factor of 0.165, density of 2 PCF (pounds per cubic foot), closed cell content of 90%, compressive strength of 35 psi, and carrier temperature of 300°F. Insulation shall conform to ASTM standard D1621, 1622, 1623, 2126, 2842, 2856 and C518-91, completely filling the annular space between the carrier and the jacketing. Minimum insulation thickness shall be according to Table 1 below. The jacket shall be high-impact PVC Class 12454-B compound conforming to ASTM 1784, Type 1, Grade 1. Seal the jacket to make the system completely watertight. Minimum jacket thickness shall be according to Table 1 below.

RA-451

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

TABLE 1 – INSULATION AND JACKET THICKNESS

Nominal Pipe Size (inches)	Minimum Insulation Thickness (Inches)	Jacket Size (Inches)	Jacket Thickness (Mills)
1/2	1.69	4	60
3/4	1.57	4	60
1	1.44	4	60
1-1/4	1.32	4	60
1-1/2	1.19	4	60
2	1.94	6	70

- C. Fittings and Field Joints: All fittings shall be wrought copper in conformance with job specifications and shall be insulated and jacketed with materials supplied by the system supplier and as per manufacturer's standard procedures.

2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint or Push-On Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
3. Manufacture fittings with a cement mortar lining and a seal coat in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4.

RA-452

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 - 3. Manufacture fittings with a cement mortar lining and a seal coat in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4.

- D. When required or necessary, use approved type joint restraint devices with a minimum working pressure rating of 200 psi and a factor of safety of 2.

2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

- B. Dielectric Unions:

RA-453

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Jomar Valve.
 - d. WATTS.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. WATTS.
 - c. Wilkins.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.

RA-454

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Precision Plumbing Products.
-
- 2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - 3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - 4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - 5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - 6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- F. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

RA-455

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- I. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- K. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- L. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- M. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- O. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- P. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- Q. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- S. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Installation of Direct-Buried Copper Piping:
 - 1. Joining Method: Straight lengths of pipe shall be joined by solder connection.
 - 2. End Seals: Each length of pre-insulated pipe shall be fitted with a watertight mastic end seal at jacket and pipe surfaces. All field cuts shall be sealed with a field-applied end seal.
 - 3. Anchors: All piping shall be anchored per the system supplier's recommendations.

RA-456

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Backfill: Backfill shall be tampered compactly in place so as to assure a stable surface. Do not use rock in the first 12 inches of backfill. 24 inches, top of pipe to grade, of compacted fill shall be H-20 Highway Loading.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

RA-457

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1/2 through NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

RA-458

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Piping Tests:

RA-459

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

RA-460

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller shall be the following:
 1. Hard drawn copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following.
 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:

RA-461

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

END OF SECTION 221116

RA-462

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Hose bibbs.
8. Wall hydrants.
9. Drain valves.
10. Water-hammer arresters.
11. Trap-seal primer valves.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 223200 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
4. Section 224713 "Drinking Fountains" for water filters for water coolers.
5. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
6. Section 224723 "Remote Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Operation and maintenance data.

RA-463

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
5. Finish: Chrome plated.

- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, at design flow rate of 127 gpm.
4. Size: NPS 3.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; Ductile iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
8. Accessories:

RA-464

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
- b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. WATTS.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Size: <Insert NPS>.
5. Design Flow Rate: <Insert gpm>.
6. Design Inlet Pressure: <Insert psig>.
7. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: <Insert psig>.
8. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller;
9. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
10. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller.

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

RA-465

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Leonard Valve Company.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: <Insert deg F>.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: <Insert gpm>.
10. Selected Valve Flow Rate at 45-psig Pressure Drop: <Insert gpm>.
11. Pressure Drop at Design Flow Rate: <Insert psig>.
12. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
13. Piping Finish: Chrome plated.
14. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for recessed surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.062 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

RA-466

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.9 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb. Install hose bibb in secure lockable box.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.10 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.11 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. WATTS.

RA-467

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
- 3. Type: Metal bellows or copper tube with piston.
- 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.12 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
- 4. Body: Bronze.
- 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
- 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
- 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

RA-468

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- D. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- F. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- G. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker and reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

RA-469

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 221119

RA-470

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. High Efficiency Wet Rotor Circulation Pumps

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a minimum 18-month warranty from project substantial completion on materials and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HIGH EFFICIENCY WET ROTOR CIRCULATION PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
 - 2. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
 - 3. Bell & Gossett (Basis of Design: Ecocirc XL).

RA-471

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Description: Pumps shall be a wet rotor inline pump, in lead-free bronze body construction specifically designed for quiet operation. Pumps shall be suitable for operation at 230°F and 175 psig working pressure. The pump internals shall be capable of being serviced without disturbing piping connections. Pumps shall be equipped with a watertight seal to prevent leakage.
- C. Pump Construction:
1. Pump volute shall be of a lead-free bronze design. Connection style on pumps shall be flanged.
 2. Flange dimensions shall be HVAC industry standard 2 or 4 bolt sizes.
 3. Motor shall be a synchronous, permanent-magnet motor (PM) motor and tested with the pump as one unit. Conventional induction motors are not acceptable.
 4. Each motor shall have an Integrated Variable Frequency Drive tested as one unit by the manufacturer.
 5. Integrated motor protection shall be verified by UL to protect the pump against over/under voltage, over temperature of motor and/or electronics, over current, locked rotor and dry run (no load condition).
 6. Pump shall have MODBUS or BACnet connections built into the VFD as standard options.
 7. Analog inputs (0-10V and 4-20 mA) shall be built into the VFD.
 8. Pumps shall be UL 778 listed and bear the UL Listed Mark for USA and Canada with on-board thermal overload protection.
 9. Each pump shall be factory performance tested before shipment.

2.2 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
 2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250.
 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
 6. Power Requirement: 120 VAC. Coordinate requirement with Division 26 contractor.
 7. Settings: Start pump at 110 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install pumps in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

RA-472

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Connect thermostats to pumps that they control.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

RA-473

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 221123

RA-474

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 50-foot head of water.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

RA-475

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 - 2. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.

RA-476

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
 - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
 - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.

RA-477

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- N. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- O. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- P. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 2. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

RA-478

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" and Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

RA-479

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 2. NPS 4: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 3. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 2. NPS 4: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 96 inches.
- J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

RA-480

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for [**backwater valves**] [**cleanouts**] [**and**] [**drains**] specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 6. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
 - a. Provide union for each connection.
 - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.

RA-481

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
 - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
 - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
 - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
 - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

RA-482

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

RA-483

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cleanouts.
2. Roof flashing assemblies.
3. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.
2. Section 224300 "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for plaster sink interceptors.
3. Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for storm drainage piping and piping specialties outside the building.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

RA-484

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Raised-head, brass or cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for heavy-duty, adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Heavy-duty, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads or cast-iron plug.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

RA-485

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
 - a. Brass.
 - b. Countersunk or raised head.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, smooth stainless steel cover plate with screw.

2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
 - a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
 - b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
 - c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

RA-486

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564 rubber gaskets.
 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.
- B. Deep-Seal Traps:
1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- D. Air-Gap Fittings:
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Sleeve Flashing Device:
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
 2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- F. Stack Flashing Fittings:
1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Vent Caps:
1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.

RA-487

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

H. Expansion Joints:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Section 076200, Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- E. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Section 076200, Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- F. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- G. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- H. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- I. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system, including cooling coil condensate discharge.

RA-488

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- J. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- K. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- L. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- M. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- N. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- B. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- C. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- D. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- E. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

RA-489

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- G. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
 - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

RA-490

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Floor drains.
2. Trench drains.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 - d. WATTS.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

RA-491

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required.
10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Acid-resistant enamel.
11. Sediment Bucket: Required in mechanical spaces only.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Polished bronze in finished spaces, rough bronze in unfinished spaces.
14. Top Shape: Round.
15. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
16. Funnel: Not required.
17. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
18. Trap Material: Cast iron.
19. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.
20. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

B. Plastic Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Canplas LLC.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. Josam Company.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Material: PVC.
4. Seepage Flange: Required.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Sediment Bucket: Required in mechanical spaces only.
8. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze.
9. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Polished bronze in finished spaces, rough bronze in unfinished spaces.
10. Top Shape: Round.
11. Trap Material: Plastic drainage piping.
12. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

C. Trench Drains:

RA-492

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of following:
 - a. Infinity Drain.
 - b. Zurn.
 - c. ACO Drain.
2. Material: 16 gauge 304 stainless steel removable grate and channel.
3. Channel: Pre-pitched with fixed center outlet.
4. Drain: Cast iron, 2" clamp down with universal 4" clamping plate and 4"x2" eccentric reducer bushing.
5. Finish: Polished stainless steel.
6. Waterproofing Membrane: Rubber liner.
7. Accessories: Complete kit, including stainless steel grate, stainless steel fixed channel, and stainless steel threaded nipple.
8. Basis of Design: Infinity Drain Model FXED 6560 (60" length).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
 - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- C. Install trench drains in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

RA-493

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

RA-494

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Commercial, electric, storage, point-of-use, domestic-water heaters
3. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

RA-495

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Three (3) years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Five (5) years.
 - b. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Point-Of-Use, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Three (3) years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Five (5) years.
 - c. Expansion Tanks: Five (5) years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters (DWH-1 and DWH-2):
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation (Basis of Design: Model DEN-40).
 - b. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - c. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - 2. Certifications: Water heater shall be UL Listed.

RA-496

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Water heaters shall meet the standby loss requirements of the U.S. Department of Energy and the current edition of ASHRAE 90.1. Heaters shall have minimum 150 psi working pressure and be equipped with extruded high density anode rod. All internal surfaces of the heater(s) exposed to water shall be glasslined with an alkaline borosilicate composition that has been fused-to-steel by firing at a temperature range of 1400°F and 1600°F. Electric heating elements shall be medium watt density with zinc-plated copper sheath. Each element shall be controlled by an individually mounted thermostat and high temperature cutoff switch. The outer jacket shall be of baked enamel finish and shall enclose the tank with foam insulation. Electrical junction box with heavy duty terminal block shall be provided. The drain valve shall be located in the front for ease of servicing. Fully illustrated instruction manual shall be provided.
 4. Factory-Installed Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - b. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - c. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat, to setting of at least 120 deg F.
 - d. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - e. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - f. Gages: Combination temperature-and-pressure type or separate thermometer and pressure gage.
 5. Sequence of Operation: The factory installed thermostats for each heating element shall stage on the heating elements to maintain a supply water temperature of 120 degrees F (setpoint adjustable).
- B. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Point-Of-Use, Domestic-Water Heaters (DWH-3 and DWH-4):
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company (Basis of Design: Model EGSP10).
 2. Certifications: Water heaters shall be UL Listed.
 3. Water heaters shall have be equipped with a CSA/ASME rated temperature and pressure relief valve. Tank interior shall be coated with a high temperature porcelain enamel and furnished with a magnesium anode rod rigidly supported. Water heaters shall meet or exceed the energy factor requirements of ASHRAE. Tanks shall have a working pressure rating of 150 psi and shall be completely factory assembled. Water heaters shall be equipped with a copper, resistored, "screw-in" type element. Tank shall be insulated with

RA-497

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

rigid polyurethane foam insulation. Water heaters shall be equipped with a surface mounted thermostat with an integral, manual reset, high limit control.

4. Sequence of Operation: The factory-installed thermostat shall stage on the heating element to maintain a supply water temperature of 120 degrees F (setpoint adjustable).

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. AMTROL, Inc.
 - c. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Description: ASME steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
4. Minimum working pressure rating shall be 150 psig.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.1.

E. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at 25-psig- maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.

F. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

RA-498

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- G. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
- H. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- I. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.
- J. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- K. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION**

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.

RA-499

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install pressure-reducing valve with integral bypass relief valve in electric, domestic-water booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping. Set pressure-reducing valve for outlet pressure of 25 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves and water hammer arresters specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- H. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air.

RA-500

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 223300

RA-501

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Flushometer valves.
3. Toilet seats.
4. Supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves[**and electronic sensors**] to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets (WC-2): Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. TOTO USA, INC.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 2. Bowl:

RA-502

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Handicapped/elderly, complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.6 gallons per flush.
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
 - i. Color: White.
3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASME A112.4.3.
 4. Accessories: flushometer valve, toilet seat.
 5. Basis of Design: Zurn Z5665-BWL.

2.2 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS**A. Water Closets (WC-1): Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. TOTO USA, INC.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.6 gallons per flush.
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
 - i. Color: White.
3. Accessories: flushometer valve, toilet seat.
4. Support: Water closet carrier.
5. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Standard.
6. Basis of Design: Sloan Model ST-2060-A-1.28.

RA-503

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Solenoid- Actuator, Sensor-Activated, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - b. Sloan Valve Company.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Exposed sensor, concealed flushometer valve.
8. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
9. Trip Mechanism: Hard-wired, electronic sensor complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
10. Consumption: 1.6 gallons per flush.
11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
13. Transformer: 120VAC to 24VAC, 50 VA. Coordinate quantity with Electrical Contractor and requirements of flushometer valves.

2.4 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kohler Co.
 - b. TOTO USA, INC.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - d. ProFlo.
2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic.
4. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
7. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.

RA-504

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

9. Color: White.

2.5 SUPPORTS

A. Water Closet Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - b. Josam.
 - c. Mifab.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
3. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

RA-505

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

RA-506

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

RA-507

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 224213.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Urinals.
 - 2. Flushometer valves.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valve and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

- A. Urinals (U-1): Wall hung, back outlet, washout accessible.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. TOTO USA, INC.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.

RA-508

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
 - d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
 - e. Water Consumption: Low.
 - f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, back.
 - g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
 - h. Color: White.
- 3. Accessories: Flushometer Valve.
 - 4. Waste Fitting:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
 - b. Size: NPS 2.
 - 5. Support: Type I Urinal Carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
 - 6. Urinal Mounting Height: Standard.
 - 7. Basis of Design: Zurn Z5760.

2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Solenoid-Actuator, Sensor-Activated, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - b. Sloan Valve Company.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
- 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
- 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
- 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
- 7. Style: Exposed sensor, concealed flushometer valve.
- 8. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
- 9. Trip Mechanism: Hard-wired, electronic sensor complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
- 10. Consumption: 1.0 gallons per flush.
- 11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
- 12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
- 13. Transformer: 120VAC to 24VAC, 50 VA. Coordinate quantity with Electrical Contractor and requirements of flushometer valves.

RA-509

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 SUPPORTS

A. Type I Urinal Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

B. Type II Urinal Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. WATTS.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.

RA-510

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Wire flushometer valves to transformers. Coordinate with Electrical Contractor. Comply with NEC.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.

RA-511

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.16

RA-512

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.
3. Supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory L-1: Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

RA-513

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 21 inches by 18 inches.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
 - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - f. Color: White.
 - g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
3. Accessories: Faucet.
4. Support: Include rectangular, steel uprights.
5. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.
6. Basis of Design: Kohler K-2031.
- B. Lavatory L-2: Double station, solid surface, SloanStone (or equal), wall mounted.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradley.
 - b. Sloan Valve Company.
 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Nominal Size: 50-inch width.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Two holes.
 - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - f. Soap Dispenser Hole Punching: One hole.
 - g. Soap Dispenser Hole Location: Top.
 - h. Color: As selected by Architect.
 - i. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
 3. Faucet: Solar-powered, sensor-activated, electronic.
 4. Soap Dispenser: Sloan Model ESD-300 (or equal), 24VAC input. Provide transformer, 120VAC to 24VAC, 50 VA. Coordinate quantity with Electrical Contractor and dispenser requirements.
 5. Support: Include rectangular, steel uprights.
 6. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.
 7. Basis of Design: Sloan Model ELS-72000.

RA-514

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 SOLID-BRASS, SENSOR-OPERATED FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Sensor-type, single-control mixing, commercial, solid-brass valve.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Delta Faucet Company.
 - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Moen Incorporated.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - f. Sloan.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 - 3. General: Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
 - 4. Body Type: Modular one-piece construction with all concealed components above deck.
 - 5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
 - 6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - 7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
 - 8. Maximum Flow: 0.25 gallons per metering cycle.
 - 9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
 - 10. Spout: Rigid type
 - 11. Spout Outlet: Aerator spray head.
 - 12. Operation: Solar-powered, sensor activated, with 6 VDC lithium battery back-up power.
 - 13. Drain: Not part of faucet.
 - 14. Transformer: 120VAC to 24VAC, 50 VA. Coordinate quantity with Electrical Contractor and faucet requirements.
 - 15. Basis of Design: Sloan Model EAF-275.

2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.

RA-515

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Risers:
 - 1. NPS 1/2.
 - 2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.
- G. Provide soft, resilient molded vinyl supply fitting covers for ADA lavatories. Basis of Design: ProFlo PF200 Series.

2.4 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
 - 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange; with cleanout.
 - 3. Provide soft, resilient molded vinyl trap covers for ADA lavatories. Basis of Design: ProFlo PF200 Series.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

RA-516

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Seal joints between lavatories and counters and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.13

RA-517

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service sinks.
2. Mop sinks.
3. Handwash sinks.
4. Sink faucets.
5. Laminar-flow, faucet-spout outlets.
6. Supply fittings.
7. Waste fittings.
8. Supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE SINKS

- A. Service Sinks SK-1: Enameled, cast iron, trap standard mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:

RA-518

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
 - b. Type: Service sink with back.
 - c. Back: Two faucet holes.
 - d. Nominal Size: 22 by 18 inches.
 - e. Color: White.
 - f. Mounting: NPS 3 P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
 - g. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
3. Faucet: Wall-mounted, rigid spout.
 4. Support: Wall brackets and hanger plate.
 5. Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard.
 6. Basis of Design: Zurn Model Z5880.

2.2 MOP SINKS

- A. Mop Sinks MS-1 and MS-2: Precast terrazzo made of black and white marble chips cast in grey Portland cement, floor-mounted.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Just Manufacturing.
 - c. Fiat.
 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
 - b. Type: Deep compartment with 6" drop front.
 - c. Overall Dimensions: 36 inch width, 36 inch length, 12 inch depth; or 24 inch width, 24 inch length, 12 inch depth (refer to fixture schedule on drawings).
 - d. Terrazo thickness: 3 inches.
 - e. Drain: Stainless steel, cast integrally, NPS 3. Drain shall be centered in sink.
 - f. Stainless steel caps on all curbs.
 3. Faucet: See section below. Mount on wall.
 4. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in section below.
 5. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in section below.
 6. Mounting: Floor with caulking and sealant.
 7. Basis of Design: Fiat Model TSB-3002 (for MS-1); Fiat Model TSB-3000 (for MS-2).

2.3 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

RA-519

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Sink Faucets: Manual type, two-lever-handle, mixing valve.
 - 1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Delta Faucet Company.
 - 2) Kohler Co.
 - 3) Moen Incorporated.
 - 4) Sloan Valve Company.
 - 5) Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 - 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
 - 4. Body Type: Widespread.
 - 5. Body Material: Heavy duty cast brass.
 - 6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - 7. Maximum Flow Rate: 4.0 gpm.
 - 8. Handles: Lever, 3" long.
 - 9. Mounting Type: Back/wall, exposed.
 - 10. Spout Type: 10.5" long spout with adjustable top/bottom brace.
 - 11. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
 - 12. Spout Outlet: Hose thread according to ASME B1.20.7.

2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
 - 1. NPS 1/2.
 - 2. ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

RA-520

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 3 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 - 1. Size: NPS 3.
 - 2. Material: Cast iron with chrome-plated Kohler-style strainer, white epoxy coating, bottom flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- D. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

RA-521

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

RA-522

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 224713 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes drinking fountains and related components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountains.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

- A. Drinking Fountain DF-1: Stainless steel, wall mounted.

- 1. Stainless-Steel Drinking Fountains:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 2) Filtrine Manufacturing Company.
- 3) Oasis International.
- 4) Stern-Williams Co., Inc.

- 2. Standards:

- a. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
- b. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

- 3. Arrangement: Two-fountain high/low.
- 4. Type Receptor: On horizontal support.

RA-523

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Receptor Shape: Round.
6. Back Panel: Stainless-steel wall plate behind drinking fountain.
7. Bubblers: One with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
8. Maximum water flow: 0.5 gpm.
9. Control: Push button.
10. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
11. Supply Piping: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
12. Drain Piping: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 chrome-plated brass P-trap and waste.
13. Support: Accessories for wall mounting per manufacturer's installation instructions.
14. Drinking Fountain Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1 for high fountain; child for low fountain.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install off-the-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- C. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

RA-524

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224713

RA-525

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Buncombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for Plumbing Installation for the I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Service Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans / Plumbing Plans and Specifications and in coordination with ,Site Plans and Site Utility Plans, completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for “Each” -“Plumbing Installation for Rest Area Service Building” and “Each” - “Plumbing Installation for Rest Area Vending Building”. ***(Work shall include all Materials and Labor for connecting to Site Water / Sewer service, (5’) Five Feet outside the Rest Area Building and all outside Plumbing Service Connections from the Vending Building to the Rest Area Building)*** Such price and payment will be full compensation for all Building Plumbing Installation work including but not limited to furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of Building Plumbing Installation.

Payment will be made under:

" PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING" EACH

"PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING" EACH

RA-526

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230130.51 - HVAC AIR-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 181 and UL 181A for fibrous-glass ducts.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Use the existing service openings, as required for proper cleaning, at various points of the HVAC system for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
- B. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006, "Guidelines for Constructing Service Openings in HVAC Systems" Section.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006.
- B. Remove visible surface contaminants and deposits from within the HVAC system.
- C. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned:
 - 1. Air devices for supply and return air.
 - 2. Air-terminal units.
 - 3. Ductwork:
 - a. Supply-air ducts, including turning vanes, to the air-handling unit.
 - b. Return-air ducts to the air-handling unit.
 - c. Exhaust-air ducts.

RA-527

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Interior surfaces of the unit casing.
 - b. Coil surfaces compartment.
 - c. Condensate drain pans.
 - d. Fans, fan blades, and fan housings.
5. Filters and filter housings.
- D. Collect debris removed during cleaning. Ensure that debris is not dispersed outside the HVAC system during the cleaning process.
- E. Control odors and mist vapors during the cleaning and restoration process.
- F. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning. Restore them to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
- G. System components shall be cleaned so that all HVAC system components are visibly clean. On completion, all components must be returned to those settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.
- H. Clean all air-distribution devices, registers, grilles, and diffusers.
- I. Clean visible surface contamination deposits according to NADCA ACR 2006 and the following:
 1. Clean air-handling units, airstream surfaces, components, condensate collectors, and drains.
 2. Ensure that a suitable operative drainage system is in place prior to beginning wash-down procedures.
 3. Clean evaporator coils, electric heating coils, and other airstream components.
- J. Duct Systems:
 1. Create service openings in the HVAC system as necessary to accommodate cleaning.
 2. Mechanically clean duct systems specified to remove all visible contaminants so that the systems are capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
- K. Debris removed from the HVAC system shall be disposed of according to applicable Federal, state, and local requirements.
- L. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 1. Source-Removal Cleaning Methods: The HVAC system shall be cleaned using source-removal mechanical cleaning methods designed to extract contaminants from within the HVAC system and to safely remove these contaminants from the facility. No cleaning

RA-528

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

method, or combination of methods, shall be used that could potentially damage components of the HVAC system or negatively alter the integrity of the system.

- a. Use continuously operating vacuum-collection devices to keep each section being cleaned under negative pressure.
- b. Cleaning methods that require mechanical agitation devices to dislodge debris that is adhered to interior surfaces of HVAC system components shall be equipped to safely remove these devices. Cleaning methods shall not damage the integrity of HVAC system components or damage porous surface materials such as duct and plenum liners.

2. Cleaning Mineral-Fiber Insulation Components:

- a. Fibrous-glass thermal or acoustical insulation elements present in equipment or ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned with HEPA vacuuming equipment while the HVAC system is under constant negative pressure and shall not be permitted to get wet according to NADCA ACR 2006.
- b. Cleaning methods used shall not cause damage to fibrous-glass components and will render the system capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
- c. Fibrous materials that become wet shall be discarded and replaced.

M. Coil Cleaning:

1. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
2. See NADCA ACR 2006, "Coil Surface Cleaning" Section. Type 1, or Type 1 and Type 2, cleaning methods shall be used to render the coil visibly clean and capable of passing Coil Cleaning Verification (see applicable NADCA ACR 2006).
3. Coil drain pans shall be subject to NADCA ACR 2006, "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification." Ensure that condensate drain pans are operational.
4. Electric-resistance coils shall be de-energized, locked out, and tagged before cleaning.
5. Cleaning methods shall not cause any appreciable damage to, cause displacement of, inhibit heat transfer, or cause erosion of the coil surface or fins, and shall comply with coil manufacturer's written recommendations when available.
6. Rinse thoroughly with clean water to remove any latent residues.

3.3 RESTORATION

- A. Restore and repair HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and components according to NADCA ACR 2006, "Restoration and Repair of Mechanical Systems" Section.
- B. Comply with Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for duct materials, accessories, and hardware required for Work of this Section.
- C. Ensure that closures do not hinder or alter airflow.

RA-529

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. New closure materials, including insulation, shall match opened materials and shall have removable closure panels fitted with gaskets and fasteners.
- E. Reseal fibrous-glass ducts. Comply with requirements in Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts."

END OF SECTION 230130.51

RA-530

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

RA-531

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

RA-532

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

RA-533

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Airex Manufacturing.
 - 2. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
 - 3. The Metraflex Company.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

RA-534

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

RA-535

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

RA-536

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls and ceilings.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.

RA-537

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- d. Bare Piping at Wall Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
- g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230518

RA-538

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
3. Fastener systems.
4. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and system contents.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Equipment supports.

RA-539

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. For Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- C. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

RA-540

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

RA-541

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

RA-542

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting", Section 099123 "Interior Painting", and Section 099600 "High Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

RA-543

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to **6 inches (150 mm)** for heavy loads.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

RA-544

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb
 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

RA-545

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.
 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

RA-546

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.
4. Applicable equipment: Ceiling exhaust fans.

2.2 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
 10. Applicable equipment: Heat pump air handling units; energy recovery ventilation units.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and

RA-547

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

RA-548

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Acceptable manufacturers: Seton Identification Products; Brady; Marking Services Incorporated.
 - 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 3. Letter Color: White.
 - 4. Background Color: Black.
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

RA-549

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Acceptable manufacturers: Seton Identification Products; Brady; LEM Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Red.
- D. Background Color: Yellow.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Acceptable manufacturers: Seton Identification Products; Brady; Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

RA-550

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Acceptable manufacturers: Seton Identification Products; Brimar Industries, Inc.; Brady.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Duct Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service (“Supply Air”, “Return Air”, “Exhaust Air”, etc.) and showing airflow direction.
- C. Pretensioned Duct Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Duct Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service (“Supply Air”, “Return Air”, “Exhaust Air”, etc.); also include an arrow indicating airflow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping, ductwork, and equipment surfaces or insulation surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

RA-551

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings, omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Cooling Coil Condensate Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - 2. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on a safety-gray background.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 - 1. White letters on a safety-blue background: For supply ducts.
 - 2. White letters on a safety-green background: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 230553

RA-552

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- B. Certified TAB reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC or NEBB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.

RA-553

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, balancing fittings (such as spin-in fittings), and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

RA-554

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Duct systems are complete with air devices installed.
 - b. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - c. Clean filters are installed.
 - d. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - e. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - f. Ceilings are installed.
 - g. Windows and doors are installed.
 - h. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

RA-555

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" and Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation"

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans, air handling units, and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

H. Check for airflow blockages.

I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.

RA-556

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
- 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
- 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- 3.6 TOLERANCES
- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates within the following tolerances:
- 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.

RA-557

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.7 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
14. Test conditions for fans including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.

RA-558

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - e. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 3. Balancing stations.
 4. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Refrigerant-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - h. Return airflow in cfm.

RA-559

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- i. Outdoor-air damper position.
- j. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft.
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil identification.
- d. Capacity in Btu/h and kW.
- e. Number of stages.
- f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
- g. Rated amperage.
- h. Airflow rate in cfm.
- i. Face area in sq. ft.
- j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

RA-560

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Heat output in Btu/h and kW.
 - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - c. Air velocity in fpm.
 - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For exhaust fans, include the following:
- 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
- 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.

RA-561

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft.
- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

K. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.8 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the Owner.

RA-562

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. **Owner** shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
 - 3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

RA-563

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
 - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities

RA-564

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," and "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" Articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, maximum k-value of 0.27 at mean temperature of 75 Deg. F. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation
 - b. Johns Manville
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. Owens Corning.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, maximum k-value of 0.25 at mean temperature of 75 Deg. F. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.

RA-565

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- d. Owens Corning.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Vimasco Corporation.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

RA-566

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Hohmann and Barnard, Inc.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

RA-567

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; H.B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. UltraKote Products
 - c. Vimasco Corporation.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Venture Tape.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Venture Tape.

RA-568

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Venture Tape.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems
 - b. RPR Products
 - c. GLT Products.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

RA-569

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Gemco
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - 3) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

RA-570

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Gemco.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - 3) AGM Industries, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

RA-571

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

RA-572

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

RA-573

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.

RA-574

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

RA-575

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.5 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to two locations for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.7 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

RA-576

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.8 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 2 inches thick and 1.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Concealed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 1-1/2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Exposed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- H. Exposed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 1-1/2 inches thick and 3.0-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

RA-577

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
 - 2. Cooling coil condensate piping, indoors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 6. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

RA-578

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, maximum k-value of 0.28 at a mean temperature of 75 Deg. F. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
 - b. Armacell LLC.
 - c. K-Flex USA.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. Knauf Insulation.
 - c. Owens Corning.
 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, maximum k-value of 0.23 at mean temperature of 75 Deg. F. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

RA-579

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
 - b. Armacell LLC.
 - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - d. K-Flex USA.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- D. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

RA-580

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Vimasco Corporation.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

RA-581

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
 5. Color: White or gray.
- B. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

RA-582

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation.
 - c. UltraKote Products.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.
 - 2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - 3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 4. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - 5. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - c. Tee covers.
 - d. Flange and union covers.
 - e. End caps.
 - f. Beveled collars.
 - g. Valve covers.
 - h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

RA-583

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
 - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
 - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed stainless steel.

RA-584

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

RA-585

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.

RA-586

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Flanges, and Unions:
 1. Install insulation over fittings, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.

RA-587

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 5. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 6. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 7. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER PREFORMED PIPE INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

RA-588

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
 - B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
 - C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
 - D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

RA-589

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Inspect pipe and fittings, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe and three locations of threaded fittings, [for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 1. Refrigerant suction piping located indoors in air-conditioned space.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction (except as noted above) and Hot-Gas Piping: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction (except as noted above) and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches thick.
- C. Cooling Coil Condensate Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1/2 inch thick for piping up to 1-1/4 inch diameter; 1 inch thick for piping above 1-1/4 inch diameter.
 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick for piping up to 1-1/4 inch diameter; 1 inch thick for piping above 1-1/4 inch diameter.

3.12 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping: Flexible elastomeric, 1.5 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches thick.

RA-590

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Piping, Exposed: Aluminum, smooth, 0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

RA-591

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230923.14 - FLOW INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Airflow switches.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Include diagrams for air and process signal tubing.
4. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Select and size products to achieve specified performance requirements.

B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

RA-592

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 AIRFLOW SWITCHES

A. Polymer Film Sail Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Honeywell International Inc.
 - b. Senasys.
 - c. Dwyer Instruments.

2. Performance:
 - a. Suitable for applications operating at velocities up to 400 fpm.
 - b. Suitable for mounting with air direction in horizontal, vertical up or down.
 - c. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - d. Voltage: 24-, 120-, 240-V ac.
 - e. Normally Open Full Load Current: 2 A at 120-V ac.
 - f. Normally Closed Full Load Current: 1 A at 120-V ac.
 - g. Normally open switch actuates at 250 fpm and opens at 75 fpm .
 - h. Normally closed switch actuates at 75 fpm and closes at 250 fpm.
 - i. Maximum Process Temperature: 170 deg F.
 - j. Maximum Ambient Temperature: 125 deg F.

3. Construction:
 - a. Polyester film sail encasing a wire frame.
 - b. Sail actuates a SPDT snap switch.
 - c. Enclosure Material: Zinc-plated steel.
 - d. Enclosure with removable cover.
 - e. NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 - f. Removable spring counterbalances sail to allow mounting in either vertical (up or down) or horizontal airflow.
 - g. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
 - h. Conduit Connections: 1/2-inch trade size conduit knock outs on top and bottom.

B. Stainless-Steel Single Vane Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Honeywell International Inc.
 - c. Senasys.

RA-593

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Description:
 - a. Velocities up to 2000 fpm.
 - b. Suitable for mounting with air direction in horizontal.
3. Performance:
 - a. Voltage: 125-, 240-, and 480-V ac.
 - b. Full Load Current: 9.8 A at 125-V ac.
 - c. Field-Adjustable Velocity Set Point: 400 to 1600 fpm.
 - d. Maximum Process Temperature: 180 deg F.
 - e. Maximum Ambient Temperature: 125 deg F.
4. Construction:
 - a. Stainless-steel vane.
 - b. Vane actuates a SPDT snap switch.
 - c. Enclosure Material: Die-cast metal.
 - d. Enclosure with removable cover.
 - e. NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 - f. Screw set-point adjustment.
 - g. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
 - h. Conduit Connections: 1-inch trade size conduit knock outs on top and bottom.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Select from instrument types to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
- B. Airflow Switches:
 1. Measured Velocities 400 fpm and Less: Polymer film sail switch.
 2. Measured Velocities Greater than 400 fpm: Stainless-steel single-vane switch.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a 200 pound force.

RA-594

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Install ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTRUMENTS, GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Mounting Location:
 - 1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
 - 2. Install switches and transmitters for air flow associated with individual air-handling units and connected ductwork near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
 - 3. Install airflow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
 - 4. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- B. Mounting Height:
 - 1. Mount instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.

RA-595

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Mount switches and transmitters, located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility requirements, within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
 - a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.
- C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly below instruments concealed above ceilings.

3.6 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Description:
 1. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
 3. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
 4. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- B. Coordinate video with operation and maintenance manuals and classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- C. Record videos on DVD disks.
- D. Owner shall have right to make additional copies of video for internal use without paying royalties.

RA-596

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 230923.14

RA-597

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230923.22 - POSITION INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes position limit switches associated with control dampers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 3. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POSITION LIMIT SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. OMRON Corporation.
 - 2. Ruskin.
 - 3. Kele.
- B. Description: Select type of actuating head (plunger, roller lever, or rod) to suit application.
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Performance:
 - 1. Life expectancy: Not less than 30 million mechanical operations and 750,000 electrical operations.

RA-598

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Operating Frequency: 300 mechanical operations per minute and 30 electrical operations per minute.
3. Voltage: 125-, 250-, 480-, and 600-V ac or 8-, 12-, 14-, 24-, 30-, 48-, 125-, and 250-V dc, as required by application.
4. Current Rating: As required by application.
5. Temperature Rise: 50 deg C.
6. Ambient Temperature: 14 to 175 deg F.
7. Ambient Relative Humidity: 35 to 95 percent.

D. Construction:

1. NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure.
2. Switch Type: SPDT or DPDT, as required by application.
3. Status indicator integral to switch. Field switchable to light when contacts are actuated and operating, or contacts are free and not operating.
4. Electrical Connection: Screw or plug-in terminals.
5. Conduit Connection: NPS 1/2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment when subjected to a 200 pound force.
- C. Fastening Hardware:
 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by using excessive force or oversized wrenches.
 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

3.2 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

RA-599

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.3 POSITION INSTRUMENTS INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Location:
 - 1. Rough-in instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing, cable, wiring, and conduit to final location.
 - 2. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- B. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated, using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

END OF SECTION 230923.22

RA-600

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230923.23 - PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Air-pressure sensors.
2. Air-pressure switches.
3. Air-pressure transmitters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR-PRESSURE SENSORS

A. Outdoor Static Pressure Sensor:

RA-601

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Digi-Key Electronics.
 - c. Keller.
2. Provides average outdoor pressure signal.
3. Sensor with no moving parts.
4. Kit includes sensor, vinyl tubing mounting hardware.

B. Space Static Pressure Sensor for Wall Mounting:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Honeywell International Incorporated.
 - c. Paragon Controls Incorporated.
2. 100-micron filter mounted in stainless-steel wall plate senses static pressure.
3. Wall plate provided with gasket and screws, and sized to fit standard single-gang electrical box.
4. Back of sensor plate fitted with brass barbed fitting for tubing connection.

2.2 AIR-PRESSURE SWITCHES

A. Air-Pressure Differential Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Belimo.
 - c. Honeywell International Incorporated.
2. Diaphragm operated to actuate an SPDT snap switch.
 - a. Fan safety shutdown applications: Switch with manual reset.
3. Electrical Connections: Three-screw configuration, including one screw for common operation and two screws for field-selectable normally open or closed operation.
4. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
5. User Interface: Screw-type set-point adjustment located inside removable enclosure cover.
6. High and Low Process Connections: Threaded, NPS 1/8.

RA-602

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

7. Enclosure:
 - a. Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - c. Hazardous Environments: Explosion proof.

8. Operating Data:
 - a. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120- to 480-V ac.
 - b. Pressure Limits:
 - 1) Continuous: 45 inches wg.
 - 2) Surge: 10 psig.
 - c. Temperature Limits: Minus 30 to 180 deg F.
 - d. Operating Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
 - e. Repeatability: Within 3 percent.
 - f. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 AIR-PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS

A. Air-Pressure Differential Transmitter:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - c. Setra.

2. Performance:
 - a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
 - b. Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent of the span at reference temperature of 70 deg F.
 - c. Hysteresis: Within 0.02 percent of the span.
 - d. Repeatability: Within 0.05 percent of the calibrated span.
 - e. Stability: Within 0.25 percent of span per year.
 - f. Overpressure: 15 psig.
 - g. Temperature Limits: Minus 20 to 160 deg F.
 - h. Compensate Temperature Limits: 35 to 135 deg F.
 - i. Thermal Effects: 0.015 percent of full scale per degree F.
 - j. Warm-up Time: Within 5 seconds.
 - k. Response Time: One second.
 - l. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.

3. Output Signals:

RA-603

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Analog Current Signal:
 - 1) Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
 - 2) Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.
 - b. Analog Voltage Signal:
 - 1) Three wire, zero to 6 V.
 - 2) Minimum Load Resistance: 1000 ohms.
 4. Operator Interface:
 - a. Zero and span adjustments within 10 percent of full span.
 - b. Potentiometer adjustments located on face of transmitter.
 5. Construction:
 - a. Type 300 stainless-steel enclosure.
 - b. Swivel fittings for connection to copper tubing or barbed fittings for connection to polyethylene tubing. Fittings on front of instrument enclosure.
 - c. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
 - d. Vertical plane mounting.
 - e. NEMA 250, Type 2.
 - f. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.
 - g. Reverse wiring protected.
 - h. Calibrate to NIST-traceable standards and provide each transmitter with a certificate of calibration.
- B. Air-Pressure Differential Indicating Transmitter:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Setra.
 - c. Omni Instruments.
 2. Performance:
 - a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
 - b. Accuracy Including Hysteresis and Repeatability: Within 1 percent of full scale at 77 deg F.
 - c. Stability: Within 1 percent of full scale per year.
 - d. Overpressure: 10 psig.
 - e. Temperature Limits: 20 to 120 deg F.
 - f. Thermal Effects: 0.055 percent of full scale per degree F.
 3. Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch-high numeric characters.

RA-604

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Operator Interface:
 - a. Zero and span adjustments.
 - b. Selectable engineering units.
5. Analog Output Current Signal:
 - a. Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
 - b. Signal capable of operating into a 1200-ohm load.
6. Construction:
 - a. Plastic casing with clear plastic cover.
 - b. Integral fittings for plastic tubing connections on side of instrument case for high- and low-pressure connections.
 - c. Terminal block for wire connections.
 - d. Vertical plane mounting.
 - e. NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - f. Nominal 4-inch diameter face.
 - g. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment when subjected to a 200 pound force.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Fastening Hardware:
 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by using excessive force or oversized wrenches.
 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

RA-605

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- F. Corrosive Environments:
 - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
 - 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
 - 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
 - 4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from the manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.2 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.3 PRESSURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Location:
 - 1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing, cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
 - 2. Install switches and transmitters for air pressure associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
 - 3. Install air-pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
 - 4. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

RA-606

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.
- C. Outdoor Pressure Sensors:
 - 1. Install roof-mounted sensor in least-noticeable location and as far away from exterior walls as possible.
 - 2. Locate wall-mounted sensor in an inconspicuous location.
 - 3. Submit sensor location for approval before installation.
 - 4. Verify signal from sensor is stable and consistent to all connected transmitters. Modify installation to achieve proper signal.
 - 5. Route outdoor signal pipe full size of sensor connection to transmitters. Install branch connection of size required to match to transmitter.
 - 6. Install sensor signal pipe with dirt leg and drain valve below roof penetration.
 - 7. Insulate signal pipe with flexible elastomeric insulation as required to prevent condensation.
 - 8. Connect roof-mounted signal pipe exposed to outdoors to building grounding system.
- D. Air-Pressure Differential Switches:
 - 1. Install air-pressure sensor in system for each switch connection. Install sensor in an accessible location for inspection and replacement.
 - 2. A single sensor may be used to share a common signal to multiple pressure instruments.
 - 3. Install access door in duct and equipment to access sensors that cannot be inspected and replaced from outside.
 - 4. Route NPS 3/8 tubing from sensor to switch connection.
 - 5. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.
 - 6. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
 - 7. Install switches in an easily accessible location serviceable from floor.
 - 8. Install switches adjacent to system control panel if within 50 feet; otherwise, locate switch in vicinity of system connection.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly below instruments concealed above ceilings.

3.5 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.

RA-607

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- B. Coordinate pressure instrument demonstration video with operation and maintenance manuals and classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- C. Record videos on DVD disks.
- D. Owner shall have right to make additional copies of video for internal use without paying royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923.23

RA-608

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 230923.27 - TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Air temperature sensors.
 - 2. Air temperature RTD transmitters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Environmental Conditions:
 - 1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
 - a. If instrument alone cannot meet requirement, install instrument in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance.

RA-609

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

2. Instruments and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Instrument's installed location shall dictate following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
 - a. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
 - b. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
 - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
 - 1) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.

2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS

A. Platinum RTDs: Common Requirements:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
 - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 32 deg F within 0.5 deg F.
 - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
 - d. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter Requirements:
 - a. Transmitter required for each 100-ohm RTD.
 - b. Transmitter optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

B. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
3. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a flush, brushed aluminum cover.
4. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
5. Concealed wiring connection.

C. Thermal Resistors (Thermistors): Common Requirements:

1. 10,000 ohms at 25 deg C and a temperature coefficient of 23.5 ohms/ohm/deg C.

RA-610

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
 - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 77 deg F within 0.5 deg F.
 - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
 - d. Drift: Within 0.5 deg F over 10 years.
 - e. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter optional, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

D. Thermistor, Single-Point Duct Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches.
4. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
5. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2- inch trade size.

E. Thermistor Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
2. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a flush, brushed aluminum cover.
3. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
4. Concealed wiring connection.

2.3 AIR TEMPERATURE RTD TRANSMITTERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
- B. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- C. Functional Characteristics:
 1. Input:
 - a. 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
 - b. 1000-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.

RA-611

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Span (Adjustable):
 - a. Space: 40 to 90 deg F.
 - b. Supply Air Cooling and Heating: 40 to 120 deg F.
 - c. Supply Air Cooling Only: 40 to 90 deg F.
 - d. Supply Air Heating Only: 40 to 120 deg F.
 - e. Exhaust Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
 - f. Return Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
 - g. Mixed Air: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
 - h. Outdoor: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
 3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
 4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F.
 5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together.
- D. Performance Characteristics:
1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
 2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
 3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Air Temperature Sensors:
 1. Space,: Thermistor.
- B. Air Temperature Transmitters:
 1. Space,: Air temperature RTD transmitter.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a force.
- C. Fastening Hardware:

RA-612

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.4 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATIONS

- A. Mounting Location:
 1. Roughing In:
 - a. Outline instrument mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
 - b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
 - 1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products on Shop Drawings.
 - 2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
 - c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.
 2. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
 3. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to

RA-613

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

B. Special Mounting Requirements:

1. Temperature instruments having performance impacted by temperature of mounting substrate shall be isolated with an insulating barrier located between instrument and substrate to eliminate effect. Where instruments requiring insulation are located in finished space, conceal insulating barrier in a cover matching the instrument cover.

C. Mounting Height:

1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.
2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
 - a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.

D. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

E. Space Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Conceal assembly in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if provided.
2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not completely cover electrical box.
3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly below instruments concealed above ceilings.

RA-614

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.
- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

3.7 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- D. Verify location and length.
- E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform according to manufacturer's written instruction.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain temperature instruments.

END OF SECTION 230923.27

RA-615

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
 - 1. Copper pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Plastic pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Joining materials.
 - 4. Transition fittings.
 - 5. Dielectric fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
 - 2. Pressure-seal fittings.
 - 3. Copper pipe and fittings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Condensate-Drain Piping: 100 deg F.

RA-616

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 COPPER PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- B. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. Star Pipe Products.
 - 2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.3 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS (USE ONLY IN NON-PLENUM AREAS)

- A. PVC Schedule 40 DWV Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2665, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2665 for Schedule 40 pipe.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- C. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- D. Solvent Cements for PVC DWV Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- E. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

RA-617

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - b. IPEX USA LLC.
 - c. Viega LLC.
 2. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - b. IPEX USA LLC.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 2. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints, or Schedule 40 PVC DWV plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints (only permitted in non-plenum spaces).

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

RA-618

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation.
- K. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- L. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 4. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

RA-619

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Install hangers for DWV copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4 and smaller: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- E. PVC DWV Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers no more than 4 feet on center.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- F. PVC DWV Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- H. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

RA-620

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9.

END OF SECTION 232113

RA-621

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
 - 3. Refrigerants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and refrigerant piping specialty.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
 - 2. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 3. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

RA-622

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.

RA-623

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
3. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
4. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
5. Seat: Nylon.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
3. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
4. Operator: Rising stem.
5. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
6. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
3. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
4. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
5. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
6. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
8. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

RA-624

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 3. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. End Connections: Copper spring.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 3. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. End Connections: Threaded.
 6. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 208-V ac coil.
 7. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 3. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.

RA-625

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. End Connections: Threaded.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 5. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 6. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
 7. Superheat: Adjustable.
 8. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
 9. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 10. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.
- H. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 3. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
 4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- I. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 2. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.

RA-626

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
4. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Forged brass.
3. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
4. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
5. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
6. End Connections: Socket or flare.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
3. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
4. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
5. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
6. End Connections: Socket.
7. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
8. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
9. Rated Flow: Based on equipment tonnage.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

RA-627

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
3. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
4. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
5. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
6. End Connections: Socket.
7. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
8. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
9. Rated Flow: Based on equipment tonnage.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

2.4 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arkema Inc.
 - b. DuPont Fluorochemicals Div.
 - c. Genetron Refrigerants; Honeywell International Inc.
 - d. Mexichem Fluor Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
- B. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

RA-628

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
 - 1. Solenoid valves.
 - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 3. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge, if required by equipment manufacturer.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

RA-629

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

RA-630

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
 - 3. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:

RA-631

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. NPS 1/2 thru 1-1/4: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

RA-632

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 3. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 4. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

RA-633

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealant and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233119 "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.

RA-634

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
 - g. Fire alarm devices.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

RA-635

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support

RA-636

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 - 2. Tape Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.

RA-637

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

RA-638

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

RA-639

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where shown on drawings, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT PRESSURE CLASS AND SEALING

- A. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Supply-Air and Return-Air Ducts: Construct to 2-Inch wg pressure class and a SMACNA Leakage Class of 12. Seal to Seal Class A.
 - 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: Construct to 2-Inch wg pressure class and a SMACNA Leakage Class of 12. Seal to Seal Class C.

RA-640

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at a maximum interval of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.

RA-641

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

RA-642

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.7 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to Article 3.3 in this Specification Section for duct pressure class, sealing, and leakage class.

- B. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
- 2. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

- C. Elbow Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

- D. Branch Configuration:

RA-643

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.

END OF SECTION 233113

RA-644

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Control dampers.
3. Flange connectors.
4. Turning vanes.
5. Duct-mounted access doors.
6. Flexible connectors.
7. Duct accessory hardware.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

RA-645

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - b. Pottorff.
 - c. Ruskin Company.
 - d. United Enertech.
 - 2. Standard leakage rating with linkage outside airstream.
 - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 4. Frames:

RA-646

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
- a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
- a. Molded synthetic.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
3. Pottorff.
4. Ruskin Company.
5. United Enertech.

RA-647

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

B. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

C. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
2. Parallel-blade design for two-position service, opposed-blade design for modulating service.
3. Galvanized-steel.
4. 0.0747-inch-thick dual skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

E. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve].
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

F. Actuators: Each control damper shall be provided with a 120V actuator, of sufficient torque to operate damper. Actuator shall be two-position or modulating, to match the Sequence of Operation for HVAC equipment.

2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ.
3. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Description: Roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

RA-648

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.6 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 - 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 4. SEMCO LLC.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts less than 18"; hollow, double wall for ducts 18" and larger.

2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Pottorff.
 - 4. United Enertech.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.

RA-649

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.8 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Flame Gard, Inc.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.

RA-650

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

RA-651

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 - 7. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
 - 8. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 9. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- M. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands, and sealed with an approved pressure-sensitive tape.
- N. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.

RA-652

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

RA-653

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
 - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

RA-654

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.

- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
 - 4. Insulation R-Value: R4.2.

2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.

- C. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

- D. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

- E. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

- F. Installation:

RA-655

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Install ducts fully extended.
2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands **1-1/2 inches** wide or wider and spaced a maximum of **48 inches** apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed **1/2 inch** per **12 inches**.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of **72 inches** o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

RA-656

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233423 – HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: For each product.
 - 1. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
 - 2. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 3. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 6. Dampers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

RA-657

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck.
 - 2. Loren Cook
 - 3. PennBarry.
 - 4. Twin City.

- B. Construction: The fan housing shall be constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel. The housing interior shall be lined with 1/2" thick acoustical insulation. The discharge duct connection, including backdraft damper, shall be adaptable to horizontal or vertical positions. The access for wiring shall be external. The motor disconnect shall be internal and of the plug-in type. The motors shall be permanently lubricated with built in thermal overload protection, mounted on vibration isolators. The fan shall have a forward curved centrifugal wheel. Fans shall be provided with speed controllers for air balance.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- B. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

RA-658

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and vibration isolation device as specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC".
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system.
 - 5. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 6. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 7. Verify that manual and automatic volume control dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 8. See Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing For HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
 - 9. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

RA-659

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 SEQUENCES OF OPERATION

- A. Fans EF-1 and EF-2: Each fan shall be controlled by a unit-mounted motion detector. If no motion has been detected for a period of fifteen (15) minutes (adjustable), the fan shall de-energize.

END OF SECTION 233416

RA-660

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Krueger.
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. Price Industries.
4. Titus.
5. Tuttle & Bailey.

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

- C. Material: Steel.

- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.

- E. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches.

RA-661

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Face Style: Three cone.
- G. Mounting: Surface or T-bar, per ceiling system.
- H. Pattern: Adjustable.
- I. Dampers: Butterfly.
- J. Accessories:
 - 1. Equalizing grid.
 - 2. Plaster ring (for hard surface ceilings only).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers and air extractors.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

RA-662

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233713.23 - AIR REGISTERS AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adjustable blade face registers.
2. Fixed face registers and grilles.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REGISTERS

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
 - e. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical for supply applications, spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Core Construction: Removable.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal for supply applications, space 3/4 inch apart.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inch wide.

RA-663

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

8. Mounting Frame: Surface mounting frame for hard ceiling or wall mount applications.
9. Mounting: Countersunk screw or lay-in, per ceiling system.
10. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
11. Accessories:
 - a. Front and Rear-blade gang operator.

B. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
 - d. Tuttle & Bailey.
 - e. METALAIRE, Inc.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal for return and exhaust applications, space 3/4 inch apart.
5. Core Construction: Removable.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
7. Mounting Frame: Surface mounting frame for hard ceiling or wall mount applications.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw or lay-in, per ceiling system.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

2.2 GRILLES

A. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
 - d. Tuttle & Bailey.
 - e. METALAIRE, Inc.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal for return and exhaust applications, space 3/4 inch apart.
5. Core Construction: Removable.

RA-664

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
7. Mounting Frame: Surface mounting frame for hard ceiling or wall mount applications.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw or lay-in, per ceiling system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

RA-665

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Spun aluminum gravity roof ventilators

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Ventilators shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of ventilator components, noise or metal fatigue caused by ventilator blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.

1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gravity ventilators. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, ventilator attachments to curbs, and curb attachments to roof structure.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.

RA-666

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
- D. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
 - 1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 - 2. Use Phillips flat, hex-head, or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Factory fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.

2.3 LOUVERED-PENTHOUSE VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carnes Company.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Loren Cook Company.
 - 4. PennBarry.
- B. Construction: Exterior construction shall be heavy-gauge aluminum windband with a rolled bead. Curb cap shall be constructed of heavy-gauge aluminum and shall include a one-piece

RA-667

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

spun venturi. Curb cap shall be prepunched for mounting. Internal components shall be constructed of rigid galvanized steel and shall include a birdscreen.

- C. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch-wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Secure gravity ventilators to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Refer to Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- C. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.
- F. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- G. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.
- H. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 233723

RA-668

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 237200 - AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Air-to-air energy recovery ventilation units.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Unit performance data for both supply air and exhaust air, with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Enthalpy plate performance data for both summer and winter operation.
3. Motor ratings and unit electrical characteristics.
4. Filter types, quantities and sizes.

B. Shop Drawings: For air-to-air energy recovery ventilation units. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installation, Operating and Maintenance Manual (IOM) for each unit.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain air-to-air energy recovery ventilators with all appurtenant components or accessories from a single manufacturer.

B. For the actual fabrication, installation and testing of work under this section, use only thoroughly trained and experienced workers completely familiar with the items required and with the manufacturer's current recommended methods of installation.

C. The ERV core or wheel shall be warranted to be free of manufacturing defects and retain its functional characteristics, under circumstances of normal use, for a period of ten (10) years

RA-669

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

from the date of purchase. The balance-of-unit shall be warranted to be free of manufacturing defects and to retain its functional characteristics, under circumstances of normal use, for a period of two (2) years from the date of installation.

- D. Manufacturer shall provide evidence of independent testing of the core by Underwriters Laboratory (UL), verifying a maximum flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index (SDI) of 50, thereby meeting NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B requirements for materials in a compartment handling air intended for circulation through a duct system. The method of test shall be UL Standard 723.
- E. Certifications: The energy recovery cores or wheels used in these products shall be third party Certified by AHRI under its Standard 1060 for Energy Recovery Ventilators. AHRI published certifications shall confirm manufacturer's published performance for airflow, static pressure, temperature and total effectiveness, purge air (OACF) and exhaust air leakage (EATR). Products that are not currently AHRI certified will not be accepted. OACF shall be no more than 1.02 and EATR shall be at 0% against balance airflow.
- F. Every unit shall be factory tested prior to shipping: Motor Dielectric Voltage-Withstand Bench Test, Unit Dielectric Voltage-Withstand Test, Continuity of Internal Control Circuits Test, Unit Amperage Test.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. RenewAire.
 - 2. Greenheck.
 - 3. Loren Cook Company.
 - 4. Lossnay.
- B. General: Ventilators shall be fully assembled at the factory and consist of a fixed-plate cross-flow heat exchanger with no moving parts, or a rotating energy recovery wheel, an insulated double wall G90 galvanized 20-gauge steel cabinet, motorized outside air intake damper, filter assemblies for both intake and exhaust air, enthalpy core or wheel, supply air blower assembly, motorized exhaust air damper, exhaust air blower assembly and electrical control box with all specified components and internal accessories factory installed and tested and prepared for single-point high voltage connection. Entire unit with the exception of field-installed components shall be assembled and test operated at the factory.
- C. Cabinet:

RA-670

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Materials: Formed double wall insulated metal cabinet, fabricated to permit access to internal components for maintenance.
2. Outside casing: 20 gauge, galvanized (G90) steel meeting ASTM A653.
3. Access doors shall be hinged with airtight closed cell foam gaskets. Door pressure taps, with captive plugs, shall be provided for cross-core or cross-wheel pressure measurement allowing for accurate airflow measurement.
4. Unit shall have factory-installed duct flanges on all duct openings.
5. Cabinet Insulation: Unit walls and doors shall be insulated with 1 inch, 4 pound density, foil/scrim faced, high density fiberglass board insulation, providing a cleanable surface and eliminating the possibility of exposing the fresh air to glass fibers, and with a minimum R-value of 4.3 (hr-ft²-°F/BTU).
6. Enthalpy core or wheel: Energy recovery core shall be of the total enthalpy type, capable of transferring both sensible and latent energy between airstreams. Latent energy transfer shall be accomplished by direct water vapor transfer from one airstream to the other, without exposing transfer media in succeeding cycles directly to the exhaust air and then to the fresh air. No condensate drains shall be allowed. The energy recovery core shall be designed and constructed to permit cleaning and removal for servicing. The energy recovery core shall have a ten-year warranty. Performance criteria are to be as specified in AHRI Standard 1060.
7. Control center / connections: Energy Recovery Ventilator shall have an electrical control center where all high and low voltage connections are made. Control center shall be constructed to permit single-point high voltage power supply connections to the non-fused disconnect.
8. Passive Frost Control: The ERV core or wheel shall perform without condensing or frosting under normal operating conditions (defined as outside temperatures above -10°F and inside relative humidity below 40%). Occasional more extreme conditions shall not affect the usual function, performance or durability of the core. No condensate drains will be allowed.
9. Motorized Isolation Damper(s): Exhaust air and outside air motorized dampers of an AMCA Class 1 leakage type shall be factory installed.

D. Blower Section:

1. Blower section construction, Supply Air and Exhaust Air: Blower assemblies consist of a 208-230V, single phase, 60 HZ, electronically commutated (EC) motor, and a direct driven backward-inclined blower. Each fan motor shall have a potentiometer for adjustment of fan speed.

E. Unit Controls:

1. Fan control: Provide a terminal strip for EC motors.
2. Sensors: Provide a dirty filter monitor for both airstreams.
3. Timeclock: Provide a digital wall-mounted time clock with up to 8 on/off cycles per day or 50 per week, 24VAC power, with battery backup protection of program settings against power failure to energize the unit.

RA-671

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Motion (Occupancy) Sensor: Passive infrared sensor for wall mounting with adjustable time-off delay to 30 minutes, 24VAC power to energize unit. Provide two (2) sensors for each ventilator.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Suspended Units: Suspend units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Installation shall be accomplished in accordance with specifications, project drawings, manufacturer's installation instructions as documented in manufacturer's IOM, Best Practices, and all applicable building codes. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- C. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.2 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

- A. Energy Recovery Ventilation Units ERV-1 and ERV-2: Occupied and unoccupied modes shall be controlled by motion sensors in each unit's respective restroom. When motion is detected by either sensor, the outside air and exhaust air dampers shall open, and the unit supply and exhaust fans shall energize (unit enters occupied mode). When no motion has been detected by either motion sensor for a period of fifteen (15) minutes (adjustable), the supply and exhaust fans shall de-energize, and the outside air and exhaust air motorized dampers shall close (unit enters unoccupied mode). Dirty filter sensors shall indicated when the pressure drop across each filter exceeds setpoint (adjustable), indicating that the filters should be replaced.

END OF SECTION 237200

RA-672

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM HEAT PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

RA-673

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Minimum warranty period:
 - a. For Compressor: Seven (7) years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Lennox Industries, Inc.; Lennox International.
 2. Trane.
 3. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.
 4. Daikin Applied.
 5. Daikin AC (for ductless split systems).
 6. Mitsubishi (for ductless split systems).
 7. LG HVAC (for ductless split systems).

2.2 INDOOR UNITS

- A. Ducted Evaporator-Fan Components (Lennox, Trane, YORK, or Daikin Applied):
1. Chassis: Insulated, galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and supply and return duct connection flanges. Cabinet shall have 2% or less air leakage.
 2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner, R-4.2 insulating value.
 3. Refrigerant Coil: All aluminum coil with enhanced coil fin and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection. Provide with polarized plug connections.
 5. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
 6. Fan motor shall be direct drive, variable speed electronically commutated (EC) type.

RA-674

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
9. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends), and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow.

B. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components (Daikin AC, Mitsubishi, or LG):

1. Casing: Unit casing shall be manufactured of heavy duty ABS and high impact polystyrene (HIPS) plastic. The front surface of the unit shall have an architectural curved panel with pearl white finish and integrated digital display.
2. Cabinet Assembly: Unit shall have one supply air outlet and one return air inlet. Unit shall be equipped with factory-installed temperature thermistors for return air, refrigerant entering coil, and refrigerant leaving coil. Unit shall have a built-in control panel to communicate with the outdoor unit. The unit shall be capable of refrigerant piping in four different directions and condensate drain piping in two different directions.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Unit shall have a factory built coil comprised of aluminum fins mechanically bonded on copper tubing. Unit shall have a minimum of 2 rows of coils. Unit shall have a factory supplied condensate drain pan below the coil, and shall be design for gravity drain. Unit shall have a factory insulated drain hose to handle condensate. Unit shall have provision of 45° flare refrigerant pipe connections. The coil shall be factory pressure tested at a minimum of 551 psig.
4. Fan Assembly: The unit shall have a direct-drive, crossflow fan made of high strength ABS plastic. Motor shall be Brushless Digitally Controlled (BLDC) with permanently lubricated and sealed ball bearings. Fan/motor assembly shall be mounted on vibration attenuating rubber grommets. The fan speed shall be controlled using microprocessor based direct digitally controlled algorithm. Unit shall have a factory-installed motorized louver to provide flow of air in up and down direction for uniform airflow. Unit shall have a factory-installed motorized guide vane to control the direction of flow of air from side to side.
5. Filter Assembly: The return air inlet shall have a factory-supplied primary removable, washable filter, and a factory-supplied secondary micro dust filter. Filter access shall be from the front of the unit.
6. The indoor unit shall be supplied with a wireless handheld controller and a seven-day programmable thermostat.
7. Unit shall be capable of operating within voltage limits of +/- 10% of the rated voltage.

RA-675

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components for Ductless Split Systems (Daikin AC, Mitsubishi, or LG):
1. Cabinet: The cabinet shall be made of pre-coated metal (PCM). The front/side panels of the unit shall be removable type for access to internal components. Cabinet shall be tested in accordance with ASTM B-117 salt spray test procedure for a minimum of 1000 hours.
 2. Fan Assembly: The unit shall be equipped with one direct drive variable speed propeller fan with Brushless Digitally Controlled (BLDC) motor with a horizontal air discharge. Fan blades shall be made of ABS plastic. Fan shall be equipped with permanently lubricated bearings. Fan shall have a raised guard to help prevent contact with moving parts.
 3. Coil: The outdoor unit shall have a factory-built coil comprised of aluminum fins mechanically bonded on copper tubing. Aluminum fins shall have factory-applied corrosion-resistant material. Coil coating shall be tested in accordance with ASTM B-117 salt spray test for a minimum of 1000 hours. Coil shall be factory tested to a pressure of 600 psig. Coil shall have a two-row heat exchanger and a coil guard.
 4. Compressor: Each outdoor unit shall be equipped with one hermetically sealed, digitally controlled, inverter driven twin-rotary compressor. Compressor shall be mounted on vibration-attenuating rubber grommets. Compressor shall use a factory charge of Polyvinyl Ether (PVE) oil. Compressor bearings shall have a Teflon™ coating. Compressor shall be equipped with over-current protection. Compressor body shall have a crankcase heater.
 5. Outdoor units shall have the following sensors: Suction temperature sensor, discharge temperature sensor, high pressure sensor, low pressure sensor, outdoor temperature sensor, outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature sensor.
 6. Unit shall be factory assembled complete with refrigerant strainer, check valves, oil separator, accumulator, 4-way reversion valve, electronic expansion valve, high side and low side refrigerant charging ports, and a service port.
 7. Unit shall have microprocessor controls to communicated with the indoor unit.
 8. Oil Management: Unit shall have an oil injection mechanism to ensure a consistent film of oil on all moving compressor parts at low speed. Unit shall have an oil separator to separate oil mixed with the refrigerant gas during compression and return oil to the compressor.
 9. Heat Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
- B. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components for Ducted Heat Pumps (Trane, Lennox, Daikin Applied, or YORK):
1. General: Outdoor units shall be fully charged from the factory for up to 15 feet of piping. Unit shall be designed to operate at outdoor ambient temperature as high as 115 Deg. F. Unit shall be certified to UL 1995.
 2. Casing: Unit casing shall be constructed of heavy gauge, galvanized steel and painted with a weather-resistant powder paint finish on all louvered panels and the fan top panel.

RA-676

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- Corner panels shall be pre-painted. All panels shall be tested with a 1,000 hours salt spray test. Base shall be made of a CMBP-G30 weatherproof material to resist corrosion.
3. Refrigerant Controls: Unit shall have refrigeration system controls, including condenser fan, compressor contactor, and high pressure switch. High pressure and low pressure controls shall be inherent to the compressor. Unit shall have a factory-installed liquid line drier.
 4. Compressor: The compressor shall have over temperature and over pressure protection and a total-dipped hermetic motor. Compressor shall also have a centrifugal oil pump, low vibration and noise control, and a crankcase heater in the compressor body.
 5. Condenser Coil: The condenser coil shall be designed to provide low airflow resistance and efficient heat transfer. The coil shall be protected on all sides by louvered panels.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
 1. Compressor time delay.
 2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
 3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
 4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
- B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- D. Drain Hose: For condensate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete, or Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

RA-677

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

D. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. All refrigerant piping shall be sized, routed and installed in strict accordance with equipment manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

RA-678

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.5 SEQUENCES OF OPERATIONS

- A. Ducted Split System Heat Pumps: Each system shall be controlled by the wall-mounted programmable thermostat. The occupied and unoccupied times shall be interlocked with the occupied and unoccupied times of the associated energy recovery ventilator (ERV-1 or ERV-2). When the associated energy recovery ventilator is in occupied mode, the heat pump supply fan shall operate continuously, and the DX cooling or heat pump heating shall stage on and off to maintain the space heating or cooling temperature setpoint (adjustable). When the associated energy recovery ventilator is in unoccupied mode, the heat pump supply fan shall cycle on and off, and the DX cooling or heat pump heating shall stage on and off to maintain space heating or cooling temperature setpoint (adjustable). Systems with two-speed compressors shall operate at the lowest compressor speed required to maintain setpoint in the space. During both occupied and unoccupied operation, if the heat pump heating is unable to maintain heating setpoint, the electric heater shall stage on and work concurrently with the heat pump heating to maintain space heating setpoint. The electric heater shall be locked out if the heat pump heating is able to maintain setpoint. A condensate overflow switch in the unit drain pan shall shut down the system if a high condensate level is detected.
- B. Ductless Split System Heat Pumps: Each system shall be controlled by the programmable thermostat. On a call for heating or cooling, the supply fan shall energize, and the compressor shall modulate in heating or cooling mode as needed to maintain space temperature setpoint (adjustable). A condensate overflow switch in the unit drain pan shall shut down the system if a high condensate level is detected.

END OF SECTION 238126

RA-679

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for Heating & Air Conditioning Installation for the I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Service Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans / Mechanical Plans ,Electrical Plans and Specifications and in coordination with Site Plans and Site Utility Plans ,completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for "Each" -" Heating & Air Conditioning Installation for Rest Area Service Building" and "Each" - Heating & Air Conditioning Installation for Rest Area Vending Building" Such price and payment will be full compensation for all Building Heating & Air Conditioning Installation work, including but not limited to furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of Building Heating & Air Conditioning Installation.

Payment will be made under:

**"HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA
SERVICE BUILDING" EACH**

**"HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA
VENDING BUILDING" EACH**

RA-680

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

RA-681

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 496 for stranded conductors.
- D. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 - 2. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 3. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 4. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 5. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 6. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. RoHS compliant.
 - 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Circuits:
 - 1. Single circuit.
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- F. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- G. Armor: Steel, interlocked.
- H. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

RA-682

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway [.
- F. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

RA-683

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

RA-684

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260519

RA-685

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backboards.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

RA-686

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with flat black latex paint. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.3 CATEGORY 5e TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- E. Cable Rating: Riser.
- F. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- B. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

RA-687

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than **2 inches (50 mm)** wide, **3 inches (75 mm)** high, and **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** deep.
 - 2. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than **4 inches (102 mm)** square by **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within **1/8 inch (3.1 mm)** of the finished wall surface.
 - 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits **3 inches (75 mm)** above finished floor.
 - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with **96-inch (2440-mm)** dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

RA-688

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced.
5. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inches (760 mm)** and not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
6. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
9. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
10. Support: Do not allow cables to lay on removable ceiling tiles.
11. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.

C. Twisted Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above ceilings by cable supports not more than **30 inches (760 mm)** apart.

RA-689

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Below each feed point, neatly coil a minimum of **72 inches (1830 mm)** of cable in a coil not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in diameter.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; **No 14AWG**.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; **No. 16AWG**.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; **No 12 AWG**.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

RA-690

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
- C. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

RA-691

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
 - 1. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - a. Test wells.
 - b. Ground rods.
 - c. Ground rings.
 - d. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 2. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at **test wells**.

RA-692

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
- b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: **Copper** wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** wide and **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** wide and **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, **1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm)** in cross section, with **9/32-inch (7.14-mm)** holes spaced **1-1/8 inches (28 mm)** apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

RA-693

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless **compression**-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with **hex head bolt**.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, **copper rated for direct burial** terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, **cast-bronze clamp**. Rated for 600 A.
- O. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- P. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with **zinc-plated** bolts.
 - a. Material: **Tin-plated aluminum**
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and **copper ground connector**.

RA-694

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel) **5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2400 mm)**.
- B. Ground Plates: **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for **No. 8** AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for **No. 6** AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, **No. 2/0** AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least **24 inches (600 mm)** below grade.
- C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers **2 inches (50 mm)** minimum from wall, **6 inches (150 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

RA-695

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so **4 inches (100 mm)** will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from **2 inches (50 mm)** above to **6 inches (150 mm)** below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 - 9. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers,

RA-696

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are **2 inches (50 mm)** below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect

RA-697

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.**
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, **at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods.** Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: **10**ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: **5** ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: **3** ohms.
 4. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: **5** ohms.

RA-698

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

RA-699

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.
2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

RA-700

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to **AWS D1.1/D1.1M**.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: **Galvanized steel**.
 - 3. Channel Width: **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)**.
 - 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: **Steel** hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

RA-701

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, **zinc-coated** steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
 - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 - 6. Toggle Bolts: **All**-steel springhead type.
 - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA 101

RA-702

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. NECA 102.
4. NECA 105.
5. NECA 111.

- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as **required by NFPA 70**. Minimum rod size shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted **or other** support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least **25** percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with **two-bolt conduit clamps**
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, **EMT IMC and RMC** may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

RA-703

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete **4 inches (100 mm)** thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick.
 6. To Steel: **Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69**To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

END OF SECTION 260529

RA-704

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
2. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.
3. Section 280528 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security" for conduits, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, and faceplate adapters serving electronic safety and security.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

RA-705

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- C. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated **rigid steel conduit**.
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 2. Coating Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, minimum.
- F. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- G. FMC: Comply with UL 1; **zinc-coated steel**.
- H. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: **Steel**
 - b. Type: **Setscrew**.
 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

RA-706

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
- C. RNC: **Type EPC-40-PVC**, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- E. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- F. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- G. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, **Type 1** unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

RA-707

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, **ferrous alloy**, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes:
 - 1. Material: **Cast metal**.
 - 2. Type: **Fully adjustable**.
 - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 - 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, **round**.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing **50 lb (23 kg)**. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than **50 lb (23 kg)** shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- H. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing **70 lb (32 kg)**.
 - 1. Listing and labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, **cast aluminum** with gasketed cover.
- K. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- L. Device Box Dimensions: **4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep)**

RA-708

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- M. Gangable boxes are **allowed**.
- N. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, **Type 1** indoors and **Type 3R** outdoors **Type 4** with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- O. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, **Type 1** galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.6 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

- A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
 - 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
 - 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
 - 1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
 - 2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with [**open**] [**closed**] [**integral closed**] bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
 - 4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - 5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "**ELECTRIC.**"
 - 6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of **polymer concrete**.
 - 1.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.

RA-709

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "**ELECTRIC.**".
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: **GRC**
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: **GRC** Underground Conduit: **Type EPC-80-PVC**
 3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): **LFMC**.
 4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, **Type 3R**.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: **EMT**.
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: **EMT**
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: **GRC**. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: **EMT**
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): **FMC**, except use **LFMC** in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: **GRC**.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 **stainless steel** in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: **3/4-inch (21-mm)** trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

RA-710

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use **setscrew, steel** fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds **120 deg F (49 deg C)**

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least **6 inches (150 mm)** away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- D. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- E. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within **12 inches (300 mm)** of changes in direction.
- F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Support conduit within **12 inches (300 mm)** of enclosures to which attached.
- H. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

RA-711

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- J. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- K. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- L. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to **1-1/4-inch (35-mm)** trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on **1-1/2-inch (41-mm)** trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- M. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200-lb (90-kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- N. Surface Raceways:
1. Install surface raceway with a minimum **2-inch (50-mm)** radius control at bend points.
 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding **48 inches (1200 mm)** and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces.
- P. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Q. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **30 deg F (17 deg C)** and that has straight-run length that exceeds **25 feet (7.6 m)**.
 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.

RA-712

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **155 deg F (86 deg C)** temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - d. Attics: **135 deg F (75 deg C)** temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least **0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per degree F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per degree C)** of temperature change for PVC conduits.
 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- R. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of **72 inches (1830 mm)** of flexible conduit for **recessed and semirecessed luminaires**, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- S. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to **center** of box unless otherwise indicated.
- T. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between the box and cover plate or the supported equipment and box.
- U. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- V. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- W. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- X. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- Y. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- Z. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

RA-713

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-up at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete for a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 12 inches below grade.

RA-714

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

RA-715

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
3. Flexible nonmetallic duct.
4. Duct accessories.
5. Precast concrete handholes.
6. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
7. Fiberglass handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
8. Fiberglass handholes and boxes.
9. High density plastic boxes.
10. Precast manholes.
11. Utility structure accessories.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
 1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
 2. Multiple duct banks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
 - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.

RA-716

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
- c. Include cover design.
- d. Include grounding details.
- e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Duct and Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.
- C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete **handholes**, as required by ASTM C 858.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- B. Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated **GRC**.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, minimum.
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

RA-717

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: **Type EPC-80-PVC** complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.
 - 1.

2.3 FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC DUCTS

- A. HDPE Duct: **Type EPEC-40 HDPE**], complying with NEMA TC 7 and UL 651A.
- B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
 - 1.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.5 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
- B. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- C. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
- D. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.

RA-718

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with hinged steel access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 - 1. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
 - 2. Cover Handle: Recessed.
 - F. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - G. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "**ELECTRIC.**"
 - H. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 - I. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
 - 1. Extension shall provide increased depth of **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 - 2. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
 - J. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
 - K. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus an additional **12 inches (300 mm)** vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - L. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - M. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- 2.6 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER
- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
 - B. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
 - C. Color: **Gray**.
 - D. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.

RA-719

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- F. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- G. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, **as indicated for each service.**
- H. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- I. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.7 FIBERGLASS HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE FRAME AND COVER

- A. Description: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
- B. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- C. Color: **Gray.**
- D. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- F. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- G. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, **as indicated for each service.**
- H. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- I. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

RA-720

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC **Type EPC-80-PVC** concrete-encased unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC **Type EPC-80-PVC**, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Bored Underground Duct: [**Type EPEC-40 HDPE**] [**Type EPEC-80-HDPE**] unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Ducts Crossing **Paved Paths, Walks, and Driveways/Roadways**: RNC **Type EPC-40 PVC**, encased in reinforced concrete.
- E. Stub-ups: Concrete-encased **RNC**.

RA-721

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
1. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: **Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15** structural load rating.
 2. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: **Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8]** structural load rating.
 3. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: **Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin**, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with **3000-lbf (13 345-N)** vertical loading.
 4. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Replace area **immediately after backfilling is completed.**
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures according to "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

3.5 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct according to NEMA TCB 2.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from a high point between two manholes, to drain in both directions.
- D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of **48 inches (1200 mm)**, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.

RA-722

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Duct shall have maximum of two 90 degree bends or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.
- E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane.
- F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.
- G. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately **10 inches (250 mm)** o.c. for **5-inch (125-mm)** duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
- H. Terminator Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c. for **4-inch (100-mm)** duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
- I. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least **10 feet (3 m)** outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for RNC-to-GRC transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- J. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least **15-psig (1.03-MPa)** hydrostatic pressure.
- K. Pulling Cord: Install **200-lbf- (1000-N-)** test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- L. Concrete-Encased Ducts and Duct Bank:
 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench **12 inches (300 mm)** wider than duct on each side.
 3. Width: Excavate trench **3 inches (75 mm)** wider than duct on each side.
 4. Depth: Install so top of duct envelope is at least **24 inches (600 mm)** below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least **30 inches (750 mm)** below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 6. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than **four** spacers per **20 feet (6 m)** of duct. Place spacers within **24 inches**

RA-723

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
7. Minimum Space between Duct: 3 inches (75 mm) between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts for like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications ducts.
 8. Elbows: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct unless otherwise indicated. Extend encasement throughout length of elbow.
 9. Elbows: Use manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 10. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct where crossing disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 11. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
 12. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between duct of like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications ducts.
 13. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 14. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between duct and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow around duct and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-installation application.

M. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Width: Excavate trench 12 inches (300 mm) wider than duct on each side.
3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches (75 mm) wider than duct on each side.
4. Depth: Install top of duct at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
5. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below frost line.
6. Support ducts on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
7. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.

RA-724

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

8. Install duct with a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** between ducts for like services and **6 inches (150 mm)** between power and communications duct.
 9. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct direction unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 10. Install manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct.
 11. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to **4 inches (100 mm)** over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
 - a. Place minimum **3 inches (75 mm)** of sand as a bed for duct. Place sand to a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** above top level of duct.
 - b. Place minimum **6 inches (150 mm)** of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct.
- N. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury **conducting** underground line specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than **12 inches (300 mm)** above all concrete-encased duct and duct banks **and approximately 12 inches (300 mm) below grade**. Align tape parallel to and within **3 inches (75 mm)** of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each **12-inch (300-mm)** increment of duct-bank width over a nominal **18 inches (450 mm)**. Space additional tapes **12 inches (300 mm)** apart, horizontally.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1-inch (25-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:

1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least **15 inches (375 mm)** below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 12 inches below grade.

RA-725

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

- C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, 12 inches below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 12-inch- (300-

RA-726

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

mm-) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.

3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.

1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260543

RA-727

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

RA-728

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than **50 inches (1270 mm)** and with no side larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.052 inch (1.3 mm)**.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter **50 inches (1270 mm)** or more and one or more sides larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.138 inch (3.5 mm)**.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 1. Sealing Elements: **EPDM** rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: **Carbon steel**.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

RA-729

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 - 2.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

RA-730

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using **steel** pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

RA-731

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
- 2. Labels.
- 3. Bands and tubes.
- 4. Tapes and stencils.
- 5. Tags.
- 6. Signs.
- 7. Cable ties.
- 8. Paint for identification.
- 9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

RA-732

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with **NFPA 70E** requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.**

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. **Black letters on an orange field**
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded **service, feeder, and branch-circuit** conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Color for Neutral: **White.**
 - 5. Color for Equipment Grounds: **Green.**
 - 6.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

RA-733

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR **36 INCHES (915 MM)**."

2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameter and that stay in place by gripping action.
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: **Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-)** thick, **polyester** flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 2. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 3. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: **Polyester**, thermal, transfer-printed, **3-mil- (0.08-mm-)** thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 1. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. **1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm)**for raceway and conductors.
 - b. **3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm)**for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, **2 inches (50 mm)** long, with diameters sized to suit diameter and that stay in place by gripping action.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameters of and shrunk to fit firmly around item being identified. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of **200 deg F (93 deg C)**. Comply with UL 224.

RA-734

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than **3 mils (0.08 mm)** thick by **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)** wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- C. Tape and Stencil: **4-inch- (100-mm-)** wide black stripes on **10-inch (250-mm)** centers placed diagonally over orange background and is **12 inches (300 mm)** wide. Stop stripes at legends.
- D. Floor Marking Tape: **2-inch- (50-mm-)** wide, **5-mil (0.125-mm)** pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with **yellow and black** stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical **and communications** utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 - 2. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
 - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE" .
 - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
 - 3. Tag: **Type I:**
 - a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, **continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility**, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 - c. Thickness: **4 mils (0.1 mm)**.
 - d. Weight: **18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m)**.
 - e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: **30 lbf (133.4 N)** and **2500 psi (17.2 MPa)**.
 - 4. Tag: **Type ID:**
 - a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, **continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility**, compounded for direct-burial service.

RA-735

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Width: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
- c. Overall Thickness: **5 mils (0.125 mm)**.
- d. Foil Core Thickness: **0.35 mil (0.00889 mm)**.
- e. Weight: **28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m)**.
- f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: **70 lbf (311.3 N)** and **4600 psi (31.7 MPa)**.

- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, **black** ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be **1 inch (25 mm)**.

2.6 TAGS

- A. Write-on Tags:

- 1. Polyester Tags: [**0.010 inch (0.25 mm)**] [**0.015 inch (0.38 mm)**] thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
- 2. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
- 3. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.7 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

- 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
- 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
- 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
- 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

- 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
- 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
- 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
- 4. Color: Black.

- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

- 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
- 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **7000 psi (48.2 MPa)**.
- 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.

RA-736

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).**
5. Color: Black.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.

RA-737

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- K. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for **power transfer**.
- L. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- M. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
- N. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- O. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 1. On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- R. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- U. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

RA-738

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of **6 inches (150 mm)** where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- V. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- W. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- X. Underground Line Warning Tape:
1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds **16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- Y. Write-on Tags:
1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Secure using **UV-stabilized** cable ties.
- Z. Baked-Enamel Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on minimum **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- AA. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on minimum **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- BB. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
1. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on minimum **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

RA-739

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

CC. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
- D. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use **vinyl wraparound labels** to identify the phase.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at **50-foot (15-m)** maximum intervals in straight runs, and at **25-foot (7.6-m)** maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: **Marker tape** that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- F. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- G. Workspace Indication: Apply **floor marking tape** to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- H. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- I. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: **Self-adhesive equipment labels**

RA-740

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- J. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- K. Operating Instruction Signs: **Self-adhesive labels**
- L. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: **Self-adhesive labels** with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for **power transfer**.
- M. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Indoor Equipment: Phenolic signs
 2. Outdoor Equipment: Phenolic Signs

END OF SECTION 260553

RA-741

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- B. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 2. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
 7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 9. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
 10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Panelboard schedules for installation in panelboards.

RA-742

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding **6600 feet (2000 m)**.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: **18 months** from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Enclosures: **Flush and Surface**-mounted, dead-front cabinets, as indicated on the contract documents.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 1**.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 3R**.
 - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 4**.
 - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, **Type 5**.
 - 2. Height: **84 inches (2.13 m)** maximum.
 - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.

RA-743

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - E. Incoming Mains Location: **Convertible between top and bottom.**
 - F. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.**
 - G. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 1. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.**
 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Compression** type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Compression** type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 4. Feed-Through Lugs: **Compression** type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: **Compression** type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 - H. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
 - I. Future Devices: Panelboards shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
 - J. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.
 - K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
- 2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS
- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
 - B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than **36 inches (914 mm)** high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
 - C. Mains: **Circuit breaker.**

RA-744

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: **Bolt-on circuit breakers.**
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: **Bolt-on circuit breakers.**
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- B. Mains: **Circuit breaker or lugs only.**
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: **Bolt-on** circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Column-Type Panelboards: Single row of overcurrent devices with narrow gutter extension and overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with **interrupting capacity** to meet available fault currents. Series-connected rating is not allowed.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.

RA-745

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
- 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- 6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
- 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
- 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: **Compression** style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: **Integrally mounted** relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in **on or off** position.
 - h. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
 - 1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."

2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in **metal frame with transparent protective cover**.

RA-746

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install panelboards and accessories according to **NECA 407**.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- F. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- I. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- J. Stub four **1-inch (27-EMT)** empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four **1-inch (27-EMT)** empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- K. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

RA-747

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262416

RA-748

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience receptacles.
2. GFCI receptacles.
3. Toggle switches.
4. Wall plates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Copper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

RA-749

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description:
 - 1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, **feed**-through type.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
 - 3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

2.4 TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

RA-750

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.5 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: [~~0.035-inch~~ (1-mm)] **thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.**
 - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: **Galvanized steel.**
 - 4. Material for Damp Locations: **Cast aluminum** with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, **die-cast aluminum** with lockable cover.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: **As selected by Architect** unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
- B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:

RA-751

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than **6 inches (152 mm)** in length.
 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles **up**, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the **right**.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

RA-752

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. GFCI Receptacles: Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
 - a. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - b. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 - c. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 - d. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - e. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - f. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- D. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

RA-753

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 4. Enclosures.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in **PDF** > electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

RA-754

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: **One** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 - 1. **Single** throw.
 - 2. **Three** pole.
 - 3. **240-V** ac.
 - 4. **200 A and smaller**.
 - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate **specified** fuses.
 - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:

RA-755

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, **240** -V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, **240**-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, **240**-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- B. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip

RA-756

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

- C. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be **100 percent rated** combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. _____ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."
- D. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Lugs shall be suitable for **140 deg F (60 deg C) rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below**.
- F. Standards: Comply with UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 2. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 3. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
 - 3. Alarm Switch: One **NO** contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

RA-757

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be **finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1)**.
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be **externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover**. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 1**.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 3R**.
 - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 4**.
 - 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

RA-758

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

RA-759

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
 - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."
- C. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
 - f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:

RA-760

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
 - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.

RA-761

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
- f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262816

RA-762

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes automatic and nonautomatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
 - 2. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For transfer switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- B. Source quality control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: **18 months** from date of Substantial Completion.

RA-763

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 99.
- D. Comply with NFPA 110.
- E. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- F. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
 - 2. Short-time withstand capability for **three** cycles.
- H. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- I. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- J. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- K. Service-Rated Transfer Switch:
 - 1. Comply with UL 869A and UL 489.
 - 2. Provide terminals for bonding the grounding electrode conductor to the grounded service conductor.
 - 3. In systems with a neutral, the bonding connection shall be on the neutral bus.
 - 4. Provide removable link for temporary separation of the service and load grounded conductors.

RA-764

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

5. Surge Protective Device: Service rated.
 6. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1008 for **normal bus**
 7. Service Disconnecting Means: Externally operated, manual **mechanically** actuated.
- L. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.
- N. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.
1. Float type, rated **2 A**.
 2. Ammeter to display charging current.
 3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.
- O. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable **with printed** markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
 4. Accessible via **front** access.
- P. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, **Type 1** or **Type 3R (as indicated on the contract documents)** complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES
- A.
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 5. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.**

RA-765

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

6. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
 8. Ground bar.
 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
 2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
 3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
 4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.
- F. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- G. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal **and Alternate** Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

RA-766

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
 9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
 10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
 11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
 12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
 13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 1. Limitation: Switches using contactor-based components are unacceptable.
 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching.
 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 5. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.**
 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
 8. Ground bar.
 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

RA-767

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- D. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
 2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
 3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
 4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.
- E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- F. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with UL 489 and UL 869A.
- G. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal **and Alternative** Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."

RA-768

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
- 8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
- 9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
- 10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
- 11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- 12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- 13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

2.4 NONAUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Electrically Operated: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.
- B. Manual and Electrically Operated: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Manual handle provides quick-make, quick-break manual-switching action. Switch shall be capable of electrically or manually transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized. Control circuit disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- C. Double-Throw Switching Arrangement: Incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during switching sequence.
- D. Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.

RA-769

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and alternative-source sensing circuits.
 - 1. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - 2. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Alternative Source Available."

- F. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Switch shall have one set of normally closed contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.

- G. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 2. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching.
 - 3. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 4. Material:**Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.**
 - 5. Main and Neutral Lugs:**Mechanical** type.
 - 6. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators:**Mechanical** type.
 - 7. Ground bar.
 - 8. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for **emergency** systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
 - a. Overvoltage.
 - b. Undervoltage.
 - c. Loss of supply voltage.
 - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
 - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
 - f. Temperature rise.
 - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
 - h. Overload.
 - i. Contact opening.
 - j. Endurance.
 - k. Short circuit.

RA-770

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- l. Short-time current capability.
- m. Receptacle withstand capability.
- n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in **Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
 4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

RA-771

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
- G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions **and Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."** Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- H. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- I. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than **18 inches (457 mm)** in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections.
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
 - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
 - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
 - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
 - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
 - l. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.

RA-772

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
 - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
 - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
 - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
 - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
 - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
 - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
 - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 2) Engine start sequence.
 - 3) Time delay on transfer.
 - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 5) Automatic transfer operation.
 - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
 - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
 - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
 - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
4. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.

RA-773

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
- 5. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
 - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- D. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
 - 3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

RA-774

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Cylinder.
2. Downlight.
3. Lowbay.
4. Recessed linear.
5. Strip light.
6. Surface mount, linear.
7. Surface mount, nonlinear.
8. Suspended, linear.
9. Suspended, nonlinear.
10. Materials.
11. Finishes.
12. Luminaire support.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards" for panelboards used for lighting control.
3. Section 260933 "Central Dimming Controls" or Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming systems and for fluorescent dimming controls with dimming ballasts specified in interior lighting Sections.
4. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

RA-775

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, arranged by designation.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4.
- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: **Five** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

RA-776

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 - 2. California Title 24 compliant.
 - 3. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
 - 4. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
 - 5. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
 - 6. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- C. CRI of **80**. CCT of [**3000 K**].
- D. Rated lamp life of **50,000** hours to L70.
- E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- F. Internal driver.
- G. Nominal Operating Voltage: **120 V ac**.
 - 1. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Housings:
 - 1. **Extruded-aluminum** housing and heat sink.
 - 2. **Clear**] finish.

2.2 DOWNLIGHT

- A. Minimum **1,000** lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of **80** lumens per watt.
- B. Universal mounting bracket.
- C. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

RA-777

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.3 STRIP LIGHT

- A. Minimum **750** lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of **80**lumens per watt.
- B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.4 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

- A.
- B. Minimum **2,000** lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of **85**lumens per watt.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Housings:
 - 1. **Extruded-aluminum** housing and heat sink.
 - 2. **Clear** finish.

2.6 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: **1/2-inch (13-mm)** steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

RA-778

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.
- D. Rod Hangers: **3/16-inch (5-mm)** minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports: Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support: Secured to outlet box.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. **Attached to structural members in walls.**
 - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Ceiling mount with **two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-)** diameter aircraft cable supports **adjustable to 120 inches (6 m) in length.**
 - 2. Ceiling mount with **pendant mount** with **5/32-inch- (4-mm-)** diameter aircraft cable supports **adjustable to 120 inches (6 m) in length.**
 - 3. Ceiling mount with hook mount.
- H. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
 - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and **wire support** for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
 - 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

RA-779

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
 - 2. Secure luminaire using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
- J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.
- K. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 265119

RA-780

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 265219 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Emergency lighting units.
 - 2. Exit signs.
 - 3. Luminaire supports.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with integral or remote emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support, arranged by designation.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

RA-781

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- C. Sample Warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for recessed luminaires.
- F. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body.

RA-782

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Emergency Connection: Operate **one** lamp continuously at an output of **1100** lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Less than **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)** or exceeding **104 deg F (40 deg C)**, with an average value exceeding **95 deg F (35 deg C)** over a 24-hour period.
 - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than **minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C)** and not exceeding **140 deg F (60 deg C)**.
 - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, **nickel-cadmium** type.
6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.2 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Internally Lighted Signs:
 1. Operating at nominal voltage of **120 V ac**.
 2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.

RA-783

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. **Tempered Fresnel glass.**
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. **Extruded aluminum.**
2. **anodized]** finish.

E. Conduit: **Electrical metallic tubing**, minimum **3/4 inch (21 mm)** in diameter.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

RA-784

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire **and emergency power unit** weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of fixture weight.

E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. **Attached to structural members in walls**
2. Do not attach fixtures directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of fixture oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and **tubing or rod** for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.

H. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

RA-785

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

END OF SECTION 265219

RA-786

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
- 4.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

RA-787

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale and coordinated.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Luminaire.
 - 2. Photoelectric relay.
- D. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
 - 2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 **and listed for wet location**.
- E. CRI of **minimum 80**. CCT of **3000 K**.

RA-788

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- F. L70 lamp life of **50,000** hours.
- G. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- H. Nominal Operating Voltage: **120 V ac**].
- I. In-line Fusing: **On the primary for each luminaire.**
- J. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for **outdoor use.**
- K. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.
- L. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: **Corrosion-resistant aluminum.** Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- G. Housings:

RA-789

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

2.3 FINISHES

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.

RA-790

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

2.4 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. **Attached to structural members in walls.**
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. **Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.**
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.2 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

RA-791

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch-** (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
 - a. IES LM-5.
 - b. IES LM-50.
 - c. IES LM-52.
 - d. IES LM-64.
 - e. IES LM-72.
 - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires.

END OF SECTION 265619

RA-792

C204265 I-4400 BB&C

Bumcombe-Henderson County

COMPENSATION FOR (ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING)

COMPENSATION FOR (ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING)

1.01 COMPENSATION

- A. The work of furnishing all Materials and Labor for Electrical Installation for the I-26 Buncombe / Henderson County Rest Area Building(2) and Rest Area Vending Building(2), in accordance with the Architectural Building Plans / Electrical Plans and Specifications and in coordination with Site Plans and Site Utility Plans ,completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for "Each" -" Electrical Installation Rest Area Service Building" and "Each" - "Electrical Installation for Rest Area Vending Building". ***(Work shall include all Materials and Labor for connecting to Electric Service Meter Five Feet (5') outside Rest Area Building, Constructing Concrete Pad /Conduit / Wiring connecting to Electric Backup Generator (Generator By Others) and all outside Electrical Service Connections from the Vending Building to the Rest Area Building)*** Such price and payment will be full compensation for all Building Electrical Installation work, including but not limited to furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work of Building Electrical Installation.

Payment will be made under:

"ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BUILDING" EACH

"ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BUILDING" EACH

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SITE DEVELOPMENT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

PLANTING

LANDSCAPE PLANTING.....	3
SEASONAL LIMITATIONS.....	3
ESTABLISHMENT PERIOD FOR PLANTING.....	3
HERBICIDES.....	4
LANDSCAPE EDGING.....	5
MULCH FOR PLANTING.....	5
WATER FOR PLANTING.....	6
TOPSOIL.....	6
LANDSCAPE FINISH GRADING.....	6
TREE PROTECTION FENCE.....	7
SODDING.....	10

REST AREA SITE DEVELOPMENT

YARD HYDRANT.....	13
DOG PARK FIRE HYDRANT.....	14
CONCRETE PATIO TABLE WITH UMBRELLA	15
WASTE CONTAINER.....	16
RECYCLING CONTAINER.....	16
40' FLAG POLE.....	17
DECORATIVE PAVERS.....	18
9" CONCRETE BORDER	18
RIVER ROCK	19
GRANITE SCREENINGS.....	20
6' ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	21
4' ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	21
STONE WALL AND ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	23
STONE RETAINING WALL AND ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	23
2' STONE WALL	23
BOULDERS.....	24
SITE SIGNING.....	25
CURB BUMPER.....	26
DEPRESSED SIDEWALK RAMP.....	26
CONCRETE LETTER BLOCK SEAT	26

DOWNSPOUT DRAINAGE SYSTEM 27
PATIO CATCH BASIN 27
MICRO CHANNEL DRAIN 27
6” PVC DRAIN 27
8’ CHAIN LINK FENCE WITH SLATS 29
BIFOLD DUMPSTER GATE 29
GRAPHIC FENCE SIGN 31
DEMOLITION OF REST AREA BUILDINGS/ PICNIC FACILITIES..... 32



LANDSCAPE PLANTING

Furnish, deliver, plant bed preparation and the planting of trees, shrubs, ground covers, bedding plants and seedlings at locations shown on the plans or as directed, in accordance to NCDOT Standard Specification 1670.

Basis of Payment: Landscape Planting will be paid for at the contract “lump sum’ unit price per specific location.

Landscape Planting-WBL..... Lump Sum
Landscape Planting-EBL Lump Sum

SEASONAL LIMITATIONS

The initial planting and replacement of plants shall be done from October 15 thru March 31. See Standard Specifications Sections 1060 - Landscape Development Materials and 1670 - Planting.

ESTABLISHMENT PERIOD FOR PLANTING

Establishment Period for Planting: An establishment period will begin after satisfactory installation and acceptance of all of the planting and *will apply only to the woody plant materials: trees, shrubs and ground covers*. All plants must be in an upright healthy condition, planted at the proper depth, mulched areas will be weed free and tidy and any staking or guying that is utilized must be in proper condition prior to beginning the establishment period. During the establishment period the contractor will be responsible for proper care of the plantings in accordance with Section 1670-14 Establishment.

All plants that do not continue to conform to the specifications and quality as approved when they were installed will be unacceptable. The contractor will remove all plants that are determined to be unacceptable from the site within five days of request by the Engineer. Replacements will be installed within the Seasonal Limitations.

Each month during the establishment period a meeting will be held between the Engineer and the Contractor to discuss establishment work required during that period. Additional meetings may be scheduled if deemed necessary by the Engineer. All the required work will be performed in a timely manner and with utmost regard to the safety and convenience of the rest area users. Failure on the part of the contractor to complete the required work in a satisfactory manner will result in the Department having the work performed by others and paid for by the Performance Bond.

All requirements of Section 1670-14 Establishment will also be applicable during the Establishment Period for Planting. The Establishment Period for Planting will last a minimum of

twelve months and extend into the seasonal limitations for planting in order to allow replacement plantings to be installed. See contract times for exact time period and dates.

HERBICIDES

Post-emergence herbicidal treatment and Pre-emergent herbicidal treatment will consist of the following products and rates unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Follow guidelines noted in the Standard Specification Section 1670.

Herbicide Chart

Herbicide Brand Name	Common Name	Formulation	Oral LD/50 (MG/KG)	Amount of Formulation per Acre	Lbs. of Active Ingredient per Acre	Adjuvants	Remarks
<i>Stump Control</i>							
<i>Garlon</i>	Triclopyr	3 S	2,574	1 gal./1 gal. of water	3 #	1 - 2 qts. Surfactant /acre	Paint or spray, add bullseye dye.
<i>Pre-emergent</i>							
<i>Pennant + Endurance + Gallery</i>	Metolachlor + Prodiamine + Isoxaben	Liquid (5G) + 65 WDG + 75 DF	3750 + >5,000 + 5,000	2 - 3 pts. (40#) + 2# + 1#	1.95 - 2.93# (2#) + 20 lbs. + 1#	NA	Spring application ; use tank agitation when mixing.
<i>Post-emergent</i>							
<i>Roundup</i>	Glyphosate	4 S	>5,000	2 - 4 qts.	2 - 4 #	2 - 4 qts. Surfactant / 100 gals.	NA

Basis of Payment: Pre-emergent herbicidal treatment and Post-emergent herbicidal treatment will be measured and paid for in square yards of plant bed measured along the surface of the ground.

Pre-Emergent Herbicidal Treatment for Plant BedsSquare Yard
Post-Emergent Herbicidal Treatment for Plant Beds Square Yard

LANDSCAPE EDGING

General

The work covered by this item will consist of furnishing and installing the metal landscape edging in locations as directed by the engineer.

Landscape Metal edging construction will conform to Commercial Grade Metal Edging or equivalent. Metal Edging will be 3/16" (4.8mm) hot rolled low carbon steel (ASTM-A-36, ASTM-A-283, ASTM-A-569) with a 6" width. Edging will include a minimum of 4 stakes per 10' length, and prefabricated corners and ends. Stakes will be 16" long. Color will be a black electrostatic powder coated finish resistant to cracking, chipping, corrosion and UVA damage.

Compensation

The work of installing landscape metal edging as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per linear foot for "Landscape Metal Edging". Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, and equipment and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Landscape Metal Edging Linear Foot

MULCH FOR PLANTING

Mulch for planting shall consist of pine bark. All mulch and the work associated in placing the mulch during planting shall conform to article 1060-11 of the Standard Specifications.

Mulch for Planting: Mulch will be pine bark from a single source unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. **Submit sample for approval prior to placement.** Install mulch to a finished depth of 4 inches, rake and compact to create a uniform finish.

Payment will be made under:

Mulch for planting Cubic Yard

WATER FOR PLANTING

Water for Planting: Water for Planting will be applied in accordance with the standard specifications. Water for Planting will be furnished as described herein. It is anticipated that installation of the landscape planting and sod, and therefore watering of plant materials and sod, will occur after the site water system has been installed, connected and is functional. Consequently the water for this project will be provided to the contractor through the on site water system. Should a problem occur with the on site water system the contractor will be required to furnish water from an alternative source with no additional compensation to the contractor. All applicable sections of Section 1060, 'Landscape Development Materials' and Section 1670, 'Planting' of the Standard Specifications will apply.

Payment will be made under:

Water for PlantingM / G

TOPSOIL
LANDSCAPE FINISH GRADING

General

Landscape finish grading consists of placing 6” of topsoil material within the interior part of the site seeding, sod, and planting beds, and cutting and backfilling around buildings, sidewalks, etc., to provide proper drainage and elevations as indicated on the grading plans, cross-sections, and as directed by the Engineer. Topsoil is not to be used for storm water basin areas unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. Landscape finish grading is the fine grading of the exposed soil in order to give a smooth consistent surface in and around the interior site and areas around the buildings.

Material

Topsoil will be as specified herein and will be utilized for all fill/backfill operations as directed by the Engineer.

Topsoil will be a sandy loam, silt loam or clay loam that contains a reasonable amount of humus material. Topsoil will be of good texture, loose and friable and will be representative of topsoil in the general vicinity. It will be reasonably free from sod, hard lumps, subsoil, large roots, rocks and gravel, noxious weed seeds and/or toxic substances or other material, which would be harmful to plant growth. **Topsoil delivered to the job site will be approved by the Engineer prior to placement.** No topsoil shall be placed without being previously approved.

Primary earthwork for the general construction and grading of the site is not part of this pay item. Fill material to bring building site to finished grade (or within 6”) will be as specified in the building specifications under earthwork.

Installation

Place building fill and compact as described in the building specifications. Place topsoil fill and spread evenly to a depth of 6 inches or as directed by the Engineer, which after settlement, constitutes finish grade. Do not place topsoil when the ground is frozen, is excessively wet, or is in a condition that the soil cannot be worked easily and dressed smoothly. Compact fill material under elevated sidewalks/concrete paving to a density equal to or greater than undisturbed soil in the area.

Compensation

‘Landscape Finish Grading’ will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for the work detailed in this section that has been successfully accomplished and accepted. Building fill will be included as part of the building lump sum payment. ‘Topsoil’ will be paid for in the actual number of cubic yards of topsoil placed and accepted. Topsoil will be measured by truck measurement. Each truck will be measured and will have a legible identification mark indicating its capacity. Load each truck to at least its measured capacity at the time it arrives at the point of delivery. The recorded capacity will be adjusted by making a 25 percent deduction to allow for shrinkage, and the adjusted capacity will be the quantity to be paid for.

Such price and payment will be full compensation for furnishing, all labor, equipment and all incidentals necessary to complete the work satisfactorily.

Payment will be made under:

Landscape Finish Grading Lump Sum

Topsoil Cubic Yard

TREE PROTECTION FENCE

General Requirements and Restrictions

The aesthetics and comfort of the rest area is greatly enhanced by the maturing trees on the site. The Department has dedicated much effort to preserve all trees possible during this project. This will require the utmost care during the construction process since the construction. The contractor will assist the department by educating its employees, subcontractors and any utility companies conducting work in the vicinity, of the efforts and the preservation measures required herein.

Tree Preservation/Protection Fence consist of furnishing, installing, maintaining, and removing wood slat, polyethylene, or polypropylene fence as specified or as directed by the Engineer and in accordance with the special provisions included herein.

Install tree protection fence prior to any demolition. All construction unless approved by the Engineer will occur within the construction fence. *Do not trespass* with vehicles or machinery in

the areas indicated for tree preservation. Do not park, refuel, repair or maintain vehicles or equipment in the tree preservation areas. Do not stockpile materials or store equipment in the tree preservation areas.

Do not release petroleum products, fuels, paints, or lubricants anywhere within this project in the vicinity of the tree preservation areas or in areas that drain into this vicinity. Do not apply or release herbicides, fertilizers or chemicals of any kind that may be toxic to plant life and do not 'clean out' concrete trucks in the vicinity of the tree preservation areas, or into areas that drain into this vicinity. Do not burn trash, debris or vegetation in the vicinity of tree preservation areas.

Demolition, ground disturbing activities and construction that occurs within the drip line of the tree(s) or within a radius three times the drip line of the tree(s) will be done with utmost care. Accomplish all grading in such a manner as to avoid standing water or saturated soils around root systems of trees that are to remain. Install erosion control devices in a timely manner to prevent sedimentation of the tree root zone in the tree preservation areas. In areas to be 'cut' by grading or where utility trenches or building footings occur, prevent shredding, tearing or exposing roots by excavating a trench not less than 6" wide and to the maximum depth of the cut up to 24" deep. Hand saw any roots 2" or greater in diameter that are encountered to make a clean smooth cut. If necessary, dig out enough soil to reach an undamaged portion of the root to make the smooth cut. To prevent drying out of roots, immediately cover any exposed root surfaces with 6" of approved mulch or soil until 'finish' construction operations dictate removal. Supplemental irrigation may be necessary during periods of drought or stress. Irrigate as directed and approved by the Engineer.

Branches that protrude into the construction area that interfere with construction operations will be tied back if possible or pruned if not. Follow proper pruning techniques as established in American National Standards Institute ANSI Z133.1 and perform pruning by a professional arborist. Submit description of proposed work along with arborist credentials to the Engineer for approval prior to conducting work.

Violation of any of these tree preservation measures will result in suspension of all work until the violation is resolved or repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Such suspension of work will not be considered justification for additional compensation in accordance with Section 104 of the Standard Specifications or extension of the contract time.

Materials

Posts will be nominal 2" x 4" or 4" x 4", lengths as required, structural light framing, grade no. 2, southern yellow pine or steel posts will be a minimum of 1 3/8" wide measured parallel to the fence, with a weight of 1.25 lbs/ft of length. Wood posts will be treated with a preservative in accordance with Section 1082-3 of the Standard Specifications.

Fence fabric will be a barricade or safety barrier type highly visible orange polyethylene or polypropylene mesh that is approved by the Engineer. Fabric will be UV stabilized, flexible and inert to most chemicals and acid.

Signs will be fabricated of a durable, weatherproof lightweight material. Signs will have a white background with red lettering. They will be a minimum of 4.5 square feet and clearly display the following message in both English and Spanish:

TREE PROTECTION ZONE

DO NOT ENTER

Submit sample for approval prior to placing.

Installation

Erect fence to conform to the general contour of the ground. Do not remove existing plant material in order to install fence unless directed by the Engineer.

Set post and maintain in a vertical position. Post may be hand set or set with a post driver. If hand set, thoroughly tamp all backfill material, if power driven, wood posts may be sharpened to a dull point. Remove and replace any post damaged by power driving prior to final acceptance. Cut the tops of all posts at a 30-degree angle. The posts may, at the option of the Contractor, be cut at this angle either before or after the posts are erected. Contractor is responsible for locating all utilities prior to installation of fence posts.

Stretch fence fabric taut and attach to post with appropriate means according to post type utilized. In sections where signs will be located, reinforce top of fabric by weaving a 12 gauge galvanized wire in the fabric and firmly attach to the post at each end of section. Place signs every 100 linear feet with a minimum of one sign for each segment facing in a different direction. Secure sign to fence fabric at all four corners placing near the top of the fence fabric where clearly visible.

Tree Protection Fence Maintenance

At any time during the duration of the project if the tree protection fence is not in an upright secure position with no gaps and properly signed, work on the project will be suspended wholly until the fence is properly repaired and determined to be in satisfactory condition by the Engineer. Remove tree protection fence, fill post holes, weed/mow and dispose of debris off site as a last item of work on the project.

Compensation

Tree Protection Fence will be paid for as 'Tree Protection Fence' in linear feet as measured along the surface of the installed and accepted work.

Such payment will be full compensation for the work described above including furnishing, installing, and removing; fence post, fence bracing, fence fabric, staples, tie wires; all tools, equipment and any other incidentals necessary to complete the work. Mulch and/or watering required herein will be incidental to the completion of the work.

Payment will be made under.

Tree Protection Fence Linear Feet

SODDING (Zoysia)

General: The sodding shall be prepared in accordance with all applicable requirements of Section 1663 of the Standard Specifications and the following provisions:

The Contractor shall obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by The N.C. Department of Agriculture (1-800-206-9333) or (919-733-6932) stating that the sod has been found to be free of injurious plant pests.

Materials:

Only "approved sod" (trade designation) consisting of zoysia shall be used. The sod, machine cut to the suppliers standard width and length, shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum thickness, excluding top growth and thatch, at the time of cutting. Before cutting, the sod shall be uniformly mowed at a height of 2 to 3 inches (52-78 mm). Standard sod sections shall be sufficiently strong to support their own weight and retain their size and shape when suspended vertically from a firm grasp on the upper 10% of the section.

APPROVED ZOYSIA VARIETIES: EMERALD, ZEON, EL TORO

Sod shall be delivered on site within 24 hours of being cut and be covered by acceptable means during delivery. A certificate from the sod producer stating the date and time of sod cutting shall accompany the sod when it arrives at the project site.

Soil Preparation:

Remove litter and other debris. Satisfactorily dispose of weeds or other unacceptable growth on the areas to be sodded.

Prior to beginning preparation of the soil to receive sod, all eroded, uneven and rough areas shall be contour graded and/or filled with soil as directed by the Engineer. The soil shall be scarified or otherwise loosened to a depth of not less than 5 inches (130 mm) with a maximum width of 48 inches (1145 mm). Clods shall be broken and the top 2 to 3 inches (52 to 78 mm) of soil shall be

worked into an acceptable soil bed by the use of soil pulverizers, drags, or harrows.

The Contractor shall be responsible for taking sufficient soil samples (at least one sample per planting area for testing by The Department of Agriculture, Soil Testing Division, to determine the soil pH. Samples shall be taken in the presence of the Engineer. Results shall be received by the Engineer directly from the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services.

Limestone: Based on these results the Contractor shall add limestone, if required, to bring the soil pH to 5.5 to 6.5 (opt. 6.0). The amount of limestone to be applied will be approved by the Engineer prior to application. Application of limestone will be considered incidental to the work of "Sodding" and no direct payment will be made for such.

Sulfur: Based on these results the Contractor shall add sulfur if the pH is greater than 7.0, to bring the soil pH to 5.5 to 6.5 (opt. 6.0). The amount of sulfur to be applied will be approved by the Engineer prior to application. Application of sulfur will be considered incidental to the work of "Sodding" and no direct payment will be made for such.

After soil preparation, lime or sulfur (if necessary), shall be uniformly distributed by mechanical means using a drop type spreader and thoroughly mixed with the top five inches (130 mm) of the soil by discing, harrowing, or other approved methods.

The area shall then be harrowed, dragged, raked, or prepared by other approved methods which will give a lawn type finish. All trash, debris and stones larger than 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) in diameter or other obstructions that could interfere with the placing of the sod shall also be removed. The finished surface shall be moistened with water prior to placing the sod as directed by the Engineer.

Placement:

Sod handling and placement shall be a continuous process of cutting, transporting and installing including repairing seams and voids. Sod shall always be installed within 48 hours after being cut. Sod shall be watered within 2 hours of installation.

Any sod or portions of sod rejected by the Engineer during the initial placement shall be removed from the project and replaced with acceptable sod immediately. The Contractor shall cease any and all other placement of sod on the project until rejected sod has been replaced.

After sod has been placed, and staked where necessary, according to Section 1663, it shall then be rolled or tamped carefully and firmly by means acceptable to the Engineer to ensure proper soil contact. If rolled, roller shall weigh 150#/ft (224kg/m) of roller width. Use of rubber tired equipment to roll shall not be allowed. Metal staples, 12 inches (305 mm) long unless otherwise approved, shall be made of 11 gauge (3.0 mm diameter) new steel wire so as not to bend when

pinned or driven through the sod. Extreme care shall be taken to prevent the installed sod from being torn or displaced. After rolling or tamping the sod, it shall be watered uniformly and thoroughly with a minimum of 1 inch of water (5.6 gallons per square yard (25 liters per square meter) applied immediately after installation of sod. In no case shall the time interval between sod placement and initial watering exceed 2 hours. Water shall be placed to the required quantity through sequential passes to insure proper coverage and to prevent runoff. A minimum of ¼ inch (6.4 mm) should be placed on each pass.

Maintenance:

The Contractor shall be responsible for all watering and other maintenance required to maintain the livability and health of the sod from installation until completion of the 60 day observation period (or min. 1 month following the dormancy period). Additional water shall be applied as needed and as directed by the Engineer to maintain the livability of the sod. Each additional watering event shall be a minimum of 0.5 inch of water (2.8 gallons per square yard (13 liters per square meter) uniformly applied over the sodded area and may be placed in a series of passes to prevent runoff, with a minimum of ¼ inch (6.4 mm) on each pass.

Any sod or portions of sod rejected by the Engineer after placement but prior to beginning the observation period, shall be removed from the project and replaced with acceptable sod. Satisfactory replacement of sod shall begin within 10 days of notification. Failure to replace and repair damaged or dead sod as directed by the Engineer may result in sanctions under Article 108-7 or Article 108-8.

Observation Period:

The Contractor shall maintain responsibility for the sod for a 60 day observation period (or min. 1 month following the dormancy period) beginning upon the satisfactory completion and acceptance of all work required in the plans or as directed by the Engineer. The Contractor shall guarantee the sod under the payment and performance bond, refer to Article 109-10 in the standard specifications.

Upon satisfactory completion of work and acceptance by the Engineer, the 60 day observation period shall begin (*or min. 1 month following the dormancy period*).

The Contractor shall be responsible for all watering and other maintenance required to maintain the livability of the sod from installation until final acceptance including monitoring the sod to ensure all watering and other maintenance is performed as required.

After the first 30 days of the bserveation period, the Contractor and Engineer shall meet to review the project and identify dead or damaged sod to be replaced. The Contractor, at no additional expense to the Department, shall satisfactorily replace any sod that is not in a living and healthy condition as determined by the Engineer. Replacement sod shall be furnished and installed in

accordance with the same requirements as for initial sodding operation, except that the amounts of limestone, sulfur, and water may be readjusted as directed by the Engineer. Satisfactory replacement of sod shall begin within 10 days of notification. Failure to replace and repair damaged or dead sod as directed by the Engineer may result in sanctions under Article 108-7 or Article 108-8. Upon completion and acceptance of the sod repairs, the remaining 30 days of the observation period shall begin.

Acceptance:

Sod must be out of dormancy before accepted.

At the end of the 60 day observation period, the sod furnished and installed under this contract must be in a living and healthy condition, as determined by the Engineer. Acceptance of sod will be at the end of the 60 day observation period.

Payment:

Payment and measurement to be in accordance with Section 1663 of the Standard Specifications.

Payment will be made under:

Sodding Square Yards

YARD HYDRANT

General: The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing, connecting and installing 3/4 inch post-type yard hydrants complete with concrete foundation, valve(s), and waste drainage as shown on the plans and as specified herein.

The Contractor shall supply electronically transferred shop drawings and specifications for the post-type yard hydrant proposed to be furnished, for approval by the Engineer.

Materials and Construction

Post-type yard hydrants shall be a non-freeze proof design for a minimum burial depth of 30 inches. (Note: Each hydrant shall have a screw on vacuum break at the nozzle).

Gate valve, and valve box: A 1” water line will be installed (separate pay item) and this pay item covers the installation of a 1” to 3/4” transition coupling then connected to a cut-off valve (within 5’ of the hydrant) on the 3/4” supply line shall be of the stop and drain key operated type,

bronze body conforming to ASTM B62. Valve box shall conform to requirements for Valve Box under Site Water Distribution System.

Pipe: For drainage pipe from the yard hydrant to nearest catch basin, use AS-DMV meeting the requirements of ASTM D-2661, Schedule 40 with solvent cement for fittings complying with ASTM D-2235. Cleanouts shall be located by the Engineer on drain lines in excess of 50 feet and shall be installed with the proper shape, length and degree of bend to fit conditions. Cleanout plugs shall be a minimum of 2". The finish elevation shall be at the proposed finish grade for lawn, sidewalk, etc.

The locations for post-type yard hydrants as shown on the plans are substantially correct; however, the exact location will be established by the Engineer.

Details showing dimensions, mounting height, foundation slab, pipe sizes, waste drainage and other items are as shown on the plans.

A water service line shall be supplied and should be within 20' of the Yard Hydrant location. The contractor must connect and run appropriate waterline connection to the yard hydrant from the service line.

Sterilizing and Flushing 3/4 Inch Post-Type Yard Hydrants

Sterilizing and flushing as specified for "Water Line Construction" shall be done as part of the work of completing 3/4-inch post type yard hydrants.

Method of Measurement

The quantity of post type yard hydrants to be paid for will be the actual number of 3/4 inch post type yard hydrants with foundations and waste drainage complete in place and accepted.

Basis of Payment

3/4 inch Post-Type Yard Hydrants measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "3/4 Inch Post-Type Yard Hydrants", including but not limited to, furnishing all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Yard Hydrant Each

DOG PARK FIRE HYDRANT

General: The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and installing a **faux** 2 1/8" inch post-type fire hydrant with thread nozzle connections, complete with concrete foundation as shown on the plans and as specified herein.

The Contractor shall supply electronically transferred shop drawings and specifications for the post-type fire hydrant proposed to be furnished, for approval by the Engineer.

Materials and Construction:

Post-type fire hydrant shall be a design to look exactly like a real fire hydrant. Cast of iron and hand painted (min. 2 coats) of fire engine red paint; galvanized or stainless steel anchor bolts set in concrete base.

The locations for post-type fire hydrant as shown on the plans is substantially correct; however, the exact location will be established by the Engineer.

Details showing dimensions, mounting height, foundation slab, pipe sizes, and other items are as shown on the plans.

Method of Measurement

The quantity of post type fire hydrant to be paid for will be the actual number of 2 1/8" inch post type fire hydrant with foundations complete in place and accepted.

Basis of Payment

The fire hydrant measured as provided above will be paid for at the contract unit price each for Dog Park Fire Hydrant", including but not limited to, furnishing all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Dog Park Fire Hydrant Each

CONCRETE PATIO TABLE WITH UMBRELLA

General: The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and installing as shown on the drawings and herein specified, Round pre-cast concrete /terrazzo picnic table on concrete sidewalk in the patio area of each rest area site. Each location has 3 table (one of the 3 at each site shall be handicap accessible). 'Concrete Patio Table' includes all labor, materials, services and incidentals required to complete the work. Provide model TF3125 – G23 Gray by Wausau Tile, Belson Outdoor (model# TF312512), Park supply (model# 154-1157), or equal.

The contractor shall provide a table umbrella for each table. The umbrella shall be 9' diam. round, constructed with 9 oz. solution dyed marine grade fabric (wind resistant). The umbrella skeleton shall be constructed of 1/8" Thick Square Aluminum Ribs, Stainless Steel Parts; 1 1/2 inch aluminum center pole center, 1/8 thick pole thickness, and commercial grade pulley lift. Include 50 lb. umbrella base. The contractor shall supply color options to the Engineer. Umbrella should come with a min. 3 yr. manufacturer warranty from wear and fading.

The contractor shall drill a 3/8” hole in the umbrella pole (not compromise pole integrity) just below the table surface hgt. (for owner to fasten long hinged padlock to deter theft). The contractor is NOT responsible for supplying the lock(s).

Compensation

The work of furnishing and installing “Concrete Patio Table with Umbrella”, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for Each, such unit price to be considered full payment for each individual table, umbrella, and base stand including but not limited to, all labor, materials, and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Basis of Payment

Concrete Patio Table with Umbrella Each

WASTE CONTAINER

General: Waste container shall be furnished and installed in tandem with Recycling Container on 4” concrete pad in accordance with detail plans and shall be located as shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer.

Waste container unit shall be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the design and manufacture of precast exposed aggregate waste containers. (See Waste/Recycle Container Detail Plan Sheet for size, design, material, etc.) Finish color shall be light to medium "Grey" containers and "Dark Grey" hoods. Provide model TF1030 (A-3-color) by Wausau Tile, Belson Outdoor (model# 306-1001), Park supply (model# TF-1030), or equal. Submit six (6) copies of shop drawings or submittal data to Engineer for approval.

Compensation: The quantity of waste container units to be paid for shall be the actual number of Waste Container units with foundation slabs, complete in place and accepted, at the contract unit price each for each "Waste Container". Such price and payment will be full compensation for the work of furnishing and installing the waste container, including but not limited to, all labor, materials, tools, equipment and all incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Waste Container Each

RECYCLING CONTAINER

General: Recycling container shall be furnished and installed in tandem with Waste Container on 4” concrete pad in accordance with detail plans and shall be located as shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer.

Recycling container unit shall be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the design

and manufacture of precast exposed aggregate waste containers. (See Waste/Recycle Container Detail Plan Sheet for size, design, material, etc.) Recycling Container shall have international recycling logo cast into one side. Finish color shall be the same as the waste containers, but with "Blue" hoods. Provide model TF1030 (A-3-color) by Wausau Tile, Belson Outdoor (model# 306-1001), Park supply (model# TF-1030), or equal. Submit six (6) copies of shop drawings or submittal data to Engineer for approval.

Compensation: The quantity of waste container units to be paid for shall be the actual number of Waste Container units with foundation slabs, complete in place and accepted, at the contract unit price each for each "Waste Container (Precast conc.)". Such price and payment will be full compensation for the work of furnishing and installing the waste container, including but not limited to, all labor, materials, tools, equipment and all incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Recycling Container Each

40' FLAGPOLE

General: The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and installing 40' tapered aluminum flagpole, with **dual flag set**, at location as shown on the drawings.

Materials: The flagpoles shall be 40' exposed height (44' overall length) standard cone tapered aluminum flagpoles as manufactured by American Flagpole or equal. Provide a ball bearing revolving truck assembly with a 8" gold anodized ball finial. Provide an aluminum flash collar, dual flag set, and all components recommended by the manufacturer for a ground-set installation.

Installation: Follow the manufacturer's recommendations concerning ground set mounting for a 80 M.P.H. design a wind load.

Compensation: The Tapered Aluminum Flagpoles will be paid for at the contract unit price for each. Such payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section including, but not limited to, furnishing and installing the flagpole, flash collar, halyard, cleats, flag snaps, and all parts recommended by the manufacturer for a ground-set installation; and all labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

40' Flagpole Each

DECORATIVE PAVERS

General: The work covered by this section shall consist of furnishing and installing the Concrete Pavers in accordance with dimensions and finishes as shown on the plans, the details, and as described herein.

Materials and Construction

Paver shall be “Belgard Mega-Lafitt”, “Pavestone Capriana”, or “Unilock Avante Ashlar” (or approved equal) – 2 3/8” Thick , with varying width and lengths laid in a pattern shown with in the paver details. Specified Colors (2) : Medium Gray and Sand/Beige. Concrete edging (see 4” Concrete Sidewalk or (9” Concrete Border Spec) shall be installed as noted on the plans and details. Edging shall be placed in line and plumb with proposed grades and sidewalks. Contractor shall be an experienced contractor with installing landscape edging. Contractor shall supply references and paver samples to engineer prior to construction.

Pavers are also shown used as stepping stones. The placement of the pavers/stepping stones shall, once complete and installed, be stable, level, and flush with surrounding surfaces (i.e. finished grade of mulch, sod, or adjacent pavement). These pavers/stepping stones shall have a min. 2” compacted stone base.

Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment

The work of furnishing and installing Decorative Concrete Pavers as shown on the plans or as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per square feet for “Decorative Pavers”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing transport, all labor, materials, equipment, excavation and grading, and any other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Decorative Pavers Square Feet

9" CONCRETE BORDER - CLASS B CONCRETE

General: The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and constructing 9" wide concrete border in coordination with the installation of the decorative concrete pavers, sidewalk, patio, or concrete apron (surrounding site drop inlets) and accordance with the dimensions as shown in the drawings and as described herein.

The 9” concrete border construction shall conform to all applicable requirements of Section 848 (Sidewalks and Driveways) of the Standard Specifications.

Method of Measurement

The quantity of 9” concrete border to be paid for shall be the actual number of linear feet of 9” concrete border, measured parallel with the ground surface, complete in place and accepted.

Basis of Payment

The quantity measures as provided above, shall be paid for at the contract unit price per linear feet of "9” Concrete Border " complete in place and accepted, which price and payment shall be full compensation for furnishing and installing, and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

9" Concrete Border Linear Feet

RIVER ROCK

General: The work covered by this item consist of furnishing and installing ‘River Rock’ as shown on the plans, the details, and as described herein.

Materials: River Rock will consist of washed river rock, Tennessee river gravel, or approved equal available from local North Carolina sources in a size range of approximately 2 to 4 inches. The River Rock will be applied at locations shown on the plans and as directed by the engineer in the field. The River Rock mulched areas will be underplayed with landscape fabric (sample to be approved by the engineer). The cost of the landscape fabric will be incidental to the cost of the River Rock. The River Rock shall be similar or equal in color/texture/size to stone used in the around the bldg.. foundation.

A representative sample and the source of the River Rock will be submitted for the Engineer’s approval prior to delivery and placement.

Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment: The work of furnishing and installing the River Rock mulch as shown on the plans and as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per cubic yard for “River Rock”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, equipment for installation, coordination with

engineers and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

River Rock Cubic Yard

GRANITE SCREENINGS

General: The work covered by this item consist of furnishing and installing ‘Granite Screenings’ as shown on the plans, the details, and as described herein.

Materials: Granite Screenings are decomposed granite or a fine crushed granite byproduct in the production of gravel. Mixed screenings include stone fines with ‘larger’ stone not exceeding 1/4” size. The Granite Screenings will be placed at locations shown on the plans and as directed by the engineer in the field. The granite screening mulched areas will be underplayed with landscape fabric (sample to be approved by the engineer). Once placed, the granite screenings will vibrated/tamped to provide a stable walkable surface. The cost of the landscape fabric will be incidental to the cost of the Granite Screenings. The Granite Screenings shall be similar or equal in color to the river rock used around the bldg. foundation.

A representative sample and the source of the Granite Screenings will be submitted for the Engineer’s approval prior to delivery and placement.

Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment: The work of furnishing and installing the Granite Screenings mulch as shown on the plans and as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per cubic yard for “Granite Screenings”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, equipment for installation, coordination with engineers and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Granite Screenings Cubic Yard

6' ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE**4' ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE**

General: The work covered by this section shall consist of furnishing and installing the 6' and 4' Ornamental Welded Wire Fence, and all associated items, in accordance with dimensions and finishes as shown on the plans, the details, and as described herein.

Separate pay items for installation of this fence on top of the stone wall or stone retaining wall shall match the specifications noted. The cost of the fence, as installed with the stone wall, shall be an incurred cost of the stone (retaining) wall.

PRODUCTManufacturer:

The fencing system shall be manufactured by a single source. The fence shall be fabricated to allow for a 72 inch nominal finished height or 48" nominal height. The color of the fence system shall be Black.

Materials:

A. Structural Components: All posts and rails used in the fence system shall be manufactured from coil steel having a minimum yield strength of 55,000 psi. The steel shall be galvanized to meet the requirements of ASTM A525 with a zinc coating weight of 0.60-1.0 ounces per square foot.

B. Infill: Section infill wires shall be steel with a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi. The steel shall be galvanized to meet the designation of "regular coating" in accordance with requirements of ASTM A641-98.

C. Concrete: the posts shall be set in a concrete base in accordance to manufacturer specification as applicable to specific site and its conditions.

Finish:

A. Pretreatment: A five-stage non-chrome pretreatment shall be applied. The final stage shall be a dry-in-place activator, which produces a uniform chemical conversion coating for superior adhesion.

B. Coating: Fence materials shall be coated with a TGIC polyester powder-coat finish system. Epoxy powder coatings, baked enamel or acrylic paint finishes are not acceptable. The FencCoat finish shall have a cured film thickness of 2 mils minimum.

C. Tests: The cured finish shall meet the following:

1. Humidity resistance of 1,000 hours using ASTM D2247.
2. Salt-spray resistance of 1,000 hours using ASTM B117.
3. Outdoor weathering shall show no adhesion loss, checking or crazing, with only slight fade and chalk when exposed for 3 years in Florida facing south at a 45-degree angle.

Manufacture and Fabrication:

A. Fence Sections shall be manufactured with 1” square x 18 gauge (.049) tubing welded every 12” to the top and bottom of welded wire panels. Welded wire panels shall be comprised of [2 (.2625”), 4 (.2253”), or 6 (.192”) gauge] (Washburn & Moen Standard) vertical wires and 6 (.192”) gauge horizontal wires. Verticals of 2 and 4 gauge wire shall be placed 3½” on center. 6 gauge verticals shall be placed on 1¾” centers. Horizontal wires shall be 6 gauge and spaced to provide style differences but no further apart than would allow substantial rigidity of vertical wires. Horizontal and vertical wires shall be assembled by automatic machines or other suitable mechanical means that will ensure accurate spacing and alignment of all members of the finished fabric. The wires shall be connected at every intersection by electric resistance welding in accordance with all requirements in ASTM A185. Sections shall be capable of supporting a 550 lb. load applied vertically at midspan and a concentrated load of 225 lbs. applied horizontally at midspan without permanent deformation.

B. Posts shall be [1½” or 2”] square x 16 gauge (.065”) steel tubing. Posts shall be spaced [72” on center (for traditional installation method) or 96” on center (for pass-by system)]. Steel rail ends shall be screwed to terminal posts to receive the 1” square top and bottom rails. The rails shall be secured to the rail ends by stainless steel screws. Inserts shall be used to couple sections for the pass-by system. Steel caps shall be provided with all posts.

C. Gates shall be assembled using panel material and gate ends with 1” or greater outside cross-section dimensions. Heavy-duty corner stampings shall be used to bolt each upright and rail intersection. All gates shall support a 300 lb. vertical load on the latch side of the gate without collapsing. Walk gates for BOCA Pool fences shall be self-closing and self-latching.

Submittals

Manufacturer’s drawing, details, and finishes.

Warranty:

The entire fence system shall have a manufacturers written 8 year Limited Warranty against defects in workmanship and materials. In addition, the FencCoat finish shall be warranted not to crack, chip, peel, or blister for the same period.

Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment

The work of furnishing and installing of the 6’Ornamental Wire Fence and 4’ 6’Ornamental Wire Fence as shown on the plans or as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per linear feet for “6’ Ornamental Wire Fence” or “4’ Ornamental Wire Fence” . Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing transport, all labor, materials, equipment, excavation, erection and construction of the post base, the installation of fence and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

6’ Ornamental Wire Fence Linear Foot
4’ Ornamental Wire Fence Linear Foot

STONE WALL AND ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE SCREEN
STONE RETAINING WALL AND ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE
2' STONE WALL

General: The work covered by this section shall consist of furnishing and constructing the Stone Wall with Ornamental Wire Fence, the Stone Retaining Wall with Ornamental Wire Fence and the 2' Stone Wall as shown on the plans and details and as described herein.

The Engineer according to site conditions may adjust the height and length. Verify exact dimensions before proceeding.

Materials: Concrete shall be Class "B" and meet the requirements of Section 1000 of the Standard Specifications. Reinforcing steel shall meet the requirements of Section 1070. Concrete masonry block shall be specifically manufactured for reinforced masonry wall construction. The 2" manufactured architectural veneer stone shall match stone as delineated in the architectural plans. The Stone capping shall be a 2" thick precast concrete (submit color samples). The capping shall be 2" wider (1" over hang on each side) than the wall section (approx.. 20" wide) and cut in 6-8' sections (for straight lengths of wall) and cut in 2-3' sections (for curved length of wall). Refer to the wall plans and details for construction details and the hardscape plans for the wall placement.

Unless other wise noted in the architectural plans, Use Type S mortar. Ties shall be 3/16" diameter wire, 7 1/2" anchor with 3 1/4" tie min. Use Heckman Double Eye-Rod Anchor/Tie No. 263, Homann and Banard Adjustable Wall Tie No. 600, or National No. 915, or equal by others. Backfill shall be Class I Select as described in Section 1016. All backfill material and construction methods for the retaining walls, as defined on the plans, shall be approved by the Engineer.

Refer to the special provisions for Ornamental Wire Fence for details about the fence. The ornamental wire fence as installed on top of the stone wall(s) shall be an associated cost of the wall.

Installation: Excavate and pour reinforced concrete footing, build reinforced block wall, and lay stone veneer and coping as shown on the drawings. Place reinforcing steel as described in Section 425. Use one metal tie per every two square foot of surface area to bond the stone veneer to the block wall. Allow the masonry to cure a minimum of 7 days prior to placing backfill.

An experienced stone mason with a minimum of 7 years of practice shall be required to construct the stone walls. Mason must submit references and samples of built work prior to beginning work. A sample wall with approximately 20 square feet of veneer surface area and a minimum of 5 linear feet of capping shall be required prior to progressing with remaining walls. The sample

wall shall be a separate wall or incorporated into proposed walls as shown on plans. The sample wall shall be approved prior to proceeding with the installation.

Method of Measurement

The quantity of “Stone Wall and Ornamental Wire Fence Screen”, “Stone Retaining Wall and Ornamental Wire Fence” and “2’ Stone Wall” will be the actual number of linear feet constructed and accepted.

Basis of Payment

Payment as described above will be full compensation for all work covered by this section including but not limited to footing excavation, furnishing and installing reinforcing steel, concrete, block, stone veneer, foundation drain, backfill, and other incidental material; and all labor and equipment necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Stone Wall and Ornamental Wire Fence	Linear Foot
Stone Retaining Wall and Ornamental Wire Fence	Linear Foot
2’ Stone Wall	Linear Foot

BOULDERS

General:

This special provision consists of moving, relocating, supplying and installing the boulders as shown on the plans and details and as described herein.

Several existing boulders are located within the lawn area of the WBL rest area facility. These shall be moved to locations as delineated on the landscape plans. Installed and rooted as delineated by the Engineer or noted in the planting details. Additional 2- 5 ton boulders shall be acquired and placed as delineated on the plans.

Materials

The boulders provided will be of natural stone native to western North Carolina or Tennessee. Size, color and shape will be the selection of the Engineer at a source to be approved by the Engineer.

Installation

Placement of boulders will be at the direction of the Engineer and will require the cooperative effort of the contractor to maneuver into the desired position. Extreme care shall be used in their moving and placement of the boulders so as not damage other site items. Boulders shall be placed on flat even surface and shall be set in place so as not to move, rock, tip, or roll. Where

boulders are noted to be placed in plant beds, excavate and place boulder so that it sits embedded in the soil and not on top.

Compensation

‘Boulder’ will be paid for after all work is complete, satisfactorily installed, and accepted. The work of relocating, furnishing, and installing boulders when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for ‘each’ Boulder. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, equipment and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Boulders Each

SITE SIGNING

General: The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and installing the Signage in accordance with the dimensions and finishes as shown on the plans, the details, and as described herein.

Signage: The signage shall be sandblasted HDU (high density urethane). The fabricator shall be an experienced sign maker with a minimum of 7 years of HDU sign fabrication. Fabricator shall present examples and references of work done within the past 3 years.

Fabricator shall produce artwork as indicated on the plans along with font choices for selection and approval prior to constructing sign. This includes a full-scale mock up of the sign with dimensions indicated and colors for approval prior to producing.

All sign will have an aluminum blank sign for backing and support for the primary HDU sign. The back side of the aluminum blank shall be painted. See plans/details for further information.

Fabricator’s instructions for mounting along with all hardware shall be furnished with each sign. As noted, all holes to be pre-drilled. Final decisions for colors shall be made when full scale mock up is presented to ensure visibility and readability.

Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment:

The work of selecting an experienced fabricator and constructing the site signage as shown on the plans or as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per lump sum for “Site Signage”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor,

materials, equipment for installation, coordination with engineers and sign fabricators for artwork review and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Site Signing Lump Sum

CURB BUMPER

General: The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and placing as shown on the drawings and herein specified, ‘handicap blue’ UV resistant recycled plastic curb bumper (wheel stop), including all labor, materials, services and incidentals required to complete the work.

Compensation: The quantities of Curb Bumper, to be paid for will be the actual number of units which have been completed and accepted. The quantity of curb bumper will be paid for at the contract unit price each for "Curb Bumper".

Payment will be made under:

Curb Bumper EA

DEPRESSED SIDEWALK RAMP

General: The work covered by this section consists of constructing the depressed curb handicap access complete with detectable warning surfaces, as shown on the drawings, including all labor, materials, services and incidentals required to complete the work shown on the drawings.

Compensation: The quantities of Depressed Sidewalk Ramp, to be paid for will be the actual number of units which have been completed and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

Depressed Sidewalk Ramp Each

CONCRETE LETTER BLOCK SEAT

General: This special provision consists of the production and placement of 2’ cubed concrete blocks embossed with letters. The “Concrete Letter Block Seat” shall be 2’ x 2’ x 2’ precast class B concrete cubes. The method of cast the cubes may be by steel cast block or constructed timber/plywood boxes. The cubes shall be true and square in size with chamfered radius edges. As part of the cast process, min. 8” letters, capital “N” and “C” are placed in the casting box to

deboss the letter insignia on the block. As necessary, 'release' shall be applied within the casting block to get clean removal of enclosing sides. "N" on opposing sides and "C" on opposing sides. The letters shall be centered on designated sides and plumb. All block sides shall be smooth. The cube shall have rebar reinforcement and either an eye bolt, or rebar anchor shall (see details) for to lift and moving the blocks. The eye bolt/anchor shall be cast and embedded in to the bottom of the block and shall not disturb the block from sitting flush and stable on a flat surface.

All concrete surfaces of the block shall have 2 coats of 'matte finish' exterior concrete sealer. Submit sealer for approval.

Installation

The blocks shall be set in place according to the plans, details, or by direct instruction of the Engineer. To maintain stability of the block a compacted 4" aggregate stone base is required.

Compensation

"Concrete Letter Block Seats" will be paid for after all work is complete, satisfactorily installed, and accepted. The work of casting, sealing, moving and installing the "Concrete Letter Block Seat" when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit price for 'each' "Concrete Letter Block Seat". Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, equipment and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Concrete Letter Block Seat Each

DOWNSPOUT DRAINAGE SYSTEM

PATIO CATCH BASIN

MICRO CHANNEL DRAIN

6" PVC DRAIN

This provision only covers those items as indicated on the landscape site plans.

Scope: Applicable parts of the supplementary General Conditions and the Standard Specifications govern work under this division, which includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for the proper completion and installation of the downspout drainage system, patio catch basin, micro channel drain, and 6" PVC drain pipe, and associated work, to connect the vending building downspouts, patio area drain, and pavement channel drains to the designated/closest drop inlet or drainage structure.

Materials:

Patio Catch Basin: 12" square polyolefin catch basin, attached riser as needed, and iron/galvanized steel grate. Installed per details/specifications. Min. 6" conc. collar incidental to the cost of the Patio Catch Basin.

6" PVC Pipe: For storm drainage pipe connecting building foundation/french drain, downspout, or yard inlets to catch basin, use PVC/ABS-DWV meeting requirements of ASTM D-2661, Schedule 40 with solvent cement for fittings complying ASTM D-2235, ASTM D-2665-87.

Cleanouts: Cleanouts shall be of the proper shape, length and degree of bend to fit the conditions. The cleanouts, if necessary, shall be located no more than but not more than 50 feet apart. Cleanout plugs shall be minimum of 4", with finish elevation at proposed finish grades for lawns, cleanouts in sidewalks shall be brass stem and cap mounted flush with sidewalk.

Adapters: PVC downspout adapter to match proposed bldg. downspouts and transition to subsurface 6" storm water pipe.

Micro Channel Drain: As noted within the plans, the drain shall be installed adjacent to the patio pavement and sidewalk to restrict, catch, and redirect stormwater away from the bldg. entrance.

Installation:

- a. The trench (es) shall be excavated to a sufficient width to receive pipe and allow for tamping equipment and to the depth established by the Engineer.
- b. Pipe sections and fittings shall be joined together in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- c. Where the pipe foundation material is found to be of poor supporting value or of rock the foundation shall be conditioned by removing the existing foundation material by undercutting one foot or to a depth as directed by the Engineer, and backfilling with either a suitable local material or foundation condition material consisting of crushed stone or gravel or a combination of sand and crushed stone approved by the Engineer as being suitable for the purpose intended. The selection of the type of backfill to be used for foundation conditioning will be made by the Engineer.
- d. After the pipe has been laid, the backfill material shall be carefully placed so that the pipe will not be disturbed by the backfilling operation. All earth backfill materials shall be approved by the Engineer and firmly tamped in 6 inch layers to a density equal to that of the surrounding undisturbed soil.

- e. The drains shall be connected to existing or proposed drainage structures as shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer.
- f. The contractor shall maintain all drainage installations in a condition such that they will function continuously from the time the pipe is installed until the project is accepted.

Compensation:

The Downspout Drainage System will be paid for by Lump Sum, for the sum of all work associated with the installation of all fittings, downspout, adapters, pipe, trench foundation material, and cleanouts as specified herein, shown on the plans and as directed by the Engineer. This item is only associated with the catchment of downspouts on the vending bldgs.

Patio Catch Basins will be paid for Each Patio Catch Basin installed according to the plans and as described herein. This includes, but is not limited, to all materials, labor and equipment necessary to complete the work to satisfaction of the Engineer.

Micro Channel Drain will be paid for 'drain' installed according to the plans and as described herein. This includes, but is not limited, to all materials, labor and equipment necessary to complete the work to satisfaction of the Engineer.

6" PVC Drain pipe will be paid for per Linear Foot of pipe installed satisfactorily, according to the plans and specifications described herein. It does not include the length of pipe associated with the installation of the downspout drainage system.

Payment will be made under:

Downspout Drainage System	Lump Sum
Patio Catch Basin	Each
Micro Channel Drain.....	Each
6" PVC Drain.....	Linear Foot

8' CHAIN LINK FENCE WITH SLATS
BIFOLD DUMPSTER GATE

General: 8' Chain Link fence with Slats work consists of furnishing and installing chain link fencing complete with all posts, braces, slats, and all other appurtenances. Bifold Dumpster Gate work consists of furnishing and installing a folding chain link gate complete with all posts,

hinges, and all other appurtenances.

Materials:

Chain link fence fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 392, 2-inch mesh and 9-gauge galvanized steel wire. Zinc coating shall be class 2.

Posts and fence framework shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 1043 Group 1A, for Heavy Industrial Fence. Coatings shall be a type A galvanized coating for internal and external surfaces. Steel pipe posts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 1043 and F 1083.

Fence fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 626. Fittings shall be galvanized steel. Wire ties and clips shall be 9-gauge.

Gates, gateposts, and gate accessories shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 900. Coating shall be the same as selected for adjoining fence and framework.

Galvanized and PVC coated: Chain link fence fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 668 for class 2a or 2b, 2-inch mesh, and 9-gauge galvanized steel wire. The fabric shall have a polymer top coating of the color specified on the plans (black).

Privacy Slats: Meets ASTM3000 and ASTM3000M specifications. High Density Polyethylene with color pigments and ultra violet (UV) inhibitors, specifically designed to retard the harmful effects of the sun and lengthen the life of the product.

Posts and fence framework shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 1043 Group 1A, for Heavy Industrial Fence. Coatings shall be a type A galvanized coating for internal and external surfaces and covered with a polymer top coating of color as specified in section 6.

Fence fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 626. Fittings shall be galvanized steel with a polymer top coating of color as specified in section 6.

Any damage to the coating shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, or the damaged fencing material shall be replaced. The contractor shall provide the engineer a copy of the manufacturer's recommended repair procedure and materials before correcting damaged coatings.

Installation:

Fence Posts- Unless otherwise specified, line posts shall be placed at intervals of 10 feet measured from center to center of adjacent posts. In determining the post spacing, measurement is made parallel with the ground surface.

Posts shall be set in concrete backfill in the manner shown on the drawings.

Posts set in the tops of concrete walls shall be grouted into preformed holes to a depth of 12 inches.

All corner posts, end posts, gateposts, and pull posts shall be embedded, braced, and trussed as shown on the drawings or in accordance with appropriate industry practice if not otherwise shown or specified.

Gate hardware shall be installed before industrial grade construction. Connections to the embedded posts, fence panels, guide wheels, drop pins, and gate latches shall be as shown on the plans and in accordance with appropriate industry practice if not otherwise shown or specified.

Installing wire fabric- Fencing fabric shall not be stretched until at least 4 days after the posts are grouted into walls or 7 days after the posts are set in the concrete backfill.

Fencing fabric shall be installed on the side of the posts designated on the drawings.

The fabric shall be stretched taut and securely fastened, by means of tie clips, to the posts at intervals not exceeding 15 inches and to the top rails or tension wires at intervals not exceeding 2 feet. Care shall be taken to equalize the fabric tension on each side of each post.

Method of Measurements and Basis of Payment

8' Chain Link Fence with Slats as described above and as shown on the plans shall be paid for at the contract unit price per linear foot measured from the (vertical) center line of post to post, complete in place and accepted. Such price shall be full compensation for all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Bifold Dumpster Gate as described above and as shown on the plans shall be paid for at the contract unit price per each unit finished, measured by pair of matching gates, complete in place and accepted. Such price shall be full compensation for all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

8' Chain Link Fence with Slats Linear Feet
Bifold Dumpster Gate Each

GRAPHIC FENCE SIGN

General: The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and installing the fence graphic sign in accordance with the dimensions and finishes as shown on the plans, details, and as described herein.

Signage: The signage shall be manufactured from .080 gauge aluminum. The fabricator shall be an experienced metal fabricator and sign/graphic production. Fabricator shall present examples and references of work done within the past 3 years.

Fabricator shall produce artwork as indicated on the plans along with font choice for the representative lettering in the sign. This includes a graphic mock-up of the sign with dimensions indicated and colors for approval prior to producing.

Fabricator’s instructions for mounting along with all hardware shall be furnished with each sign. The graphic sign shall be treated with a 2 layers of flat-satin black powder coating. Cutting and fabricating method will leave signs structurally strong free of burs and sharp edges.

Graphic Sign should not be erected before substantial completion of the project. Coordinate installation with NCDOT Engineer.

Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment:

The work of selecting an experienced fabricator and constructing the Graphic Fence Sign as shown on the plans or as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per Each “Graphic Fence Sign”. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, hardware and equipment for installation, coordination with engineers and sign fabricators for artwork review and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Graphic Fence Sign Each

DEMOLITION OF REST AREA BUILDINGS / PICNIC FACILITIES

General: Complete demolition of the I-26 East and West Bound Lane Rest Areas located in Buncombe / Henderson County, NC. Work will consist of the removal and disposal of the existing rest area buildings and site picnicking facilities for preparation of new construction. The buildings, picnic facilities, wells, pavement, parking areas, sidewalks are to be removed from the I-26 Buncombe and Henderson County East and West Bound Lane sites. The existing chain link fencing along the perimeter of the facilities is to remain in place until construction of new chain link R/W fence or repair of existing fence as directed by the Engineer.

Utilities: The General Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating removal of existing water, sewer, electric power and phone utilities with the providing companies - as well as - coordinating and scheduling the installation of the same new utilities for the new facilities and/or as further directed by the Engineer.

The General Contractor shall be responsible for providing temporary electrical, water and temporary toilet facilities services for construction purposes during construction of the new Rest Area Buildings.

Subsurface Information:

There is no subsurface-information available on this project. The Contractor shall make their own investigation of subsurface conditions.

Grading for Demolition of Buildings/ Site Fixtures:

Waste and Debris from the project shall not be buried on site and shall be removed from the right of way and disposed of in accordance with Section 802 of the Standard Specifications. All demolition work shall be performed-in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 200, 225, 230, 235, 250, 500, 560 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

Erosion, Siltration and Pollution Control:

Contractor shall exercise all necessary measures during demolition on work and throughout the life of the project to prevent erosion, siltation, and pollution in accordance with Section 107-13 of the Standard Specifications. Erosion control measures shall be installed in accordance with the plans for this project and Section 1605 of the Standard Specifications, and in any locations directed by the Engineer.

Rest Area Buildings and Picnic Facilities Demolition:

work shall consist of removal, and disposal of the rest area service buildings, vending buildings, storage buildings, and picnicking facilities at each of the two rest area sites. The demolition work shall include but not be limited to porches, walls, roofed areas, posts, or column footings, floor slabs, foundations, and any other appurtenances which are attached to the buildings and picnic facilities.

Prior to removal of any building, comply with the notification requirements of Title 40 Code of Federal Regulations, Part 61, Subpart M, which are applicable to asbestos.

The Department has performed asbestos assessments for the rest room and vending buildings and has not identified asbestos. Comply with all Federal, State, OSHA, and local regulations when performing building removal and/or asbestos removal and disposal.

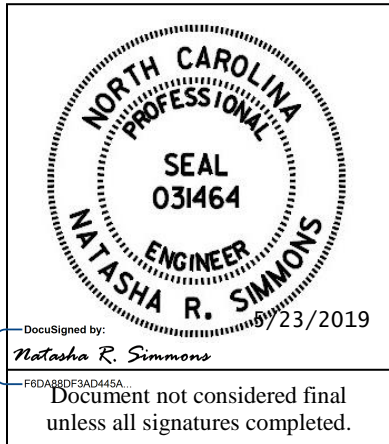
Note to Contractor:

The contractor's attention is directed to the fact that existing items may be removed from the existing rest area sites and rest area site buildings by NCDOT prior to the date of availability for this project, any items left on site at the date of availability - shall become the contractor's responsibility to remove and properly dispose of.

Compensation: The work covered by this provision will be paid for at the contract price EACH site for "Rest Area Buildings / Picnic Facilities Demolition". Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work, covered by this provision, including, but not limited to, removal, cleaning up and disposal of all debris including all costs incurred in connection with the work for each of the rest area sites.

Payment will be made under:

Rest Area Buildings / Picnic Facilities Demolition Each



I-4400BB&C
Signals and Intelligent Transportation Systems
Project Special Provisions
(Version 18.2)

Prepared By: NRS
 23-May-19



HNTB North Carolina, PC
 343 E. Six Forks Rd, Suite 200
 Raleigh, NC 27609
 919.546.8997
 NC License No: C-1554

Contents

1. 2018 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR ROADS & STRUCTURES.....4

1.1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – CONSTRUCTION METHODS (1700-3(K))4

1.2. WOOD POLES – CONSTRUCTION METHODS (1720-3)4

2. SIGNAL HEADS.....5

2.1. MATERIALS5

A. General5

B. Vehicle Signal Heads6

C. Signal Cable9

D. Louvers9

3. CONTROLLERS WITH CABINETS10

3.1. DESCRIPTION10

3.2. MATERIAL10

3.3. MATERIALS – GENERAL CABINETS10

3.4. MATERIALS – TYPE 170E CABINETS11

A. Type 170 E Cabinets General11

B. Type 170 E Cabinet Electrical Requirements11

C. Type 170 E Cabinet Physical Requirements19

D. Model 2018 Enhanced Conflict Monitor21

3.5. MATERIALS – TYPE 170 DETECTOR SENSOR UNITS32

3.6. MATERIALS – TYPE 2070E CONTROLLERS32

3.7. CONSTRUCTION METHODS33

A. General33

B. System Interconnection33

C. Workshop34

3.8. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT34

4. MICROWAVE VEHICLE DETECTION SYSTEM - MULTIPLE DETECTION ZONES.....35

4.1. DESCRIPTION35

4.2. MATERIALS35

4.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS36

4.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT36

5. MODIFY SPREAD SPECTRUM WIRELESS RADIO.....37

5.1. DESCRIPTION37

5.2. MATERIALS37

5.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 37

5.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 37

6. REMOVE SPREAD SPECTRUM RADIO 38

6.1. DESCRIPTION 38

6.2. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 38

6.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 38

7. TRAFFIC SIGNAL SUPPORTS 39

7.1. METAL TRAFFIC SIGNAL SUPPORTS – ALL POLES 39

 A. *General* 39

 B. *Materials* 41

 C. *Construction Methods* 42

7.2. METAL POLE UPRIGHTS (VERTICAL MEMBERS) 42

 A. *Materials* 42

 B. *Construction Methods* 44

7.3. MAST ARMS 44

 A. *Materials* 44

 B. *Construction Methods* 45

7.4. DRILLED PIER FOUNDATIONS FOR METAL TRAFFIC SIGNAL POLES 45

 A. *Description* 45

 B. *Soil Test and Foundation Determination* 45

 C. *Drilled Pier Construction* 48

7.5. CUSTOM DESIGN OF TRAFFIC SIGNAL SUPPORTS 48

 A. *General* 48

 B. *Metal Poles* 49

 C. *Mast Arms* 51

7.6. METAL SIGNAL POLE REMOVALS 51

 A. *Description* 51

 B. *Construction Methods* 51

7.7. POLE NUMBERING SYSTEM 52

 A. *New Poles* 52

7.8. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 52

8. PROTECTIVE COATING FOR METAL POLES 54

8.1. DESCRIPTION 54

8.2. MATERIALS 54

8.3. COATING SHOP APPROVAL 54

8.4. POWDER COATING 55

 A. *Galvanizing* 55

 B. *Surface Preparation* 55

 C. *Powder Coating Application and Curing* 56

 D. *Quality Control* 56

 E. *Storage, Shipping, and Handling* 56

 F. *Repair of Powder Coated Material* 56

8.5. ACRYLIC PRIMER AND TOP COAT PAINT SYSTEM 4 (MODIFIED) 57

 A. *Description* 57

 B. *Surface Preparation* 57

 C. *Materials* 57

 D. *Painting* 57

 E. *Curing* 58

 F. *Inspection* 58

 G. *Handling* 58

 H. *Repair of Damaged Coating* 58

8.6. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 58

- 9. BACK PULL FIBER OPTIC CABLE 60**
 - 9.1. DESCRIPTION 60
 - 9.2. CONSTRUCTION 60
 - 9.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 60
- 10. JUNCTION BOX MARKERS 61**
 - 10.1. DESCRIPTION 61
 - 10.2. MATERIALS 61
 - 10.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 62
 - 10.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 62
- 11. ETHERNET EDGE SWITCH..... 63**
 - 11.1. DESCRIPTION 63
 - 11.2. MATERIALS 63
 - A. *General* 63
 - B. *Ethernet Edge Switch*..... 63
 - 11.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 68
 - A. *General* 68
 - B. *Ethernet Edge Switch*..... 68
 - 11.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 69
- 12. COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM SUPPORT EQUIPMENT 70**
 - 12.1. DESCRIPTION 70
 - 12.2. MATERIALS 70
 - A. *General* 70
 - B. *Wireless Radio Support Equipment* 70
 - 12.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 70

1. 2018 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR ROADS & STRUCTURES

The 2018 Standard Specifications are revised as follows:

1.1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – Construction Methods (1700-3(K))

Page 17-4, revise sentence starting on line 14 to read “Modify existing electrical services, as necessary, to meet the grounding requirements of the NEC, these *Standard Specifications*, *Standard Drawings*, and the project plans.”

Page 17-4, revise sentence beginning on line 21 to read “Furnish and install additional ground rods to grounding electrode system as necessary to meet the *Standard Specifications*, *Standard Drawings*, and test requirements.”

1.2. WOOD POLES – Construction Methods (1720-3)

Page 17-18, revise sentence starting on line 13 to read “On new Department-owned poles, install a grounding system consisting of #6 AWG solid bare copper wire that is mechanically crimped using an irreversible compression tool with die to a single ground rod installed at base of pole or to the electrical service grounding electrode system located within 10 feet of the pole.”

2. SIGNAL HEADS

2.1. MATERIALS

A. General

Fabricate vehicle signal head housings and end caps from die-cast aluminum. Provide visor mounting screws, door latches, and hinge pins fabricated from stainless steel. Provide interior screws, fasteners, and metal parts fabricated from stainless steel.

Fabricate tunnel and traditional visors from sheet aluminum.

Paint all surfaces inside and outside of signal housings and doors. Paint outside surfaces of tunnel and traditional visors, wire outlet bodies, wire entrance fitting brackets and end caps when supplied as components of pole and pedestal mounting assemblies. Have electrostatically-applied, fused-polyester paint in highway yellow (Federal Standard 595C, Color Chip Number 13538) or black, per Project Plans, a minimum of 2.5 to 3.5 mils thick. Do not apply paint to the latching hardware, rigid vehicle signal head mounting brackets for mast-arm attachments, messenger cable hanger components or balance adjuster components.

Have the interior surfaces of tunnel and traditional visors painted an alkyd urea black synthetic baking enamel with a minimum gloss reflectance and meeting the requirements of MIL-E-10169, "Enamel Heat Resisting, Instrument Black."

Where required, provide polycarbonate signal heads and visors that comply with the provisions pertaining to the aluminum signal heads listed on the QPL with the following exceptions:

Fabricate signal head housings, end caps, and visors from virgin polycarbonate material. Provide UV stabilized polycarbonate plastic with a minimum thickness of 0.1 ± 0.01 inches that is highway yellow (Federal Standard 595C, Color Chip Number 13538) or black per Project Plans. Ensure the color is incorporated into the plastic material before molding the signal head housings and end caps. Ensure the plastic formulation provides the following physical properties in the assembly (tests may be performed on separately molded specimens):

Test	Required	Method
Specific Gravity	1.17 minimum	ASTM D 792
Flammability	Self-extinguishing	ASTM D 635
Tensile Strength, yield, PSI	8500 minimum	ASTM D 638
Izod impact strength, ft-lb/in [notched, 1/8 inch]	12 minimum	ASTM D 256

For pole mounting, provide side of pole mounting assemblies with framework and all other hardware necessary to make complete, watertight connections of the signal heads to the poles and pedestals. Fabricate the mounting assemblies and frames from aluminum with all necessary hardware, screws, washers, etc. to be stainless steel. Provide mounting fittings that match the positive locking device on the signal head with the serrations integrally cast into the brackets. Provide upper and lower pole plates that have a 1 ¼-inch vertical conduit entrance hubs with the hubs capped on the lower plate and 1 ½-inch horizontal hubs. Ensure that the assemblies provide rigid attachments to poles and pedestals so as to allow no twisting or swaying of the signal heads. Ensure that all raceways are free of sharp edges and protrusions, and can accommodate a minimum of ten Number 14 AWG conductors.

For pedestal mounting, provide a post-top slipfitter mounting assembly that matches the positive locking device on the signal head with serrations integrally cast into the slipfitter. Provide stainless steel hardware, screws, washers, etc. Provide a minimum of six 3/8 X 3/4-inch long square head bolts for attachment to pedestal. Provide a center post for multi-way slipfitters.

For light emitting diode (LED) traffic signal modules, provide the following requirements for inclusion on the Department's Qualified Products List for traffic signal equipment.

1. Sample submittal,
2. Third-party independent laboratory testing results for each submitted module with evidence of testing and conformance with all of the Design Qualification Testing specified in section 6.4 of each of the following Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) specifications:
 - Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads – Light Emitting Diode (LED) Circular Signal Supplement
 - Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads – Light Emitting Diode (LED) Vehicle Arrow Traffic Signal Supplement

(Note: The Department currently recognizes two approved independent testing laboratories. They are Intertek ETL Semko and Light Metrics, Incorporated with Garwood Laboratories. Independent laboratory tests from other laboratories may be considered as part of the QPL submittal at the discretion of the Department.)

3. Evidence of conformance with the requirements of these specifications,
4. A manufacturer's warranty statement in accordance with the required warranty, and
5. Submittal of manufacturer's design and production documentation for the model, including but not limited to, electrical schematics, electronic component values, proprietary part numbers, bill of materials, and production electrical and photometric test parameters.
6. Evidence of approval of the product to bear the Intertek ETL Verified product label for LED traffic signal modules.

In addition to meeting the performance requirements for the minimum period of 60 months, provide a written warranty against defects in materials and workmanship for the modules for a period of 60 months after installation of the modules. During the warranty period, the manufacturer must provide new replacement modules within 45 days of receipt of modules that have failed at no cost to the State. Repaired or refurbished modules may not be used to fulfill the manufacturer's warranty obligations. Provide manufacturer's warranty documentation to the Department during evaluation of product for inclusion on Qualified Products List (QPL).

B. Vehicle Signal Heads

Comply with the ITE standard "Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads". Provide housings with provisions for attaching backplates.

Provide visors that are 10 inches in length for 12-inch vehicle signal heads.

Provide a termination block with one empty terminal for field wiring for each indication plus one empty terminal for the neutral conductor. Have all signal sections wired to the termination block. Provide barriers between the terminals that have terminal screws with a minimum Number

8 thread size and that will accommodate and secure spade lugs sized for a Number 10 terminal screw.

Mount termination blocks in the yellow signal head sections on all in-line vehicle signal heads. Mount the termination block in the red section on five-section vehicle signal heads.

Furnish vehicle signal head interconnecting brackets. Provide one-piece aluminum brackets less than 4.5 inches in height and with no threaded pipe connections. Provide hand holes on the bottom of the brackets to aid in installing wires to the signal heads. Lower brackets that carry no wires and are used only for connecting the bottom signal sections together may be flat in construction.

For mast-arm mounting, provide rigid vehicle signal head mounting brackets and all other hardware necessary to make complete, watertight connections of the vehicle signal heads to the mast arms and to provide a means for vertically adjusting the vehicle signal heads to proper alignment. Fabricate the mounting assemblies from aluminum, and provide serrated rings made of aluminum. Provide stainless steel cable attachment assemblies to secure the brackets to the mast arms. Ensure all fastening hardware and fasteners are fabricated from stainless steel.

Provide LED vehicular traffic signal modules (hereafter referred to as modules) that consist of an assembly that uses LEDs as the light source in lieu of an incandescent lamp for use in traffic signal sections. Use LEDs that are aluminum indium gallium phosphorus (AlInGaP) technology for red and yellow indications and indium gallium nitride (InGaN) for green indications. Install the ultra bright type LEDs that are rated for 100,000 hours of continuous operation from -40°F to +165°F. Design modules to have a minimum useful life of 60 months and to meet all parameters of this specification during this period of useful life.

For the modules, provide spade terminals crimped to the lead wires and sized for a #10 screw connection to the existing terminal block in a standard signal head. Do not provide other types of crimped terminals with a spade adapter.

Ensure the power supply is integral to the module assembly. On the back of the module, permanently mark the date of manufacture (month & year) or some other method of identifying date of manufacture.

Tint the red, yellow and green lenses to correspond with the wavelength (chromaticity) of the LED. Transparent tinting films are unacceptable. Provide a lens that is integral to the unit with a smooth outer surface.

1. LED Circular Signal Modules

Provide modules in 12-inch circular sections configurations. All makes and models of LED modules purchased for use on the State Highway System shall appear on the current NCDOT Traffic Signal Qualified Products List (QPL).

Provide the manufacturer's model number and the product number (assigned by the Department) for each module that appears on the 2018 or most recent Qualified Products List. In addition, provide manufacturer's certification in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications*, that each module meets or exceeds the ITE "Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads – Light Emitting Diode (LED) Circular Signal Supplement" dated June 27, 2005

(hereafter referred to as VTCSH Circular Supplement) and other requirements stated in this specification.

Provide modules that meet the following requirements when tested under the procedures outlined in the VTCSH Circular Supplement:

Module Type	Max. Wattage at 165° F	Nominal Wattage at 77° F
12-inch red circular	17	11
12-inch green circular	15	15

For yellow circular signal modules, provide modules tested under the procedures outlined in the VTCSH Circular Supplement to insure power required at 77° F is 22 Watts or less for the 12-inch circular module.

Note: Use a wattmeter having an accuracy of $\pm 1\%$ to measure the nominal wattage and maximum wattage of a circular traffic signal module. Power may also be derived from voltage, current and power factor measurements.

2. LED Arrow Signal Modules

Provide 12-inch omnidirectional arrow signal modules. All makes and models of LED modules purchased for use on the State Highway System shall appear on the current NCDOT Traffic Signal Qualified Products List (QPL).

Provide the manufacturer's model number and the product number (assigned by the Department) for each module that appears on the 2018 or most recent Qualified Products List. In addition, provide manufacturer's certification in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications*, that each module meets or exceeds the requirements for 12-inch omnidirectional modules specified in the ITE "Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads – Light Emitting Diode (LED) Vehicle Arrow Traffic Signal Supplement" dated July 1, 2007 (hereafter referred to as VTCSH Arrow Supplement) and other requirements stated in this specification.

Provide modules that meet the following requirements when tested under the procedures outlined in the VTCSH Arrow Supplement:

Module Type	Max. Wattage at 165 F	Nominal Wattage at 77 F
12-inch red arrow	12	9
12-inch green arrow	11	11

For yellow arrow signal modules, provide modules tested under the procedures outlined in the VTCSH Arrow Supplement to insure power required at 77° F is 12 Watts or less.

Note: Use a wattmeter having an accuracy of $\pm 1\%$ to measure the nominal wattage and maximum wattage of an arrow traffic signal module. Power may also be derived from voltage, current and power factor measurements.

C. Signal Cable

Furnish 16-4 and 16-7 signal cable that complies with IMSA specification 20-1 except provide the following conductor insulation colors:

- For 16-4 cable: white, yellow, red, and green
- For 16-7 cable: white, yellow, red, green, yellow with black stripe tracer, red with black stripe tracer, and green with black stripe tracer. Apply continuous stripe tracer on conductor insulation with a longitudinal or spiral pattern.

Provide a ripcord to allow the cable jacket to be opened without using a cutter. IMSA specification 19-1 will not be acceptable. Provide a cable jacket labeled with the IMSA specification number and provide conductors constructed of stranded copper.

D. Louvers

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section must be pre-approved on the Department's QPL by the date of installation.

Provide louvers made from sheet aluminum. Paint the louvers alkyd urea black synthetic baked enamel with a minimum gloss reflectance and meeting the requirements of MIL-E-10169, "Enamel Heat Resisting, Instrument Black."

Ensure that the louvers have a 0-degree horizontal viewing angle. Provide a minimum of 5 vanes.

3. CONTROLLERS WITH CABINETS

3.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install controllers with cabinets and all necessary hardware. Furnish all pole or foundation mounting hardware, detector sensor cards, external electrical service disconnects, one Corbin Number 2 cabinet key, one police panel key, conflict monitors or malfunction management units, surge protection, grounding systems, AC/DC isolator cards and all necessary hardware.

3.2. MATERIAL

Furnish material, equipment and hardware under this section that is pre-approved on the ITS and Signals QPL.

3.3. MATERIALS – GENERAL CABINETS

Provide a moisture resistant coating on all circuit boards.

Provide one 20 mm diameter radial lead UL-recognized metal oxide varistor (MOV) between each load switch field terminal and equipment ground. Electrical performance is outlined below.

PROPERTIES OF MOV SURGE PROTECTOR	
Maximum Continuous Applied Voltage at 185 F	150 VAC (RMS) 200 VDC
Maximum Peak 8x20µs Current at 185 F	6500 A
Maximum Energy Rating at 185 F	80 J
Voltage Range 1 mA DC Test at 77 F	212-268 V
Max. Clamping Voltage 8x20µs, 100A at 77 F	395 V
Typical Capacitance (1 MHz) at 77 F	1600 pF

Provide a power line surge protector that is a two-stage device that will allow connection of the radio frequency interference filter between the stages of the device. Ensure that a maximum continuous current is at least 10A at 120V. Ensure that the device can withstand a minimum of 20 peak surge current occurrences at 20,000A for an 8x20 microsecond waveform. Provide a maximum clamp voltage of 395V at 20,000A with a nominal series inductance of 200µh. Ensure that the voltage does not exceed 395V. Provide devices that comply with the following:

Frequency (Hz)	Minimum Insertion Loss (dB)
60	0
10,000	30
50,000	55
100,000	50
500,000	50
2,000,000	60
5,000,000	40
10,000,000	20
20,000,000	25

3.4. MATERIALS – TYPE 170E CABINETS

A. Type 170 E Cabinets General

Conform to the city of Los Angeles' Specification No. 54-053-08, *Traffic Signal Cabinet Assembly Specification* (dated July 2008), except as required herein.

Furnish model 336S pole mounted cabinets configured for 8 vehicle phases, 4 pedestrian phases, and 6 overlaps. Do not reassign load switches to accommodate overlaps unless shown on electrical details. Provide 336S pole mounted cabinets that are 46" high with 40" high internal rack assemblies.

Furnish model 332 base mounted cabinets configured for 8 vehicle phases, 4 pedestrian phases, and 6 overlaps. When overlaps are required, provide auxiliary output files for the overlaps. Do not reassign load switches to accommodate overlaps unless shown on electrical details.

Provide model 200 load switches, model 222 loop detector sensors, model 252 AC isolators, and model 242 DC isolators according to the electrical details. As a minimum, provide one (1) model 2018 conflict monitor, one (1) model 206L power supply unit, two (2) model 204 flashers, one (1) DC isolator (located in slot I14), and four (4) model 430 flash transfer relays (provide seven (7) model 430 flash transfer relays if auxiliary output file is installed) with each cabinet.

B. Type 170 E Cabinet Electrical Requirements

Provide a cabinet assembly designed to ensure that upon leaving any cabinet switch or conflict monitor initiated flashing operation, the controller starts up in the programmed start up phases and start up interval.

Furnish two sets of non-fading cabinet wiring diagrams and schematics in a paper envelope or container and placed in the cabinet drawer.

All AC+ power is subject to radio frequency signal suppression.

Provide surge suppression in the cabinet for each type of cabinet device. Provide surge protection for the full capacity of the cabinet input file. Provide surge suppression devices that

I-4400BB&C**TS-12****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

operate properly over a temperature range of -40° F to +185° F. Ensure the surge suppression devices provide both common and differential modes of protection.

Provide a pluggable power line surge protector that is installed on the back of the PDA (power distribution assembly) chassis to filter and absorb power line noise and switching transients. Ensure the device incorporates LEDs for failure indication and provides a dry relay contact closure for the purpose of remote sensing. Ensure the device meets the following specifications:

Peak Surge Current (Single pulse, 8x20µs).....	20,000A
Occurrences (8x20µs waveform).....	10 minimum @ 20,000A
Maximum Clamp Voltage.....	395VAC
Operating Current.....	15 amps
Response Time.....	< 5 nanoseconds

Provide a loop surge suppressor for each set of loop terminals in the cabinet. Ensure the device meets the following specifications:

Peak Surge Current (6 times, 8x20µs)	
(Differential Mode).....	400A
(Common Mode).....	1,000A
Occurrences (8x20µs waveform).....	500 min @ 200A
Maximum Clamp Voltage	
(Differential Mode @400A).....	35V
(Common Mode @1,000A).....	35V
Response Time.....	< 5 nanoseconds
Maximum Capacitance.....	35 pF

Provide a data communications surge suppressor for each communications line entering or leaving the cabinet. Ensure the device meets the following specifications:

Peak Surge Current (Single pulse, 8x20µs).....	10,000A
Occurrences (8x20µs waveform).....	100 min @ 2,000A
Maximum Clamp Voltage.....	Rated for equipment protected
Response Time.....	< 1 nanosecond
Maximum Capacitance.....	1,500 pF

Maximum Series Resistance.....15Ω

Provide a DC signal surge suppressor for each DC input channel in the cabinet. Ensure the device meets the following specifications:

Peak Surge Current (Single pulse, 8x20μs).....10,000A
 Occurrences (8x20μs waveform).....100 @ 2,000A
 Maximum Clamp Voltage.....30V
 Response Time.....< 1 nanosecond

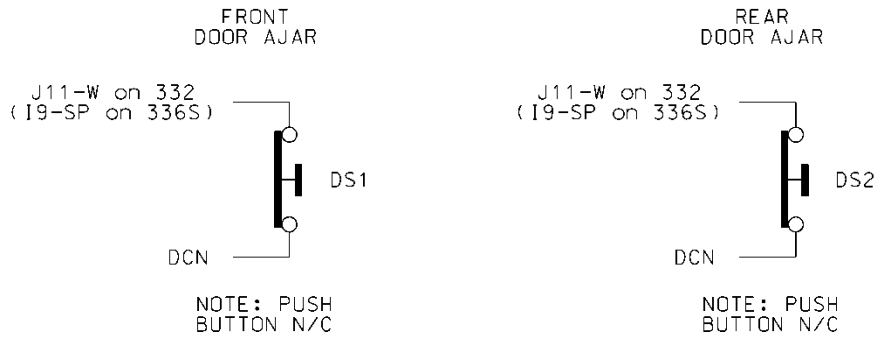
Provide a 120 VAC signal surge suppressor for each AC+ interconnect signal input. Ensure the device meets the following specifications:

Peak Surge Current (Single pulse, 8x20μs).....20,000A
 Maximum Clamp Voltage.....350VAC
 Response Time.....< 200 nanoseconds
 Discharge Voltage.....<200 Volts @ 1,000A
 Insulation Resistance.....≥100 MΩ

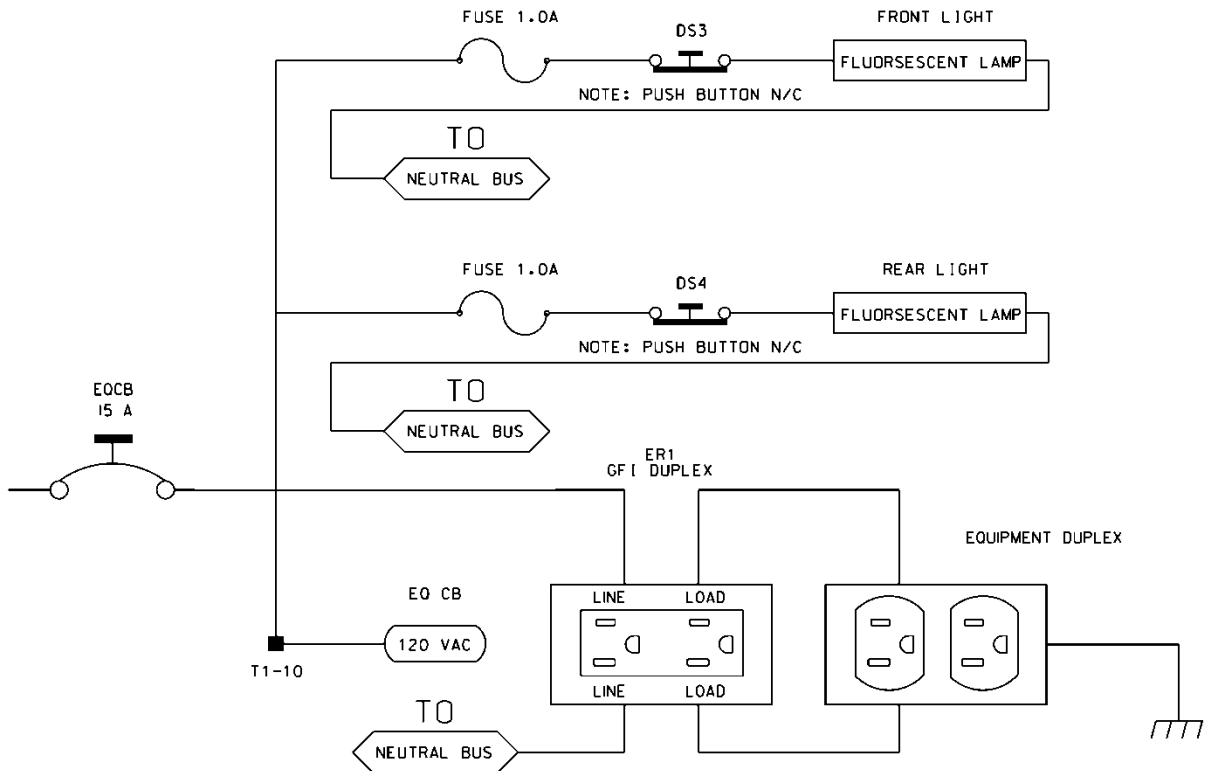
Provide conductors for surge protection wiring that are of sufficient size (ampacity) to withstand maximum overcurrents which could occur before protective device thresholds are attained and current flow is interrupted.

If additional surge protected power outlets are needed to accommodate fiber transceivers, modems, etc., install a UL listed, industrial, heavy-duty type power outlet strip with a minimum rating of 15 A / 125 VAC, 60 Hz. Provide a strip that has a minimum of 3 grounded outlets. Ensure the power outlet strip plugs into one of the controller unit receptacles located on the rear of the PDA. Ensure power outlet strip is mounted securely; provide strain relief if necessary.

Provide a door switch in the front and a door switch in the rear of the cabinet that will provide the controller unit with a Door Ajar alarm when either the front or the rear door is open. Ensure the door switches apply DC ground to the Input File when either the front door or the rear door is open.



Furnish a fluorescent fixture in the rear across the top of the cabinet and another fluorescent fixture in the front across the top of the cabinet at a minimum. Ensure that the fixtures provide sufficient light to illuminate all terminals, labels, switches, and devices in the cabinet. Conveniently locate the fixtures so as not to interfere with a technician’s ability to perform work on any devices or terminals in the cabinet. Provide a protective diffuser to cover exposed bulbs. Install 16 watt T-4 lamps in the fluorescent fixtures. Provide a door switch to provide power to each fixture when the respective door is open. Wire the fluorescent fixtures to the 15 amp ECB (equipment circuit breaker).



Furnish a police panel with a police panel door. For model 336S cabinets, mount the police panel on the rear door. Ensure that the police panel door permits access to the police panel when

the main door is closed. Ensure that no rainwater can enter the cabinet even with the police panel door open. Provide a police panel door hinged on the right side as viewed from the front. Provide a police panel door lock that is keyed to a standard police/fire call box key. In addition to the requirements of LA Specification No. 54-053-08, provide the police panel with a toggle switch connected to switch the intersection operation between normal stop-and-go operation (AUTO) and manual operation (MANUAL). Ensure that manual control can be implemented using inputs and software such that the controller provides full programmed clearance times for the yellow clearance and red clearance for each phase while under manual control.

Provide a 1/4-inch locking phone jack in the police panel for a hand control to manually control the intersection. Provide sufficient room in the police panel for storage of a hand control and cord.

Ensure the 336S cabinet Input File is wired as follows:

336S Cabinet														
Port-Bit/C-1 Pin Assignment														
Slot #	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
C-1 (Spares)	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	75	76	77	78	79	80
Port C-1	3-2	1-1	3-4	1-3	3-1	1-2	3-3	1-4	2-5	5-5	5-6	5-1	5-2	6-7
Port C-1	56	39	58	41	55	40	57	42	51	71	72	67	68	81
Port C-1	2-1	1-5	2-3	1-7	2-2	1-6	2-4	1-8	2-6	5-7	5-8	5-3	5-4	6-8
Port C-1	47	43	49	45	48	44	50	46	52	73	74	69	70	82

For model 332 base mounted cabinets, ensure terminals J14-E and J14-K are wired together on the rear of the Input File. Connect TB9-12 (J14 Common) on the Input Panel to T1-2 (AC-) on the rear of the PDA.

Provide detector test switches mounted at the top of the cabinet rack or other convenient location which may be used to place a call on each of eight phases based on the chart below. Provide three positions for each switch: On (place call), Off (normal detector operation), and Momentary On (place momentary call and return to normal detector operation after switch is released). Ensure that the switches are located such that the technician can read the controller display and observe the intersection.

Connect detector test switches for cabinets as follows:

I-4400BB&C**TS-16****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

336S Cabinet		332 Cabinet	
Detector Call Switches	Terminals	Detector Call Switches	Terminals
Phase 1	I1-F	Phase 1	I1-W
Phase 2	I2-F	Phase 2	I4-W
Phase 3	I3-F	Phase 3	I5-W
Phase 4	I4-F	Phase 4	I8-W
Phase 5	I5-F	Phase 5	J1-W
Phase 6	I6-F	Phase 6	J4-W
Phase 7	I7-F	Phase 7	J5-W
Phase 8	I8-F	Phase 8	J8-W

Provide the PCB 28/56 connector for the conflict monitor unit (CMU) with 28 independent contacts per side, dual-sided with 0.156-inch contact centers. Provide the PCB 28/56 connector contacts with solder eyelet terminations. Ensure all connections to the PCB 28/56 connector are soldered to the solder eyelet terminations.

Ensure that all cabinets have the CMU connector wired according to the 332 cabinet connector pin assignments (include all wires for auxiliary output file connection). Wire pins 13, 16, R, and U of the CMU connector to a separate 4 pin plug, P1, as shown below. Provide a second plug, P2, which will mate with P1 and is wired to the auxiliary output file as shown below. Provide an additional plug, P3, which will mate with P1 and is wired to the pedestrian yellow circuits as shown below. When no auxiliary output file is installed in the cabinet, provide wires for the green and yellow inputs for channels 11, 12, 17, and 18, the red inputs for channels 17 and 18, and the wires for the P2 plug. Terminate the two-foot wires with ring type lugs, insulated, and bundled for optional use.

P1			P2		P3	
PIN	FUNCTION	CONN TO	FUNCTION	CONN TO	FUNCTION	CONN TO
1	CH-9G	CMU-13	OLA-GRN	A123	2P-YEL	114
2	CH-9Y	CMU-16	OLA-YEL	A122	4P-YEL	105
3	CH-10G	CMU-R	OLB-GRN	A126	6P-YEL	120
4	CH-10Y	CMU-U	OLB-YEL	A125	8P-YEL	111

Do not provide the P20 terminal assembly (red monitor board) or red interface ribbon cable as specified in LA Specification No. 54-053-08.

Provide a P20 connector that mates with and is compatible with the red interface connector mounted on the front of the conflict monitor. Ensure that the P20 connector and the red interface

connector on the conflict monitor are center polarized to ensure proper connection. Ensure that removal of the P20 connector will cause the conflict monitor to recognize a latching fault condition and place the cabinet into flashing operation.

Wire the P20 connector to the output file and auxiliary output file using 22 AWG stranded wires. Ensure the length of these wires is a minimum of 42 inches in length. Provide a durable braided sleeve around the wires to organize and protect the wires.

Wire the P20 connector to the traffic signal red displays to provide inputs to the conflict monitor as shown below. Ensure the pedestrian Don't Walk circuits are wired to channels 13 through 16 of the P20 connector. When no auxiliary output file is installed in the cabinet, provide wires for channels 9 through 12 reds. Provide a wire for special function 1. Terminate the unused wires with ring type lugs, insulated, and bundled for optional use.

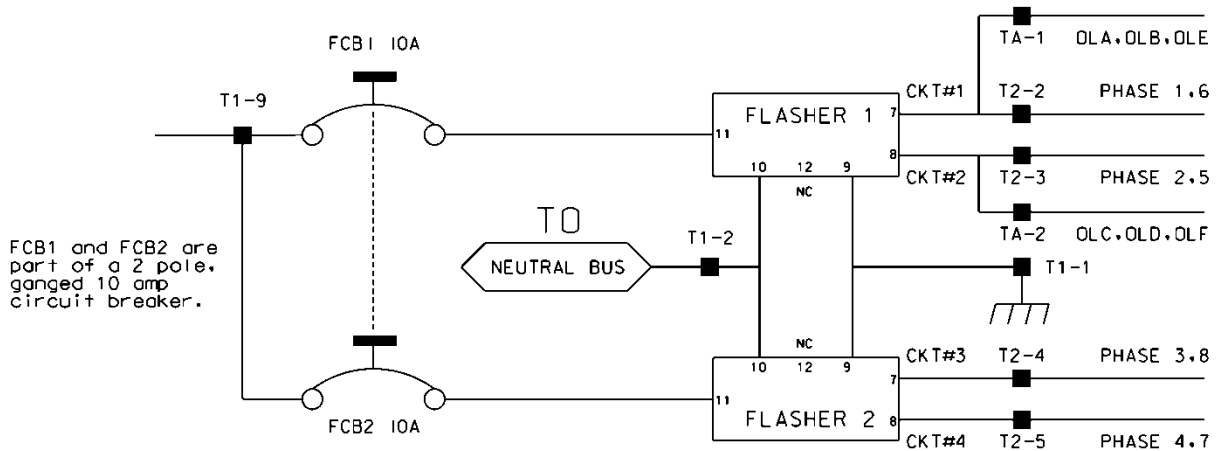
P20 Connector					
PIN	FUNCTION	CONN TO	PIN	FUNCTION	CONN TO
1	Channel 15 Red	119	2	Channel 16 Red	110
3	Channel 14 Red	104	4	Chassis GND	01-9
5	Channel 13 Red	113	6	N/C	
7	Channel 12 Red	AUX 101	8	Spec Function 1	
9	Channel 10 Red	AUX 124	10	Channel 11 Red	AUX 114
11	Channel 9 Red	AUX 121	12	Channel 8 Red	107
13	Channel 7 Red	122	14	Channel 6 Red	134
15	Channel 5 Red	131	16	Channel 4 Red	101
17	Channel 3 Red	116	18	Channel 2 Red	128
19	Channel 1 Red	125	20	Red Enable	01-14

Ensure the controller unit outputs to the auxiliary output file are pre-wired to the C5 connector. When no auxiliary output file is installed in the cabinet, connect the C5 connector to a storage socket located on the Input Panel or on the rear of the PDA.

Do not wire pin 12 of the load switch sockets.

In addition to the requirements of LA Specification No. 54-053-08, ensure relay K1 on the Power Distribution Assembly (PDA) is a four-pole relay and K2 on the PDA is a two-pole relay.

Provide a two pole, ganged circuit breaker for the flash bus circuit. Ensure the flash bus circuit breaker is an inverse time circuit breaker rated for 10 amps at 120 VAC with a minimum of 10,000 RMS symmetrical amperes short circuit current rating. Do not provide the auxiliary switch feature on the flash bus circuit breaker. Ensure the ganged flash bus circuit breaker is certified by the circuit breaker manufacturer to provide gang tripping operation.



Ensure auxiliary output files are wired as follows:

AUXILIARY OUTPUT FILE	
TERMINAL BLOCK TA ASSIGNMENTS	
POSITION	FUNCTION
1	Flasher Unit #1, Circuit 1/FTR1 (OLA, OLB)/FTR3 (OLE)
2	Flasher Unit #1, Circuit 2/FTR2 (OLC, OLD)/FTR3 (OLF)
3	Flash Transfer Relay Coils
4	AC -
5	Power Circuit 5
6	Power Circuit 5
7	Equipment Ground Bus
8	NC

Provide four spare load resistors mounted in each cabinet. Ensure each load resistor is rated as shown in the table below. Wire one side of each load resistor to AC-. Connect the other side of each resistor to a separate terminal on a four (4) position terminal block. Mount the load resistors and terminal block either inside the back of Output File No. 1 or on the upper area of the Service Panel.

ACCEPTABLE LOAD RESISTOR VALUES	
VALUE (ohms)	WATTAGE
1.5K – 1.9 K	25W (min)
2.0K – 3.0K	10W (min)

Provide Model 200 load switches, Model 204 flashers, Model 242 DC isolators, Model 252 AC isolators, and Model 206L power supply units that conform to CALTRANS' *Transportation Electrical Equipment Specifications* dated March 12, 2009 with Erratum 1.

C. Type 170 E Cabinet Physical Requirements

Do not mold, cast, or scribe the name "City of Los Angeles" on the outside of the cabinet door as specified in LA Specification No. 54-053-08. Do not provide a Communications Terminal Panel as specified in LA Specification No. 54-053-08. Do not provide terminal block TBB on the Service Panel. Do not provide Cabinet Verification Test Program software or associated test jigs as specified in LA Specification No. 54-053-08.

Furnish unpainted, natural, aluminum cabinet shells. Ensure that all non-aluminum hardware on the cabinet is stainless steel or a Department approved non-corrosive alternate.

Ensure the lifting eyes, gasket channels, police panel, and all supports welded to the enclosure and doors are fabricated from 0.125-inch minimum thickness aluminum sheet and meet the same standards as the cabinet and doors.

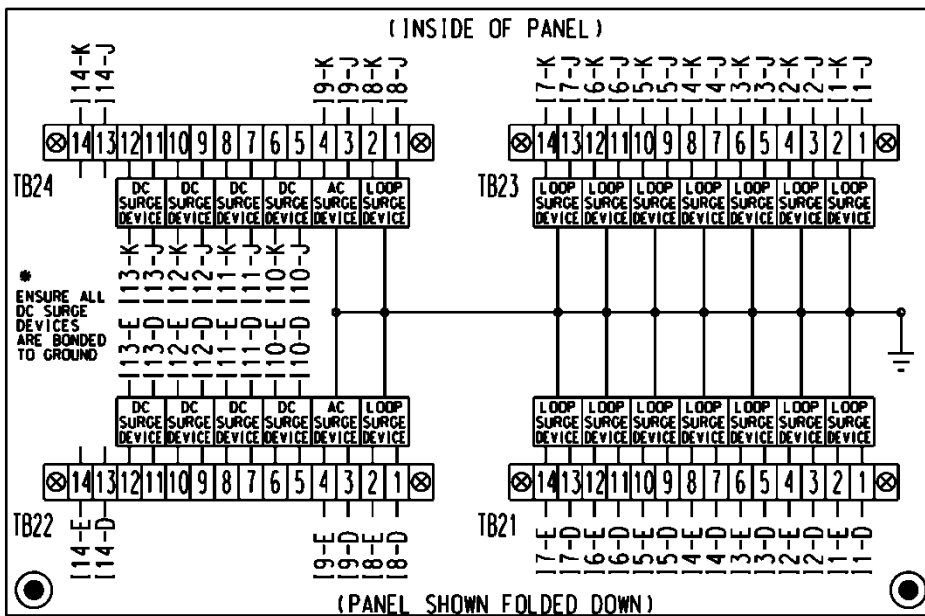
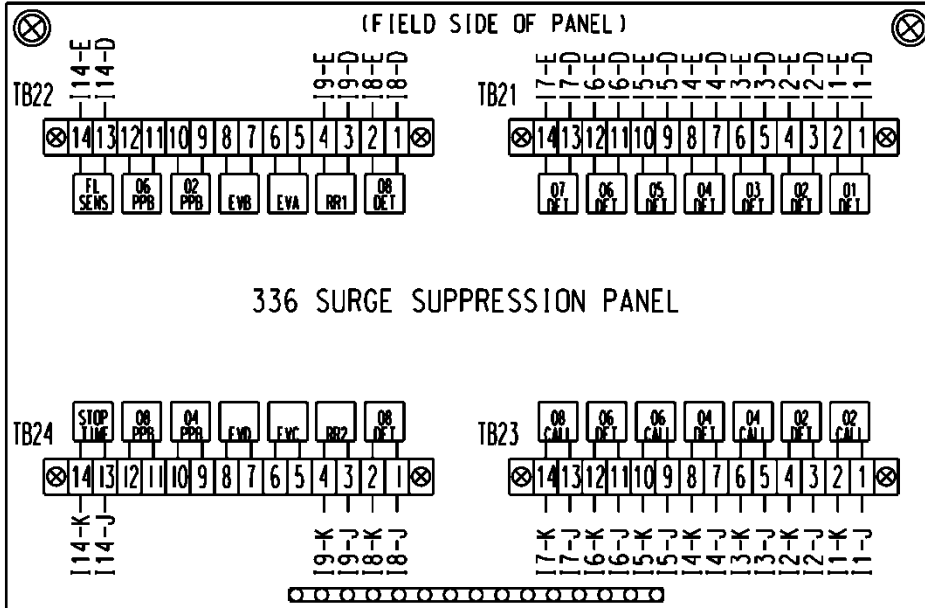
Provide front and rear doors with latching handles that allow padlocking in the closed position. Furnish 0.75-inch minimum diameter stainless steel handles with a minimum 0.5-inch shank. Place the padlocking attachment at 4.0 inches from the handle shank center to clear the lock and key. Provide an additional 4.0 inches minimum gripping length.

Provide Corbin #2 locks on the front and rear doors. Provide one (1) Corbin #2 and one (1) police master key with each cabinet. Ensure main door locks allow removal of keys in the locked position only.

Provide a surge protection panel with 16 loop surge protection devices and designed to allow sufficient free space for wire connection/disconnection and surge protection device replacement. For model 332 cabinets, provide an additional 20 loop surge protection devices. Provide an additional two AC+ interconnect surge devices to protect one slot and eight DC surge protection devices to protect four slots. Provide no protection devices on slot I14.

For pole mounted cabinets, mount surge protection devices for the AC+ interconnect inputs, inductive loop detector inputs, and low voltage DC inputs on a swing down panel assembly fabricated from sturdy aluminum. Attach the swing down panel to the bottom rear cabinet rack assembly using thumb screws. Ensure the swing down panel allows for easy removal of the input file without removing the surge protection panel assembly or its parts. Have the surge protection devices mounted horizontally on the panel and soldered to the feed through terminals of four 14 position terminal blocks with #8 screws mounted on the other side. Ensure the top row of terminals

is connected to the upper slots and the bottom row of terminals is connected to the bottom slots. Provide a 15-position copper equipment ground bus attached to the field terminal side (outside) of the swing down panel for termination of loop lead-in shield grounds. Ensure that a Number 4 AWG green wire connects the surge protection panel assembly ground bus to the main cabinet equipment ground.



For base mounted cabinets, mount surge protection panels on the left side of the cabinet as viewed from the rear. Attach each panel to the cabinet rack assembly using bolts and make it easily removable. Mount the surge protection devices in vertical rows on each panel and connect the devices to one side of 12 position, double row terminal blocks with #8 screws. For each surge protection panel, terminate all grounds from the surge protection devices on a copper equipment ground bus attached to the surge protection panel. Wire the terminals to the rear of a standard input file using spade lugs for input file protection.

Provide permanent labels that indicate the slot and the pins connected to each terminal that may be viewed from the rear cabinet door. Label and orient terminals so that each pair of inputs is next to each other. Indicate on the labeling the input file (I or J), the slot number (1-14) and the terminal pins of the input slots (either D & E for upper or J & K for lower).

Provide a minimum 14 x 16 inch pull out, hinged top shelf located immediately below controller mounting section of the cabinet. Ensure the shelf is designed to fully expose the table surface outside the controller at a height approximately even with the bottom of the controller. Ensure the shelf has a storage bin interior which is a minimum of 1 inch deep and approximately the same dimensions as the shelf. Provide an access to the storage area by lifting the hinged top of the shelf. Fabricate the shelf and slide from aluminum or stainless steel and ensure the assembly can support the 2070E controller plus 15 pounds of additional weight. Ensure shelf has a locking mechanism to secure it in the fully extended position and does not inhibit the removal of the 2070E controller or removal of cards inside the controller when fully extended. Provide a locking mechanism that is easily released when the shelf is to be returned to its non-use position directly under the controller.

D. Model 2018 Enhanced Conflict Monitor

Furnish Model 2018 Enhanced Conflict Monitors that provide monitoring of 18 channels. Ensure each channel consists of a green, yellow, and red field signal input. Ensure that the conflict monitor meets or exceeds CALTRANS' Transportation Electrical Equipment Specifications dated March 12, 2009, with Erratum 1 (hereafter referred to as CALTRANS' 2009 TEES) for a model 210 monitor unit and other requirements stated in this specification.

Ensure the conflict monitor is provided with an 18 channel conflict programming card. Pin EE and Pin T of the conflict programming card shall be connected together. Pin 16 of the conflict programming card shall be floating. Ensure that the absence of the conflict programming card will cause the conflict monitor to trigger (enter into fault mode), and remain in the triggered state until the programming card is properly inserted and the conflict monitor is reset.

Provide a conflict monitor that incorporates LED indicators into the front panel to dynamically display the status of the monitor under normal conditions and to provide a comprehensive review of field inputs with monitor status under fault conditions. Ensure that the monitor indicates the channels that were active during a conflict condition and the channels that experienced a failure for all other per channel fault conditions detected. Ensure that these indications and the status of each channel are retained until the Conflict Monitor is reset. Furnish LED indicators for the following:

- AC Power (Green LED indicator)
- VDC Failed (Red LED indicator)

- WDT Error (Red LED indicator)
- Conflict (Red LED indicator)
- Red Fail (Red LED indicator)
- Dual Indication (Red LED indicator)
- Yellow/Clearance Failure (Red LED indicator)
- PCA/PC Ajar (Red LED indicator)
- Monitor Fail/Diagnostic Failure (Red LED indicator)
- 54 Channel Status Indicators (1 Red, 1 Yellow, and 1 Green LED indicator for each of the 18 channels)

Provide a switch to set the Red Fail fault timing. Ensure that when the switch is in the ON position the Red Fail fault timing value is set to 1350 +/- 150 ms (2018 mode). Ensure that when the switch is in the OFF position the Red Fail fault timing value is set to 850 +/- 150 ms (210 mode).

Provide a switch to set the Watchdog fault timing. Ensure that when the switch is in the ON position the Watchdog fault timing value is set to 1.0 +/- 0.1 s (2018 mode). Ensure that when the switch is in the OFF position the Watchdog fault timing value is set to 1.5 +/- 0.1 s (210 mode).

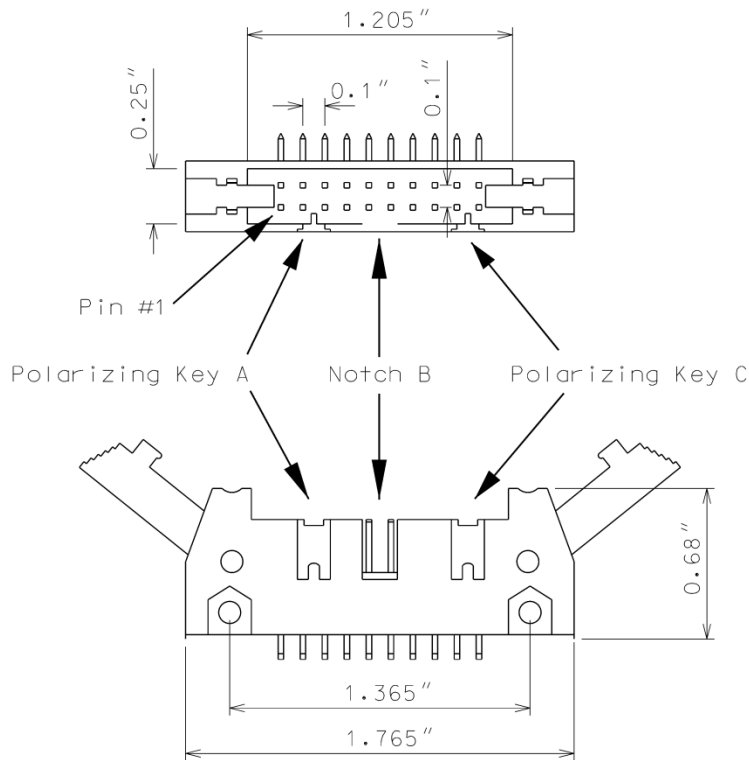
Provide a jumper or switch to set the AC line brown-out levels. Ensure that when the jumper is present or the switch is in the ON position the AC line dropout voltage threshold is 98 +/- 2 Vrms, the AC line restore voltage threshold is 103 +/- 2 Vrms, and the AC line brown-out timing value is set to 400 +/- 50ms (2018 mode). Ensure that when the jumper is not present or the switch is in the OFF position the AC line dropout voltage threshold is 92 +/- 2 Vrms, the AC line restore voltage threshold is 98 +/- 2 Vrms, and the AC line brown-out timing value is set to 80 +/- 17 ms (210 mode).

Provide a jumper or switch that will enable and disable the Watchdog Latch function. Ensure that when the jumper is not present or the switch is in the OFF position the Watchdog Latch function is disabled. In this mode of operation, a Watchdog fault will be reset following a power loss, brownout, or power interruption. Ensure that when the jumper is present or the switch is in the ON position the Watchdog Latch function is enabled. In this mode of operation, a Watchdog fault will be retained until a Reset command is issued.

Provide a jumper that will reverse the active polarity for pin #EE (output relay common). Ensure that when the jumper is not present pin #EE (output relay common) will be considered 'Active' at a voltage greater than 70 Vrms and 'Not Active' at a voltage less than 50 Vrms (Caltrans mode). Ensure that when the jumper is present pin #EE (output relay common) will be considered 'Active' at a voltage less than 50 Vrms and 'Not Active' at a voltage greater than 70 Vrms (Failsafe mode).

In addition to the connectors required by CALTRANS' 2009 TEES, provide the conflict monitor with a red interface connector mounted on the front of the monitor. Ensure the connector is a 20 pin, right angle, center polarized, male connector with latching clip locks and polarizing

keys. Ensure the right angle solder tails are designed for a 0.062" thick printed circuit board. Keying of the connector shall be between pins 3 and 5, and between 17 and 19. Ensure the connector has two rows of pins with the odd numbered pins on one row and the even pins on the other row. Ensure the connector pin row spacing is 0.10" and pitch is 0.10". Ensure the mating length of the connector pins is 0.24". Ensure the pins are finished with gold plating 30 μ " thick.



Ensure the red interface connector pins on the monitor have the following functions:

Pin #	Function	Pin #	Function
1	Channel 15 Red	2	Channel 16 Red
3	Channel 14 Red	4	Chassis Ground
5	Channel 13 Red	6	Special Function 2
7	Channel 12 Red	8	Special Function 1
9	Channel 10 Red	10	Channel 11 Red
11	Channel 9 Red	12	Channel 8 Red
13	Channel 7 Red	14	Channel 6 Red
15	Channel 5 Red	16	Channel 4 Red
17	Channel 3 Red	18	Channel 2 Red
19	Channel 1 Red	20	Red Enable

Ensure that removal of the P20 cable connector will cause the conflict monitor to recognize a latching fault condition and place the cabinet into flashing operation.

Provide Special Function 1 and Special Function 2 inputs to the unit which shall disable only Red Fail Monitoring when either input is sensed active. A Special Function input shall be sensed active when the input voltage exceeds 70 Vrms with a minimum duration of 550 ms. A Special Function input shall be sensed not active when the input voltage is less than 50 Vrms or the duration is less than 250 ms. A Special Function input is undefined by these specifications and may or may not be sensed active when the input voltage is between 50 Vrms and 70 Vrms or the duration is between 250 ms and 550 ms.

Ensure the conflict monitor recognizes field signal inputs for each channel that meet the following requirements:

- consider a Red input greater than 70 Vrms and with a duration of at least 500 ms as an “on” condition;
- consider a Red input less than 50 Vrms or with a duration of less than 200 ms as an “off” condition (no valid signal);
- consider a Red input between 50 Vrms and 70 Vrms or with a duration between 200 ms and 500 ms to be undefined by these specifications;
- consider a Green or Yellow input greater than 25 Vrms and with a duration of at least 500 ms as an “on” condition;
- consider a Green or Yellow input less than 15 Vrms or with a duration of less than 200 ms as an “off” condition; and

- consider a Green or Yellow input between 15 Vrms and 25 Vrms or with a duration between 200 ms and 500 ms to be undefined by these specifications.

Provide a conflict monitor that recognizes the faults specified by CALTRANS' 2009 TEES and the following additional faults. Ensure the conflict monitor will trigger upon detection of a fault and will remain in the triggered (in fault mode) state until the unit is reset at the front panel or through the external remote reset input for the following failures:

1. **Red Monitoring or Absence of Any Indication (Red Failure):** A condition in which no "on" voltage signal is detected on any of the green, yellow, or red inputs to a given monitor channel. If a signal is not detected on at least one input (R, Y, or G) of a conflict monitor channel for a period greater than 1000 ms when used with a 170 controller and 1500 ms when used with a 2070 controller, ensure monitor will trigger and put the intersection into flash. If the absence of any indication condition lasts less than 700 ms when used with a 170 controller and 1200 ms when used with a 2070 controller, ensure conflict monitor will not trigger. Red fail monitoring shall be enabled on a per channel basis by the use of switches located on the conflict monitor. Have red monitoring occur when all of the following input conditions are in effect:
 - a) Red Enable input to monitor is active (Red Enable voltages are "on" at greater than 70 Vrms, off at less than 50 Vrms, undefined between 50 and 70 Vrms), and
 - b) Neither Special Function 1 nor Special Function 2 inputs are active.
 - c) Pin #EE (output relay common) is not active
2. **Short/Missing Yellow Indication Fault (Clearance Error):** Yellow indication following a green is missing or shorter than 2.7 seconds (with ± 0.1 -second accuracy). If a channel fails to detect an "on" signal at the Yellow input for a minimum of 2.7 seconds (± 0.1 second) following the detection of an "on" signal at a Green input for that channel, ensure that the monitor triggers and generates a clearance/short yellow error fault indication. Short/missing yellow (clearance) monitoring shall be enabled on a per channel basis by the use of switches located on the conflict monitor. This fault shall not occur when the channel is programmed for Yellow Inhibit, when the Red Enable signal is inactive or pin #EE (output relay common) is active.
3. **Dual Indications on the Same Channel:** In this condition, more than one indication (R,Y,G) is detected as "on" at the same time on the same channel. If dual indications are detected for a period greater than 500 ms, ensure that the conflict monitor triggers and displays the proper failure indication (Dual Ind fault). If this condition is detected for less than 200 ms, ensure that the monitor does not trigger. G-Y-R dual indication monitoring shall be enabled on a per channel basis by the use of switches located on the conflict monitor. G-Y dual indication monitoring shall be enabled for all channels by use of a switch located on the conflict monitor. This fault shall not occur when the Red Enable signal is inactive or pin #EE (output relay common) is active.

4. **Configuration Settings Change:** The configuration settings are comprised of (as a minimum) the permissive diode matrix, dual indication switches, yellow disable jumpers, any option switches, any option jumpers, and the Watchdog Enable switch. Ensure the conflict monitor compares the current configuration settings with the previous stored configuration settings on power-up, on reset, and periodically during operation. If any of the configuration settings are changed, ensure that the conflict monitor triggers and causes the program card indicator to flash. Ensure that configuration change faults are only reset by depressing and holding the front panel reset button for a minimum of three seconds. Ensure the external remote reset input does not reset configuration change faults.

Ensure the conflict monitor will trigger and the AC Power indicator will flash at a rate of 2 Hz \pm 20% with a 50% duty cycle when the AC Line voltage falls below the “drop-out” level. Ensure the conflict monitor will resume normal operation when the AC Line voltage returns above the “restore” level. Ensure the AC Power indicator will remain illuminated when the AC voltage returns above the “restore” level. Should an AC Line power interruption occur while the monitor is in the fault mode, then upon restoration of AC Line power, the monitor will remain in the fault mode and the correct fault and channel indicators will be displayed.

Provide a flash interval of at least 6 seconds and at most 10 seconds in duration following a power-up, an AC Line interruption, or a brownout restore. Ensure the conflict monitor will suspend all fault monitoring functions, close the Output relay contacts, and flash the AC indicator at a rate of 4 Hz \pm 20% with a 50% duty cycle during this interval. Ensure the termination of the flash interval after at least 6 seconds if the Watchdog input has made 5 transitions between the True and False state and the AC Line voltage is greater than the “restore” level. If the watchdog input has not made 5 transitions between the True and False state within 10 ± 0.5 seconds, the monitor shall enter a WDT error fault condition.

Ensure the conflict monitor will monitor an intersection with a minimum of four approaches using the four-section Flashing Yellow Arrow (FYA) vehicle traffic signal as outlined by the NCHRP 3-54 research project for protected-permissive left turn signal displays. Ensure the conflict monitor will operate in the FYA mode and FYAc (Compact) mode as specified below to monitor each channel pair for the following fault conditions: Conflict, Flash Rate Detection, Red Fail, Dual Indication, and Clearance. Provide a switch to select between the FYA mode and FYAc mode. Provide a switch to select each FYA phase movement for monitoring.

FYA mode

FYA Signal Head	Phase 1	Phase 3	Phase 5	Phase 7
Red Arrow	Channel 9 Red	Channel 10 Red	Channel 11 Red	Channel 12 Red
Yellow Arrow	Channel 9 Yellow	Channel 10 Yellow	Channel 11 Yellow	Channel 12 Yellow

I-4400BB&C**TS-27****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

Flashing Yellow Arrow	Channel 9 Green	Channel 10 Green	Channel 11 Green	Channel 12 Green
Green Arrow	Channel 1 Green	Channel 3 Green	Channel 5 Green	Channel 7 Green

FYAc mode

FYA Signal Head	Phase 1	Phase 3	Phase 5	Phase 7
Red Arrow	Channel 1 Red	Channel 3 Red	Channel 5 Red	Channel 7 Red
Yellow Arrow	Channel 1 Yellow	Channel 3 Yellow	Channel 5 Yellow	Channel 7 Yellow
Flashing Yellow Arrow	Channel 1 Green	Channel 3 Green	Channel 5 Green	Channel 7 Green
Green Arrow	Channel 9 Green	Channel 9 Yellow	Channel 10 Green	Channel 10 Yellow

If a FYA channel pair is enabled for FYA operation, the conflict monitor will monitor the FYA logical channel pair for the additional following conditions:

1. **Conflict:** Channel conflicts are detected based on the permissive programming jumpers on the program card. This operation remains unchanged from normal operation except for the solid Yellow arrow (FYA clearance) signal.
2. **Yellow Change Interval Conflict:** During the Yellow change interval of the Permissive Turn channel (flashing Yellow arrow) the conflict monitor shall verify that no conflicting channels to the solid Yellow arrow channel (clearance) are active. These conflicting channels shall be determined by the program card compatibility programming of the Permissive Turn channel (flashing Yellow arrow). During the Yellow change interval of the Protected Turn channel (solid Green arrow) the conflict monitor shall verify that no conflicting channels to the solid Yellow arrow channel (clearance) are active as determined by the program card compatibility programming of the Protected Turn channel (solid Green arrow).
3. **Flash Rate Detection:** The conflict monitor unit shall monitor for the absence of a valid flash rate for the Permissive turn channel (flashing Yellow arrow). If the Permissive turn channel (flashing Yellow arrow) is active for a period greater than 1600 milliseconds, ensure the conflict monitor triggers and puts the intersection into flash. If the Permissive turn channel (flashing Yellow arrow) is active for a period less than 1400 milliseconds, ensure the conflict monitor does not trigger. Ensure the conflict monitor will remain in the triggered (in fault mode) state until the unit is reset at the front panel or through the external

remote reset input. Provide a jumper or switch that will enable and disable the Flash Rate Detection function. Ensure that when the jumper is not present or the switch is in the OFF position the Flash Rate Detection function is enabled. Ensure that when the jumper is present or the switch is in the ON position the Flash Rate Detection function is disabled.

4. **Red Monitoring or Absence of Any Indication (Red Failure):** The conflict monitor unit shall detect a red failure if there is an absence of voltage on all four of the inputs of a FYA channel pair (RA, YA, FYA, GA).
5. **Dual Indications on the Same Channel:** The conflict monitor unit shall detect a dual indication if two or more inputs of a FYA channel pair (RA, YA, FYA, GA) are “on” at the same time.
6. **Short/Missing Yellow Indication Fault (Clearance Error):** The conflict monitor unit shall monitor the solid Yellow arrow for a clearance fault when terminating both the Protected Turn channel (solid Green arrow) interval and the Permissive Turn channel (flashing Yellow arrow) interval.

Ensure that the conflict monitor will log at least nine of the most recent events detected by the monitor in non-volatile EEPROM memory (or equivalent). For each event, record at a minimum the time, date, type of event, status of each field signal indication with RMS voltage, and specific channels involved with the event. Ensure the conflict monitor will log the following events: monitor reset, configuration, previous fault, and AC line. Furnish the signal sequence log that shows all channel states (Greens, Yellows, and Reds) and the Red Enable State for a minimum of 2 seconds prior to the current fault trigger point. Ensure the display resolution of the inputs for the signal sequence log is not greater than 50 ms.

For conflict monitors used within an Ethernet communications system, provide a conflict monitor with an Ethernet 10/100 Mbps, RJ-45 port for data communication access to the monitor by a local notebook computer and remotely via a workstation or notebook computer device connected to the signal system local area network. The Ethernet port shall be electrically isolated from the conflict monitor’s electronics and shall provide a minimum of 1500 Vrms isolation. Integrate monitor with Ethernet network in cabinet. Provide software to retrieve the time and date from a network server in order to synchronize the on-board times between the conflict monitor and the controller. Furnish and install the following Windows based, graphic user interface software on workstations and notebook computers where the signal system client software is installed: 1) software to view and retrieve all event log information, 2) software that will search and display a list of conflict monitor IP addresses and IDs on the network, and 3) software to change the conflict monitor’s network parameters such as IP address and subnet mask.

For non-Ethernet connected monitors, provide a RS-232C/D compliant port (DB-9 female connector) on the front panel of the conflict monitor in order to provide communications from the conflict monitor to the 170/2070 controller or to a Department-furnished laptop computer. Electrically isolate the port interface electronics from all monitor electronics, excluding Chassis Ground. Ensure that the controller can receive all event log information through a controller Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (Type 170E) or Async Serial Comm Module (2070). Furnish and connect a serial cable from the conflict monitor’s DB-9 connector to Comm Port 1 of the 2070 controller. Ensure conflict monitor communicates with the controller. Provide a Windows based graphic user interface software to communicate directly through the same

monitor RS-232C/D compliant port to retrieve and view all event log information to a Department-furnished laptop computer. The RS-232C/D compliant port on the monitor shall allow the monitor to function as a DCE device with pin connections as follows:

Conflict Monitor RS-232C/D (DB-9 Female) Pinout		
Pin Number	Function	I/O
1	DCD	O
2	TX Data	O
3	RX Data	I
4	DTR	I
5	Ground	-
6	DSR	O
7	CTS	I
8	RTS	O
9	NC	-

MONITOR BOARD EDGE CONNECTOR

Pin #	Function (Back Side)	Pin #	Function (Component Side)
1	Channel 2 Green	A	Channel 2 Yellow
2	Channel 13 Green	B	Channel 6 Green
3	Channel 6 Yellow	C	Channel 15 Green
4	Channel 4 Green	D	Channel 4 Yellow
5	Channel 14 Green	E	Channel 8 Green
6	Channel 8 Yellow	F	Channel 16 Green
7	Channel 5 Green	H	Channel 5 Yellow
8	Channel 13 Yellow	J	Channel 1 Green
9	Channel 1 Yellow	K	Channel 15 Yellow
10	Channel 7 Green	L	Channel 7 Yellow
11	Channel 14 Yellow	M	Channel 3 Green
12	Channel 3 Yellow	N	Channel 16 Yellow
13	Channel 9 Green	P	Channel 17 Yellow
14	Channel 17 Green	R	Channel 10 Green
15	Channel 11 Yellow	S	Channel 11 Green
16	Channel 9 Yellow	T	Channel 18 Yellow
17	Channel 18 Green	U	Channel 10 Yellow
--		--	
18	Channel 12 Yellow	V	Channel 12 Green
19	Channel 17 Red	W	Channel 18 Red
20	Chassis Ground	X	Not Assigned
21	AC-	Y	DC Common
22	Watchdog Timer	Z	External Test Reset
23	+24VDC	AA	+24VDC
24	Tied to Pin 25	BB	Stop Time (Output)
25	Tied to Pin 24	CC	Not Assigned
26	Not Assigned	DD	Not Assigned
27	Relay Output, Side #3, N.O.	EE	Relay Output, Side #2, Common
28	Relay Output, Side #1, N.C.	FF	AC+

-- Slotted for keying between Pins 17/U and 18/V

CONFLICT PROGRAM CARD PIN ASSIGNMENTS

Pin #	Function (Back Side)	Pin #	Function (Component Side)
1	Channel 2 Green	A	Channel 1 Green
2	Channel 3 Green	B	Channel 2 Green
3	Channel 4 Green	C	Channel 3 Green
4	Channel 5 Green	D	Channel 4 Green
5	Channel 6 Green	E	Channel 5 Green
6	Channel 7 Green	F	Channel 6 Green
7	Channel 8 Green	H	Channel 7 Green
8	Channel 9 Green	J	Channel 8 Green
9	Channel 10 Green	K	Channel 9 Green
10	Channel 11 Green	L	Channel 10 Green
11	Channel 12 Green	M	Channel 11 Green
12	Channel 13 Green	N	Channel 12 Green
13	Channel 14 Green	P	Channel 13 Green
14	Channel 15 Green	R	Channel 14 Green
15	Channel 16 Green	S	Channel 15 Green
16	N/C	T	PC AJAR
17	Channel 1 Yellow	U	Channel 9 Yellow
18	Channel 2 Yellow	V	Channel 10 Yellow
19	Channel 3 Yellow	W	Channel 11 Yellow
20	Channel 4 Yellow	X	Channel 12 Yellow
21	Channel 5 Yellow	Y	Channel 13 Yellow
22	Channel 6 Yellow	Z	Channel 14 Yellow
23	Channel 7 Yellow	AA	Channel 15 Yellow
24	Channel 8 Yellow	BB	Channel 16 Yellow
--		--	
25	Channel 17 Green	CC	Channel 17 Yellow
26	Channel 18 Green	DD	Channel 18 Yellow
27	Channel 16 Green	EE	PC AJAR (Program Card)
28	Yellow Inhibit Common	FF	Channel 17 Green

-- Slotted for keying between Pins 24/BB and 25/CC

Provide model 2070E controllers with OS-9 release 1.3.1 or later with kernel edition #380 or later operating software and device drivers, composed of the unit chassis and at a minimum the following modules and assemblies:

- MODEL 2070-1E, CPU Module, Single Board, with 8Mb Datakey (blue in color)
- MODEL 2070-2E+, Field I/O Module (FI/O)
 - Note: Configure the Field I/O Module to disable both the External WDT Shunt/Toggle Switch and SP3 (SP3 active indicator is “off”)
- MODEL 2070-3B, Front Panel Module (FP), Display B (8x40)
- MODEL 2070-4A, Power Supply Module, 10 AMP
- MODEL 2070-7A, Async Serial Com Module (9-pin RS-232)

3.7. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. General

Remove existing controllers and cabinets where required. Remove maintenance diary from cabinet and place in new cabinet or deliver to the Engineer. Take existing equipment out of service only at the time directed.

Locate new cabinets so as not to obstruct sight distance of vehicles turning on red.

Install controllers, cabinets, detector sensor units and hardware that provide required phasing, color sequence, flash sequence, interconnection, railroad clearance and preemption and emergency vehicle clearance and preemption.

Stencil signal inventory number on cabinet side facing roadway. Use 3-inch black characters.

Provide external electrical service disconnect at all new and existing cabinet locations unless otherwise specified.

Do not program controller for late night flashing operation at railroad preemption installations. For all other installations, do not program controller for late night flashing operation unless otherwise directed. Ensure all signal heads for same approach flash concurrently during flashing operation.

Provide serial number and cabinet model number for each new controller and controller cabinet installed.

Install pole mounted cabinets so height to cabinet middle is 4 feet.

Activate controllers with proposed phasing and timing.

B. System Interconnection

When interconnection of signals is required (via fiber optics, ethernet, wireless, etc.), install communications interface equipment and hardware for signals. Demonstrate proper operation of interconnection using manual commands and upload/download capability to each local controller from the respective master controller after interconnection is complete.

Program telemetry command sequences and enable devices necessary for testing of communication between local controllers and field master controllers and between field master controllers and Department-furnished central computer. Where master controllers are not used, demonstrate proper operation of interconnection between local intersections controllers and a central system server.

C. Workshop

Provide enclosed workshop to set up and test new controllers and cabinets before installation. Locate workshop within Division responsible for project administration. Ensure workshop provides protection from weather and sufficient space to house 2 test observers, all necessary test equipment and material, controllers and cabinets.

Configure and test each controller and cabinet to match the proposed signal design. Ensure all equipment furnished and installed or modified by the Contractor at each location operates in full compliance with the plans and project special provisions. Test each controller and cabinet for proper color sequence, flashing operation, phase timings, preemption, coordination and conflict monitor programming or malfunction management unit programming. Ensure that simultaneous conflicting phase outputs will cause the cabinet to revert to flashing operation. For intersections with any type of preemption, submit a completed Preemption Test Procedure Checklist. The checklist is located on the Department’s website.

Test the cabinet and controller for eight hours minimum. Following this test and before installation, the Engineer will inspect the equipment in operation. The Engineer may require other tests to ensure proper operation. These tests shall be at no additional cost to the Department.

3.8. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Controller with Cabinet () will be measured and paid as the actual number of each type of controllers with cabinets furnished, installed and accepted.

Detector Card () will be measured and paid as the actual number furnished, installed and accepted.

No measurement will be made of conflict monitors, malfunction management units, external electrical service disconnect, grounding systems, modems, meter bases and workshop as these will be incidental to furnishing and installing controllers with cabinets.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Controller with Cabinet (Type 2070E, Base-Mounted).....	Each
Controller with Cabinet (Type 2070E, Pole-Mounted)	Each
Detector Card (2070E)	Each

4. MICROWAVE VEHICLE DETECTION SYSTEM - MULTIPLE DETECTION ZONES

4.1. DESCRIPTION

Design, furnish and install a microwave vehicle detection system with the manufacturer recommended cables and hardware in accordance to the plans and specifications. Ensure the detection system provides multiple detection zones.

4.2. MATERIALS

Provide design drawings showing design details and microwave sensor locations for review and acceptance before installation. Provide mounting height and location requirements for microwave sensor units on the design based on a site survey. Design microwave vehicle detection system with all necessary hardware. Indicate all necessary poles, spans, mast arms, luminaire arms, cables, microwave sensor mounting assemblies and hardware to achieve the required detection zones where Department owned poles are not adequate to locate the microwave sensor units. Do not design for the installation of poles in medians.

Obtain the Engineer's approval before furnishing microwave vehicle detection system. The contractor is responsible for the final design of microwave vehicle detection system. Review and acceptance of the designs by the Department does not relieve the contractor from the responsibility to provide fully functional systems and to ensure that the required detection zones can be provided. With the exception of contractor-furnished poles, mast arms, and luminaire arms, furnish material, equipment, and hardware under this section that is pre-approved on the ITS and Signals QPL. Submit and obtain Engineer's approval of shop drawings for any poles, mast arms, and luminaire arms provided by the contractor prior to ordering from manufacturer.

Provide a detector for either side-fire or forward-fire configuration. Ensure the detector will detect vehicles in sunny, cloudy, rainy, snowy, and foggy weather conditions. Ensure the detector can operate from the voltage supplied by a NEMA TS-1/TS-2 or Type 332 or 336 traffic signal cabinet. Ensure the detector can provide detection calls to the traffic signal controller within a NEMA TS-1/TS-2 or Type 332 or 336 cabinet. Ensure the detection system provides a constant call in the event of a component failure or loss of power. Ensure the detector has an operating temperature range of -30 to 165 degrees F and operates within the frequency range of 10 to 25 GHz. Ensure the detector is provided with a water-tight housing offering NEMA 4X protection and operates properly in up to 95% relative humidity, non-condensing.

Provide each detector unit to allow the placement of at least 8 detection zones with a minimum of 8 detection channel outputs. When the microwave vehicle detection system requires an integrated card rack interface(s), provide only enough interface cards to implement the vehicle detection shown on the signal plans. Provide a means acceptable to the Engineer to configure traffic lanes and detection zones. Provide each channel output with a programmable means to delay the output call upon activation of a detection zone that is adjustable in one second increments (maximum) over the range of 0 to 25 seconds. Provide each channel output with a programmable means to extend the output call that is adjustable in one second increments (maximum) over the range of 0 to 25 seconds. Ensure both delay and extend timing can be set for the same channel output.

For advance detection system, ensure the detector senses vehicles in motion at a range of 50 to 400 feet from the detector unit for forward-fire configuration and a range of 50 to 200 feet from the

detector unit for side-fire configuration with an accuracy of 95% for both configurations. Ensure the advance detection system provides each channel output call of at least 100 ms in duration.

For stop bar presence detection system, ensure the detector outputs a constant call while a vehicle is in the detection zone and removes the call after all vehicles exit the detection zone. Ensure the presence detector unit can cover a detection zone as shown on the plans and has an effective range of 10 to 120 feet from the detector unit.

For units without an integrated card rack interface, provide Form C output relay contacts rated a minimum of 3A, 24VDC.

If a laptop is used to adjust detector settings, ensure that software is licensed for use by the Department and by any other agency responsible for maintaining or operating the microwave detection system. Provide the Department with a license to duplicate and distribute the software as necessary for design and maintenance support.

After initial detector configuration and installation, ensure routine adjustments or calibration are not needed to maintain acceptable performance.

4.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install the microwave vehicle detection system in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Monitor and maintain each detector unit during construction to ensure microwave vehicle detection system is functioning properly and aimed for the detection zone shown in the plans. Refer to Subarticle 1700-3 (D) Maintenance and Repair of Materials of the *Standard Specifications* for failure to maintain the microwave detection system.

After the final signal construction is complete, remove the Microwave Vehicle Detection System – Multiple Zones shown in the Project Plans. Return the equipment to the Department between 8:00 a.m. and 12:00 p.m., Monday through Thursday.

4.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Microwave Vehicle Detection System – Multiple Zones will be measured and paid for as the actual number of microwave vehicle detection systems – multiple zones furnished, installed, accepted and eventually removed.

No measurement will be made of cables or hardware, as these will be considered incidental to furnishing and installing microwave vehicle detection systems.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Microwave Vehicle Detection System – Multiple Zones	Each

5. MODIFY SPREAD SPECTRUM WIRELESS RADIO

5.1. DESCRIPTION

Make modifications to existing Spread Spectrum Radio installations.

5.2. MATERIALS

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section shall be pre-approved on the Departments' QPL.

Reference Article 1098-18 "Spread Spectrum Wireless Radio" of the *Standard Specifications*.

5.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

This item of work involves making modifications to existing wireless installations which include relocating an existing radio from an existing cabinet to a new cabinet, and/or relocating existing components of the radio system from an existing pole to new poles (wood poles, metal strain poles, metal poles with mast arms, etc.). This item of work includes, but may not be limited to, the following:

- Relocating existing radio from an existing cabinet to a new cabinet
- Relocating or installing new Coaxial Cable
- Furnishing and installing new N-Type Connectors
- Furnishing new Coaxial Cable and Shield Grounding Kits
- Relocating Antenna Mounting Hardware
- Relocating Antennas

5.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Modify Radio Installation will be measured as the actual number of modified radio installations that are modified and accepted.

This item includes relocating the radio, and furnishing and/or relocating and installing coaxial cable, N-Type Connectors, coaxial cable shield grounding kits, antenna mounting hardware, antennas, coaxial cable and power dividers. This item of work may also involve furnishing and installing new decals and furnishing or relocating signs. This item of work may also involve re-programming the radio.

Payment for new risers will be covered separately.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Modify Radio Installation.....	Each

6. REMOVE SPREAD SPECTRUM RADIO

6.1. DESCRIPTION

Remove spread spectrum radio system and all necessary hardware and signage.

6.2. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Replace the existing spread spectrum radio assemblies with a 900 MHz Serial/Ethernet Spread Spectrum Radio to communication with the 2070E controllers during construction. Remove the existing spread spectrum radio systems and return the equipment to Division 13 Traffic Services Office between 8:00 a.m. and 12:00 p.m., Monday through Thursday.

After fiber optic cable construction is complete and the Asheville Signal System is communicating over to fiber, remove the 900 MHz Serial/Ethernet Spread Spectrum Radio assemblies shown in the Project Plans. Return the equipment to Division 13 Traffic Services Office between 8:00 a.m. and 12:00 p.m., Monday through Thursday.

6.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Remove 900MHz Radio will be measured and paid for as the actual number of 900 MHz radio assemblies removed and returned to the Division.

No measurement will be made of antennas, radios, power supplies, disconnect/snap switch, signs, decals, Ethernet cable, coaxial cable, lightning arrestor, radio frequency signal jumper, coaxial cable power divider (splitter), coaxial cable connectors, coaxial cable shield grounding system with weatherproofing or other necessary hardware as these are incidental to the radio.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Remove 900MHz Radio	Each

7. TRAFFIC SIGNAL SUPPORTS

7.1. METAL TRAFFIC SIGNAL SUPPORTS – ALL POLES

A. General

Furnish and install metal poles with mast arms, grounding systems, and all necessary hardware. The work covered by this special provision includes requirements for the design, fabrication, and installation of both standard and custom/site specifically designed metal traffic signal supports and associated foundations.

Provide metal traffic signal support systems that contain no guy assemblies, struts, or stay braces. Provide designs of completed assemblies with hardware that equals or exceeds AASHTO *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals* 6th Edition, 2013 (hereafter called 6th Edition AASHTO), including the latest interim specifications. Provide assemblies with a round or near-round (18 sides or more) cross-section, or a multi sided cross section with no less than six sides. The sides may be straight, convex, or concave.

Pole heights shown on signal plans are estimated from available data for bid purposes. Prior to furnishing metal signal poles, use field measurements and adjusted cross-sections to determine whether pole heights are sufficient to obtain required clearances. If pole heights are not sufficient, the Contractor should immediately notify the Engineer of the required revised pole heights.

Ensure that metal signal poles permit cables to be installed inside poles and any required mast arms. For holes in the poles and arms used to accommodate cables, provide full-circumference grommets. Arm flange plate wire access holes should be deburred, non grommets, and oversized to fit around the 2” diameter grommets shaft flange plate wire access hole.

After fabrication, have steel poles, required mast arms, and all parts used in the assembly hot-dip galvanized per Section 1076. Design structural assemblies with weep holes large enough and properly located to drain molten zinc during the galvanization process. Provide hot-dip galvanizing on structures that meets or exceeds ASTM Standard A-123. Provide galvanizing on hardware that meets or exceeds ASTM Standard A-153. Ensure that threaded material is brushed and retapped as necessary after galvanizing. Perform repair of damaged galvanizing that complies with the following:

Repair of Galvanizing.....Article 1076-7

Standard Drawings for Metal Poles are available that supplement these project special provisions. These drawings are located on the Department’s website:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/safety/pages/ITS-Design-Resources.aspx>

Comply with article 1098-1B of the *Standard Specifications* for submittal requirements. Furnish shop drawings for approval. Provide the copies of detailed shop drawings for each type of structure as summarized below. Ensure that shop drawings include material specifications for each component and identify welds by type and size on the detail drawing only, not in table format. **Do not release structures for fabrication until shop drawings have been approved by NCDOT.** Provide an itemized bill of materials for all structural components and associated connecting hardware on the drawings.

I-4400BB&C

TS-40

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Comply with article 1098-1A of the *Standard Specifications* for Qualified Products List (QPL) submittals. All shop drawings must include project location description, signal inventory number(s) and a project number or work order number on the drawings.

Summary of information required for metal pole review submittal:

Item	Hardcopy Submittal	Electronic Submittal	Comments / Special Instructions
Sealed, Approved Signal Plan/Loading Diagram	1	1	All structure design information needs to reflect the latest approved signal plans
Custom Pole Shop Drawings	4 sets	1 set	Show NCDOT inventory number(s), contractor's name and relevant revision number in the title block. All drawings must have a unique <u>drawing</u> number for each project and identified for multiple pages.
Standard Pole Shop Drawings (from the QPL)	4 sets	1 set	Submit drawings on 11" x 17" format media. Show NCDOT inventory number(s), contractor's name and relevant revision number in the title block. All drawings must have a <u>unique drawing</u> number for each project and identified for multiple pages.
Structure Calculations	1 set	1 set	Not required for Standard QPL Poles
Standard Pole Foundation Drawings	1 set	1 set	Submit drawings on 11" x 17" format media. Submit a completed Standard Foundation Selection form for each pole using foundation table on Metal Pole Drawing M-8.
Custom Foundation Drawings	4 sets	1 set	Submit drawings on 11" x 17" format media. Show NCDOT inventory number(s), contractor's name and relevant revision number in the title block. All drawings must have a <u>unique drawing</u> number for each project and identified for multiple pages. If QPL Poles are used, include the corresponding QPL pole shop drawings with this submittal.
Foundation Calculations	1	1	Submit copies of LPILE input, output and pile tip deflection graph per Section 11.4 of this specification for each foundation. Not required for Standard QPL Poles
Soil Boring Logs and Report	1	1	Report should include a location plan and a soil classification report including soil capacity, water level, hammer efficiency, soil bearing pressure, soil density, etc. for each pole.

NOTE – All shop drawings and custom foundation design drawings must be sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina. All geotechnical information must

be sealed by either a Professional Engineer or geologist licensed in the state of North Carolina. Include a title block and revision block on the shop drawings and foundation drawings showing the NCDOT inventory number.

Shop drawings and foundation drawings may be submitted together or separately for approval. However, shop drawings must be approved before foundations can be reviewed. Foundation designs will be returned without review if the associated shop drawing has not been approved. Boring reports should include the following: Engineer's summary, boring location maps, soil classification per AASHTO Classification System, hammer efficiency, and Metal Pole Standard Foundation Selection Form. Incomplete submittals will be returned without review. The Reviewer has the right to request additional analysis and copies of the calculations to expedite the approval process.

B. Materials

Fabricate metal pole and arm shaft from coil or plate steel to meet the requirements of ASTM A 595 Grade A tubes. For structural steel shapes, plates and bars use A572 Gr 50 min or ASTM A709 Gr 50 min. Provide pole and arm shafts that are round in cross section or multisided tubular shapes and have a uniform linear taper of 0.14 in/ft. Construct shafts from one piece of single ply plate or coil so there are no circumferential weld splices. Galvanize in accordance with AASHTO M 111 or an approved equivalent.

Use the submerged arc process or other NCDOT previously approved process suitable for pole shaft and arms to continuously weld pole shafts and arm shafts along their entire length. The longitudinal seam weld will be finished flush to the outside contour of the base metal. Ensure shafts have no circumferential welds except at the lower end joining the shaft to the pole base and arm base. Use full penetration groove welds with backing ring for all tube-to-transverse-plate connections in accordance with 6th Edition AASHTO. Provide welding that conforms to Article 1072-18 of the *Standard Specifications*, except that no field welding on any part of the pole will be permitted unless approved by a qualified engineer.

Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheets M2 through M5 for fabrication details. Fabricate anchor bases and mast arm connecting plates from plate steel meeting, as a minimum, the requirements of ASTM A572 Gr 50, AASHTO M270 Gr 50, ASTM A709 Gr50, or an approved equivalent. Conform to the applicable bolt pattern and orientation as shown on Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M2.

Ensure all hardware is galvanized steel or stainless steel. The Contractor is responsible for ensuring that the designer/fabricator specifies connecting hardware and/or materials that do not create a dissimilar metal corrosive reaction.

Provide a minimum of four (4) 1-1/2" diameter high strength bolts for connection between arm plate and pole plate. Increase number of bolts to six (6) 1-1/2" diameter high strength bolts when arm lengths are greater than 50'-0" long.

Unless otherwise required by the design, ensure each anchor rod is 2" diameter and 60" length. Provide 10" minimum thread projection at the top of the rod, and 8" minimum at the bottom of the rod. Use anchor rod assembly and drilled pier foundation materials that meet the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

For each structural bolt and other steel hardware, hot dip galvanizing shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 232 (ASTM A 153). Ensure end caps for poles or mast arms are constructed of cast aluminum conforming to Aluminum Alloy 356.0F.

Provide a circular anchor bolt lock plate that will be secured to the anchor bolts at the embedded end with 2 washers and 2 nuts. Provide a base plate template that matches the bolt circle diameter of the anchor bolt lock plate. Construct plates and templates from 1/4" minimum thick steel with a minimum width of 4". Galvanizing is not required for both plates.

Provide 4 heavy hex nuts and 4 flat washers for each anchor bolt. For nuts, use AASHTO M291 grade 2H, DH, or DH3 or equivalent material. For flat washers, use AASHTO M293 or equivalent material.

C. Construction Methods

Erect signal support poles only after concrete has attained a minimum allowable compressive strength of 3000 psi. Install anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

For further construction methods, see construction methods for Metal Pole with Mast Arm.

Connect poles to grounding electrodes and bond them to the electrical service grounding electrodes.

For holes in the poles used to accommodate cables, install grommets before wiring pole or arm. Do not cut or split grommets.

Attach the terminal compartment cover to the pole by a sturdy chain or cable. Ensure the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cover to hang clear of the compartment opening when the cover is removed, and is strong enough to prevent vandalism. Ensure the chain or cable will not interfere with service to the cables in the pole base.

Attach cap to pole with a sturdy chain or cable. Ensure the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cap to hang clear of the opening when the cap is removed.

Perform repair of damaged galvanizing that complies with the *Standard Specifications*, Article 1076-7 "Repair of Galvanizing."

Install galvanized wire mesh around the perimeter of the base plate to cover the gap between the base plate and top of foundation for debris and pest control.

Install a 1/4" thick plate for concrete foundation tag to include: concrete grade, depth, diameter, and reinforcement sizes of the installed foundation.

7.2. METAL POLE UPRIGHTS (VERTICAL MEMBERS)

A. Materials

- Provide tapered tubular shafts and fabricated of steel conforming to ASTM A-595 Grade A or an approved equivalent.
- Hot-dip galvanize poles in accordance with AASHTO M 111 or an approved equivalent.

- Have shafts that are continuously welded for the entire length by the submerged arc process, and with exposed welds ground or rolled smooth and flush with the base metal. Provide welding that conforms to Article 1072-18 of the *Standard Specification* except that no field welding on any part of the pole will be permitted.
- Have Shafts with no circumferential welds except at the lower end joining the shaft to the base.
- Have anchor bases for steel poles fabricated from plate steel meeting as a minimum the requirements of ASTM A572 Gr 50, AASHTO M270 Gr 50, ASTM A709 Gr 50, or an approved equivalent.

Provide a grounding lug(s) in the approximate vicinity of the messenger cable clamp for bonding and grounding messenger cable. Lugs must accept #4 or #6 AWG wire to bond messenger cables to the pole in order to provide an effective ground fault circuit path. Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M6 for construction details.

Have poles permanently stamped above the hand holes with the identification tag details as shown on Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M2.

Provide liquid tight flexible metal conduit (Type LFMC), liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit (Type LFNC), high density polyethylene conduit (Type HDPE), or approved equivalent to isolate conductors feeding luminaires.

Fabricate poles from a single piece of steel or aluminum with single line seam weld with no transverse butt welds. Fabrication of two ply pole shafts is unacceptable with the exception of fluted shafts. Provide tapers for all shafts that begin at base and that have diameters which decrease uniformly at the rate of not more than 0.14 inch per foot (11.7 millimeters per meter) of length.

Provide four anchor nuts and four washers for each anchor bolt. Ensure that anchor bolts have required diameters, lengths, and positions, and will develop strengths comparable to their respective poles.

Provide a terminal compartment with cover and screws in each pole that encompasses the hand hole and contains a 12-terminal barrier type terminal block. Provide two terminal screws with a removable shorting bar between them for each termination. Furnish terminal compartment covers attached to the pole by a sturdy chain or cable approved by the Engineer. Ensure that the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cover to hang clear of the compartment opening when the cover is removed, and is strong enough to prevent vandals from being able to disconnect the cover from the pole. Ensure that the chain or cable will not interfere with service to the cables in the pole base.

Install grounding lugs that will accept #4 or #6 AWG wire to electrically bond messenger cables to the pole. Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M6 for construction details.

For each pole, provide a 1/2-inch minimum thread diameter, coarse thread stud and nut for grounding which will accommodate #6 AWG ground wire. Ensure that the lug is electrically bonded to the pole and is conveniently located inside the pole at the hand hole.

Provide a removable pole cap with stainless steel attachment screws for the top of each pole. Ensure that the cap is cast aluminum conforming to Aluminum Association Alloy 356.0F. Furnish

cap attached to the pole with a sturdy chain or cable approved by the Engineer. Ensure that the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cap to hang clear of the pole-top opening when the cap is removed.

When required by the plans, furnish couplings 42 inches above the bottom of the base for mounting of pedestrian pushbuttons. Provide mounting points consisting of 1-1/2 inch internally threaded half-couplings that comply with the NEC and that are mounted within the poles. Ensure that couplings are essentially flush with the outside surfaces of the poles and are installed before any required galvanizing. Provide a threaded plug in each mounting point. Ensure that the surface of the plug is essentially flush with the outer end of the mounting point when installed and has a recessed hole to accommodate a standard wrench.

1. MAST ARM POLE SHAFTS

Ensure that allowable pole deflection does not exceed that allowed per 6th Edition AASHTO. Ensure that maximum angular rotation of the top of the mast arm pole does not exceed 1 degree 40 minutes (1°40').

B. Construction Methods

Install metal poles, hardware, and fittings as shown on the manufacturer's installation drawings. Install metal poles so that when the pole is fully loaded it is within 1 degree 40 minutes (1°40') of vertical. Install poles with the manufacturer's recommended "rake." Use threaded leveling nuts to establish rake if required.

7.3. MAST ARMS

Provide pole plates and associated gussets and fittings for attachment of required mast arms. As part of each mast arm attachment, provide a cable passage hole in the pole to allow passage of signal cables from the pole to the arm.

Ensure that allowable mast arm deflection does not exceed that allowed per 6th Edition AASHTO. Also, when arm is fully loaded, tip of the arm shall not go below the arm attachment point with the pole for all load conditions per 6th Edition AASHTO.

Furnish all arm plates and necessary attachment hardware, including bolts and brackets.

Provide two extra bolts for each arm.

Provide grommet holes on the arms to accommodate cables for the signals.

Provide arms with weatherproof connections for attaching to the shaft of the pole.

Provide hardware that is galvanized steel, stainless steel, or corrosive-resistant aluminum.

Provide a removable end cap with stainless steel attachment screws for the end of each mast arm. Ensure that the cap is cast aluminum conforming to Aluminum Association Alloy 356.0F. Furnish cap attached to the arm with a sturdy chain or cable approved by the Engineer. Ensure that the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cap to hang clear of the arm end opening when the cap is removed.

A. Materials

After all fabricating, cutting, punching, and welding are completed, hot-dip galvanize the structure in accordance with the AASHTO M 111 or an approved equivalent.

B. Construction Methods

Install horizontal-type arms with sufficient manufactured rise to keep arm from deflecting below the arm attachment height.

Attach cap to the mast arm with a sturdy chain or cable. Ensure that the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cap to hang clear of the arm opening when the cap is removed.

For mast arm poles, use full penetration welds with back-up ring at the pole base and at the arm base connection.

7.4. DRILLED PIER FOUNDATIONS FOR METAL TRAFFIC SIGNAL POLES

Analysis procedures and formulas shall be based on AASHTO 6th Edition, latest ACI code and the *Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and Design Methods* FHWA-NHI-10-016 manual. Design methods based on engineering publications or research papers needs to have prior approval from NCDOT. The Department reserves the right to accept or disapprove any method used for the analysis.

Use a Factor of Safety of 1.33 for torsion and 2.0 for bending for the foundation design.

Foundation design for lateral load shall not exceed 1" lateral deflection at top of foundation.

For lateral analysis, use LPILE Plus V6.0 or later. Inputs, results and corresponding graphs are to be submitted with the design calculations.

Skin Friction is to be calculated using the α -method for cohesive soils and the β -method for cohesion-less soils (**Broms method will not be accepted**). Detailed descriptions of the " α " and " β " methods can be found in *FHWA-NHI-10-016*.

Omit first 2.5ft for cohesive soils when calculating skin friction.

When hammer efficiency is not provided, assume a value of 0.70.

Design all custom foundations to carry the maximum capacity of each metal pole.

When poor soil conditions are encountered which could create an excessively large foundation design, consideration may be given to allowing an exemption to the maximum capacity design. The contractor must gain approval from the engineer before reducing a foundation's capacity. On projects where poor soil is known to be present, it is advisable that the contractor consider getting foundations approved before releasing poles for fabrication.

Have the contractor notify the engineer if the proposed foundation is to be installed on a slope other than 8H: 1V or flatter.

A. Description

Furnish and install site-specific, non-standard foundations for NCDOT metal poles with all necessary hardware in accordance with the plans and specifications.

B. Soil Test and Foundation Determination

1. General

Drilled piers are reinforced concrete sections, cast-in-place against in situ, undisturbed material. Drilled piers are of straight shaft type and vertical.

Some standard drilled piers for supporting poles with mast arms may require wing walls to resist torsional rotation. Based upon this provision and the results of the required soil test, a drilled pier length and wing wall requirement may be determined and constructed in accordance with the plans.

For non-standard site-specific poles, the contractor-selected pole fabricator will determine if the addition of wing walls is necessary for the supporting foundations.

2. Soil Test

Perform a soil test at each proposed metal pole location. Complete all required fill placement and excavation at each signal pole location to finished grade before drilling each boring. Soil tests performed that are not in compliance with this requirement may be rejected and will not be paid. Drill one boring to a depth of 26 feet within a 25-foot radius of each proposed foundation.

Perform standard penetration tests (SPT) in accordance with ASTM D 1586 at depths of 1, 2.5, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 20 and 26 feet. Discontinue the boring if one of the following occurs:

- A total of 100 blows have been applied in any 2 consecutive 6-in. intervals.
- A total of 50 blows have been applied with < 3-in. penetration.

Describe each intersection as the “Intersection of (Route or SR #), (Street Name) and (Route or SR #), (Street Name), _____ County, Signal Inventory No. _____”. Label borings with “B-N, S, E, W, NE, NW, SE or SW” corresponding to the quadrant location within the intersection. Pole numbers should be made available to the Drill Contractor. Include pole numbers in the boring label if they are available. If they are not available, ensure the boring labels can be cross-referenced to corresponding pole numbers. For each boring, submit a legible (hand written or typed) boring log signed and sealed by a licensed Geologist or Professional Engineer registered in North Carolina. Include on each boring the SPT blow counts and N-values at each depth, depth of the boring, hammer efficiency, depth of water table and a general description of the soil types encountered using the AASHTO Classification System.

3. Standard Foundation Determination

Use the following method for determining the Design N-value:

$$N_{AVG} = \frac{(N@1' + N@2.5' + \dots + N@Deepest \text{ Boring Depth})}{\text{Total Number of N-values}}$$

$$Y = (N@1')^2 + (N@2.5')^2 + \dots + (N@Deepest \text{ Boring Depth})^2$$

$$Z = (N@1' + N@2.5' + \dots + N@Deepest \text{ Boring Depth})$$

$$N_{STD \text{ DEV}} = \left\{ \frac{(\text{Total Number of N-values} \times Y) - Z^2}{(\text{Total Number of N-values}) \times (\text{Total Number of N-values} - 1)} \right\}^{0.5}$$

Design N-value equals lesser of the following two conditions:

$$N_{AVG} - (N_{STD\ DEV} \times 0.45)$$

Or

$$\text{Average of First Four N-Values} = \frac{(N@1' + N@2.5' + N@5' + N@7.5')}{4}$$

Note: If less than 4 N-values are obtained because of criteria listed in Section 2 above, use average of N-values collected for second condition. Do not include the N-value at the deepest boring depth for above calculations if the boring is discontinued at or before the required boring depth because of criteria listed in Section 2 above. Use N-value of zero for weight of hammer or weight of rod. If N-value is greater than 50, reduce N-value to 50 for calculations.

If non-standard site-specific poles are shown on the plans, submit completed boring logs collected in accordance with Section 2 (Soil Test) above along with pole loading diagrams from the plans to the contractor-selected pole fabricator to assist in the pole and foundation design.

If one of the following occurs, the Standard Foundations Chart shown on the plans may not be used and a non-standard foundation may be required. In such case, contact the Engineer.

- The Design N-value is less than 4.
- The drilled pier length, “L”, determined from the Standard Foundations Chart, is greater than the depth of the corresponding boring.

In the case where a standard foundation cannot be used, the Department will be responsible for the additional cost of the non-standard foundation.

Foundation designs are based on level ground around the traffic signal pole. If the slope around the edge of the drilled pier is steeper than 8:1 (H:V) or the proposed foundation will be less than 10 feet from the top of an embankment slope, the Contractor is responsible for providing slope information to the foundation designer and to the Engineer so it can be considered in the design.

The “Metal Pole Standard Foundation Selection Form” may be found at:

https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Geotech_Forms_Details.aspx

If assistance is needed, contact the Engineer.

4. Non-Standard Foundation Design

Design non-standard foundations based upon site-specific soil test information collected in accordance with Section 2 (Soil Test) above. Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Use the computer software LPILE version-6.0 or later manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers. Use the computer software gINT V8i or later manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs. Provide a drilled pier foundation for each pole with a length and diameter that result in a horizontal lateral movement of less than 1 inch at the top of the pier and a horizontal rotational movement of less than 1 inch at the edge of the pier. Contact the Engineer for pole loading diagrams for standard poles to be

used for non-standard foundation designs. Submit any non-standard foundation designs including drawings, calculations, and soil boring logs to the Engineer for review and approval before construction.

C. Drilled Pier Construction

Construct drilled pier foundations in accordance with the *Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles* provision.

7.5. CUSTOM DESIGN OF TRAFFIC SIGNAL SUPPORTS

A. General

Design traffic signal supports with foundations consisting of metal poles with mast arms.

The lengths of the metal signal poles shown on the plans are estimated from available data for bid purposes. Determine the actual length of each pole from field measurements and adjusted cross-sections. Furnish the revised pole heights to the Engineer. Use all other dimensional requirements shown on the plans.

Ensure each pole includes an identification tag with information and location positions as defined on Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheets M2, M3 and M4. All pole shaft tags must include the NCDOT Inventory number followed by the pole number shown on the traffic signal or ITS (non-signalized locations) plan.

Design all traffic signal support structures using the following 6th Edition AASHTO specifications:

- Design for a 50 year service life as recommended by Table 3.8.3-2.
- Use the wind pressure map developed from 3-second gust speeds, as provided in Article 3.8.
- Ensure signal support structures include natural wind gust loading and truck-induced gust loading in the fatigue design, as provided for in Articles 11.7.1.2 and 11.7.1.3, respectively. Designs need not consider periodic galloping forces.
- Assume the natural wind gust speed in North Carolina is 11.2 mph. For natural wind fatigue stress calculations, utilize a drag coefficient (C_d) computed for 11.2 mph wind velocity and not the basic wind speed velocity.
- Design for Category II fatigue, as provided for in Article 11.6, unless otherwise specified.
- Calculate all stresses using applicable equations from Section 5. The Maximum allowable stress ratios for all signal support designs are 0.9.
- Conform to article 10.4.2 and 11.8 for all deflection requirements.

Ensure that the design permits cables to be installed inside poles and mast arms.

Unless otherwise specified by special loading criteria, the computed surface area for ice load on signal heads is:

- 3-section, 12-inch, Surface area: 26.0 ft² (17.0 ft² without back plate)

- 4-section, 12-inch, Surface area: 32.0 ft² (21.0 ft² without back plate)
- 5-section, 12-inch, Surface area: 42.0 ft² (29.0 ft² without back plate)

The ice loading for signal heads defined above includes the additional surface area that back plates will induce. Special loading criteria may be specified in instances where back plates will not be installed on signal heads. Refer to the Loading Schedule on each Metal Pole Loading Diagram for revised signal head surface areas. The pole designer should revise ice loads accordingly in this instance. Careful examination of the plans when this is specified is important as this may impact sizing of the metal support structure and foundation design which could affect proposed bid quotes. All maximum stress ratios of 0.9 still apply.

Assume the combined minimum weight of a messenger cable bundle (including messenger cable, signal cable and detector lead-in cables) is 1.3 lbs/ft. Assume the combined minimum diameter of this cable bundle is 1.3 inches.

Ensure that designs provide a removable pole cap with stainless steel attachment screws for each pole top and mast arm end.

B. Metal Poles

Submit design drawings for approval including pre-approved QPL pole drawings. Show all the necessary details and calculations for the metal poles including the foundation and connections. Include NCDOT inventory number on design drawings. Include as part of the design calculations the ASTM specification numbers for the materials to be used. Provide the types and sizes of welds on the design drawings. Include a Bill of Materials on design drawings. Ensure design drawings and calculations are signed, dated, and sealed by the responsible professional engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina. Immediately bring to the attention of the Engineer any structural deficiency that becomes apparent in any assembly or member of any assembly as a result of the design requirements imposed by these specifications, the plans, or the typical drawings. Said Professional Engineer is wholly responsible for the design of all poles and arms. Review and acceptance of these designs by the Department does not relieve the said Professional Engineer of his responsibility. **Do not fabricate the assemblies until receipt of the Department's approval of the design drawings.**

For mast arm poles, provide designs with provisions for pole plates and associated gussets and fittings for mast arm attachment. As part of each mast arm attachment, provide a grommeted 2" diameter hole on the shaft side of the connection to allow passage of the signal cables from the pole to the arm.

Where ice is present, assume wind loads as shown in Figure 3.9.4.2-3 of the 6th Edition AASHTO Specification for Group III loading.

Provide a grounding lug(s) in the approximate vicinity of the messenger cable clamp for bonding and grounding messenger cable. Lugs must accept #4 or #6 AWG wire to bond messenger cables to the pole in order to provide an effective ground fault circuit path. Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M6 for construction details.

Design tapers for all pole shafts that begin at the base with diameters that decrease uniformly at the rate of 0.14 inch per foot of length.

Design a base plate on each pole. The minimum base plate thickness for all poles is determined by the following criteria:

Case 1 Circular or rectangular solid base plate with the upright pole welded to the top surface of base plate with full penetration butt weld, and where no stiffeners are provided. A base plate with a small center hole, which is less than 1/3 of the upright diameter, and located concentrically with the upright pole, may be considered as a solid base plate.

The magnitude of bending moment in the base plate, induced by the anchoring force of each anchor bolt is $M = (P \times D_1) / 2$, where

M = bending moment at the critical section of the base plate induced by one anchor bolt

P = anchoring force of each anchor bolt

D_1 = horizontal distance between the anchor bolt center and the outer face of the upright, or the difference between the bolt circle radius and the outside radius of the upright

Locate the critical section at the face of the anchor bolt and perpendicular to the bolt circle radius. The overlapped part of two adjacent critical sections is considered ineffective.

Case 2 Circular or rectangular base plate with the upright pole socketed into and attached to the base plate with two lines of fillet weld, and where no stiffeners are provided, or any base plate with a center hole that is larger in diameter than 1/3 of the upright diameter.

The magnitude of bending moment induced by the anchoring force of each anchor bolt is $M = P \times D_2$,

Where P = anchoring force of each anchor bolt

D_2 = horizontal distance between the face of the upright and the face of the anchor bolt nut

Locate the critical section at the face of the anchor bolt top nut and perpendicular to the radius of the bolt circle. The overlapped part of two adjacent critical sections is considered ineffective.

If the base plate thickness calculated for Case 2 is less than Case 1, use the thickness calculated for Case 1.

The following additional owner requirements apply concerning pole base plates.

- Ensure that whichever case governs as defined above, the anchor bolt diameter is set to match the base plate thickness. If the minimum diameter required for the anchor bolt exceeds the thickness required for the base plate, set the base plate thickness equal to the required bolt diameter.
- For dual mast arm supports, or for single mast arm supports 50' or greater, use a minimum 8 bolt orientation with 2" diameter anchor bolts, and a 2" thick base plate.
- For all metal poles with mast arms, use a full penetration groove weld with a backing ring to connect the pole upright component to the base. Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M4.

Ensure that designs have anchor bolt holes with a diameter 1/4 inch larger than the anchor bolt diameters in the base plate.

Ensure that the anchor bolts have the required diameters, lengths, and positions, and will develop strengths comparable to their respective poles.

Provide designs with a 6 x 12-inch hand hole with a reinforcing frame for each pole.

Provide designs with a terminal compartment with cover and screws in each pole that encompasses the hand hole and contains provisions for a 12-terminal barrier type terminal block.

For each pole, provide designs with provisions for a 1/2-inch minimum thread diameter, coarse thread stud and nut for grounding which will accommodate a #6 AWG ground wire. Ensure the lug is electrically bonded to the pole and is conveniently located inside the pole at the hand hole.

When required, design couplings on the pole for mounting pedestrian pushbuttons at a height of 42 inches above the bottom of the base. Provide mounting points consisting of 1-1/2 inch internally threaded half-couplings that comply with the NEC that are mounted within the poles. Ensure the couplings are essentially flush with the outside surfaces of the poles and are installed before any required galvanizing. Provide a threaded plug for each half coupling. Ensure that the surface of the plug is essentially flush with the outer end of the mounting point when installed and has a recessed hole to accommodate a standard wrench.

C. Mast Arms

Design all arm plates and necessary attachment hardware, including bolts and brackets as required by the plans.

Design for grommeted holes on the arms to accommodate the cables for the signals if specified.

Design arms with weatherproof connections for attaching to the shaft of the pole.

Always use a full penetration groove weld with a backing ring to connect the mast arm to the pole. Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M5.

Capacity of tapped flange plate must be sufficient to develop the full capacity of the connecting bolts. In all cases the flange plate of both arm and shaft must be at least as thick as the arm connecting bolts are in diameter.

7.6. METAL SIGNAL POLE REMOVALS

A. Description

Remove and dispose of existing metal signal poles including mast arms, and remove and dispose of existing foundations, associated anchor bolts, electrical wires and connections.

B. Construction Methods

1. Foundations

Remove and promptly dispose of the metal signal pole foundations including reinforcing steel, electrical wires, and anchor bolts to a minimum depth of two feet below the finished ground elevation. At the Contractor's option, remove the complete foundation.

2. Metal Poles

Assume ownership of the metal signal poles, remove the metal signal poles, and promptly transport the metal signal poles from the project. Use methods to remove the metal signal poles and attached traffic signal equipment that will not result in damage to other portions of the project or facility. Repair damages that are a result of the Contractor's actions at no additional cost to the Department.

Transport and properly dispose of the materials.

Backfill and compact disturbed areas to match the finished ground elevation. Seed unpaved areas.

Use methods to remove the foundations that will not result in damage to other portions of the project or facility. Repair damages that are a result of the Contractor's actions at no cost to the Department.

7.7. POLE NUMBERING SYSTEM

A. New Poles

Attach an identification tag to each pole shaft and mast arm section as shown on Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M2 "Typical Fabrication Details Common To All Metal Poles".

7.8. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Metal Pole with Single Mast Arm will be measured and paid for as the actual number of metal poles with single mast arms furnished, installed, and accepted.

Soil Test will be measured and paid for as the actual number of soil tests with SPT borings drilled furnished and accepted.

Drilled Pier Foundation will be measured and paid for as the actual volume of concrete poured in cubic yards of drilled pier foundation furnished, installed and accepted.

Mast Arm with Metal Pole Design will be measured and paid for as the actual number of designs for mast arms with metal poles furnished and accepted.

Metal Pole Foundation Removal will be measured and paid for as the actual number of metal signal pole foundations removed and disposed.

Metal Pole Removal will be measured and paid for as the actual number of metal signal poles removed and disposed.

No measurement will be made for foundation designs prepared with metal pole designs, as these will be considered incidental to designing signal support structures.

I-4400BB&C

TS-53

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Metal Pole with Single Mast Arm	Each
Soil Test	Each
Drilled Pier Foundation.....	Cubic Yard
Mast Arm with Metal Pole Design	Each
Metal Pole Foundation Removal	Each
Metal Pole Removal.....	Each

8. PROTECTIVE COATING FOR METAL POLES

8.1. DESCRIPTION

Protective coating for metal poles is a supplemental durable color coating that is applied to galvanized steel and aluminum traffic signal structures installed in locations where maintaining an aesthetic appearance is important. Powder Coating is the preferred supplemental protective coating process for coating galvanized steel and aluminum structures. However, for the purposes of this special provision, an Acrylic Primer and top coat paint system is included as an acceptable alternative when protective color coating is required.

Provide protective coating over galvanization for all steel poles including all necessary hardware in accordance with the plans and specifications. Any aluminum components do not need to be galvanized before application of protective coating.

8.2. MATERIALS

With the exception of aluminum components, furnish all metal poles with galvanic protection along with a tough and durable application of protective coating. Aluminum components shall have a durable powder coating application. Galvanization is not required for aluminum components.

Furnish pole caps that have a low gloss powder finish applied over a hot-dipped galvanized surface. Comply with the applicable provisions of Section 442-10 and 442-12 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Ensure the selected color for protective coating has been verified and approved by the Engineer prior to fabrication.

8.3. COATING SHOP APPROVAL

Approve the coating shop facility prior to the application of any coating process. Submit all requests, procedures and documents electronically to:

- Mr. Brian Hunter, P.E., Chemical Testing Engineer
- bhunter@ncdot.gov

A) Submit a quality control procedure that the company has established to ensure a quality and durable coating. The quality control procedure shall contain at a minimum the following:

- Qualified / Certified personnel to manage the QC Program and to conduct Quality Control tests
- Qualified / certified coaters
- Source and type of powder
- How the powder will be stored
- Powder application facility (heated or unheated)
- Surface pre-treatment
- Surface preparation including profile
- Application methods

- Curing conditions (conventional or infrared)
 - Curing Temperature
 - Adhesion & Holiday Detection
 - Repair Procedure
 - Storage and protection of coated items
 - Shipping and handling (packing, protection, and wrapping)
- B) Submit a powder certification from the manufacturer
- C) Submit the following to the Chemical Testing Engineer a minimum of four weeks prior to coating application.
1. Two test panels of ASTM A36 steel, ¼ or greater in thickness measuring 8 inches by 11 inches using the proposed color of the final coat; a powder coated over galvanized test panel and a powder coated over un-galvanized test panel.
 2. In addition, provide two (2) samples of the same or comparable material and thickness as production pieces. Ensure production piece replicas do not exceed twelve inches (12”) in length and width nor 50 pounds in weight.
 3. Submit all test panels with inspection reports and records according to *Standard Specifications*, Section 442, Section 1072, Section 1076, and Section 1080.
 4. Acceptance of the panels is determined by meeting the requirements of ASTM D-4541 of 800 psi for both galvanized and un-galvanized and production piece test panels.
 5. Send all panels to:
 - Materials and Tests Unit
 - 1801 Blue Ridge Road
 - Raleigh, NC 27607
 - Attn: Chemical Testing Engineer

8.4. POWDER COATING

A. Galvanizing

Galvanize steel products in accordance with Section 1076 of the *Standard Specifications*. Ensure the fabricator or designated representative(s) that is supplying the components to be galvanized communicates with the galvanizer to indicate that the galvanized pieces will be powder coated to avoid water or chromate quenching.

B. Surface Preparation

Comply with manufacturer’s recommended surface coating specifications, Steel Structure Painting Council (SSPC) specifications and applicable articles of Section 442 (Painting Steel Structures) of the *Standard Specifications*. Ensure that surface preparations and treatments are performed and meet the requirements of the above referenced specifications.

Some pole components, specifically steel plates $\frac{3}{4}$ inches or more in thickness, may need blast cleaning prior to structure assembly to remove impurities and non-metallic foreign materials. Mechanically remove all weld flux after structure is assembled.

Degrease and prepare steel structure for zinc coating after assembly using full immersion baths and pickling processes in heat controlled caustic and acid solutions. Rinse and clean structure to remove caustic or acid solutions by immersion in a circulating fresh water bath. Immerse structure in a heat controlled concentrated zinc ammonium chloride flux solution and air dry as a final prep before hot-dip galvanization.

Ensure that the surface preparation is no less than specified by the powder manufacturer's recommendations. Prepare all components to be coated in accordance with SSPC SP-2 (Hand Tool Cleaning) and/or SSPC SP-3 (Power Tool Cleaning). Remove all drainage spikes, high spots, protrusions or other surface defects using hand or power tools. Do not remove the galvanization below the limits set forth in AASHTO M111.

Remove grease, oils, moisture, scale, rust or any other foreign matter prior to powder coating to ensure ideal adhesion and coating performance. Prepare and coat the galvanized surface as soon as possible after the galvanization process.

C. Powder Coating Application and Curing

Prepare galvanized finish for powder coating by brush blasting in accordance with SSPC-SP7. Ensure all threaded components of the structure are protected from damage during blasting process.

Use thermosetting powder resin that meets 5A or 5B classifications of ASTM D3359. Apply powder coating electrostatically. Follow manufacturer's recommended preheating requirements. Ensure the top coat finish is applied uniformly to all surfaces with a dry film thickness of between 3.0 to 5.0 mils. Cure the top coat by heating the structure to manufacturer recommended temperatures at the duration required to ensure complete and uniform bond.

D. Quality Control

Ensure the applicator provides all test reports and documentation and inspects all coated material as outlined in the *Standard Specifications*, Section 442, Section 1072, Section 1076, and Section 1080. Ensure the quality control inspection is kept separate from the production functions.

E. Storage, Shipping, and Handling

Store all powder coated material inside or as directed by the Engineer.

Protect the product from incurring damage during all shipping, handling, and storing activities. Do not store the product directly on the ground or in areas where water may pool; the Engineer determines the effectiveness of all storage, shipping and handling methods.

F. Repair of Powder Coated Material

Repair all damage to the coating by the original method of application as outlined in the coating facility's repair procedure. Ensure all repair areas meet the original requirements for adhesion as stated in this Project Special Provision.

Photograph, document, and report all damages upon delivery to the project site prior to unloading. Provide documented damage notifications to the Engineer or to their authorized

representative so the application firm can be notified. The Engineer has the authority to accept or reject the material as outlined in the *Standard Specifications*.

Submit to the Engineer a repair procedure for damaged coatings which occur during storage, transporting, handling and or installation. Utilize a liquid paint approved by the Department, compatible with the powder applied product. Ensure all repair areas demonstrate an adhesion rating of 400 psi in accordance with ASTM D-4541. Obtain Engineer's acceptance of the final finish.

8.5. ACRYLIC PRIMER AND TOP COAT PAINT SYSTEM 4 (MODIFIED)

A. Description

Follow NCDOT procedures for Powder Coating over Galvanizing. Provide an Acrylic Primer and top coat when a substitute for powder coating is necessary.

Provide supplemental coating for all mast arms with metal signal poles, signal pedestals, and all necessary hardware for the signalized intersection in accordance with *Standard Specifications* Sections 442 and 1080, as contained herein, and as shown on the plans.

Ensure all painting work for new structures, except field touch-up and bolt painting is performed in the shop.

B. Surface Preparation

Ensure all surface preparation is not less than that specified by the paint manufacturer's recommendations.

Ensure all components to be coated are prepared in accordance with SSPC SP2 (Hand Tool Cleaning and or SSPC SP-3 (Power Tool Cleaning). Remove all drainage spikes, high spots, protrusions or other surface defects using hand or power tools. Do not remove the galvanization below the limits set forth in AASHTO M111.

Perform abrasive sweep blasting in accordance with ASTM D6386. Refer to this section for a description of the abrasive blast material to be used. Use a material and technique capable of stripping action to remove corrosion products and to provide a rough surface profile while leaving base zinc layers intact.

Blow down all blasted surfaces with clean compressed air to provide a clean, dry surface.

Ensure all surfaces are free of visible zinc oxides or zinc hydroxides.

C. Materials

Use an approved/qualified waterborne paint meeting the requirements of *Standard Specifications* Section 1080. Do not apply paint until each batch has been tested by the Department. Provide color as specified in the contract documents.

Ensure all paint used on this contract is produced by the same manufacturer.

D. Painting

Apply paint in accordance with the requirements of Section 1080 and Section 442 of the *Standard Specifications* using System 4 as modified herein.

**System 4 (Modified)
Acrylic Primer and Top Coats**

Coat	Material	Mils Dry/Wet Film	Mils Dry/Wet Film
		Thickness	Thickness
		Minimum	Maximum
Primer	1080-12 White	3.0 DFT	5.0 DFT
Stripe	1080-12 Brown	4.0 WFT	7.0 WFT
Topcoat	1080-12 Brown	2.0 DFT	4.0 DFT
Total		5.0 DFT	9.0 DFT

Shop paint all galvanized surfaces within 8 hours after surface preparation with the exception of field touch-up and bolt painting.

Mask off and do not paint all data plates and faying surfaces prior to application.

Spray apply all coatings except for the stripe coat. Brush apply the stripe coat to all plate edges, welds, bolt holes and bolts prior to applying the finish coat.

E. Curing

Store all material in a heated shop for a period no less than 24 hours once top coat has been applied. Continue storing material until requirements of ASTM D-1640 have been met.

F. Inspection

Provide inspection records showing the initial average thickness of the hot dipped galvanizing as well as the final average DFT measurement.

Ensure all material is of a uniform appearance free of runs, drips, and sags.

G. Handling

Do not handle, ship, or erect coated members until paint is thoroughly dry.

Protect all shipping and handling either from the coating facility to project site and or storage site to area(s) to construction location from incurring damage to product. Wood blocks and nylon slings are recommended for securing, loading, hoisting or storing members.

H. Repair of Damaged Coating

Repair damage occurring to the galvanized portion of the coating during shipment or installation in accordance with Articles 1076-6 and 1080-9 of the *Standard Specifications*. Repair damage occurring to the painted portion of the coating during shipment or installation by applying 4.0-7.0 wet mils of topcoat with a brush or roller and feather or taper this to be level with the surrounding areas.

8.6. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Protective Coating for Single Mast Arm Pole will be measured and paid as the actual number of single mast arm poles with powder coat applied furnished, installed, and accepted.

Protective Coating for Signal Pedestal Type II will be measured and paid as the actual number of signal pedestals type II with powder coat applied furnished, installed, and accepted.

I-4400BB&C

TS-59

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Protective Coating for Single Mast Arm Pole (_____)Each
Protective Coating for Signal Pedestal Type II (_____)Each

9. BACK PULL FIBER OPTIC CABLE

9.1. DESCRIPTION

Back pull and store or back pull and reinstall existing communications cable.

9.2. CONSTRUCTION

During project construction where instructed to back pull existing aerial sections of fiber optic communications cable, de-lash the cable from the messenger cable and back pull the cable to a point where it can be stored or re-routed as shown on the plans. If instructed, remove and discard the existing messenger cable and pole mounting hardware once the cable is safely out of harm's way.

During project construction where instructed to back pull existing underground sections of fiber optic communications cable, back pull the cable to a point where it can be stored or re-routed as shown on the plans. If instructed, remove abandoned junction boxes and backfill with a suitable material to match the existing grade. Leave abandoned conduits in place unless otherwise noted.

Where instructed, re-pull the fiber optic cable back along messenger cable or through conduit systems.

9.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Back Pull Fiber Optic Cable will be paid for as the actual linear feet of fiber optic cable back pulled and either stored or back pulled and rerouted. Payment is for the actual linear feet of cable back pulled.

No payment will be made for removing messenger cable and pole mounting hardware or removing junction boxes and back filling to match the surrounding grade as these items of work will be considered incidental to back pulling the fiber optic cable.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Back Pull Fiber Optic Cable	Linear Feet

10. JUNCTION BOX MARKERS

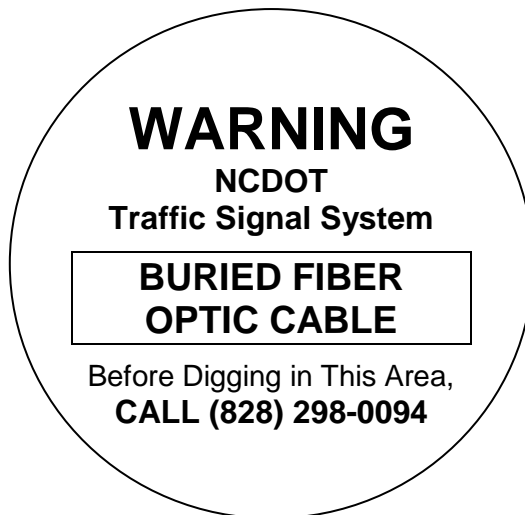
10.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install junction box markers with all necessary hardware and adhesives to warn of buried fiber-optic communications cable.

10.2. MATERIALS

Furnish durable, non-reflective junction box markers, also known as curb markers, fabricated from UV-resistant, non-metallic materials other than ceramic material, such as polyurethane or high impact polypropylene or other high impact plastic. Provide junction box markers that are designed for outdoor use, that are waterproof, that resist fading, that are temperature stable and that resist chemical and mechanical abrasion. Furnish junction box markers with a quick-setting adhesive designed for use with the junction box markers supplied and designed to permanently adhere junction box markers to Portland cement/concrete, steel, and cast iron as well as other non-porous hard surfaces. Do not provide markers that require intrusive fasteners to secure the marker to the surface. Do not provide adhesives that are not designed for use with the junction markers supplied. Provide junction box markers that do not require special tools such as torches, tamping machines or drills or hardware or special surface preparation for installation. Furnish junction box markers from a manufacturer that has been producing such junction box markers (i.e., curb markers) for a minimum of 10 consecutive years.

Order the junction box marker with the Division's Phone Number printed on the marker, hand written sharpie labeling is not acceptable. Consult with the Engineer to ensure the junction box labels are ordered with the correct Division phone number. Provide junction box markers that contain the text and symbols, text emphasis and text proportions depicted in the example format shown below:



Overall Junction Box Marker Dimensions: 2.5" diameter

Text: Black

Background: Light Gray (to blend with concrete and granite surfaces)

Submit samples of proposed junction marker to the Engineer for approval before installation. In lieu of designing a custom junction box marker, the Contractor may submit for the Engineer’s approval a stock/standard junction box marker format (i.e., off-the-shelf format) from the junction box marker manufacturer that differs from the example format proposed above but that still embodies the content and intent conveyed by the example format.

Have the junction box marker manufacturer provide a list of references along with contract information for at least five different municipal government agencies and/or state departments of transportation that have installed the proposed manufacturer’s markers and can attest to the performance of the manufacturer’s markers over a continuous period of no less than seven years. Submit these references to the Engineer for review in conjunction with submission of the sample.

10.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Apply junction box markers to the surface of the junction box cover/lid on all new and/or existing junction boxes that are to be reused to house the fiber-optic communications cable. Additionally, at locations where a junction box is perpendicular to a raised curb place an additional junction box marker on the curb.

Clean surface to which the junction box marker will be applied. Make sure application surface is dry and free of any loose debris or cracks. Apply adhesive to back side of the junction box marker in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions. Apply additional adhesive when surface is uneven or textured to fill voids and assure secure adhesion. Apply the junction box marker to the application surface and press firmly. Ensure that entire edge around perimeter of marker is sealed to the application surface.

Position the marker in the approximate center of the junction box cover and orient the marker so that its text is parallel to long side of the cover. On curb sections install the marker on the flattest surface of the curb at a point that is perpendicular to the junction box.

Junction box markers are not required to be place on flat surfaces of the roadway where there is no curbing, unless required by the Engineer.

10.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Junction Box Marker will be measured and paid for as the actual number of junction box markers furnished, installed, and accepted.

No measurement will be made of junction box marker adhesive as this will be considered incidental to furnishing and installing the junction box marker.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Junction Box Marker.....	Each

11. ETHERNET EDGE SWITCH

11.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install managed Ethernet switches as specified below that are fully compatible, interoperable, and completely interchangeable and functional within the existing Asheville Signal System communications network as called for in the Project Plans and these Project Special Provisions.

11.2. MATERIALS

A. General

Furnish Ethernet switches that comply with the following electrical safety requirements: UL60950 or CSA C22.2 No. 60950 (safety requirements for IT equipment) and FCC Part15 Class A for EMI emissions.

B. Ethernet Edge Switch

Furnish and install a hardened, field Ethernet edge switch (hereafter “edge switch”) for traffic signal cabinets as shown in the Project Plans and as described in these Project Special Provisions for the successful integration of the field devices into the Asheville Signal System. Ensure that the edge switch provides wire-speed, fast Ethernet connectivity at transmission rates of 100 megabits per second from each remote ITS device location to the routing switches.

Contact the Division to arrange for the programming of the new Edge Switches with the necessary network configuration data, including but not limited to, the Project IP Address, Default Gateway, Subnet Mask and VLAN ID information. Provide a minimum six (6) weeks notice to allow the Division to program the new devices.

Ensure that the edge switch is fully compatible with the signal system’s existing Network Management Software.

Ensure that the edge switch is fully compatible and interoperable with the trunk Ethernet network interface and that the edge switch supports half and full duplex Ethernet communications.

Furnish an edge switch that provide 99.999% error-free operation, and that complies with the Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) Ethernet data communication requirements using single-mode fiber-optic transmission medium and copper transmission medium. Ensure that the edge switch has a minimum mean time between failures (MTBF) of 10 years, or 87,600 hours, as calculated using the Bellcore/Telcordia SR-332 standard for reliability prediction.

Furnish Ethernet edge switches that are DIN rail mounted and come equipped with hardware to permit mounting in an EIA 19” equipment rack.

Furnish Ethernet edge switches that weigh no more than 15 lbs. and are no more than 250 cubic inches in volume.

1. Standards

Ensure that the edge switch complies with all applicable IEEE networking standards for Ethernet communications, including but not limited to:

- IEEE 802.1D standard for media access control (MAC) bridges used with the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP);
- IEEE 802.1Q standard for port-based virtual local area networks (VLANs);
- IEEE 802.1P standard for Quality of Service (QoS);
- IEEE 802.1w standard for MAC bridges used with the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP);
- IEEE 802.1s standard for MAC bridges used with the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol;
- IEEE 802.1x standard for port based network access control, including RADIUS;
- IEEE 802.3 standard for local area network (LAN) and metropolitan area network (MAN) access and physical layer specifications;
- IEEE 802.3u supplement standard regarding 100 Base TX/100 Base FX;
- IEEE 802.3x standard regarding flow control with full duplex operation;
- IFC 2236 regarding IGMP v2 compliance;
- IEEE 802.1AB Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP);
- IEEE 802.3ad Ethernet Link Aggregation;
- IEEE 802.3i for 10BASE-T (10 Mbit/s over Fiber-Optic);
- IEEE 802.3ab for 1000BASE-T (1Gbit/s over Ethernet); and
- IEEE 802.3z for 1000BASE-X (1 Gbit/s Ethernet over Fiber-Optic).

2. Functional

Ensure that the edge switch supports all Layer 2 management features and certain Layer 3 features related to multicast data transmission and routing. These features shall include, but not be limited to:

- An STP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1D standard.
- An RSTP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1w standard.
- An Ethernet edge switch that is a port-based VLAN and supports VLAN tagging that meets or exceeds specifications as published in the IEEE 802.1Q standard, and has a minimum 4-kilobit VLAN address table (254 simultaneous).
- A forwarding/filtering rate that is a minimum of 14,880 packets per second for 10 megabits per second and 148,800 packets per second for 100 megabits per second.
- A minimum 4-kilobit MAC address table.
- Support of Traffic Class Expediting and Dynamic Multicast Filtering.
- Support of, at a minimum, snooping of Version 2 & 3 of the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP).

- Support of remote and local setup and management via telnet or secure Web-based GUI and command line interfaces.
- Support of the Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3). Verify that the Ethernet edge switch can be accessed using the resident EIA-232 management port, a telecommunication network, or the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP).
- Port security through controlling access by the users. Ensure that the Ethernet edge switch has the capability to generate an alarm and shut down ports when an unauthorized user accesses the network.
- Support of remote monitoring (RMON-1 & RMON-2) of the Ethernet agent.
- Support of the TFTP and SNTP. Ensure that the Ethernet edge switch supports port mirroring for troubleshooting purposes when combined with a network analyzer.

3. Physical Features

Ports: Provide 10/100/1000 Mbps auto-negotiating ports (RJ-45) copper Fast Ethernet ports for all edge switches. Provide auto-negotiation circuitry that will automatically negotiate the highest possible data rate and duplex operation possible with attached devices supporting the IEEE 802.3 Clause 28 auto-negotiation standard.

Optical Ports: Ensure that all fiber-optic link ports operate at 1310 or 1550 nanometers in single mode. Provide Type LC connectors for the optical ports, as specified in the Project Plans or by the Engineer. Do not use mechanical transfer registered jack (MTRJ) type connectors.

Provide an edge switch having a minimum of two optical 100/1000 Base X ports capable of transmitting data at 100/1000 megabits per second. Ensure that each optical port consists of a pair of fibers; one fiber will transmit (TX) data and one fiber will receive (RX) data. Ensure that the optical ports have an optical power budget of at least 15 dB.

Copper Ports: Provide an edge switch that includes a minimum of four copper ports. Provide Type RJ-45 copper ports and that auto-negotiate speed (i.e., 10/100/1000 Base) and duplex (i.e., full or half). Ensure that all 10/100/1000 Base TX ports meet the specifications detailed in this section and are compliant with the IEEE 802.3 standard pinouts. Ensure that all Category 5E unshielded twisted pair/shielded twisted pair network cables are compliant with the EIA/TIA-568-B standard.

Port Security: Ensure that the edge switch supports/complies with the following (remotely) minimum requirements:

- Ability to configure static MAC addresses access;
- Ability to disable automatic address learning per ports; know hereafter as Secure Port. Secure Ports only forward; and
- Trap and alarm upon any unauthorized MAC address and shutdown for programmable duration. Port shutdown requires administrator to manually reset the port before communications are allowed.

4. Management Capabilities

Ensure that the edge switch supports all Layer 2 management features and certain Layer 3 features related to multicast data transmission and routing. These features shall include, but not be limited to:

- An STP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1 D standards;
- An RSTP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1w standard;
- An Ethernet edge switch that is a port-based VLAN and supports VLAN tagging that meets or exceeds specifications as published in the IEEE 802.1Q standard, and has a minimum 4-kilobit VLAN address table (254 simultaneous);
- A forwarding/filtering rate that is a minimum of 14,880 packets per second for 10 megabits per second, 148,800 packets per second for 100 megabits per second and 1,488,000 packets per second for 1000 megabits per second;
- A minimum 4-kilobit MAC address table;
- Support of Traffic Class Expediting and Dynamic Multicast Filtering;
- Support of, at a minimum, snooping of Version 2 & 3 of the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP);
- Support of remote and local setup and management via telnet or secure Web-based GUI and command line interfaces; and
- Support of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Verify that the Ethernet edge switch can be accessed using the resident EIA-232 management port, a telecommunication network, or the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP).

Network Capabilities: Provide an edge switch that supports/complies with the following minimum requirements:

- Provide full implementation of IGMPv2 snooping (RFC 2236);
- Provide full implementation of SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and/or SNMPv3;
- Provide support for the following RMON–I groups, at a minimum:
 - Part 1: Statistics
 - Part 2: History
 - Part 3: Alarm
 - Part 9: Event
- Provide support for the following RMON–2 groups, at a minimum:
 - Part 13: Address Map
 - Part 16: Layer Host
 - Part 17: Layer Matrix
 - Part 18: User History
- Capable of mirroring any port to any other port within the switch;
- Meet the IEEE 802.1Q (VLAN) standard per port for up to four VLANs;

- Meet the IEEE 802.3ad (Port Trunking) standard for a minimum of two groups of four ports;
- Password manageable;
- Telnet/CLI;
- HTTP (Embedded Web Server) with Secure Sockets Layer (SSL); and
- Full implementation of RFC 783 (TFTP) to allow remote firmware upgrades.

Network Security: Provide an edge switch that supports/complies with the following (remotely) minimum network security requirements:

- Multi-level user passwords;
- RADIUS centralized password management (IEEE 802.1X);
- SNMPv3 encrypted authentication and access security;
- Port security through controlling access by the users: ensure that the Ethernet edge switch has the capability to generate an alarm and shut down ports when an unauthorized user accesses the network;
- Support of remote monitoring (RMON-1&2) of the Ethernet agent; and
- Support of the TFTP and SNTP. Ensure that the Ethernet edge switch supports port mirroring for troubleshooting purposes when combined with a network analyzer.

5. Electrical Specifications

Ensure that the edge switch operates and power is supplied with 115 volts of alternating current (VAC). Ensure that the edge switch has a minimum operating input of 110 VAC and a maximum operating input of 130 VAC. Ensure that if the device requires operating voltages other than 120 VAC, supply the required voltage converter. Ensure that the maximum power consumption does not exceed 50 watts. Ensure that the edge switch has diagnostic light emitting diodes (LEDs), including link, TX, RX, speed (for Category 5E ports only), and power LEDs.

6. Environmental Specifications

Ensure that the edge switch performs all of the required functions during and after being subjected to an ambient operating temperature range of -30 degrees to 165 degrees Fahrenheit as defined in the environmental requirements section of the NEMA TS 2 standard, with a noncondensing humidity of 0 to 95%.

Provide certification that the device has successfully completed environmental testing as defined in the environmental requirements section of the NEMA TS 2 standard. Provide certification that the device meets the vibration and shock resistance requirements of Sections 2.1.9 and 2.1.10, respectively, of the NEMA TS 2 standard. Ensure that the edge switch is protected from rain, dust, corrosive elements, and typical conditions found in a roadside environment.

The edge switch shall meet or exceed the following environmental standards:

- IEEE 1613 (electric utility substations)
- IEC 61850-3 (electric utility substations)

- IEEE 61800-3 (variable speed drive systems)
- IEC 61000-6-2 (generic industrial)
- EMF – FCC Part 15 CISPR (EN5502) Class A

7. Ethernet Patch Cable

Furnish a factory pre-terminated/pre-connectorized Ethernet patch cable with each edge switch. Furnish Ethernet patch cables meeting the following physical requirements:

- Five (5)-foot length
- Category 5e or better
- Factory-installed RJ-45 connectors on both ends
- Molded anti-snag hoods over connectors
- Gold plated connectors

Furnish Fast Ethernet patch cords meeting the following minimum performance requirements:

- TIA/EIA-568-B-5, Additional Transmission Performance Specifications for 4-pair 100 Ω Enhanced Category 5 Cabling
- Frequency Range: 1-100 MHz
- Near-End Crosstalk (NEXT): 30.1 dB
- Power-sum NEXT: 27.1 dB
- Attenuation to Crosstalk Ratio (ACR): 6.1 dB
- Power-sum ACR: 3.1 dB
- Return Loss: 10dB
- Propagation Delay: 548 nsec

11.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. General

Furnish media access control (MAC) addresses for all equipment utilized as part of this project. Affix MAC Address label to each device utilized. Furnish IP addresses for all equipment utilized as part of this project. Affix final IP address each device utilized. Use labels that do not smear or fade.

B. Ethernet Edge Switch

Ensure that the edge switch is UL listed.

Install and integrate all Ethernet edge switches at field locations as called for in Project Plans.

In traffic signal cabinets, fully integrate new Ethernet edge switches with traffic signals.

Provide inline surge protection for all Ethernet connections in field cabinets.

I-4400BB&C

TS-69

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Verify that network/field/data patch cords meet all ANSI/EIA/TIA requirements for Category 5E and Category 6 four-pair unshielded twisted pair cabling with stranded conductors and RJ45 connectors.

Contact the Signal Shop a minimum of 6 weeks prior to installation for the most current edge switch IP Address, VLAN, subnet mask, default gateway and configuration files.

Mount the edge switch inside each field cabinet by securely fastening the edge switch to the upper end of the right rear vertical rail of the equipment rack using manufacturer-recommended or Engineer-approved attachment methods, attachment hardware and fasteners.

Ensure that the edge switch is mounted securely in the cabinet and is fully accessible by field technicians without blocking access to other equipment. Verify that fiber-optic jumpers consist of a length of cable that has connectors on both ends, primarily used for interconnecting termination or patching facilities and/or equipment.

11.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Ethernet edge switch will be measured and paid for as the actual number of Ethernet edge switches furnished, installed, and accepted.

No separate measurement will be made for Ethernet patch cable, power cord, mounting hardware, nuts, bolts, brackets, or edge switch programming as these will be considered incidental to furnishing and installing the edge switch.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Ethernet Edge Switch.....	Each

12. COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM SUPPORT EQUIPMENT

12.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish communications system support equipment with all necessary hardware in accordance with the plans and specifications.

12.2. MATERIALS

A. General

Furnish equipment with test probes/leads, batteries (for battery-operated units), line cords (for AC-operated units), and carrying cases. Provide operating instructions and maintenance manuals with each item.

Before starting any system testing or training, furnish all communications system support equipment.

B. Wireless Radio Support Equipment

1. Wireless Radio Modem

Furnish wireless radio modem identical to the type installed in the traffic signal controller cabinets to be used for emergency restoration of the system and the wireless communications system.

2. Lightning Arrestor

Furnish wireless radio lightning arrestors identical to the type installed in the traffic signal controller cabinets to be used for emergency restoration of the transient voltage suppression equipment.

12.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Furnish Wireless Radio Modem will be measured and paid for as the actual number of wireless radio modems furnished and accepted.

Furnish Wireless Lightning Arrestor will be measured and paid for as the actual number of wireless radio lightning arrestors furnished and accepted.

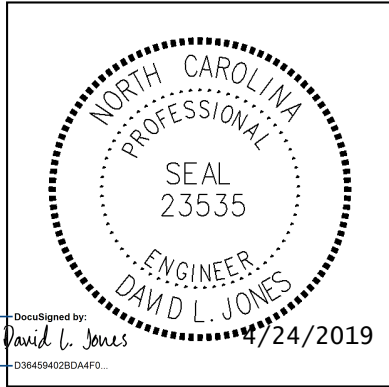
Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Furnish Wireless Radio Modem	Each
Furnish Wireless Lightning Arrestor	Each

I-4400BB&C

ITS-1

Buncombe & Henderson Counties



I-4400BB&C
Signals and Intelligent Transportation Systems
Project Special Provisions
(Version 18.2)

Prepared By: DLJ
 24-Apr-19



HNTB North Carolina, PC
 343 E. Six Forks Rd, Suite 200
 Raleigh, NC 27609
 919.546.8997
 NC License No: C-1554

Document not considered final
 unless all signatures completed.

Contents

1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 6

1.1. DESCRIPTION 6

 A. General 6

 B. Scope 6

1.2. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 6

 A. Ground Surface Restoration 6

 B. Information Technology Compliance 7

 C. Plan of Record Documentation 7

 D. Cell Modems 7

 E. Portable Changeable Message Signs 7

 F. Portable CCTV Cameras 7

 G. Requirements for Cables Crossing Railroads 7

2. 2018 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR ROADS & STRUCTURES 11

2.1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – CONSTRUCTION METHODS (1700-3(K)) 11

2.2. WOOD POLES – CONSTRUCTION METHODS (1720-3) 11

3. PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN 12

3.1. DESCRIPTION 12

3.2. MATERIALS 12

3.3. CONSTRUCTION 12

3.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 12

4. PORTABLE TRAILER-MOUNTED CCTV CAMERA 13

4.1. DESCRIPTION 13

4.2. MATERIALS 13

4.3. CONSTRUCTION 13

 A. Portable Trailer-Mounted CCTV Camera 13

 B. ICM Portable Trailer-Mounted CCTV Camera 14

4.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 14

5. UNDERGROUND CONDUIT 15

5.1. DESCRIPTION 15

5.2. MATERIALS 15

5.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 15

5.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 15

6. JUNCTION BOXES 17

6.1. DESCRIPTION 17

- 6.2. MATERIAL 17
 - A. *Standard Size Junction Box* 17
 - B. *Oversized Heavy-Duty Junction Box* 17
 - C. *Special Oversized Heavy-Duty Junction Box* 17
- 6.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 17
- 6.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 18
- 7. WOOD POLE..... 19**
 - 7.1. DESCRIPTION 19
 - 7.2. MATERIALS 19
 - A. *General* 19
 - B. *Wood Pedestal* 19
 - 7.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 19
 - 7.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 19
- 8. CCTV CAMERA METAL POLE AND FOUNDATION 20**
 - 8.1. DESCRIPTION 20
 - A. *Metal Poles* 20
 - B. *Drilled Pier Foundations* 20
 - 8.2. MATERIAL AND REQUIREMENTS 23
 - A. *Metal Poles* 23
 - 8.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 27
 - A. *Metal Poles* 27
 - B. *Drilled Pier Foundations* 28
 - 8.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 28
- 9. FIBER-OPTIC CABLE..... 29**
 - 9.1. DESCRIPTION 29
 - 9.2. MATERIALS 29
 - 9.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 29
 - 9.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 29
- 10. FIBER-OPTIC SPLICE CENTERS 31**
 - 10.1. DESCRIPTION 31
 - 10.2. MATERIALS 31
 - A. *Interconnect Centers* 31
 - B. *Splice Enclosures* 31
 - C. *Modify Splice Enclosure* 31
 - 10.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 31
 - 10.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 31
- 11. DELINEATOR MARKERS 33**
 - 11.1. DESCRIPTION 33
 - 11.2. MATERIALS 33
 - 11.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 33
 - 11.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 33
- 12. ELECTRICAL SERVICE FOR ITS DEVICE 34**
 - 12.1. DESCRIPTION 34
 - 12.2. MATERIALS 34
 - A. *Meter Base/Disconnect Combination Panel* 34
 - B. *Equipment Cabinet Disconnect* 35
 - C. *3-Wire Copper Service Entrance Conductors* 35
 - D. *4-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors* 35
 - E. *3-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors* 35
 - F. *Grounding System* 36
 - G. *Modify Existing Electrical Service Equipment* 36
 - 12.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 36

- A. Meter Base/Disconnect Combination Panel..... 36
- B. Equipment Cabinet Disconnect..... 36
- C. 3-Wire Copper Service Entrance Conductors 36
- D. 4-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors 36
- E. 3-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors 37
- F. Grounding System..... 37
- G. Modify Existing Electrical Service Equipment 37
- 12.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 37
- 13. CCTV CAMERA ASSEMBLY 39**
- 13.1. DESCRIPTION 39
- 13.2. MATERIALS 39
- A. General..... 39
- B. Camera and Lens..... 39
- C. Camera Housing..... 40
- D. Pan and Tilt Unit 41
- E. Video Ethernet Encoder..... 41
- F. Ethernet Cable..... 41
- G. Surge Suppression 42
- 13.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 42
- A. General..... 42
- B. Electrical and Mechanical Requirements 42
- C. Existing CCTV Camera 42
- 13.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 43
- 14. FIELD EQUIPMENT CABINET..... 44**
- 14.1. DESCRIPTION 44
- 14.2. MATERIALS 44
- A. Shelf Drawer..... 44
- B. Cabinet Light..... 44
- C. Surge Protection for System Equipment 45
- D. Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)..... 46
- 14.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 47
- 14.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 47
- 15. DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN (DMS) 48**
- 15.1. DESCRIPTION 48
- 15.2. MATERIALS 48
- A. Environmental Requirements..... 48
- B. Full Matrix LED Dynamic Message Sign..... 48
- C. DMS Enclosure Structure Mounting..... 54
- D. DMS / DMS Controller Interconnect..... 54
- E. DMS Controller and DMS Cabinet..... 55
- F. Photo-Electric Sensors 62
- G. Equipment List..... 62
- H. Physical Description..... 62
- I. Parts List..... 62
- J. Character Set Submittal..... 62
- K. Wiring Diagrams 62
- L. Routine of Operation 63
- M. Maintenance Procedures 63
- N. Repair Procedures 63
- O. Field Trial..... 63
- 15.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS 63
- A. Description 63
- B. Layout 64
- C. Construction Submittal 64

I-4400BB&C**ITS-4****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

D.	<i>Conduit</i>	64
E.	<i>Wiring Methods</i>	65
F.	<i>Equipment and Cabinet Mounting</i>	65
G.	<i>Remove Existing DMS and Structure</i>	65
H.	<i>Work Site Clean-Up</i>	65
15.4.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	66
16.	NTCIP REQUIREMENTS	67
16.1.	REFERENCES	67
A.	<i>General Requirements</i>	68
B.	<i>NTCIP Acceptance Testing</i>	75
16.2.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	76
17.	DMS ASSEMBLIES	77
17.1.	DESCRIPTION	77
17.2.	MATERIAL	77
17.3.	CONSTRUCTION METHODS	77
A.	<i>General</i>	77
B.	<i>Shop Drawing</i>	78
C.	<i>Design and Fabrication</i>	78
17.4.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	82
18.	SOIL TEST	83
18.1.	DESCRIPTION	83
18.2.	SOIL TEST	83
A.	<i>General</i>	83
B.	<i>Soil Test</i>	83
18.3.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	84
19.	FOUNDATIONS AND ANCHOR ROD ASSEMBLIES FOR METAL POLES	85
19.1.	DESCRIPTION	85
19.2.	MATERIAL	85
19.3.	CONSTRUCTION METHODS	86
A.	<i>Drilled Piers</i>	86
B.	<i>Footings, Pedestals, Grade Beams and Wings</i>	88
C.	<i>Anchor Rod Assemblies</i>	88
19.4.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	90
20.	DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN FOUNDATIONS	91
20.1.	DESCRIPTION	91
20.2.	MATERIALS	91
A.	<i>Assumed Subsurface Conditions</i>	91
B.	<i>Subsurface Investigations</i>	91
C.	<i>Sign Foundation Designs</i>	91
20.3.	CONSTRUCTION METHODS	92
20.4.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	92
21.	ETHERNET SWITCHES	93
21.1.	DESCRIPTION	93
21.2.	MATERIALS	93
A.	<i>General</i>	93
B.	<i>Ethernet Edge Switch</i>	93
21.3.	CONSTRUCTION METHODS	98
A.	<i>General</i>	98
B.	<i>Ethernet Edge Switch</i>	98
21.4.	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	99
22.	INTEGRATION AND CONFIGURATION	100

I-4400BB&C

ITS-5

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

- 22.1. DESCRIPTION100
- 22.2. CENTRAL INTEGRATION.....100
- 22.3. CENTRAL CONFIGURATION100
- 22.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT100
- 23. TESTING & ACCEPTANCE.....102**
- 23.1. GENERAL TEST PROCEDURE.....102
- 23.2. DESIGN APPROVAL TESTS102
 - A. *DMS System*.....102
 - B. *CCTV Camera System*103
- 23.3. COMPATIBILITY TESTS.....103
 - A. *DMS System*.....103
 - B. *CCTV Camera System*103
- 23.4. OPERATIONAL FIELD TEST (ON-SITE COMMISSIONING).....103
 - A. *DMS System*.....103
 - B. *CCTV Camera System*105
- 23.5. 30-DAY OBSERVATION PERIOD106
- 23.6. FINAL ACCEPTANCE106
- 23.7. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT106

1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1. DESCRIPTION

A. General

Conform to these Project Special Provisions, Project Plans, the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* (also referred to hereinafter as the “*Standard Specifications*”) and the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings* (also referred to hereinafter as the “*Standard Drawings*”). The current edition of these specifications and publications in effect on the date of advertisement will apply.

In the event of a conflict between these Project Special Provisions and the *Standard Specifications*, these Project Special Provisions govern.

Conform to the NCDOT and NC Statewide IT Policies and Standards as described at <http://it.nc.gov>. The architecture of the IT modules must be approved by NCDOT IT and the NC Office of Information Technology architecture groups.

B. Scope

The scope of this project includes the installation of eight (8) new IP (Internet Protocol) based, closed-circuit television (CCTV) cameras, and two (2) new pedestal-mounted dynamic message signs (DMS). The scope also includes installing fiber-optic trunk line and drop cables to interconnect the ITS devices.

Communication between the cameras, DMSs and the existing Division 13 Traffic Services Office in Asheville, NC will be accomplished over cellular modems (2 sites) and fiber-optic cable. The cellular modems will be furnished and installed by the Department.

Electrical service to the CCTV cameras and DMSs will consist of new electrical service installations as designated in the Project Plans. The Contractor shall coordinate with the appropriate electric utility company in the area to establish new service.

Note that the locations of each proposed device shown in the Project Plans are an approximation. Locate and mark proposed device locations in the field and receive approval from the appropriate Deputy Division Traffic Engineer before performing any construction. Do not construct any conduits or junction boxes to proposed devices until the device locations are approved by the Division Traffic Engineer. The Division 14 Deputy Traffic Engineer can be reached at (828) 631-1185.

Conduct device and system tests as described in these Project Special Provisions.

1.2. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Ground Surface Restoration

Upon completion of the installation of all conduit and the backfilling of all trenches and other excavations, restore the disturbed ground to its original condition as determined and approved by the Engineer. Backfill the excavation areas with removed material, tamp the backfilled material, and rake smooth the top 1-1/2 inches. Finish unpaved areas flush with surrounding natural ground and to match the original contour of the ground. Seed with the same type of grass as the surrounding areas and mulch the newly seeded areas. If unpaved area was not grassed, replace the original ground cover in kind as directed by the Engineer.

B. Information Technology Compliance

Conform to the State of North Carolina Information Technology (IT) policy and standards as described at <http://it.nc.gov>. The architecture of the IT modules must be approved by the NC- DOT IT and NC Office of Information Technology architecture groups.

C. Plan of Record Documentation

Comply with all requirements of Article 1098-1(F) of the *Standard Specifications* for providing plan of record documentation for all work performed under this Project.

D. Cell Modems

Communication between certain new cameras, and portable CCTV cameras and CMS, and the existing Division 13 Traffic Services office will be accomplished over cellular modems. The cellular modems will be furnished and installed by the Department. Submit a request to the Engineer for the modems be installed a minimum of six (6) weeks prior to anticipated integration.

Integrate the new cellular modems (furnished and installed by the Department) with existing and new communications infrastructure so that the new CCTV cameras and portable CCTV cameras and CMS are all accessible and can be controlled by computer and network hardware and software at the NCDOT Division 13 office in Asheville, NC, as well as shared for access and control from the State Traffic Operations Center (STOC) in Raleigh.

E. Portable Changeable Message Signs

For existing DMS sites to be replaced, provide each site with a portable changeable message sign trailer, to be fully operational between the time of the removal of the existing DMS and the completion of the installation of the new DMS. Return Portable CMS to the Division, undamaged and in good working order, upon completion of the project.

F. Portable CCTV Cameras

For existing CCTV camera sites to be replaced or taken out of service for any period of time, provide each site with a portable CCTV camera, to be fully operational between the time of the removal from service of the existing CCTV camera and the completion of the installation of (or restoration of service to) the new CCTV camera. Return non-ICM Portable CCTV cameras to the Division, undamaged and in good working order, upon completion of the project.

G. Requirements for Cables Crossing Railroads

Copies of all executed railroad agreements and related correspondence may be obtained from the Engineer upon request.

1. Railroad Crossings

Application has been made with Blue Ridge Southern (BLU) herein called the Railroad Company(ies), for the encroachment agreements necessary under this Contract. Do not commence cable routings over or under railroad-owned facilities until notification and coordination with Engineer and the appropriate Railroad Company has occurred. Install fiber-optic communications cable as shown on the Plans. All work associated with the crossing is to conform to the Railroad Company's specifications.

For work within BLU rights of way, comply with the latest approved edition of Railroad Specification CE4, “Specifications for Wire, Conduit and Cable Occupations of Railroad Property”, and Railroad Specification CE8, “Specifications for Pipeline Occupancy of Railroad Property”.

Cable crossings include the following locations:

Plan Sheet	Location	Railroad Company
ITS-30	I-26 EB Lane crossing over railroad, south of US-25 interchange; Crossing # 930 854J	BLU

2. Insurance Requirements

The Department has provided Railroad Protective Liability Insurance to the railroad companies as part of the Department’s encroachment agreements with the railroad companies for each of location listed in the table above.

If required by the railroad, pay for railroad personnel to be present when work is performed.

In addition to any other forms of insurance or bonds required under the terms of the Contract and the *Standard Specifications*, take out and keep in force from the commencement of all construction on railroad right-of-way until the final inspection and acceptance of the project by the Engineer, insurance of the following kinds and amount. It is understood that the amounts specified are minimum amounts and that larger amounts may be carried if so desired. Any insurance taken out due to these requirements shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer, and the Railroad Companies as to form and amount. Furnish satisfactory policies prior to beginning of the work on railroad right-of-way.

Refer to the following web links for more specific insurance requirements and requirements for working on the rights-of-way of each railroad company. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of one or more railroad companies and the requirements contained in the Plans or these Project Special Provisions, the requirements of the railroad company shall govern.

Blue Ridge Southern Railroad:

<https://www.watcocompanies.com/customertools/permitting/>

Commercial General Liability Insurance

Furnish evidence to the Engineer of Contractor’s commercial General Liability Insurance coverage with a combined single limit of not less than \$5,000,000 for each occurrence for operations performed on the railroad right-of-way. The Contractor’s policy shall name the railroad company(ies) as an additional insured. If any part of the work is sublet, similar insurance in the same amounts and evidence thereof as required of the Prime Contractor shall be provided by or on behalf of the Subcontractor to cover Subcontractor’s operations on the railroad right-of-way.

Keep such insurance in force until final inspection of the project, or that portion or portions within the railroad right-of-way, by the Engineer or, in the case of Subcontractors, until the Contractor furnishes a letter to the Engineer stating that the Subcontractor has completed his/her subcontracted work within the railroad right-of-way to Contractor's satisfaction, and that the Contractor will accomplish any additional work necessary on the railroad right-of-way with the Contractor's own forces.

Termination of Insurance and Policies to be Submitted

Any insurance policies given hereunder shall cover all Contractor-performed work the Contractor in connection with the work in the introductory paragraph within railroad right-of-way, but shall not be liable for accidents occurring after acceptance of the completed project by the Department. Such policies shall contain a clause requiring 30 days written notice be given to the Engineer and to the appropriate Railroad Company, prior to cancellation or change.

Submit to the Engineer the original and one copy of the Commercial General Liability Policy, one certified duplicate copy of all other policies, and certificates of insurance in an original and two copies as required by these Project Special Provisions.

No extra allowance will be made for the insurance required hereunder. The entire cost shall be included in the contract unit price bids for other pay items.

The named insured under the commercial General Liability Insurance Policy is the respective Railroad Company, and the designation of the job site description of work is as follows: All construction on the <<RAILROAD COMPANY>> right-of-way on NCDOT Project No. I-4400BA& BB&C/I-4700A&B in Buncombe and Henderson County, North Carolina.

3. Flagging Protection or Watchman Service

Provide 72 hours advance notice to the Railroad Company in order that flagging service can be arranged and provided. Do not undertake any work within the Railroad Company right-of-way until the flagman is at the job site.

4. Delays Caused by Operations of Others

Neither the Department nor the Railroad Company assumes any responsibility for any work performed by others in connection with the construction of the project, and the Contractor shall have no claim whatsoever against the Department or the Railroad Company for any inconvenience, delay, or additional cost incurred by the Contractor on account of such operations by others.

5. Time Extensions

No time extensions related to railroad encroachments will be allowed until the related work becomes the controlling factor relative to overall project completion.

6. Cooperation with Others

Cooperate with others participating in the construction of the project to the end that all work may be carried on to the best advantage.

7. Authority of Railroad Engineer

The authorized representative of the Railroad Company, hereinafter referred to as the Railroad Engineer, will have the final authority in all matters affecting the safe maintenance of railroad traffic of his company.

8. Interference with Railroad Operations

Arrange and conduct work so that there will be no interference with railroad operations, including train, signal, telephone and telegraphic services, or damage to the property of the Railroad Company or to the poles, wire, and other facilities of tenants on the rights-of-way of the Railroad Company. Wherever work is liable to affect the operations or safety of trains, first submit the method of doing such work to the Railroad Engineer for approval. However, such approval will not relieve the Contractor from liability.

Should conditions arising from or in connection with the work, require that immediate and unusual provisions be made to protect train operations and property of the Railroad Company, it shall be a part of the required services by the Contractor to make such provisions and if, in the judgment of the Railroad Engineer such provisions are insufficient, the Railroad Engineer or the Department may, at the expense of the Contractor, require or provide such provisions as may be deemed necessary.

9. Storage of Materials

Do not store materials and equipment where they will interfere with railroad operations, nor on the rights-of-way of the Railroad Company without first having obtained permission from the Railroad Engineer. Such permission will be with the understanding that the Railroad Company will not be liable or damage to such material and equipment from any cause, and that the Railroad Engineer may move or require the Contractor to move, at the Contractor's expense, such material and equipment.

10. Completion and Acceptance of Work

Upon completion of the work, remove from within the limits of the railroad right-of-way all machinery, equipment, surplus materials, or rubbish and leave said rights-of-way in a neat and orderly condition. Acceptance of the work will be contingent upon final inspection by the Department and by the Railroad Company (if required by the Railroad Company) to determine if the work was completed satisfactorily in a manner acceptable to the Department and the Railroad Company.

2. 2018 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR ROADS & STRUCTURES

The 2018 Standard Specifications are revised as follows:

2.1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – Construction Methods (1700-3(K))

Page 17-4, revise sentence starting on line 14 to read “Modify existing electrical services, as necessary, to meet the grounding requirements of the NEC, these *Standard Specifications*, *Standard Drawings*, and the project plans.”

Page 17-4, revise sentence beginning on line 21 to read “Furnish and install additional ground rods to grounding electrode system as necessary to meet the *Standard Specifications*, *Standard Drawings*, and test requirements.”

2.2. WOOD POLES – Construction Methods (1720-3)

Page 17-18, revise sentence starting on line 13 to read “On new Department-owned poles, install a grounding system consisting of #6 AWG solid bare copper wire that is mechanically crimped using an irreversible compression tool with die to a single ground rod installed at base of pole or to the electrical service grounding electrode system located within 10 feet of the pole.”

3. PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN

3.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install portable trailer-mounted changeable message signs at sites where existing DMS are replaced or taken out of service for any period of time. Upon project completion, turn over and deliver the portable changeable message signs to the Division 14 office and relinquish ownership to the Department.

3.2. MATERIALS

Furnish portable changeable message signs that are on the NCDOT Statewide CMS Contract. To ensure compatibility with the existing DMS Control Software deployed in the State, furnish NTCIP compliant CMSs that are fully compatible with Daktronics, Inc. Vanguard V4 software.

Obtain cellular modems from NCDOT for communications between the portable CMS and the Division 13 Traffic Services Office. The Contractor shall request the cell modem from the Engineer six (6) weeks in advance of anticipated deployment of a portable device. Return the cell modem to the Division 13 Traffic Services Offices upon project completion.

Provide warranty coverage for all parts and materials through the deployment on the project. The portable CCTV camera must be controllable from the Division 13 Traffic Services Office using the Department's existing software.

3.3. CONSTRUCTION

Install, operate, maintain, relocate and remove portable changeable message signs in accordance with Section 1120 of the *Standard Specifications*.

3.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Portable changeable message signs will be measured and paid as the maximum number of portable changeable message signs acceptably placed and in operation during the life of the project. Payment for Portable Changeable Message Signs will be made on the following schedule:

- 60% of the unit bid upon placing the unit in service,
- 20% of the unit bid when the project is 50% complete, and
- 20% of the unit bid when the project is 100% complete and signs are delivered to the Division.

Replacement, repair and maintenance of changeable message signs will be incidental to the work of this section.

Upon project completion, portable changeable message signs shall be delivered, undamaged and in good working order, to the Division.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Portable Changeable Message Sign	Each

4. PORTABLE TRAILER-MOUNTED CCTV CAMERA

4.1. DESCRIPTION

While any existing CCTV camera on the project is out of service, provide a portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera for that location. Provide Integrated Corridor Management (ICM) portable trailer-mounted CCTV cameras to assist with traffic management for detour routes and other purposes, as directed by the Engineer.

4.2. MATERIALS

Provide a trailer mounted, solar powered CCTV camera with wireless communications during the period any existing CCTV camera is out of service, in order to monitor traffic along I-26.

Provide ICM trailer-mounted, solar powered CCTV cameras with wireless communications to assist with traffic management for detour routes.

The portable CCTV camera image must be viewable on standard computer monitors and controllable from the Division 13 Traffic Services Office.

Provide a trailer mounted, solar powered CCTV camera with the following features:

- Industrial grade trailer
- Fully adjustable solar array (360 degrees)
- Extendable mast (up to 32 feet minimum) with 360 degree lockable rotation
- With day/night, adjustable PTZ, IP-addressable camera, providing streaming and snapshot video capability
- 30-day minimum battery bank
- Accommodates digital cellular modem communications

Obtain cellular modems from NCDOT for communications between the portable CCTV camera assembly and the Division 13 Traffic Services Office. The Contractor shall request the cell modem from the Engineer six (6) weeks in advance of anticipated deployment of a portable device. Return the cell modem to the Division 13 Traffic Services Offices upon project completion.

Provide warranty coverage for all parts and materials through the deployment on the project. Ensure that the equipment is fully compatible with all features of the existing VideoPro video management software currently in use by NCDOT in this Region. The portable CCTV camera must be controllable from the Division 13 Traffic Services Office using the Department's existing software.

4.3. CONSTRUCTION

Assist the Department with integrating the portable CCTV cameras into the regional system and with establishing communications with the Division 13 Traffic Services Office.

A. Portable Trailer-Mounted CCTV Camera

Do not take the existing CCTV camera out of service until the portable CCTV camera has been fully integrated into the regional system and is communicating effectively with the Division 13 Traffic Services Office. When the existing CCTV camera site is placed back into service, remove the portable CCTV camera from the site.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-14

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Upon project completion, turn over and deliver the portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera to the Division 14 office and relinquish ownership to the Department.

B. ICM Portable Trailer-Mounted CCTV Camera

Place and relocate the ICM portable trailer-mounted CCTV cameras as directed by the Engineer. Upon project completion, retain possession of the ICM portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera.

4.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera will be measured and paid as the actual number of portable trailer mounted CCTV units furnished, installed, maintained and accepted. Payment will not include acquisition of cellular modems and payments for monthly cell phone service for the duration of the deployment. Payment will include assisting the Department with integrating the device into the regional system, and delivering the unit to Division 14 Traffic Services office and relinquishing ownership of the unit to the Department at the conclusion of the project. The portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera shall be undamaged and in good working order when delivered to the Division.

ICM portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera will be measured and paid as the actual number of ICM portable trailer-mounted CCTV units furnished, installed, maintained and accepted. Payment will not include acquisition of cellular modems and payments for monthly cell phone service for the duration of the deployment. Payment will include assisting the Department with integrating the device into the regional system and relocating as directed by the Engineer. The ICM portable trailer-mounted CCTV camera shall be retained by the Contractor at the conclusion of the project.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Portable Trailer-Mounted CCTV Camera.....	Each
ICM Portable Trailer-Mounted CCTV Camera.....	Each

5. UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

5.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install conduit for underground installation with tracer wire, miscellaneous fittings, all necessary hardware, marker tape, backfill, graded stone, paving materials, and seeding and mulching in accordance with Section 1715 of the *Standard Specifications*.

5.2. MATERIALS

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section shall be pre-approved on the Department's QPL.

Refer to Articles 1091-3 (Conduit), 1091-4 (Duct and Conduit Sealer), 1018-2 (Backfill), and 545-2 and 545-3 (Graded Stone) of the *Standard Specifications*.

Furnish conduits in the following colors according to contents and quantity:

Conduit Contents	Number of Conduits	Conduit Colors
Electrical Power	1	Red
	2	Red and Black w/ Red Stripes
Communications	1	Orange
	2	Orange and Black

Furnish underground PVC and HDPE conduits as shown in the Project Plans. All vertical conduits (entrance to electrical service and equipment disconnect and pole mounted cabinet) must be rigid galvanized steel.

5.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install underground conduit in compliance with all requirements of Section 1715-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Do not install conduits or junction boxes to ITS devices (CCTV cameras and DMSs) until the location of the ITS devices has been confirmed by the Deputy Division Traffic Engineer.

5.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Install underground conduit in compliance with all requirements of Section 1715-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Tracer wire will be measured along the horizontal linear feet of tracer wire furnished, installed, and accepted. Measurement will be along the approximate centerline of the conduit system. Payment will be made in linear feet. No payment will be made for excess tracer wire in junction boxes and/or cabinets.

Unpaved Trenching (qty) (size) & (qty) (size) will be measured horizontal linear feet of trenching for underground conduit installation of each type furnished, installed, and accepted. Measurement will be along the approximate centerline of the conduit system. Payment will be in linear feet.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-16

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Directional Drill (qty)(size)&(qty)(size) will be measured horizontal linear feet of directional drill for underground conduit installation furnished, installed, and accepted. Measurement will be along the approximate centerline of the conduit system. Payment will be in linear feet.

No measurement will be made of vertical segments, non-metallic conduit, metallic conduit, conduit sealing material, backfill, graded stone, paved materials, miscellaneous fittings, non-detectable marker tape, pull lines, seeding and mulching as these will be considered incidental to conduit installation.

No measurement or payment will be made for intercepting/excavating under an existing junction box in order to tie into the adjacent project.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Tracer Wire	Linear Foot
Unpaved Trenching (1) (1").....	Linear Foot
Unpaved Trenching (1) (2").....	Linear Foot
Unpaved Trenching (2) (2").....	Linear Foot
Directional Drill (1) (2")	Linear Foot
Directional Drill (2) (2")	Linear Foot

6. JUNCTION BOXES

6.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install junction boxes (pull boxes) with covers, graded stone, grounding systems and all necessary hardware.

6.2. MATERIAL

Refer to Division 3.

Item	Section
Junction Box	1098-5
Graded Stone.....	545

Furnish material, equipment and hardware under this section that is pre-approved on the ITS and Signals QPL.

A. Standard Size Junction Box

Provide standard size junction boxes and covers with minimum inside dimensions of 16"(l) x 10"(w) x 10"(d).

B. Oversized Heavy-Duty Junction Box

Provide oversized junction boxes and covers with minimum inside dimensions of 28"(l) x 15"(w) x 22"(d).

C. Special Oversized Heavy-Duty Junction Box

Provide special oversized heavy-duty junction boxes and covers with minimum inside dimensions of 36"(l) x 24"(w) x 24"(d).

6.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install standard size junction boxes as shown in the plans and where underground splicing of electrical cables is necessary. Install standard size junction boxes within 3 feet of pole or pole foundation where transitioning from below ground to a riser assembly. Install standard size junction boxes within 5 feet of each end of each lateral run of conduit for electrical cables.

When lateral runs for electrical cables are greater than 150 feet, install additional junction boxes to ensure distances between junction boxes does not exceed 150 feet.

Install oversized junction boxes for fiber-optic cables at locations shown in the plans. Install special oversized junction boxes at underground splice locations as shown in the plans.

Provide real world coordinates for all junction boxes and equipment cabinets installed or used under this project. Provide the coordinates in feet units using the North Carolina State Plane coordinate system (1983 North American Datum also known as NAD '83). Furnish coordinates that do not deviate more than 1.7 feet in the horizontal plane and 3.3 feet in the vertical plane. Global positioning system (GPS) equipment able to obtain the coordinate data within these tolerances may be used. Submit cut sheets on the GPS unit proposed to collect the data for approval by the Engineer.

Provide both a digital copy and hard copy of all information regarding the location (including, but not limited to, manufacturer, model number, and NCDOT inventory number) in the Microsoft® spreadsheet provided by the Department, shown by example below.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-18

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Submit coordinate information in a spreadsheet provided by the Department and in accordance with the below table.

NCDOT Inv #	Name	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Manufacturer	Model #
05-0134	Equipment Cabinet	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5500	35.6873	McCain	Type-332
05-0134	Junction Box # 1 (Phase 2 Side)	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5516	35.6879	Quazite	PG1118BA12(Box) PG1118HA00(Cover)
05-0134	Junction Box # 2 (Phase 2 Side)	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5506	35.6876	Quazite	PG1118BA12(Box) PG1118HA00(Cover)
05-0134	Junction Box # 3 (Near Cabinet)	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5501	35.6873	Quazite	PG1118BA12(Box) PG1118HA00(Cover)
05-0134	Junction Box # 4 (Phase 6 Side)	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5486	35.6873	Quazite	PG1118BA12(Box) PG1118HA00(Cover)
05-0134	Junction Box # 5 (Phase 6 Side)	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5493	35.6876	Quazite	PG1118BA12(Box) PG1118HA00(Cover)
05-0134	Junction Box # 6 (Phase 4 Side)	US 70 at Raynor Rd./ Auburn-Knightdale	-78.5503	35.6879	Quazite	PG1118BA12(Box) PG1118HA00(Cover)

6.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Junction Box () will be measured and paid in actual number of junction boxes of each size and type furnished, installed and accepted.

No measurement will be made of covers, washed stone and grounding systems as these will be incidental to furnishing and installing junction boxes.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Junction Box (Standard Size).....	Each
Junction Box (Oversized Heavy Duty).....	Each
Junction Box (Special Oversized Heavy Duty)	Each

7. WOOD POLE

7.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install wood pedestals with grounding systems and all necessary hardware in accordance with Section 1720 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Remove wood poles from existing CCTV camera sites that will be upgraded with new CCTV camera poles and equipment.

7.2. MATERIALS

A. General

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section shall be pre-approved on the Department's QPL.

Refer to Articles 1082-3 (Treated Timber and Lumber), 1082-4 (Preservative Treatment), 1091-2 (Wire), and 1091-6 (Grounding Electrodes) of the *Standard Specifications*.

B. Wood Pedestal

Furnish 6" x 6" x 8' wood pedestals for electrical service equipment as shown in the Project Plans.

7.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install wood pedestals in compliance with all requirements of Section 1720-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Where wood poles have been removed, backfill hole to 95% of surrounding density. Promptly backfill and compact areas disturbed with suitable materials and match the finished ground elevation. Seed disturbed areas in accordance with Section 1661 of the *Standard Specifications*.

7.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Remove wood pole will be measured and paid as the actual number of wood poles at existing CCTV camera sites removed. Contractor shall dispose of wood poles removed from existing CCTV camera sites.

There will be no direct payment for the installation of wood poles/pedestals, as these will be incidental to the electric service.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Remove Wood Pole	Each

8. CCTV CAMERA METAL POLE AND FOUNDATION

8.1. DESCRIPTION

A. Metal Poles

Furnish and install metal poles, grounding systems, and all necessary hardware. The work covered by this Project Special Provision includes requirements for the design, fabrication, and installation of custom-designed metal poles for metal poles with CCTV cameras for IP (Internet Protocol) cameras, all with custom-designed foundations.

Provide designs of completed assemblies with hardware that equals or exceeds *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals* 6th Edition, 2013 (hereafter called 6th Edition AASHTO), including the latest interim revisions. Provide assemblies with a round or near-round (18 sides or more) cross-section, or a multi sided cross section with no less than six sides. The sides may be straight, convex, or concave.

Standard Drawings for metal poles and metal pole foundations are available that supplement these project special provisions. These drawings are located on the Department's website:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/safety/pages/ITS-Design-Resources.aspx>

B. Drilled Pier Foundations

Furnish and install foundations for metal poles with all necessary hardware in accordance with the Project Plans and Project Special Provisions. The work covered by these Project Special Provisions includes requirements for the design, fabrication, and installation of custom designed foundations for metal poles.

Analysis procedures and formulas shall be based on AASHTO 6th Edition, latest ACI code and the Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and Design Methods FHWA-NHI-10-016 manual. Design methods based on engineering publications or research papers needs to have prior approval from NCDOT, who reserves the right to accept or disapprove any method used for the analysis.

It is assumed that all foundation designs will be drilled pier foundations unless site-specific soil test information does not allow for a drilled pier foundation design. If an alternative foundation design is required, notify the Engineer immediately. Prior approval from the Engineer is required to receive additional compensation for an alternate foundation design.

Design all metal pole foundations using actual soil conditions at each metal pole location. Perform soil tests in accordance with sub-section (1) (b) Soil Test of these Project Special Provisions.

Use a Factor of Safety of 1.33 for torsion and 2.0 for bending for the foundation design.

Foundation design for lateral load shall not exceed 1" lateral deflection at top of foundation.

For lateral analysis, use LPILE Plus V6.0 or later. Inputs, results and corresponding graphs are to be submitted with the design calculations.

Skin Friction is to be calculated using the α -method for cohesive soils and the β -method for cohesion-less soils (Broms method will not be accepted). Detailed descriptions of the " α " and " β " methods can be found in FHWA-NHI-10-016.

Omit first 2.5ft for cohesive soils when calculating skin friction.

When hammer efficiency is not provided, assume a value of 0.70.

Design all custom foundations to carry the maximum capacity of each metal pole.

When poor soil conditions are encountered which could create an excessively large foundation design, consideration may be given to allowing an exemption to the maximum capacity design. The contractor must gain approval from the Engineer before reducing a foundation's capacity. Where poor soil is known to be present, it is advisable that the contractor receive approval for foundation designs before releasing metal poles for fabrication.

1. Soil Test

a. General

Drilled piers are reinforced concrete sections, cast in place against in situ, undisturbed material. Drilled piers are of straight shaft type and vertical.

The contractor-selected metal pole fabricator is responsible for determining if the addition of wing walls is necessary for the supporting foundations.

b. Soil Test

Perform a soil test at each proposed metal pole location. Complete all required fill placement and excavation at each metal pole location to finished grade before drilling each boring. Soil tests performed that are not in compliance with this requirement may be rejected and will not be paid. Drill one boring to a depth of 26 feet within a 25 foot radius of each proposed foundation.

Perform standard penetration tests (SPT) in accordance with ASTM D 1586 at depths of 1, 2.5, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 20 and 26 feet. Discontinue the boring if one of the following occurs:

- A total of 100 blows have been applied in any 2 consecutive 6-in. intervals
- A total of 50 blows have been applied with < 3-in. penetration

Submit completed boring logs collected in accordance with these Project Special Provisions along with metal pole loading diagrams to the contractor-selected metal pole fabricator to assist in the metal pole and foundation design.

Describe each metal pole location along the project corridor in a manner that is easily discernible to both the contractor's designer and NCDOT reviewers. If a metal pole is at an intersection, label the boring the "Intersection of (Route or SR #), (Street Name) and (Route or SR #), (Street Name), _____ County. Label borings with "B- N, S, E, W, NE, NW, SE or SW" corresponding to the quadrant location within the intersection.

Metal pole numbers should be made available to the geotechnical drilling Contractor. Include metal pole numbers in the boring label if they are available. If they are not available, ensure the boring labels can be cross-referenced to corresponding pole numbers or pole locations.

For each boring, submit a legible (hand written or typed) boring log signed and sealed by a licensed Geologist or Professional Engineer registered in North Carolina.

Include on each boring the SPT blow counts and N-values at each depth, depth of the boring, and a general description of the soil types encountered.

Borings that can't be easily related to their specific metal pole location will be returned to the contractor for clarification, or if approved by the Engineer, the foundation may be designed using the worst case soil condition obtained as part of this project.

2. Foundation Determination

Use the following method for determining the Design N-value:

$$N_{AVG} = \frac{(N@1' + N@2.5' + \dots + N@Deepest \text{ Boring Depth})}{\text{Total Number of N-values}}$$

$$Y = (N@1')^2 + (N@2.5')^2 + \dots + (N@Deepest \text{ Boring Depth})^2$$

$$Z = (N@1' + N@2.5' + \dots + N@Deepest \text{ Boring Depth})$$

$$N_{STD \text{ DEV}} = \left[\frac{(\text{Total Number of N-values} \times Y) - Z^2}{(\text{Total Number of N-values}) \times (\text{Total Number of N-values} - 1)} \right]^{0.5}$$

Design N-value equals lesser of the following two conditions:

$$N_{AVG} - (N_{STD \text{ DEV}} \times 0.45)$$

Or

$$\text{Average of First Four N-Values} = \frac{(N@1' + N@2.5' + N@5' + N@7.5')}{4}$$

Note: If less than 4 N-values are obtained because of criteria listed in Section 2 above, use average of N-values collected for second condition. Do not include the N-value at the deepest boring depth for above calculations if the boring is discontinued at or before the required boring depth because of criteria listed in Section 1 above. Use N-value of zero for weight of hammer or weight of rod. If N-value is greater than 50, reduce N-value to 50 for calculations.

Submit completed boring logs collected in accordance with sub-section (1) (b) Soil Test above along with metal pole loading diagrams to the Contractor-selected metal pole fabricator to assist in the metal pole and foundation design.

3. Foundation Design

Design foundations based upon site-specific soil test information collected in accordance with sub-section **(1) (b) Soil Test** above. Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*.

Use the computer software LPILE version 6.0 or latest version manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers.

Use the computer software gINT V8i or latest manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs.

Provide a drilled pier foundation for each metal pole with a length and diameter that result in a horizontal lateral movement of less than 1 inch at the top of the pier and a horizontal rotational movement of less than 1 inch at the edge of the pier.

Submit foundation designs including drawings, calculations, and soil boring logs to the Engineer for review and approval before construction. Foundations installed without prior approval may be rejected.

Base foundation designs on level ground around the metal pole. If the slope around the edge of the drilled pier is steeper than 8:1 (H:V) or the proposed foundation will be less than 10 feet from the top of an embankment slope, the Contractor is responsible for providing slope information to the foundation designer and to the Engineer so it can be considered in the design.

8.2. MATERIAL AND REQUIREMENTS

A. Metal Poles

Furnish metal poles that are 50 feet tall as indicated in the Project Plans.

Provide tapered, tubular shafts fabricated from coil or plate steel to meet the requirements of ASTM A595 Grade A. For structural steel shapes, plates and bars use A572 Gr 50 min or ASTM A709 Gr 50 min. Design tapers for all metal pole shafts that begin at the base with diameters that decrease uniformly at the rate of 0.14 inch per foot of length. Construct shafts from one piece of single ply plate or coil so there are no circumferential weld splices.

Ensure that allowable metal pole deflection does not exceed that allowed per 6th Edition AASHTO. Ensure that maximum deflection at the top of the metal pole does not exceed 2.5 percent of the metal pole height at the maximum wind speed as prescribed for the project area.

Use the submerged arc process or other NCDOT previously approved process suitable for metal pole shafts to continuously weld metal pole shafts along their entire length. Ground or roll smooth and flush any exposed welds flush with the base metal. The longitudinal seam weld will be finished flush to the outside contour of the base metal. Ensure shafts have no circumferential welds except at the lower end joining the shaft to the metal pole base. Use full penetration groove welds with backing ring for all tube-to-transverse-plate connections in accordance with the 6th Edition AASHTO. Provide welding that conforms to Article 1072-18 of the *Standard Specifications*, except that no field welding on any part of the metal pole will be permitted unless approved by a qualified engineer.

Fabricate anchor bases from plate steel meeting, as a minimum, the requirements of ASTM A572 Gr 50, AASHTO M 270 Gr 50, ASTM A709 Gr50, or an approved equivalent. Conform to the applicable bolt pattern and orientation as shown on Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M2.

Unless otherwise required by the design, ensure each anchor rod is 2" diameter and 60" length. Provide 10" minimum thread projection at the top of the rod, and 8" minimum at the bottom of the rod. Use anchor rod assembly and drilled pier foundation materials that meet the Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles provision.

Provide a circular anchor bolt lock plate that will be secured to the anchor bolts at the embedded end with 2 washers and 2 nuts. Provide a base plate template that matches the bolt circle diameter of the anchor bolt lock plate. Construct plates and templates from 1/4" minimum thick steel with a minimum width of 4 inches. Galvanizing is not required for anchor bolt lock plates.

Provide 4 heavy hex nuts and 4 flat washers for each anchor bolt. For nuts, use AASHTO M 291 grade 2H, DH, or DH3 or equivalent material. For flat washers, use AASHTO M 293 or equivalent material. Ensure that anchor bolts have required diameters, lengths and positions, and will develop strengths comparable to their respective metal poles.

Provide a 2-inch hole equipped with an associated coupling and conduit fittings/bodies approximately 18 inches above the base of the metal pole to accommodate passage of cables from the field equipment cabinet to the inside of the metal pole. Refer to Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M3 for fabrication details.

Have metal poles permanently stamped above the base hand hole with the identification tag details as shown on Metal Pole Standard Drawing Sheet M2.

For each metal pole, provide a 1/2 inch minimum thread diameter, coarse thread stud and nut for grounding which will accommodate #6 AWG ground wire. Ensure that the lug is electrically bonded to the metal pole and is conveniently located inside the metal pole at the hand hole.

Provide a removable metal pole cap with stainless steel attachment screws for the top of each metal pole. Ensure that the cap is cast aluminum conforming to Aluminum Association Alloy 356.0F. Furnish cap attached to the metal pole with a sturdy chain or cable approved by the Engineer. Ensure that the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cap to hang clear of the metal pole-top opening when the cap is removed.

Ensure that metal pole designs permit cables to be installed inside the metal poles. For holes in the metal poles used to accommodate cables, provide full-circumference grommets.

Ensure all hardware is galvanized steel or stainless steel. The Contractor is responsible for ensuring that the designer/fabricator specifies connecting hardware and/or materials that do not create a dissimilar metal corrosive reaction.

For each structural bolt and other steel hardware, hot dip galvanizing shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 232 (ASTM A153). Ensure end caps for metal poles are constructed of cast aluminum conforming to Aluminum Alloy 356.0F.

After fabrication, have metal poles and all parts used in the assembly hot-dip galvanized per section 1076 of the *Standard Specifications*. Design structural assemblies with weep holes large enough and properly located to drain molten zinc during galvanization process. Provide hot-dip galvanizing on structures that meets or exceeds ASTM A123. Provide galvanizing on hardware that meets or exceeds ASTM A153. Ensure that threaded material is brushed and retapped as necessary after galvanizing.

Perform repair of damaged galvanizing that complies with Article 1076-7 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Where ice is present, assume wind loads as shown in Figure 3.9.4.2-3 of the 6th Edition AASHTO Specification for Group III loading.

Design a base plate for each metal pole. The minimum base plate thickness for all metal poles is determined by the following criteria:

Case 1 Circular or rectangular solid base plate with the upright metal pole welded to the top surface of base plate with full penetration butt weld and where no stiffeners are provided. A base plate with a small center hole, which is less than 1/3 of the upright diameter, and located concentrically with the upright metal pole, may be considered as a solid base plate.

I-4400BB&C**ITS-25****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

The magnitude of bending moment in the base plate, induced by the anchoring force of each anchor bolt is $M = (P \times D_1) / 2$, where:

M = bending moment at the critical section of the base plate induced by one anchor bolt

P = anchoring force of each anchor bolt

D_1 = horizontal distance between the anchor bolt center and the outer face of the upright, or the difference between the bolt circle radius and the outside radius of the upright

Locate the critical section at the face of the anchor bolt and perpendicular to the bolt circle radius. The overlapped part of two adjacent critical sections is considered ineffective.

Case 2 Circular or rectangular base plate with the upright metal pole socketed into and attached to the base plate with two lines of fillet weld, and where no stiffeners are provided, or any base plate with a center hole that is larger in diameter than 1/3 of the upright diameter.

The magnitude of bending moment induced by the anchoring force of each anchor bolt is $M = P \times D_2$, where

P = anchoring force of each anchor bolt

D_2 = horizontal distance between the face of the upright and the face of the anchor bolt nut

Locate the critical section at the face of the anchor bolt top nut and perpendicular to the radius of the bolt circle. The overlapped part of two adjacent critical sections is considered ineffective.

If the base plate thickness calculated for Case 2 is less than Case 1, use the thickness calculated for Case 1.

The following additional requirements apply to metal pole base plate designs:

- Ensure that whichever case governs as defined above, the anchor bolt diameter is set to match the base plate thickness. If the minimum diameter required for the anchor bolt exceeds the thickness required for the base plate, set the base plate thickness equal to the required bolt diameter.
- Ensure that designs have anchor bolt holes with a diameter 1/4 inch larger than the anchor bolt diameters in the base plate.

Furnish shop drawings for approval. Comply with Article 1098-1B of the *Standard Specifications* for submittal requirements. Furnish necessary details and calculations for the metal poles including the foundation and connections. Ensure that shop drawings include material specifications for each component and identifies welds by type and size on the drawing details, not in table format. Provide an itemized bill of materials for all structural components and associated connecting hardware on the drawings.

Provide the copies and summary of information as summarized below for metal pole and foundation design reviews:

Item	Hardcopy Submittal	Electronic Submittal	Comments / Special Instructions
Sealed, Approved Signal Plan/Loading Diagram	1	1	All structure design information needs to reflect the latest approved signal plans

I-4400BB&C

ITS-26

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Custom Pole Shop Drawings	4 sets	1 set	Show NCDOT inventory number(s), contractor's name and relevant revision number in the title block. All drawings must have a unique <u>drawing</u> number for each project and identified for multiple pages.
Standard Pole Shop Drawings (from the QPL)	4 sets	1 set	Submit drawings on 11" x 17" format media. Show NCDOT inventory number(s), contractor's name and relevant revision number in the title block. All drawings must have a <u>unique drawing</u> number for each project and identified for multiple pages.
Structure Calculations	1 set	1 set	Not required for Standard QPL Poles
Standard Pole Foundation Drawings	1 set	1 set	Submit drawings on 11" x 17" format media. Submit a completed Standard Foundation Selection form for each pole using foundation table on Metal Pole Drawing M-8.
Custom Foundation Drawings	4 sets	1 set	Submit drawings on 11" x 17" format media. Show NCDOT inventory number(s), contractor's name and relevant revision number in the title block. All drawings must have a <u>unique drawing</u> number for each project and identified for multiple pages. If QPL Poles are used, include the corresponding QPL pole shop drawings with this submittal.
Foundation Calculations	1	1	Submit copies of LPILE input, output and pile tip deflection graph per Section 11.4 of this specification for each foundation. Not required for Standard QPL Poles
Soil Boring Logs and Report	1	1	Report should include a location plan and a soil classification report including soil capacity, water level, hammer efficiency, soil bearing pressure, soil density, etc. for each pole.

All shop drawings and custom foundation design drawings must be sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina. All geotechnical information must be sealed by either a Professional Engineer or geologist licensed in the state of North Carolina.

Immediately bring to the attention of the Engineer any structural deficiency that becomes apparent in any assembly or member of any assembly as a result of the design requirements imposed by these Project Special Provisions, the Project Plans, or the typical drawings. Said Professional Engineer is wholly responsible for the design of all metal poles. Review and acceptance of these designs by the Department does not relieve the said Professional Engineer of his responsibility. **Do not fabricate the assemblies until receipt of the Department's approval of the design drawings.**

Include a title block and revision block on the shop drawings and foundation designs showing the NCDOT inventory number.

Shop drawings and foundation drawings may be submitted together or separately for approval. However, shop drawings must be approved before foundations can be reviewed. Foundation designs will be returned without review if the associated shop drawing has not been approved.

Boring reports should include the following: Engineer's summary, boring location maps, soil classification per AASHTO Classification System, hammer efficiency, and Metal Pole Standard Foundation Selection Form located at the following website:

https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Geotech%20Forms/2012_METAL%20POLES%20-%20Standard%20Foundation%20Selection.pdf

Incomplete submittals will be returned without review. The reviewer has the right to request additional analysis and copies of the calculations to expedite the approval process.

8.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Metal Poles

Install anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles provision (SP09-R005) located on the Department's 2018 Specifications and Special Provisions website:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Specifications/Pages/2018-Specifications-and-Special-Provisions.aspx>

Erect metal poles only after concrete has attained a minimum allowable compressive strength of 3,000 psi. Connect metal poles to grounding electrodes and bond them to the electrical service grounding electrodes.

For holes in the metal poles used to accommodate cables, install grommets before wiring metal pole. Do not cut or split grommets.

Attach hand hole covers to the metal pole by a sturdy chain or cable. Ensure the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cover to hang clear of the opening when the cover is removed and is strong enough to prevent vandalism. Ensure the chain or cable will not interfere with service to the cables in the metal pole.

Attach cap to metal pole with a sturdy chain or cable. Ensure the chain or cable is long enough to permit the cap to hang clear of the opening when the cap is removed.

Perform repair of damaged galvanizing that complies with the *Standard Specifications*, Article 1076-7 "Repair of Galvanizing."

Install galvanized wire mesh around the perimeter of the base plate to cover the gap between the base plate and top of foundation for debris and pest control.

Install a ¼" thick plate for concrete foundation tag to include: concrete grade, depth, diameter, and reinforcement sizes of the installed foundation.

Install metal poles, hardware, and fittings as shown on the manufacturer's shop drawings. Install metal poles so that when the metal pole is fully loaded it is within 1 degree 40 minutes (1° 40') of vertical. Install metal poles with the manufacturer's recommended "rake." Use threaded leveling nuts to establish rake if required.

B. Drilled Pier Foundations

Construct drilled pier foundations in accordance with the Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles provision.

8.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CCTV Camera Metal Pole will be measured and paid for as the actual number of CCTV camera metal strain poles (without regard to height or load capacity) furnished, installed and accepted.

Soil Test will be measured and paid for as the actual number of soil tests with SPT borings drilled furnished and accepted.

Drilled Pier Foundation will be measured and paid for as the actual volume of concrete poured in cubic yards of drilled pier foundation furnished, installed and accepted. Anchor rod assemblies shall be considered incidental to the drilled pier foundation.

No measurement will be made for foundation designs prepared with metal pole designs, as these will be considered incidental to designing signal support structures.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
CCTV Camera Metal Pole	Each
Soil Test	Each
Drilled Pier Foundation.....	Cubic Yard

9. FIBER-OPTIC CABLE

9.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install single mode fiber-optic (SMFO) communications cable, communications cable identification markers, and all necessary hardware, as shown in the Project Plans.

9.2. MATERIALS

Comply with the following *Standard Specifications*:

Article 1098-10 (A), "SMFO Communications Cable"

Article 1098-10 (B), "Drop Cable"

Article 1098-10 (C), "Communications Cable Identification Markers"

9.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install fiber-optic cables along underground routes as shown in the Project Plans.

Comply with the *Standard Specifications*:

Section 1730-3, "Fiber-optic Cable"

Do not install any communications cables in the same conduit or junction box as power cables.

Store 30 feet of each fiber-optic cable entering a junction box. Store 100 feet of each fiber-optic cable being spliced in an underground splice enclosure located in a junction box. Coil all stored cable in the bottom of the junction box and in a manner that does not violate the maximum bending radius of the cable.

Perform bidirectional OTDR testing on all fibers and submit test result to the Engineer for review and acceptance.

9.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Communications cable (____-fiber) will be measured and paid as the actual linear feet of fiber-optic cable of each fiber count furnished, installed, and accepted. Measurement will be made by calculating the difference in length markings located on outer jacket from start of run to end of run for each run. Terminate all fibers before determining length of cable run.

Drop cable (____-fiber) will be measured and paid as the actual linear feet of fiber-optic cable of each fiber count furnished, installed, and accepted. Measurement will be made by calculating the difference in length markings located on outer jacket from start of run to end of run for each run. Terminate all fibers before determining length of cable run.

No measurement will be made for terminating, splicing and testing fiber-optic cable, communications cable identification markers or fiber-optic cable storage racks, as these will be incidental to the installation of fiber-optic cable.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-30

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Communications Cable (144-fiber)	Linear Foot
Drop Cable (12-fiber)	Linear Foot

10. FIBER-OPTIC SPLICE CENTERS

10.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install fiber-optic interconnect centers, fiber-optic splice enclosures and all necessary hardware.

Refer to manufacturer's recommendations for opening, modifying and re-sealing the existing fiber-optic interconnect center and/or fiber-optic splice enclosures.

10.2. MATERIALS

A. Interconnect Centers

Furnish compact, modular interconnect centers designed to mount inside equipment cabinets. Design and size interconnect centers to accommodate all fibers entering cabinets.

Provide splice trays that hold, protect, and organize optical fibers, and secure fibers inside splice tray. Design and size splice trays to be dielectric, to accommodate all fibers entering splice tray, and to provide sufficient space to prevent microbending of optical fibers. Provide connector panels with LC-type connectors.

Furnish SMFO pigtailed with each interconnect center. Provide connector panels containing pigtailed that are no more than 6 ft in length with a factory assembled PC-LC connector on panel end. Ensure SMFO pigtailed meet the operating characteristics of the SMFO cable with which it is to be coupled.

Furnish SMFO jumpers that are at least 3 ft in length with factory assembled PC-LC connectors on each end. Ensure SMFO jumpers meet the operating characteristics of the SMFO cable with which it is to be coupled.

B. Splice Enclosures

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section for splice enclosures shall be pre-approved on the Department's QPL.

Refer to Article 1098-11 (B) Splice Enclosure of the *Standard Specifications*.

C. Modify Splice Enclosure

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section for splice enclosures shall be pre-approved on the Department's QPL.

Refer to Article 1098-11 (B) Splice Enclosure of the *Standard Specifications*.

10.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Comply with the *Standard Specifications*:

Section 1731-3, "Fiber-optic Splice Centers"

10.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Splice enclosure will be measured and paid as the actual number of fiber-optic splice enclosures furnished, installed, and accepted. No measurement will be made between aerial, underground, manhole, or junction box installation of the fiber-optic splice enclosure.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-32

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Modify splice enclosure will be measured and paid as the actual number of existing splice enclosures modified and accepted.

Interconnect center will be measured and paid as the actual number of fiber-optic interconnect centers of the type specified furnished, installed, and accepted.

No measurement will be made of splice trays, pigtails, jumpers, connector panels, testing and any corrective actions, repairs and replacements needed for exceeding maximum allowable attenuation or other defects, as these will be considered incidental to furnishing and installing fiber-optic splice enclosures and interconnect centers.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Splice Enclosure.....	Each
Modify Splice Enclosure.....	Each
Interconnect Center.....	Each

I-4400BB&C

ITS-33

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

11. DELINEATOR MARKERS

11.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install delineator markers with all necessary hardware.

11.2. MATERIALS

Material, equipment, and hardware furnished under this section shall be pre-approved on the Department’s QPL. Refer to Article 1098-13 (Delineator Markers) of the *Standard Specifications*.

Provide delineator markers with **828-298-0094** as the contact telephone number.

11.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install delineator markers in compliance with all requirements of Section 1733-3 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Comply with the *Standard Specifications*:

Section 1733, “Delineator Markers”

Install delineator markers at new and existing junction boxes as shown in the Project Plans. If necessary, use electronic locating equipment to locate existing junction boxes shown of the Project Plans.

11.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Delineator marker will be measured and paid as the actual number furnished, installed, and accepted.

No measurement will be made for the use of electronic locating equipment to locate existing junction boxes shown on the Project Plans as this is considered incidental to furnishing and installing delineator markers.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Delineator Marker.....	Each

12. ELECTRICAL SERVICE FOR ITS DEVICE

12.1. DESCRIPTION

Install new electrical service equipment for ITS devices as shown in the Project Plans. Comply with the National Electrical Code (NEC), the National Electrical Safety Code (NESC), the *Standard Specifications*, the Project Special Provisions, and all local ordinances. All work involving electrical service shall be coordinated with the appropriate utility company and the Engineer.

12.2. MATERIALS

A. Meter Base/Disconnect Combination Panel

Furnish and install new meter base/disconnect combination panels as shown in the Project Plans. Provide meter base/disconnect combination panels that have a minimum of eight (8) spaces in the disconnect. Furnish a single pole 15A circuit breaker at each CCTV camera location. Furnish a double pole 50A circuit breaker at each DMS location. Furnish each with a minimum of 10,000 RMS symmetrical amperes short circuit current rating in a lockable NEMA 3R enclosure. Ensure meter base/disconnect combination panel is listed as meeting UL Standard UL-67 and marked as being suitable for use as service equipment. Ensure circuit breakers are listed as meeting UL-489. Fabricate enclosure from galvanized steel and electrostatically apply dry powder paint finish, light gray in color, to yield a minimum thickness of 2.4 mils. All exterior surfaces must be powder coated steel. Provide ground bus and neutral bus with a minimum of four terminals and a minimum wire capacity range of number 12 through number 2/0 AWG.

Furnish NEMA Type 3R combinational panels rated 100 Ampere minimum for overhead services and 200 Ampere minimum for underground services that meet the requirements of the local utility. Provide meter base with sockets' ampere rating based on sockets being wired with a minimum of 167°F insulated wire. Furnish 4 terminal, 600 volt, single phase, 3-wire meter bases that comply with the following:

- Line, Load, and Neutral Terminals accept 2/0 AWG and smaller Copper/Aluminum wire,
- With or without horn bypass,
- Made of galvanized steel,
- Listed as meeting UL Standard US-414,
- Overhead or underground service entrance specified.

At overhead service locations, furnish 1.25" watertight hub for threaded rigid conduit with meter base.

At the main service disconnect, furnish and install UL-approved lightning arrestors that meet the following requirements:

- Type of design.....Silicon Oxide Varistor
- Voltage.....120/240 Single Phase, 3 wire
- Maximum current.....100,000 amps
- Maximum energy3,000 joules per pole
- Maximum number of surgesUnlimited

I-4400BB&C**ITS-35****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

- Response time one milliamp test5 nanoseconds
- Response time to clamp 10,000 amps.....10 nanoseconds
- Response time to clamp 50,000 amps.....25 nanoseconds
- Leak current at double the rated voltage.....None
- Ground wireSeparate

B. Equipment Cabinet Disconnect

Provide new equipment cabinet disconnects at the locations shown in the Project Plans. Furnish double pole 50A circuit breakers at DMS locations. Furnish single pole 15A circuit breaker at CCTV locations. Furnish panels that have a minimum of four (4) spaces in the disconnect. Furnish circuit breakers with a minimum of 10,000 RMS symmetrical amperes short circuit current rating in a lockable NEMA 3R enclosure. Ensure circuit breakers are listed as meeting UL-489. Fabricate enclosure from galvanized steel and electrostatically apply dry powder paint finish, light gray in color, to yield a minimum thickness of 2.4 mils. All exterior surfaces must be powder coated steel. Provide ground bus and neutral bus with a minimum of four terminals and a minimum wire capacity range of number 8 through number 1/0 AWG.

C. 3-Wire Copper Service Entrance Conductors

Furnish 3-wire, 3 AWG stranded copper service entrance conductors with THWN rating. Provide conductors with black, red, and white insulation that are intended for power circuits at 600 Volts or less and comply with the following:

- Listed as meeting UL Standard UL-83,
- Meets ASTM B-3 and B-8 or B-787 standards.

D. 4-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors

Furnish 4-wire stranded copper feeder conductors with THWN rating for supplying power to DMS field equipment cabinets. Provide conductors with black, red, white, and green insulation that are intended for power circuits at 600 Volts or less and comply with the following:

- Listed as meeting UL Standard UL-83,
- Meets ASTM B-3 and B-8 or B-787 standards.

See the Project Plans for wire sizes and quantities.

E. 3-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors

Furnish 3-wire stranded copper feeder conductors with THWN rating for supplying power to CCTV camera field equipment cabinets. Provide conductors with black or red, white, and green insulation that are intended for power circuits at 600 Volts or less and comply with the following:

- Listed as meeting UL Standard UL-83,
- Meets ASTM B-3 and B-8 or B-787 standards.

See the Project Plans for wire sizes and quantities.

F. Grounding System

Furnish 5/8"x10' copper clad steel grounding electrodes (ground rods), #4 AWG solid bare copper conductors, and irreversible mechanical crimps for grounding system installations. Comply with the NEC, *Standard Specifications*, these Project Special Provisions, and the Project Plans.

G. Modify Existing Electrical Service Equipment

Modify the existing electrical service by installing an additional 15A, single pole circuit breaker in an existing service disconnect enclosure. Remove the existing service disconnect and install new service disconnect. Furnish circuit breakers with a minimum of 10,000 RMS symmetrical amperes short circuit current rating. Ensure circuit breakers are listed as meeting UL-489. Install conduit between the existing service disconnect enclosure and an adjacent junction box as shown in the Project Plans.

12.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Permanently label cables at all access points using nylon tags labeled with permanent ink. Ensure each cable has a unique identifier. Label cables immediately upon installation. Use component name and labeling scheme approved by the Engineer.

A. Meter Base/Disconnect Combination Panel

Install meter base/disconnect combination panels with lightning arrestors as called for in the Project Plans. At all new CCTV camera and DMS locations, route the feeder conductors from the meter base/disconnect to the CCTV camera and DMS equipment cabinet in conduit. Provide rigid galvanized conduit for above ground and either PVC or HDPE for below ground depending on the installation method required by the Project Plans.

B. Equipment Cabinet Disconnect

Install equipment cabinet disconnects and circuit breakers as called for in the Project Plans. Install THWN stranded copper feeder conductors as shown in Project Plans between the electrical service disconnect and the equipment cabinet disconnect. Route the conductors from the equipment cabinet disconnect to the equipment cabinet in rigid galvanized steel conduit. Bond the equipment cabinet disconnect in accordance with the NEC. Ensure that the grounding system complies with the grounding requirements of these Project Special Provisions, the *Standard Specifications* and the Project Plans.

C. 3-Wire Copper Service Entrance Conductors

At locations shown in the Project Plans, furnish and install 3-wire THWN stranded copper service entrance conductors in 1.25-inch rigid galvanized risers as shown in the Project Plans. Install a waterproof hub on top of the electrical service disconnect for riser entrance/exit. Size the conductors as specified in the Project Plans. Comply with the *Standard Specifications*, the *Standard Drawings* and all applicable electrical codes.

D. 4-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors

At locations shown in the Project Plans, install 4-wire THWN stranded copper feeder conductors to supply 240/120 VAC to the DMS field equipment cabinets. Size the conductors as specified in the Project Plans. Comply with the *Standard Specifications* and *Standard Drawings* and all applicable electrical codes.

E. 3-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors

At locations shown in the Project Plans, install 3-wire THWN stranded copper feeder conductors to supply 120 VAC to the CCTV camera field equipment cabinets. Size the conductors as specified in the Project Plans. Comply with the *Standard Specifications*, the *Standard Drawings* and all applicable electrical codes.

F. Grounding System

Install ground rods as indicated in the Project Plans. Connect the #4 AWG grounding conductor to ground rods using irreversible mechanical crimps. Test the system to ensure a ground resistance of 20-ohms or less is achieved. Drive additional ground rods as necessary or as directed by the Engineer to achieve the proper ground resistance.

Submit to the Engineer a completed Inductive Loop & Grounding Test Form available on the Department's website at:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/safety/Pages/ITS-and-Signals.aspx>

G. Modify Existing Electrical Service Equipment

Coordinate with the Engineer and the utility company to de-energize the existing service temporarily prior to starting the modification.

Measure the existing grounding system for ground resistance. If the ground resistance is greater than 20 ohms, abandon the existing grounding system and install a new grounding system as described in this section. Ensure the existing grounding electrode conductor is removed or disconnected from the system.

Install a new conduit system between the existing service disconnect and the new cabinet or equipment cabinet disconnect as shown in the Project Plans. All above ground conduits, conduit bodies and fittings must be rigid galvanized steel. Underground conduits and fittings can be PVC or HDPE. Transition from rigid galvanized steel to PVC using rigid galvanized steel sweeping elbows or in junction boxes. Install stranded copper feeder conductors from the service disconnect to the new cabinet or equipment cabinet disconnect sized as shown in the Project Plans.

12.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Meter base/disconnect combination panel will be measured and paid as the actual number of complete and functional meter base/disconnect combination panel service locations furnished, installed and accepted. Breakers, lightning arrestors, exposed vertical conduit runs to the cabinet, and any remaining hardware, fittings, and conduit bodies to connect the electrical service to the cabinet will be considered incidental to meter base/disconnect combination panels. All other required feeder conductors will be paid for separately.

Equipment cabinet disconnect will be measured and paid as the actual number of complete and functional equipment cabinet disconnects furnished, installed and accepted. Breakers, exposed vertical conduit runs to the cabinet and any remaining hardware and conduit to connect the equipment cabinet disconnect to the cabinet will be considered incidental to the equipment cabinet subpanel.

3-Wire copper service entrance conductors will be measured and paid as the actual linear feet of 3-wire, #3 gauge stranded copper service entrance conductors with THWN rating furnished, installed and accepted. Payment is for all three conductors. Measurement will be for the actual linear footage

I-4400BB&C**ITS-38****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

of combined conductors after all terminations are complete. No separate payment will be made for each individual conductor.

4-Wire copper feeder conductors will be measured and paid as the actual linear feet of 4-wire THWN stranded copper feeder conductors furnished, installed and accepted. Payment is for all four conductors. Measurement will be for the actual linear footage of combined conductors after all terminations are complete. No separate payment will be made for each individual conductor. No separate payment will be made for different wire sizes. No payment will be made for excess wire in the cabinets.

3-Wire copper feeder conductors will be measured and paid as the actual linear feet of 3-wire THWN stranded copper feeder conductors furnished, installed and accepted. Payment is for all three conductors. Measurement will be for the actual linear footage of combined conductors after all terminations are complete. No separate payment will be made for each individual conductor. No separate payment will be made for different wire sizes. No payment will be made for excess wire in the cabinets.

5/8" X 10' grounding electrode (ground rod) will be measured and paid as the actual number of 5/8" copper clad steel ground rods furnished, installed and accepted. No separate payment will be made for exothermic welding kit as they will be considered incidental to the installation of the ground rod.

#4 solid bare grounding conductor will be measured and paid as the actual linear feet of #4 AWG solid bare copper grounding conductor furnished, installed and accepted. Measurement will be along the approximate centerline from the base of the electrical service disconnect to the last grounding electrode.

Modify electrical service will be measured and paid as the actual number of complete and functional modified existing electrical services furnished, installed and accepted. Breakers, lightning arresters, above ground rigid galvanized steel conduit from the new service disconnect to below ground, and any remaining hardware and conduit bodies to modify the existing service are considered incidental to modifying existing electrical service equipment.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Meter Base/Disconnect Combination Panel	Each
Equipment Cabinet Disconnect.....	Each
3-Wire Copper Service Entrance Conductors.....	Linear Foot
4-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors	Linear Foot
3-Wire Copper Feeder Conductors	Linear Foot
5/8" X 10' Grounding Electrode.....	Each
#4 Solid Bare Grounding Conductor	Linear Foot
Modify Electrical Service	Each

13. CCTV CAMERA ASSEMBLY

13.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install High Definition (1080p) CCTV camera field equipment described in these Project Special Provisions. Ensure that the equipment is fully compatible with all features of the existing VideoPro video management software currently in use by the Department in this Region. Contact the Division 14 Deputy Division Traffic Engineer to confirm the CCTV camera locations prior to beginning construction, for cameras in their respective divisions.

13.2. MATERIALS

A. General

Furnish and install new CCTV camera assemblies at the locations shown on the Project Plans. Each assembly consists of the following:

- One Dome CCTV camera that contains, in a single enclosed unit, the following functionality and accessories:
 - CCTV color digital signal processing camera unit with zoom lens, filter, control circuit, and accessories.
 - Motorized pan, tilt, and zoom.
 - Pole-mount camera attachment assembly.
 - All necessary cable, connectors and incidental hardware to make a complete and operable system.
 - Built-in video encoder capable of H.264/MPEG-4 compression for video-over-IP transmission.
- A lightning arrestor installed in-line between the CCTV camera and the equipment cabinet components,
- A NEMA Type 4 enclosure constructed of aluminum with a clear acrylic dome or approved equal Camera Unit housing.

B. Camera and Lens

1. Camera

Furnish new Complementary Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor (CMOS) sensor-equipped color cameras. Furnish cameras that meet the following minimum requirements:

- Video format: NTSC compatible resolution, user selectable up to a maximum of 1920x1080 (1080p),
- Focus: Automatic with manual override, Electronic Image Stabilization (EIS),
- White balance: Automatic through the lens with manual override,
- Shutter: Electronic shutter with manual control from 1/2 of a second to 1/30,000th of a second,

I-4400BB&C**ITS-40****Buncombe & Henderson Counties**

- Overexposure protection: The camera must have built-in circuitry or a protection device to prevent any damage to the camera when pointed at strong light sources, including the sun,
- Sensitivity: 0.6 lux at 90% scene reflectance
- Input/Output Connection: Single 10BASE-T/100BASE-T compatible outdoor-rated Cat5e cable for video, control, and Power over Ethernet; IP66-rated RJ45 connector,
- Power: High Power over Ethernet (High PoE), 74W max

2. Zoom Lens

Provide each camera with a motorized zoom lens with automatic iris control with manual override and neutral density spot filter. Provide lenses that meet the following optical specifications:

- Automatic focus:.....Automatic with manual override,
- Horizontal viewing angle:.....55.4 degrees at 3.6 mm wide zoom and 2.9 degrees at 82 mm telephoto zoom,
- Focal length:.....3.6 mm to 124 mm, 30X optical zoom, 12X electronic zoom,
- Zoom Speed2.9, 4.2, and 5.8 seconds,
- Lens Aperture.....Minimum of f/1.6,
- Maximum Sensitivity at 30 IRE .07 lux at ½ second color, .2 lux at 1/60 second black and white, .015 lux at ½ second black and white,
- Preset positioning:.....Minimum of 128 presets.

The lens must be capable of both automatic and remote manual control iris and focus override operation. The lens must be equipped for remote control of zoom and focus, including automatic movement to any of the preset zoom and focus positions. Mechanical or electrical means must be provided to protect the motors from overrunning in extreme positions. The operating voltages of the lens must be compatible with the outputs of the camera control.

C. Camera Housing

Furnish new dome style enclosure for the CCTV camera assemblies. Equip each housing with a mounting assembly for attachment to the camera pole. The enclosures must be equipped with a sunshield and a strip heater, and be fabricated from corrosion resistant aluminum and finished in a neutral color of weather resistant enamel. The enclosure must meet or exceed NEMA 4X and IP66 ratings. The viewing area of the enclosure must be constructed of clear acrylic, polycarbonate, or an approved equivalent.

Furnish removable dome enclosures that are secured to the camera housing using stainless steel set screws. Ensure that camera housing assembly is completely sealed with a rubber O-ring gasket to prevent dust and moisture intrusion.

Environmental Operating Conditions: -50°F to 122°F, 10-100% RH (condensing) humidity.

D. Pan and Tilt Unit

Equip each new dome style assembly with a pan and tilt unit. The pan and tilt unit must be integral to the high performance integrated dome system. The pan and tilt unit must be rated for outdoor operation, provide dynamic braking for instantaneous stopping, prevent drift, and have minimum backlash. The pan and tilt units must meet or exceed the following specifications:

- Pan:Continuous 360 Degrees,
- Tilt:.....Up/down 180 degrees minimum,
- Motors:.....Two-phase induction type, continuous duty, instantaneous reversing,
- Preset Positioning:64 PTZ presets per camera.

E. Video Ethernet Encoder

Furnish cameras with a built-in digital video Ethernet encoder to allow video-over-IP transmission. The encoder units must be built into the camera housing and require no additional equipment to transmit encoded video over IP networks.

Encoders must have the following minimum features:

- Network Interface:Ethernet 10/100Base-T (RJ-45 connector)
- Protocols:IPv4, IPv6, HTTP, HTTPS, SSL, QoS, FTP, SMTP, UPnP, SNMP v2c/v3, DNS, NTP, RTSP, RTP, TCP, UDP, IGMP, and DHCP,
- Security:SSL, SSH, 802.1x, HTTPS encryption with password controlled browser interface
- Video Streams:2 simultaneous streams, user configurable
- Compression:H.264 (MPEG-4 Part 10/AVC)
- ResolutionScalable; NTSC-compatible 320x176 to 1920x1080 (HDTV 1080p, 16:9 aspect ratio)
- Frame Rate:1-30 FPS programmable (full motion)
- Bandwidth.....30 kbps – 6 Mbps, configurable depending on resolution
- Edge Storage:SD/SDHC/SDXC slot supporting up to 64GB memory card

F. Ethernet Cable

Provide, at a minimum, Category 5 Enhanced (5e) Ethernet cable that complies with ANSI/TIA-568-B-5 standards for four-pair shielded twisted copper for Ethernet communications. The cable shall meet all of the mechanical requirements of ANSI/ECEA S-

80-576. The Ethernet cable must be rated for medium-power, network-powered broadband communications circuits and must be Type BMU network-powered broadband communications medium-power cable.

Provide 4-pair twisted copper Ethernet cable and connectors rated for an ambient operating temperature range of -30° F to 165° F. The cable shall be shielded, outdoor-rated and have a UV-resistant jacket. The void between the insulated copper pairs and the polyethylene outer jacket shall be injected with a water-resistant flooding compound.

G. Surge Suppression

Protect all equipment with metal oxide varistors connecting each power conductor to ground.

13.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. General

Mount CCTV camera units at a height sufficient to adequately see traffic in all directions and as approved by the Engineer. The maximum attachment height for cameras is 45 feet above ground level.

Mount the CCTV camera units such that a minimum 5 feet of clearance is maintained between the camera and the top of the pole.

Obtain approval of the camera locations and orientation from the Engineer prior to installing the CCTV camera assemblies.

Mount CCTV cameras on the side of poles nearest intended field of view. Avoid occluding the view with the pole.

B. Electrical and Mechanical Requirements

Install Power over Ethernet (PoE) injector in the CCTV equipment cabinet and run an outdoor-rated Cat5e Ethernet cable from the cabinet, up the riser, to the CCTV camera assembly. Take all precautions necessary to ensure the Ethernet cable is not damaged during storage and installation. Do not step on the cable nor run over the cable with vehicles or equipment. Do not pull the cable over or around obstructions or along the ground. Install the cables according to the latest version of the manufacturer's cable installation procedures and the industry-accepted installation standards, codes, and practices, or as directed by the Engineer.

Ground all equipment as called for in the *Standard Specifications*, these Special Provisions, and the Project Plans.

Install surge protectors on all ungrounded conductors entering the CCTV camera enclosure. House the protectors in a small, ventilated weatherproof cabinet attached near the CCTV camera attachment point in a manner approved by the Engineer.

Furnish all tools, equipment, materials, supplies, and hardware necessary to install a fully operational CCTV camera system as depicted in the Project Plans.

C. Existing CCTV Camera

Where shown on plans, remove existing CCTV cameras and ancillary equipment; do not re-use or relocate such equipment. Deliver removed uninstalled CCTV cameras and ancillary equipment to Division 14 Traffic Services, as appropriate.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-43

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

13.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CCTV camera assembly will be measured and paid as the actual number of CCTV camera assemblies furnished, installed, integrated, and accepted. No separate measurement will be made for Ethernet cables, connectors, CCTV camera attachment assemblies, conduit, condulets, risers, grounding equipment, surge protectors, CCTV camera control software, Power over Ethernet (PoE) injectors, or any other equipment or labor required to install the CCTV camera assembly.

No separate measurement or payment will be made for existing CCTV camera equipment removed and delivered to Division Traffic Services.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
CCTV Camera Assembly	Each

14. FIELD EQUIPMENT CABINET

14.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish 336S pole mounted cabinets to house CCTV camera communication equipment. The cabinets must consist of a cabinet housing, 19-inch EIA mounting cage, and power distribution assembly (PDA #3 as described in the CALTRANS TSCES).

The cabinet housing must conform to sections 6.2.2 (Housing Construction), 6.2.3 (Door Latches and Locks), 6.2.4 (Housing Ventilation), and 6.2.5 (Hinges and Door Catches) of the CALTRANS TSCES. Do not equip the cabinet housings with a police panel.

The cabinet cage must conform to section 6.3 of the CALTRANS TSCES.

Terminal blocks on the PDA #3 Assembly have internal wiring for the Model 200 switch pack sockets. Do not use terminal blocks on PDA #3 as power terminals for cabinet devices. Do not furnish cabinet with "Input Panels" described in section 6.4.7.1 of the TSCES. Do furnish cabinet with "Service Panels" as described in section 6.4.7.1 of the TSCES and as depicted on drawing TSCES-9 in the TSCES. Use service panel #2.

Furnish terminal blocks for power for cabinet, CCTV cameras, and communications devices as needed to accommodate the number of devices in the cabinet.

Do not furnish cabinets with C1, C5, or C6 harness, input file, output file, monitor units, model 208 unit, model 430 unit, or switch packs.

Furnish all conduits, shelving, mounting adapters, and other equipment as necessary to route cabling, mount equipment, and terminate conduit in equipment cabinet.

14.2. MATERIALS

A. Shelf Drawer

Provide a pull out, hinged-top drawer, having sliding tracks, with lockout and quick disconnect feature, such as a Vent-Rak Retractable Writing Shelf, #D-4090-13 or equivalent in the equipment cabinet. Furnish a pullout drawer that extends a minimum of 14 inches that is capable of being lifted to gain access to the interior of the drawer. Minimum interior dimensions of the drawer are to be 1 inch high, 13 inches deep and 16 inches wide. Provide drawers capable of supporting a 40-pound device or component when fully extended.

B. Cabinet Light

Furnish two (2) fluorescent lighting fixtures in each cabinet (one front, one back) mounted horizontally inside the top portion of the cabinet. Install 16 watt T-4 cool white lamps in the fluorescent fixtures. Provide a protective diffuser to cover exposed bulbs. The fixtures must be operated by normal power factor UL-listed ballast. Ensure that the fixtures illuminate all terminals, labels, and devices in the cabinet. Conveniently locate the fixtures so as not to interfere with a technician's ability to perform work on any devices or terminals in the cabinet. The lights must be mounted so as to not interfere with the upper door stay. Provide a front and rear door switch to provide power to each fixture when the respective door is open. Wire the fluorescent fixtures to the 15 amp ECB (equipment circuit breaker).

C. Surge Protection for System Equipment

Each cabinet must be provided with devices to protect the CCTV camera and communications equipment from electrical surges and over voltages as described below.

1. Main AC Power Input

Each cabinet must be provided with a hybrid-type, power line surge protection device mounted inside the power distribution assembly. The protector must be installed between the applied line voltage and earth ground. The surge protector must be capable of reducing the effect of lightning transient voltages applied to the AC line. The protector must be mounted inside the Power Distribution Assembly housing facing the rear of the cabinet. The protector must include the following features and functions:

- Maximum AC line voltage: 140 VAC,
- Twenty pulses of peak current, each of which must rise in 8 microseconds and fall in 20 microseconds to ½ the peak: 20000 Amperes,
- The protector must be provided with the following terminals:
 - Main Line (AC Line first stage terminal),
 - Main Neutral (AC Neutral input terminal),
 - Equipment Line Out (AC line second stage output terminal, 19 amps),
 - Equipment Neutral Out (Neutral terminal to protected equipment),
 - GND (Earth connection),
- The Main AC line in and the Equipment Line out terminals must be separated by a 200 Microhenry (minimum) inductor rated to handle 10 AMP AC Service,
- The first stage clamp must be between Main Line and Ground terminals,
- The second stage clamp must be between Equipment Line Out and Equipment Neutral,
- The protector for the first and second stage clamp must have an MOV or similar solid state device rated at 20 KA and must be of a completely solid state design (i.e., no gas discharge tubes allowed),
- The Main Neutral and Equipment Neutral Out must be connected together internally and must have an MOV similar solid state device or gas discharge tube rated at 20 KA between Main Neutral and Ground terminals,
- Peak Clamp Voltage: 350 volts at 20 KA. (Voltage measured between Equipment Line Out and Equipment Neutral Out terminals. Current applied between Main Line and Ground Terminals with Ground and Main Neutral terminals externally tied together),
- Voltage must never exceed 350 volts,
- The Protector must be epoxy-encapsulated in a flame-retardant material,
- Continuous service current: 10 Amps at 120 VAC RMS,

- The Equipment Line Out must provide power to CCTV camera and communications equipment and to the 24V power supply.

2. Ground Bus

Provide a neutral bus that is not connected to the earth ground or the logic ground anywhere within the cabinet. Ensure that the earth ground bus and the neutral ground bus each have ten compression type terminals, each of which can accommodate wires ranging from number 14 through number 4 AWG.

D. Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

Within each CCTV camera field equipment cabinet to be powered by the Duke Energy system furnish and install one rack mounted UPS that meets the following minimum specifications:

Output

- Output Power Capacity480 Watts / 750 VA,
- Max Configurable Power480 Watts / 750 VA,
- Nominal Output Voltage120V,
- Output Voltage Distortion.....Less than 5% at full load,
- Output Frequency (sync to mains).....57 - 63 Hz for 60 Hz nominal,
- Crest Factorup to 5:1,
- Waveform TypeSine wave,
- Output Connections(4) NEMA 5-15R,

Input

- Nominal Input Voltage120V,
- Input Frequency50/60 Hz +/- 3 Hz (auto sensing),
- Input ConnectionsNEMA 5-15P,
- Cord Length6 feet,
- Input voltage range for main operations82 - 144V,
- Input voltage adjustable range for main operation75 -154 V,

Battery Type

Maintenance-free sealed Lead-Acid battery with suspended electrolyte, leak-proof.

- Typical recharge time2 hours,

Communications & Management

- Interface Port(s)DB-9 RS-232, USB,
- Control panel.....LED status display with load and battery bar-graphs,

Surge Protection and Filtering

- Surge energy rating480 Joules,

Environmental

- Operating Environment.....32 - 104° F,
- Operating Relative Humidity0 - 95%,
- Storage Temperature.....5 - 113° F,
- Storage Relative Humidity.....0 - 95%,

Conformance

- Regulatory ApprovalsFCC Part 15 Class A, UL 1778.

14.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

For each field equipment cabinet installation, use stainless steel banding or other method approved by the Engineer to fasten cabinet to metal pole. Install field equipment cabinets so that the height to the middle of the enclosure is 4 feet from ground level. No risers shall enter the top or sides of the equipment cabinet.

Install all conduits, condulets, and attachments to equipment cabinets in a manner that preserves the minimum bending radius of cables and creates water proof connections and seals.

Install a UPS and power all CCTV camera PoE injectors and Ethernet edge switches from the UPS.

Install a level concrete technician pad measuring a minimum 4 inches thick, 24 inches wide and 36 inches long at the front door of the field equipment cabinet as shown on the Typical Details sheet within the Project Plans.

14.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Field equipment cabinet will be measured and paid as the actual number of field equipment cabinets furnished, installed and accepted.

No separate payment will be made for the UPS, software, cabling, connectors, cabinet attachment assemblies, conduit, condulets, risers, grounding equipment, surge protectors, concrete technician pad or any other equipment or labor required to install the field equipment cabinet and integrate the cabinets with the CCTV camera system.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Field Equipment Cabinet (with UPS)	Each

15. DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN (DMS)

15.1. DESCRIPTION

DMSs used on the State Highway System shall be preapproved on the current NCDOT ITS & Signals 2018 Qualified Products List (QPL) by the date of installation. DMSs not preapproved will not be allowed for use on the project. To ensure compatibility with the existing DMS Control Software deployed in the State, furnish NTCIP compliant DMSs that are fully compatible with Daktronics, Inc. Vanguard V4 software (also referred to hereinafter as the “Control Software”).

Furnish and install DMSs compliant with UL standards 48, 50 and 879.

Add and configure the new DMS into the existing DMS database at the Division 13 Traffic Operations Center using the Control Software and computer system. Furnish, install, test, integrate and make fully operational the new DMS at the location shown in the Project Plans.

Contact the Deputy Division Traffic Engineer to confirm all DMS locations prior to beginning construction.

Furnish operating DMS systems consisting of, but not limited to, the following:

- Walk-In Enclosure DMS
 - Full Matrix, 27 pixel high and 90 pixels wide LED Walk-In DMS
 - Pedestal type DMS support structures and mounting hardware
- DMS controllers, Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS), cabinets and accessories with interconnect and power cabling and conduit
- Branch circuit conductors and related equipment
- All other equipment and incidentals required for furnishing, installing, and testing the DMS system and system components

Use only UL listed and approved electronic and electrical components in the DMS system.

15.2. MATERIALS

A. Environmental Requirements

Construct the DMS and DMS controller cabinet so the equipment within is protected against moisture, dust, corrosion, and vandalism.

Design the DMS system to comply with the requirements of Section 2.1 (Environmental and Operating Standards) of NEMA TS 4-2005.

B. Full Matrix LED Dynamic Message Sign

Construct the DMS to display at least three lines of text that, when installed, are clearly visible and legible to a person with 20/20 corrected vision from a distance of 900 feet in advance of the DMS at an eye height of 3.5 feet along the axis.

When displaying three lines, each line must display at least 15 equally spaced and equally sized alphanumeric individual characters. Each character must be at least 18 inches in height and composed from a luminous dot matrix. Provide an entire LED matrix that is a minimum of 27 pixels high and 90 pixels wide.

1. DMS Enclosure

Comply with the requirements of Section 3 (Sign Mechanical Construction) of NEMA TS 4-2005 as it applies to walk-in enclosures. The following requirements complement TS 4-2005.

Construct the DMS with a metal walk-in enclosure excluding the face. Provide an aluminum walking platform inside the enclosure that is at least 28 inches wide. Ensure the width of the walking platform is free of obstructions to a height of 7 feet. Construct the enclosure of welded aluminum type 6061-T6, 5052-H38, 5052-H34, or of an Engineer approved alternate at least 1/8-inch thick. Perform all welding of aluminum and aluminum alloys in accordance with the latest edition of AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code - Aluminum. Continuously weld the seams using Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW).

Provide all exterior and interior DMS enclosure surfaces with natural, mill-finish aluminum. Remove all grind marks and discoloration from the surfaces.

Provide corrosion resistant nuts, bolts, washers, and other mounting and bonding parts and components used on the exterior of the DMS enclosure and ensure they are sealed against water intrusion.

Provide one key lockable, hinged, gasket-sealed inspection door for service and maintenance along each side of the enclosure. Install one appropriately sized fire extinguisher within 12 inches of each maintenance door. Equip the DMS enclosure with internal fluorescent lighting controlled by timers installed close to each inspection door. Make certain no light emitted from the fluorescent tubes or any other light source inside the enclosure not comprising the display is leaked to the outside of the enclosure. Equip the door with a door-hold-open device. Install GFCI duplex utility receptacles every 6 feet along the width of the DMS in convenient locations for powered service tools.

Do not place a manufacturer name, logo, or other information on the front face of the DMS or shield visible to the motorist.

Provide power supply monitoring circuitry to detect power failure in the DMS and to automatically report this fault to the Control Software. This requirement is in addition to reporting power failure at the controller cabinet.

Do not paint the stainless steel bolts on the Z-bar assemblies used for mounting the enclosure.

2. DMS Interior Environment Control

Design the local field controller to monitor and control the interior DMS environment. Design environmental control to maintain the internal DMS temperature within +/- 10° F of the outdoor ambient temperature. Provide the DMS environmental control system with four primary subsystems as follows:

Internal Temperature Sensors – Provide the DMS with two internally mounted temperature sensors which are equipped with external thermocouples and which the field controller continuously monitors. Design the field controller to use this temperature information to determine when to activate and deactivate the environmental control systems described herein. Locate sensors on opposite ends of the upper 1/3 of the LED display matrix with their external thermocouples attached to and making contact with an LED pixel circuit board. Design the thermocouple and LED board to be easily

detachable, in the event that one of the units requires removal and replacement. Provide sensors capable of measuring temperatures from -40° F to $+185^{\circ}$ F. Design the field controller to automatically shut down the LED display whenever one or both sensors indicates that LED board temperature has exceeded $+140^{\circ}$ F, and to automatically restart the LED display whenever the temperature falls below $+130^{\circ}$ F. Design both shutdown and re-start temperature thresholds to be user-programmable. Design the field controller to report sensor temperatures and DMS shutdown/re-start events to the DMS Control Software.

Housing Cooling System – Provide the DMS housing with a cooling system that circulates outside air into the DMS housing whenever the LED board temperature exceeds a user-programmable threshold. Provide this system with enough ventilation fans to exchange the internal DMS housing air volume at a minimum rate of 2 times per minute. Provide steel ball-bearing type fans. Mount fans in a line across the upper rear wall of the DMS housing to direct air out of the cabinet. Provide one filtered air intake port for each exhaust fan. Locate intake ports in a line across the lower rear wall of the DMS housing. Provide intake ports with a removable filter that will remove airborne particles measuring 500 microns in diameter and larger. Provide a filter that is of a size and style that is commercially readily available. Program the field controller to activate the DMS housing cooling system whenever the LED board temperature exceeds $+90^{\circ}$ F and to turn the cooling system off whenever LED board temperature falls below $+85^{\circ}$ F. On the DMS housing rear exterior wall, cover all air intake and exhaust ports on their top, front, and sides by an aluminum shroud fabricated from 0.090-inch aluminum sheeting. Taper the shrouds at the top. Securely fasten shrouds to the DMS housing, and provide gaskets at the interface to prevent water from entering the DMS. Design all air filters and fans to be removable from inside the DMS housing. Provide the DMS housing cooling system with an adjustable timer that will turn fans off after the set time has expired. Provide a timer that is adjustable to at least 4 hours, and locate it just inside the DMS housing door, within easy reach of a maintenance technician standing outside the DMS doorway.

LED Display Cooling System – Provide the DMS with an LED display cooling system which directs air across the LED display modules whenever LED board temperature exceeds a user-programmable threshold. Direct fan-forced air vertically across the backside of the entire LED display matrix using multiple ball-bearing fans. Program the field controller to activate the LED cooling fan system whenever LED board temperature exceeds $+90^{\circ}$ F and to deactivate the system whenever LED board temperature falls to $+85^{\circ}$ F. Locate cooling fans so as not to hinder removal of LED display modules and driver boards.

Front Face Panel Defog/Defrost System – Provide the DMS with a defog/defrost system which circulates warm, fan-forced air across the inside of the polycarbonate front face whenever LED board temperature falls below a user-programmable threshold. Provide multiple steel ball-bearing fans that provide uniform airflow across the face panel. Program the field controller to activate the defog/defrost system whenever LED board temperature falls below $+40^{\circ}$ F and to deactivate the defog/defrost system whenever LED board temperature exceeds $+106^{\circ}$ F. Mount a 100-watt pencil-style heating element in front of each defog/defrost fan to warm the air directed across the DMS face. Design heating elements to be on only when the defog/defrost fans are on.

Install additional fans and/or heaters as needed to maintain the temperature inside the DMS enclosure within the operating temperature range of the equipment within the DMS enclosure as recommended by the equipment manufacturer(s).

3. Front Panel

Protect the DMS face with contiguous, weather-tight, removable panels. These panels must be a polycarbonate material that is ultraviolet protected, have an antireflection coating, and are a minimum of 1/8- inch thick.

Furnish polycarbonate panels with the following characteristics:

- Tensile Strength, Ultimate: 10,000 PSI
- Tensile Strength, Yield: 9,300 PSI
- Tensile Strain at Break: 125%
- Tensile Modulus: 330,000 PSI
- Flexural Modulus: 330,000 PSI
- Impact Strength, Izod (1/8", notched): 17 ft-lbs/inch of notch
- Rockwell Hardness: M75, R118
- Heat Deflection Temperature Under Load: 264 PSI at 270F and 66 PSI at 288F
- Coefficient of Thermal Expansion: 3.9×10^{-5} in/in/F
- Specific Heat: 0.30 BTU/lb/F
- Initial Light Transmittance: 85% minimum
- Change in Light Transmittance, 3 years exposure in a Southern latitude: 3%
- Change in Yellowness Index, 3 years exposure in a Southern latitude: less than 5%

For substitutes, submit one 12" x 12" sample of the proposed material together with a description of the material attributes to the Engineer for review and approval. Install a .09" aluminum mask on the front of the panel (facing the motorists) that contains a circular opening for each LED pixel. Prime and coat the front side of the aluminum mask, which faces the viewing motorists, with automotive-grade flat black acrylic enamel paint or an approved equivalent. Guarantee all painted surfaces provide a minimum outdoor service life of 20 years.

Design the panels so they will not warp nor reduce the legibility of the characters. Differential expansion of the DMS housing and the front panel must not cause damage to any DMS component or allow openings for moisture or dust. Glare from sunlight, roadway lighting, commercial lighting, or vehicle headlights must not reduce the legibility or visibility of the DMS. Install the panels so that a maintenance person can easily remove or open them for cleaning.

4. Display Modules

Manufacture each display module with a standard number of pixels, not to exceed an array of 9 x 5, which can be easily removed. Assemble the modules onto the DMS assemblies

contiguously to form a continuous matrix to display the required number of lines, characters, and character height.

Design display modules that are interchangeable and replaceable without using special tools. Provide plug-in type power and communication cables to connect to a display module.

Construct each display module as a rectangular array of 5 horizontal pixels by 7 to 9 vertical pixels. Provide the module with an equal vertical and horizontal pitch between pixels, and columns that are perpendicular to the rows (i.e., no slant). Design each module to display:

- All upper and lower case letters.
- All punctuation marks.
- All numerals 0 to 9.
- Special user-created characters.

Display upper-case letters and numerals over the complete height of the module. Optimize the LED grouping and mounting angle within a pixel for maximum readability.

Furnish two (2) spare display modules per each DMS installed for emergency restoration.

5. Discrete LEDs

Provide discrete LEDs with a nominal viewing cone of **30 degrees** with a half-power angle of 15 degrees measured from the longitudinal axis of the LED. Make certain, the viewing cone tolerances are as specified in the LED manufacturer's product specifications and do not exceed +/- 3 degrees half-power viewing angle of 30 degrees.

Provide LEDs that are untinted, non-diffused, high output solid state lamps utilizing indium gallium aluminum phosphide (InGaAlP) technology. No substitutions will be allowed. Provide T1 ¾, 0.2 inch size LEDs that emit a true amber color at a wavelength of 590 ± 5 nm.

Provide LEDs with a MTBF (Mean Time Before Failure) of at least 100,000 hours of permanent use at an operating point of 140° F or below at a specific forward current of 20mA. Discrete LED failure is defined as the point at which the LED's luminous intensity has degraded to 50% or less of its original level.

Obtain the LEDs used in the display from a single LED manufacturer that have a single part number. Obtain them from batches sorted for luminous output, where the highest luminosity LED is not more than fifty percent more luminous than the lowest luminosity LED when the LEDs are driven at the same forward current. Do not use more than two successive and overlapping batches in the LED display. Document the procedure to be used to comply with this requirement as part of the material submittal.

Individually mount the LEDs on circuit boards that are at least 1/16" thick FR-4 fiberglass, flat black printed circuit board in a manner that promotes cooling. Protect all exposed metal on both sides of the LED pixel board (except the power connector) from water and humidity exposure by a thorough application of acrylic conformal coating. Design the boards so bench level repairs to individual pixels, including discrete LED replacement and conformal coating repair is possible.

Operate the LED display at a low internal DC voltage not to exceed 24 Volts.

Design the LED display operating range to be -20° F to $+140^{\circ}$ F at 95% relative humidity, non-condensing.

Supply the LED manufacturer's technical specification sheet with the material submittals.

6. LED Power Supplies

Power the LED Display by means of multiple regulated switching DC power supplies that operate from 120 volts AC input power and have an output of 48 volts DC or less. Wire the supplies in a redundant parallel configuration that uses multiple power supplies per display. Provide the supplies with current sharing capability that allows equal amounts of current to their portion of the LED display. Provide power supplies rated such that if one supply fails the remaining supplies will be able to operate their portion of the display under full load conditions (i.e. all pixels on at maximum brightness) and at a temperature of 140° F.

Provide power supplies to operate within a minimum input voltage range of $+90$ to $+135$ volts AC and within a temperature range of -22° F to 140° F. Power supply output at 140° F must not deteriorate to less than 65% of its specified output at 70° F. Provide power supplies that are overload protected by means of circuit breakers, that have an efficiency rating of at least 75%, a power factor rating of at least .95, and are UL listed. Provide all power supplies from the same manufacturer and with the same model number. Design the power driver circuitry to minimize power consumption.

Design the field controller to monitor the operational status (normal or failed) of each individual power supply and be able to display this information on the Client Computer screen.

7. LED Pixels

A pixel is defined as the smallest programmable portion of a display module that consists of a cluster of closely spaced discrete LEDs. Design each pixel to be a maximum of 2 inches in diameter.

Construct the pixels with two strings of LEDs. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to determine the number of LEDs in each string to produce the candela requirement as stated herein.

Ensure each pixel produces a luminous intensity of 40 Cd when driven with an LED drive current of 20 mA per string.

Power the LEDs in each pixel in strings. Use a redundant design so that the failure of an LED in one string does not affect the operation of any other string within the pixel. Provide the sign controller with the ability to detect the failure of any LED string and identify which LED string has failed. Submit a complete schematic of the LED power and driver circuits with the material submittals.

8. Character Display

Design display modules to be easily removable without the use of tools. Position cooling fans so they do not prevent removal of an LED pixel board or driver board.

Use continuous current to drive the LEDs at the maximum brightness level. Design the light levels to be adjustable for each DMS / controller so the Engineer may set levels to match the luminance requirements at each installation site.

Design the controller to automatically detect failed LED strings or drivers and initiate a report of the event to the Control Software. Design the controller to be able to read the internal temperature of the DMS enclosure and the ambient temperature outside the DMS enclosure and report these to the Control Software.

9. Display Capabilities

Design the DMS with at least the following message displays:

- Static display
- Flashing display with Dynamic flash rates
- At least two alternating Static and / or Flashing sequences (multi-page messages)

10. DMS Mini Controller

Furnish and install a mini controller inside the DMS that is interconnected with the main controller using a fiber-optic cable, CAT-5 cable, or an approved alternate. The mini controller will enable a technician to perform all functions available from the main controller. Provide the mini controller with an LCD/keypad interface. Size the LCD display screen to allow preview of an entire one-page message on one screen. Provide a 4 X 4 keypad.

Alternatively, install an EIA/TIA-232E port inside the DMS enclosure to enable a maintenance technician to communicate with the DMS main controller and obtain access to and perform all functions of the main controller using a laptop computer.

C. DMS Enclosure Structure Mounting

Mount the DMS enclosure and interconnect system securely to the supporting structures. Design the DMS enclosure supports and structure to allow full access to the DMS enclosure inspection door.

Furnish and install U-bolt connections of hanger beams to overhead assembly truss chords with a double nut at each end of the U-bolt. Bring the double nuts tight against each other by the use of two wrenches.

Submit plans for the DMS enclosure, structure, mounting description and calculations to the Engineer for approval. Have such calculations and drawings approved by a Professional Engineer registered in the state of North Carolina, and bear his signature, seal, and date of acceptance.

Provide removable lifting eyes or the equivalent on the DMS enclosure rated for its total weight to facilitate handling and mounting the DMS enclosure.

Design the DMS structure to conform to the applicable requirements of the *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires*, and the section titled "DMS Assemblies" of these Project Special Provisions.

D. DMS / DMS Controller Interconnect

Furnish and install all necessary cabling, conduit, and terminal blocks to connect the DMS and the DMS controller. Use approved manufacturer's specifications and the Project Plans for cable and conduit types and sizes. Use fiber-optic cable to interconnect sign and controller. Install fiber-optic interconnect centers in the sign enclosure and cabinet to securely install and terminate the fiber-optic cable. Submit material submittal cut sheets for the interconnect center.

E. DMS Controller and DMS Cabinet

Furnish and install one DMS controller with accessories per DMS in a protective cabinet. Mount the controller cabinet on the DMS support structure. Install cabinet so that the height from the ground to the middle of the cabinet is 4 feet. Ensure a minimum of 3 feet level working surface under each cabinet that provides maintenance technicians with a safe working environment.

Provide the DMS controller as a software-oriented microprocessor and with resident software stored in non-volatile memory. The Control Software, controller and communications must comply with the NTCIP Standards identified in these Project Special Provisions. Provide sufficient non-volatile memory to allow storage of at least 500 multi-page messages and a test pattern program.

Furnish the controller cabinet with, but not limited to, the following:

- Power supply and distribution assemblies
- Power line filtering hybrid surge protectors
- Radio Interference Suppressor
- Communications surge protection devices
- Industrial-Grade UPS system and local disconnect
- Microprocessor-based controller
- Display driver and control system (unless integral to the DMS)
- Industrial-grade telephone line surge and lightning protector
- Serial interface port for local laptop computer
- Local user interface
- Interior lighting and duplex receptacle
- Adjustable shelves as required for components
- Temperature control system
- All interconnect harnesses, connectors, and terminal blocks
- All necessary installation and mounting hardware

Furnish the DMS controller and associated equipment completely housed in a NEMA 3R cabinet made from 5052-H32 sheet aluminum at least 1/8" thick. Use natural aluminum cabinets. Perform all welding of aluminum and aluminum alloys in accordance with the latest edition of AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code - Aluminum. Continuously weld the seams using Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW).

Slant the cabinet roof away from the front of the cabinet to prevent water from collecting on it.

Do not place a manufacturer name, logo, or other information on the faces of the controller cabinet visible to the motorist.

Provide cabinets capable of housing the components and sized to fit space requirement. Design the cabinet layout for ease of maintenance and operation, with all components easily accessible. Submit a cabinet layout plan for approval by the Engineer.

Locate louvered vents with filters in the cabinet to direct airflow over the controller and auxiliary equipment, and in a manner that prevents rain from entering the cabinet. Fit the inside of the cabinet, directly behind the vents, with a replaceable, standard-size, commercially available air filter of sufficient size to cover the entire vented area.

Provide a torsionally rigid door with a continuous stainless steel hinge on the side that permits complete access to the cabinet interior. Provide a gasket as a permanent and weather resistant seal at the cabinet door and at the edges of the fan / exhaust openings. Use a non-absorbent gasket material that will maintain its resiliency after long-term exposure to the outdoor environment. Construct the doors so that they fit firmly and evenly against the gasket material when closed. Provide the cabinet door with louvered vents and air filters near the bottom as described in the paragraph above.

The cabinet shall contain a full-height standard EIA 19-inch rack. The rack shall be secured within the cabinet by mounts at the top and bottom.

The rack shall contain a minimum of one (1) pullout drawer. The drawer shall be suitable for storing manuals and small tools, such as screwdrivers. The drawer shall be able to latch in the out position to function as a laptop/utility shelf.

Provide a convenient location on the inside of the door to store the cabinet wiring diagrams and other related cabinet drawings. Provide a Corbin #2 main door lock made of non-ferrous or stainless steel material. Key all locks on the project alike, and provide 10 keys to the Engineer. In addition, design the handle to permit pad-locking.

Provide the interior of the cabinet with ample space for housing the controller and all associated equipment and wiring; use no more than 75% of the useable space in the cabinet. Provide ample space in the bottom of the cabinet for the entrance and exit of all power, communications, and grounding conductors and conduit.

Arrange the equipment so as to permit easy installation of the cabling through the conduit so that they will not interfere with the operation, inspection, or maintenance of the unit. Provide adjustable metal shelves, brackets, or other support for the controller unit and auxiliary equipment. Leave a 3 inch minimum clearance from the bottom of the cabinet to all equipment, terminals, and bus bars.

Provide power supply monitoring circuitry to detect power failure and to automatically report the occurrence to the Control Software.

Install two 15-watt fluorescent light strips with shields, one in the top of the cabinet and the other under the bottom shelf. Design both lights to automatically turn on when the cabinet door is opened and turn off when the door closes.

Mount and wire a 120V ($\pm 10\%$) GFCI duplex receptacle of the 3-wire grounding type in the cabinet in a location that presents no electrical hazard when used by service personnel for the operation of power tools and work lights.

No cabinet resident equipment may utilize the GFCI receptacle. Furnish one spare non-GFCI receptacle for future equipment.

Mount a bug-proof and weatherproof thermostatically controlled fan and safety shield in the top of the cabinet. Size the fan to provide at least for two air exchanges per minute. Fuse the fan at 125% of the capacity of the motor. The magnetic field of the fan motor must not affect the performance of the control equipment. Use a fan thermostat that is manually adjustable to turn on between 80°F and

160°F with a differential of not more than 10°F between automatic turn-on and turn-off. Mount it in an easily accessible location, but not within 6 inches of the fan.

Install additional fans and/or heaters as needed to maintain the temperature inside the cabinet within the operating temperature range of the equipment within the cabinet as recommended by equipment manufacturer(s).

1. Wiring

The requirements stated herein apply wherever electrical wiring is needed for any DMS system assemblies and subassemblies such as controller cabinet, DMS enclosure, electrical panel boards and etc.

Neatly arrange and secure the wiring inside the cabinet. Where cable wires are clamped to the walls of the control cabinet, provide clamps made of nylon, metal, plastic with rubber or neoprene protectors, or similar. Lace and jacket all harnesses, or tie them with nylon tie wraps spaced at 6 inches maximum to prevent separation of the individual conductors.

Individually and uniquely label all conductors. Ensure all conductor labels are clearly visible without moving the conductor. Connect all terminal conductors to the terminal strip in right angles. Remove excess conductor before termination of the conductor. Mold the conductor in such a fashion as to retain its relative position to the terminal strip if removed from the strip. Do not run a conductor across a work surface with the exception of connecting to that work surface. No conductor bundles can be support by fasteners that support work surfaces. Install all connectors, devices and conductors in accordance to manufactures guidelines. Comply with the latest NEC guideline in effect during installation. No conductor or conductor bundle may hang loose or create a snag hazard. Protect all conductors from damage. Ensure all solder joints are completed using industry accepted practices and will not fail due to vibration or movement. Protect lamps and control boards from damage.

No splicing will be allowed for feeder conductors and communication cables from the equipment cabinet to the DMS enclosure.

Insulate all conductors and live terminals so they are not hazardous to maintenance personnel.

Route and bundle all wiring containing line voltage AC and / or shield it from all low voltage control circuits. Install safety covers to prevent accidental contact with all live AC terminals located inside the cabinet.

Use industry standard, keyed-type connectors with a retaining feature for connections to the controller.

Label all equipment and equipment controls clearly.

Supply each cabinet with one complete set of wiring diagrams that identify the color-coding or wire tagging used in all connections. Furnish a water-resistant packet adequate for storing wiring diagrams, operating instructions, and maintenance manuals with each cabinet.

2. Power Supply and Circuit Protection

Design the DMS and controller for use on a system with a line voltage of 120V + 10% at a frequency of 60 Hz + 3 Hz. Under normal operation, do not allow the voltage drop between no load and full load of the DMS and its controller to exceed 3% of the nominal voltage.

Blackout, brownout, line noise, chronic over-voltage, sag, spike, surge, and transient effects are considered typical AC voltage defects. Protect the DMS system equipment so that these defects do not damage the DMS equipment or interrupt their operation. Equip all cabinets with devices to protect the equipment in the cabinet from damage due to lightning and external circuit power and current surges.

3. Circuit Breakers

Protect the DMS controller, accessories, and cabinet utilities with thermal magnetic circuit breakers. Provide the controller cabinet with a main circuit breaker sized according to the NEC. Use appropriately sized branch circuit breakers to protect the controller and accessories and for servicing DMS equipment and cabinet utilities.

4. Surge Suppressor

Install and clearly label filtering hybrid power line surge protectors on the load side of the branch circuit breakers in a manner that permits easy servicing. Ground and electrically bond the surge protector to the cabinet within 2 inches.

Provide power line surge protector that meets the following requirements:

Peak surge current occurrences	20 minimum
Peak surge current for an 8 x 20 microsecond waveshape	50,000 amperes
Energy Absorption	> 500 Joules
Clamp voltage	240 volts
Response time	<1 nanosecond
Minimum current for filtered output	15 amperes for 120VAC*
Temperature range	-40°F to +158°F

*Capable of handling the continuous current to the equipment

5. Radio Interference Suppressor

Provide each controller cabinet with sufficient electrical and electronic noise suppression to enable all equipment in it to function properly. Provide one or more radio interference suppressors (RIS) connected between the stages of the power line surge suppressor that minimize interference generated in the cabinet in both the broadcast and the aircraft frequencies. Each RIS must provide a minimum attenuation of 50 decibels over a frequency range of 200 KHz to 75 MHz. Clearly label the suppressor(s) and size them at least at the rated current of the main circuit breaker but not less than 50 amperes.

Provide RIS that are hermetically sealed in a substantial metal case which is filled with a suitable insulating compound and have nickel-plated 10/24 brass stud terminals of sufficient external length to provide space to connect #8 AWG wires. Mount them so that the studs cannot be turned in the case. Properly insulate ungrounded terminals from each other, and maintain a surface linkage distance of not less than ¼” between any exposed current conductor and any other metallic parts. The terminals must have an insulation factor of 100-200 MΩ, dependent on external circuit conditions. Use RIS designed for 120 VAC + 10%, 60Hz, and which meet the standards of UL and the Radio Manufacturers Association.

6. Communications Surge Protector

Equip the cabinet with properly labeled hybrid data line surge protectors that meet the following general requirements:

Surge current occurrences at 2000 ampere, 8 x 20 microsecond waveform	> 80
Surge current occurrences at 400 ampere, 10x700 microsecond waveform	> 80
Peak surge current for 8 x 20 microsecond waveform	10,000 A (2500 A/line)
Peak surge current for 10x700 microsecond waveform	500 A/line
Response time	< 1 nanosecond
Series resistance	< 15 Ω
Average capacitance	1500 pF
Temperature range	-10°F to 150°F
Clamp Voltage	As required to match equipment in application

7. Lightning Arrester

Protect the system with an UL-approved lightning arrester installed at the main service disconnect that meets the following requirements:

Type of design	Silicon Oxide Varistor
Voltage	120/240 Single phase, 3 wires
Maximum current	100,000 amps
Maximum energy	3000 joules per pole
Maximum number of surges	Unlimited
Response time one milliamp test	5 nanoseconds
Response time to clamp 10,000 amps	10 nanoseconds
Response time to clamp 50,000 amps	25 nanoseconds
Leak current at double the rated voltage	None
Ground Wire	Separate

8. Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

Provide the cabinet with an industrial grade power conditioning UPS unit to supply continuous power to operate the equipment connected to it if the primary power fails. The UPS must detect a power failure and provide backup power within 20 milliseconds. Transition to the UPS source from primary power must not cause loss of data or damage to the equipment being supplied with backup power. Provide an UPS with at least three outlets for supplying

conditioned AC voltage to the DMS controller. Provide a unit to meet the following requirements:

- Input Voltage Range: 120VAC +12%, -25%
- Power Rating: 1000 VA, 700 Watts
- Input Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz
- Input Current: 7.2A
- Output Voltage: 120VAC +/- 3%
- Output Frequency: 50/60 +/-1 Hz
- Output Current: 8.3A
- Output Crest Factor Ration: @50% Load Up to 4.8:1
@75% Load Up to 3.2:1
@100% Load Up to 2.4:1
- Output THD: 3% Max. (Linear)
5% Max. (Non-Linear)
- Output Overload: 110% for 10 min; 200% for 0.05 sec.
- Output Dynamic Response: +/- 4% for 100% Step Load Change
0.5 ms Recovery Time.
- Output Efficiency @ 100% Load:90% (Normal Mode)
- Operating Temperature: -40 oF to +165 oF
- Humidity: 0% to 95% Non-condensing
- Remote Monitoring Interface: RS-232
- Protection: Input/Output Short Circuit
Input/Output Overload
Excessive Battery Discharge
- Specifications: UL1778, FCC Class A, IEEE 587

Provide the UPS unit capable of supplying 30 minutes of continuous backup power to the equipment connected to it when the equipment is operating at full load.

9. Controller Communications Interface

Provide the controller with the following interface ports:

- An EIA/TIA-232E port for remote communication using NTCIP
- An 10/100 Ethernet port for remote communication using NTCIP
- An EIA/TIA-232E port for onsite access using a laptop

- An EIA/TIA-232E auxiliary port for communication with a field device such as a UPS
- Fiber-optic ports for communication with the sign
- RJ45 ports for communication with the sign using CAT-5 cable
- RJ45 ports for communication with mini-controller located inside the sign enclosure

10. Controller Local User Interface

Provide the controller with a Local User Interface (LUI) for at least the following functions:

- On / Off Switch: controls power to the controller.
- Control Mode Switch: for setting the controller operation mode to either remote or local mode.
- LCD Display and Keypad: Allow user to navigate through the controller menu for configuration (display, communications parameter, etc) running diagnostics, viewing peripherals status, message creation, message preview, message activation, and etc. Furnish a LCD display with a minimum size of 240x64 dots with LED back light.

11. Controller Address

Assign each DMS controller a unique address. Preface all commands from the Control Software with a particular DMS controller address. The DMS controller compares its address with the address transmitted; if the addresses match, then the controller processes the accompanying data.

12. Controller Functions

Design the DMS controller to continuously control and monitor the DMS independent of the Control Software. Design the controller to display a message on the sign sent by the Control Software, a message stored in the sign controller memory, or a message created on-site by an operator using the controller keypad.

Provide the DMS controller with a watchdog timer to detect controller failures and to reset the microprocessor, and with a battery backed-up clock to maintain an accurate time and date reference. Set the clock through an external command from the Control Software or the Local User Interface.

13. DMS Controller Memory

Furnish each DMS controller with non-volatile memory. Use the non-volatile memory to store and reprogram at least one test pattern sequence and 500 messages containing a minimum of two pages of 45 characters per page. The Control Software can upload messages into and download messages from each controller's non-volatile memory remotely.

Messages uploaded and stored in the controller's non-volatile memory may be erased and edited using the Control Software and the controller. New messages may be uploaded to and stored in the controller's non-volatile memory using the Control Software and the controller.

F. Photo-Electric Sensors

Install three photoelectric sensors with ½ inch minimum diameter photosensitive lens inside the DMS enclosure. Use sensors that will operate normally despite continual exposure to direct sunlight. Place the sensors so they are accessible and field adjustable. Point one sensor north or bottom of the sign. Place the other two, one on the back wall and one on the front wall of the sign enclosure. Alternate designs maybe accepted, provided the sensor assemblies are accessible and serviceable from inside the sign enclosure.

Provide controls so that the Engineer can field adjust the following:

- The light level emitted by the pixels elements in each Light Level Mode.
- The ambient light level at which each Light Level Mode is activated.

G. Equipment List

Provide a general description of all equipment and all information necessary to describe the basic use or function of the major system components. Include a general "block diagram" presentation. Include tabular charts listing auxiliary equipment, if any is required. Include the nomenclature, physical and electrical characteristics, and functions of the auxiliary equipment unless such information is contained in an associated manual; in this case include a reference to the location of the information. Include an itemized list of equipment costs.

Include a table itemizing the estimated average and maximum power consumption for each major piece of equipment.

H. Physical Description

Provide a detailed physical description of size, weight, center of gravity, special mounting requirements, electrical connections, and all other pertinent information necessary for proper installation and operation of the equipment.

I. Parts List

Provide a parts list that contains all information needed to describe the characteristics of the individual parts, as required for identification. Include a list of all equipment within a group and a list of all assemblies, sub-assemblies, and replacement parts of all units. Arrange this data in a table, in alpha-numerical order of the schematic reference symbols, which gives the associated description, manufacturer's name, and part number, as well as alternate manufacturers and part numbers. Provide a table of contents or other appropriate grouping to identify major components, assemblies, etc.

J. Character Set Submittal

Submit an engineering drawing of the DMS character set including 26 upper case and lower case letters, 10 numerals, an asterisk (*), a dash, a plus sign (+), a designated lane diamond, a slash, an ampersand, and arrows at 0, 45, 90, 135, 180, 225, 270, and 315 degrees.

K. Wiring Diagrams

Provide a wiring diagram for each DMS and each controller cabinet, as well as interconnection wiring diagrams for the system as a whole.

Provide complete and detailed schematic diagrams to component level for all DMS assemblies and subassemblies such as driver boards, control boards, DMS controller, power supplies, and etc. Ensure

that each schematic enables an electronics technician to successfully identify any component on a board or assemblies and trace its incoming and outgoing signals.

L. Routine of Operation

Describe the operational routine, from necessary preparations for placing the equipment into operation to securing the equipment after operation. Show appropriate illustrations with the sequence of operations presented in tabular form wherever applicable. Include in this section a total list of the test instruments, aids and tools required to perform necessary measurements and measurement techniques for each component, as well as set-up, test, and calibration procedures.

M. Maintenance Procedures

Specify the recommended preventative maintenance procedures and checks at pre-operation, monthly, quarterly, semi-annual, annual, and "as required" periods to assure equipment operates reliably. List specifications (including tolerances) for all electrical, mechanical, and other applicable measurements and / or adjustments.

N. Repair Procedures

Include in this section all data and step-by-step procedures necessary to isolate and repair failures or malfunctions, assuming the maintenance technicians are capable of analytical reasoning using the information provided in the section titled "Wiring Diagrams and Theory of Operation."

Describe accuracy, limits, and tolerances for all electrical, physical, or other applicable measurements. Include instructions for disassemblies, overhaul, and re-assemblies, with shop specifications and performance requirements.

Give detailed instructions only where failure to follow special procedures would result in damage to equipment, improper operation, danger to operating or maintenance personnel, etc. Include such instructions and specifications only for maintenance that specialized technicians and engineers in a modern electromechanical shop would perform. Describe special test set-up, component fabrication, and the use of special tools, jigs, and test equipment.

O. Field Trial

At the request of the Engineer, supply a three character demonstration module with characters of the size and type specified for the project, an appropriate control device and power supply to allow character display within 30 working days of the request. Perform a field trial on this module at a time and location selected by the Engineer.

This trial will allow the Engineer or his selected representatives to test the readability of the DMS at the maximum distance required for specified character size. Test the module with the sun directly above the DMS, and near the horizon in front of and behind the DMS (washout and back-lit conditions).

15.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Description

This article establishes practices and procedures and gives minimum standards and requirements for the installation of Dynamic Message Sign systems, auxiliary equipment and the construction of related structures.

Provide electrical equipment described in this specification that conforms to the standards of NEMA, UL, or Electronic Industries Association (EIA), wherever applicable. Provide connections between controllers and electric utilities that conform to NEC standards. Express wire sizes according to the American Wire Gauge (AWG).

Provide stainless steel screws, nuts, and locking washers in all external locations. Do not use self-tapping screws unless specifically approved by the Engineer. Use parts made of corrosion-resistant materials, such as plastic, stainless steel, brass, or aluminum. Use construction materials that resist fungus growth and moisture deterioration. Separate dissimilar metals by an inert dielectric material.

B. Layout

The Engineer will establish the actual location of each Dynamic Message Sign assemblies. It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure proper elevation, offset, and orientation of all DMS assemblies. The location of service poles as well as conduit lengths shown in the Project Plans, are approximate based on available project data. Make actual field measurements to place conduit and equipment at the required location.

C. Construction Submittal

When the work is complete, submit "as built" plans, inventory sheets, and any other data required by the Engineer to show the details of actual construction and installation and any modifications made during installation.

The "as built" plans will show: the DMS, controller, and service pole locations; DMS enclosure and controller cabinet wiring layouts; and wire and conduit routing. Show all underground conduits and cables dimensioned from fixed objects.

Include detailed drawings that identify the routing of all conductors in the system by cable type, color code, and function. Clearly label all equipment in the DMS system, controller cabinet, and DMS enclosure.

D. Conduit

Install the conduit system in accordance with Section 1715 of *Standard Specifications* and NEC requirements for an approved watertight raceway.

Make bends in the conduit so as not to damage it or change its internal diameter. Install watertight and continuous conduit with as few couplings as standard lengths permit.

Clean conduit before, during, and after installation. Install conduit in such a manner that temperature changes will not cause elongation or contraction that might damage the system.

Attach the conduit system to and install along the structural components of the DMS structure assemblies with beam clamps or stainless steel strapping. Install strapping according to the strapping manufacturer's recommendations. Do not use welding or drilling to fasten conduit to structural components. Space the fasteners at no more than 4 feet for conduit 1.5 inches and larger or 6 feet for conduit smaller than 1.25 inches. Place fasteners no more than 3 feet from the center of bends, fittings, boxes, switches, and devices.

Flexible conduit will only be allowed when the conduits transition from the horizontal structure segment to the horizontal truss segment and from the horizontal truss segment to the rear entrance of

the DMS when installing the DMS communications and feeder cables. The maximum length of flexible conduit allowed at each transition will be 5 feet.

Locate underground conduit as shown in the Project Plans in a manner consistent with these Project Special Provisions.

Do not exceed the appropriate fill ratio on all cable installed in conduit as specified in the NEC.

E. Wiring Methods

Do not pull permanent wire through a conduit system until the system is complete and has been cleaned.

Color-code all conductors per the NEC. Use approved marking tape, paint, sleeves or continuous colored conductors for No.8 AWG and larger. Do not mark a white conductor in a cable assembly with any other color.

Bury underground circuits and surround it with at least 3 inches of sand or earth back-fill free of rocks and debris. Compact backfill in 6-inch layers. Do not splice underground circuits unless specifically noted in the Project Plans.

F. Equipment and Cabinet Mounting

Mount equipment securely at the locations shown in the Project Plans, in conformance with the dimensions shown. Install fasteners as recommended by the manufacturer and space them evenly. Use all mounting holes and attachment points for attaching DMS enclosures and controller cabinets to the structures.

Drill holes for expansion anchors of the size recommended by the manufacturer of the anchors and thoroughly clean them of all debris.

Provide one key-operated, pin tumbler, dead bolt padlock, with brass or bronze shackle and case, conforming to Military Specification MIL-P-17802E (Grade I, Class 2, Size 2, Style A) for each electrical panel and switch on the project. Key all padlocks alike and provide 10 keys to the Engineer.

Provide cabinets with all mounting plates, anchor bolts, and any other necessary mounting hardware in accordance with these Project Special Provisions and the Project Plans.

Seal all unused conduit installed in cabinets at both ends to prevent water and dirt from entering the conduit and cabinet with approved sealing material.

Install a ground bushing attached inside the cabinet on all metal conduits entering the cabinet. Connect these ground bushings to the cabinet ground bus.

G. Remove Existing DMS and Structure

Remove existing DMS, DMS-related equipment and DMS structure and foundation. Deliver DMS and DMS-related equipment/hardware to the Division 14 Traffic Services office.

H. Work Site Clean-Up

Clean the site of all debris, excess excavation, waste packing material, wire, etc. Clean and clear the work site at the end of each workday. Do not throw waste material in storm drains or sewers.

15.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Dynamic Message Sign will be measured and paid as the actual number of 27 X 90 DMS furnished, installed, and accepted. Each DMS consists of an LED Dynamic Message Sign, communications equipment, strapping hardware, controller, UPS, controller cabinet, conduit, fittings, couplings, sweeps, conduit bodies, wire, flexible conduit, power conductors and communications cable between the controller cabinet and the DMS enclosure, connectors, circuit protection equipment, photo-electric sensors, tools, materials, all related testing, cost of labor, cost of transportation, incidentals, and all other equipment necessary to furnish and install the DMS system.

Remove Existing DMS and Structure will be measured and paid as the actual number of DMS assemblies and the associated DMS structures and foundations removed. Each DMS consists of an LED Dynamic Message Sign, communications equipment, strapping hardware, controller, UPS, controller cabinet, conduit, fittings, couplings, sweeps, conduit bodies, wire, flexible conduit, power conductors and communications cable between the controller cabinet and the DMS enclosure, connectors, circuit protection equipment, and photo-electric sensors.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Dynamic Message Sign.....	Each
Remove Existing DMS and Structure.....	Each

16. NTCIP REQUIREMENTS

This section defines the detailed NTCIP requirements for the DMSs covered by these Project Special Provisions and Project Plans.

16.1. REFERENCES

This specification references several standards through their NTCIP designated names. The following list provides the full reference to the current version of each of these standards.

Implement the most recent version of the standard including any and all Approved or Recommended Amendments to these standards for each NTCIP Component covered by these project specifications.

Table 1: NTCIP Standards

Abbreviated Number	Full Number	Title
NTCIP 1101	NTCIP 1101:1997	Simple Transportation Management Framework
NTCIP 1201	NTCIP 1201:1997	Global Object Definitions
NTCIP 1203	NTCIP 1203:1997	Object Definitions for Dynamic Message Signs
NTCIP 2001	NTCIP 2001:1997	Class B Profile
NTCIP 2101	NTCIP 2101	SP-PMPP/232 Subnet Profile for PMPP over RS-232
NTCIP 2102	NTCIP 2102	SP-PMPP/FSK Subnet Profile for PMPP over FSK Modem
NTCIP 2103	NTCIP 2103	SP-PPP/232 Subnetwork Profile for PPP over RS232 (Dial Up)
NTCIP 2104	NTCIP 2104	SP-Ethernet Subnet Profile for Ethernet
NTCIP 2201	NTCIP 2201	TP-Null Transport Profile
NTCIP 2202	NTCIP 2202	TP-Internet Internet Transport Profile (TCP/IP and UDP/IP)
NTCIP 2301	NTCIP 2301	AP-STMF AP for Simple Transportation Management Framework

A. General Requirements**1. Subnet Level**

Ensure each serial port on each NTCIP Component supports NTCIP 2103 over a dial-up connection with a contractor provided external modem with data rates of 28.8 kbps, 19.2 kbps, 14.4 kbps, 9600 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps, 1200 bps, 600 bps, and 300 bps. Enable the NTCIP Component to make outgoing and receive incoming calls as necessary and support the following modem command sets:

Hayes AT - Command Set,

MNP5,

MNP10, and

V.42bis.

Ensure each serial port on each NTCIP Component supports NTCIP 2103 over a null-modem connection with data rates of 19.2 kbps, 14.4 kbps, 9600 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps, 1200 bps, 600 bps, and 300 bps.

Ensure each serial port on each NTCIP Component supports NTCIP 2101 with data rates of 9600 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps, 1200 bps, 600 bps, and 300 bps.

Ensure NTCIP components support NTCIP 2102 and NTCIP 2104.

NTCIP Components may support additional Subnet Profiles at the manufacturer's option. At any one time, make certain only one Subnet Profile is active on a given serial port of the NTCIP Component. Ensure the NTCIP Component can be configured to allow the field technician to activate the desired Subnet Profile and provide a visual indication of the currently selected Subnet Profile.

2. Transport Level

Ensure each NTCIP Component complies with NTCIP 2201 and 2202.

NTCIP Components may support additional Transport Profiles at the manufacturer's option. Ensure Response datagrams use the same Transport Profile used in the request. Ensure each NTCIP Component supports the receipt of datagrams conforming to any of the identified Transport Profiles at any time.

3. Application Level

Ensure each NTCIP Component complies with NTCIP 1101 and 2301 and meets the requirements for Conformance Level 1 (NOTE - See Amendment to standard).

Ensure each NTCIP Component supports SNMP traps. An NTCIP Component may support additional Application Profiles at the manufacturer's option. Ensure Responses use the same Application Profile used by the request. Ensure each NTCIP Component supports the receipt of Application data packets at any time allowed by the subject standards.

4. Information Level

Guarantee each NTCIP Component provides Full, Standardized Object Range Support of all objects required by these Special Provisions unless otherwise indicated below. Make certain the maximum Response Time for any object or group of objects is 200 milliseconds.

Design the DMS to support all mandatory objects of all mandatory Conformance Groups as defined in NTCIP 1201 and NTCIP 1203. Table 2 indicates the modified object requirements for these mandatory objects.

Table 2: Modified Object Ranges for Mandatory Objects

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
ModuleTableEntry	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.2.3	Contains at least one row with moduleType equal to 3 (software). The moduleMake specifies the name of the manufacturer, the moduleModel specifies the manufacturer's name of the component and the modelVersion indicates the model version number of the component.
MaxGroupAddresses	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.7.1	At least 1
CommunityNamesMax	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.8.2	At least 3
DmsNumPermanentMsg	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.6.1.1.1.1	At least 1*
DmsMaxChangeableMsg	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.6.1.1.1.3	At least 21
DmsFreeChangeableMemory	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.6.1.1.1.4	At least 20 when no messages are stored.
DmsMessageMultiString	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.6.1.1.1.8.3	The DMS supports any valid MULTI string containing any subset of those MULTI tags listed in Table 4
DmsControlMode	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.7.1.1.1.1	Support at least the following modes: - Local - External Central - Central Override

* Ensure the Permanent Messages display the content shown in Table 3.

Ensure the sign blanks if a command to display a message contains an invalid Message CRC value for the desired message.

Table 3: Content of Permanent Messages

Permanent Message Number	Description
1	Permanent Message #1 blanks the display (i.e., consist of and empty MULTI string). It has a run-time priority of one (1).

Table 4: Required MULTI Tags

Code	Feature
f1	field 1 - time (12hr)
f2	field 2 - time (24hr)
f8	field 8 – day of month
f9	field 9 – month
f10	field 10 - 2 digit year
f11	field 11 - 4 digit year
fl (and /fl)	flashing text on a line by line basis with flash rates controllable in 0.5 second increments.
fo	Font
jl2	Justification – line – left
jl3	Justification – line – center
jl4	Justification – line – right
jl5	Justification – line – full
jp2	Justification – page – top
jp3	Justification – page – middle
jp4	Justification – page – bottom
Mv	moving text
Nl	new line
Np	new page, up to 2 instances in a message (i.e., up to 3 pages/frames in a message counting first page)
Pt	page times controllable in 0.5 second increments.

The NTCIP Component implements all mandatory and optional objects of the following optional conformance groups with FSORS.

5. Test Heading

1.1.A.5.1. Time Management

As defined in NTCIP 1201

1.1.A.5.2. Timebase Event Schedule

As defined in NTCIP 1201. The following list indicates the modified object requirements for this conformance group.

Table 5: Modified Object Ranges for the Timebase Event Schedule Conformance Group

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
MaxTimeBaseScheduleEntries	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.4.3.1	At least 28
maxDayPlans	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.4.4.1	At least 14
maxDayPlanEvents	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.4.4.2	At least 10

1.1.A.5.3. Report

As defined in NTCIP 1201. The following list indicates the modified object requirements for this conformance group.

Table 6: Modified Object Ranges for the Report Conformance Group

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
maxEventLogConfigs	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.5.1	At least 50
eventConfigurationMode	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.4.3.1	The NTCIP Component supports the following Event Configuration Modes: onChange greaterThanValue smallerThanValue
MaxEventLogSize	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.5.3	At least 200
MaxEventClasses	NTCIP 1201 Clause 2.5.5	At least 16

1.1.A.5.4. PMPP

1.1.A.5.5. Font Configuration

As defined in NTCIP 1203. The following list indicates the modified object requirements for this conformance group.

Table 7: Modified Object Ranges for the Font Configuration Conformance Group

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
NumFonts	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.4.1.1.1.1	At least 4*
MaxFontCharacters	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.4.1.1.1.3	At least 127**

*Upon delivery, the first font is a standard 18” font. The second font is a double-stroke 18” font. The third font is a 28” font. The fourth font is empty.

**Upon delivery, the first three font sets are configured in accordance with the ASCII character set for the following characters:

- “A” thru “Z”- All upper case letters,
- “0” thru “9”- All decimal digits,
- Space (i.e., ASCII code 0x20),
- Punctuation marks shown in brackets [. , ! ? - ‘ ’ “ ” / ()],
- Special characters shown in brackets [# & * + < >].

1.1.A.5.6. DMS Configuration

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.7. MULTI Configuration

As defined in NTCIP 1203. The following list indicates the modified object requirements for this conformance group.

Table 8: Modified Object Ranges for the MULTI Configuration Conformance Group

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
DefaultBackgroundColor	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.1	The DMS supports the following background colors: black
DefaultForegroundColor	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.2	The DMS supports the following foreground colors: amber
DefaultJustificationLine	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.6	The DMS supports the following forms of line justification: - left - center - right - full
defaultJustificationPage	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.7	The DMS supports the following forms of page justification: - top - middle - bottom
defaultPageOnTime	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.8	The DMS supports the full range of these objects with step sizes no larger than 0.5 seconds
defaultPageOffTime	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.9	The DMS supports the full range of these objects with step sizes no larger than 0.5 seconds
defaultCharacterSet	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.10	The DMS supports the following character sets: eightBit

1.1.A.5.8. Default Message Control

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.9. Pixel Service Control

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.10. MULTI Error Control

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.11. Illumination/Brightness Control

As defined in NTCIP 1203. The following list indicates the modified object requirements for this conformance group.

Table 9: Modified Object Ranges for the Illumination/Brightness Control Conformance Group

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
dmsIllumControl	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.8.1.1.1.1	The DMS supports the following illumination control modes: - photocell - timer - manual
dmsIllumNumBrightLevels	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.8.1.1.1.4	At least 16

1.1.A.5.12. Auxiliary I/O

1.1.A.5.13. Scheduling

As defined in NTCIP 1203. The following list indicates the modified object requirements for this conformance group.

Table 10: Modified Object Ranges for the Scheduling Conformance Group

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
NumActionTableEntries	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.9.1.1.1.1	At least 21

1.1.A.5.14. Sign Status

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.15. Status Error

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.16. Pixel Error Status

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.17. Fan Error Status

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.18. Power Status

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

1.1.A.5.19. Temperature Status

As defined in NTCIP 1203.

Install necessary hardware for the support of items q, r, and s above.

Table 11: Some Optional Object Requirements

Object	Reference	Project Requirement
DefaultFlashOn	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.3	The DMS supports the full range of these objects with step sizes no larger than 0.5 seconds
DefaultFlashOff	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.5.1.1.1.4	The DMS supports the full range of these objects with step sizes no larger than 0.5 seconds
DmsMultiOtherErrorDescription	NTCIP 1203 Clause 2.7.1.1.1.20	If the vendor implements any vendor-specific MULTI tags, the DMS shall provide meaningful error messages within this object whenever one of these tags generates an error.

6. Documentation

Supply software with full documentation, including a CD-ROM containing ASCII versions of the following MIB files in Abstract Syntax Notation 1 (ASN.1) format:

- The relevant version of each official standard MIB Module referenced by the device functionality,
- If the device does not support the full range of any given object within a Standard MIB Module, a manufacturer specific version of the official Standard MIB Module with the supported range indicated in ASN.1 format in the SYNTAX and/or DESCRIPTION fields of the associated OBJECT TYPE macro. Name this file identical to the standard MIB Module, except that it will have the extension ".man",
- A MIB Module in ASN.1 format containing any and all manufacturer-specific objects supported by the device with accurate and meaningful DESCRIPTION fields and supported ranges indicated in the SYNTAX field of the OBJECT-TYPE macros,
- A MIB containing any other objects supported by the device.

Allow the use of any and all of this documentation by any party authorized by the Department for systems integration purposes at any time initially or in the future, regardless of what parties are involved in the systems integration effort.

B. NTCIP Acceptance Testing

Test the NTCIP requirements outlined above by a third party testing firm. Submit to the Engineer for approval a portfolio of the selected firm. Include the name, address, and a history of the selected firm in performing NTCIP testing along with references. Also provide a contact person's name and

phone number. Submit detailed NTCIP testing plans and procedures, including a list of hardware and software, to the Engineer for review and approval 10 days in advance of a scheduled testing date. Develop test documents based on the NTCIP requirements of these Project Special Provisions. The acceptance test will use the NTCIP Exerciser, and/or other authorized testing tools and will follow the guidelines established in the ENTERPRISE Test Procedures. Conduct the test in North Carolina on the installed system in the presence of the Engineer. Document and certify the results of the test by the firm conducting the test and submit the Engineer for review and approval. In case of failures, remedy the problem and have the firm retest in North Carolina. Continue process until all failures are resolved. The Department reserves the right to enhance these tests as deemed appropriate to ensure device compliance.

16.2. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

There will be no direct payment for the work covered by this section.

Payment for this work will be covered in the applicable sections of these Project Special Provisions at the contract unit price for “DMS” and will be full compensation for all work listed above.

17. DMS ASSEMBLIES

17.1. DESCRIPTION

This section includes all design, fabrication, furnishing, and erection of the DMS assemblies, platforms, walkways, ladders for access to the DMS inspection doors, and attachment of the DMS enclosures to the structures in accordance with the requirements of these Project Special Provisions and the Project Plans. Fabricate the supporting DMS assemblies from tubular steel. Furnish pedestal type DMS assemblies as shown in the Project Plans. Cantilevered and monotube (horizontal truss) DMS structures will not be allowed.

For DMS assemblies, provide pedestal structures with a minimum of 25 feet clearance from the high point of the road to the bottom of the DMS enclosure. DMS assemblies must allow for field adjustment with shims (horizontal & vertical tilting) +/- 3 degrees of the DMS enclosure to ensure optimum legibility from all travel lanes.

For DMS assemblies, design the new DMS assemblies (including footings), access platforms, new walkway platforms, and access ladders and submit shop drawings for approval. A Professional Engineer that is registered in the state of North Carolina will prepare such computations and drawings. These must bear his signature, seal, and date of acceptance.

Provide pedestal DMS structures with ladders, safety cages and maintenance platforms at the locations shown in the Project Plans.

The provisions of Section 900 of the *Standard Specifications* apply to all work covered by this section.

It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide DMS S-dimension elevation drawings for the DMS locations to the Engineer for approval.

17.2. MATERIAL

Use materials that meet the following requirements of the *Standard Specifications*:

Item	Section
Structural Steel.....	Section 1072
Overhead Sign Structures	Section 1096
Signing Materials	Section 1092
Organic-Zinc Repair Paint	Article 1080-9
Reinforcing Steel	Sub-article 1070
Direct Tension Indicators	Sections 440 and 1072

17.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. General

Fabricate the new DMS assemblies in accordance with the details shown in the approved shop drawings and the requirements of these Project Special Provisions.

No welding, cutting, or drilling in any manner will be permitted in the field, unless approved by the Engineer.

Drill bolt holes and slots to finished size. Holes may also be punched to finished size, provided the diameter of the punched holes are at least twice the thickness of the metal being punched. Flame cutting of bolt holes and slots is not permitted.

Erect DMS in accordance with the requirements indicated on the Project Plans and in these Project Special Provisions. Field drill two holes per connection in the Z bars for attaching the DMS to the structure. Use two bolts at each connection. Provide two (2) U-bolts at each U-bolt connection such as 1) each truss chord to sign hanger, or 2) each truss chord to platform support. Provide two (2) U-bolts at each U-bolts connection where ends of truss chords are supported. Minimum diameter of all U-bolts is to be ½ inch.

Use two coats of a zinc-rich paint to touch up minor scars on all galvanized materials. See *Standard Specifications*, Section 1076-6.

For high strength bolted connections, provide direct tension indicator washer.

B. Shop Drawing

Submit to the Engineer for approval a complete design for the DMS assemblies (including footings), DMS assembly hardware, brackets for supporting the DMS and the access platform. Base the design on the line drawings and correct wind speed in accordance with the latest edition of AASHTO "*Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, 6th Edition, 2013*" with the latest interim revisions.

The manufacturer of the DMS assembly must ensure that design of the assembly is compatible with the DMSs for mounting and attachment.

Submit six copies of complete detailed shop drawings and one copy of the design computations for the DMS assembly to the Engineer for approval prior to fabrication. Show in the shop drawings complete design and fabrication details including foundations, provisions for attaching the DMS, applicable material specifications, and any other information necessary for procuring and replacing any part of the complete DMS assembly.

Allow a minimum of 40 working days for shop drawing approval after the Engineer receives them. If revised drawings are necessary, allow appropriate additional time for review and approval of final shop drawings.

Approval of shop drawings by the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility for the correctness of drawings, or for the fit of all shop and field connections and anchors.

C. Design and Fabrication

1. Dynamic Message Sign Assembly

- Design must be in accordance with the *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, 6th Edition, 2013*, and the latest Interim Revisions.
- The wind pressure map that is developed from the 3-second gust speeds, as provided in Article 3.8 of the *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, 6th Edition, 2013*, and the latest Interim Specifications shall be used.
- The natural wind gust speed in North Carolina shall be assumed to be 5 meters per second or 11.6 mph for inland areas, and 7 meters per second or 15.7 mph for coastal areas. The coastal

area shall be defined as any area within 2 miles from the waterfront facing the ocean or sound and all area where the design basic wind speed is above 120 mph, as shown in Figure 3-2.

- The fatigue importance category used in the design, for each type of structure, as provided for in Article 11.6, Fatigue Importance Factors, shall be Category II unless otherwise shown on the Project Plans.
- Wind drag coefficient for Dynamic Message Sign enclosures shall be 1.7.

The following Specification interpretations or criteria shall be used in the design of overhead sign assemblies:

- For design of supporting upright posts or columns, the effective length factor for columns “K”, as provided for in Appendix B, Section B.5, shall be taken as the following, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer:
 - Case 1 For a single upright post of span type overhead sign structure, the effective column length factor, “K”, shall be taken as 2.0.
 - Case 2 For twin post truss-type upright post with the post connected to one chord of a horizontal truss, the effective column length factor for that column shall be taken as 2.0.
 - Case 3 For twin post truss-type upright post with the post connected to two truss chords of a horizontal tri-chord or box truss, the effective column length factor for that column shall be taken as 1.65.
- For twin post truss-type upright post, the unbraced length shall be from the chord to post connection to the top of base plate.
- For twin post truss-type upright post that is subject to axial compression, bending moment, shear, and torsion the post shall satisfy *Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries and Traffic Signals* Equations 5-17, 5-18 and 5-19. To reduce the effects of secondary bending, in lieu of Equation 5-18, the following equation may be used:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{\left(1 - \frac{0.6f_a}{F_c}\right)F_b} + \left(\frac{f_v}{F_v}\right)^2 \leq 1.0$$

Where

f_a = Computed axial compression stress at base of post

- The base plate thickness for all uprights and poles shall be a minimum of 2” but not less than that determined by the following criteria and design.
 - Case 1 Circular or rectangular solid base plates with the upright pole welded to the top surface of base plate with full penetration butt weld, and where no stiffeners are provided. A base plate with a small center hole, which is less than 1/5 of the upright diameter, and located concentrically with the upright pole, may be considered as a solid base plate.

The magnitude of bending moment in the base plate, induced by the anchoring force of each anchor bolt shall be calculated using equation $M = (P \times D_1) / 2$.

- Case 2 Circular or rectangular base plate with the upright pole socketed into and attached to the base plate with two lines of fillet weld, and where no stiffeners are provided, or any base plate with a center hole that is larger in diameter than 1/5 of the upright diameter.

The magnitude of bending moment induced by the anchoring force of each anchor bolt shall be calculated using equation $M = P \times D_2$.

- M , bending moment at the critical section of the base plate induced by one anchor bolt
 - P , anchoring force of each anchor bolt
 - D_1 , horizontal distance between the center of the anchor bolt and the outer face of the upright, or the difference between the radius of the bolt circle and the outside radius of the upright
 - D_2 , horizontal distance between the face of the upright and the face of the anchor bolt nut
- The critical section shall be located at the face of the anchor bolt and perpendicular to the radius of the bolt circle. The overlapped part of two adjacent critical sections shall be considered ineffective.
 - The thickness of base plate of Case 1 shall not be less than that calculated based on formula for Case 2.
 - Uprights, foundations, and trusses shall be designed in accordance with the DMS Foundation Special Provision for the effects of torsion. Torsion shall be considered from dead load eccentricity of these attachments, as well as for attachments such as walkway platforms, supporting brackets, etc., that add to the torsion in the assembly. Truss vertical and horizontal truss diagonals in particular and any other assembly members shall be appropriately sized for these loads.
 - Uprights, foundations, and trusses shall be designed for the proposed sign wind area and future wind areas. The design shall consider the effect of torsion induced by the eccentric force location of the center of wind force above (or below) the center of the supporting truss. Truss vertical and horizontal truss diagonals in particular and any other assembly members shall be appropriately sized for these loads.

Fabricate the supporting structures using tubular members of either aluminum or steel, using only one type of material throughout the project.

Horizontal components of the supporting structures for overhead DMS must be of a truss design to support the DMS. Truss centerline must coincide with centerline of the DMS design area shown on the structure line drawing. Provide permanent camber in addition to dead load camber in accordance with the Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires,

and Traffic Signals. Indicate on the shop drawings the amount of camber provided and the method employed in the fabrication of the support to obtain the camber.

For all U-bolt connections of hanger beams to overhead assembly truss chords, provide all U-bolts with a flat washer, a lock washer and double nuts at each end of the U-bolts. All double nuts that are on any U-bolt shall be the same thickness and weight. When assembled, the double nuts shall be brought tight against each other by the use of two wrenches.

Fabricate attachment assemblies for the mounting DMS in a manner that allows easy removal of the sign.

2. DMS Maintenance Platform (Walkway)

Provide a maintenance platform (walkway), a minimum of three feet wide with open skid-resistant surface and safety railing on the DMS assemblies for access to the DMS inspection door. Provide platforms with fixed safety railings along both sides from the beginning of the platform to the inspection door.

Ensure the design, fabrication and installation of the access platforms on new DMS structures complies with the following:

1. The top of the platform grading surface is vertically aligned with the bottom of the DMS door.
2. The DMS door will open 90-degrees from its closed position without any obstruction from the platform or safety handrails.
3. The platform is rigidly and directly connected to the walkway brackets and there is no uneven surface between sections.
4. Install a 4" x 4" safety angle parallel to and along both sides of the platform and extend it the entire length of the platform. Design the safety angle to withstand loading equivalent to the platform.
5. Ensure the platform design allows full access to the DMS enclosure inspection door with no interference or obstructions.

3. DMS Access Ladder

Provide a fixed ladder, of the same material as the pedestal structures, leading to and ending at the access platform. Equip the ladder with a security cover (ladder guard) and lock to prohibit access by unauthorized persons. Furnish locks to operate with a Corbin #2 key and furnish two keys per lock. Design the rungs on 12-inch center to center typical spacing. Start the first ladder rung no more than 18 inches above the landing pad. Attach the security cover approximately 6 feet above the finished ground. Design the ladder and security cover as a permanent part of the DMS assembly and include complete design details in the DMS assembly shop drawings. Fabricate the ladder and cover to meet all OSHA requirements and applicable state and local codes, including but not limited to providing a ladder cage.

Furnish and install a level concrete pad a minimum of 4 inches deep, 24 inches wide, and 36 inches long to service as a landing pad for accessing the ladder. Design the landing pad to be directly below the bottom rung. Access to the ladder shall not be obstructed by the DMS foundation. Provide pre-formed or cast-in place concrete pads.

17.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DMS Pedestal Structure will be measured and paid as the actual number of dynamic message sign assemblies furnished, installed, and accepted. Payment includes all design, fabrication, construction, transportation, and attachment of the complete dynamic message sign assemblies, supporting structure, hardware, access platform, direct tension indicators, preparing and furnishing shop drawings, additional documentation, incidentals, and all other equipment and features necessary to furnish the system described above.

DMS Access Ladder will be measured and paid as the actual number of DMS access ladders furnished, installed and accepted. Payment includes design, fabrication, transportation, and attachment to the DMS assembly and the concrete landing pad as described above.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
DMS Pedestal Structure	Each
DMS Access Ladder	Each

18. SOIL TEST

18.1. DESCRIPTION

Perform a soil test for each DMS foundation location according to the requirements described below.

It is assumed that all foundation designs will be drilled pier foundations unless site-specific soil test information does not allow for a drilled pier foundation design. If an alternative foundation design is required, notify the Engineer immediately. Prior approval from the Engineer is required to receive additional compensation for an alternate foundation design.

Design all custom foundations to carry the maximum capacity of each DMS structure.

When poor soil conditions are encountered, which could create an excessively large foundation design, consideration may be given to allowing an exemption to the maximum capacity design. The contractor must gain approval from the Engineer before reducing a foundation's capacity. Where poor soil is known to be present, it is advisable that the contractor receive approval for foundation designs before releasing poles for fabrication.

18.2. SOIL TEST

A. General

Drilled piers are reinforced concrete sections, cast in place against in situ, undisturbed material. Drilled piers are of straight shaft type and vertical.

The contractor-selected pole fabricator is responsible for determining if the addition of wing walls is necessary for the supporting foundations.

B. Soil Test

Perform a soil test at each proposed DMS pedestal location. Complete all required fill placement and excavation at each pedestal location to finished grade before drilling each boring. Soil tests performed that are not in compliance with this requirement may be rejected and will not be paid. Drill one boring to a depth of 26 feet within a 25 foot radius of each proposed foundation.

Perform standard penetration tests (SPT) in accordance with ASTM D 1586 at depths of 1, 2.5, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 20 and 26 feet. Discontinue the boring if one of the following occurs:

- A total of 100 blows have been applied in any 2 consecutive 6-in. intervals
- A total of 50 blows have been applied with < 3-in. penetration

Submit completed boring logs collected in accordance with these Project Special Provisions DMS load information to the contractor-selected pedestal fabricator to assist in the pedestal and foundation design.

Describe each DMS pedestal location along the project corridor in a manner that is easily discernible to both the contractor's designer and NCDOT reviewers. If a DMS pedestal is at an intersection, label the boring the "Intersection of (*Route or SR #*), (*Street Name*) and (*Route or SR #*), (*Street Name*), _____ County. Label borings with "B- *N, S, E, W, NE, NW, SE or SW*" corresponding to the quadrant location within the intersection.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-84

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Pedestal numbers should be made available to the geotechnical drilling Contractor. Include pedestal numbers in the boring label if they are available. If they are not available, ensure the boring labels can be cross-referenced to corresponding pedestal numbers or pedestal locations.

For each boring, submit a legible (hand written or typed) boring log signed and sealed by a licensed Geologist or Professional Engineer registered in North Carolina. Include on each boring the SPT blow counts and N-values at each depth, depth of the boring, and a general description of the soil types encountered.

Borings that can't be easily related to their specific pedestal location will be returned to the contractor for clarification, or if approved by the Engineer, the foundation may be designed using the worst case soil condition obtained as part of this project.

18.3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Soil test will be measured and paid as the actual number of Soil Tests with SPT borings drilled, furnished and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Soil Test	Each

19. FOUNDATIONS AND ANCHOR ROD ASSEMBLIES FOR METAL POLES

19.1. DESCRIPTION

Foundations for metal poles include foundations for signals, cameras, overhead and dynamic message signs (DMS) and high mount and light standards supported by metal poles or upright trusses. Foundations consist of footings with pedestals and drilled piers with or without grade beams or wings. Anchor rod assemblies consist of anchor rods (also called anchor bolts) with nuts and washers on the exposed ends of rods and nuts and a plate or washers on the other ends of rods embedded in the foundation.

Construct concrete foundations with the required resistances and dimensions and install anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Construct drilled piers consisting of cast-in-place reinforced concrete cylindrical sections in excavated holes. Provide temporary casings or polymer slurry as needed to stabilize drilled pier excavations. Use a prequalified Drilled Pier Contractor to construct drilled piers for metal poles. Define “excavation” and “hole” as a drilled pier excavation and “pier” as a drilled pier.

This provision does not apply to foundations for signal pedestals; see Section 1743 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and Standard Drawing No. 1743.01 of the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings*.

19.2. MATERIAL

Refer to the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Item	Section
Conduit.....	1091-3
Grout, Nonshrink	1003
Polymer Slurry	411-2(B)
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Reinforcing Steel	1070
Rollers and Chairs.....	411-2(C)
Temporary Casings	411-2(A)

Provide Type 3 material certifications in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for conduit, rollers, chairs and anchor rod assemblies. Store steel materials on blocking at least 12" above the ground and protect it at all times from damage; and when placing in the work make sure it is free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil or other foreign materials. Load, transport, unload and store foundation and anchor rod assembly materials so materials are kept clean and free of damage. Damaged or deformed materials will be rejected.

Use conduit type in accordance with the contract. Use Class A concrete for footings and pedestals, Class Drilled Pier concrete for drilled piers and Class AA concrete for grade beams and wings including portions of drilled piers above bottom of wings elevations. Corrugated temporary casings may be accepted at the discretion of the Engineer. A list of approved polymer slurry products is available from:

connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Products.aspx

Provide anchor rod assemblies in accordance with the contract consisting of the following:

- A. Straight anchor rods,
- B. Heavy hex top and leveling nuts and flat washers on exposed ends of rods, and
- C. Nuts and either flat plates or washers on the other ends of anchor rods embedded in foundations.

Do not use lock washers. Use steel anchor rods, nuts and washers that meet ASTM F1554 for Grade 55 rods and Grade A nuts. Use steel plates and washers embedded in concrete with a nominal thickness of at least 1/4". Galvanize anchor rods and exposed nuts and washers in accordance with Article 1076-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. It is not necessary to galvanize nuts, plates and washers embedded in concrete.

19.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Install the required size and number of conduits in foundations in accordance with the Project Plans and accepted submittals. Construct top of piers, footings, pedestals, grade beams and wings flat, level and within 1" of elevations shown in the Project Plans or approved by the Engineer. Provide an Ordinary Surface finish in accordance with Subarticle 825-6(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* for portions of foundations exposed above finished grade. Do not remove anchor bolt templates or pedestal or grade beam forms or erect metal poles or upright trusses onto foundations until concrete attains a compressive strength of at least 3,000 psi.

A. Drilled Piers

Before starting drilled pier construction, hold a predrill meeting to discuss the installation, monitoring and inspection of the drilled piers. Schedule this meeting after the Drilled Pier Contractor has mobilized to the site. The Resident or Division Traffic Engineer, Contractor and Drilled Pier Contractor Superintendent will attend this predrill meeting.

Do not excavate holes, install piles or allow equipment wheel loads or vibrations within 20 ft of completed piers until 16 hours after Drilled Pier concrete reaches initial set.

Check for correct drilled pier alignment and location before beginning drilling. Check plumbness of holes frequently during drilling.

Construct drilled piers with the minimum required diameters shown in the Project Plans. Install piers with tip elevations no higher than shown in the Project Plans or approved by the Engineer.

Excavate holes with equipment of the sizes required to construct drilled piers. Depending on the subsurface conditions encountered, drilling through rock and boulders may be required. Do not use blasting for drilled pier excavations.

Contain and dispose of drilling spoils and waste concrete as directed and in accordance with Section 802 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Drilling spoils consist of all materials and fluids removed from excavations.

If unstable, caving or sloughing materials are anticipated or encountered, stabilize holes with temporary casings and/or polymer slurry. Do not use telescoping temporary casings. If it becomes necessary to replace a temporary casing during drilling, backfill the excavation, insert a larger casing around the casing to be replaced or stabilize the excavation with polymer slurry before removing the temporary casing.

If temporary casings become stuck or the Contractor proposes leaving casings in place, temporary casings should be installed against undisturbed material. Unless otherwise approved, do not leave temporary casings in place for mast arm poles and cantilever signs. The Engineer will determine if casings may remain in place. If the Contractor proposes leaving temporary casings in place, do not begin drilling until a casing installation method is approved.

Use polymer slurry and additives to stabilize holes in accordance with the slurry manufacturer's recommendations. Provide mixing water and equipment suitable for polymer slurry. Maintain the required slurry properties at all times except for sand content.

Define a "sample set" as slurry samples collected from mid-height and within 2 ft of the bottom of holes. Take sample sets from excavations to test polymer slurry immediately after filling holes with slurry, at least every 4 hours thereafter and immediately before placing concrete. Do not place Drilled Pier concrete until both slurry samples from an excavation meet the required polymer slurry properties. If any slurry test results do not meet the requirements, the Engineer may suspend drilling until both samples from a sample set meet the required slurry properties.

Remove soft and loose material from bottom of holes using augers to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Assemble rebar cages and place cages and Drilled Pier concrete in accordance with Subarticle 411-4(E) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except for the following:

- 1) Inspections for tip resistance and bottom cleanliness are not required,
- 2) Temporary casings may remain in place if approved, and
- 3) Concrete placement may be paused near the top of pier elevations for anchor rod assembly installation and conduit placement or
- 4) If applicable, concrete placement may be stopped at bottom of grade beam or wings elevations for grade beam or wing construction.

If wet placement of concrete is anticipated or encountered, do not place Drilled Pier concrete until a concrete placement procedure is approved. If applicable, temporary casings and fluids may be removed when concrete placement is paused or stopped in accordance with the exceptions above provided holes are stable. Remove contaminated concrete from exposed Drilled Pier concrete after removing casings and fluids. If holes are unstable, do not remove temporary casings until a procedure for placing anchor rod assemblies and conduit or constructing grade beams or wings is approved.

Use collars to extend drilled piers above finished grade. Remove collars after Drilled Pier concrete sets and round top edges of piers.

If drilled piers are questionable, pile integrity testing (PIT) and further investigation may be required in accordance with Article 411-5 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. A drilled pier will be considered defective in accordance with Subarticle 411-5(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and drilled pier acceptance is based in part on the criteria in Article 411-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* except for the top of pier tolerances in Subarticle 411-6(C) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

If a drilled pier is under further investigation, do not grout core holes, backfill around the pier or perform any work on the drilled pier until the Engineer accepts the pier. If the drilled pier is accepted, dewater and grout core holes and backfill around the pier with approved material to finished grade. If the Engineer determines a pier is unacceptable, remediation is required in accordance with Article

411-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for remediation of unacceptable drilled piers or post repair testing.

Permanently embed a plate in or mark top of piers with the pier diameter and depth, size and number of vertical reinforcing bars and the minimum compressive strength of the concrete mix at 28 days.

B. Footings, Pedestals, Grade Beams and Wings

Excavate as necessary for footings, grade beams and wings in accordance with the Project Plans, accepted submittals and Section 410 of the *Standard Specifications*. If unstable, caving or sloughing materials are anticipated or encountered, shore foundation excavations as needed with an approved method. Notify the Engineer when foundation excavation is complete. Do not place concrete or reinforcing steel until excavation dimensions and foundation material are approved.

Construct cast-in-place reinforced concrete footings, pedestals, grade beams and wings with the dimensions shown in the Project Plans and in accordance with Section 825 of the *Standard Specifications*. Use forms to construct portions of pedestals and grade beams protruding above finished grade. Provide a chamfer with a 3/4" horizontal width for pedestal and grade beam edges exposed above finished grade. Backfill and fill in accordance with Article 410-8 of the *Standard Specifications*. Proper compaction around footings and wings is critical for foundations to resist uplift and torsion forces.

C. Anchor Rod Assemblies

Size anchor rods for design and the required projection above top of foundations. Determine required anchor rod projections from nut, washer and base plate thicknesses, the protrusion of 3 to 5 anchor rod threads above top nuts after tightening and the distance of one nut thickness between top of foundations and bottom of leveling nuts.

Protect anchor rod threads from damage during storage and installation of anchor rod assemblies. Before placing anchor rods in foundations, turn nuts onto and off rods past leveling nut locations. Turn nuts with the effort of one workman using an ordinary wrench without a cheater bar. Report any thread damage to the Engineer that requires extra effort to turn nuts.

Arrange anchor rods symmetrically about center of base plate locations as shown in the Project Plans. Set anchor rod elevations based on required projections above top of foundations. Securely brace and hold rods in the correct position, orientation and alignment with a steel template. Do not weld to reinforcing steel, temporary casings or anchor rods.

Install top and leveling (bottom) nuts, washers and the base plate for each anchor rod assembly in accordance with the following procedure:

- 1) Turn leveling nuts onto anchor rods to a distance of one nut thickness between the top of foundation and bottom of leveling nuts. Place washers over anchor rods on top of leveling nuts.
- 2) Determine if nuts are level using a flat rigid template on top of washers. If necessary, lower leveling nuts to level the template in all directions or if applicable, lower nuts to tilt the template so the metal pole or upright truss will lean as shown in the Project Plans. If leveling nuts and washers are not in full contact with the template, replace washers with galvanized beveled washers.

- 3) Verify the distance between the foundation and leveling nuts is no more than one nut thickness.
- 4) Place base plate with metal pole or upright truss over anchor rods on top of washers. High mount luminaires may be attached before erecting metal poles but do not attach cables, mast arms or trusses to metal poles or upright trusses at this time.
- 5) Place washers over anchor rods on top of base plate. Lubricate top nut bearing surfaces and exposed anchor rod threads above washers with beeswax, paraffin or other approved lubricant.
- 6) Turn top nuts onto anchor rods. If nuts are not in full contact with washers or washers are not in full contact with the base plate, replace washers with galvanized beveled washers.
- 7) Tighten top nuts to snug-tight with the full effort of one workman using a 12" wrench. Do not tighten any nut all at once. Turn top nuts in increments. Follow a star pattern cycling through each nut at least twice.
- 8) Repeat (7) for leveling nuts.
- 9) Replace washers above and below the base plate with galvanized beveled washers if the slope of any base plate face exceeds 1:20 (5%), any washer is not in firm contact with the base plate or any nut is not in firm contact with a washer. If any washers are replaced, repeat (7) and (8).
- 10) With top and leveling nuts snug-tight, mark each top nut on a corner at the intersection of 2 flats and a corresponding reference mark on the base plate. Mark top nuts and base plate with ink or paint that is not water-soluble. Use the turn-of-nut method for pretensioning. Do not pretension any nut all at once. Turn top nuts in increments for a total turn that meets the following nut rotation requirements:

NUT ROTATION REQUIREMENTS (Turn-of-Nut Pretensioning Method)	
Anchor Rod Diameter, inch	Requirement
$\leq 1 \frac{1}{2}$	1/3 turn (2 flats)
$> 1 \frac{1}{2}$	1/6 turn (1 flat)

Follow a star pattern cycling through each top nut at least twice.

- 11) Ensure nuts, washers and base plate are in firm contact with each other for each anchor rod. Cables, mast arms and trusses may now be attached to metal poles and upright trusses.
- 12) Between 4 and 14 days after pretensioning top nuts, use a torque wrench calibrated within the last 12 months to check nuts in the presence of the Engineer. Completely erect mast arm poles and cantilever signs and attach any hardware before checking top nuts for these structures. Check that top nuts meet the following torque requirements:

TORQUE REQUIREMENTS	
Anchor Rod Diameter, inch	Requirement, ft-lb
7/8	180
1	270
1 1/8	380
1 1/4	420
$\geq 1 \frac{1}{2}$	600

If necessary, retighten top nuts in the presence of the Engineer with a calibrated torque wrench to within ± 10 ft-lb of the required torque. Do not overtighten top nuts.

13) Do not grout under base plate.

19.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Foundations for metal poles and upright trusses will be measured and paid for elsewhere in the contract.

No payment will be made for temporary casings that remain in drilled pier excavations. No payment will be made for PIT. No payment will be made for further investigation of defective piers. Further investigation of piers that are not defective will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *Standard Specifications*. No payment will be made for remediation of unacceptable drilled piers or post repair testing

20. DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN FOUNDATIONS

20.1. DESCRIPTION

Sign foundations include foundations for overhead and dynamic message signs (DMS) supported by metal poles or upright trusses. Sign foundations consist of footings with pedestals or drilled piers with or without grade beams or wings, conduit and anchor rod assemblies. Construct sign foundations in accordance with the contract and accepted submittals. Define “cantilever sign” as an overhead cantilever sign support in accordance with Figure 1-1 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries and Traffic Signals*, 6th Edition, 2013, including the latest interim specifications.

20.2. MATERIALS

Use sign foundation materials that meet the Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles provision.

A. Assumed Subsurface Conditions

Assume the following soil parameters and groundwater elevation for sign foundations unless these subsurface conditions are not applicable to sign locations:

- Unit weight (γ) = 120 lb/cf,
- Friction angle (ϕ) = 30°F,
- Cohesion (c) = 0 lb/sf, and
- Groundwater 7 ft below finished grade.

A subsurface investigation is required if the Engineer determines these assumed subsurface conditions do not apply to a sign location and the sign cannot be moved. Subsurface conditions requiring a subsurface investigation include but are not limited to weathered or hard rock, boulders, very soft or loose soil, muck or shallow groundwater. No extension of completion date or time will be allowed for subsurface investigations.

B. Subsurface Investigations

Use a prequalified geotechnical consultant to perform one standard penetration test (SPT) boring in accordance with ASTM D1586 at each sign location requiring a subsurface investigation. Rough grade sign locations to within 2 ft of finished grade before beginning drilling. Drill borings to 2 drilled pier diameters below anticipated pier tip elevations or refusal, whichever is higher.

Use the computer software gINT version 8.0 or later manufactured by Bentley Systems, Inc. with the current NCDOT gINT library and data template to produce SPT boring logs. Provide boring logs sealed by a geologist or engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

C. Sign Foundation Designs

Design sign foundations for the wind zone and clearances shown in the foundation design plans and the slope of finished grade at each sign location. Use the assumed soil parameters and groundwater elevation above for sign foundation designs unless a subsurface investigation is required. For sign locations requiring a subsurface investigation, design sign foundations for the subsurface conditions at each sign location. Design footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings in accordance with the 5th Edition of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway*

I-4400BB&C

ITS-92

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Signs, Luminaries and Traffic Signals, 6th Edition, 2013, including the latest interim specifications. In some instances, conflicts with drainage structures may dictate sign foundation types.

Design footings in accordance with Section 4.4 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*. Do not use an allowable bearing pressure of more than 3,000 lb/sf for footings.

Design drilled piers for side resistance only in accordance with Section 4.6 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* except reduce ultimate side resistance by 25% for uplift. Use the computer software LPILE version 5.0 or later manufactured by Ensoft, Inc. to analyze drilled piers. Provide drilled pier designs with a horizontal deflection of less than 1" at top of piers. For cantilever signs with single drilled pier foundations supporting metal poles, use wings to resist torsion forces. Provide drilled pier designs with a factor of safety of at least 2.0 for torsion.

For drilled pier sign foundations supporting upright trusses, use dual drilled piers connected with a grade beam having a moment of inertia approximately equal to that of either pier. The Broms' method is acceptable to analyze drilled piers with grade beams instead of LPILE. Use a safety factor of at least 3.5 for the Broms' design method in accordance with C13.6.1.1 of the *AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries and Traffic Signals*, 5th Edition, 2009, including the latest interim specifications.

Submit boring logs, if any, working drawings and design calculations for acceptance in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications*. Submit working drawings showing plan views, required foundation dimensions and elevations and typical sections with reinforcement, conduit and anchor rod assembly details. Include all boring logs, design calculations and LPILE output for sign foundation design submittals. Have sign foundations designed, detailed and sealed by an engineer licensed in the state of North Carolina.

20.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Construct footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings and install anchor rod assemblies for sign foundations in accordance with the Foundations and Anchor Rod Assemblies for Metal Poles provision.

20.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DMS Foundation will be measured and paid in cubic yards of concrete for footings, pedestals, drilled piers, grade beams and wings shown on the accepted submittals. The contract unit price for *DMS Foundation* will be full compensation for providing labor, tools, equipment and foundation materials, stabilizing or shoring excavations and supplying concrete, reinforcing steel, conduit, anchor rod assemblies and any incidentals necessary to construct sign foundations. Subsurface investigations required by the Engineer will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
DMS Foundation.....	Cubic Yards

21. ETHERNET SWITCHES

21.1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install managed Ethernet switches as specified below that are fully compatible, interoperable, and completely interchangeable and functional within the existing Division traffic signal system communications network as called for in the Project Plans and these Project Special Provisions.

21.2. MATERIALS

A. General

Furnish Ethernet switches that comply with the following electrical safety requirements: UL60950 or CSA C22.2 No. 60950 (safety requirements for IT equipment) and FCC Part15 Class A for EMI emissions.

B. Ethernet Edge Switch

Furnish and install a hardened, field Ethernet edge switch (hereafter “edge switch”) for CCTV cameras and DMS in the field equipment cabinets as shown in the Project Plans and as described in these Project Special Provisions for the successful integration of the field devices into the Division 13 Traffic Services office . Ensure that the edge switch provides wire-speed, fast Ethernet connectivity at transmission rates of 100 megabits per second from each remote ITS device location to the routing switches.

Contact the Division to arrange for the programming of the new Edge Switches with the necessary network configuration data, including but not limited to, the Project IP Address, Default Gateway, Subnet Mask and VLAN ID information. Provide a minimum five (5) days working notice to allow the Division to program the new devices.

Ensure that the edge switch is fully compatible and interoperable with the trunk Ethernet network interface and that the edge switch supports half and full duplex Ethernet communications.

Furnish an edge switch that provide 99.999% error-free operation, and that complies with the Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) Ethernet data communication requirements using single-mode fiber-optic transmission medium and copper transmission medium. Ensure that the edge switch has a minimum mean time between failures (MTBF) of 10 years, or 87,600 hours, as calculated using the Bellcore/Telcordia SR-332 standard for reliability prediction.

Furnish Ethernet edge switches that are DIN rail mounted and come equipped with hardware to permit mounting in an EIA 19” equipment rack.

Furnish Ethernet edge switches that weigh no more than 15 lbs. and are no more than 250 cubic inches in volume.

1. Standards

Ensure that the edge switch complies with all applicable IEEE networking standards for Ethernet communications, including but not limited to:

- IEEE 802.1D standard for media access control (MAC) bridges used with the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP);
- IEEE 802.1Q standard for port-based virtual local area networks (VLANs);

- IEEE 802.1P standard for Quality of Service (QoS);
- IEEE 802.1w standard for MAC bridges used with the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP);
- IEEE 802.1s standard for MAC bridges used with the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol;
- IEEE 802.1x standard for port based network access control, including RADIUS;
- IEEE 802.3 standard for local area network (LAN) and metropolitan area network (MAN) access and physical layer specifications;
- IEEE 802.3u supplement standard regarding 100 Base TX/100 Base FX;
- IEEE 802.3x standard regarding flow control with full duplex operation;
- IFC 2236 regarding IGMP v2 compliance;
- IEEE 802.1AB Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP);
- IEEE 802.3ad Ethernet Link Aggregation;
- IEEE 802.3i for 10BASE-T (10 Mbit/s over Fiber-Optic);
- IEEE 802.3ab for 1000BASE-T (1Gbit/s over Ethernet); and
- IEEE 802.3z for 1000BASE-X (1 Gbit/s Ethernet over Fiber-Optic).

2. Functional

Ensure that the edge switch supports all Layer 2 management features and certain Layer 3 features related to multicast data transmission and routing. These features shall include, but not be limited to:

- An STP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1D standard.
- An RSTP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1w standard.
- An Ethernet edge switch that is a port-based VLAN and supports VLAN tagging that meets or exceeds specifications as published in the IEEE 802.1Q standard, and has a minimum 4-kilobit VLAN address table (254 simultaneous).
- A forwarding/filtering rate that is a minimum of 14,880 packets per second for 10 megabits per second and 148,800 packets per second for 100 megabits per second.
- A minimum 4-kilobit MAC address table.
- Support of Traffic Class Expediting and Dynamic Multicast Filtering.
- Support of, at a minimum, snooping of Version 2 & 3 of the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP).
- Support of remote and local setup and management via telnet or secure Web-based GUI and command line interfaces.
- Support of the Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3). Verify that the Ethernet edge switch can be accessed using the resident EIA-232 management port, a telecommunication network, or the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP).

- Port security through controlling access by the users. Ensure that the Ethernet edge switch has the capability to generate an alarm and shut down ports when an unauthorized user accesses the network.
- Support of remote monitoring (RMON-1 & RMON-2) of the Ethernet agent.
- Support of the TFTP and SNTP. Ensure that the Ethernet edge switch supports port mirroring for troubleshooting purposes when combined with a network analyzer.

3. Physical Features

Ports: Provide 10/100/1000 Mbps auto-negotiating ports (RJ-45) copper Fast Ethernet ports for all edge switches. Provide auto-negotiation circuitry that will automatically negotiate the highest possible data rate and duplex operation possible with attached devices supporting the IEEE 802.3 Clause 28 auto-negotiation standard.

Optical Ports: Ensure that all fiber-optic link ports operate at 1310 or 1550 nanometers in single mode. Provide Type LC connectors for the optical ports, as specified in the Project Plans or by the Engineer. Do not use mechanical transfer registered jack (MTRJ) type connectors.

Provide an edge switch having a minimum of two optical 100/1000 Base X ports capable of transmitting data at 100/1000 megabits per second. Ensure that each optical port consists of a pair of fibers; one fiber will transmit (TX) data and one fiber will receive (RX) data. Ensure that the optical ports have an optical power budget of at least 15 dB.

Copper Ports: Provide an edge switch that includes a minimum of four copper ports. Provide Type RJ-45 copper ports and that auto-negotiate speed (i.e., 10/100/1000 Base) and duplex (i.e., full or half). Ensure that all 10/100/1000 Base TX ports meet the specifications detailed in this section and are compliant with the IEEE 802.3 standard pinouts. Ensure that all Category 5E unshielded twisted pair/shielded twisted pair network cables are compliant with the EIA/TIA-568-B standard.

Port Security: Ensure that the edge switch supports/complies with the following (remotely) minimum requirements:

- Ability to configure static MAC addresses access;
- Ability to disable automatic address learning per ports; know hereafter as Secure Port. Secure Ports only forward; and
- Trap and alarm upon any unauthorized MAC address and shutdown for programmable duration. Port shutdown requires administrator to manually reset the port before communications are allowed.

4. Management Capabilities

Ensure that the edge switch supports all Layer 2 management features and certain Layer 3 features related to multicast data transmission and routing. These features shall include, but not be limited to:

- An STP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1 D standards;
- An RSTP healing/convergence rate that meets or exceeds specifications published in the IEEE 802.1w standard;

- An Ethernet edge switch that is a port-based VLAN and supports VLAN tagging that meets or exceeds specifications as published in the IEEE 802.1Q standard, and has a minimum 4-kilobit VLAN address table (254 simultaneous);
- A forwarding/filtering rate that is a minimum of 14,880 packets per second for 10 megabits per second, 148,800 packets per second for 100 megabits per second and 1,488,000 packets per second for 1000 megabits per second;
- A minimum 4-kilobit MAC address table;
- Support of Traffic Class Expediting and Dynamic Multicast Filtering;
- Support of, at a minimum, snooping of Version 2 & 3 of the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP);
- Support of remote and local setup and management via telnet or secure Web-based GUI and command line interfaces; and
- Support of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Verify that the Ethernet edge switch can be accessed using the resident EIA-232 management port, a telecommunication network, or the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP).

Network Capabilities: Provide an edge switch that supports/complies with the following minimum requirements:

- Provide full implementation of IGMPv2 snooping (RFC 2236);
- Provide full implementation of SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and/or SNMPv3;
- Provide support for the following RMON–I groups, at a minimum:
 - Part 1: Statistics
 - Part 2: History
 - Part 3: Alarm
 - Part 9: Event
- Provide support for the following RMON–2 groups, at a minimum:
 - Part 13: Address Map
 - Part 16: Layer Host
 - Part 17: Layer Matrix
 - Part 18: User History
- Capable of mirroring any port to any other port within the switch;
- Meet the IEEE 802.1Q (VLAN) standard per port for up to four VLANs;
- Meet the IEEE 802.3ad (Port Trunking) standard for a minimum of two groups of four ports;
- Password manageable;
- Telnet/CLI;
- HTTP (Embedded Web Server) with Secure Sockets Layer (SSL); and
- Full implementation of RFC 783 (TFTP) to allow remote firmware upgrades.

Network Security: Provide an edge switch that supports/complies with the following (remotely) minimum network security requirements:

- Multi-level user passwords;
- RADIUS centralized password management (IEEE 802.1X);
- SNMPv3 encrypted authentication and access security;
- Port security through controlling access by the users: ensure that the Ethernet edge switch has the capability to generate an alarm and shut down ports when an unauthorized user accesses the network;
- Support of remote monitoring (RMON-1&2) of the Ethernet agent; and
- Support of the TFTP and SNTP. Ensure that the Ethernet edge switch supports port mirroring for troubleshooting purposes when combined with a network analyzer.

5. Electrical Specifications

Ensure that the edge switch operates and power is supplied with 115 volts of alternating current (VAC). Ensure that the edge switch has a minimum operating input of 110 VAC and a maximum operating input of 130 VAC. Ensure that if the device requires operating voltages other than 120 VAC, supply the required voltage converter. Ensure that the maximum power consumption does not exceed 50 watts. Ensure that the edge switch has diagnostic light emitting diodes (LEDs), including link, TX, RX, speed (for Category 5E ports only), and power LEDs.

6. Environmental Specifications

Ensure that the edge switch performs all of the required functions during and after being subjected to an ambient operating temperature range of -30 degrees to 165 degrees Fahrenheit as defined in the environmental requirements section of the NEMA TS 2 standard, with a noncondensing humidity of 0 to 95%.

Provide certification that the device has successfully completed environmental testing as defined in the environmental requirements section of the NEMA TS 2 standard. Provide certification that the device meets the vibration and shock resistance requirements of Sections 2.1.9 and 2.1.10, respectively, of the NEMA TS 2 standard. Ensure that the edge switch is protected from rain, dust, corrosive elements, and typical conditions found in a roadside environment.

The edge switch shall meet or exceed the following environmental standards:

- IEEE 1613 (electric utility substations)
- IEC 61850-3 (electric utility substations)
- IEEE 61800-3 (variable speed drive systems)
- IEC 61000-6-2 (generic industrial)
- EMF – FCC Part 15 CISPR (EN5502) Class A

7. Ethernet Patch Cable

Furnish a factory pre-terminated/pre-connectorized Ethernet patch cable with each edge switch. Furnish Ethernet patch cables meeting the following physical requirements:

- Five (5)-foot length
- Category 5e or better
- Factory-installed RJ-45 connectors on both ends

- Molded anti-snag hoods over connectors
- Gold plated connectors

Furnish Fast Ethernet patch cords meeting the following minimum performance requirements:

- TIA/EIA-568-B-5, Additional Transmission Performance Specifications for 4-pair 100 Ω Enhanced Category 5 Cabling
- Frequency Range: 1-100 MHz
- Near-End Crosstalk (NEXT): 30.1 dB
- Power-sum NEXT: 27.1 dB
- Attenuation to Crosstalk Ratio (ACR): 6.1 dB
- Power-sum ACR: 3.1 dB
- Return Loss: 10dB
- Propagation Delay: 548 nsec

21.3. CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. General

Furnish media access control (MAC) addresses for all equipment utilized as part of this project. Affix MAC Address label to each device utilized. Furnish IP addresses for all equipment utilized as part of this project. Affix final IP address each device utilized. Use labels that do not smear or fade.

B. Ethernet Edge Switch

Ensure that the edge switch is UL listed.

Install and integrate all Ethernet edge switches at field locations as called for in Project Plans.

In CCTV camera field equipment cabinets, fully integrate new Ethernet edge switches with CCTV cameras, and in DMS field equipment cabinets, fully integrate new Ethernet edge switches with DMS controllers.

Provide inline surge protection for all Ethernet connections in field cabinets.

Verify that network/field/data patch cords meet all ANSI/EIA/TIA requirements for Category 5E and Category 6 four-pair unshielded twisted pair cabling with stranded conductors and RJ45 connectors.

Contact the Signal Shop a minimum of 5 days prior to installation for the most current edge switch IP Address, VLAN, subnet mask, default gateway and configuration files.

Mount the edge switch inside each field cabinet by securely fastening the edge switch to the upper end of the right rear vertical rail of the equipment rack using manufacturer-recommended or Engineer-approved attachment methods, attachment hardware and fasteners.

Ensure that the edge switch is mounted securely in the cabinet and is fully accessible by field technicians without blocking access to other equipment. Verify that fiber-optic jumpers consist of a length of cable that has connectors on both ends, primarily used for interconnecting termination or patching facilities and/or equipment.

I-4400BB&C

ITS-99

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

21.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Ethernet edge switch will be measured and paid for as the actual number of Ethernet edge switches furnished, installed, and accepted.

No separate measurement will be made for Ethernet patch cable, power cord, mounting hardware, nuts, bolts, brackets, or edge switch programming as these will be considered incidental to furnishing and installing the edge switch.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Ethernet Edge Switch.....	Each

22. INTEGRATION AND CONFIGURATION

22.1. DESCRIPTION

Install and fully integrate new central equipment at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office. Fully configure existing central hardware and software at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office to establish communications with new CCTV and DMS devices.

Coordinate the working hours and building access for all central configuration activities with the Engineer.

22.2. CENTRAL INTEGRATION

Furnish media access control (MAC) addresses for all equipment utilized as part of this project. Affix MAC Address label to each device utilized. Furnish IP addresses for all equipment utilized as part of this project. Affix final IP address each device utilized. Use labels that do not smear or fade.

Configure the existing Ethernet switch and ports as required to establish communications to field Ethernet switches and CCTV cameras.

Configure the existing CCTV server to recognize the new CCTV units and process the video and control data for sharing with the Division 13 Traffic Services Office.

Configure the existing DMS server to recognize the new DMS units and process control data for sharing with the Division 13 Traffic Services Office.

22.3. CENTRAL CONFIGURATION

The existing DMS central software that controls the DMS units at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office is Daktronics Vanguard. Modify the existing DMS central software configuration at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office to display and map the new DMS units in the software GUI. Ensure that the software also allows for full communications and control of the DMS unit.

The existing CCTV central software that controls the existing video matrix switch at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office is Protronix's VideoPro. This software includes on-screen pan-tilt-zoom controls of each camera in the system. Modify the Protronix CCTV central software configuration at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office to display and map the new CCTV devices so that the CCTV video can be displayed on the existing monitors and display devices at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office.

22.4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Integration and configuration will be measured and paid as a lump sum price. This item shall include the installation, testing, and all materials, equipment, labor, tools, storage, shipping, and incidentals necessary to complete the integration and configuration of CCTV and DMS devices with the existing systems at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office.

All cabling, labeling, sockets, or other accessories required to configure, integrate, and interconnect computer equipment shall be considered incidental and shall not be paid for separately.

All central equipment installed for communications to new CCTV and DMS units will be measured and paid for under the applicable Section of these Project Special Provisions.

Payment will be made under:

I-4400BB&C

ITS-101

Buncombe & Henderson Counties

Pay Item

Pay Unit

Integration and Configuration.....Lump Sum

23. TESTING & ACCEPTANCE

23.1. GENERAL TEST PROCEDURE

Test the CCTV camera and DMS systems in a series of design approval and functional tests. The results of each test must meet the specified requirements. These tests shall not damage the equipment. The Engineer will reject equipment that fails to fulfill the requirements of any test. Resubmit rejected equipment after correcting non conformities and re-testing; completely document all diagnoses and corrective actions. Modify all equipment furnished under this contract, without additional cost to the Department, to incorporate all design changes necessary to pass the required tests.

Provide 4 copies of all test procedures and requirements to the Engineer for review and approval at least 30 days prior to the testing start date.

Use only approved procedures for the tests. Include the following in the test procedures:

- A step by step outline of the test sequence, showing a test of every function of the equipment or system tested,
- A description of the expected nominal operation, output, and test results, and the pass / fail criteria,
- An estimate of the test duration and a proposed test schedule,
- A data form to record all data and quantitative results obtained during the test, and
- A description of any special equipment, setup, manpower, or conditions required by the test.

Provide all necessary test equipment and technical support. Use test equipment calibrated to National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) standards. Provide calibration documentation upon request.

Conform to these testing requirements and the requirements of these specifications. The Engineer will reject all equipment not tested according to these requirements. It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure the system functions properly even after the Engineer accepts the CCTV camera and DMS test results.

Provide 4 copies of the quantitative test results and data forms containing all data taken, highlighting any non-conforming results and remedies taken, to the Engineer for approval. An authorized representative of the manufacturer must sign the test results and data forms.

23.2. DESIGN APPROVAL TESTS

A. DMS System

Design Approval Tests are applicable to DMS systems not currently on the Department's QPL.

The Design Approval Tests consists of all tests described in Section 2.2 "DMS Equipment Tests" of NEMA TS 4-2005 (Hardware Standards for Dynamic Message Signs with NTCIP Requirements). Perform all tests and submit certified results for review and approval.

PROTOTYPE – Manufacture a prototype DMS and controller of the type and size described in the Project Special Provisions. In the presence of the Engineer, test the prototype according to the Design Approval and Operational Tests. When all corrections and changes (if any) have been made, the Department may accept the prototype DMS and controller as the physical and functional standard

for the system furnished under this contract. You may use the prototype units on this project if, after inspection and rework (if necessary), they meet all physical and functional specifications. In the case of standard product line equipment, if the Contractor can provide test results certified by an independent testing facility as evidence of prior completion of successful design approval tests, then the Engineer may choose to waive these tests.

In each Design Approval Test, successfully perform the Functional Tests described below. Apply the extreme conditions to all associated equipment unless stated otherwise in these Project Special Provisions.

B. CCTV Camera System

No design approval test is required.

23.3. COMPATIBILITY TESTS

A. DMS System

No compatibility test is required.

B. CCTV Camera System

Compatibility Tests are applicable to CCTV cameras and video encoders that the Contractor wishes to furnish but are of a different manufacturer or model series than the existing units in the field or existing units installed at the Division 13 Traffic Services Office. If required, the Compatibility Test shall be completed and accepted by the Engineer prior to approval of the material submittal.

The Compatibility Test shall be performed in a laboratory environment at a facility chosen by the Engineer based on the type of unit being tested. Provide notice to the Engineer with the material submitted that a Compatibility Test is requested. The notice shall include a detailed test plan that will show compatibility with existing equipment. The notice shall be given a minimum of 15 calendar days prior to the beginning of the Compatibility Test.

The Contractor shall provide, install, and integrate a full-functioning unit to be tested. The Department will provide access to existing equipment to facilitate these testing procedures. The Contractor is responsible for configuring proposed equipment at the Division 13 Traffic Operations Services Office and proving compatibility. The Engineer will determine if the Compatibility Test was acceptable for each proposed device.

23.4. OPERATIONAL FIELD TEST (ON-SITE COMMISSIONING)

A. DMS System

Conduct an Operational Field Test of the DMS system installed on the project to exercise the normal operational functions of the equipment. The Operational Field Test will consist of the following tests as a minimum:

1. Physical Examination

Examine each piece of equipment to verify that the materials, design, construction, markings, and workmanship comply with the mechanical, dimensional, and assembly requirements of these Project Special Provisions.

Perform the following tests as a minimum:

Verify that all surfaces are free of dents, scratches, weld burns, or abrasions. Round sharp edges and corners,

Verify bend radius of cables is not excessive or could potentially cause damage,

Verify all modules, lamps, and components are properly secured, and

Verify that there are no exposed live terminals.

2. Continuity Tests

Check the wiring to assure it conforms to the requirements of these Project Special Provisions.

3. Functional Tests

Perform the following functional tests:

- Start-up and operate the DMS locally using a laptop computer,
- Use automatic (photo-electric sensor controlled) DMS Control Software to switch between “dim”, “normal”, and “bright” light levels,
- Operate the DMS with all display elements flashing continuously for 10 minutes at the maximum flash rate,
- Exercise the DMS by displaying static messages, flashing messages, and alternating static and flashing message sequences,
- Automatic poll the DMS by the Control Software at various intervals and verify the data received by Control Software from DMS,
- Download and edit messages using Control Software,
- Execute status request on the DMS controller,
- Observe normal operations during uploading and downloading messages,
- Input and select messages from the sign controller’s local user interface,
- Test sequence activation at chosen intervals,
- Display and verify all stored messages,
- Verify resumption of standard operation upon interruption of electrical power,
- Demonstrate detected failures and response functions,
- Demonstrate proper operation of the Failure Log,
- Set controller clock using the Control Software,
- Execute system shutdown using the Control Software and local user interface, and
- Verify detection of a power failure in the DMS enclosure and the report feature of the failure to the Control Software,
- Display IP address and web settings,
 - Verify that the IP address is not publicly accessible. Placing a display on a private network or VPN helps mitigate the lack of security,

- Disable the telnet, Web Interface, Web LCD, and ICMP (PING) interfaces,
- Change the default password,
- Set the controller to enable a controller log file.

Approval of Operational Field Test results does not relieve the Contractor to conform to the requirements in these Project Special Provisions. If the DMS system does not pass these tests, document a correction or substitute a new unit as approved by the Engineer. Re-test the system until it passes all requirements.

B. CCTV Camera System

Perform the following local operational field tests at the camera assembly field site in accordance with the test plans. A laptop computer shall provide camera control and positioning. After installing the camera assembly, including the camera hardware, Ethernet edge switch, power supply, and connecting cables:

- Furnish all equipment, appliances, and labor necessary to test the installed cable and to perform the following tests before any connections are made,
- Verify that physical construction has been completed,
- Inspect the quality and tightness of ground and surge protector connections,
- Check the power supply voltages and outputs,
- Connect devices to the power sources,
- Verify installation of specified cables and connections between the camera, PTZ, Ethernet edge switch, and control cabinet,
- Perform the CCTV camera assembly manufacturer's initial power-on test in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation,
- Set the VLAN, IP address, default gateway and subnet mask for the camera and Ethernet edge switch,
- Verify the presence and quality of the video image with a portable NTSC-approved monitor,
- Exercise the pan, tilt, zoom, focus, iris opening, and manual iris control selections, and the operation, preset positioning, and power on/off functions,
- Demonstrate the pan and tilt speeds and extent of movement to meet all applicable standards, specifications, and requirements,
- Verify proper voltage of all power supplies,
- Interconnect the communication interface device with the communication network's assigned fiber-optic trunk cable and verify that there is a transmission LED illuminated, and
- Verify that the CCTV camera's built-in digital video Ethernet encoder is properly encoding its video signal.

Approval of Operational Field Test results does not relieve the Contractor to conform to the requirements in these Project Special Provisions. If the CCTV camera system does not pass these

tests, document a correction or substitute a new unit as approved by the Engineer. Re-test the system until it passes all requirements.

23.5. 30-DAY OBSERVATION PERIOD

The 30-Day Observation Period shall not be considered part of work to be completed by the project completion date.

Upon successful completion of all project work, the component tests, the System Test, and the correction of all deficiencies, including minor construction items, the 30-day Observation Period may commence. This observation consists of a 30-day period of normal, day-to-day operations of the new field equipment in operation with the new central equipment without any failures. The purpose of this period is to ensure that all components of the system function in accordance with the Project Plans and these Project Special Provisions.

Respond to system or component failures (or reported failures) that occur during the 30-day Observation Period within twenty-four (24) hours. Correct said failures within forty-eight (48) hours. Any failure that affects a major system component as defined below for more than forty-eight (48) hours will suspend the timing of the 30-day Observation Period beginning at the time when the failure occurred. After the cause of such failures has been corrected, timing of the 30-day Observation Period will resume. System or component failures that necessitate a redesign of any component or failure in any of the major system components exceeding a total of three (3) occurrences will terminate the 30-day Observation Period and cause the 30-day Observation Period to be restarted from day zero when the redesigned components have been installed and/or the failures corrected. The major system components are:

- DMS Field Controller and Display Module,
- CCTV Camera, PTZ, and built-in digital video Ethernet encoder, and

23.6. FINAL ACCEPTANCE

Final system acceptance is defined as the time when all work and materials described in the Project Plans and these Project Special Provisions have been furnished and completely installed by the Contractor; all parts of the work have been approved and accepted by the Engineer; and the 30-day observation period has been successfully completed.

The project will be ready for final acceptance upon the satisfactory completion of all tests detailed in this Section of the Project Special provisions; the rectification of all punch-list discrepancies; and the submittal of all project documentation.

23.7. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

There will be no direct payment for the work covered in this section.

Payment for this work will be covered in the applicable sections of these Project Special Provisions at the contract unit price for other items furnished on this Project.

ST-1

Project I-4400BB & C

Henderson County

Project Special Provisions Structure

Table of Contents

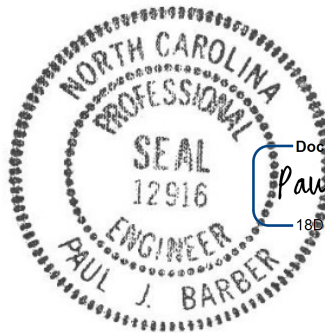
	Page #
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station 21+33.13 -Y2-	(8-13-04)ST-3
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station 19+51.21 -Y5-	(8-13-04)ST-4
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station 17+09.26 -Y7-	(8-13-04)ST-5
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station 332+10.52 -Y10-	(8-13-04)ST-6
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station 17+01.02 -Y11-	(8-13-04)ST-7
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station 22+70.63 -Y12-	(8-13-04)ST-8
Application of Bridge Coating	(Special)ST-9
Electrical Conduit System for Signals	(9-30-11)ST-14
Steel Reinforced Elastomeric Bearings	(6-22-16)ST-18
Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization)	(12-1-17)ST-19
Elastomeric Concrete	(2-11-19)ST-21
Foam Joint Seals	(9-27-12)ST-24
Expansion Joint Seals	(9-30-11)ST-28
Sound Barrier Wall	(5-17-18)ST-32
Falsework and Formwork	(4-5-12)ST-39
Submittal of Working Drawings	(6-28-17)ST-45
Crane Safety	(6-20-19)ST-51

ST-2

Table of Contents

	Page #
Grout for Structures	(12-1-17)ST-52
Asbestos Assessment for Bridge Demolition and Renovation Activities	(12-30-15)ST-53
Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted)	(Special)ST-55
Bridge Mounted Chain Link Fence	(Special)ST-58
Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment	(Special)ST-59
Silane Deck Treatment	(Special)ST-64
LMC Overlay Surface Preparation	(2-11-19)ST-72
Latex Modified Concrete Overlay	(2-11-19)ST-80
Elastomeric Concrete for Preservation	(2-11-19)ST-84
Bridge Joint Demolition	(Special)ST-87
Foam Joint Seals for Preservation	(Special)ST-89
Concrete Bridge Deck Crack Sealing	(Special)ST-93
Anodized Three Bar Metal Rail	(Special)ST-99
Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall	(Special).....ST-100

HNTB North Carolina, PC.
 343 E. Six Forks Rd.
 Raleigh, NC 27609



DocuSigned by:
Paul J. Barber
 188F1B57368741E...
 7/17/2019

ST-3

PROJECT SPECIAL **PROVISIONS STRUCTURE**

MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC (8-13-04) **BENEATH PROPOSED STRUCTURE AT STATION 21+33.13 -Y2-**

1.0 GENERAL

Maintain traffic on I-26 as shown in Traffic Control Plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Provide a minimum temporary vertical clearance of 16'-3" at all times during construction.

Submit plans and calculations for review and approval for protecting traffic and bracing girders, as described herein, at the above station before beginning work at this location. Have the drawings and design calculations prepared, signed, and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer. The approval of the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety of the method or equipment.

2.0 PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

Protect traffic from any operation that affords the opportunity for construction materials, equipment, tools, etc. to be dropped into the path of traffic beneath the structure. Based on Contractor means and methods determine and clearly define all dead and live loads for this system, which, at a minimum, shall be installed between beams or girders over any travelway or shoulder area where traffic is maintained. Install the protective system before beginning any construction operations over traffic. In addition, for these same areas, keep the overhang falsework in place until after the rails have been poured.

3.0 BRACING GIRDERS

Brace girders to resist wind forces, weight of forms and other temporary loads, especially those eccentric to the vertical axis of the member during all stages of erection and construction. Before casting of intermediate diaphragms, decks, or connecting steel diaphragms do not allow the horizontal movement of girders to exceed 1/2 inch.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items will be full compensation for the above work.

ST-4

MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC **BENEATH PROPOSED STRUCTURE AT STATION 19+15.21 -Y5-**

(8-13-04)

1.0 GENERAL

Maintain traffic on I-26 as shown in Traffic Control Plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Provide a minimum temporary vertical clearance of 16'-7" at all times during construction.

Submit plans and calculations for review and approval for protecting traffic and bracing girders, as described herein, at the above station before beginning work at this location. Have the drawings and design calculations prepared, signed, and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer. The approval of the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety of the method or equipment.

2.0 PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

Protect traffic from any operation that affords the opportunity for construction materials, equipment, tools, etc. to be dropped into the path of traffic beneath the structure. Based on Contractor means and methods determine and clearly define all dead and live loads for this system, which, at a minimum, shall be installed between beams or girders over any travelway or shoulder area where traffic is maintained. Install the protective system before beginning any construction operations over traffic. In addition, for these same areas, keep the overhang falsework in place until after the rails have been poured.

3.0 BRACING GIRDERS

Brace girders to resist wind forces, weight of forms and other temporary loads, especially those eccentric to the vertical axis of the member during all stages of erection and construction. Before casting of intermediate diaphragms, decks, or connecting steel diaphragms do not allow the horizontal movement of girders to exceed ½ inch.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items will be full compensation for the above work.

ST-5

MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC **BENEATH PROPOSED STRUCTURE AT STATION 17+09.26 -Y7-**

(8-13-04)

1.0 GENERAL

Maintain traffic on I-26 as shown in Traffic Control Plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Provide a minimum temporary vertical clearance of 16'-2" at all times during construction.

Submit plans and calculations for review and approval for protecting traffic and bracing girders, as described herein, at the above station before beginning work at this location. Have the drawings and design calculations prepared, signed, and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer. The approval of the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety of the method or equipment.

2.0 PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

Protect traffic from any operation that affords the opportunity for construction materials, equipment, tools, etc. to be dropped into the path of traffic beneath the structure. Based on Contractor means and methods determine and clearly define all dead and live loads for this system, which, at a minimum, shall be installed between beams or girders over any travelway or shoulder area where traffic is maintained. Install the protective system before beginning any construction operations over traffic. In addition, for these same areas, keep the overhang falsework in place until after the rails have been poured.

3.0 BRACING GIRDERS

Brace girders to resist wind forces, weight of forms and other temporary loads, especially those eccentric to the vertical axis of the member during all stages of erection and construction. Before casting of intermediate diaphragms, decks, or connecting steel diaphragms do not allow the horizontal movement of girders to exceed ½ inch.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items will be full compensation for the above work.

ST-6

MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC **BENEATH PROPOSED STRUCTURE AT STATION 332+10.52 -Y10-**

(8-13-04)

1.0 GENERAL

Maintain traffic on I-26 as shown in Traffic Control Plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Provide a minimum temporary vertical clearance of 16'-6" at all times during construction.

Submit plans and calculations for review and approval for protecting traffic and bracing girders, as described herein, at the above station before beginning work at this location. Have the drawings and design calculations prepared, signed, and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer. The approval of the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety of the method or equipment.

2.0 PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

Protect traffic from any operation that affords the opportunity for construction materials, equipment, tools, etc. to be dropped into the path of traffic beneath the structure. Based on Contractor means and methods determine and clearly define all dead and live loads for this system, which, at a minimum, shall be installed between beams or girders over any travelway or shoulder area where traffic is maintained. Install the protective system before beginning any construction operations over traffic. In addition, for these same areas, keep the overhang falsework in place until after the rails have been poured.

3.0 BRACING GIRDERS

Brace girders to resist wind forces, weight of forms and other temporary loads, especially those eccentric to the vertical axis of the member during all stages of erection and construction. Before casting of intermediate diaphragms, decks, or connecting steel diaphragms do not allow the horizontal movement of girders to exceed ½ inch.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items will be full compensation for the above work.

ST-7

MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC
BENEATH PROPOSED STRUCTURE AT STATION 17+01.02 -Y11-

(8-13-04)

1.0 GENERAL

Maintain traffic on I-26 as shown in Traffic Control Plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Provide a minimum temporary vertical clearance of 16'-6" at all times during construction.

Submit plans and calculations for review and approval for protecting traffic and bracing girders, as described herein, at the above station before beginning work at this location. Have the drawings and design calculations prepared, signed, and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer. The approval of the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety of the method or equipment.

2.0 PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

Protect traffic from any operation that affords the opportunity for construction materials, equipment, tools, etc. to be dropped into the path of traffic beneath the structure. Based on Contractor means and methods determine and clearly define all dead and live loads for this system, which, at a minimum, shall be installed between beams or girders over any travelway or shoulder area where traffic is maintained. Install the protective system before beginning any construction operations over traffic. In addition, for these same areas, keep the overhang falsework in place until after the rails have been poured.

3.0 BRACING GIRDERS

Brace girders to resist wind forces, weight of forms and other temporary loads, especially those eccentric to the vertical axis of the member during all stages of erection and construction. Before casting of intermediate diaphragms, decks, or connecting steel diaphragms do not allow the horizontal movement of girders to exceed ½ inch.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items will be full compensation for the above work.

ST-8

MAINTENANCE AND PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC **BENEATH PROPOSED STRUCTURE AT STATION 22+70.63 -Y12-**

(8-13-04)

1.0 GENERAL

Maintain traffic on I-26 as shown in Traffic Control Plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Provide a minimum temporary vertical clearance of 16'-6" at all times during construction.

Submit plans and calculations for review and approval for protecting traffic and bracing girders, as described herein, at the above station before beginning work at this location. Have the drawings and design calculations prepared, signed, and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer. The approval of the Engineer will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety of the method or equipment.

2.0 PROTECTION OF TRAFFIC

Protect traffic from any operation that affords the opportunity for construction materials, equipment, tools, etc. to be dropped into the path of traffic beneath the structure. Based on Contractor means and methods determine and clearly define all dead and live loads for this system, which, at a minimum, shall be installed between beams or girders over any travelway or shoulder area where traffic is maintained. Install the protective system before beginning any construction operations over traffic. In addition, for these same areas, keep the overhang falsework in place until after the rails have been poured.

3.0 BRACING GIRDERS

Brace girders to resist wind forces, weight of forms and other temporary loads, especially those eccentric to the vertical axis of the member during all stages of erection and construction. Before casting of intermediate diaphragms, decks, or connecting steel diaphragms do not allow the horizontal movement of girders to exceed ½ inch.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items will be full compensation for the above work.

ST-9

APPLICATION OF BRIDGE COATING

(SPECIAL)

GENERAL

This work consists of preparing and cleaning concrete and galvanized surfaces as well as furnishing and applying a colored base coating with a compatible anti-graffiti finish coating to the surfaces specified in the plans and generally described herein. The base coating and anti-graffiti coating shall be applied to all surfaces indicated on the plans or as directed by the Engineer and shall be applied only after the surface preparation specified herein has been completed, inspected and approved by the Engineer.

Alternate coating methods may be submitted for review and approval.

MATERIALS

The base coating shall be compatible with the anti-graffiti finish coating and must be designed specifically for coating galvanized surfaces or damp, uncured concrete. The coating material shall be delivered to the job site in sealed containers bearing the manufacturer's original labels. The brand, color, and type shall be clearly marked on each container. A copy of the manufacturer's Materials Safety Data Sheet and a copy of the manufacturer's printed instructions shall be presented to the Engineer at the time of delivery.

The coating material shall be stored in airtight, upright containers. The containers shall be stored in a dry location where the temperature remains above 40° F and less than 100° F.

The coating material shall have a shelf life of not less than 12 months. After application, the base coating shall be dry to the touch within 48 hours and shall achieve a final cure within 2 to 3 weeks under ideal conditions. After application, the anti-graffiti coating shall be dry to the touch within 1 hour and shall achieve a final cure within 3 hours.

The color of the base coating shall be in accordance with the Federal Standard 595. Colors and areas of application shall be as indicated on the structure plans for the following bridges:

- Clear Creek Road over I-26 (I-4400BB - S3)
- Brookside Camp Road over I-26 (I-4400BB - S4)
- Naples Road over I-26 (I-4400BB - S5)
- US25 over I-26 (I-4400C - S2)
- Butler Road over I-26 (I-4400C - S3)
- Fanning Bridge Road over I-26 (I-4400C - S5)

The application should be as detailed per the plans and varies slightly due to bridge design. Generally, the following defines the intended application:

ST-10

Superstructure

FS 26420 (Light Gray) or similar color approved by the Engineer shall be applied to the bottoms of exterior slab overhangs. The existing US25 bridge exterior barrier face, edge of slab and slab overhang shall also be coated.

FS 26081 (Dark Gray) or similar color approved by the Engineer shall be applied to the exterior face and bottom of exterior girders. The steel girders at the existing US25 bridge shall not be coated.

Substructure

FS 26420 (Light Gray) or similar color approved by the Engineer shall be applied to all exposed substructure elements not treated with architectural concrete surface treatment, excluding top surfaces of bent and end bent caps. Backwalls at end bents need not be painted between girders.

The color of the anti-graffiti coating shall be clear after full cure.

Provide one gallon of graffiti remover, thinners, dryers and all necessary components recommended by the manufacturer to the North Carolina Department of Transportation Materials and Tests Unit, Chemical Testing Engineer.

MATERIAL TESTING AND CERTIFICATION

Before coating material is applied, a Type 2 certification shall be supplied attesting that the product furnished is in accordance with the same formula as that previously subjected to the tests specified below and approved. Copies of the current tests reports shall be attached to the certification. Reports for tests made more than 4 years prior to shipment to the project site will not be accepted.

All testing shall be performed by a qualified commercial testing laboratory that has been approved by the North Carolina Department of Transportation Materials and Tests Unit.

The applied coating shall be subjected to and shall satisfy the requirements of the tests listed below, prior to use on the structure.

Freeze-Thaw

1. Three concrete specimens, not less than 4 inches by 6 inches by 6 inches, of the mix design for the structure shall be cast and cured. Fourteen days moist curing with a drying period at room temperature, 60° F to 80° F, for 24 hours will be required before applying the coating material to the specimens. Caution shall be taken that there be no excessive oil on specimen forms. The coating shall be applied to the sides of specimens at a spreading rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon. Brush application will be permitted. Cementitious coatings shall be cured at room temperature and 30 percent relative humidity for 24 hours, at room temperature and 90 percent relative humidity for 48 hours, at room temperature and 50 percent relative humidity for 4 days for a total curing time of 7 days.

2. The specimens shall be immersed in water at room temperature for 3 hours, then removed.

ST-11

3. The specimens shall be placed in cold storage at -15°F for 1 hour and then removed.
4. The specimens shall be thawed at room temperature for one hour.
5. Steps 3 and 4 shall be repeated for a total of 250 cycles. At the end of 250 cycles, the specimens shall show no visible defects.

Accelerated Weathering

Coating shall be subjected to a 7,500 hour exposure test in a Twin-Carbon-Arc-Weatherometer, ASTM G 23, Type D, at an opening temperature of 145° F. The test shall be made at 20-minute cycles consisting of 17 minutes of light and 3 minutes of water spray plus light. At the end of the exposure test, the exposed samples shall show no chipping, flaking, or peeling. The panels for this test shall be prepared by applying the coating at a spreading rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon to both sides and edges of panels cut from asbestos cement shingles in accordance with Federal Specification SS-S-346, Type I. Curing time shall be in accordance with Freeze-Thaw Test curing time.

Fungus Growth Resistance

Coating shall pass a fungus resistance test in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-29g. Fungus growth shall not be indicated after a minimum incubation period of 21 days.

Abrasion Resistance

Coating shall pass the 2,000 litre sand abrasion test in accordance with Method 6191 Abrasion Resistance-Falling Sand, Federal Test Method Standard 141a, ASTM D968-81. The specimens for this test shall be prepared by applying the coating to a cleaned steel panel at a spreading rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon. The specimens shall be cured at room temperature for 21 days.

Impact Resistance

Coating shall be applied to a concrete panel prepared according to Federal Test Method Standard 141a, Method 2051, at a spreading rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon, and allowed to cure for 21 days at room temperature. The test shall then be run using the Gardner Mandrel Impact Tester in accordance with ASTM D 2794 using a one-half inch indenter with an impact load of 6 inch-pounds. The coating shall show no chipping under this impact load.

Salt-Spray Resistance

A concrete specimen shall be coated at the rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon and cured for 21 days at room temperature. The coated specimen shall be exposed to a 5 percent salt solution in accordance with ASTM B 117 for 2,500 hours where the atmospheric temperature is maintained at $90^\circ \pm 2^\circ$ F. At the end of 2,500 hours of exposure, the coating shall show no ill effects, loss of adhesion, or deterioration.

Flexibility

ST-12

A sheet metal specimen shall be coated at a rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon and allowed to cure for 48 hours at room temperature. The coated specimen shall be bent 180 degrees over a one inch round mandrel. After bending, the coating shall show no breaking.

In addition to the certification and test reports required above, a service record shall be supplied showing that the coating material has a satisfactory service record on concrete and, when applicable, galvanized surfaces for a period of not less than 5 years prior to the date of submission of the service record. The coating shall also have shown satisfactory service characteristics without peeling, chipping, flaking, and non-uniform change in texture or color. The structure for the specific product shall be named in the service record.

In addition to the above requirements, each batch delivered to the project shall be sampled and tested for color and the following product analysis data submitted:

- (a) Weight per gallon
- (b) Viscosity in Kneb units
- (c) Weight percent pigment
- (d) Weight percent vehicle solids
- (e) Infrared spectra of vehicle solution
- (f) Drying time

SURFACE PREPARATION

Prepare concrete surfaces and galvanized surfaces in accordance with Section 420-17(B) and Section 442-13 of the Standard Specifications, respectively, or the manufacturer's recommendations, whichever is more restrictive. All surfaces to be coated shall be free of efflorescence, flaking coatings, dirt, oil, curing compounds, release agents and other deleterious substances prior to the application of the coating.

Concrete curing compounds and release agents must be removed. Water blasting will be allowed; however, the blasting operation must not remove or damage the concrete.

Prior to application of the coating, all concrete surfaces to be coated shall be sprayed with water. If the water soaks into the concrete surfaces, the coating may be applied once all surfaces dry. If the water beads up and is repelled, the surfaces require further cleaning before application of the coating.

APPLICATION

The coating application, including equipment used, shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The coating shall be applied by qualified personnel with previous experience similar to the work outlined in the contract plans.

The material shall be thoroughly mixed in its original container and shall not be thinned. Containers with coatings that have formed skins shall not be permitted for use.

ST-13

The base coating may be applied over damp, but not wet concrete surfaces and shall be applied at a rate of 50 ± 10 square feet per gallon. The application rate shall produce a uniform color texture. The base coating shall be applied only when the ambient temperature is between 40° F and rising, and 100° F. It shall not be applied over frozen surfaces or if rain is imminent. If a freshly applied surface is damaged by rain, re-coating may be necessary based on the Engineers assessment of the damage.

Schedule the application of the base coating as one of the final finishing operations or when construction-generated dust will be minimal. To prevent lap marks, a wet edge shall be maintained at all times. Stopping and starting in mid-sections will not be allowed. Start or end at natural breaks in the surface, i.e. at a panel edges, corners or joints. When applying the base coating with a roller, the material shall be applied in vertical strokes initially, cross rolled for even film and appearance, and then finished with vertical strikes.

Apply the anti-graffiti coating by brush, roller or airless spray when the ambient temperature is between 45° F and 90° F, and the surface temperature is between 50° F and 100° F. Ensure the surface is clean and dry before applying the anti-graffiti coating.

The coating shall be applied to the structure with due protection of the work and surroundings as required by Section 442-5 of the Standard Specifications.

FINISHED PRODUCT

All coating material in the finished state shall be capable of accommodating the thermal and elastic expansion ranges of the concrete or, when applicable, galvanized surfaces without cracking.

The texture of the completed finish coat shall be similar to that of rubbed concrete. The completed finished coating shall be tightly bonded to the structure and present a uniform appearance and texture. Additional coats may be required by the Engineer in order to produce the desired surface texture and uniformity.

Coatings shall be entirely removed from the structure and reapplied if there is failure to positively adhere as evident by chipping, flaking, peeling, or the desired surface appearance is not achieved.

The average thickness of the completed finish coating shall not exceed 1/8 of an inch. The minimum dry film thickness of the anti-graffiti coating shall be 2.0 mils.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

The bridge coating will be paid for at the contract lump sum price bid for "Application of Bridge Coating." Price and payment shall be full compensation for surface preparation, furnishing and applying the materials, labor, equipment and any incidentals necessary to complete this work.

ST-14

ELECTRICAL CONDUIT SYSTEM FOR SIGNALS

(9-30-11)

1.0 GENERAL

The work covered by this section consists of furnishing and installing a conduit system suspended beneath structures and buried. Perform all work in accordance with these special provisions, the plans, and the National Electrical Code (NEC). Install the conduit system in accordance with NEC requirements as an approved raceway for electrical circuits.

The Contractor actually performing the work described in these special provisions is required to have a license of the proper classification from the North Carolina State Board of Examiners of Electrical Contractors.

The licensed Electrical Contractor is required to be available on the job site when the work is being performed or when requested by the Engineer. The licensed Electrical Contractor is required to have a set of plans and special provisions in his possession on the job site, and must maintain accurate "as built" plans.

2.0 MATERIALS

Submit eight (8) copies of catalog cuts and/or drawings for all proposed materials for the Engineer's review and approval. Include the brand name, stock number, description, size, rating, manufacturing specification, and applicable contract item number(s) on each submittal. Allow forty (40) days for submittal review. The Engineer will advise the Contractor of reasons for rejected submittals and will return approved submittals to the Contractor. Do not deliver material to the project prior to submittal approval.

For the work covered by this section, the term conduit applies to a system of components consisting of an outer duct, 4 inner ducts, internal spacers, special-purpose spin couplings and all necessary components, referred to as a multi-cell raceway system.

For the outer duct of RGC multi-cell raceway, use rigid galvanized conduit per UL 6 "Rigid Metallic Conduit" with rigid full weight galvanized threaded fittings. Provide factory installed reverse-spin couplings with 3 set screws, to allow assembly without turning the outer duct, and prevent the coupling from backing off before and after installation. Provide an O-ring gasket in the coupling body to resist pullout and to create a watertight seal. Provide pre-installed, smooth walled, pre-lubricated PVC inner ducts, with one white "tracer" duct and internal spacers to maintain alignment throughout the raceway system. Do not use materials provided by more than one manufacturer.

When deflection couplers are detailed on the plans, use deflection couplers that are designed for use with RGC multi-cell raceway, and meet all the requirements for RGC outer duct stated above. Provide deflection couplers that allow a 30 degree bend in any direction and $\frac{3}{4}$ inch mis-alignment in all axis. Provide factory installed reverse-spin couplings with 3 set screws, to allow assembly without turning the outer duct, and prevent the coupling from backing off before and after installation. Provide deflection couplers with a middle section consisting of a rubber boot attached by spin couplings and galvanized straps, with inner ducts that bend in unison with the rubber boot.

ST-15

Use expansion joints that are designed for use with RGC multi-cell raceway, and meet the requirements for RGC outer duct stated above. Provide expansion joints that allow 8 inches of longitudinal movement. Use expansion joints consisting of a female end with a lead-in coupling body and spin coupling, an exterior sliding joint, and a fixed inner duct with an internal sliding joint. Provide expansion joints that have factory installed reverse-spin couplings with 3 set screws, to allow assembly without turning the outer duct and prevent the coupling from backing off before and after installation.

Use transition adapters that allow RGC raceway and PVC raceway to be coupled together while maintaining the same inner duct alignment. Provide adapters consisting of a threaded female adapter, an outer duct adapter, and a modified coupling body with a sleeve, thin wall couplings and an end spacer.

For the outer duct of PVC multi-cell raceway use schedule 40 PVC per UL 651 "Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit." Use PVC raceway with 6 inch bell ends and an O-ring gasket to resist pullout and provide a watertight seal. Provide PVC raceway having a print line that states "Install Print Line Up" to help facilitate correct installation. Use PVC raceway with pre-lubricated PVC inner ducts, with one white "tracer" duct and internal spacers to maintain alignment throughout the raceway system. Do not use material provided by more than one manufacturer.

Use terminations designed for PVC raceway, to seal each inner duct and the outer duct, and to provide watertight protection.

Use schedule 40 PVC for sleeves in accordance with UL 651 "Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit."

Provide concrete inserts made of galvanized malleable iron, with internal threads for suspending loads from a fixed point beneath a concrete ceiling or deck where no lateral adjustment is required. Use inserts that can be secured to the concrete forms, preventing movement during concrete placement.

For stabilizers and hangers, use galvanized rods that conform to ASTM-A36 or A-575. Galvanized rods may be threaded on both ends or threaded continuously. Use steel stabilizer clamps and attachment brackets, sized as noted in the plans and hot dipped galvanized per ASTM-A123. Provide high strength bolts, nuts and washers that are galvanized in accordance with Article 1072-5 of the Standard Specifications.

Use adjustable clevis-type pipe hangers that allow for vertical adjustment and limited movement of the pipe. Use galvanized pipe hangers that are listed with Underwriters Laboratories, or are Factory Mutual approved for the size conduit shown in the plans. Use hangers that comply with Federal Specification WW-H-171E Type 1 and Manufacturers Standardization Society SP-69 Type 1. Plastic-coat the saddle area of the hanger.

Provide pull lines specifically designed for pulling rope through conduit. Use pull lines made of 2-ply line, with a tensile strength of 240 pounds minimum. Use rot and mildew resistant pull lines that are resistant to tangling when being dispensed.

Use mastic that is a permanent, non-hardening, water sealing compound that adheres to metal, plastic, and concrete.

ST-16

Provide jute that is a burlap-like material used for filling voids and protecting components from waterproofing and adhesive compounds.

Provide zinc rich paint conforming to Section 1080-9 of the Standard Specifications.

3.0 INSTALLATION

To ensure against corrosion in the area where hot dipped galvanizing has been damaged, cover all raw metal surfaces with a cold galvanized, zinc rich paint.

Stub the raceway out at an accessible location and seal with termination kits designed specifically for that purpose. Use termination kits of the same material as the raceway.

Install Stabilizers as shown on the plans to assure proper movement of the conduit expansion joints. Securely fasten the clamps with attachment brackets and stabilizer rods to the conduit at the indicated locations to assure these locations remain stationary. Install the stabilizer rods parallel to the alignment of the conduit, and tilt rod upward at an orientation of 45 degrees to the bottom of the bridge deck.

Insert a pull line in each inner duct with sufficient slack for future use.

Securely fasten all components to prevent movement during concrete placement.

Smooth all sleeve ends and make them flush with surrounding concrete surfaces. Remove burrs and rough edges by filing or grinding. A torch may be used to cut the ends of metal sleeves. Use shields to protect all surfaces during torch-cutting operations.

Place backfill in accordance with Section 300-7 of the Standard Specifications.

Fill the space between the raceway and the sleeve with mastic and jute. Install the mastic with a minimum distance of 2 inches at each end of the sleeve and the remaining interior space filled with jute. Finish the mastic by making it smooth and flush with the concrete.

Coordinate electrical conduit system work with work by others, and allow installation of circuitry or fiber optic cables during the construction process as directed by the Engineer.

Ensure that the concrete inserts are in the proper position and installed correctly, including when they are located in prestressed concrete deck panels.

Keep the raceway system clean of all debris during construction, with the completed system clean and ready for installation of circuitry or fiber optic cables.

The Engineer must inspect and approve all work before concealment.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

No direct measurement will be made for the conduit system, since it will be paid for on a lump sum basis.

ST-17

Payment for the conduit system will be made at the contract lump sum price for: “Electrical Conduit System for Signals at station 421+74.67 -L-”, “Electrical Conduit System for Signals at station 659+58.95 -L-” and “Electrical Conduit System for Signals at station 17+01.02 -Y11-”.

Such price and payment for the conduit system as provided above will be considered full compensation for all materials, equipment, and labor necessary to complete the work in accordance with the plans and these special provisions.

Payment will be made under:

Electrical Conduit System for Signals at station 421+74.67 -L-	Lump Sum.
Electrical Conduit System for Signals at station 659+58.95 -L-	Lump Sum.
Electrical Conduit System for Signals at station 17+01.02 -Y11-	Lump Sum.

ST-18

STEEL REINFORCED ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS

(6-22-16)

The 2018 Standard Specifications shall be revised as follows:

In **Section 1079-2(A) – Elastomeric Bearings** add the following after the second paragraph:

Internal holding pins are required for all shim plates when the contract plans indicate the structure contains the necessary corrosion protection for a corrosive site.

Repair laminated (reinforced) bearing pads utilizing external holding pins via vulcanization. Submit product data for repair material and a detailed application procedure to the Materials and Tests Unit for approval before use and annually thereafter.

ST-19

THERMAL SPRAYED COATINGS (METALLIZATION)

(12-1-17)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

Apply a thermal sprayed coating (TSC) and sealer to metal surfaces in accordance with the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program and as specified herein when called for on the plans or by other Special Provisions. Use only Arc Sprayed application methods to apply TSC. The Engineer must approve other methods of application.

The Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program is available on the Materials and Tests Unit website.

2.0 QUALIFICATIONS

Only use NCDOT approved TSC Contractors meeting the requirements outlined in the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program.

3.0 MATERIALS

Use only materials meeting the requirements of Section 7 of the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program.

4.0 SURFACE PREPARATION AND TSC APPLICATION

Surface preparation of TSC surfaces shall meet the requirements of Section 8 of the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program. Apply TSC with the alloy to the thickness specified on the plans or as required by Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program.

5.0 INSPECTION AND TESTING

The TSC Contractor must conduct inspections and tests listed in the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program.

6.0 REPAIRS

Perform all shop repairs in accordance with the procedures outlined in the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program.

Repairs associated with field welding shall be made by removing the existing metallizing by blast or power tool cleaning. Affected areas shall be addressed as follows:

- For Marine Environments, incorporate a minimum surface preparation in accordance with SSPC SP-11 (Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal) and require an approved epoxy mastic coating applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Apply a minimum of two (2) coats at a rate of 5-7 (WFT) per coat to the affected area.
- For Non-Marine Environments, incorporate a minimum surface preparation in accordance with SSPC SP-11 (Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal) and require an approved organic

ST-20

zinc-rich coating applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Apply a minimum of two (2) coats at a rate of 5-7 (WFT) per coat to the affected area.

1. Minor localized areas less than or equal to 0.1 ft² with exposed substrate shall be repaired as outlined above for marine and non-marine environments.
 2. Large localized areas greater than 0.1 ft² with exposed substrate shall require the Contractor to submit a detailed repair procedure to the Engineer for review and approval.
- Repair methods for areas where the substrate has not been exposed shall be mutually agreed upon between the Contractor and TSC Contractor as approved by the Engineer.

7.0 TWELVE MONTH OBSERVATION PERIOD

All TSC materials applied under the Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization) Program shall be evaluated twelve (12) months after project acceptance for defective materials and workmanship.

8.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The contract price bid for the metal component to which the TSC is applied will be full compensation for the thermal sprayed coating.

ST-21

ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE

(2-11-19)

DESCRIPTION

Elastomeric concrete is a mixture of a two-part polymer consisting of polyurethane and/or epoxy and kiln-dried aggregate. Provide an elastomeric concrete and binder system that is preapproved. Use the concrete in the blocked out areas on both sides of the bridge deck joints as indicated on the plans.

MATERIALS

Provide materials that comply with the following minimum requirements at 14 days (or at the end of the specified curing time).

ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE PROPERTIES	TEST METHOD	MINIMUM REQUIREMENT
Compressive Strength, psi	ASTM D695	2000
5% Deflection Resilience	ASTM D695	95
Splitting Tensile Strength, psi	ASTM D3967	625
Bond Strength to Concrete, psi	ASTM C882 (C882M)	450
Durometer Hardness	ASTM D2240	50

BINDER PROPERTIES (without aggregate)	TEST METHOD	MINIMUM REQUIREMENT
Tensile Strength, psi	ASTM D638	1000
Ultimate Elongation	ASTM D638	150%
Tear Resistance, lb/in	ASTM D624	200

In addition to the requirements above, the elastomeric concrete must be resistant to water, chemical, UV and ozone exposure and withstand temperature extremes. Elastomeric concrete systems requiring preheated aggregates are not allowed.

PREQUALIFICATION

Manufacturers of elastomeric concrete materials shall submit samples (including aggregate, primer and binder materials) and a Type 3 certification in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for prequalification to:

North Carolina Department of Transportation
Materials and Tests Unit
1801 Blue Ridge Road

ST-22

Raleigh, NC 27607

Prequalification will be determined for the system. Individual components will not be evaluated, nor will individual components of previously evaluated systems be deemed prequalified for use.

The submitted binder (a minimum volume of 1 gallon) and corresponding aggregate samples will be evaluated for compliance with the Materials requirements specified above. Systems satisfying all of the Materials requirements will be prequalified for a one year period. Before the end of this period new product samples shall be resubmitted for prequalification evaluation.

If, at any time, any formulation or component modifications are made to a prequalified system that system will no longer be approved for use.

INSTALLATION

The elastomeric concrete shall not be placed until the reinforced concrete deck slab has cured for seven (7) full days and reached a minimum strength of 3,000 psi.

Provide a manufacturer's representative at the bridge site during the installation of the elastomeric concrete to ensure that all steps being performed comply with all manufacturer installation requirements including, but not limited to weather conditions (ambient temperature, relative humidity, precipitation, wind, etc.), concrete deck surface preparation, binder and aggregate mixing, primer application, elastomeric concrete placement, curing conditions and minimum curing time before joint exposure to traffic. Do not place elastomeric concrete if the ambient air or surface temperature is below 45°F.

Prepare the concrete surface within 48 hours prior to placing the elastomeric concrete. Before placing the elastomeric concrete, all concrete surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned and dry. Sandblast the concrete surface in the blockout and clear the surface of all loose debris. Do not place the elastomeric concrete until the surface preparation is completed and approved.

Prepare and apply a primer, as per manufacturer's recommendations, to all concrete faces to be in contact with elastomeric concrete, and to areas specified by the manufacturer.

Prepare, batch, and place the elastomeric concrete in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Place the elastomeric concrete in the areas specified on the plans while the primer is still tacky and within two (2) hours after applying the primer. Trowel the elastomeric concrete to a smooth finish.

The joint opening in the elastomeric concrete shall match the formed opening in the concrete deck prior to sawing the joint.

FIELD SAMPLING

Provide additional production material to allow freshly mixed elastomeric concrete to be sampled for acceptance. A minimum of six (6) 2-inch cube molds and three (3) 3-inch diameter x 6-inch cylinders will be taken by the Department for each day's production. Compression, splitting tensile, and durometer hardness testing will be performed by the Department to determine

ST-23

acceptance. Materials failing to meet the requirements listed above are subject to removal and replacement at no cost to the Department.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for elastomeric concrete. The lump sum contract price bid for “Foam Joint Seals” or “Preformed Silicone Expansion Joint Seal” will be full compensation for furnishing and placing the Elastomeric Concrete.

ST-24

FOAM JOINT SEALS**(9-27-12)****1.0 SEALS**

Use preformed seals compatible with concrete and resistant to abrasion, oxidation, oils, gasoline, salt and other materials that are spilled on or applied to the surface. Use a resilient, UV stable, preformed, impermeable, flexible, expansion joint seal. The joint seal shall consist of low-density, closed cell, cross-linked polyethylene non-extrudable, foam. The joint seal shall contain no EVA (Ethylene Vinyl Acetate). Cell generation shall be achieved by being physically blown using nitrogen. No chemical blowing agents shall be used in the cell generation process.

Use seals manufactured with grooves $1/8'' \pm$ wide by $1/8'' \pm$ deep and spaced between $1/4''$ and $1/2''$ apart along the bond surface running the length of the joint. Use seals with a depth that meets the manufacturer's recommendation, but is not less than 70% of the uncompressed width. Provide a seal designed so that, when compressed, the center portion of the top does not extend upward above the original height of the seal by more than $1/4''$. Provide a seal that has a working range of 30% tension and 60% compression and meets the requirements given below.

TEST	TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENT
Tensile strength	ASTM D3575-08, Suffix T	110 – 130 psi
Compression Set	ASTM D1056 Suffix B, 2 hr recovery	10% - 16%
Water Absorption	ASTM D3575	< 0.03 lb/ft ²
Elongation at Break	ASTM D3575	180% - 210%
Tear Strength	ASTM D624 (D3575-08, Suffix G)	14 – 20 pli
Density	ASTM D3575-08, Suffix W, Method A	1.8 – 2.2 lb/ft ³
Toxicity	ISO-10993.5	Pass (not cytotoxic)

Have the top of the joint seal clearly shop marked. Inspect the joint seals upon receipt to ensure that the marks are clearly visible before installation.

ST-25

2.0 BONDING ADHESIVE

Use a two component, 100% solid, modified epoxy adhesive supplied by the joint seal manufacturer that meets the requirements given below.

TEST	TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENT
Tensile strength	ASTM D638	3000 psi (min.)
Compressive strength	ASTM D695	7000 psi (min.)
Hardness	Shore D Scale	75-85 psi
Water Absorption	ASTM D570	0.25% by weight max.
Elongation to Break	ASTM D638	5% (max.)
Bond Strength	ASTM C882	2000 psi (min.)

Use an adhesive that is workable to 40°F. When installing in ambient air or surface temperatures below 40°F or for application on moist, difficult to dry concrete surfaces, use an adhesive specified by the manufacturer of the joint seal.

3.0 SAWING THE JOINT

The joint opening shall be initially formed to the width shown on the plans including the blockout for the elastomeric concrete.

The elastomeric concrete shall have sufficient time to cure such that no damage can occur to the elastomeric concrete prior to sawing to the final width and depth as specified in the plans.

When sawing the joint to receive the foam seal, always use a rigid guide to control the saw in the desired direction. To control the saw and to produce a straight line as indicated on the plans, anchor and positively connect a template or a track to the bridge deck. Do not saw the joint by visual means such as a chalk line. Fill the holes used for holding the template or track to the deck with an approved, flowable non-shrink, non-metallic grout.

Saw cut to the desired width and depth in one or two passes of the saw by placing and spacing two metal blades on the saw shaft to the desired width for the joint opening.

The desired depth is the depth of the seal plus 1/4" above the top of the seal plus approximately 1" below the bottom of the seal. An irregular bottom of sawed joint is permitted as indicated on the plans. Grind exposed corners on saw cut edges to a 1/4" chamfer.

Saw cut a straight joint, centered over the formed opening and to the desired width specified in the plans. Prevent any chipping or damage to the sawed edges of the joint.

Remove any staining or deposited material resulting from sawing with a wet blade to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

ST-26

4.0 PREPARATION OF SAWED JOINT FOR SEAL INSTALLATION

The elastomeric concrete shall cure a minimum of 24 hours prior to seal installation.

After sawing the joint, the Engineer will thoroughly inspect the sawed joint opening for spalls, popouts, cracks, etc. All necessary repairs will be made by the Contractor prior to blast cleaning and installing the seal.

Clean the joints by sandblasting with clean dry sand immediately before placing the bonding agent. Sandblast the joint opening to provide a firm, clean joint surface free of curing compound, loose material and any foreign matter. Sandblast the joint opening without causing pitting or uneven surfaces. The aggregate in the elastomeric concrete may be exposed after sandblasting.

After blasting, either brush the surface with clean brushes made of hair, bristle or fiber, blow the surface with compressed air, or vacuum the surface until all traces of blast products and abrasives are removed from the surface, pockets, and corners.

If nozzle blasting is used to clean the joint opening, use compressed air that does not contain detrimental amounts of water or oil.

Examine the blast cleaned surface and remove any traces of oil, grease or smudge deposited in the cleaning operations.

Bond the seal to the blast cleaned surface on the same day the surface is blast cleaned.

5.0 SEAL INSTALLATION

Install the joint seal according to the manufacturer's procedures and recommendations and as recommended below. Do not install the joint seal if the ambient air or surface temperature is below 45°F. Have a manufacturer's certified trained factory representative present during the installation of the first seal of the project.

Before installing the joint seal, check the uninstalled seal length to insure the seal is the same length as the deck opening. When the joint seal requires splicing, use the heat welding method by placing the joint material ends against a teflon heating iron of 425-475°F for 7 - 10 seconds, then pressing the ends together tightly. Do not test the welding until the material has completely cooled.

Begin installation by protecting the top edges of the concrete deck adjacent to the vertical walls of the joint as a means to minimize clean up. After opening both cans of the bonding agent, stir each can using separate stirring rods for each component to prevent premature curing of the bonding agent. Pour the two components, at the specified mixing ratio, into a clean mixing bucket. Mix the components with a low speed drill (400 rpm max.) until a uniform gray color is achieved without visible marbling. Apply bonding agent to both sides of the elastomeric concrete as well as both sides of the joint seal, making certain to completely fill the grooves with epoxy. With gloved hands, compress the joint seal and with the help of a blunt probe, push the seal into the joint opening until the seal is recessed approximately 1/4" below the surface. When pushing down on the joint seal, apply pressure

ST-27

only in a downward direction. Do not push the joint seal into the joint opening at an angle that would stretch the material. Seals that are stretched during installation shall be removed and rejected. Once work on placing a seal begins, do not stop until it is completed. Clean the excess epoxy from the top of the joint seal immediately with a trowel. Do not use solvents or any cleaners to remove the excess epoxy from the top of the seal. Remove the protective cover at the joint edges and check for any excess epoxy on the surface. Remove excess epoxy with a trowel, the use of solvents or any cleaners will not be allowed.

The installed system shall be watertight and will be monitored until final inspection and approval. Do not place pavement markings on top of foam joint seals.

6.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment for all foam joint seals will be at the lump sum contract price bid for "Foam Joint Seals". Prices and payment will be full compensation for furnishing all material, including elastomeric concrete, labor, tools and equipment necessary for installing these units in place and accepted.

ST-28

EXPANSION JOINT SEALS

(9-30-11)

1.0 GENERAL

The work covered by this Special Provision consists of furnishing and installing the expansion joint seals as shown on the contract drawings. All materials, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary for the proper installation of the expansion joint seals are included.

2.0 MATERIAL

Provide expansion joint seals capable of accommodating a total movement measured parallel to the centerline of the roadway as shown on plans.

Provide an elastomeric component for each expansion joint seal that is a continuous unit for the entire length of the joint. Do not field splice the elastomeric component. Only vulcanized shop splicing of the elastomeric component is permitted. The minimum length of an elastomeric component before shop splicing is 20 feet. However, one piece shorter than 20 feet is permitted. Provide an elastomeric component that is clearly shop marked to indicate the top side and joint location of the elastomeric component. On skewed bridges, or under unsymmetrical conditions, clearly mark the left side of the elastomeric component. Left is defined as being on the left when facing in the direction of increasing station. Inspect the seals upon receipt to ensure that the marks are clearly visible upon installation.

Make sure the convolution of the gland does not project above the top of the hold-down plates when the joint opening is in the most compressed condition. Use either elastic polychloroprene (neoprene) or ethyl propylene diene monomer (EPDM) for the elastomer that meets the following minimum properties:

	ASTM TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENTS
Hardness, Durometer - Shore A	D2240	60 ± 5, Neoprene (upward corrugated shape - fabric reinforced) 75 ± 5, EPDM and Neoprene (upward non-corrugated shape) 80 ± 5, EPDM (upward corrugated shape-fabric reinforced)
Tensile Strength	D412	2000 psi (min.)
Elongation at Break	D412	250% (min.)
Width of Gland in Relaxed Condition	N/A	10" ± 0.25"

ST-29

Thickness of Upturned portion of gland	N/A	0.25" non-corrugated shape, -0.032" to +0.032"
Thickness of Upturned portion of gland	N/A	0.1875" corrugated shape, -0.032" to +0.032"
Thickness of Flat portion of gland	N/A	0.1563", -0.032" to +0.032"

For fabric reinforced glands, submit one unreinforced sample per lot number, up to 500 feet of Expansion Joint Seal, to the Engineer for testing.

Only field splice hold-down plates at crown points, at abrupt changes in the deck slab cross slope, and on lane lines. Splicing within travel lanes is not permitted and splicing on edge lines is not required. Field splice hold-down plates between the edge line and gutter upturn and where necessary for proper installation and alignment is permitted. Show all splice locations on the working drawings for approval. For the location of lane markings at the expansion joint seal, see the Structure plans. At the splice locations, locate the hold-down bolts 3 inches from the end of the hold-down plate. At splice locations where changes in deck slab cross slope occur, cut the ends of hold-down plates parallel to the bridge centerline for skews less than 80° and greater than 100°.

Do not use welded shop splices in hold-down plates.

3.0 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit nine sets of working drawings to the Engineer for review, comments and acceptance. Show complete details drawn to scale and include:

- The proposed template details including the makeup of the template
- The proposed method of holding the base angle assembly in place while concrete is cast around it
- The proposed procedure to correct for the effects of beam movement and rotation when setting width of joint opening
- The proposed chronology of installation including the sequence and direction of the concrete casting
- The details of cross connectors between base angles, such as steel bars with slots bolted to angles, to maintain evenness between the adjacent base angles while accommodating movement that occurs when concrete is cast. Indicate when bolts are loosened to allow movement.
- The proposed method for removing the hold-down plate
- A section detail through the joint showing horizontal offset dimensions of the base angles from the centerline joint. This detail is required when the vertical face of the joint opening is not perpendicular to the roadway surface (e.g. when the roadway grade is significant).

ST-30

Have someone other than the one who prepares the drawing check all detailed drawings and include the signatures of both the drafter and checker on each sheet of the drawings. The Engineer returns unchecked drawings to the Contractor. Provide all completed drawings well in advance of the scheduled installation time for the expansion joint seal.

4.0 INSTALLATION

Provide supports for the base angle assembly at a maximum spacing of 9 feet. Place supports near field splices of base angles to ensure that field splices are straight and even. Provide base angles with ½" diameter weep holes at 12 inch centers to allow bleeding of trapped air and/or water. Do not obstruct the weep holes with falsework. Make the bottom of the trough parallel to grade and the sides parallel to the sides of the expansion joint seal.

For damaged areas, depressions, spalls, cracks, or irregularities of curbs or decks adjacent to the expansion joint, submit a proposed method of repair and repair material specifications for approval.

If the Engineer deems any aspects of the expansion joint seals unacceptable, make necessary corrections.

5.0 INSPECTION

When concrete is cast, use a non-aluminum, 10 foot, true to line straight edge to check and grade the top of the slab on each side of the joint to ensure smooth transition between spans.

Watertight Integrity Test

- Upon completion of an expansion joint seal, perform a water test on the top surface to detect any leakage. Cover the roadway section of the joint from curb to curb, or barrier rail to barrier rail, with water, either ponded or flowing, not less than 1 inch above the roadway surface at all points. Block sidewalk sections and secure an unnozzled water hose delivering approximately 1 gallon of water per minute to the inside face of the bridge railing, trained in a downward position about 6 inches above the sidewalks, such that there is continuous flow of water across the sidewalk and down the curb face of the joint.
- Maintain the ponding or flowing of water on the roadway and continuous flow across sidewalks and curbs for a period of 5 hours. At the conclusion of the test, the underside of the joint is closely examined for leakage. The expansion joint seal is considered watertight if no obvious wetness is visible on the Engineer's finger after touching a number of underdeck areas. Damp concrete that does not impart wetness to the finger is not a sign of leakage.
- If the joint system leaks, locate the place(s) of leakage and take any repair measures necessary to stop the leakage at no additional cost to the Department. Use repair measures recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer prior to beginning corrective work.
- If measures to eliminate leakage are taken, perform a subsequent water integrity test subject to the same conditions as the original test. Subsequent tests carry the same

ST-31

responsibility as the original test and are performed at no extra cost to the Department.

6.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Basis of payment for all expansion joint seals will be at the lump sum contract price for "Expansion Joint Seals" which price and payment will be full compensation for furnishing all material, including any steel accessory plates for sidewalks, medians and rails, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary for installing the expansion joint seal in place and including all materials, labor, tools and incidentals for performing the original watertight integrity test.

ST-32

SOUND BARRIER WALL

(5-17-18)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

This work consists of furnishing precast panels with an architectural surface treatment, structural steel, concrete, handling, transporting, fabricating, galvanizing, storing materials, furnishing erection drawings, pile excavation, backfilling, erecting and installing the sound barrier wall members and all other materials as required by the plans, Standard Specifications and this Special Provision.

Precast panels with an architectural surface treatment shall be constructed using form lining materials and patterns to match the appearance (size, shape, color, texture, pattern, and relief) of the textured finish as specified on the plans and approved by the Engineer.

The contractor is required to use the same form liner and coloration contractor to construct the precast panels with an architectural surface treatment.

The Standard Plans allow pile spacing of 10, 15 or 20 feet. Pile spacing greater than 15 feet will not be allowed for the precast concrete panels detailed in the standard plans. Provide consistent pile spacing for the entire length of the wall. Use odd pile spacing, if necessary, only at the ends of the wall and at turning points as approved by the Engineer. Architectural surface treatment shall not be applied to piles. Piles shall have a smooth, non-textured finish, and remain unstained in their natural color.

A maximum one foot drop or rise in elevation between wall sections is permitted. Elevation changes greater than one foot, if necessary, will be allowed only at the end of the wall. Top of wall elevation changes that result in a jagged appearance will not be allowed.

2.0 QUALIFICATIONS

Prior to beginning work the contractor shall submit the following qualifications to the Engineer for approval:

A. Architectural Surface Treatment Construction

The Contractor shall have a minimum of three years of experience in architectural concrete surface treatment construction on similar types of projects. The Contractor shall furnish to the Engineer 3 references who were responsible for supervision of similar projects. Include name, address, telephone number, and specific type of application.

B. Form Liners and Coloring System

The manufacturer of form liners for the standard textured finishes and coloring system shall have at least five years of experience making molds and color stains to create formed concrete surfaces to match the specified textured finish and colors. The Contractor shall schedule a pre-installation conference with a form liner manufacturer representative and the Engineer to assure understanding of simulated textured finish form liner use, color application, requirements for construction of sample panel(s), and to coordinate the work.

ST-33

The Contractor shall be required to disclose their source of form liner manufacturer and final coloration contractor prior to the Preconstruction Conference.

3.0 ALTERNATE PILE SPACING FOR STANDARD PRECAST PANELS

As an alternate, the Contractor may submit plans for pile spacings greater than 10 feet and less than 15 feet for review and approval. The pile excavation diameter, excavation depth and reinforcing steel shall be equal to the amount shown on the existing plans for the 15 feet pile spacing. A variance in the reinforcing steel will be allowed for the length of horizontal and number of vertical reinforcement bars in the precast panel for the alternate pile spacing.

Submit two sets of detailed plans for review. Include all details in the plans, including the size and spacing of required reinforcement necessary to fabricate the precast panels. Have a North Carolina registered Professional Engineer check, seal and date the plans. After the plans are reviewed and, if necessary, corrections made, submit one set of reproducible tracings on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

4.0 ALTERNATE WALL TYPE

Walls that have been assigned "Approved" or "Approved for Provisional Use" status by the Product Evaluation Program will be considered for substitution to the detailed Standard Sound Barrier Wall only when noted on the plans. Alternate wall types, piles and pile spacing must meet the design and construction requirements of the project. Pile spacing greater than 20 feet will not be permitted. Alternate pile and wall structural stability and connection details shall conform to the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications.

Prior to submittal of Working Drawings, as described herein, submit a copy of the signed NCDOT Product Status Notification Letter and two sets of preliminary plans for review and approval. Include material specifications for all components. Once preliminary plans are approved, submit Working Drawings in accordance with all applicable portions of the requirements herein, including details necessary to fabricate and construct the proposed alternate.

Have a North Carolina registered Professional Engineer check, seal and date the plans and, when requested, provide calculations. After the plans are reviewed and, if necessary, corrections made, submit one set of reproducible tracings on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

5.0 WORKING DRAWINGS

Submit precast panel casting drawings in accordance with Article 1077-2 of the Standard Specifications prior to casting. Show the inserts, method of handling, and support details used for transportation on the casting drawings. Submit fabrication drawings for approval prior to fabrication of wall components. Submit an erection plan and precast panel placing plan, including location of various heights of panels, for review and acceptance prior to fabrication of forms. Submit five sets of detail drawings on 22" x 34" sheets.

ST-34

Submit for review and acceptance, wall plan and elevation views and details showing overall simulated textured pattern, joint locations, and end, edge or other special conditions. The drawings should include typical cross sections of precast panels, joints, corners, texture relief, texture size, pitch/working line, mortar joint and bed depths. If necessary, the Contractor shall revise the working drawings until the proposed form liner patterns and arrangement have been accepted by the Engineer. Working drawings should be of sufficient scale to show the detail of all textured finishes and joint patterns. Shop drawings shall be reviewed and approved prior to fabrication of form liners.

6.0 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION OF STANDARD PRECAST PANELS

Provide materials and fabricate members in accordance with the requirements of Division 10 of the Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. Provide precast panels 4 inches \pm $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick, excluding relief for a textured finish. Architectural surface treatment shall consist of a standard textured finish and a single color of stain applied to both faces of the precast panels as specified on the plans and approved by the Engineer. Relief of any texture is not to exceed an average depth of 1 inch. No textured finish or stain shall be applied on the uppermost foot of each wall segment and along the vertical edges of the panels. These areas shall have a smooth, non-textured finish, and remain in its natural concrete color.

Furnish three 12" x 12" samples for approval which establish the acceptable variations in color, texture, and uniformity. After the color, texture, and uniformity of the furnished samples are approved, produce a full scale panel unit meeting design requirements. This mock-up and the furnished samples establish the standard quality for determining acceptance of the panels. When producing the final installed panels, use fine and coarse aggregate, retarder, and cement from the same source as those used in the approved sample panels.

The standard textured finish shall be constructed using form lining materials. The form liner shall be a high quality, re-useable product manufactured of high strength urethane rubber or other approved material which attaches easily to the form work system, and shall not compress more than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch when concrete is poured at a rate of 10 vertical feet per hour. The form liners shall be removable without causing deterioration of the surface or underlying concrete.

The form liner shall be patterned such that long continuous horizontal or vertical lines do not occur on the finished exposed surface. The line pattern shall be random in nature and shall conceal construction joint lines.

Prior to each concrete pour, the form liners shall be clean and free of build-up. Each liner shall be visually inspected for blemishes and tears. Repairs shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Repairs shall be accepted by the Engineer before being used. Form liner panels that do not perform as intended or are no longer repairable shall be replaced.

Form liners shall be securely attached to forms in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, with less than a $\frac{1}{4}$ inch seam. Blend form liner butt joints into the textured surface pattern and finish off the final concrete surface. Create no visible vertical or horizontal seams or conspicuous form liner butt joint marks. At locations where the form liners are joined, carefully blend to match the balance of the textured finish.

ST-35

Form liners shall be installed to withstand anticipated concrete placement pressures without leakage and without causing physical or visual defects.

When the approved textured finish requires simulated grout pattern joints, construct grout pattern joints to simulate the appearance of mortared joints produced in laid up masonry work. Grout pattern joints shall be produced in accordance with the form liner / concrete color system manufacturer.

The Contractor shall have a technical representative from the form liner manufacturer on site for technical supervision during the installation and removal of form liners. Unless directed by the Engineer, installation and removal of form liners shall not be permitted if the technical representative is not present.

Form release agent shall be a non-staining petroleum distillate free from water, asphaltic, and other insoluble residue, or an equivalent product and shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The form release agent shall be compatible with the form liner material, the concrete coloring system, any special surface finish and in accordance with this Special Provision. Form release agent should be worked into all areas, especially pattern recesses.

All form defects in finished uncolored surface shall be filled or repaired within 48 hours of form removal. Use patching materials and procedures in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Precast concrete shall be finished in accordance with the Standard Specifications, except that curing of concrete should be done to accommodate the application of coloring and surface finish treatment.

7.0 SURFACE COLORING

All surfaces that are to receive coloring agent application shall be free of all laitance, dirt, dust, grease, efflorescence, paint or any other foreign material prior to the application of coloring agent. Cleaning of surfaces to be accomplished by pressure washing with water set at 3,000 psi to remove laitance. The fan nozzle shall be held perpendicular to the surface at a distance of 1 to 2 feet. Sandblasting will not be permitted.

Surface coloring shall be achieved using an approved stain suitable for the purpose intended and applied in a manner consistent with the design intent of the project. Color system shall be a single color of stain in brown or gray tones as specified on the plans and approved by the Engineer. The approved sample panel shall be the basis for determining the appropriate stain application.

The coloring agent shall be a penetrating stain mix or other approved coloring system designed for exterior application on old or new concrete with field evidence of resistance to moisture, acid or alkali, mildew, mold or fungus discoloration or degradation. The coloring agent shall be breathable, allowing moisture and vapor transmission. Final coloring system and color of stain are subject to approval by the Engineer.

ST-36

Application of coloring/staining agent to finished precast concrete and patches shall occur at a minimum of 30 days after form liners are removed. Maintain the concrete temperature between 40°F and 85°F during color/stain application and for 48 hours after color/stain application. Consult the manufacturer's recommendations for preparation, application, curing, and storage of coloring agents/stains. The contractor shall provide a Color Application Artist who is experienced in producing realistic surface appearances. Treated surfaces located adjacent to exposed soil or pavement shall be temporarily covered to prevent dirt or soil splatter from rain.

Final surface shall be free of blemishes, discolorations, surface voids, and other irregularities. All patterns should be continuous without visual disruption. Linear butt joints shall be carefully blended into the approved pattern and finished off the final concrete surface. No visible vertical or horizontal seams or conspicuous form marks created by butt joining will be permitted.

Following the completion of all work, repairs of any damage made by other construction operations shall be made to the form lined and colored surfaces as directed by the Engineer.

8.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Complete the final survey of existing ground profile after clearing the wall area but prior to submitting any working drawings. Submit the final groundline survey with the working drawings.

If the Department is responsible for the survey, the Engineer field verifies the existing ground profile along the sound barrier wall. Contact the Engineer to obtain the survey information. Otherwise, complete the existing ground survey prior to submittal of working drawings.

Excavate holes with the diameters shown on the plans. Perform pile excavation to the depths shown on the plans and install piles as shown on the plans or in the accepted submittals with a tolerance of ½ inch per foot from vertical. Backfill excavations with concrete after placing piles.

A. Pile Excavation

Use equipment of adequate capacity and capable of drilling through soil and non-soil including rock, boulders, debris, man-made objects and any other materials encountered. Blasting is not permitted to advance the excavation. Blasting for core removal is only permitted when approved by the Engineer. Dispose of drilling spoils in accordance with Section 802 of the Standard Specifications and as directed by the Engineer. Drilling spoils consist of all excavated material including water removed from the excavation either by pumping or drilling tools.

If unstable, caving or sloughing soils are anticipated or encountered, stabilize excavations with either slurry or steel casing. When using slurry, submit slurry details including product information, manufacturer's recommendations for use, slurry equipment information and written approval from the slurry supplier that the mixing water is acceptable before beginning drilling. When using steel casing, use either the sectional type or one continuous corrugated or non-corrugated piece. Steel casings should consist

ST-37

of clean watertight steel of ample strength to withstand handling and driving stresses and the pressures imposed by concrete, earth or backfill. Use steel casings with an outside diameter equal to the hole size and a minimum wall thickness of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.

B. Concrete Placement

Before placing concrete, center and support the pile in the excavation and check the water inflow rate in the excavation after any pumps have been removed. If the inflow rate is less than 6 inches per half hour, remove any water and free fall the concrete into the excavation. Ensure that concrete flows completely around the pile. If the water inflow rate is greater than 6 inches per half hour, propose a concrete placement procedure to the Engineer. The Engineer shall approve the concrete placement procedure before placing concrete.

Fill the excavation with Class A concrete in accordance with Section 1000 of the Standard Specifications except as modified herein. Provide concrete with a slump of 6 to 8 inches. Use an approved high-range water reducer to achieve this slump. Place concrete in a continuous manner and remove all casings.

9.0 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

The quantity of form liner textured finish and coloring stain to be paid for will be the actual square feet of architectural surface treatment that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. The area of architectural surface treatment will be measured by the area of treated panels. Do not include the uppermost foot of each wall segment, panel vertical edges without architectural surface treatment, or piles in the measurement. Area of sample panels shall not be included in the measurement of architectural surface treatment.

The quantity of sound barrier wall to be paid for will be the actual square feet of completed and accepted wall. In any individual section of sound barrier wall or in comparably dimensioned sections, the wall height is from the bottom of the bottom panel to the top of the top panel and the width is the distance between the centerline of the piles at the ends of the section. Include the full width of the piles at the ends of the wall.

10.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The quantity of sound barrier wall and architectural surface treatment, measured as provided above, will be paid for at the contract unit price bid per square foot.

The unit price bid per square foot for "Sound Barrier Wall" will be full compensation for work covered by this Special Provision including, but not limited to, furnishing precast panels, steel or concrete piles, miscellaneous structural steel, concrete, and all other materials; handling, transporting, fabricating, galvanizing, and storing materials; furnishing erection drawings, backfilling, pile excavation including any casing or slurry, and erecting and installing the sound barrier wall members.

The unit price bid per square foot for "Architectural Surface Treatment" will be full compensation for the architectural treatment covered by this Special Provision including, but not limited to, furnishing architectural detail drawings, sample panels; the construction,

ST-38

finishing, and removal of all equipment, materials, labor, and incidentals necessary for furnishing and use of all form liners to produce approved textured finish and application of approved surface coloring.

Payment will be made under:

Sound Barrier Wall..... Square Foot

Architectural Surface Treatment.....Square Foot

ST-39

FALSEWORK AND FORMWORK

(4-5-12)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

Use this Special Provision as a guide to develop temporary works submittals required by the Standard Specifications or other provisions; no additional submittals are required herein. Such temporary works include, but are not limited to, falsework and formwork.

Falsework is any temporary construction used to support the permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting. Formwork is the temporary structure or mold used to retain plastic or fluid concrete in its designated shape until it hardens. Access scaffolding is a temporary structure that functions as a work platform that supports construction personnel, materials, and tools, but is not intended to support the structure. Scaffolding systems that are used to temporarily support permanent structures (as opposed to functioning as work platforms) are considered to be falsework under the definitions given. Shoring is a component of falsework such as horizontal, vertical, or inclined support members. Where the term “temporary works” is used, it includes all of the temporary facilities used in bridge construction that do not become part of the permanent structure.

Design and construct safe and adequate temporary works that will support all loads imposed and provide the necessary rigidity to achieve the lines and grades shown on the plans in the final structure.

2.0 MATERIALS

Select materials suitable for temporary works; however, select materials that also ensure the safety and quality required by the design assumptions. The Engineer has authority to reject material on the basis of its condition, inappropriate use, safety, or nonconformance with the plans. Clearly identify allowable loads or stresses for all materials or manufactured devices on the plans. Revise the plan and notify the Engineer if any change to materials or material strengths is required.

3.0 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Working Drawings

Provide working drawings for items as specified in the contract, or as required by the Engineer, with design calculations and supporting data in sufficient detail to permit a structural and safety review of the proposed design of the temporary work.

On the drawings, show all information necessary to allow the design of any component to be checked independently as determined by the Engineer.

When concrete placement is involved, include data such as the drawings of proposed sequence, rate of placement, direction of placement, and location of all construction joints. Submit the number of copies as called for by the contract.

When required, have the drawings and calculations prepared under the guidance of, and sealed by, a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer who is knowledgeable in temporary works design.

ST-40

If requested by the Engineer, submit with the working drawings manufacturer's catalog data listing the weight of all construction equipment that will be supported on the temporary work. Show anticipated total settlements and/or deflections of falsework and forms on the working drawings. Include falsework footing settlements, joint take-up, and deflection of beams or girders.

As an option for the Contractor, overhang falsework hangers may be uniformly spaced, at a maximum of 36 inches, provided the following conditions are met:

Member Type (PCG)	Member Depth, (inches)	Max. Overhang Width, (inches)	Max. Slab Edge Thickness, (inches)	Max. Screed Wheel Weight, (lbs.)	Bracket Min. Vertical Leg Extension, (inches)
II	36	39	14	2000	26
III	45	42	14	2000	35
IV	54	45	14	2000	44
MBT	63	51	12	2000	50
MBT	72	55	12	1700	48

Overhang width is measured from the centerline of the girder to the edge of the deck slab.

For Type II, III & IV prestressed concrete girders (PCG), 45-degree cast-in-place half hangers and rods must have a minimum safe working load of 6,000 lbs.

For MBT prestressed concrete girders, 45-degree angle holes for falsework hanger rods shall be cast through the girder top flange and located, measuring along the top of the member, 1'-2 1/2" from the edge of the top flange. Hanger hardware and rods must have a minimum safe working load of 6,000 lbs.

The overhang bracket provided for the diagonal leg shall have a minimum safe working load of 3,750 lbs. The vertical leg of the bracket shall extend to the point that the heel bears on the girder bottom flange, no closer than 4 inches from the bottom of the member. However, for 72-inch members, the heel of the bracket shall bear on the web, near the bottom flange transition.

Provide adequate overhang falsework and determine the appropriate adjustments for deck geometry, equipment, casting procedures and casting conditions.

If the optional overhang falsework spacing is used, indicate this on the falsework submittal and advise the girder producer of the proposed details. Failure to notify the Engineer of hanger type and hanger spacing on prestressed concrete girder casting drawings may delay the approval of those drawings.

Falsework hangers that support concentrated loads and are installed at the edge of thin top flange concrete girders (such as bulb tee girders) shall be spaced so as not to exceed 75% of the manufacturer's stated safe working load. Use of dual leg hangers (such as Meadow Burke HF-42 and HF-43) are not allowed on concrete girders with thin top flanges. Design the falsework and forms supporting deck slabs and overhangs on girder

ST-41

bridges so that there will be no differential settlement between the girders and the deck forms during placement of deck concrete.

When staged construction of the bridge deck is required, detail falsework and forms for screed and fluid concrete loads to be independent of any previous deck pour components when the mid-span girder deflection due to deck weight is greater than $\frac{3}{4}$ ".

Note on the working drawings any anchorages, connectors, inserts, steel sleeves or other such devices used as part of the falsework or formwork that remains in the permanent structure. If the plan notes indicate that the structure contains the necessary corrosion protection required for a Corrosive Site, epoxy coat, galvanize or metalize these devices. Electroplating will not be allowed. Any coating required by the Engineer will be considered incidental to the various pay items requiring temporary works.

Design falsework and formwork requiring submittals in accordance with the 1995 AASHTO *Guide Design Specifications for Bridge Temporary Works* except as noted herein.

1. Wind Loads

Table 2.2 of Article 2.2.5.1 is modified to include wind velocities up to 110 mph. In addition, Table 2.2A is included to provide the maximum wind speeds by county in North Carolina.

Table 2.2 - Wind Pressure Values

Height Zone feet above ground	Pressure, lb/ft ² for Indicated Wind Velocity, mph				
	70	80	90	100	110
0 to 30	15	20	25	30	35
30 to 50	20	25	30	35	40
50 to 100	25	30	35	40	45
over 100	30	35	40	45	50

2. Time of Removal

The following requirements replace those of Article 3.4.8.2.

Do not remove forms until the concrete has attained strengths required in Article 420-16 of the Standard Specifications and these Special Provisions.

Do not remove forms until the concrete has sufficient strength to prevent damage to the surface.

ST-42

Table 2.2A - Steady State Maximum Wind Speeds by Counties in North Carolina

COUNTY	25 YR (mph)	COUNTY	25 YR (mph)	COUNTY	25 YR (mph)
Alamance	70	Franklin	70	Pamlico	100
Alexander	70	Gaston	70	Pasquotank	100
Alleghany	70	Gates	90	Pender	100
Anson	70	Graham	80	Perquimans	100
Ashe	70	Granville	70	Person	70
Avery	70	Greene	80	Pitt	90
Beaufort	100	Guilford	70	Polk	80
Bertie	90	Halifax	80	Randolph	70
Bladen	90	Harnett	70	Richmond	70
Brunswick	100	Haywood	80	Robeson	80
Buncombe	80	Henderson	80	Rockingham	70
Burke	70	Hertford	90	Rowan	70
Cabarrus	70	Hoke	70	Rutherford	70
Caldwell	70	Hyde	110	Sampson	90
Camden	100	Iredell	70	Scotland	70
Carteret	110	Jackson	80	Stanley	70
Caswell	70	Johnston	80	Stokes	70
Catawba	70	Jones	100	Surry	70
Cherokee	80	Lee	70	Swain	80
Chatham	70	Lenoir	90	Transylvania	80
Chowan	90	Lincoln	70	Tyrell	100
Clay	80	Macon	80	Union	70
Cleveland	70	Madison	80	Vance	70
Columbus	90	Martin	90	Wake	70
Craven	100	McDowell	70	Warren	70
Cumberland	80	Mecklenburg	70	Washington	100
Currituck	100	Mitchell	70	Watauga	70
Dare	110	Montgomery	70	Wayne	80
Davidson	70	Moore	70	Wilkes	70
Davie	70	Nash	80	Wilson	80
Duplin	90	New Hanover	100	Yadkin	70
Durham	70	Northampton	80	Yancey	70
Edgecombe	80	Onslow	100		
Forsyth	70	Orange	70		

ST-43

B. Review and Approval

The Engineer is responsible for the review and approval of temporary works' drawings.

Submit the working drawings sufficiently in advance of proposed use to allow for their review, revision (if needed), and approval without delay to the work.

The time period for review of the working drawings does not begin until complete drawings and design calculations, when required, are received by the Engineer.

Do not start construction of any temporary work for which working drawings are required until the drawings have been approved. Such approval does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the accuracy and adequacy of the working drawings.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

All requirements of Section 420 of the Standard Specifications apply.

Construct temporary works in conformance with the approved working drawings. Ensure that the quality of materials and workmanship employed is consistent with that assumed in the design of the temporary works. Do not weld falsework members to any portion of the permanent structure unless approved. Show any welding to the permanent structure on the approved construction drawings.

Provide tell-tales attached to the forms and extending to the ground, or other means, for accurate measurement of falsework settlement. Make sure that the anticipated compressive settlement and/or deflection of falsework does not exceed 1 inch. For cast-in-place concrete structures, make sure that the calculated deflection of falsework flexural members does not exceed 1/240 of their span regardless of whether or not the deflection is compensated by camber strips.

A. Maintenance and Inspection

Inspect and maintain the temporary work in an acceptable condition throughout the period of its use. Certify that the manufactured devices have been maintained in a condition to allow them to safely carry their rated loads. Clearly mark each piece so that its capacity can be readily determined at the job site.

Perform an in-depth inspection of an applicable portion(s) of the temporary works, in the presence of the Engineer, not more than 24 hours prior to the beginning of each concrete placement. Inspect other temporary works at least once a month to ensure that they are functioning properly. Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer inspect the cofferdams, shoring, sheathing, support of excavation structures, and support systems for load tests prior to loading.

B. Foundations

Determine the safe bearing capacity of the foundation material on which the supports for temporary works rest. If required by the Engineer, conduct load tests to verify proposed bearing capacity values that are marginal or in other high-risk situations.

ST-44

The use of the foundation support values shown on the contract plans of the permanent structure is permitted if the foundations are on the same level and on the same soil as those of the permanent structure.

Allow for adequate site drainage or soil protection to prevent soil saturation and washout of the soil supporting the temporary works supports.

If piles are used, the estimation of capacities and later confirmation during construction using standard procedures based on the driving characteristics of the pile is permitted. If preferred, use load tests to confirm the estimated capacities; or, if required by the Engineer conduct load tests to verify bearing capacity values that are marginal or in other high risk situations.

The Engineer reviews and approves the proposed pile and soil bearing capacities.

5.0 REMOVAL

Unless otherwise permitted, remove and keep all temporary works upon completion of the work. Do not disturb or otherwise damage the finished work.

Remove temporary works in conformance with the contract documents. Remove them in such a manner as to permit the structure to uniformly and gradually take the stresses due to its own weight.

6.0 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

Unless otherwise specified, temporary works will not be directly measured.

7.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items requiring temporary works will be full compensation for the above falsework and formwork.

ST-45

SUBMITTAL OF WORKING DRAWINGS

(6-28-17)

1.0 GENERAL

Submit working drawings in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications* and this provision. For this provision, “submittals” refers to only those listed in this provision. The list of submittals contained herein does not represent a list of required submittals for the project. Submittals are only necessary for those items as required by the contract. Make submittals that are not specifically noted in this provision directly to the Engineer. Either the Structures Management Unit or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit or both units will jointly review submittals.

If a submittal contains variations from plan details or specifications or significantly affects project cost, field construction or operations, discuss the submittal with and submit all copies to the Engineer. State the reason for the proposed variation in the submittal. To minimize review time, make sure all submittals are complete when initially submitted. Provide a contact name and information with each submittal. Direct any questions regarding submittal requirements to the Engineer, Structures Management Unit contacts or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit contacts noted below.

In order to facilitate in-plant inspection by NCDOT and approval of working drawings, provide the name, address and telephone number of the facility where fabrication will actually be done if different than shown on the title block of the submitted working drawings. This includes, but is not limited to, precast concrete items, prestressed concrete items and fabricated steel or aluminum items.

2.0 ADDRESSES AND CONTACTS

For submittals to the Structures Management Unit, use the following addresses:

Via US mail:

Mr. B. C. Hanks, P. E.
State Structures Engineer
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Structures Management Unit
1581 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1581

Attention: Mr. J. L. Bolden, P. E.

Via other delivery service:

Mr. B. C. Hanks, P. E.
State Structures Engineer
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Structures Management Unit
1000 Birch Ridge Drive
Raleigh, NC 27610

Attention: Mr. J. L. Bolden, P. E.

Submittals may also be made via email.

Send submittals to:

jlbolden@ncdot.gov (James Bolden)

Send an additional e-copy of the submittal to the following address:

eomile@ncdot.gov (Emmanuel Omile)

mrorie@ncdot.gov (Madonna Rorie)

ST-46

For submittals to the Geotechnical Engineering Unit, use the following addresses:

For projects in Divisions 1-7, use the following Eastern Regional Office address:

Via US mail:

Mr. Chris Kreider, P. E.
Eastern Regional Geotechnical
Manager
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
Eastern Regional Office
1570 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1570

Via other delivery service:

Mr. Chris Kreider, P. E.
Eastern Regional Geotechnical
Manager
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
Eastern Regional Office
3301 Jones Sausage Road, Suite 100
Garner, NC 27529

Via Email: EastGeotechnicalSubmittal@ncdot.gov

For projects in Divisions 8-14, use the following Western Regional Office address:

Via US mail or other delivery service:

Mr. Eric Williams, P. E.
Western Regional Geotechnical
Manager
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
Western Regional Office
5253 Z Max Boulevard
Harrisburg, NC 28075

Via Email: WestGeotechnicalSubmittal@ncdot.gov

The status of the review of structure-related submittals sent to the Structures Management Unit can be viewed from the Unit's website, via the "Drawing Submittal Status" link.

The status of the review of geotechnical-related submittals sent to the Geotechnical Engineering Unit can be viewed from the Unit's website, via the "Geotechnical Construction Submittals" link.

Direct any questions concerning submittal review status, review comments or drawing markups to the following contacts:

Primary Structures Contact: James Bolden (919) 707 – 6408
(919) 250 – 4082 facsimile
jlbolden@ncdot.gov

Secondary Structures Contacts: Emmanuel Omile (919) 707 – 6451
Madonna Rorie (919) 707 – 6508

ST-47

Eastern Regional Geotechnical Contact (Divisions 1-7):

Chris Kreider (919) 662 – 4710
ckreider@ncdot.gov

Western Regional Geotechnical Contact (Divisions 8-14):

Eric Williams (704) 455 – 8902
ewilliams3@ncdot.gov

3.0 SUBMITTAL COPIES

Furnish one complete copy of each submittal, including all attachments, to the Engineer. At the same time, submit the number of hard copies shown below of the same complete submittal directly to the Structures Management Unit and/or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit.

The first table below covers “Structure Submittals”. The Engineer will receive review comments and drawing markups for these submittals from the Structures Management Unit. The second table in this section covers “Geotechnical Submittals”. The Engineer will receive review comments and drawing markups for these submittals from the Geotechnical Engineering Unit.

Unless otherwise required, submit one set of supporting calculations to either the Structures Management Unit or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit unless both units require submittal copies in which case submit a set of supporting calculations to each unit. Provide additional copies of any submittal as directed.

STRUCTURE SUBMITTALS

Submittal	Copies Required by Structures Management Unit	Copies Required by Geotechnical Engineering Unit	Contract Reference Requiring Submittal ¹
Arch Culvert Falsework	5	0	Plan Note, SN Sheet & “Falsework and Formwork”
Box Culvert Falsework ⁷	5	0	Plan Note, SN Sheet & “Falsework and Formwork”
Cofferdams	6	2	Article 410-4
Foam Joint Seals ⁶	9	0	“Foam Joint Seals”
Expansion Joint Seals (hold down plate type with base angle)	9	0	“Expansion Joint Seals”

ST-48

Expansion Joint Seals (modular)	2, then 9	0	“Modular Expansion Joint Seals”
Expansion Joint Seals (strip seals)	9	0	“Strip Seals”
Falsework & Forms ² (substructure)	8	0	Article 420-3 & “Falsework and Formwork”
Falsework & Forms (superstructure)	8	0	Article 420-3 & “Falsework and Formwork”
Girder Erection over Railroad	5	0	Railroad Provisions
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure	8	0	“Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station ____”
Metal Bridge Railing	8	0	Plan Note
Metal Stay-in-Place Forms	8	0	Article 420-3
Metalwork for Elastomeric Bearings ^{4,5}	7	0	Article 1072-8
Miscellaneous Metalwork ^{4,5}	7	0	Article 1072-8
Disc Bearings ⁴	8	0	“Disc Bearings”
Overhead and Digital Message Signs (DMS) (metalwork and foundations)	13	0	Applicable Provisions
Placement of Equipment on Structures (cranes, etc.)	7	0	Article 420-20
Precast Concrete Box Culverts	2, then 1 reproducible	0	“Optional Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Culvert at Station ____”
Prestressed Concrete Cored Slab (detensioning sequences) ³	6	0	Article 1078-11
Prestressed Concrete Deck Panels	6 and 1 reproducible	0	Article 420-3
Prestressed Concrete Girder (strand elongation and detensioning sequences)	6	0	Articles 1078-8 and 1078-11
Removal of Existing Structure over Railroad	5	0	Railroad Provisions

ST-49

Revised Bridge Deck Plans (adaptation to prestressed deck panels)	2, then 1 reproducible	0	Article 420-3
Revised Bridge Deck Plans (adaptation to modular expansion joint seals)	2, then 1 reproducible	0	“Modular Expansion Joint Seals”
Sound Barrier Wall (precast items)	10	0	Article 1077-2 & “Sound Barrier Wall”
Sound Barrier Wall Steel Fabrication Plans ⁵	7	0	Article 1072-8 & “Sound Barrier Wall”
Structural Steel ⁴	2, then 7	0	Article 1072-8
Temporary Detour Structures	10	2	Article 400-3 & “Construction, Maintenance and Removal of Temporary Structure at Station _____”
TFE Expansion Bearings ⁴	8	0	Article 1072-8

FOOTNOTES

1. References are provided to help locate the part of the contract where the submittals are required. References in quotes refer to the provision by that name. Articles refer to the *Standard Specifications*.
2. Submittals for these items are necessary only when required by a note on plans.
3. Submittals for these items may not be required. A list of pre-approved sequences is available from the producer or the Materials & Tests Unit.
4. The fabricator may submit these items directly to the Structures Management Unit.
5. The two sets of preliminary submittals required by Article 1072-8 of the *Standard Specifications* are not required for these items.
6. Submittals for Fabrication Drawings are not required. Submittals for Catalogue Cuts of Proposed Material are required. See Section 5.A of the referenced provision.
7. Submittals are necessary only when the top slab thickness is 18” or greater.

ST-50

GEOTECHNICAL SUBMITTALS

Submittal	Copies Required by Geotechnical Engineering Unit	Copies Required by Structures Management Unit	Contract Reference Requiring Submittal ¹
Drilled Pier Construction Plans ²	1	0	Subarticle 411-3(A)
Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) Reports ²	1	0	Subarticle 411-5(A)(2)
Pile Driving Equipment Data Forms ^{2,3}	1	0	Subarticle 450-3(D)(2)
Pile Driving Analyzer (PDA) Reports ²	1	0	Subarticle 450-3(F)(3)
Retaining Walls ⁴	1 drawings, 1 calculations	2 drawings	Applicable Provisions
Temporary Shoring ⁴	1 drawings, 1 calculations	2 drawings	“Temporary Shoring” & “Temporary Soil Nail Walls”

FOOTNOTES

- References are provided to help locate the part of the contract where the submittals are required. References in quotes refer to the provision by that name. Subarticles refer to the *Standard Specifications*.
- Submit one hard copy of submittal to the Engineer. Submit a second copy of submittal electronically (PDF via email), US mail or other delivery service to the appropriate Geotechnical Engineering Unit regional office. Electronic submission is preferred.
- The Pile Driving Equipment Data Form is available from:
https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Geotech_Forms_Details.aspx
See second page of form for submittal instructions.
- Electronic copy of submittal is required. See referenced provision.

ST-51

CRANE SAFETY**(6-20-19)**

Comply with the manufacturer specifications and limitations applicable to the operation of any and all cranes and derricks. Prime contractors, sub-contractors, and fully operated rental companies shall comply with the current Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations.

Submit all items listed below to the Engineer prior to beginning crane operations. Changes in personnel or equipment must be reported to the Engineer and all applicable items listed below must be updated and submitted prior to continuing with crane operations.

CRANE SAFETY SUBMITTAL LIST

- A. **Competent Person:** Provide the name and qualifications of the “Competent Person” responsible for crane safety and lifting operations. The named competent person will have the responsibility and authority to stop any work activity due to safety concerns.
- B. **Riggers:** Provide the qualifications and experience of the persons responsible for rigging operations. Qualifications and experience should include, but not be limited to, weight calculations, center of gravity determinations, selection and inspection of sling and rigging equipment, and safe rigging practices.
- C. **Crane Inspections:** Inspection records for all cranes shall be current and readily accessible for review upon request.
- D. **Certifications:** Crane operators shall be certified by the National Commission for the Certification of Crane Operators (NCCCO) or the National Center for Construction Education and Research (NCCER). Other approved nationally accredited programs will be considered upon request. In addition, crane operators shall have a current CDL medical card. Submit a list of crane operator(s) and include current certification for each type of crane operated (small hydraulic, large hydraulic, small lattice, large lattice) and medical evaluations for each operator.

ST-52

GROUT FOR STRUCTURES

(12-1-17)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

This special provision addresses grout for use in pile blockouts, grout pockets, shear keys, dowel holes and recesses for structures. This provision does not apply to grout placed in post-tensioning ducts for bridge beams, girders, decks, end bent caps, or bent caps. Mix and place grout in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, the applicable sections of the Standard Specifications and this provision.

2.0 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Unless otherwise noted on the plans, use a Type 3 Grout in accordance with Section 1003 of the Standard Specifications.

Initial setting time shall not be less than 10 minutes when tested in accordance with ASTM C266.

Construction loading and traffic loading shall not be allowed until the 3 day compressive strength is achieved.

3.0 SAMPLING AND PLACEMENT

Place and maintain components in final position until grout placement is complete and accepted. Concrete surfaces to receive grout shall be free of defective concrete, laitance, oil, grease and other foreign matter. Saturate concrete surfaces with clean water and remove excess water prior to placing grout.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for "Grout for Structures". The cost of the material, equipment, labor, placement, and any incidentals necessary to complete the work shall be considered incidental to the structure item requiring grout.

ST-53

ASBESTOS ASSESSMENT FOR BRIDGE DEMOLITION AND RENOVATION ACTIVITIES

(12-30-15)

1.0 INSPECTION FOR ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL

Prior to conducting bridge demolition or renovation activities, the Contractor shall thoroughly inspect the bridge or affected components for the presence of asbestos containing material (ACM) using a firm prequalified by NCDOT to perform asbestos surveys. The inspection must be performed by a N.C. accredited asbestos inspector with experience inspecting bridges or other industrial structures. The N.C. accredited asbestos inspector must conduct a thorough inspection, identifying all asbestos-containing material as required by the Environmental Protection Agency National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAP) Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M.

The Contractor shall submit an inspection report to the Engineer, which at a minimum must include information required in 40 CFR 763.85 (a)(4) vi)(A)-(E), as well as a project location map, photos of existing structure, the date of inspection and the name, N.C. accreditation number, and signature of the N.C. accredited asbestos inspector who performed the inspection and completed the report. The cover sheet of the report shall include project identification information. Place the following notes on the cover sheet of the report and check the appropriate box:

ACM was found
 ACM was not found

2.0 REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL

If ACM is found, notify the Engineer. Compensation for removal and disposal of ACM is considered extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the Standard Specifications.

An Asbestos Removal Permit must be obtained from the Health Hazards Control Unit (HHCU) of the N.C. Department of Health & Human Services, Division of Public Health, if more than 35 cubic feet, 160 square feet, or 260 linear feet of regulated ACM (RACM) is to be removed from a structure and this work must be completed by a contractor prequalified by NCDOT to perform asbestos abatement. RACM is defined in 40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M. Note: 40 CFR 763.85 (a)(4) vi)(D) defines ACM as surfacing, TSI and Miscellaneous which does not meet the NESHAP RACM.

3.0 DEMOLITION NOTIFICATION

Even if no ACM is found (or if quantities are less than those required for a permit), a Demolition Notification (DHHS-3768) must be submitted to the HHCU. Notifications and Asbestos Permit applications require an original signature and must be submitted to the HHCU 10 working days prior to beginning demolition activities. The 10 working day period starts based on the post-marked date or date of hand delivery. Demolition that does not begin as originally notified requires submission of a separate revision form HHCU 3768-R to HHCU. Reference the North Carolina Administrative Code, Chapter 10A, Subchapter 41C, Article .0605 for directives on revision submissions.

ST-54

Contact Information

Health Hazards Control Unit (HHCU)
N.C. Department of Health and Human Services
1912 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1912
Telephone: (919) 707-5950
Fax: (919) 870-4808

4.0 SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

Buncombe, Forsyth, and Mecklenburg counties also have asbestos permitting and NESHAP requirements must be followed. For projects involving permitted RACM removals, both the applicable county and the state (HHCU) must be notified.

For demolitions with no RACM, only the local environmental agencies must be notified. Contact information is as follows:

Buncombe County

WNC Regional Air Pollution Control Agency
49 Mt. Carmel Road
Asheville, NC 28806
(828) 250-6777

Forsyth County

Environmental Affairs Department
537 N. Spruce Street
Winston-Salem, NC 27101
(336) 703-2440

Mecklenburg County

Land Use and Environmental Services Agency
Mecklenburg Air Quality
700 N. Tryon Street
Charlotte, NC 28202
(704) 336-5430

5.0 ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Additional information may be found on N.C. asbestos rules, regulations, procedures and N.C. accredited inspectors, as well as associated forms for demolition notifications and asbestos permit applications at the N.C. Asbestos Hazard Management Program website:

www.epi.state.nc.us/epi/asbestos/ahmp.html

6.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment for the work required in this provision will be at the lump sum contract unit price for "Asbestos Assessment". Such payment will be full compensation for all asbestos inspections, reports, permitting and notifications.

ST-55

SOUND BARRIER WALL (BRIDGE MOUNTED)

(SPECIAL)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

This work consists of furnishing planks, structural steel, and all other materials; handling, transporting, fabricating, galvanizing, and storing materials; furnishing erection drawings, erecting and installing the sound barrier wall members and all other materials as required by the plans, Standard Specifications and this Special Provision on the bridge including the approach slabs and the panels to the first ground supported posts at ends of approach slabs.

The bridge plans allow for 10-foot maximum post spacing. Post spacing greater than 10 feet will not be permitted. Provide post spacing consistent with the plans. Post spacing varies in the plans due to geometrical constraints. The weight of the sound barrier in its entirety shall not exceed the value provided in the contract documents.

A maximum one foot drop or rise in elevation between wall sections is permitted. Elevation changes greater than one foot, if necessary, will be allowed only at the end of the wall. Top of wall elevation changes that result in a jagged appearance will not be allowed. Soil elevation at approach slabs shall be kept a minimum of 3" below bottom of wall panel.

2.0 ALTERNATE POST SPACING

As an alternate, the Contractor may submit plans for post spacing other than shown for review and approval. A submittal reducing the post spacing shall include the plank material and design specifications. The submittal shall also include an elevation view depicting the revised post spacing and proposed top of wall elevations. The proposed top of wall elevations shall be equal to or greater than the plan dimensions.

Submit two sets of detailed plans for review. Include all details in the plans, including the size, spacing and materials of required piles. Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer check, seal and date the plans. After the plans are reviewed and, if necessary, the corrections made, submit one set of reproducible tracings on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

3.0 WALL TYPE

Walls that have been assigned "Approved" or "Approved for Provisional Use" status by the Product Evaluation Program will be considered for use as the Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted) planks. Wall plank design details and materials must meet the design and construction requirements of the project and the applicable loadings except that the wall is not required to meet the traffic loading requirements. Wall structural stability and connection details shall conform to the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, except that traffic loading shall not be applied to the sound barrier wall.

The wall shall meet the following aesthetic requirements in addition to those noted within the contract plans. The traffic and non-traffic faces of the wall planks shall be configured such that the only the post flanges extend beyond the face of the planks as shown in the plans such that a uniform surface is visible from the traffic and non traffic sides of the wall. This uniform surface appearance is to extend from the top of wall to the bottom of the vertical

ST-56

post members as shown in the plans. The bottom of the wall shall be detailed for free and complete drainage of wall areas. Additionally, the plank configuration proposed shall allow for visual inspection of the post to concrete barrier rail bolts from the bottom of the wall without the need to remove any components.

Prior to submittal of Working Drawings, as described herein, submit a copy of the signed NCDOT Product Status Notification Letter and two sets of preliminary plans for review and approval. Include material specifications for all components. Once preliminary plans are approved, submit Working Drawings in accordance with all applicable portions of the requirements herein, including details necessary to fabricate and construct the proposed components.

Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer check, seal and date the plans and, when requested, calculations. After the plans are reviewed and, if necessary, corrections made, submit one set of reproducible tracings on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

4.0 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

Provide materials and fabricate members in accordance with the requirements of Division 10 of the Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. The structural planks for the Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted) are to have the following properties:

Flexural Strength	57,000 psi	ASTM D-790
Tensile Strength	60,000 psi	ASTM D-638
Compressive Strength	65,000 psi	ASTM D-695
Tensile Modulus	3,500,000 psi	ASTM D-638
Flexural Modulus	1,600,000 psi	ASTM D-790
Specific Gravity	1.88 (typ)	ASTM D-792

The structural planks are to be colored and shall be uniform throughout the pultruded composite. The color is to be approved by the Engineer before the planks are delivered to the jobsite.

The structural planks shall exhibit good workmanship and shall be free of burrs, cracks or other objectionable marks which would adversely affect the barrier's performance or serviceability. All cracked, discolored, burned or damaged structural planks will be rejected either at the fabrication shop or the construction site even after installation, but prior to acceptance of the project.

The structural steel is to meet the requirements of the Standard Specifications. The posts, backing angles, bolts, nuts and washers are to be painted to match the structural planks. The paint system as described in Section 442 of the Standard Specifications and the Structural Steel Shop Coatings shall be System 1, with the exception that the surfaces are not to be cleaned to an SSPC SP-10 finish after being galvanized and the top coat color is to be as

ST-57

noted on the contract plans and approved by the Engineer. After erection, the bolts, nuts, and washers are to be primed by brush, then the entire support system of posts, backing angles, bolts, nuts and washers are to be top-coated. The structural planks are to be masked so no overspray or spatters occur. The Contractor is to provide 3 samples of paint close to the color of the structural planks to the Engineer for his selection of the final color. The limits of the painting are from the top of the posts to the bottom of the lowest plank.

5.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

The erection of the sound barrier components shall not begin until the concrete in the bridge railing has reached a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi. Install posts as shown on the plans or in the accepted submittals with a tolerance of 1/2 inch per foot from vertical or as necessary to conform to the plank design if more restrictive.

6.0 WORKING DRAWINGS

Submit plank design calculations and specifications for approval prior to purchasing the plank materials. Submit metalwork fabrication drawings for approval prior to fabrication of steel wall components. This submittal shall clearly indicate access for visual inspection of the post attached bolts. Submit an erection plan and plank support components, for review and acceptance prior to fabrication of metalwork. Submit five sets of detail drawings.

7.0 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

The quantity of Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted), to be paid for will be the completed and accepted wall, according to the limits shown on the plans.

8.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The quantity of Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted) measured as provided above, will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for "Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted)".

The price bid will be full compensation for all work covered by this Special Provision including, but not limited to, furnishing panels, structural steel, and all other materials; handling, transporting, fabricating, galvanizing, and storing materials; furnishing erection drawings, and erecting and installing the sound barrier wall components.

Payment will be made under:

Item	Unit
Sound Barrier Wall (Bridge Mounted)	Lump Sum

ST-58

BRIDGE MOUNTED CHAIN LINK FENCE

(SPECIAL)

Construct the chain link fence in accordance with the applicable sections of the Standard Specifications, the details shown on the plans and this special provision.

The quantity of chain link fence will be the actual number of linear feet of fence, measured in place from end post to end post, which has been completed and accepted. All posts used for the chain link fence are included in the price of the fence and will not be paid for separately. There will be no measurement made for installing adhesive anchors in concrete barrier rail as such work is considered incidental.

Work includes but is not limited to furnishing and installing fence fabric, tie wires, stretcher bars, stretcher bar bands, tie rods, turnbuckles, brace rails, posts, post caps, brackets, adhesive anchors, fittings and any other materials necessary to complete the work as described in the plans and this special provision.

Payment will be made under:

72" Chain Link Fence _____ Linear Foot

ST-59

ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE SURFACE TREATMENT**(SPECIAL)****1.0 GENERAL**

The work covered by this special provision consists of constructing textured surfaces on exterior faces of concrete parapets, concrete barrier rail, end posts, edges of deck slab, ends of integral end bent diaphragms, wingwalls, visible sides of end bent caps, exterior backwall front face of integral caps and sides of bent caps as shown on the plans and in this Special Provision. The architectural concrete surface treatment shall only apply to specific bridges as noted in the plans. The Contractor shall furnish all materials, labor, equipment, and incidentals necessary for the construction of architectural concrete surface treatment using simulated stone masonry form liners (molds), a compatible concrete coloring system, and a compatible anti-graffiti finish coating.

Except where otherwise specified, textured concrete surfaces shall be constructed using deep form lining materials and patterns to match the appearance (stone size and shape, stone color, and stone texture, pattern, and maximum 1.5" relief) of a dry stack stone pattern as specified and approved by the Engineer. The approved test panels/samples shall be the referenced standard. The form liner product shall match the pattern and texture as specified and described in the sample.

The contractor is required to use the same source of form liner and coloration contractor to construct the textured surfaces. For information purposes only, a manufacturer of form liners and source of color application artist is Sika Greenstreak, 3400 Tree Court Industrial Boulevard, St. Louis, Missouri 63122, Telephone 800-325-9504. The intended treatment should be close in appearance to No. 439, "Sierra Drystack" and treated with a two tone mix of Federal Colors #36373 and #36173, a lighter and darker gray.

2.0 SUBMITTALS

Shop Drawings - The Contractor shall submit for review and acceptance, plan and elevation views and details showing overall simulated stone pattern, joint locations, form tie locations, and end, edge or other special conditions. The drawings should include typical cross sections of applicable surfaces, joints, corners, stone relief, stone size, pitch/working line, mortar joint and bed depths. If necessary, the Contractor shall revise the shop drawings until the proposed form liner patterns and arrangement have been accepted by the Engineer. Shop drawings should be of sufficient scale to show the detail of all stone and joints patterns. The size of the sheets used for the shop drawings shall be 22" x 34".

The form liner shall be patterned such that long continuous horizontal or vertical lines do not occur on the finished exposed surface. The line pattern shall be random in nature and shall conceal construction joint lines. Special attention should be given to details for wrapping form liners around corners.

Shop drawings shall be reviewed and accepted prior to fabrication of form liners.

ST-60

Sample Panels – After the shop drawings have been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer, the Contractor shall construct 24” x 24” transportable sample panel(s) at the project site. The materials used in construction of the sample panel(s) shall comply with section 420 of the Standard Specifications. The sample panel(s) shall be constructed using approved form liners. Sample panels will be required for each different form liner pattern that is to be used on the project. Any sample panel that is not accepted by the Engineer is to be removed from the project site and a new sample panel produced at no additional expense to the Department.

Architectural surface treatments and patterns of the finished work shall achieve the same final effect as demonstrated on the accepted sample panel(s). Upon acceptance by the Engineer, the sample panel(s) shall be used as the quality standard for the project. After the acceptance of the completed structure, the Contractor shall dispose of the sample panels as directed by the Engineer.

3.0 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Form Liner – The form liner shall be a high quality, re-useable product manufactured of high strength urethane rubber or other approved material which attaches easily to the form work system, and shall not compress more than ¼” when concrete is poured at a rate of 10 vertical feet per hour. The form liners shall be removable without causing deterioration of the surface or underlying concrete.

Form Release Agent – Form release agent shall be a non-staining petroleum distillate free from water, asphaltic, and other insoluble residue, or an equivalent product. Form release agents shall be compatible with the color system applied and any special surface finish.

Form Ties - Form ties shall be set back a minimum of 2” from the finished concrete surface. The ties shall be designed so that all material in the device to a depth of at least 2” back of the concrete face (bottom of simulated mortar groove) can be disengaged and removed without spalling or damaging the concrete. The Contractor shall submit the type of form ties to the Engineer for approval.

Concrete color system/stain – Special surface color system shall be performed using approved coloring systems/stains suitable for the purpose intended and applied in a manner consistent with the design intent of the project. Color system shall be in multiple colors of gray, brown, tan, white and black to achieve a full, natural color variation in the finished surface. The approved sample panel shall be the basis for determining the appropriate color/stain application.

The coloring agent shall be a penetrating stain mix or other approved coloring system with a compatible finish designed for exterior application on old or new concrete with field evidence of resistance to moisture, acid or alkali, mildew, mold or fungus discoloration or degradation. The coloring agent shall be breathable, allowing moisture and vapor transmission. Final coloring system and colors are subject to acceptance by the Engineer.

Anti-Graffiti Coating – This coating shall be compatible with the concrete color system/stain. After application, the anti-graffiti coating shall be dry to the touch within 1 hour and shall achieve a final cure within 3 hours. The color of the anti-graffiti shall be clear after

ST-61

full cure. Provide one gallon of graffiti remover, thinners, dryers and all necessary components recommended by the manufacturer to the North Carolina Department of Transportation Materials and Tests Unit, Chemical Testing Engineer.

Quality Standards - Manufacturer of simulated stone masonry form liners and custom coloring system shall have at least five years of experience making stone masonry molds and color stains to create formed concrete surfaces to match natural stone shapes, surface textures and colors. The Contractor shall schedule a pre-installation conference with manufacturer representative and the Engineer to assure understanding of simulated stone masonry form liner use, color application, requirements for construction of sample panel(s), and to coordinate the work. The Contractor shall be required to disclose their source of simulated stone masonry manufacturer and final coloration contractor at the Preconstruction Conference.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION

Form Liner Preparation – Prior to each concrete pour, the form liners shall be clean and free of build-up. Each liner shall be visually inspected for blemishes and tears. Repairs shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Repairs shall be accepted by the Engineer before being used. Form liner panels that do not perform as intended or are no longer repairable shall be replaced.

Form Liner Attachment – Form liners shall be securely attached to forms in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, with less than a 1/4" seam. Blend form liner butt joints into the stone pattern and finish off the final concrete surface. Create no visible vertical or horizontal seams or conspicuous form liner butt joint marks. At locations where the form liners are joined, carefully blend to match the balance of the stone pattern.

Form liners shall be installed to withstand anticipated concrete placement pressures without leakage and without causing physical or visual defects. Wall ties shall be coordinated with the form liner system.

The Contractor shall have a technical representative from the form liner manufacturer on site for technical supervision during the installation and removal of form liners. Unless directed by the Engineer, installation and removal of form liners shall not be permitted if the technical representative is not present.

Form Release – Form release agent shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The material shall be compatible with the form liner material and the concrete coloring system and in accordance with this Special Provision. Form release agent should be worked into all areas, especially pattern recesses.

Patching – All form tie holes and other defects in finished uncolored surface shall be filled or repaired within 48 hours of form removal. Use patching materials and procedures in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Surface Finish – All surfaces that are to receive coloring agent application shall be free of all laitance, dirt, dust, grease, efflorescence, paint or any other foreign material prior to the application of coloring agent. Cleaning of surfaces to be accomplished by pressure washing

ST-62

with water set at 3000 psi to remove laitance. The fan nozzle shall be held perpendicular to the surface at a distance of 1 to 2 feet. Sandblasting will not be permitted.

Final surface shall be free of blemishes, discolorations, surface voids, and other irregularities. All patterns should be continuous without visual disruption. Linear butt joints shall be carefully blended into the approved pattern and finished off the final concrete surface. No visible vertical or horizontal seams or conspicuous form marks created by butt joining will be permitted.

Reinforced concrete shall be finished in accordance with the Standard Specifications, except that curing of concrete should be done to accommodate the application of coloring and surface finish treatment.

Grout pattern joints – Grout pattern joints shall be constructed to simulate the appearance of mortared joints produced in laid up masonry work. Grout pattern joints shall be produced in accordance with the form liner / concrete color system manufacturer.

Color/Stain Application – Finished concrete and patches shall stand in place 30 days after form liners are removed prior to application of coloring/staining agent. Maintain the concrete temperature between 40°F and 85°F during color/stain application and for 48 hours after color/stain application. Consult the manufacturer's recommendations for preparation, application, curing, and storage of coloring agents/stains. The contractor shall provide a Color Application Artist who is trained in the special techniques to achieve realistic surface appearances. Treated surfaces located adjacent to exposed soil or pavement shall be temporarily covered to prevent dirt or soil splatter from rain.

Following the completion of all work, repairs of any damage made by other construction operations shall be made to the form lined and colored surfaces as directed by the Engineer.

Anti-Graffiti Coating Application - The coating shall be applied after full cure of the color coating. Apply the anti-graffiti coating by brush, roller or airless spray when the ambient temperature is between 45° F and 90° F, and the surface temperature is between 50° F and 100° F. Ensure the surface is clean and dry before applying the anti-graffiti coating. The minimum dry film thickness of the anti-graffiti coating shall be 2.0 mils.

Experience and Qualifications - The Contractor shall have a minimum of three consecutive years of experience in architectural concrete surface treatment construction on similar types of projects. The Contractor shall furnish to the Engineer 5 references who were responsible for supervision of similar projects and will testify to the successful completion of these projects. Include name, address, telephone number, and specific type of application.

5.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Architectural concrete surface treatment as described on the plans and in this Special Provision will be paid for at the contract unit price bid for "Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment". The above price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this Special Provision, the plans and applicable parts of the Standard Specifications and shall include, but not be limited to, furnishing all labor, materials, equipment, and other

ST-63

incidentals including sample panels, coloring and anti-graffiti coating necessary to complete this work.

Payment will be made under:

Architectural Concrete Surface Treatment.....Square Feet

ST-64

SILANE DECK TREATMENT

(SPECIAL)

DESCRIPTION

This work consists of preparation of concrete bridge deck surfaces and the furnishing and application of alkylalkoxysilane (silane) penetrant sealers, with 100% solids, to seal bridge deck surfaces and cracks. Prepare the surface of the concrete deck and apply the silane bridge deck sealer in accordance with this special provision and as indicated on the plans, or as approved by the Engineer.

Work includes: bridge deck surface preparation, placement of silane deck sealer, and any incidentals necessary to complete the project, as specified or as indicated on the plans.

SUBMITTALS

Submit for approval the following requested items and any other relevant documents:

- (A) A safety data sheet (SDS) for each shipment of the silane materials.
- (B) Silane material information and manufacturer's written preparation and application instructions.
- (C) Certification from an independent testing laboratory that the materials meet the requirements of these provisions. Do not incorporate these materials into the project until the Engineer has accepted and approved the certification for the material.
- (D) The dates of manufacture of the silane materials, their lot numbers and date of shelf-life expiration for each lot number.
- (E) A table indicating the likely cure time, in minutes, to allow vehicular traffic on the silane-treated deck surface. Provide time for the allowable ambient temperature range, in increments of 10° F.
- (F) A work plan for each structure that includes estimated times for surface preparation and silane application.

MATERIAL DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Store at the site sufficient quantities of silane materials to perform the entire application.

Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact. Ensure that each container is clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following information:

- (A) Manufacturer's name and address.
- (B) Product name.
- (C) Date of manufacture.

ST-65

(D) Expiration date.

(E) LOT identification number.

(F) Container serial number.

Provide the Engineer a certification from the manufacturer, confirming that the silane materials meet the requirements of this special provision. Do not incorporate these materials into the project until the Engineer has accepted and approved the certification for the material. Submit such certification for each LOT of material delivered to the project. In each certification, identify the serial or LOT numbers of the containers certified.

The Engineer may require samples from each LOT or container of materials delivered to the project or from containers at the point of use. When samples are required, furnish samples in accordance with the Engineer's instructions.

Store silane materials in unopened containers in a clean, dry area between 40° F and 90° F. Store containers in a manner that prevents leakage or spillage.

MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

Provide a manufacturer's representative on site for the duration of the surface preparation and silane application work, to provide expert assistance on surface preparation, storage, mixing, application, clean-up, and disposal of materials.

MATERIALS

Provide silane from a single manufacturer, and provide silane that conforms to requirements indicated in Table 1, below.

ST-66

Table 1

SILANE PROPERTIES

Property	Test Method	Requirement
Silane Content		100%
VOC content	EPA method 24	Less than 350 g/l
Surface Appearance after Application		Unchanged
Flash Point	ASTM D3278	140° F, minimum
Resistance to Chloride Ion Penetration	AASHTO T259 and T260	Less than: 0.52 pounds/yd ³ (criteria of 1.5) at 1/2 inch level; 0.00 pounds/yd ³ (criteria of 0.75) at 1 inch level
Water absorption test	ASTM C 642	0.50% maximum/48 hours;
Scaling resistance	ASTM C 672	(non-air-entrained concrete) 0 rating "No Scaling" (100% reduction)
NCHRP 244		
Water weight gain	Series II - cube test	85% reduction, minimum
Absorbed chloride		87% reduction, minimum
Absorbed chloride	Series IV - Southern	95% reduction, minimum

SURFACE PREPARATION

Prepare the surface of the concrete deck for application of the silane by diamond grinding in order to remove all existing asphalt, grease, slurry, oils, paint, dirt, striping, curing compound, rust, membrane, weak surface mortar, or any other contaminants that could interfere with the proper adhesion, penetration, and the curing of the silane material.

ST-67

Prepare a final surface that adheres to the following requirements:

- (A) For areas to receive deck seal treatment, clean by diamond grinding. Select the travel speed of the equipment to provide a uniformly clean surface with a uniform profile. Remove striping to the maximum extent determined to be practical by the Engineer using up to three passes with diamond grinding, or other approved equipment. Do not expose cleaned surfaces to vehicular traffic unless approved by the Engineer. If the deck becomes contaminated before placing the silane deck sealer, shotblast or abrasive sandblast the contaminated areas to the satisfaction of the Engineer, at no additional cost.

(1) DIAMOND GRINDING

Diamond grind the full width of all lanes and shoulders in the direction of travel to within 18" of the exterior gutterlines and 2" of expansion joints or elastomeric concrete in expansion joint blockouts.

Diamond grinding shall be performed using a Boart Longyear PC 5000, a Target 3804 or an approved equal. Submit grinding equipment specifications to the Engineer for approval before any grinding is performed. Use a grinding machine capable of removing a minimum of 3 feet of width with each pass. In addition, hand grinding may be required to remove vertical steps between passes.

The ground surface shall consist of between 50 and 60 grooves per foot of width. The grooves shall be between 0.09" and 0.15" in width and 0.0625" in depth. The area between the grooves shall be between 0.06" and 0.13" in width. The final concrete texture shall be uniform.

Construct and operate the grinding machine such that it will not cause strain or damage to the deck surface, excessive ravels, aggregate fractures, spalls, or disturbance of transverse joints. Longitudinally grind the deck parallel to the roadway centerline.

Continuously remove all slurry or other debris resulting from the grinding operations by vacuum pick-up or other approved methods. Prevent the slurry from flowing into floor drains, onto the ground or into the body of water under the bridge. Dispose of all residues off the project.

Limit grinding such that the final reinforcement cover is not less than the plan cover minus ½ inch. In cases where this cannot be achieved, other corrective work may be required as directed by the Engineer.

- (B) Prior to silane application, protect cracks on the concrete bridge deck from materials that can interfere with the penetration and the curing of the silane material. Just prior to placement of the silane, remove, by magnets and oil-free compressed air and vacuuming, any loose particles, such that no excess particles remain. The concrete deck shall be completely dry. Power washing will not be allowed.
- (C) The silane manufacturer may suggest cleaning and preparation methods other than those detailed by this special provision. The Engineer must approve such alternative methods prior to implementation.

ST-68

SILANE APPLICATION

Test Area

- (A) Test a small area of the surface (minimum 5 ft. by 5 ft.) before general application to ensure desired performance results, aesthetics, and application rates and to verify application technique. Allow 5–7 days for the product to react fully before evaluating. Application rates may vary depending on field conditions.
- (B) Conduct at least one absorption test in the test area, using a Rilem Tube Test. Acceptable results are no loss of water in the Rilem tube over a period of 20 minutes. Adjust application to achieve required repellent performance.
- (C) The manufacturer's representative shall assist the Contractor in determining the application rates. Use test applications on actual surfaces to determine accurate application rates. Extremely porous surfaces may require two coats of silane.
- (D) Do not begin production application of silane until Engineer has approved the test area, including approval of aesthetics, color, texture, and appearance.

Application

Immediately before placing silane, all exposed surfaces shall be completely dry and blown clean with oil-free compressed air to remove any loose dust and debris. Apply silane as soon as practical after the exposed surfaces have been properly prepared and conditions are satisfactory:

- (A) Stir material thoroughly before and during application.
- (B) Apply silane with low-pressure spray or by flooding, followed by brooming or squeegeeing for even distribution, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- (C) Maintain operating pressures in sprayers used for application of the silane sealer material sufficiently low so that atomization or misting of the material does not occur.
- (D) Begin the application of the silane at the lowest elevation and proceed upward, toward higher elevations, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.
- (E) Apply even distribution of silane. Avoid ponding of silane; take care when applying the silane, so that running or puddling does not occur.
- (F) Apply silane in a single application to the concrete deck surface with enough material to saturate the surface. Remove excess material with a broom or squeegee and dispose of excess material appropriately. If a second coat is required, it should be applied "wet on wet" before first coat dries.

ST-69

- (G) Application of sealant by spray methods will not be permitted when wind speeds are 20 mph or more, or if in the opinion of the Engineer, unsatisfactory results will be obtained. Other application methods or rescheduling will be required.
- (H) Avoid application with hand pump sprayers. For small areas of silane application, the use of hand pump sprayers must be approved by the Engineer.
- (I) Contractor shall protect from overspray all pedestrians, vehicles, plants and vegetation, and other areas not receiving silane application.
- (J) Allow product to penetrate the bridge deck and dry, as required by the manufacturer, prior to opening to traffic.

LIMITATIONS OF OPERATIONS

- (A) Prior to application of any silane sealer, cure concrete or concrete repairs for a minimum of 21 days.
- (B) Do not use silane material after the shelf life date.
- (C) Do not return unused material in opened containers to storage for later use. Either apply such material to appropriate areas on concrete deck surfaces or remove and appropriately dispose of it at offsite locations provided by the Contractor.
- (D) If expansion joints are not being replaced or have been replaced prior to diamond grinding, they shall be protected from damage from the diamond grinding operation. Deck drains and areas of curb or railing above the proposed surface shall be protected from the diamond grinding operation.
- (E) If shotblasting is required after diamond grinding, thoroughly clean the deck. Pick up and store all blast media and contaminants in a vacuum unit. Do not create dust during the blasting operation that will obstruct the view of motorists in adjacent roadways. Store, handle, and dispose of blast media and contaminants in accordance with all applicable local, state, and federal requirements.
- (F) Cover deck joint seal and elastomeric material, plug deck drain scuppers, seal cracks on underside of deck, and use other necessary protective measures to prevent leakage of silane below the concrete deck, to protect waterways, bridge components, pedestrians, vehicles, roadway, vegetation, and any other items or areas below or near the bridge.
- (G) Application of sealant by spray methods will not be permitted during windy conditions, if in the opinion of the Engineer, unsatisfactory results will be obtained. Other application methods or rescheduling will be required.
- (H) Avoid application with hand pump sprayers. For small areas of silane application, the use of hand pump sprayers might be allowed, but must be approved by the Engineer.
- (I) Protect traffic from rebound, dust, overspray, and construction activities. Provide appropriate shielding, as required and/or directed by the Engineer.

ST-70

- (J) The Contractor shall provide suitable coverings (e.g. heavy-duty drop cloths) as needed to protect all exposed areas not to receive silane treatment, such as asphalt pavement, curbs, sidewalks, parapets, etc.
- (K) Clean and/or repair all damage or defacement resulting from Contractor's operations to the Engineer's satisfaction at no additional cost to the Department.
- (L) The equipment used for silane application must be clean of foreign materials and approved by the Engineer before use.
- (M) The surface to receive the treatment shall be dry for at least 48 hours before treatment and shall be free from sand, surface dust and dirt, oil, grease, chemical films, and other contaminants prior to application of the silane.
- (N) The surface, air, and material temperatures shall be between 40°F and 90°F during application.
- (O) Do not apply silane materials during cold, hot, or wet weather conditions or when adverse weather conditions are forecast within twelve (12) hours of the completion of the silane application. Correct any coating damaged by rain or moisture by an additional application or as required by the silane manufacturer.
- (P) Protect prepared surfaces from precipitation and heavy dew during and after the application of the silane.
- (Q) Conduct the work in a continuous operation, with the silane application as soon as practical following surface preparation.
- (R) Apply silane during the lowest temperature period of the day, typically between 1:00 a.m. and 9:00 a.m., when the cracks are open to the greatest extent.
- (S) Clean up, dispose of any surplus material, and restore any disturbed areas unless otherwise directed.
- (T) 100% Silane is a combustible liquid; take appropriate precautions during handling, storage, and operations. KEEP AWAY FROM OPEN FLAME.
- (U) Work crews should wear appropriate personal protection equipment and follow manufacturer's recommendations when applying silane. Refer to the SDS and all applicable local, state, and federal laws, and rules and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction over the project, for specific guidance for personal and environmental protection and safety requirements.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Diamond Grinding will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for the diamond grinding and handwork to prepare the entire concrete bridge deck, and removal and disposal of all waste material generated.

Silane Deck Treatment will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for bridge deck surface and crack preparation; for furnishing and

ST-71

applying the silane deck treatment; for protection of waterways, bridge, and other nearby surfaces, vehicles, and pedestrians; and for all labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Diamond Grinding	Square Yard
Silane Deck Treatment	Square Yard

ST-72

LMC OVERLAY SURFACE PREPARATION**(2-11-19)****1.0 Description**

This special provision addresses the surface preparation activities required prior to the placement of latex modified concrete. Unless specifically mentioned below, all requirements specified for the bridge deck are also required for the approach slabs.

2.0 Definitions

Scarification shall consist of the removal of any asphalt wearing surface and concrete surface to a uniform depth within ½” of the plan overlay thickness or to the limits shown on the plans.

Hydro-demolition shall consist of the removal of the deck surface by means of high pressure water blasting which will remove concrete, oil, dirt, concrete laitance and rust from the exposed reinforcing bars by direct impact, pressurization of micro and macro cracks and cavitation produced by jet instability.

EQUIPMENT

Use the following surface preparation equipment:

- (A) Scarifying equipment that is a power-operated, mechanical grinder capable of removing a minimum depth of ¼” for each pass.
- (B) Hydro-demolition machine, self-propelled with a minimum orifice pressure of 17,000 psi.
- (C) All water used for hydro-demolition shall be potable.
- (D) Equipment capable of sawing concrete to the specified plan depth.
- (E) Hand-held high velocity (7,500 psi minimum) water-jet equipment capable of removing rust scale from reinforcing steel, removing small chips of concrete partially loosened by the scarifying or chipping operation, and for removing rehydrated dust left from scarification.
- (F) Power driven hand tools for removal of unsound concrete are required that meet the following requirements:
 - (1) Pneumatic hammers weighing a nominal 35 lb or less.
 - (2) Pneumatic hammer chisel-type bits that do not exceed the diameter of the shaft in width.
- (G) Hand tools such as hammers and chisels for removal of final particles of unsound concrete.
- (H) Self-propelled vacuum capable of picking up water, dust, and other loose material from prepared deck surface.
- (I) Vibratory screed for overlays, except as noted herein.

The hydro-demolition machine shall be self-propelled and capable of producing a water-jet through an orifice at a pressure of at least 17,000 psi. The machine shall move the jet transversely

ST-73

across the area and forward and backward so that the entire deck is covered with the water-jet and operated at a pressure sufficient to remove the unsound concrete.

The machine shall have sufficient means to control and vary the following functions:

- (A) Water pressure.
- (B) Angle and distance of the orifice in relation to the surface to be blasted.
- (C) Limits of transverse and longitudinal movement of the orifice.
- (D) Speed of the orifice in the transverse and longitudinal direction.

High pressure pump(s) shall be equipped with over-pressurization relief valves and rupture disc systems. All high pressure components shall be rated at full working pressure of the hydro-demolition system. The complete hydro-demolition system must be capable of depressurization from a single point.

The equipment must operate at a noise level less than 90 decibels at a distance of 50 feet.

MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL OF CONCRETE GRINDING RESIDUALS

The contractor must collect and properly dispose of water, Hydro-demolition Operation Slurry (HOS), Diamond Grinding Slurry (DGS), and solids from bridge deck preparation, otherwise referred to as Concrete Grinding Residuals (CGR). Prior to beginning work, submit for approval by the Engineer an HOS/DGS Management Plan. Prepare the plan in accordance with the NCDOT Guidelines on the Management and Disposal of CGR available at:

[https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Environmental/Environmental Permits and Guidelines/Forms/AllItems.aspx](https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Environmental/Environmental%20Permits%20and%20Guidelines/Forms/AllItems.aspx)

The contractor shall comply with applicable regulation concerning such water disposal.

Prior to final payment, the contractor must submit a paper copy of all completed records pertaining to disposal of CGR. All costs associated with Management and Disposal of CGR shall be included in the payment of other items.

OSP PLAN SUBMITTAL

Prior to beginning surface preparation activities, the Contractor shall submit for review and approval the Overlay Surface Preparation (OSP) Plan. The OSP Plan shall detail the type of equipment that is intended to be used and the means by which the Contractor will achieve the following requirements:

- (A) Estimate depth of reinforcing steel.
- (B) Scarification of deck to required depth.
- (C) Field verification that required scarification depth was achieved within limits.
- (D) Hydro-demolition of deck with appropriate profile and to required depth.
- (E) Field verification that the required hydro-demolition depth was achieved within limits.

3.0 Surface Preparation

Remove all existing asphalt overlays and all loose, disintegrated, unsound or contaminated concrete to the limits shown on the plans with the following requirements:

ST-74

- (A) Sealing of Bridge Deck: Seal all expansion joints subject to run-off water from the hydro-demolition process with material approved by the Engineer, prior to beginning any demolition. The expansion joints shall remain sealed until water from the hydro-demolition process no longer passes over them. Take all steps necessary to eliminate the flow of water through the expansion joints, and any other locations water could leak from the deck.

All deck drains in the immediate work area and other sections of the bridge affected by the work being performed shall be sealed prior to beginning scarification. Drains shall remain sealed until it has been determined that materials from the hydro-demolition and concrete overlay operations cannot be discharged through them any longer.

- (B) Scarifying Bridge Deck: Removal of any asphalt wearing surface from the bridge deck and scarification of the entire surface of the concrete deck to remove concrete to a uniform depth within ½” of the plan overlay thickness, but not less than ½” inch above the top mat of reinforcing steel.

It will be the Contractor’s responsibility to determine amount of cover for the reinforcing steel. Use a pachometer or other approved device, as directed by Engineer, prior to beginning hydro-demolition. Readings shall be taken in the presence of the Engineer. Readings should be taken for each span at 1/5 points longitudinally and 1/3 points transversely. This cost for this work will be considered incidental to the cost of hydro-demolition of the bridge deck.

Estimated average cover to top mat:

Bridge # 440181 (S2 – US25 over I-26): 2-1/2” +/-3/8”

The above top mat cover dimensions are an estimate based on the best available information. Calibrate scarifying equipment in order to avoid damaging the reinforcing steel in the bridge floor or the approach slab. If reinforcing bars or bridge drainage devices are pulled up or snagged during operations, then cease work and consult with the Engineer to determine any necessary adjustments to the scarifying operation.

Remove and dispose of all concrete and asphalt, and thoroughly clean the scarified surface. In areas where reinforcing steel is located in the depth to be scarified, use another method with the Engineer’s approval.

- (C) Calibration of Hydro-Demolition Equipment: Two (2) trial areas shall be designated by the Engineer to demonstrate that the equipment, personnel, and methods of operation are capable of producing results to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The first trial area shall consist of approximately 50 square feet of sound concrete as determined by the Engineer. The equipment shall be calibrated to remove sound concrete from the scarified surface to the depth required to achieve the plan overlay thickness. After completion of this test area, the equipment shall be moved to the second area consisting of deteriorated or defective concrete, to determine whether unsound concrete will be completely removed with the previous calibration and to establish a baseline for requiring the contractor to place under-deck containment in areas subject to full depth removal, before beginning the hydro-demolition process in a span. Should it be determined that not all defective concrete has been removed, the hydro-demolition system

ST-75

shall be recalibrated to remove an additional ¼” of sound concrete, then re-test on deteriorated concrete.

If additional defective concrete is found, the depth of cut will increase in ¼” increments until only sound concrete is found remaining.

When satisfactory results are obtained, the machine parameters shall be used for production removal. The contractor shall make adjustments to the operating parameters, as required, to perform concrete removal as indicated on the plans and to adjust to the variance in the compressive strength of the concrete.

Hand held water blasting equipment, pneumatic hammers, and hand tools may be substituted for the hydro-demolition unit in inaccessible or inconvenient areas.

- (D) Hydro-demolition (Overlay Depth): Remove by hydro-demolition or chipping with hand tools all loose, unsound and contaminated deck concrete and, if necessary, sound concrete in order to allow for the placement of an overlay with the minimum depth shown on the plans. In areas where reinforcing steel is exposed and debonded for a length greater than two (2) feet, remove deck to an average depth of ½” below the exposed and debonded reinforcing steel. Reinforcing steel that is exposed and loose shall be tied to the crossing bar(s) as needed to secure the steel. Reinforcing steel shall be considered loose if when struck, movement or vibration can be observed. Concrete below crossing bar shall be removed as necessary to tie reinforcing steel to crossing bar with a wire tie. Dispose of the unsound concrete, clean, repair or replace damaged reinforcing steel and thoroughly clean the newly exposed surface.

Care shall be taken not to cut, stretch, or damage any exposed reinforcing steel.

The Engineer will re-inspect after each removal and require additional removals until compliance with plans and specifications are met.

Any areas of the prepared surface contaminated by oil or other materials detrimental to good bond as a result of the contractor’s operations shall be cleaned at the contractor’s expense.

Regardless of the method of removal, the removal operation shall be stopped if it is determined that sound concrete is being removed to a depth greater than required by the plans including any ¼” increments added per the above calibration process.

Appropriate recalibration, or change in equipment and methods shall be performed prior to resuming the removal operation.

- (E) Class II Surface Preparation (Partial Depth): At locations specified on the plans for Class II Surface Preparation, verify the depth of removal achieved by the hydro-demolition. The average depth of removal shall be approximately one-half the deck thickness but not less than ¾” below the top mat of steel. When hydro-demolition did not achieve the Class II Surface Preparation depth requirements, remove by hydro-demolition or chipping with hand tools all

ST-76

existing patches and contaminated concrete to the required depth. No additional payment will be made for Class II Surface Preparation depths achieved by the initial hydro-demolition.

All patches shall be removed under Class II Surface Preparation. If any patch cannot be removed by means of hydro-demolition, the Contractor shall use hand tools to remove the patch. Areas indicated on the plans that require Class II Surface Preparation, including the locations of existing patches, are from the best information available. The Contractor shall verify prior to surface preparation the location of all existing patches.

Dispose of the removed concrete, clean, repair or replace rusted or loose reinforcing steel and thoroughly clean the newly exposed surface. Care shall be taken not to cut, stretch, or damage any exposed reinforcing steel.

In overhangs, removing concrete areas of less than 0.60 ft²/ft. length of bridge without overhang support is permitted unless the Engineer directs otherwise. Overhang support is required for areas removed greater than 0.60 ft²/ft. length of bridge. Submit details of overhang support to the Engineer for approval prior to beginning the work.

- (F) Class III Surface Preparation (Full Depth): Remove by hydro-demolition or chipping with hand tools the full depth of slab. Dispose of the removed concrete, clean, repair or replace damaged reinforcing steel and thoroughly clean the newly exposed surface. Care shall be taken not to cut, stretch, or damage any exposed reinforcing steel.

For areas of less than 3 ft² suspending forms from existing reinforcing steel using wire ties is permitted. For larger areas, support forms by blocking from the beam flanges, or other approved method.

Overhang support is required for full depth removal adjacent to bridge rails. Submit details of overhang support to the Engineer for approval prior to beginning the work.

- (G) Under Deck Containment: Under deck containment shall be installed where Class III surface preparation occurs. The containment shall be installed prior to hydro-demolition in the areas where full depth removal is required or blow through may occur during the hydro-demolition process.

Submit for approval detailed plans for the under deck containment system. Detail how waste, debris, and wastewater are contained.

- (H) Concrete for Full Depth Repair: Fill the Class III surface preparation areas with Class AA, high early strength structural concrete or latex modified concrete in accordance with one of the methods described below:

- (1) Refill full depth areas with Class AA concrete to the bottom of the proposed concrete overlay in accordance with Section 420 of the *Standard Specifications*. Any of the methods for curing Class AA concrete as stated in the *Standard Specifications* are permitted except the membrane curing compound method.

Provide a raked finish to the surface of the Class AA concrete which provides a minimum relief of 1/16" and a maximum relief of 1/4".

ST-77

Verify the Class AA concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 2,500 psi using an approved, non-destructive test method. Brush a lean mix of the latex modified concrete to the surface and immediately place the overlay course.

- (2) Refill full depth areas with high early strength concrete as described in the Concrete for Deck Repair and Volumetric Mixer special provisions.
- (3) Refilling full depth areas with latex modified concrete during the Class III repair is permitted if any of the following conditions are met:
 - (a) The reinforcing steel cover is 1½ inches or less for the top mat of steel.
 - (b) The area being repaired is less than 1 yd².
 - (c) The Engineer directs the fill.

- (I) Preparation of Reinforcing Steel: Remove concrete without cutting or damaging existing steel unless otherwise noted in the plans. Damaged reinforcing steel, such as bars with nicks deeper than 20% of the bar diameter, shall be repaired or replaced. Reinforcing steel which has a cross section reduced to 75% or less shall be replaced with new reinforcing steel of similar cross section area. Replacement bars shall be Grade 60 and meet the material requirements of Section 1070 of the *Standard Specifications*. Replacement bars shall be spliced to existing bars using either minimum 30 bar diameter lap splices to existing steel with 100% cross sectional area or approved mechanical connectors. Support and protect the exposed reinforcing steel left unsupported by the hydro-demolition process against displacement and damage from loads such as those caused by removal equipment and delivery buggies. All reinforcing steel damaged or dislodged by these operations shall be replaced with bars of the same size at the contractor's expense.

Reinforcing steel exposed and cleaned by hydro-demolition will not require additional cleaning if encased in concrete within seven (7) days. Rebar exposed for more than seven (7) days shall be cleaned by high velocity water jets, with a minimum pressure 4,000 psi, prior to placement of the new concrete.

When large areas of the deck on composite bridges are removed resulting in the debonding of the primary reinforcing bars, the removal shall be performed in stages to comply with the construction sequence shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer.

- (J) Safety: Provide a containment system for handling expected and unexpected blow through of the deck. The containment system shall retain runoff water and debris and protect the area under the bridge deck. The Contractor shall be responsible for any injury or damage caused by these operations. The containment system shall remain in place until the concrete has been cast and reach minimum strength.

Provide adequate lighting when performing hydro-demolition activities at night. Submit a lighting plan to the Engineer for approval prior to beginning work.

- (K) Surface Cleaning: Removal of concrete debris shall be accomplished either by hand or mechanical means capable of removing wet debris and water in the same pass and after the

ST-78

hydro-demolition process to prevent debris from setting or adhering to the surface of the sound concrete. All concrete debris shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be legally disposed of at the contractor's expense. The contractor shall be responsible for disposing of all debris generated by the scarification operations.

Any debris which is allowed to set or adhere to the surface of the sound concrete shall be carefully removed at no additional cost. Exercise care to avoid any damage to the remaining sound concrete or exposed reinforcement. Prior to the placement of the overlay, the entire surface shall be cleaned with high pressure water to remove any bond-breaking residue, loose material from the concrete surface, and/or rust from the reinforcing steel. This residue shall be collected and disposed of by the contractor.

Any areas modified by chipping or hammering shall be cleaned with high pressure water at 7,500 psi minimum to remove any bond-breaking residue, loose concrete, and any deleterious material. This material shall be collected and disposed of by the contractor.

Any areas of the prepared surface contaminated by oil or other materials detrimental to good bond as a result of the contractor's operations shall be cleaned at the contractor's expense.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Scarifying Bridge Deck will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for the milling of existing asphalt wearing surface from the bridge deck or approaches, milling of the entire concrete bridge deck, repairing or replacing any damaged reinforcing steel, and the cleaning and disposal of all waste material generated.

Hydro-Demolition of Bridge Deck will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for hydro-demolition, removal and disposal of unsound and contaminated concrete, cleaning, repairing or replacing of reinforcing steel, and furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Class II Surface Preparation will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for Class II (partial depth) deck preparation where required by the plans and not attained by the initial hydro-demolition of the deck. The cost will also include removal and disposal of unsound and contaminated concrete, removal of all existing patches, cleaning, repairing or replacing of reinforcing steel, and all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Class III Surface Preparation will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for Class III (full depth) deck preparation and repair where required by the plans. The cost will also include removal and disposal of unsound and contaminated concrete, cleaning, repairing or replacing of reinforcing steel, under deck containment, placing and finishing concrete for full depth repair, and for furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Reinforcing Steel that is required for the repairs will be in accordance with Section 425 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

ST-79

Pay Item

Pay Unit

Scarifying Bridge Deck

Square Yard

Hydro-Demolition of Bridge Deck

Square Yard

Class II Surface Preparation

Square Yard

Class III Surface Preparation

Square Yard

ST-80

LATEX MODIFIED CONCRETE OVERLAY

(2-11-19)

DESCRIPTION

This special provision addresses the requirements for furnishing and placing an overlay of latex modified concrete (LMC) over existing concrete or repair concrete on bridge decks and approach pavement. Perform this work in accordance with this special provision and the applicable parts of the *Standard Specifications*.

QUALITY CONTROL

The Contractor is responsible for scheduling a pre-construction meeting with the Resident Engineer and the Area Bridge Construction Engineer.

Submit a Quality Control Plan to the Engineer for approval which, at a minimum, describes the methods of: storing materials, calibrating mixers, controlling moisture content in the aggregate, maintaining proper mix temperature, retarder usage, curing and curing time, controlling evaporation rate, cleaning and removing excess water.

Before beginning any work, obtain approval for all equipment to be used for deck preparation, mixing, placing, finishing and curing the LMC.

MATERIALS

For materials, equipment, and proportioning and mixing of modified compositions, see Article 1000-7 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Provide aggregates for use in the LMC that are free from ice, frost, frozen particles or other contaminants when introduced into the mixer.

The *Standard Specifications* shall be revised as follows:

1000-7(A) – Add the following paragraph to the end of the section:

Submit the LMC mix design, including laboratory compressive strength data for a minimum of six (6) 4-inch by 8-inch cylinders at seven (7) days for normal setting concrete to the Engineer for review. Include test results for the slump and air content of the laboratory mix. Perform tests in accordance with AASHTO T 22, T 119 and T 152.

PREPARATION OF SURFACE

Completely clean all surfaces within 48 hours prior to placing the overlay unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

Thoroughly soak the clean surface and maintain a wet surface for at least 12 hours immediately prior to placing the LMC. After soaking the surface for at least 12 hours, cover it with a layer of white opaque polyethylene film that is at least 4 mils thick. Immediately prior to placing the LMC, remove standing water from the surface using an approved vacuum system.

ST-81

PLACING AND FINISHING

Prior to placing LMC, install a bulkhead of easily compressible material at expansion joints to the required grade and profile.

Construction joints other than those shown on the plans will not be permitted unless approved by the Engineer. At construction joints, remove 4" of previously placed LMC prior to placing the adjacent latex concrete. Also, for staged construction, 4" of previously poured LMC shall be scarified, hydro-demolitioned and recast with the next stage.

Place and fasten screed rails in position to ensure finishing the new surface to the required profile. Do not treat screed rails with parting compound to facilitate their removal. Prior to placing the overlay attach a filler block to the bottom of the screed and pass it over the area to be repaired to check the thickness. The filler block thickness shall be equal to the design overlay thickness as shown in the plans. Remove all concrete that the block does not clear. Individual aggregates left after hydro-demolition may be allowed to project above the base of the filler block. Remove aggregate that does not provide a 1" clear cover to the top of the overlay.

Brush a latex cement mixture onto all vertical surfaces and do not let the brushed material dry before it is covered with the additional material required for the final grade. Remove all loose aggregate from the latex cement brushed surface prior to latex concrete placement (NOTE: For surfaces not prepared with hydro-demolition brush the lean latex mixture over horizontal and vertical surfaces).

Do not place the LMC until the burlap is saturated and approved by the Engineer. Drain excess water from the wet burlap before placement.

Place the LMC in one operation. Provide a minimum overlay thickness as shown in the plans.

Once LMC placement begins a single layer of wet burlap shall be placed five (5) feet behind the screed's burlap drag. In the event of a delay of ten (10) minutes or more, temporarily cover all exposed latex concrete with wet burlap and white opaque polyethylene.

When a tight, uniform surface is achieved and before the concrete becomes non-plastic, further finish the surface of the floor by burlap dragging or another acceptable method that produces an acceptable uniform surface texture.

Within 1 hour of covering with wet burlap, place a layer of 4 mil white opaque polyethylene film on the wet burlap and cure the surface for 48 hours. Then remove the curing material for an additional 48 hours air cure.

Screed rails or construction dams shall be separated from the newly placed concrete by passing a pointing trowel along the face of the formwork and the newly placed concrete. Carefully make this trowel cut for the entire depth and length of rails or dams after the LMC has sufficiently stiffened and cannot flow back.

As soon as practical, after the concrete has hardened sufficiently, test the finished surface with an approved rolling straightedge that is designed, constructed, and adjusted so that it will accurately indicate or mark all deck areas which deviate from a plane surface by more than 1/8" in 10'. Remove

ST-82

all high areas in the hardened surface in excess of 1/8" in 10' with an approved grinding or cutting machine. Additionally, the final LMC deck surface shall not deviate from the line and elevation indicated on the plans by more than 0.3" over any 50' length. Where variations are such that the corrections extend below the limits of the top layer of grout, seal the corrected surface with an approved sealing agent as required by the Engineer. If approved by the Engineer, correct low areas in an acceptable manner.

Unless otherwise indicated on the plans, groove the bridge floor in accordance with Subarticle 420-14(B) of the *Standard Specifications*.

LIMITATIONS OF OPERATIONS

The mixer is not permitted on the bridge deck unless otherwise approved.

No traffic is permitted on the finished LMC surface until the total specified curing time is completed and until the concrete reaches the minimum specified compressive strength.

Do not place LMC if the temperature of the concrete surface on which the overlay is to be placed is below 50°F or above 85°F. Measure the surface temperature by placing a thermometer under the insulation against the surface.

Prior to placing LMC, the air temperature, wind speed and evaporation rate shall be determined by Contractor and verified by the Engineer. Do not place LMC if the ambient air temperature is below 50°F or above 85°F, or if the wind velocity is greater than 10 mph.

Do not place LMC when the temperature of the LMC is below 45°F or above 85°F.

Do not place LMC if the rate of evaporation of surface moisture from the LMC determined by the Engineer or Contractor exceeds 0.05 pounds per square foot per hour during placement. The evaporation rate is calculated using the following formula:

$$E = (T_c^{2.5} - r \cdot T_a^{2.5}) \cdot (1 + 0.4V) \cdot (10^{-6})$$

where,

E = Evaporation Rate,

T_c = Concrete Temp (°F),

r = Relative Humidity (%/100)

T_a = Air Temp (°F),

V = Wind Velocity (mph)

Do not place LMC if the National Weather Service predicts the air temperature at the site to be below 35°F during the next 72 hours. If the predicted air temperature is above 35°F but below 50°F, then use insulation to protect the LMC for a period of at least 48 hours. Use insulation that meets the requirements of Subarticle 420-7(C) of the *Standard Specifications* and, if required, place it on the LMC as soon as initial set permits. When using insulation to protect LMC during

ST-83

the wet curing period, do not remove the insulation until the ambient air temperature is at least 50°F and rising. Leave the LMC uncovered for the 48 hour air curing period.

Stop all placement operations during periods of precipitation. Take adequate precautions to protect freshly placed LMC from sudden or unexpected precipitation. Keep an adequate quantity of protective coverings at the worksite to protect the freshly placed pavement from precipitation.

If working at night, provide approved lighting.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Latex Modified Concrete Overlay will be measured and paid for in cubic yards of LMC satisfactorily placed on the completed deck.

Placing and Finishing Latex Modified Concrete Overlay will be paid for at the contract unit price bid per square yard which includes compensation for furnishing all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work in accordance with the contract documents.

Grooving Bridge Floors will be measured and paid in accordance with Article 420-21 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Latex Modified Concrete Overlay	Cubic Yard
Placing & Finishing of Latex Modified Concrete Overlay	Square Yard
Grooving Bridge Floors	Square Feet

ST-84

ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE FOR PRESERVATION

(2-11-19)

DESCRIPTION

Elastomeric concrete is a mixture of a two-part polymer consisting of polyurethane and/or epoxy and kiln-dried aggregate. Provide an elastomeric concrete and binder system that is preapproved. Use the concrete in the blocked-out areas on both sides of the bridge deck joints as indicated on the plans.

MATERIALS

Provide materials that comply with the following minimum requirements at 14 days (or at the end of the specified curing time).

ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE PROPERTIES	TEST METHOD	MINIMUM REQUIREMENT
Compressive Strength, psi	ASTM D695	2000
5% Deflection Resilience	ASTM D695	95
Splitting Tensile Strength, psi	ASTM D3967	625
Bond Strength to Concrete, psi	ASTM C882 (C882M)	450
Durometer Hardness	ASTM D2240	50

BINDER PROPERTIES (without aggregate)	TEST METHOD	MINIMUM REQUIREMENT
Tensile Strength, psi	ASTM D638	1000
Ultimate Elongation	ASTM D638	150%
Tear Resistance, lb/in	ASTM D624	200

In addition to the requirements above, the elastomeric concrete must be resistant to water, chemical, UV and ozone exposure and withstand temperature extremes. Elastomeric concrete systems requiring preheated aggregates are not allowed.

PREQUALIFICATION

Manufacturers of elastomeric concrete materials shall submit samples (including aggregate, primer and binder materials) and a Type 3 certification in accordance with Article 106-3 of the *Standard Specifications* for prequalification to:

North Carolina Department of Transportation
Materials and Tests Unit

ST-85

1801 Blue Ridge Road
Raleigh, NC 27607

Prequalification will be determined for the system. Individual components will not be evaluated, nor will individual components of previously evaluated systems be deemed prequalified for use.

The submitted binder (a minimum volume of 1 gallon) and corresponding aggregate samples will be evaluated for compliance with the Materials requirements specified above. Systems satisfying all of the Materials requirements will be prequalified for a one (1) year period. Before the end of this period new product samples shall be resubmitted for prequalification evaluation.

If, at any time, any formulation or component modifications are made to a prequalified system that system will no longer be approved for use.

INSTALLATION

The elastomeric concrete shall not be placed until the reinforced concrete deck slab or overlay has cured for seven (7) full days and reached a minimum strength of 3,000 psi.

Provide a manufacturer's representative at the bridge site during the installation of the elastomeric concrete to ensure that all steps being performed comply with all manufacturer installation requirements including, but not limited to: weather conditions (ambient temperature, relative humidity, precipitation, wind, etc.), concrete deck surface preparation, binder and aggregate mixing, primer application, elastomeric concrete placement, curing conditions and minimum curing time before joint exposure to traffic. Do not place elastomeric concrete if the ambient air or surface temperature is below 45°F.

Prepare the concrete surface within 48 hours prior to placing the elastomeric concrete. Before placing the elastomeric concrete, all concrete surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned and dry. Sandblast the concrete surface in the block-out and clear the surface of all loose debris. Do not place the elastomeric concrete until the surface preparation is completed and approved.

Prepare and apply a primer, as per manufacturer's recommendations, to all concrete faces to be in contact with elastomeric concrete, and to areas specified by the manufacturer.

Prepare, batch, and place the elastomeric concrete in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Place the elastomeric concrete in the areas specified on the plans while the primer is still tacky and within two (2) hours after applying the primer. Trowel the elastomeric concrete to a smooth finish.

The joint opening in the elastomeric concrete shall match the formed opening in the concrete deck prior to sawing the joint.

FIELD SAMPLING

Provide additional production material to allow freshly mixed elastomeric concrete to be sampled for acceptance. A minimum of six (6) 2-inch cube molds and three (3) 3-inch diameter x 6-inch cylinders will be taken by the Department for each day's production. Compression, splitting tensile, and durometer hardness testing will be performed by the Department to determine

ST-86

acceptance. Materials failing to meet the requirements listed above are subject to removal and replacement at no cost to the Department.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

Elastomeric Concrete for Preservation will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price bid per cubic foot and will be full compensation for material, labor, tools, and equipment necessary for satisfactorily installing the elastomeric concrete in place.

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Elastomeric Concrete for Preservation	Cubic Feet

ST-87

BRIDGE JOINT DEMOLITION**(SPECIAL)****DESCRIPTION**

This special provision addresses the removal of existing joint material and adjacent concrete headers to facilitate the installation of new elastomeric concrete headers and bridge joint seals at the locations noted in the contract plans.

EQUIPMENT

Use the following surface preparation equipment:

- (A) Sawing equipment capable of sawing concrete to a specified depth.
- (B) Power driven hand tools for removal of concrete are required that meet the following requirements:
- (C) Pneumatic hammers weighing a nominal 15 lbs. (7 kg) or less
- (D) Pneumatic hammer chisel-type bits that do not exceed the diameter of the shaft in width.
- (E) Hand tools such as hammers and chisels for removal of final particles of concrete.

REMOVAL AND PREPARATION

Prior to any construction, take the necessary precautions to ensure debris from joint construction is not allowed to fall below the bridge deck.

Remove existing joint material by methods approved by the Engineer. Provide a 1" deep saw cut around the perimeter of areas noted for bridge deck removal.

Remove by chipping with hand tools concrete headers adjacent to the joint to the limits shown on the contract plans. Use a small chipping hammer (15 lb. class) to prepare the edges of the repair area to limit micro fractures. In addition, all loose and unsound concrete shall be removed. Dispose of the removed concrete.

In overhangs, removing concrete areas greater than 0.60 ft²/ft length of bridge will require overhang support. Submit the overhang support method to the Engineer for approval.

If the condition of the concrete is such that deep spalls or sheer faces result, notify the Engineer for the proper course of action. Excavation of concrete at the existing joint shall result in the bottom of the excavation being reasonably flat and level, to provide sufficient substrate for placement and support of elastomeric concrete.

Care shall be taken not to cut, stretch, or damage any exposed reinforcing steel.

Clean, repair, or replace rusted or loose reinforcing steel. Thoroughly clean the newly exposed surface to be free of all grease, oil, curing compounds, acids, dirt, or loose debris.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Bridge Joint Demolition will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price bid per square foot and will be full compensation for removal, containment, and disposal of existing joint material and concrete, and shall include the cost of labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

ST-88

Pay Item

Pay Unit

Bridge Joint Demolition

Square Feet

ST-89

FOAM JOINT SEALS FOR PRESERVATION**(SPECIAL)****SEALS**

Use preformed seals compatible with concrete and resistant to abrasion, oxidation, oils, gasoline, salt, and other materials that are spilled on or applied to the surface. Use a resilient, UV stable, preformed, impermeable, flexible, expansion joint seal. The joint seal shall consist of low-density, closed cell, cross-linked polyethylene non-extrudable foam. The joint seal shall contain no EVA (Ethylene Vinyl Acetate). Cell generation shall be achieved by being physically blown using nitrogen. No chemical blowing agents shall be used in the cell generation process.

Use seals manufactured with grooves 1/8"± wide by 1/8"± deep and spaced between 1/4" and 1/2" apart along the bond surface running the length of the joint. Use seals with a depth that meets the manufacturer's recommendation, but is not less than 70% of the uncompressed width. Provide a seal designed so that, when compressed, the center portion of the top does not extend upward above the original height of the seal by more than 1/4". Provide a seal that has a working range of 30% tension and 60% compression and meets the requirements given below.

TEST	TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENT
Tensile Strength	ASTM D3575, Suffix T	110 – 130 psi
Compression Set	ASTM D1056 Suffix B, 2 hr recovery	10% - 16%
Water Absorption	ASTM D3575	< 0.03 lb/ft ²
Elongation at Break	ASTM D3575	180% - 210%
Tear Resistance	ASTM D624 (D3575, Suffix G)	14 – 20 pli
Density	ASTM D3575, Suffix W, Method A	1.8 – 2.2 lb/ft ³
Toxicity	ISO-10993.5	Pass (not cytotoxic)

Have the top of the joint seal clearly shop marked. Inspect the joint seals upon receipt to ensure that the marks are clearly visible before installation.

BONDING ADHESIVE

Use a two-component, 100% solid, modified epoxy adhesive supplied by the joint seal manufacturer that meets the requirements given below.

TEST	TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENT
Tensile strength	ASTM D638	3,000 psi (min.)
Compressive strength	ASTM D695	7,000 psi (min.)
Hardness	Shore D Scale	75-85 psi
Water Absorption	ASTM D570	0.25% by weight max.

ST-90

Elongation to Break	ASTM D638	5% (max.)
Bond Strength	ASTM C882	2,000 psi (min.)

Use an adhesive that is workable to 40°F. When installing in ambient air or surface temperatures below 40°F or for application on moist, difficult to dry concrete surfaces, use an adhesive specified by the manufacturer of the joint seal.

SAWING THE JOINT

The concrete at the face of the joint (elastomeric concrete, polyester polymer concrete, Portland cement concrete, etc.) shall have sufficient time to cure such that no damage can occur to the concrete prior to sawing to the final width and depth as specified in the plans.

When sawing the joint to receive the foam seal, always use a rigid guide to control the saw in the desired direction. To control the saw and to produce a straight line as indicated on the plans, anchor and positively connect a template or a track to the bridge deck. Do not saw the joint by visual means such as a chalk line. Fill the holes used for holding the template or track to the deck with an approved flowable, non-shrink, non-metallic grout.

Saw cut to the desired width and depth in one (1) or two (2) passes of the saw by placing and spacing two (2) metal blades on the saw shaft to the desired width for the joint opening.

The desired depth is the depth of the seal plus ¼” above the top of the seal plus approximately 1” below the bottom of the seal. An irregular bottom of sawed joint is permitted as indicated on the plans. Grind exposed corners on saw cut edges to a ¼” chamfer.

Saw cut a straight joint, centered over the formed opening and to the desired width specified in the plans. Prevent any chipping or damage to the sawed edges of the joint.

Remove any staining or deposited material resulting from sawing with a wet blade to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

PREPARATION OF SAWED JOINT FOR SEAL INSTALLATION

The elastomeric concrete or polyester polymer concrete at the joint shall cure a minimum of 24 hours prior to seal installation. Portland cement concrete at the joint shall cure following the special provisions.

After sawing the joint, the Engineer will thoroughly inspect the sawed joint opening for spalls, popouts, cracks, etc. All necessary repairs will be made by the Contractor prior to blast cleaning and installing the seal, at no cost to the Department.

Clean the joints by sandblasting with clean dry sand immediately before placing the bonding agent. Sandblast the joint opening to provide a firm, clean joint surface free of curing compound, loose material and any foreign matter. Sandblast the joint opening without causing pitting or uneven surfaces. The aggregate in the joint concrete may be exposed after sandblasting.

After blasting, either brush the surface with clean brushes made of hair, bristle, or fiber, blow the surface with compressed air, or vacuum the surface until all traces of blast products and abrasives are removed from the surface, pockets, and corners.

ST-91

If nozzle blasting is used to clean the joint opening, use compressed air that does not contain detrimental amounts of water or oil.

Examine the blast-cleaned surface and remove any traces of oil, grease, or smudge deposited in the cleaning operations.

Bond the seal to the blast-cleaned surface on the same day the surface is blast cleaned.

SEAL INSTALLATION

Install the joint seal according to the manufacturer's procedures and recommendations and as recommended below. Do not install the joint seal if the ambient air or surface temperature is below 45°F. Have a manufacturer's certified trained factory representative present during the installation of the first seal of the project.

Before installing the joint seal, check the uninstalled seal length to ensure the seal is the same length as the deck opening. When the joint seal requires splicing, use the heat welding method by placing the joint material ends against a Teflon heating iron of 425-475°F for 7 - 10 seconds, then pressing the ends together tightly. Do not test the welding until the material has completely cooled.

Begin installation by protecting the top edges of the concrete deck adjacent to the vertical walls of the joint as a means to minimize clean up. Stir each epoxy bonding agent component independently, using separate stirring rods for each component to prevent premature curing of the bonding agent. Pour the two (2) components, at the specified mixing ratio, into a clean mixing bucket. Mix the components with a low speed drill (400 rpm max.) until a uniform gray color is achieved without visible marbling. Apply bonding agent to both sides of the joint concrete, as well as both sides of the joint seal, making certain to fill completely the grooves with epoxy. With gloved hands, compress the joint seal and with the help of a blunt probe, push the seal into the joint opening until the seal is recessed approximately ¼" below the surface. When pushing down on the joint seal, apply pressure only in a downward direction. Do not push the joint seal into the joint opening at an angle that would stretch the material. Seals that are stretched during installation shall be removed and rejected. Once work on placing a seal begins, do not stop until it is completed. Clean the excess epoxy from the top of the joint seal immediately with a trowel. Do not use solvents or any cleaners to remove the excess epoxy from the top of the seal. Remove the protective cover at the joint edges and check for any excess epoxy on the surface. Remove excess epoxy with a trowel, the use of solvents or any cleaners will not be allowed.

The installed system shall be watertight and will be monitored until final inspection and approval.

(A) Watertight Integrity Test

- (1) Upon completion of each foam seal expansion joint, perform a water test on the top surface to detect any leakage. Cover the roadway section of the joint from curb to curb, or barrier rail to barrier rail, with water, either ponded or flowing, not less than 1 inch above the roadway surface at all points. Block sidewalk sections and secure an unnozzled water hose delivering approximately 1 gallon of water per minute to the inside face of the bridge railing, trained in a downward position about six (6) inches above the sidewalk, such that there is continuous flow of water across the sidewalk and down the curb face of the joint.

ST-92

- (2) Maintain the ponding or flowing of water on the roadway and continuous flow across sidewalks and curbs for a period of five (5) hours. At the conclusion of the test, the underside of the joint is closely examined for leakage. The foam seal expansion joint is considered watertight if no obvious wetness is visible on the Engineer's finger after touching a number of underdeck areas. Damp concrete that does not impart wetness to the finger is not considered a sign of leakage.
- (3) If the joint system leaks, locate the place(s) of leakage and take any repair measures necessary to stop the leakage at no additional cost to the Department. Use repair measures recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer prior to beginning corrective work.
- (4) If measures to eliminate leakage are taken, perform a subsequent water integrity test subject to the same conditions as the original test. Subsequent tests carry the same responsibility as the original test and are performed at no additional cost to the Department.

Do not place pavement markings on top of foam joint seals.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

Foam Joint Seals for Preservation will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price bid per linear foot and will be full compensation for furnishing all material, labor, tools, and equipment necessary for installing these seals in place and accepted.

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Foam Joint Seals for Preservation	Linear Feet

ST-93

CONCRETE BRIDGE DECK CRACK SEALING

(SPECIAL)

DESCRIPTION

This work consists of preparation of concrete bridge deck surfaces and the furnishing and application of High Molecular Weight Methacrylate (HMWM) treatment materials to seal bridge deck surfaces and cracks. The surface of the concrete shall be prepared and the HMWM resin bridge deck sealer shall be applied in accordance with this special provision and as indicated on the plans, or as approved by the Engineer.

Work includes: bridge deck surface preparation, placement of HMWM deck sealer and broadcast sand, and any incidentals necessary to complete the project, as specified or as indicated on the plans.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit for approval the following requested items and any other relevant documents:

- (A) A manufacturer's safety data sheet (MSDS) for each shipment of the HMWM components.
- (B) HMWM material information and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- (C) Certification from an independent testing laboratory that the materials meet the requirements of these provisions.
- (D) The dates of manufacture of the polymer materials, their lot numbers and date of shelf-life expiration for each lot number.
- (E) A table indicating the likely cure time in minutes for the allowable ambient temperature range, in increments of 10° F (6° C).
- (F) A work plan for each structure that includes estimated times for surface preparation and HMWM application.

MATERIAL DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Sufficient quantities of all HMWM materials shall be stored at the site to perform the entire application. These materials shall be stored in their original containers and according to the manufacturer's directions. These containers must bear the manufacturer's label. The label must indicate the manufacture date, the batch number, the trade name brand, and quantity. Containers of promoters and initiators shall be stored in a manner that prevents leakage or spillage. The containers and measuring devices shall not be stored in a manner that allows leakage or spilling to contact the containers or materials of the other.

MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

ST-94

A manufacturer's representative shall be on site for the duration of the work, to provide expert assistance on storage, mixing, application, clean-up, and disposal of materials.

MATERIALS

High Molecular Weight Methacrylate (HMWM) Concrete Deck Sealer

Sealer for the bridge concrete deck surface shall be a low odor, high molecular weight methacrylate sealer and consist of a resin, initiator, and promoter. The sealer shall conform to requirements indicated in Table 1, below, and all components shall be supplied by a single manufacturer.

Initiator for the methacrylate resin shall consist of a metal drier and peroxide. If supplied separately from the resin, the metal drier shall not be mixed with the peroxide directly; a VIOLENT EXOTHERMIC REACTION will occur. The containers and measuring devices shall not be stored in a manner that allows leakage or spilling to contact the containers or materials of the other.

Table 1

HIGH MOLECULAR WEIGHT METHACRYLATE RESIN PROPERTIES

(Tested yearly)

Property	Test Method	Requirement
Viscosity**	ASTM D 2196	25 cps maximum (Brookfield RVT with UL adapter, 50 RPM at 77 °F)
Volatile Content**	ASTM D 2369	30 percent, maximum
Specific Gravity**	ASTM D 1475	0.90 minimum at 77 °F
Flash Point	ASTM D 3278	180 °F minimum
Vapor Pressure**	ASTM D 323	0.02 psi (140 Pa or 1.0 mm Hg) maximum at 77 °F (25°C)
Tensile Strength	ASTM D638	1,500 psi minimum
Solids Content		100% by weight
**Test shall be performed before initiator is added		

Aggregates

Sand for abrasive sand finish or filling of large cracks shall have the following properties:

(A) Commercial-quality blast sand.

(B) Gradation as per AASHTO Test Method T27:

ST-95

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
No. 8	100
No. 16	80 – 100
No. 40	0 - 7

(C) Shall be dry at the time of application.

SURFACE PREPARATION

If any areas of the concrete bridge deck require repairs for spalls or delaminations, the repairs shall be completed prior to surface preparation and placement of the HMWM. The type of concrete deck repair material shall be compatible with the HMWM material, and any cure time of the concrete deck repair material, as required by the HMWM manufacturer, shall be completed prior to placement of the HMWM.

The surface of concrete deck shall be prepared for application of the HMWM sealer by shotblasting in order to remove all existing grease, slurry, oils, paint, dirt, striping, curing compound, rust, membrane, weak surface mortar, or any other contaminants that could interfere with the proper adhesion, penetration, and filling of the crack and the curing of the HMWM sealer material.

The final prepared surface shall adhere to the following requirements:

- (A) The areas to receive deck seal treatment shall be cleaned by shotblasting, or abrasive sandblasting in the event that the shotblaster cannot access areas to be prepared. The size of shot or sand, and travel speed of the equipment shall be selected to provide a uniformly clean surface with a uniform profile. Striping shall be removed to the maximum extent determined to be practical by the Engineer using up to 3 passes with shotblasting, sandblasting, or other approved equipment. Cleaned surfaces shall not be exposed to vehicular traffic unless approved by the Engineer. If the deck becomes contaminated before placing the deck sealer, the Contractor shall shotblast or abrasive sandblast the contaminated areas to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no additional cost.
- (B) Prior to filling and sealing, cracks on the concrete bridge deck shall be protected from materials that can interfere with the filling of the crack and the curing of the HMWM crack filling material. Any loose particles shall be removed by magnets and oil free compressed air and vacuuming, such that no excess particles remain, just prior to placement of the HMWM. The concrete deck shall be completely dry. Power washing will not be allowed.
- (C) Cleaning and preparation methods other than those detailed by this Special Provision may be suggested by the HMWM manufacturer and must be approved by the Engineer prior to implementation.

ST-96

HMWM APPLICATION

Immediately before placing HMWM, all exposed surfaces shall be completely dry and blown clean with oil-free compressed air.

After the exposed surfaces have been prepared and are dry, HMWM shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mixed HMWM shall be applied as soon as practical (approximately 5 minutes) and HMWM that exhibits an increase in viscosity and temperature shall not be placed on the concrete surface. An application rate of approximately one gallon per 100 square feet of deck is typically adequate. The application rate may vary depending on field conditions. The manufacturer's representative shall assist the Contractor in determining the application rates.

The mixed HMWM shall be applied directly to the deck, by flooding, and uniformly spread, allowing time for the polymer to seep down into the cracks, making additional applications until cracks are filled. The HMWM shall be worked across the bridge deck surface and into the cracks with a broom or squeegee. Regardless of the application method used, the polymer shall be applied in sufficient quantity and applications to fill cracks level with the top bridge deck surface. Excess HMWM shall be brushed off the surface prior to the polymer hardening.

For existing bridge decks that have grooving or tining at the time of HMWM application, particular care shall be taken to keep grooving or tining channels from filling with HMWM. For bridge decks that do not yet have grooving at the time of HMWM application, application of the HMWM crack sealer shall be completed prior to grooving of the deck surface, and grooving shall not be performed until the polymer has cured a minimum of 48 hours.

Sand, as prescribed in the Special Provision shall be broadcast over the applied HMWM at the minimum rate of 2.0 pound per square yard. The sand shall be broadcast as soon as practical and before the viscosity of the polymer begins to increase.

LIMITATIONS OF OPERATIONS

- (A) HMWM material shall not be used after the shelf life date.
- (B) If expansion joints are not being replaced or have been replaced prior to shotblasting, they shall be protected from damage from the shotblasting operation. Deck drains and areas of curb or railing above the proposed surface shall be protected from the shotblasting operation.
- (C) All blast media and contaminants shall be picked up and stored in a vacuum unit and no dust shall be created during the blasting operation that will obstruct the view of motorists in adjacent roadways. Blast media and contaminants shall be stored, handled, and disposed of in accordance with all applicable local, state, and federal requirements.
- (D) The Contractor shall cover seal and elastomeric material in deck joints, plug deck drain scuppers, seal cracks on underside of deck, and use other necessary protective measures to prevent leakage of deck sealer below the concrete deck, to protect waterways, bridge components, traffic, roadway, and any other items or areas below the bridge.

ST-97

- (E) The Contractor shall assure that traffic is protected from rebound, dust, and construction activities. Appropriate shielding shall be provided as required and/or directed by the Engineer.
- (F) The Contractor shall provide suitable coverings (e.g. heavy-duty drop cloths) as needed to protect all exposed areas not to receive deck sealer treatment, such as curbs, sidewalks, parapets, etc.
- (G) All damage or defacement resulting from Contractor's operations shall be cleaned and/or repaired to the Engineer's satisfaction at no additional cost to the Department.
- (H) Unless otherwise allowed by the Engineer, the HMWM may not be applied within 48 hours after a rain or when more than 10 percent probability of rain is forecast within 4 hours following the application.
- (I) Prepared surfaces shall be protected from precipitation and heavy dew during and after the application of the HMWM.
- (J) The work shall be conducted in a continuous operation, with the HMWM application immediately following surface preparation.
- (K) HMWM treatment shall be applied only if the deck surface temperature and the air temperatures are between 50° F (10° C) and 90° F (32° C) and the weather forecast indicates air temperatures will remain within that range for at least twelve hours after the end of the application.
- (L) The HMWM to be applied shall be suitable for use at the concrete temperature at the time of the application.
- (M) The HMWM shall be applied during the lowest temperature period of the day, typically between 1:00 a.m. and 9:00 a.m., when the cracks are open to the greatest extent.
- (N) Traffic shall not be permitted on the treated surface until the sand cover adheres sufficiently, so that no tracking will occur.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Shotblasting Bridge Deck will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard and will be full compensation for the shotblasting and necessary sandblasting and handwork to prepare the entire concrete bridge deck, and removal and disposal of all waste material generated.

Concrete Bridge Deck Crack Sealing will be measured and paid for at the contract unit price per square yard as specified. The contract bid price for such work shall be full compensation for bridge deck surface and crack preparation; for furnishing and applying the HMWM crack sealer and sand; for protection of waterways, bridge, and other nearby surfaces, vehicles, and pedestrians; and for all labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

ST-98

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Shotblasting Bridge Deck	Square Yard
Concrete Bridge Deck Crack Sealing	Square Yard

ST-99

ANODIZED THREE BAR METAL RAIL

(SPECIAL)

1.0 GENERAL

Provide anodized three bar metal rails, dark brown in color, in accordance with the Standard Specifications, the details shown in the contract plans, and this Special Provision.

2.0 MATERIALS

The aluminum three bar metal rail shall conform to the requirements of Section 460 of the Standard Specifications and the drawing requirements. Color shall be achieved via an anodizing process after all sections have been fully fabricated. Contractor shall submit anodizing process to engineer for approval prior to fabrication.

3.0 MEASUREMENT

Quantity paid for is the actual number of linear feet of anodized rails, complete in place and accepted, measured along the rails.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The quantity for which payment is made is shown in linear feet on the plans for “Anodized Three Bar Metal Rail”. The unit bid per linear foot is full compensation for all materials, painting, tools, labor, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

ST-100

MOMENT SLAB WITH SOUND BARRIER WALL

(SPECIAL)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

Construct Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall in accordance with the plans, accepted submittals and Section 420 of the Standard Specifications. Do not remove slab falsework until concrete achieves a minimum compressive strength of 2400psi.

Moment slab with Sound Barrier Wall shall accommodate the standard concrete barrier rail to allow for the connection of the Sound Barrier Wall. The cost of the concrete barrier rail and sound barrier wall shall be included in the cost of the Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall.

Furnish planks, structural steel, and all other materials; handling, transporting, fabricating, galvanizing, and storing materials; furnishing erection drawings, erecting and installing the sound barrier wall members and all other materials as required by the plans, Standard Specifications and this Special Provision on the moment slab including the panels to the first ground supported posts at ends of moment slab.

The Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall plans allow for 7'-6" maximum post spacing. Post spacing greater than 7'-6" will not be permitted. Provide post spacing consistent with the plans. The weight of the sound barrier in its entirety shall not exceed the value provided in the contract documents.

A maximum one foot drop or rise in elevation between wall sections is permitted. Elevation changes greater than one foot, if necessary, will be allowed only at the end of the wall. Top of wall elevation changes that result in a jagged appearance will not be allowed. Soil elevation at moment slabs shall be kept a minimum of 3" below bottom of wall panel.

2.0 ALTERNATE POST SPACING

As an alternate, the Contractor may submit plans for post spacing other than shown for review and approval. A submittal reducing the post spacing shall include the plank material and design specifications. The submittal shall also include an elevation view depicting the revised post spacing and proposed top of wall elevations. The proposed top of wall elevations shall be equal to or greater than the plan dimensions.

Submit two sets of detailed plans for review. Include all details in the plans, including the size, spacing and materials of required piles. Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer check, seal and date the plans. After the plans are reviewed and, if necessary, the corrections made, submit one set of reproducible tracings on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

3.0 WALL TYPE

Walls that have been assigned "Approved" or "Approved for Provisional Use" status by the Product Evaluation Program will be considered for use as the Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall planks. Wall plank design details and materials must meet the design and

ST-101

construction requirements of the project and the applicable loadings except that the wall is not required to meet the traffic loading requirements. Wall structural stability and connection details shall conform to the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, except that traffic loading shall not be applied to the sound barrier wall.

The wall shall meet the following aesthetic requirements in addition to those noted within the contract plans. The traffic and non-traffic faces of the wall planks shall be configured such that only the post flanges extend beyond the face of the planks as shown in the plans such that a uniform surface is visible from the traffic and non-traffic sides of the wall. This uniform surface appearance is to extend from the top of wall to the bottom of the vertical post members as shown in the plans. The bottom of the wall shall be detailed for free and complete drainage of wall areas. Additionally, the plank configuration proposed shall allow for visual inspection of the post to concrete barrier rail bolts from the bottom of the wall without the need to remove any components.

Prior to submittal of Working Drawings, as described herein, submit a copy of the signed NCDOT Product Status Notification Letter and two sets of preliminary plans for review and approval. Include material specifications for all components. Once preliminary plans are approved, submit Working Drawings in accordance with all applicable portions of the requirements herein, including details necessary to fabricate and construct the proposed components.

Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer check, seal and date the plans and, when requested, calculations. After the plans are reviewed and, if necessary, corrections made, submit one set of reproducible tracings on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

4.0 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

Provide materials and fabricate members in accordance with the requirements of Division 10 of the Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. The structural planks for the Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall are to have the following properties:

Flexural Strength	57,000 psi	ASTM D-790
Tensile Strength	60,000 psi	ASTM D-638
Compressive Strength	65,000 psi	ASTM D-695
Tensile Modulus	3,500,000 psi	ASTM D-638
Flexural Modulus	1,600,000 psi	ASTM D-790
Specific Gravity	1.88 (typ)	ASTM D-792

The structural planks are to be colored and shall be uniform throughout the pultruded composite. The color is to be approved by the Engineer before the planks are delivered to the jobsite.

ST-102

The structural planks shall exhibit good workmanship and shall be free of burrs, cracks or other objectionable marks which would adversely affect the barrier's performance or serviceability. All cracked, discolored, burned or damaged structural planks will be rejected either at the fabrication shop or the construction site even after installation, but prior to acceptance of the project.

The structural steel is to meet the requirements of the Standard Specifications. The posts, backing angles, bolts, nuts and washers are to be painted to match the structural planks. The paint system as described in Section 442 of the Standard Specifications and the Structural Steel Shop Coatings shall be System 1, with the exception that the surfaces are not to be cleaned to an SSPC SP-10 finish after being galvanized and the top coat color is to be as noted on the contract plans and approved by the Engineer. After erection, the bolts, nuts, and washers are to be primed by brush, then the entire support system of posts, backing angles, bolts, nuts and washers are to be top-coated. The structural planks are to be masked so no overspray or spatters occur. The Contractor is to provide 3 samples of paint close to the color of the structural planks to the Engineer for his selection of the final color. The limits of the painting are from the top of the posts to the bottom of the lowest plank.

5.0 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

The erection of the sound barrier components shall not begin until the concrete in the bridge railing has reached a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi. Install posts as shown on the plans or in the accepted submittals with a tolerance of 1/2 inch per foot from vertical or as necessary to conform to the plank design if more restrictive.

6.0 WORKING DRAWINGS

Submit plank design calculations and specifications for approval prior to purchasing the plank materials. Submit metalwork fabrication drawings for approval prior to fabrication of steel wall components. This submittal shall clearly indicate access for visual inspection of the post attached bolts. Submit an erection plan and plank support components, for review and acceptance prior to fabrication of metalwork. Submit five sets of detail drawings.

7.0 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

The approximate quantity of Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall shown in the plans is an estimate based on the limits of the moment slab. No measurement for payment will be made for this pay item.

8.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for "Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall".

The price bid will be full compensation for all work covered by this Special Provision including, but not limited to, furnishing panels, structural steel, and all other materials; handling, transporting, fabricating, galvanizing, and storing materials; furnishing erection drawings, and erecting and installing the Moment Slab with Sound Barrier wall components.

ST-103

Payment will be made under:

Item

Unit

Moment Slab with Sound Barrier Wall

Lump Sum

SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR PROTECTION OF RAILWAY INTEREST

Under the terms of these provisions, the North Carolina Department of Transportation shall hereinafter be called “Department”, and the Blue Ridge Southern Railway shall hereinafter be called “Railroad”.

1. AUTHORITY OF RAILROAD ENGINEER AND DEPARTMENT ENGINEER:

The Railroad’s Engineer, shall have final authority in all matters affecting the safe maintenance of Railroad traffic including the adequacy of the foundations and structures supporting the Railroad tracks.

The authorized representative of the North Carolina Department of Transportation, hereinafter referred to as the Department Engineer, shall have authority over all other matters as prescribed herein including Project Specifications, Special Provisions, and the plans.

2. SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall complete the Railroad’s Application Package for Temporary Entry Permit including Application and Insurance Requirements. Return the completed application, including the required set of plans, that include lat/lon coordinates and maps, and forward it, along with your payment for the \$1,250.00 application fee. Make payment and forward to:

Omega Rail Management, Inc.
4721 Trousdale Dr., Ste. 206
Nashville, TN 37220-1372

Also, submit a detailed scope of work statement that addresses the activities taking place, location and limits of the affected Railroad property equipment and personnel, access, storage, duration of work, schedule of work, proximity to track and other important structures. All of this detail should be focused on how it will affect Railroad property and Railroad operations.

After your application has been approved, a permit must be executed prior to commencing the project. The permit will not become effective until the Railroad has (1) received all insurance documents required by the permit, (2) received the appropriate permit fee and document processing fee, and (3) executed and returned the permit to you. A duration of four months should be allowed for this process. Any questions should be directed to Taylor Oakley at (800) 990-1961 or toakley@omegarail.com.

3. INTERFERENCE WITH RAILROAD OPERATIONS:

- A. The Contractor shall so arrange and conduct his work that there will be no interference with Railroad operations, including train, signal, telephone and telegraphic services, or damage to the property of the Railroad or to poles, wires, and other facilities of tenants on the right of way of the Railroad. Whenever work is liable to affect the operations or safety of trains, the method of doing such work shall first be submitted to the Railroad Engineer for approval, but such approval shall not relieve the Contractor from liability. Any work to be performed by the Contractor which requires flagging service or inspection service (watchman) shall be deferred by the Contractor until the flagging protection or inspection service required by the Railroad is available at the job site.
- B. Whenever work within Railroad's right of way is of such a nature that impediment to Railroad operations such as use of runaround tracks or necessity for reduced speed is unavoidable, the Contractor shall schedule and conduct his operations so that such impediment is reduced to the absolute minimum.
- C. Should conditions arising from, or in connection with the work, require that immediate and unusual provisions be made to protect operations and property of the Railroad, the Contractor shall make such provisions. If in the judgment of the Railroad Engineer, or in his absence, the Railroad's Division Engineer, such provision is insufficient, either may require or provide such provisions as he deems necessary. In any event, such unusual provisions shall be at the Contractor's expense and without cost to the Railroad or the Department.
- D. "One Call" Services do not locate buried Railroad utilities. The contractor shall contact the Railroad's representative 2 days in advance of work at those places where excavation, Pile driving, or heavy loads may damage the Railroad's underground facilities. Upon request from the Contractor or Department, Railroad forces will locate and paint mark or flag the Railroad's underground facilities. The Contractor shall avoid excavation or other disturbances of these facilities. If disturbance or excavation is required near a buried Railroad facility, the contractor shall coordinate with the Railroad to have the facility potholed manually with careful hand excavation. The facility shall be protected by the Contractor during the course of the disturbance under the supervision and direction of the Railroad's representative

4. TRACK CLEARANCES:

- A. The minimum track clearances to be maintained by the Contractor during construction are shown on the Plans. If temporary clearances are not shown on the plans, the following criteria shall govern the use of falsework and formwork above or adjacent to operated tracks.
- (1) A minimum vertical clearance of 22'-0" above top of highest rail shall be maintained at all times.
- (2) A minimum horizontal clearance of 13'-0" from centerline of tangent track or 14'-0" from centerline of curved track shall be maintained at all times. Additional

horizontal clearance may be required in special cases to be safe for operating conditions. This additional clearance will be as determined by the Railroad Engineer.

(3) All proposed temporary clearances which are less than those listed above must be submitted to Railroad Engineer for approval prior to construction and must also be authorized by the regulatory body of the State if less than the legally prescribed clearances

(4) The temporary clearance requirements noted above shall also apply to all other physical obstructions including, but not limited to: stockpiled materials, parked equipment, placement or driving of piles, and bracing or other construction supports.

B. However, before undertaking any work within Railroad's right of way, or before placing any obstruction over any track, the Contractor shall:

(1) Notify the Railroad Engineer at least 72 hours in advance of the work.

(2) Receive assurance from the Railroad Engineer that arrangements have been made for flagging service as may be necessary.

(3) Receive permission from the Railroad Engineer to proceed with the work.

(4) Ascertain that the Department Engineer has received copies of notice to the Railroad and of the Railroad's response thereto.

5. CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES:

A. General:

Construction work and operations by the Contractor on Railroad's property shall be:

(1) Subject to the inspection and approval of the Railroad Engineer or their designated Construction Engineering Representative.

(2) In accord with the Railroad's written outline of specific conditions.

(3) In accord with the Railroad's general rules, regulations and requirements including those relating to safety, fall protection and personal protective equipment.

(4) In accord with these Special Provisions.

B. Submittal Requirements

(1) The Contractor shall submit all construction related correspondence and submittals electronically to the Railroad Engineer.

- (2) The Contractor shall allow for 30 days for the Railroad's review and response.
- (3) All work in the vicinity of the Railroad's property that has the potential to affect the Railroad's train operations or disturb the Railroad's Property must be submitted and approved by the Railroad prior to work being performed.
- (4) All submittals and calculations must be signed and sealed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer.
- (5) All submittals shall first be approved by the Department Engineer and the Railroad Engineer, but such approval shall not relieve the Contractor from liability.
- (6) For all construction projects, the following submittals, but not limited to those listed below, shall be provided for review and approval when applicable:
 - (a) General Means and Methods.
 - (b) Ballast Protection.
 - (c) Construction Excavation & Shoring.
 - (d) Pipe, Culvert, & Tunnel Installations.
 - (e) Demolition Procedure.
 - (f) Erection & Hoisting Procedure.
 - (g) Debris Shielding or Containment.
 - (h) Blasting.
 - (i) Formwork for the bridge deck, diaphragms, overhang brackets, and protective platforms.
 - (j) Bent Cap Falsework. A lift plan will be required if the contractor wants to move the falsework over the track.
- (7) For Undergrade Bridges (Bridges carrying the Railroad) the following submittals in addition to those listed above shall be provided for review and approval:
 - (a) Shop Drawings
 - (b) Bearing Shop Drawings and Material Certifications
 - (c) Concrete Mix Design
 - (d) Structural Steel, Rebar, and/or Strand Certifications

- (e) 28 day Cylinder Test for Concrete Strength
 - (f) Waterproofing Material Certification
 - (g) Test Reports for Fracture Critical Members
 - (h) Foundation Construction Reports
- (8) The Contractor shall include in all submissions a detailed narrative indicating the progression of work with the anticipated timeframe to complete each task. Work will not be permitted to commence until the Contractor has provided the Railroad with a satisfactory plan that the project will be undertaken without scheduling, performance or safety related issues. Submission shall also provide a listing of the anticipated equipment to be used, the location of all equipment to be used and insure a contingency plan of action is in place should a primary piece of equipment malfunction.
- C. Ballast Protection
- (1) The Contractor shall submit the proposed ballast protection system detailing the specific filter fabric and anchorage system to be used during all construction activities.
 - (2) The ballast protection is to extend 25' beyond the proposed limit of work, be installed at the start of the project and be continuously maintained to prevent all contaminants from entering the ballast section of all tracks for the entire duration of the project.
- D. Excavation:
- (1) The subgrade of an operated track shall be maintained with edge of berm at least 10'-0" from centerline of track and not more than 24 inches below top of rail. The Contractor will not be required to make existing section meet this specification if substandard, in which case existing section will be maintained.
 - (2) Additionally, the Railroad Engineer may require the Contractor to install orange construction safety fencing for protection of the work area.
- E. Excavation for Structures and Shoring Protection:
- (1) The Contractor will be required to take special precaution and care in connection with excavating and shoring pits, and in driving piles or sheeting, for footings adjacent to tracks to provide adequate lateral support for the tracks and the loads which they carry, without disturbance of track alignment and surface, and to avoid obstructing track clearances with working equipment, tools or other material.
 - (2) All plans and calculations for shoring shall be prepared and signed by a North Carolina

Registered Professional Engineer. The Professional Engineer will be responsible for the accuracy for all controlling dimensions as well as the selection of soil design values which will accurately reflect the actual field conditions.

(3) The Contractor shall provide a detailed installation and removal plan of the shoring components. Any component that will be installed via the use of a crane or any other lifting device shall be subject to the guidelines outlined in section 5-G of these provisions.

(4) The Contractor shall be required to survey the track(s) and Railroad embankment and provide a cross section of the proposed excavation in relation to the tracks.

(5) Calculations for the proposed shoring should include deflection calculations. The maximum deflection for excavations within 18'-0" of the centerline of the nearest track shall be 3/8". For all other cases, the max deflection shall not exceed 1/2". Additionally, a walkway with OSHA approved handrail protection and orange construction fencing will be required for all excavations in the Railroad right-of-way.

E. Pipe, Culvert, & Tunnel Installations

Pipe, Culvert, & Tunnel Installations shall be in accordance with the appropriate Norfolk Southern Design Specification as noted below:

(a) For Open Cut Method refer to Norfolk Southern Public Projects Manual Appendix H.4.6.

(b) For Jack and Bore Method refer to Norfolk Southern Public Projects Manual Appendix H.4.7.

(c) For Tunneling Method refer to Norfolk Southern Public Projects Manual Appendix H.4.8.

F. Demolition Procedures

(1) General

(a) Demolition plans are required for all spans over the track(s), for all spans adjacent to the track(s), if located on (or partially on) Railroad right-of-way; and in all situations where cranes will be situated on, over, or adjacent to Railroad right-of-way and within a distance of the boom length plus 15'-0" from the centerline of track.

(b) Railroad tracks and other Railroad property must be protected from damage during the procedure.

(c) A pre-demolition meeting shall be conducted with the Department, the Railroad Engineer or their representative, and the key Contractor's personnel prior to the start of the demolition procedure.

(d) The Railroad Engineer or his designated representative must be present at the site during the entire demolition procedure period.

(e) Existing, obsolete, bridge piers shall be removed to a sufficient depth below grade to enable restoration of the existing/proposed track ditch, but in no case less than 2'-0" below final grade.

(2) Submittal Requirements

In addition to the submittal requirements outlined in Section 5-A-2 of these provisions, the Contractor shall submit the following for approval by the Railroad Engineer:

(a) A plan showing the location of cranes, horizontally and vertically, operating radii, with delivery or disposal locations shown. The location of all tracks and other Railroad facilities as well as all obstructions such as wire lines, poles, adjacent structures, etc. must also be shown.

(b) Rating sheets showing cranes or lifting devices to be adequate for 150% of the actual weight of the pick, including all rigging components. A complete set of crane charts, including crane, counterweight, and boom nomenclature is to be submitted. Safety factors that may have been "built-in" to the crane charts are not to be considered when determining the 150% factor of safety.

(c) Plans and computations showing the weight of the pick must be submitted. Calculations shall be made from plans of the existing structure showing complete and sufficient details with supporting data for the demolition the structure. If plans do not exist, lifting weights must be calculated from field measurements. The field measurements are to be made under the supervision of the Registered Professional Engineer submitting the procedure and calculations.

(d) The Contractor shall provide a sketch of all rigging components from the crane's hook block to the beam. Catalog cuts or information sheets of all rigging components with their lifting capacities shall be provided. All rigging must be adequate for 150% of the actual weight of the pick. Safety factors that may have been "built-in" to the rating charts are not to be considered when determining the 150% factor of safety. All rigging components shall be clearly identified and tagged with their rated lifting capacities. The position of the rigging in the field shall not differ from what is shown on the final plan without prior review from the Department and the Railroad.

(e) A complete demolition procedure, including the order of lifts, time required for each lift, and any repositioning or re-hitching of the crane or cranes.

(f) Design and supporting calculations for the temporary support of components, including but not limited to the stability of the superstructure during the temporary condition, temporary girder tiedowns and falsework.

(3) Overhead Demolition Debris Shield

(a) The demolition debris shield shall be installed prior to the demolition of the bridge deck or other relevant portions of the superstructure over the track area to catch all falling debris.

(b) The demolition debris shield shall provide a minimum vertical clearance as specified in Section 4.A.1 of these provisions or maintain the existing vertical clearance if the existing clearance is less than that specified in Section 4.A.1.

(c) The Contractor shall include the demolition debris shield installation/removal means and methods as part of the proposed demolition procedure submission.

(d) The Contractor shall submit the demolition debris shield design and supporting calculations for approval by the Railroad Engineer.

(e) The demolition debris shield shall have a minimum design load of 50 Pounds per square foot plus the weight of the equipment, debris, personnel, and other loads to be carried.

(f) The Contractor shall include the proposed bridge deck removal procedure in its demolition means and methods and shall verify that the size and quantity of the demolition debris generated by the procedure does not exceed the shield design loads.

(g) The Contractor shall clean the demolition debris shield daily or more frequently as dictated either by the approved design parameters or as directed by the Railroad Engineer.

(4) Vertical Demolition Debris Shield

A vertical demolition debris shield may be required for substructure removals in close proximity to the Railroad's track and other facilities, as determined by the Railroad Engineer.

G. Erection and Hoisting:

(1) General

(a) Erection plans are required for all spans over the track(s), for all spans adjacent to the track(s), if located on (or partially on) Railroad right-of-way; and in all situations where cranes will be situated on, over, or adjacent

to Railroad right-of-way and within a distance of the boom length plus 15'- 0" from the centerline of track.

(b) Railroad tracks and other Railroad property must be protected from damage during the procedure.

(c) A pre-erection meeting shall be conducted with the Sponsor, the Railroad Engineer or their representative, and the key Contractor's personnel prior to the start of the erection procedure.

(d) The Railroad Engineer or his designated representative must be present at the site during the entire erection procedure period.

(e) For field splices located over Railroad property, a minimum of 50% of the holes for each connection shall be filled with bolts or pins prior to releasing the crane. A minimum of 50% of the holes filled shall be filled with bolts. All bolts must be appropriately tightened.

(2) Submittal Requirements

In addition the submittal requirements outlined in Section 5.A.2 of these provisions, the Contractor shall submit the following for approval by the Railroad Engineer:

(a) As-built beam seat elevations - All as-built bridge seats and top of rail elevations shall be furnished to the Railroad Engineer for review and verification at least 30 days in advance of the erection, to ensure that minimum vertical clearances as approved in the plans will be achieved.

(b) A plan showing the locations of cranes, horizontally and vertically, operating radii, with delivery or disposal locations shown. The location of all tracks and other railroad facilities as well as wire lines, poles, adjacent structures, etc. must also be shown.

(c) Rating sheets showing cranes or lifting devices to be adequate for 150% of the actual weight of the pick, including all rigging components. A complete set of crane charts, including crane, counterweight, and boom nomenclature is to be submitted. Safety factors that may have been "built-in" to the crane charts are not to be considered when determining the 150% factor of safety.

(d) Plans and computations showing the weight of the picks must be submitted. Calculations shall be made from plans of the existing and/or proposed structure showing complete and sufficient details with supporting data for the demolition or erection of the structure. If plans do not exist, lifting weights must be calculated from filed measurements. The field measurements are to be made under the supervision of the North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer submitting the procedure and calculations.

(e) The Contractor shall provide a sketch of all rigging components from the crane's hook block to the beam. Catalog cuts or information sheets of all rigging components with their lifting capacities shall be provided. All rigging must be adequate for 150% of the actual weight of the pick. Safety factors that may have been "built-in" to the rating charts are not to be considered when determining the 150% factor of safety. All rigging components shall be clearly identified and tagged with their rated lifting capacities. The position of the rigging in the field shall not differ from what is shown on the final plan without prior review from the Department and the Railroad.

(f) A complete erection procedure is to be submitted, including the order of lifts, time required for each lift, and any repositioning or re-hitching of the crane or cranes.

(e) Design and supporting calculations for the temporary support of components, including but not limited to temporary girder tie-downs and falsework.

H. Blasting:

(1) The Contractor shall obtain advance approval of the Railroad Engineer and Department Engineer for use of explosives on or adjacent to Railroad property. The request for permission to use explosives shall include a detailed blasting plan. If permission for use of explosives is granted, the Contractor will be required to comply with the following:

(a) Blasting shall be done with light charges under the direct supervision of a responsible officer or employee of the Contractor and a licensed blaster.

(b) Electric detonating fuses shall not be used because of the possibility of premature explosions resulting from operation of two-way train radios.

(c) No blasting shall be done without the presence of the Railroad Engineer or his authorized representative. At least 72 hours advance notice to the person designated in the Railroad's notice of authorization to proceed (see section 2B above) will be required to arrange for the presence of an authorized Railroad representative and such flagging as the Railroad may require.

(d) Have at the job site adequate equipment, labor and materials and allow sufficient time to clean up debris resulting from the blasting without delay to trains, as well as correcting at his expense any track misalignment or other damage to Railroad property resulting from the blasting as directed by the Railroad Engineer. If his actions result in delay of trains, the Contractor shall bear the entire cost thereof.

- (e) The blasting Contractor shall have a copy of the approved blasting plan on hand while on the site.
 - (f) Explosive materials or loaded holes shall not be left unattended at the blast site.
 - (g) A seismograph shall be placed on the track shoulder adjacent to each blast which will govern the peak particle velocity of two inches per second measurement shall also be taken on the ground adjacent to structures as designated by a qualified and independent blasting consultant. The Railroad reserves the option to direct the placement of additional seismographs at structures or other locations of concern, without regard to scaled distance.
 - (h) After each blast, the blasting Contractor shall provide a copy of their drill log and blast report, which includes number of holes, depth of holes, number of decks, type and pounds of explosives used per deck.
 - (i) The Railroad may require top of rail elevations and track centers taken before, during and after the blasting and excavation operation to check for any track misalignment resulting from the Contractor's activities.
- (2) The Railroad Engineer will:
- (a) Determine the approximate location of trains and advise the Contractor the approximate amount of time available for the blasting operation and clean-up.
 - (b) Have the authority to order discontinuance of blasting if, in his opinion, blasting is too hazardous or is not in accord with these special provisions.

I. Track Monitoring

- (1) At the direction of the Railroad Engineer, any activity that has the potential to disturb the Railroad track structure may require the Contractor to submit a detailed track monitoring program for approval by the Railroad Engineer.
- (2) The program shall specify the survey locations, the distance between the location points, and frequency of monitoring before, during, and after construction. Railroad reserves the right to modify the survey locations and monitoring frequency as necessary during the project.
- (3) The survey data shall be collected in accordance with the approved frequency and immediately furnished to the Railroad Engineer for analysis.

(4) If any movement has occurred as determined by the Railroad Engineer, the Railroad will be immediately notified. Railroad, at its sole discretion, shall have the right to immediately require all Contractor operations to be ceased and determine what corrective action is required. Any corrective action required by the Railroad or performed by the Railroad including the monitoring of corrective action of the Contractor will be at project expense.

J. Maintenance of Railroad Facilities:

(1) The Contractor will be required to maintain all ditches and drainage structures free of silt or other obstructions which may result from his operations and provide and maintain any erosion control measures as required. The Contractor will promptly repair eroded areas within Railroad's right of way and repair any other damage to the property of the Railroad or its tenants.

(2) If, in the course of construction, it may be necessary to block a ditch, pipe or other drainage facility, temporary pipes, ditches or other drainage facilities shall be installed to maintain adequate drainage, as approved by the Railroad. Upon completion of the work, the temporary facilities shall be removed and the permanent facilities restored.

(3) All such maintenance and repair of damages due to the Contractor's operations shall be done at the Contractor's expense.

K. Storage of Materials and Equipment:

Materials and equipment shall not be stored where they will interfere with Railroad operations, nor on the right of way of the Railroad without first having obtained permission from the Railroad Engineer, and such permission will be with the understanding that the Railroad will not be liable for damage to such material and equipment from any cause and that the Railroad Engineer may move or require the Contractor to move, at the Contractor's expense, such material and equipment.

All grading or construction machinery that is left parked near the track unattended by a watchman shall be effectively immobilized so that it cannot be moved by unauthorized persons. The Contractor shall protect, defend, indemnify and save Railroad, and any associated, controlled or affiliated corporation, harmless from and against all losses, costs, expenses, claim or liability for loss or damage to property or the loss of life or personal injury, arising out of or incident to the Contractor's failure to immobilize grading or construction machinery.

L. Cleanup

Upon completion of the work, the Contractor shall remove from within the limits of the Railroad's right of way, all machinery, equipment, surplus materials, falsework, rubbish or

temporary buildings of the Contractor, and leave said right of way in a neat condition satisfactory to the Railroad Engineer or his authorized representative.

6. DAMAGES

- A. The Contractor shall assume all liability for any and all damages to his work, employees, servants, equipment and materials caused by Railroad traffic.
- B. Any cost incurred by the Railroad for repairing damages to its property or to property of its tenants, caused by or resulting from the operations of the Contractor, shall be paid directly to the Railroad by the Contractor.

7. FLAGGING SERVICES:

A. Requirements:

(1) Flagging services will not be provided until the Contractor's insurance has been reviewed and approved by the Railroad.

(2) Under the terms of the agreement between the Department and Railroad, the Railroad has sole authority to determine the need for flagging required to protect its operations. In general, the requirements of such services will be whenever the Contractor's men or equipment are, or are likely to be, working on the Railroad's right of way, or across, over, adjacent to or under a track, or when such work has disturbed or is likely to disturb a Railroad structure, Railroad roadbed, or surface and alignment of any track to such extent that the movement of trains must be controlled by flagging.

(3) Normally, the Railroad will assign one flagman to a project; but in some cases, more than one may be necessary, such as yard limits where three (3) flagmen may be required. However, if the Contractor works within distances that violate instructions given by the Railroad Engineer or performs work that has not been scheduled with the Railroad Engineer, a flagman or flagmen may be required full time until the project has been completed. Should such violations or unscheduled, unauthorized work by the Contractor result in full time flagging being required by the Railroad, the additional cost of such flagging above normal flagging cost shall be deducted from the final payment to the Contractor as provided in Article 109-9 of the Standard Specifications. Neither Department nor Railroad will be liable for damages resulting from unscheduled or unauthorized work.

B. Scheduling and Notification:

(1) The Contractor's work requiring railroad flagging should be scheduled to limit the presence of a flagman at the site to a maximum of 50 hours per week. The Contractor shall receive Railroad approval of work schedules requiring a flagman presence in excess of 40 hours per week.

(2) No later than the time that approval is initially requested to begin work on Railroad right of way, the Contractor shall furnish to the Department and Railroad a schedule for all work required to complete the portion of the project within Railroad right of way and

arrange for a job site meeting between the Contractor, Department, and Railroad. Flagman or flagmen may not be provided until the job site meeting has been conducted and the Contractor's work scheduled.

(3) The Contractor will be required to give the Railroad Engineer at least 10 working days of advance written notice of intent to begin work within Railroad's right of way in accordance with this special provision. Once begun, when such work is then suspended at any time, or for any reason, the Contractor will be required to give the Railroad Engineer at least 3 working days of advance notice before resuming work on Railroad's right of way. Such notices shall include sufficient details of the proposed work to enable the Railroad Engineer to determine if flagging will be required. If such notice is in writing, the Contractor shall furnish the Department Engineer a copy; if notice is given verbally, it shall be confirmed in writing with a copy to the Department Engineer.

(4) If flagging is required, no work shall be undertaken until the flagman, or flagmen, is present at the job site. It may take up to 30 days to obtain flagging initially from the Railroad. When flagging begins, the flagman is usually assigned by the Railroad to work at the project site on a continual basis until no longer needed and cannot be called for on a spot basis. If flagging becomes unnecessary and is suspended, it may take up to 30 days to again obtain from the Railroad. Due to labor agreements, it is necessary to give 5 working days' notice before flagging service may be discontinued and responsibility for payment stopped.

(5) If, after the flagman is assigned to the project site, emergencies arise which require the flagman's presence elsewhere, the Contractor shall delay work on Railroad right of way until such time as the flagman is again available. Any additional costs resulting from such delay shall be borne by the Contractor and not the Department or Railroad.

C. Payment:

(1) The Department will be responsible for paying the Railroad directly for any and all costs of flagging which may be required to accomplish the construction. The Contractor shall reimburse the Railroad for any costs of the flagging which is required for work for the benefit of the Contractor.

(2) The estimated cost of flagging service is the current rate per day based on a 10-hour work day. This cost includes the base pay for each flagman, overhead, and a per diem charge for travel expenses, meals and lodging. The charge by the Railroad will be the actual cost based on the rate of pay for the Railroad's employees who are available for flagging service at the time the service is required.

(3) Work by a flagman in excess of 8 hours per day or 40 hours per week, but not more than 12 hours a day will result in overtime pay at 1½ times the appropriate rate. Work by a flagman in excess of 12 hours per day will result in overtime pay at 2 times the appropriate rate. If work is performed on a holiday, the flagging rate is 2½ times the normal rate. Railroad work involved in preparing and handling bills will also be charged to the Department. Charges to the Department by the Railroad shall be in accordance with applicable provisions of the Federal-Aid Policy Guide, Title 23 Subchapter B, Part 140I and Subchapter G, Part 646B issued by the Federal Highway Administration on December 9,

1991, including all current amendments. Flagging costs are subject to change. The above estimates of flagging costs are provided for information only and are not binding in any way.

D. Verification:

(1) Railroad's flagman will electronically enter flagging time via Railroad's electronic billing system. Any complaints concerning flagman or flagmen must be resolved in a timely manner. If need for flagman or flagmen is questioned, please contact Railroad's System Engineer of Public Improvements at (404) 529-1641. All verbal complaints must be confirmed in writing by the Contractor within 5 working days with copy to the Department Engineer. Address all written correspondence electronically to the Railroad Engineer:

Mr. James B. Carnes
bcarnes@watcocompanies.com

(2) The Railroad flagman assigned to the project will be responsible for notifying the Department Engineer upon arrival at the job site on the first day (or as soon thereafter as possible) that flagging services begin and on the last day that he performs such services for each separate period that services are provided. The Department Engineer will document such notification and general flagging times for verification purposes in the project records. When requested, the Department Engineer will also sign the flagman's diary showing daily time spent and activity at the project site. Also if requested, the flagman will cooperate with the Department by submitting daily timesheets or signing the Department Engineer's diary showing daily time spent at the project site.

8. HAUL ACROSS RAILROADS:

- A. Where the plans show or imply that materials of any nature must be hauled across a Railroad, unless the plans clearly show that the Department has included arrangements for such haul in its agreement with the Railroad, the Contractor will be required to make all necessary arrangements with the Railroad regarding means of transporting such materials across the Railroad. The Contractor will be required to bear all costs incidental, including flagging, to such crossings whether services are performed by his own forces or by Railroad personnel.
- B. No crossing may be established for use of the Contractor for transporting materials or equipment across the tracks of the Railroad unless specific authority for its installation, maintenance, necessary watching and flagging thereof and removal, all at the expense of the Contractor, is first obtained from the Railroad Engineer. The approval process for a temporary private crossing agreement executed between the Contractor and Railroad normally takes 90 days.

9. WORK FOR THE BENEFIT OF THE CONTRACTOR:

- A. All temporary or permanent changes in wire lines or other facilities which are considered necessary to the project are shown on the plans and included in the force account agreement

between the Department and the Railroad; or will be covered by appropriate revisions to same which will be initiated and approved by the Department and/or Railroad.

- B. Should the Contractor desire any changes in addition to the above, then he shall make separate arrangements with the Railroad for same to be accomplished at the Contractor's expense.

10. COOPERATION AND DELAYS:

- A. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to arrange a schedule with the Railroad for accomplishing stage construction involving work by the Railroad or tenants of the Railroad. In arranging his schedule he shall ascertain, from the Railroad, the lead time required for assembling crews and materials and shall make due allowance therefore. The Contractor shall cooperate with others in the construction of the project to the end that all work may be accomplished to the best advantage.
- B. No charge or claims of the Contractor against either the Department or Railroad will be allowed for hindrance or delay on account of railroad traffic, any work done by the Railroad or other delay incident to or necessary for safe maintenance of railroad traffic or for any delays due to compliance with these special provisions.
- C. The Contractor's attention is called to the fact that neither the Department nor Railroad assumes any responsibility for any work performed by others in connection with the construction of the project, and the Contractor shall have no claim whatsoever against the Department, or Railroad for any inconvenience, delay, or additional cost incurred by him on account of such operations by others.

11. TRAINMAN'S WALKWAYS:

Along the outer side of each exterior track of multiple operated tracks, and on each side of single operated track, an unobstructed continuous space suitable for trainman's use in walking along trains, extending to a line not less than 10' from centerline of track, shall be maintained. Any temporary impediments to walkways and track drainage encroachments or obstructions allowed during work hours while Railroad's protective service is provided shall be removed before the close of each work day. If there is any excavation near the walkway, a handrail, with 10'-0" minimum clearance from centerline of track shall be placed and must conform to AREMA and/or FRA standards .

12. GUIDELINES FOR PERSONNEL ON RAILROAD'S RIGHT OF WAY:

- A. All persons shall wear hard hats. Appropriate eye and hearing protection must be used. Working in shorts is prohibited. Shirts must cover shoulders, back and abdomen. Working in tennis or jogging shoes, sandals, boots with high heels, cowboy and other slip-on type boots is prohibited. Hard-sole, lace-up footwear, zippered boots or boots cinched up with straps which fit snugly about the ankle are adequate. Wearing Safety boots is strongly recommended. In the vicinity of at-grade crossings, it is strongly recommended to wear reflective vests.

- B. No one is allowed within 25' of the centerline of track without specific authorization from the flagman.
- C. All persons working near track while train is passing are to lookout for dragging bands, chains and protruding or shifted cargo.
- D. No one is allowed to cross tracks without specific authorization from the flagman.
- E. All welders and cutting torches working within 25' of track must stop when train is passing.
- F. No steel tape or chain will be allowed to cross or touch rails without permission from the Railroad.

13. GUIDELINES FOR EQUIPMENT ON RAILROAD'S RIGHT OF WAY:

- A. No crane or boom equipment will be allowed to set up to work or park within boom distance plus 15 ft. of centerline of track without specific permission from Railroad Engineer and flagman.
- B. No crane or boom equipment will be allowed to foul track or lift a load over the track without flag protection and track time.
- C. All employees will stay with their machines when crane or boom equipment is pointed toward track.
- D. All cranes and boom equipment under load will stop work while train is passing (including pile driving).
- E. Swinging loads must be secured to prevent movement while train is passing.
- F. No loads will be suspended above a moving train.
- G. No equipment will be allowed within 25' of centerline of track without specific authorization of the flagman.
- H. Trucks, tractors or any equipment will not touch ballast line without specific permission from railroad official and flagman. Orange construction fencing may be required as directed.
- I. No equipment or load movement within 25' or above a standing train or railroad equipment without specific authorization of the flagman.
- J. All operating equipment within 25' of track must halt operations when a train is passing. All other operating equipment may be halted by the flagman if the flagman views the operation to be dangerous to the passing train.
- K. All equipment, loads and cables are prohibited from touching rails.

- L. While clearing and grubbing, no vegetation will be removed from Railroad embankment with heavy equipment without specific permission from the Railroad Engineer and flagman.
- M. No equipment or materials will be parked or stored on Railroad's property unless specific authorization is granted from the Railroad Engineer.
- N. All unattended equipment that is left parked on Railroad's property shall be effectively immobilized so that it cannot be moved by unauthorized persons.
- O. All cranes and boom equipment will be turned away from track after each work day or whenever unattended by an operator.
- P. Prior to performing any crane operations, the Contractor shall establish a single point of contact for the Railroad flagman to remain in communication with at all times. Person must also be in direct contact with the individual(s) directing the crane operation(s).

14. INSURANCE:

- A. In addition to any other forms of insurance or bonds required under this License and except to the extent that any of the requirements of this section are expressly waived or revised in writing by Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC, Licensee, prior to the commencement of any work pursuant to this License and throughout the term of this License, shall at its own cost and expense, maintain insurance of the following kinds and amounts to deliver to Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC Real Estate Department satisfactory evidence of such insurance as indicated herein.
 - a) Public Liability Insurance – including contractual liability insurance, with a limit of not less than \$5,000,000 combined single limit for bodily injury and/or property damage for damages arising out of bodily injuries to or death of all persons in any one occurrence and for damage to or destruction of property, including the loss of use thereof, in any one occurrence. Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC shall be named as an additional insured under this insurance.
 - b) Worker's Compensation Insurance in Statutory Amounts. Employer's Liability and Occupational Disease Insurance with limits of \$1,000,000 each accident, \$1,000,000 policy limit and \$1,000,000 each employee. Such policy shall include a waiver of subrogation in favor of Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC
 - c) Automobile Liability Insurance with a limit of not less than \$5,000,000 combined single limit for bodily injury and/or property damage per occurrence. Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC shall be named as an additional insured under this insurance.
 - d) Licensee, with respect to the operations performed by it or any of its' subcontractors, shall provide Railroad Protective Liability Insurance in the name of Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC, with a limit of not less than \$2,000,000 per occurrence, combined single limit for bodily injury and/or property damage, for damages arising out of bodily injuries or to death of all persons and for damage to or destruction of property, including the loss of use thereof. Such insurance shall also contain an aggregate of not less than \$6,000,000

for damages arising out of more than one occurrence. Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC shall be the “Named Insured” on this policy.

- e) General Contractor’s Pollution Liability coverage, with limits of not less than \$5,000,000 aggregate bodily injury, property damage and cleanup expenses resulting from pollution conditions, Also provides coverage for contractor’s liability for subcontracted activities, such as lead paint removal and asbestos abatement. Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC shall be named as Additional Named Insured under this insurance.
- f) The insurance specified above shall be carried until the Project is satisfactorily completed and formally accepted by Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC Railroad. Failure to procure and maintain such insurance shall constitute a Breach of this License.
- g) The above indicated insurance coverage’s shall be effected under standard form policies issued by insurers of financial responsibility that are rated “A” or better by Best’s Insurance Reports, “AA” or better by Standard & Poor’s Insurance Rating Service and “Aa” or better by Moody’s Investors Service. Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC reserves the right to reject as inadequate any insurance coverage provided by an insurance company that is rated less than the ratings above by any of the aforementioned rating services.
- h) The above indicated insurance coverage’s shall be enforceable by any legitimate claimant after the termination or cancellation of this License or any attachment hereto, whether by expiration of time, by operation of law or otherwise, so long as the basis of the claim against the insurance company occurred during the period of time when the License was in effect and the insurance was in force.
- i) Licensee shall furnish Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC with certificates of insurance evidencing the insurance coverage’s required in subsections a,b,c, etc. above and shall also furnish the original Railroad Protective Liability insurance policy referred to in subsection d, above at least thirty (30) days prior to the commencement of this License Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC shall be named as an additional insured under the insurance coverage’s outlined in subsections a, b, c, etc. above. Certificates of Insurance and/or policies should be sent to: Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC, Real Estate Department, 315 West 3rd Street, Pittsburg, Kansas 66762.
- j) All insurance policies shall be endorsed to provide that the insurance company shall give thirty (30) days prior written notice to: Blue Ridge Southern Railroad, LLC, 315 West 3rd Street, Pittsburg, Kansas 66762 if the polices are to be terminated or if any changes are to be made which will in any way affect the insurance requirements of this License.

15. FAILURE TO COMPLY:

- A. In the event the Contractor violates or fails to comply with any of the requirements of these Special Provisions:
 - (1) The Railroad Engineer may require that the Contractor vacate Railroad’s property.
 - (2) The Department Engineer may withhold all monies due the Contractor on monthly statements.

Any such orders shall remain in effect until the Contractor has remedied the situation to the satisfaction of the Department Engineer and the Railroad Engineer.

16. PAYMENT FOR COST OF COMPLIANCE:

No separate payment will be made for any extra cost incurred on account of compliance with these special provisions. All such cost shall be included in the various prices bid to perform the work.

17. COMPLETION AND ACCEPTANCE:

Upon completion of the work, the Contractor shall remove from within the limits of the Railroad's right of way all machinery, equipment, surplus materials, rubbish or temporary buildings of the Contractor, and leave said right of way in a neat and orderly condition. After the final inspection has been made and work found to be completed in a satisfactory manner acceptable to the Department and Railroad, the Department will be notified of the Railroad's acceptance in writing by the Railroad's Chief Engineer or his authorized representative within ten (10) days or as soon thereafter as practicable.

Railroad Site Data:

The following information was received from the Railroad and is provided as a convenience to the Contractor in bidding this project. This information is subject to change and the Contractor may, at his discretion, contact the Railroad directly to verify its current accuracy. Since this information is shown as a convenience to the Contractor, but is subject to change, the Contractor shall have no claims whatsoever against either the Railroad or the Department of Transportation for any delays or additional costs incurred based on changes in this information which occur after the above date of receipt.

Train information:

of Trains in a 24-hr. period: 6 trains a day.

Maximum Authorized Speed: Freight Trains-25 MPH



Flagging Rate Agreement

When Contractors have men and equipment working within 25 feet on either side of the railroad track centerline, Federal Regulations mandate protection must be provided by qualified railroad flagman. Equipment with extensions, such as a crane boom, that are near enough to reach within 25 feet of the track also requires the proper protection.

A contractor must contact the railroad a minimum of 48-hours unless stipulated in order to schedule and receive approval from the Roadmaster or Division Engineer to provide the protection. Below are the Flagging Rates to be invoiced to the Contractor or the State Agency for flagging work completed within the 25 feet of the Railroad Right-of-Way per the Agreement.

- \$100.00 Per hour with a 4-hour minimum
- \$150.00 Per hour for all hours over 8-hours in any week day
- \$150.00 Per hour for all weekends and holidays

Please sign that you acknowledge the rates to be invoice for flagging hours completed by the Railroad.

Company

Signature of Contractor or State Agency

Title

Date

Watco Transportation Services, L.L.C.

315 W. 3rd Street • Pittsburg, KS 66762 • Phone: 620-231-2230 • Fax: 620-231-0812



Application for Temporary Entry Permit

Applicant Information

Legal Name of Company:			
Municipal Ownership, if any:		State of incorporation:	
If not a corporation, name(s) of owners or partners:			
Contact Name:		Phone:	
Fax:		Email Address:	
Business Address:			

Corporate Information Same as above

Legal Name of Company:			
Municipal Ownership, if any:		State of incorporation:	
If not a corporation, name(s) of owners or partners:			
Contact Name:		Phone:	
Fax:		Email Address:	
Business Address:			

Location

Name of Railroad:		City:		State:		County:	
Distance and direction from nearest Railroad milepost:							
Distance and direction from centerline of nearest road crossing:							
Dimensions of affected Railroad property (attached plan showing exact location relative to any landmarks, structures, roads, mileposts, track (railroad or otherwise), etc.):							
Purpose of proposed entry:							
What buildings or structures are currently on site?							
Will any buildings or structures be placed on site? If yes, list buildings/structures and estimated cost:							

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISION

(10-18-95) (Rev. 2-18-14)

Z-1a

PERMITS

The Contractor’s attention is directed to the following permits, which have been applied for by the Department of Transportation to the authority granting the permit. Copies of the permits will be furnished to the Contractor when received by the Department.

<u>PERMIT</u>	<u>AUTHORITY GRANTING THE PERMIT</u>
Dredge and Fill and/or Work in Navigable Waters (404)	U. S. Army Corps of Engineers
Water Quality (401)	Division of Environmental Management, DEQ State of North Carolina

The Contractor shall comply with all applicable permit conditions during construction of this project. Those conditions marked by * are the responsibility of the Department and the Contractor has no responsibility in accomplishing those conditions.

Agents of the permitting authority will periodically inspect the project for adherence to the permits.

The Contractor's attention is also directed to Articles 107-10 and 107-13 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and the following:

Should the Contractor propose to utilize construction methods (such as temporary structures or fill in waters and/or wetlands for haul roads, work platforms, cofferdams, etc.) not specifically identified in the permit (individual, general, or nationwide) authorizing the project it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate with the Engineer to determine what, if any, additional permit action is required. The Contractor shall also be responsible for initiating the request for the authorization of such construction method by the permitting agency. The request shall be submitted through the Engineer. The Contractor shall not utilize the construction method until it is approved by the permitting agency. The request normally takes approximately 60 days to process; however, no extensions of time or additional compensation will be granted for delays resulting from the Contractor's request for approval of construction methods not specifically identified in the permit.

Where construction moratoriums are contained in a permit condition which restricts the Contractor's activities to certain times of the year, those moratoriums will apply only to the portions of the work taking place in the waters or wetlands provided that activities outside those areas is done in such a manner as to not affect the waters or wetlands.

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
ROADWAY ITEMS						
0001	0000100000-N	800	MOBILIZATION	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0002	0000400000-N	801	CONSTRUCTION SURVEYING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0003	0000900000-N	SP	GENERIC MISCELLANEOUS ITEM UTILITY COORDINATOR	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0004	0000910000-N	SP	GENERIC MISCELLANEOUS ITEM EQUIPMENT OPERATING RATE FOR SNOW AND ICE REMOVAL	3,800 HR		
0005	0000915000-N	SP	GENERIC MISCELLANEOUS ITEM OUTFITTING FEE	4 EA		
0006	0000915000-N	SP	GENERIC MISCELLANEOUS ITEM RESPONSE FOR SNOW AND ICE REMOVAL	80 EA		
0007	0001000000-E	200	CLEARING & GRUBBING .. ACRE(S)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0008	0008000000-E	200	SUPPLEMENTARY CLEARING & GRUB- BING	9 ACR		
0009	0022000000-E	225	UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION	655,500 CY		
0010	0028000000-N	SP	TYPE I STANDARD APPROACH FILL STATION ***** (19+15.21 -Y5-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0011	0028000000-N	SP	TYPE I STANDARD APPROACH FILL STATION ***** (22+70.63 -Y12-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0012	0028000000-N	SP	TYPE I STANDARD APPROACH FILL STATION ***** (421+76.50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0013	0028000000-N	SP	TYPE I STANDARD APPROACH FILL STATION ***** (421+76.50 -L- RT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0014	0028000000-N	SP	TYPE I STANDARD APPROACH FILL STATION ***** (659+58.95 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0015	0028000000-N	SP	TYPE I STANDARD APPROACH FILL STATION ***** (756+21.00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0016	0029000000-N	SP	TYPE III REINFORCED APPROACH FILL, STATION ***** (17+01.02 -Y11-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0017	0029000000-N	SP	TYPE III REINFORCED APPROACH FILL, STATION ***** (17+09.26 -Y7-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0018	0029000000-N	SP	TYPE III REINFORCED APPROACH FILL, STATION ***** (21+33.33 -Y2-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0019	0036000000-E	225	UNDERCUT EXCAVATION	20,050 CY		
0020	0106000000-E	230	BORROW EXCAVATION	163,900 CY		
0021	0134000000-E	240	DRAINAGE DITCH EXCAVATION	31,020 CY		
0022	0141000000-E	240	BERM DITCH CONSTRUCTION	1,300 LF		
0023	0156000000-E	250	REMOVAL OF EXISTING ASPHALT PAVEMENT	444,640 SY		
0024	0163000000-E	250	REMOVAL OF EXISTING CONCRETE PAVEMENT	254,700 SY		
0025	0177000000-E	250	BREAKING OF EXISTING ASPHALT PAVEMENT	7,800 SY		
0026	0185000000-E	250	BREAKING OF EXISTING CONCRETE PAVEMENT	7,000 SY		
0027	0194000000-E	265	SELECT GRANULAR MATERIAL, CLASS III	20,000 CY		
0028	0196000000-E	270	GEOTEXTILE FOR SOIL STABILIZA- TION	735,870 SY		
0029	0199000000-E	SP	TEMPORARY SHORING	23,460 SF		
0030	0220000000-E	SP	ROCK EMBANKMENTS	7,200 TON		
0031	0222000000-E	SP	GEOTEXTILE FOR ROCK EMBANK- MENTS	300 SY		
0032	0223000000-E	275	ROCK PLATING	4,760 SY		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0033	0264000000-E	SP	GENERIC GRADING ITEM VACUUM SWEEPING	35	SMI	
0034	0318000000-E	300	FOUNDATION CONDITIONING MATE- RIAL, MINOR STRUCTURES	2,850	TON	
0035	0320000000-E	300	FOUNDATION CONDITIONING GEO- TEXTILE	8,970	SY	
0037	0343000000-E	310	15" SIDE DRAIN PIPE	324	LF	
0038	0344000000-E	310	18" SIDE DRAIN PIPE	224	LF	
0039	0354000000-E	310	**** RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS ***** (15", V)	144	LF	
0040	0448000000-E	310	***** RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV (12")	548	LF	
0041	0448000000-E	310	***** RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV (48")	204	LF	
0042	0448000000-E	310	***** RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV (54")	100	LF	
0043	0448000000-E	310	***** RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV (60")	252	LF	
0044	0448200000-E	310	15" RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV	33,468	LF	
0045	0448300000-E	310	18" RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV	7,388	LF	
0046	0448400000-E	310	24" RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV	11,928	LF	
0047	0448500000-E	310	30" RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV	5,552	LF	
0048	0448600000-E	310	36" RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV	2,908	LF	
0049	0448700000-E	310	42" RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS IV	1,144	LF	
0050	0576000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE CULVERTS, ***** THICK (36", 0.079")	306	LF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0051	0582000000-E	310	15" CS PIPE CULVERTS, 0.064" THICK	4,380	LF	
0052	0588000000-E	310	18" CS PIPE CULVERTS, 0.064" THICK	352	LF	
0053	0594000000-E	310	24" CS PIPE CULVERTS, 0.064" THICK	298	LF	
0054	0600000000-E	310	30" CS PIPE CULVERTS, 0.079" THICK	248	LF	
0055	0636000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE ELBOWS, ***** THICK (15", 0.064")	150	EA	
0056	0636000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE ELBOWS, ***** THICK (18", 0.064")	16	EA	
0057	0636000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE ELBOWS, ***** THICK (24", 0.064")	16	EA	
0058	0636000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE ELBOWS, ***** THICK (30", 0.079")	10	EA	
0059	0636000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE ELBOWS, ***** THICK (36", 0.079")	6	EA	
0060	0973100000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B IN SOIL (36", 0.530")	841	LF	
0062	0973100000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B IN SOIL (42", 0.630")	348	LF	
0063	0973100000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B IN SOIL (48", 0.690")	364	LF	
0064	0973100000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B IN SOIL (54", 0.780")	152	LF	
0065	0973100000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B IN SOIL (60", 0.840")	314	LF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0067	0973100000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B IN SOIL (66", 0.940")	358 LF		
0068	0973300000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B NOT IN SOIL (36', 0.530")	841 LF		
0070	0973300000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B NOT IN SOIL (42", 0.630")	348 LF		
0071	0973300000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B NOT IN SOIL (48", 0.690")	364 LF		
0072	0973300000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B NOT IN SOIL (54", 0.780")	152 LF		
0073	0973300000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B NOT IN SOIL (60", 0.840")	314 LF		
0075	0973300000-E	330	*** WELDED STEEL PIPE, ***** THICK, GRADE B NOT IN SOIL (66", 0.940")	358 LF		
0076	0986000000-E	SP	GENERIC PIPE ITEM 15" CS SLOTTED DRAIN, 0.064" THICK	14,190 LF		
0077	0995000000-E	340	PIPE REMOVAL	20,121 LF		
0078	0996000000-N	350	PIPE CLEAN OUT	5 EA		
0079	0999000000-E	462	4" SLOPE PROTECTION	600 SY		
0080	1011000000-N	500	FINE GRADING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0081	1099500000-E	505	SHALLOW UNDERCUT	207,970 CY		
0082	1099700000-E	505	CLASS IV SUBGRADE STABILIZA- TION	512,210 TON		
0083	1110000000-E	510	STABILIZER AGGREGATE	1,000 TON		
0084	1115000000-E	SP	GEOTEXTILE FOR PAVEMENT STA- BILIZATION	55,393 SY		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0085	1121000000-E	520	AGGREGATE BASE COURSE	14,532	TON	
0086	1220000000-E	545	INCIDENTAL STONE BASE	5,408	TON	
0087	1297000000-E	607	MILLING ASPHALT PAVEMENT, **** DEPTH (1-1/2")	43,813	SY	
0088	1330000000-E	607	INCIDENTAL MILLING	75,000	SY	
0089	1491000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC BASE COURSE, TYPE B25.0C	193,253	TON	
0090	1503000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC INTERMEDIATE COURSE, TYPE I19.0C	125,441	TON	
0091	1519000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC SURFACE COURSE, TYPE S9.5B	36,966	TON	
0092	1523000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC SURFACE COURSE, TYPE S9.5C	51,950	TON	
0093	1524200000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC SURFACE COURSE, TYPE S9.5D	43,266	TON	
0094	1575000000-E	620	ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX	20,315	TON	
0095	1577000000-E	620	POLYMER MODIFIED ASPHALT BIN- DER FOR PLANT MIX	2,475	TON	
0096	1693000000-E	654	ASPHALT PLANT MIX, PAVEMENT REPAIR	2,000	TON	
0097	1840000000-E	665	MILLED RUMBLE STRIPS (ASPHALT CONCRETE)	177,880	LF	
0098	1847000000-E	710	***** PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT, THROUGH LANES (WITH DOWELS) (13")	430,584	SY	
0099	1847000000-E	710	***** PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT, THROUGH LANES (WITH DOWELS) (9")	1,161	SY	
0100	1858000000-E	710	***** PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT, RAMPS (WITH DOWELS) (9")	37,550	SY	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0101	1891000000-E	SP	GENERIC PAVING ITEM DIAMOND GRINDING PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT	430,584 SY		
0102	1920000000-E	724	NONWOVEN GEOTEXTILE INTERLAYER	435,900 SY		
0103	1924000000-N	725	FIELD LABORATORY RENTAL, PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0104	2022000000-E	815	SUBDRAIN EXCAVATION	1,792 CY		
0105	2026000000-E	815	GEOTEXTILE FOR SUBSURFACE DRAINS	7,000 SY		
0106	2036000000-E	815	SUBDRAIN COARSE AGGREGATE	1,176 CY		
0107	2044000000-E	815	6" PERFORATED SUBDRAIN PIPE	7,000 LF		
0108	2070000000-N	815	SUBDRAIN PIPE OUTLET	14 EA		
0109	2077000000-E	815	6" OUTLET PIPE	84 LF		
0110	2099000000-E	816	SHOULDER DRAIN	132,110 LF		
0111	2110000000-E	816	4" SHOULDER DRAIN PIPE	132,110 LF		
0112	2121000000-E	816	4" OUTLET PIPE FOR SHOULDER DRAINS	5,600 LF		
0113	2132000000-N	816	CONCRETE PAD FOR SHOULDER DRAIN PIPE OUTLET	110 EA		
0114	2154000000-N	820	METAL FUNNELS	1 EA		
0115	2165000000-E	820	12" FUNNEL DRAIN PIPE	12 LF		
0116	2190000000-N	828	TEMPORARY STEEL PLATE COVERS FOR MASONRY DRAINAGE STRUCTURE	166 EA		
0117	2209000000-E	838	ENDWALLS	33.2 CY		
0118	2220000000-E	838	REINFORCED ENDWALLS	85.6 CY		
0119	2253000000-E	840	PIPE COLLARS	2 CY		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0120	2275000000-E	SP	FLOWABLE FILL	2,187 CY		
0121	2286000000-N	840	MASONRY DRAINAGE STRUCTURES	1,006 EA		
0122	2297000000-E	840	MASONRY DRAINAGE STRUCTURES	33.465 CY		
0123	2308000000-E	840	MASONRY DRAINAGE STRUCTURES	1,117.1 LF		
0124	2354200000-N	840	FRAME WITH GRATE, STD 840.24	1 EA		
0125	2364000000-N	840	FRAME WITH TWO GRATES, STD 840.16	5 EA		
0126	2364200000-N	840	FRAME WITH TWO GRATES, STD 840.20	610 EA		
0127	2365000000-N	840	FRAME WITH TWO GRATES, STD 840.22	122 EA		
0128	2366000000-N	840	FRAME WITH TWO GRATES, STD 840.24	11 EA		
0129	2367000000-N	840	FRAME WITH TWO GRATES, STD 840.29	15 EA		
0130	2374000000-N	840	FRAME WITH GRATE & HOOD, STD 840.03, TYPE ** (E)	4 EA		
0131	2374000000-N	840	FRAME WITH GRATE & HOOD, STD 840.03, TYPE ** (F)	40 EA		
0132	2374000000-N	840	FRAME WITH GRATE & HOOD, STD 840.03, TYPE ** (G)	59 EA		
0133	2396000000-N	840	FRAME WITH COVER, STD 840.54	16 EA		
0134	2407000000-N	840	STEEL FRAME WITH TWO GRATES, STD 840.37	7 EA		
0135	2451000000-N	852	CONCRETE TRANSITIONAL SECTION FOR DROP INLET	1 EA		
0136	2462000000-E	836	*** SLUICE GATE (15")	2 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0137	2473000000-N	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM ADA FRAME AND GRATE	11 EA		
0138	2473000000-N	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM ENERGY DISSIPATER	4 EA		
0139	2484000000-E	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM 30" PIPE REHABILITATION CIPP LINER	264 LF		
0140	2484000000-E	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM 32" OD PIPE REHABILITATION SOLID WALL THERMOPLASTIC SLIP LINER	211 LF		
0141	2484000000-E	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM 42" OD PIPE REHABILITATION SOLID WALL THERMOPLASTIC SLIP LINER	195 LF		
0142	2484000000-E	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM 54" OD PIPE REHABILITATION SOLID WALL THERMOPLASTIC SLIP LINER	578 LF		
0143	2484000000-E	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM PRE-INSTALLATION INSPECTION	1,248 LF		
0144	2549000000-E	846	2'-6" CONCRETE CURB & GUTTER	16,940 LF		
0145	2556000000-E	846	SHOULDER BERM GUTTER	49,400 LF		
0146	2577000000-E	846	CONCRETE EXPRESSWAY GUTTER	2,800 LF		
0147	2580000000-E	846	CONCRETE VALLEY GUTTER	150 LF		
0148	2591000000-E	848	4" CONCRETE SIDEWALK	4,030 SY		
0149	2605000000-N	848	CONCRETE CURB RAMPS	26 EA		
0150	2612000000-E	848	6" CONCRETE DRIVEWAY	2,900 SY		
0151	2619000000-E	850	4" CONCRETE PAVED DITCH	2,353 SY		
0152	2627000000-E	852	4" CONCRETE ISLAND COVER	2,400 SY		
0153	2633000000-E	852	12" CONCRETE ISLAND COVER	80 SY		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0154	2655000000-E	852	5" MONOLITHIC CONCRETE ISLANDS (KEYED IN)	1,100 SY		
0155	2703000000-E	854	CONCRETE BARRIER, TYPE ***** (I, SINGLE SLOPE)	9,920 LF		
0156	2710000000-N	854	CONCRETE BARRIER TRANSITION SECTION	28 EA		
0157	2717000000-E	854	VARIABLE HEIGHT CONCRETE BAR- RIER, TYPE ***** (II, SINGLE SLOPE)	31,380 LF		
0158	2724000000-E	857	PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE BARRIER, SINGLE FACED	10,480 LF		
0159	2752000000-E	SP	GENERIC PAVING ITEM MEDIAN HAZARD PROTECTION	500 LF		
0160	2800000000-N	858	ADJUSTMENT OF CATCH BASINS	2 EA		
0161	2815000000-N	858	ADJUSTMENT OF DROP INLETS	1 EA		
0162	3030000000-E	862	STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL	59,695 LF		
0163	3045000000-E	862	STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL, SHOP CURVED	290 LF		
0164	3060000000-E	862	STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL, DOUBLE FACED	230 LF		
0165	3150000000-N	862	ADDITIONAL GUARDRAIL POSTS	55 EA		
0166	3195000000-N	862	GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE AT-1	3 EA		
0167	3210000000-N	862	GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE CAT-1	31 EA		
0168	3215000000-N	SP	GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS, TYPE III	8 EA		
0169	3287000000-N	SP	GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE TL-3	56 EA		
0170	3288000000-N	SP	GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE TL-2	17 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0171	3317000000-N	SP	GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS, TYPE B-77	46	EA	
0172	3345000000-E	864	REMOVE & RESET EXISTING GUARDRAIL	15,420	LF	
0173	3360000000-E	863	REMOVE EXISTING GUARDRAIL	100,427	LF	
0174	3380000000-E	862	TEMPORARY STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL	4,307	LF	
0175	3382000000-E	862	TEMPORARY STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL (SHOP CURVED)	150	LF	
0176	3387000000-N	SP	TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS, TYPE ***** (CONNECTING TUBULAR BEAM TO PCB)	4	EA	
0177	3387000000-N	SP	TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS, TYPE ***** (W-BEAM)	7	EA	
0178	3389150000-N	SP	TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE ***** (TL-3)	8	EA	
0179	3435000000-N	SP	GENERIC GUARDRAIL ITEM RESPONSE FOR GUARDRAIL/GUIDE-RAIL MAINTENANCE	240	EA	
0180	3435000000-N	SP	GENERIC GUARDRAIL ITEM TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL ANCHOR UNITS, TYPE B-77	3	EA	
0181	3435000000-N	SP	GENERIC GUARDRAIL ITEM TEMPORARY IMPACT ATTENUATOR UNIT TYPE TL-3	4	EA	
0182	3436000000-N	862	GENERIC GUARDRAIL ITEM TEMPORARY GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE CAT-1	6	EA	
0183	3503000000-E	866	WOVEN WIRE FENCE, 47" FABRIC	89,190	LF	
0184	3509000000-E	866	4" TIMBER FENCE POSTS, 7'-6" LONG	5,667	EA	
0185	3515000000-E	866	5" TIMBER FENCE POSTS, 8'-0" LONG	1,298	EA	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0186	3557000000-E	866	ADDITIONAL BARBED WIRE	1,000 LF		
0187	3559000000-E	866	** STRAND BARBED WIRE FENCE WITH POSTS (4)	1,000 LF		
0188	3595000000-E	869	RELAPPING GUARDRAIL	350 LF		
0189	3628000000-E	876	RIP RAP, CLASS I	3,270 TON		
0190	3635000000-E	876	RIP RAP, CLASS II	1,265 TON		
0191	3649000000-E	876	RIP RAP, CLASS B	1,145 TON		
0192	3656000000-E	876	GEOTEXTILE FOR DRAINAGE	20,955 SY		
0193	3659000000-N	873	PREFORMED SCOUR HOLES WITH LEVEL SPREADER APRON	2 EA		
0194	4048000000-E	902	REINFORCED CONCRETE SIGN FOUNDATIONS	55 CY		
0195	4054000000-E	902	PLAIN CONCRETE SIGN FOUNDATIONS	6 CY		
0196	4057000000-E	SP	OVERHEAD FOOTING	521 CY		
0197	4060000000-E	903	SUPPORTS, BREAKAWAY STEEL BEAM	40,844 LB		
0198	4066000000-E	903	SUPPORTS, SIMPLE STEEL BEAM	15,833 LB		
0199	4072000000-E	903	SUPPORTS, 3-LB STEEL U-CHANNEL	5,323.2 LF		
0200	4079000000-N	903	SUPPORTS, BARRIER (SMALL)	7 EA		
0201	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (21+50 -Y10- RPC)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0202	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (23+90 -Y10- RPA)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0203	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (326+75 -Y10-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0204	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (329+50 --Y10-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0205	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (334+50 -Y10- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0206	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (337+25 -Y10- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0207	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (372+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0208	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (374+50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0209	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (384+50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0210	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (441+00 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0211	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (491+50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0212	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (495+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0213	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (508+50 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0214	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (520+50 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0215	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (549+50 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0216	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (565+50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0217	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (584+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0218	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (584+50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0219	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (606+00 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0220	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (619+00 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0221	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (627+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0222	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (667+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0223	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (687+50 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0224	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (714+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0225	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (731+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0226	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (767+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0227	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (811+00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0228	4082100000-N	906	SUPPORTS, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE AT STA ***** (I-26 WB, OVERHEAD SIGN STRUCTURE "A")	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0229	4096000000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, TYPE D	16 EA		
0230	4102000000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, TYPE E	274 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0231	4108000000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, TYPE F	13	EA	
0232	4110000000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, TYPE *** (GROUND MOUNTED) (A)	42	EA	
0233	4110000000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, TYPE *** (GROUND MOUNTED) (B)	11	EA	
0234	4114000000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, MILEMARKERS	34	EA	
0235	4116100000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, RELOCATE TYPE **** (GROUND MOUNTED) (A)	26	EA	
0236	4116100000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, RELOCATE TYPE **** (GROUND MOUNTED) (D)	9	EA	
0237	4138000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SUPPORT, STEEL BEAM	57	EA	
0238	4149000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SIGN SYSTEM, OVER- HEAD	3	EA	
0239	4152000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SIGN SYSTEM, STEEL BEAM	34	EA	
0240	4155000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SIGN SYSTEM, U- CHANNEL	228	EA	
0241	4192000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SUPPORT, U-CHANNEL	18	EA	
0242	4234000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SIGN, A OR B (OVERHEAD)	2	EA	
0243	4236000000-N	907	DISPOSAL OF SIGN, A & B (GROUND MOUNTED)	2	EA	
0244	4360000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNING ITEM RELOCATE OPEN CLOSED SIGN	2	EA	
0245	4400000000-E	1110	WORK ZONE SIGNS (STATIONARY)	730	SF	
0246	4402000000-E	SP	HIGH VISIBILITY STATIONARY SIGNS	6,810	SF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0247	4405000000-E	1110	WORK ZONE SIGNS (PORTABLE)	676	SF	
0248	4407000000-E	SP	HIGH VISIBILITY PORTABLE SIGNS	3,620	SF	
0249	4410000000-E	1110	WORK ZONE SIGNS (BARRICADE MOUNTED)	563	SF	
0250	4415000000-N	1115	FLASHING ARROW BOARD	10	EA	
0251	4420000000-N	1120	PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN	18	EA	
0252	4424000000-N	SP	WORK ZONE PRESENCE LIGHTING	8	EA	
0253	4430000000-N	1130	DRUMS	192	EA	
0254	4432000000-N	SP	HIGH VISIBILITY DRUMS	2,098	EA	
0255	4434000000-N	SP	SEQUENTIAL FLASHING WARNING LIGHTS	80	EA	
0256	4435000000-N	1135	CONES	160	EA	
0257	4445000000-E	1145	BARRICADES (TYPE III)	696	LF	
0258	4455000000-N	1150	FLAGGER	829	DAY	
0259	4465000000-N	1160	TEMPORARY CRASH CUSHIONS	66	EA	
0260	4470000000-N	1160	REMOVE & RESET TEMPORARY CRASH CUSHION	49	EA	
0261	4480000000-N	1165	TMA	10	EA	
0262	4485000000-E	1170	PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER	111,699	LF	
0263	4490000000-E	1170	PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER (ANCHORED)	44,251	LF	
0264	4500000000-E	1170	REMOVE & RESET PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER	293,465	LF	
0265	4505000000-E	1170	REMOVE & RESET PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER (ANCHORED)	81,219	LF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0266	4510000000-N	1190	LAW ENFORCEMENT	2,876	HR	
0267	4516000000-N	1180	SKINNY DRUM	200	EA	
0268	4600000000-N	SP	GENERIC TRAFFIC CONTROL ITEM CONNECTED LANE CLOSURE DEVICE	8	EA	
0269	4600000000-N	SP	GENERIC TRAFFIC CONTROL ITEM FLASHING BEACONS & DETECTION SYSTEM	8	EA	
0270	4650000000-N	1251	TEMPORARY RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS	6,883	EA	
0271	4695000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (8", 90 MILS)	698	LF	
0272	4700000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (12", 90 MILS)	520	LF	
0273	4720000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING CHARACTER (90 MILS)	296	EA	
0274	4725000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOL (90 MILS)	125	EA	
0275	4770000000-E	1205	COLD APPLIED PLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES, TYPE ** (4") (IV)	5,988	LF	
0276	4780000000-E	1205	COLD APPLIED PLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES, TYPE ** (8") (IV)	659	LF	
0277	4805000000-N	1205	COLD APPLIED PLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOL, TYPE ** (IV)	30	EA	
0278	4810000000-E	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (4")	301,146	LF	
0279	4815000000-E	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (6")	1,496	LF	
0280	4820000000-E	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (8")	8,118	LF	
0281	4825000000-E	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (12")	9,456	LF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0282	4835000000-E	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (24")	3,181 LF		
0283	4840000000-N	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING CHARACTER	40 EA		
0284	4845000000-N	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOL	266 EA		
0285	4847010000-E	1205	POLYUREA PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (4", 20 MILS)	59,539 LF		
0286	4847030000-E	1205	POLYUREA PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (6", 20 MILS)	247,352 LF		
0287	4847050000-E	1205	POLYUREA PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (8", 20 MILS)	1,459 LF		
0288	4847070000-E	1205	POLYUREA PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (12", 20 MILS)	12,286 LF		
0289	4847500000-E	SP	WORK ZONE PERFORMANCE PAVEMENT MARKING LINES, 6"	1,055,650 LF		
0290	4847600000-E	SP	WORK ZONE PERFORMANCE PAVEMENT MARKING LINES, 12"	26,713 LF		
0291	4850000000-E	1205	REMOVAL OF PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (4")	26,878 LF		
0292	4855000000-E	1205	REMOVAL OF PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (6")	141,994 LF		
0293	4860000000-E	1205	REMOVAL OF PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (8")	4,805 LF		
0294	4865000000-E	1205	REMOVAL OF PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (12")	6,150 LF		
0295	4870000000-E	1205	REMOVAL OF PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (24")	275 LF		
0296	4875000000-N	1205	REMOVAL OF PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOLS & CHARACTERS	100 EA		
0297	4891000000-E	1205	GENERIC PAVEMENT MARKING ITEM THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (24", 90 MILS)	733 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0298	4895000000-N	SP	GENERIC PAVEMENT MARKING ITEM NON-CAST IRON SNOWPLOWABLE PAVEMENT MARKERS	4,448 EA		
0299	4900000000-N	1251	PERMANENT RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS	175 EA		
0300	5005000000-E	1401	80' HIGH MOUNT STANDARD	2 EA		
0301	5010000000-E	1401	100' HIGH MOUNT STANDARD	3 EA		
0302	5020000000-N	1401	PORTABLE DRIVE UNIT	1 EA		
0303	5025000000-E	SP	HIGH MOUNT FOUNDATIONS	27 CY		
0304	5050000000-N	1404	LIGHT STANDARDS, TYPE MTLT ***** (45' SA, 15' ARM)	4 EA		
0305	5050000000-N	1404	LIGHT STANDARDS, TYPE MTLT ***** (45' TA, 15' ARM)	6 EA		
0306	5060000000-N	SP	POST TOP STANDARD, TYPE AB ***** (15' MH)	17 EA		
0307	5070000000-N	SP	STANDARD FOUNDATION ***** (TYPE M1)	4 EA		
0308	5070000000-N	SP	STANDARD FOUNDATION ***** (TYPE M2)	2 EA		
0309	5070000000-N	SP	STANDARD FOUNDATION ***** (TYPE R1)	47 EA		
0310	5070000000-N	SP	STANDARD FOUNDATION ***** (TYPE R2)	2 EA		
0311	5120000000-N	1407	ELECTRIC SERVICE POLE **** ***** (30' CLASS 4)	1 EA		
0312	5125000000-E	1407	ELECTRIC SERVICE LATERAL ***** (3 #1/0 USE)	25 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0313	5155000000-E	1409	ELECTRICAL DUCT, TYPE BD, SIZE ***** (2")	705 LF		
0314	5155000000-E	1409	ELECTRICAL DUCT, TYPE BD, SIZE ***** (3")	170 LF		
0315	5155000000-E	1409	ELECTRICAL DUCT, TYPE BD, SIZE ***** (4")	140 LF		
0316	5160000000-E	1409	ELECTRICAL DUCT, TYPE JA, SIZE ***** (3")	215 LF		
0317	5160000000-E	1409	ELECTRICAL DUCT, TYPE JA, SIZE ***** (4")	420 LF		
0318	5170000000-E	1410	** #8 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT (2)	340 LF		
0319	5175000000-E	1410	** #6 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT (2)	1,205 LF		
0320	5180000000-E	1410	** #4 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT (2)	395 LF		
0321	5185000000-E	1410	** #2 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT (2)	115 LF		
0322	5205000000-E	1410	** #8 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT IN *****" CONDUIT (2, 1.5")	6,100 LF		
0323	5210000000-E	1410	** #6 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT IN *****" CONDUIT (2, 1.5")	6,980 LF		
0324	5215000000-E	1410	** #4 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT IN *****" CONDUIT (2, 1.5")	4,130 LF		
0325	5220000000-E	1410	** #2 W/G FEEDER CIRCUIT IN *****" CONDUIT (2, 1.5")	1,835 LF		
0326	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (BR18)	2 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0327	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (CS36)	1 EA		
0328	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (HM18)	5 EA		
0329	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (IG18)	12 EA		
0330	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (IG30)	5 EA		
0331	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (IG36)	4 EA		
0332	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (LS18)	14 EA		
0333	5240000000-N	1411	ELECTRICAL JUNCTION BOXES ***** (LS36)	4 EA		
0334	5255000000-N	1413	PORTABLE LIGHTING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0335	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM 100' HIGH MOUNT LUMINAIRE-LED	18 EA		
0336	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM 80' HIGH MOUNT LUMINAIRE-LED	16 EA		
0337	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM COMMUNICATION GATEWAY	1 EA		
0338	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM CONTROL NODE	50 EA		
0339	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM DAVIT STYLE LIGHT STANDARD, MH 35', SA 6'	45 EA		
0340	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM FLAG POLE LIGHT	2 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0341	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM LIGHT CONTROL EQUIPMENT, TYPE RA, 120/240V	2 EA		
0342	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM POST TOP LUMINAIRE, LED, TYPE V	17 EA		
0343	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM R1S FOUNDATION	17 EA		
0344	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM R1S1 FOUNDATION	2 EA		
0345	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM REMOVE LIGHT STANDARD FOUNDA- TION	50 EA		
0346	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM REMOVE POST TOP LIGHT STANDARD	24 EA		
0347	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM REMOVE SINGLE ARM LIGHT STAND- ARD	22 EA		
0348	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM REMOVE TWIN ARM LIGHT STANDARD	4 EA		
0349	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM ROADWAY LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM	1 EA		
0350	5270000000-N	SP	GENERIC LIGHTING ITEM ROADWAY LUMINAIRES, LED, TYPE III	61 EA		
0352	5325400000-E	1510	4" WATER LINE	316 LF		
0353	5325600000-E	1510	6" WATER LINE	5,472 LF		
0354	5325800000-E	1510	8" WATER LINE	2,747 LF		
0355	5326200000-E	1510	12" WATER LINE	1,173 LF		
0356	5326600000-E	1510	16" WATER LINE	8,160 LF		
0357	5327000000-E	1510	20" WATER LINE	1,117 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0358	5329000000-E	1510	DUCTILE IRON WATER PIPE FITTINGS	41,950	LB	
0359	5538000000-E	1515	4" VALVE	4	EA	
0360	5540000000-E	1515	6" VALVE	26	EA	
0361	5546000000-E	1515	8" VALVE	7	EA	
0362	5558000000-E	1515	12" VALVE	5	EA	
0363	5558600000-E	1515	16" VALVE	24	EA	
0364	5571800000-E	1515	8" TAPPING SLEEVE & VALVE	1	EA	
0369	5648000000-N	1515	RELOCATE WATER METER	4	EA	
0370	5649000000-N	1515	RECONNECT WATER METER	18	EA	
0371	5656400000-E	1515	4" RPZ BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY	2	EA	
0372	5666000000-N	1515	FIRE HYDRANT	17	EA	
0373	5673000000-E	1515	FIRE HYDRANT LEG	156	LF	
0374	5686500000-E	1515	WATER SERVICE LINE	1,486	LF	
0375	5691200000-E	1520	6" SANITARY GRAVITY SEWER	126	LF	
0376	5691300000-E	1520	8" SANITARY GRAVITY SEWER	3,071	LF	
0377	5692000000-E	1520	30" SANITARY GRAVITY SEWER	416	LF	
0379	5768000000-N	1520	SANITARY SEWER CLEAN-OUT	2	EA	
0380	5775000000-E	1525	4' DIA UTILITY MANHOLE	20	EA	
0381	5776000000-E	1525	5' DIA UTILITY MANHOLE	2	EA	
0382	5798000000-E	1530	ABANDON *** UTILITY PIPE (4")	370	LF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0383	5800000000-E	1530	ABANDON 6" UTILITY PIPE	1,919	LF	
0384	5801000000-E	1530	ABANDON 8" UTILITY PIPE	4,284	LF	
0385	5804000000-E	1530	ABANDON 12" UTILITY PIPE	884	LF	
0386	5810000000-E	1530	ABANDON 16" UTILITY PIPE	3,303	LF	
0387	5815000000-N	1530	REMOVE WATER METER	2	EA	
0388	5815500000-N	1530	REMOVE FIRE HYDRANT	6	EA	
0389	5828000000-N	1530	REMOVE UTILITY MANHOLE	22	EA	
0390	5835000000-E	1540	*** ENCASEMENT PIPE (54")	360	LF	
0391	5835000000-E	1540	*** ENCASEMENT PIPE (8")	160	LF	
0392	5835700000-E	1540	16" ENCASEMENT PIPE	281	LF	
0393	5835900000-E	1540	20" ENCASEMENT PIPE	109	LF	
0394	5836000000-E	1540	24" ENCASEMENT PIPE	430	LF	
0395	5836200000-E	1540	30" ENCASEMENT PIPE	274	LF	
0396	5872500000-E	1550	BORE AND JACK OF *** (16")	313.75	LF	
0397	5872500000-E	1550	BORE AND JACK OF *** (20")	109	LF	
0398	5872500000-E	1550	BORE AND JACK OF *** (24")	430	LF	
0399	5872500000-E	1550	BORE AND JACK OF *** (30")	239	LF	
0400	5872500000-E	1550	BORE AND JACK OF *** (54")	360	LF	
0401	5872600000-E	1550	DIRECTIONAL DRILLING OF *** (20")	1,117	LF	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0403	5882000000-N	SP	GENERIC UTILITY ITEM 4" ELECTROMAGNETIC FLOW METER VAULT COMPLETE	2 EA		
0404	5882000000-N	SP	GENERIC UTILITY ITEM BELOW GROUND BACKFLOW ENCLO- SURE COMPLETE	2 EA		
0409	6000000000-E	1605	TEMPORARY SILT FENCE	155,315 LF		
0410	6006000000-E	1610	STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL, CLASS A	18,270 TON		
0411	6009000000-E	1610	STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL, CLASS B	36,365 TON		
0412	6012000000-E	1610	SEDIMENT CONTROL STONE	30,070 TON		
0413	6015000000-E	1615	TEMPORARY MULCHING	451.5 ACR		
0414	6018000000-E	1620	SEED FOR TEMPORARY SEEDING	17,600 LB		
0415	6021000000-E	1620	FERTILIZER FOR TEMPORARY SEED- ING	91.5 TON		
0416	6024000000-E	1622	TEMPORARY SLOPE DRAINS	23,930 LF		
0417	6029000000-E	SP	SAFETY FENCE	12,600 LF		
0418	6030000000-E	1630	SILT EXCAVATION	139,360 CY		
0419	6036000000-E	1631	MATTING FOR EROSION CONTROL	700,000 SY		
0420	6037000000-E	SP	COIR FIBER MAT	11,000 SY		
0421	6042000000-E	1632	1/4" HARDWARE CLOTH	55,550 LF		
0422	6045000000-E	SP	*** TEMPORARY PIPE (42")	160 LF		
0423	6048000000-E	SP	FLOATING TURBIDITY CURTAIN	150 SY		
0424	6070000000-N	1639	SPECIAL STILLING BASINS	24 EA		
0425	6071012000-E	SP	COIR FIBER WATTLE	18,310 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0426	6071020000-E	SP	POLYACRYLAMIDE (PAM)	15,540	LB	
0427	6071030000-E	1640	COIR FIBER BAFFLE	22,100	LF	
0428	6071050000-E	SP	*** SKIMMER (1-1/2")	51	EA	
0429	6071050000-E	SP	*** SKIMMER (2")	15	EA	
0430	6071050000-E	SP	*** SKIMMER (2-1/2")	2	EA	
0431	6071050000-E	SP	*** SKIMMER (3")	2	EA	
0432	6071050000-E	SP	*** SKIMMER (4")	3	EA	
0433	6084000000-E	1660	SEEDING & MULCHING	250	ACR	
0434	6087000000-E	1660	MOWING	130	ACR	
0435	6090000000-E	1661	SEED FOR REPAIR SEEDING	4,550	LB	
0436	6093000000-E	1661	FERTILIZER FOR REPAIR SEEDING	13.5	TON	
0437	6096000000-E	1662	SEED FOR SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING	6,700	LB	
0438	6102000000-E	1664	SODDING	5,800	SY	
0439	6108000000-E	1665	FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING	200.5	TON	
0440	6111000000-E	SP	IMPERVIOUS DIKE	1,815	LF	
0441	6114500000-N	1667	SPECIALIZED HAND MOWING	195	MHR	
0442	6117000000-N	SP	RESPONSE FOR EROSION CONTROL	300	EA	
0443	6117500000-N	SP	CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE	35	EA	
0444	6123000000-E	1670	REFORESTATION	4	ACR	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0445	6132000000-N	SP	GENERIC EROSION CONTROL ITEM FABRIC INSERT INLET PROTECTION DEVICE CLEANOUT	18 EA		
0446	6132000000-N	SP	GENERIC EROSION CONTROL ITEM FABRIC INSERT INLET PROTECTION DEVICE	6 EA		
0447	6650000000-E	1670	MULCH FOR PLANTING	198 CY		
0448	6655000000-E	1670	WATER FOR PLANTING	200 M/G		
0449	6665000000-E	1670	POSTEMERGENT HERBICIDAL TREATMENT FOR PLANT BEDS	1,780 SY		
0450	6670000000-E	1670	PREEMERGENT HERBICIDAL TREATMENT FOR PLANT BEDS	1,780 SY		
0451	6674000000-N	SP	GENERIC PLANTING ITEM (LS) LANDSCAPE FINISH GRADING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0452	6674000000-N	SP	GENERIC PLANTING ITEM (LS) LANDSCAPE PLANTING - EBL	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0453	6674000000-N	SP	GENERIC PLANTING ITEM (LS) LANDSCAPE PLANTING - WBL	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0454	6680000000-E	SP	GENERIC PLANTING ITEM GRANITE SCREENINGS	15 CY		
0455	6680000000-E	SP	GENERIC PLANTING ITEM RIVER ROCK	13 CY		
0456	6690000000-E	SP	GENERIC PLANTING ITEM TREE PROTECTION FENCE	4,500 LF		
0457	6900000000-E	SP	TOPSOIL	934 CY		
0458	6945000000-E	SP	3/4" POST TYPE YARD HYDRANT	2 EA		
0459	6950000000-N	SP	GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA SERVICE BLDG	2 EA		
0460	6955000000-N	SP	PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BLDG	2 EA		
0461	6960000000-N	SP	ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BLDG	2 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0462	6965000000-N	SP	HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA SERVICE BLDG	2	EA	
0463	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 40' FLAGPOLE	2	EA	
0464	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM BIFOLD DUMPSTER GATE	2	EA	
0465	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM BOULDERS	85	EA	
0466	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM CONCRETE LETTER BLOCK SEAT	12	EA	
0467	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM CONCRETE PATIO TABLE WITH UMBRELLA	8	EA	
0468	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM CURB BUMPER	8	EA	
0469	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM DEPRESSED SIDEWALK RAMP	2	EA	
0470	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM DOG PARK FIRE HYDRANT	2	EA	
0471	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BLDG	2	EA	
0472	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM GENERAL CONSTRUCTION OF REST AREA VENDING BLDG	2	EA	
0473	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM GRAPHIC FENCE SIGN	2	EA	
0474	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BLDG	2	EA	
0475	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM MICRO CHANNEL DRAIN	2	EA	
0476	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM PATIO CATCH BASIN	1	EA	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0477	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM PLUMBING INSTALLATION FOR REST AREA VENDING BLDG	2 EA		
0478	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM RECYCLE CONTAINER	25 EA		
0479	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM REST AREA BUILDINGS/PICNIC FACILITIES DEMOLITION	2 EA		
0480	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM WASTE CONTAINER	25 EA		
0481	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM DOWNSPOUT DRAINAGE SYSTEM	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0482	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM SITE SIGNING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0483	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 2' STONE WALL	400 LF		
0484	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 4' ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	352 LF		
0485	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 6' ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	736 LF		
0486	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 6" PVC DRAIN	100 LF		
0487	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 8' CHAIN LINK FENCE WITH SLATS	288 LF		
0488	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM 9" CONCRETE BORDER	899 LF		
0489	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM LANDSCAPE METAL EDGING	1,000 LF		
0490	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM STONE RETAINING WALL AND ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE	340 LF		
0491	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM STONE WALL & ORNAMENTAL WIRE FENCE SCREEN	144 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0492	6982000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM DECORATIVE PAVERS	5,280 SF		
0493	7060000000-E	1705	SIGNAL CABLE	11,990 LF		
0494	7120000000-E	1705	VEHICLE SIGNAL HEAD (12", 3 SECTION)	85 EA		
0495	7132000000-E	1705	VEHICLE SIGNAL HEAD (12", 4 SECTION)	1 EA		
0496	7144000000-E	1705	VEHICLE SIGNAL HEAD (12", 5 SECTION)	1 EA		
0497	7204000000-N	1705	LOUVER	4 EA		
0498	7252000000-E	1710	MESSENGER CABLE (1/4")	2,500 LF		
0499	7264000000-E	1710	MESSENGER CABLE (3/8")	2,800 LF		
0500	7279000000-E	1715	TRACER WIRE	49,540 LF		
0501	7300000000-E	1715	UNPAVED TRENCHING (***** (1, 1")	230 LF		
0502	7300000000-E	1715	UNPAVED TRENCHING (***** (1, 2")	1,220 LF		
0503	7300000000-E	1715	UNPAVED TRENCHING (***** (2, 2")	46,330 LF		
0504	7300000000-E	1715	UNPAVED TRENCHING (***** (4, 2")	40 LF		
0505	7301000000-E	1715	DIRECTIONAL DRILL (***** (1, 2")	1,240 LF		
0506	7301000000-E	1715	DIRECTIONAL DRILL (***** (2, 2")	4,600 LF		
0507	7301000000-E	1715	DIRECTIONAL DRILL (***** (3, 2")	400 LF		
0508	7312000000-N	1716	JUNCTION BOX (***** (SPECIAL OVER-SIZED, HEAVY DUTY)	8 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0509	7324000000-N	1716	JUNCTION BOX (STANDARD SIZE)	49	EA	
0510	7348000000-N	1716	JUNCTION BOX (OVER-SIZED, HEAVY DUTY)	88	EA	
0511	7360000000-N	1720	WOOD POLE	21	EA	
0512	7372000000-N	1721	GUY ASSEMBLY	39	EA	
0513	7396000000-E	1722	1/2" RISER WITH WEATHERHEAD	4	EA	
0514	7420000000-E	1722	2" RISER WITH WEATHERHEAD	14	EA	
0515	7430000000-N	1722	HEAT SHRINK TUBING RETROFIT KIT	1	EA	
0516	7432000000-E	1722	2" RISER WITH HEAT SHRINK TUBING	3	EA	
0517	7444000000-E	1725	INDUCTIVE LOOP SAWCUT	6,390	LF	
0518	7456000000-E	1726	LEAD-IN CABLE (*****)(14-2)	11,510	LF	
0519	7516000000-E	1730	COMMUNICATIONS CABLE (**FIBER)(144)	49,410	LF	
0520	7516000000-E	1730	COMMUNICATIONS CABLE (**FIBER)(24)	6,600	LF	
0521	7540000000-N	1731	SPLICE ENCLOSURE	12	EA	
0522	7541000000-N	1731	MODIFY SPLICE ENCLOSURE	4	EA	
0523	7552000000-N	1731	INTERCONNECT CENTER	12	EA	
0524	7566000000-N	1733	DELINEATOR MARKER	74	EA	
0525	7574500000-N	SP	FURNISH WIRELESS RADIO MODEM	1	EA	
0526	7574550000-N	SP	FURNISH WIRELESS LIGHTNING ARRESTOR	1	EA	
0527	7575142010-N	1736	900MHZ SERIAL/ETHERNET SPREAD SPECTRUM RADIO	4	EA	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0528	7575142060-N	SP	MODIFY RADIO INSTALLATION	3	EA	
0529	7575160000-E	1734	REMOVE EXISTING COMMUNICATIONS CABLE	2,580	LF	
0530	7588000000-N	SP	METAL POLE WITH SINGLE MAST ARM	7	EA	
0531	7613000000-N	SP	SOIL TEST	17	EA	
0532	7614100000-E	SP	DRILLED PIER FOUNDATION	90	CY	
0533	7631000000-N	SP	MAST ARM WITH METAL POLE DESIGN	7	EA	
0534	7636000000-N	1745	SIGN FOR SIGNALS	54	EA	
0535	7642200000-N	1743	TYPE II PEDESTAL WITH FOUNDATION	16	EA	
0536	7696000000-N	1751	CONTROLLERS WITH CABINET (*****) (TYPE 2070E, BASE MOUNTED)	3	EA	
0537	7696000000-N	1751	CONTROLLERS WITH CABINET (*****) (TYPE 2070E, POLE MOUNTED)	3	EA	
0538	7708000000-N	1751	DETECTOR CARD (*****) (TYPE 170)	36	EA	
0539	7901000000-N	1753	CABINET BASE EXTENDER	3	EA	
0540	7960000000-N	SP	METAL POLE FOUNDATION REMOVAL	9	EA	
0541	7972000000-N	SP	METAL POLE REMOVAL	9	EA	
0542	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM 5/8" X 10' GROUNDING ELECTRODE	67	EA	
0543	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM CCTV CAMERA ASSEMBLY	8	EA	
0544	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM CCTV CAMERA METAL POLE	8	EA	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0545	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM DMS ACCESS LADDER	2 EA		
0546	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM DMS PEDESTAL STRUCTURE	2 EA		
0547	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN	2 EA		
0548	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM EQUIPMENT CABINET DISCONNECT	10 EA		
0549	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM ETHERNET EDGE SWITCH	14 EA		
0550	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM FIELD EQUIPMENT CABINET (WITH UPS)	8 EA		
0551	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM ICM PORTABLE TRAILER-MOUNTED CCTV CAMERA	4 EA		
0552	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM JUNCTION BOX MARKER	2 EA		
0553	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM METER BASE/DISCONNECT COMBINA- TION PANEL	7 EA		
0554	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM MICROWAVE VEHICLE DETECTION SYSTEM - MULTIPLE ZONES	5 EA		
0555	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM MODIFY ELECTRICAL SERVICE	2 EA		
0556	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN	4 EA		
0557	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM PORTABLE TRAILER-MOUNTED CCTV CAMERA	2 EA		
0558	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM PROTECTIVE COATING FOR SIGNAL PEDESTAL TYPE II (BLACK)	16 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0559	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM PROTECTIVE COATING FOR SINGLE MAST ARM POLE (BLACK)	6 EA		
0560	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM REMOVE 900MHZ RADIO	4 EA		
0561	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM REMOVE EXISTING DMS & STRUC- TURE	1 EA		
0562	7980000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM REMOVE WOOD POLE	1 EA		
0563	7985000000-N	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM INTEGRATION AND CONFIGURATION	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0564	7990000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM #4 SOLID BARE GROUNDING CON- DUCTORS	940 LF		
0565	7990000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM 3-WIRE COPPER FEEDER CONDUCT- TORS	3,020 LF		
0566	7990000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM 3-WIRE COPPER SERVICE ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS	200 LF		
0567	7990000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM 4-WIRE COPPER FEEDER CONDUCT- TORS	480 LF		
0568	7990000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM BACK PULL FIBER OPTIC CABLE	270 LF		
0569	7990000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM DROP CABLE (12-FIBER)	2,420 LF		
0570	7992000000-E	SP	GENERIC SIGNAL ITEM DMS FOUNDATION	12 CY		
0690	0636000000-E	310	*** CS PIPE ELBOWS, ***** THICK (12", 0.064")	1 EA		
0691	5589100000-E	1515	1" AIR RELEASE VALVE	17 EA		
0693	5709100000-E	1520	2" FORCE MAIN SEWER	101 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0694	5768500000-E	1520	SEWER SERVICE LINE	2,295	LF	
0695	5835000000-E	1540	*** ENCASEMENT PIPE (14")	200	LF	
0696	5872500000-E	1550	BORE AND JACK OF *** (14")	200	LF	
0697	5882000000-N	SP	GENERIC UTILITY ITEM THRUST COLLAR	15	EA	
0701	4082000000-E	903	SUPPORTS, WOOD	279	LF	
0702	5653000000-E	1515	*** DCV BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY (1")	2	EA	

CULVERT ITEMS

0571	8126000000-N	414	CULVERT EXCAVATION, STA ***** (525+98.15 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0572	8126000000-N	414	CULVERT EXCAVATION, STA ***** (588+18.23 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0573	8126000000-N	414	CULVERT EXCAVATION, STA ***** (769+93.36 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0574	8133000000-E	414	FOUNDATION CONDITIONING MATERIAL, BOX CULVERT	216	TON	
0575	8196000000-E	420	CLASS A CONCRETE (CULVERT)	346	CY	
0576	8245000000-E	425	REINFORCING STEEL (CULVERT)	59,431	LB	

WALL ITEMS

0577	8504000000-E	460	CONCRETE BARRIER RAIL WITH MOMENT SLAB	3,753.58	LF	
------	--------------	-----	--	----------	----	--

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0578	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (10)	5,693 SF		
0579	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (100)	9,815 SF		
0580	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (102)	10,419 SF		
0581	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (107)	1,401 SF		
0582	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (11)	3,992 SF		
0583	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (12)	9,535 SF		
0584	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (2)	1,478 SF		
0585	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (4B)	5,826 SF		
0586	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (4C)	114 SF		
0587	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (5A)	1,119 SF		
0588	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (6)	3,685 SF		
0589	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (7)	3,803 SF		
0590	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (8B)	3,514 SF		
0591	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (9)	4,181 SF		
0592	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (99)	8,367 SF		
0593	8802010000-E	SP	SOIL NAIL RETAINING WALLS	30,224 SF		
0594	8802015100-N	SP	SOIL NAIL VERIFICATION TESTS	24 EA		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0595	8802015110-N	SP	SOIL NAIL PROOF TESTS	94 EA		
0596	8832000000-N	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM MOMENT SLAB WITH SOUND BARRIER WALL (NW 4.6)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0597	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM ARCHITECTURAL CONCETE SURFACET REATMENT	106,116 SF		
0598	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM ARCHITECTURAL SURFACE TREAT- MENT	364,109 SF		
0599	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL NO 12.2A	35,692 SF		
0600	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL NO 12.2B	14,835 SF		
0601	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL NO 12.2C	10,724 SF		
0602	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL NO 4.1	51,463 SF		
0603	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL NO 4.2	69,213 SF		
0604	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL -NW4.6-	5,369 SF		
0605	8847000000-E	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL -NW5.3-	21,574 SF		
0698	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (108)	1,048 SF		
0700	8801000000-E	SP	MSE RETAINING WALL NO **** (13)	1,902 SF		
0704	8832000000-N	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM MOMENT SLAB WITH SOUND BARRIER WALL (NW 4.1)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0706	8832000000-N	SP	GENERIC RETAINING WALL ITEM MOMENT SLAB WITH SOUND BARRIER WALL (NW 12.2C)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

STRUCTURE ITEMS

0606	1308000000-E	607	MILLING ASPHALT PAVEMENT, **** TO ***** (7 1/2" TO 1/4")	1,670 SY		
0607	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (17+01.2 -Y11-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0608	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (17+09.26 -Y7-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0609	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (19+15.21 -Y5-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0610	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (21+33.13 -Y2-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0611	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (22+70.63 -Y12-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0612	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (332+10.52 -Y10-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0613	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (421+74.67 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0614	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (421+74.67 -L- RT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0615	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (659+58.95 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0616	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** (756+21.00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0617	8065000000-N	SP	ASBESTOS ASSESSMENT	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0618	8091000000-N	410	FOUNDATION EXCAVATION FOR BENT ** AT STATION ***** (1, 17+01.02 -Y11-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0619	8091000000-N	410	FOUNDATION EXCAVATION FOR BENT ** AT STATION ***** (1, 17+09.26 -Y7-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0620	8091000000-N	410	FOUNDATION EXCAVATION FOR BENT ** AT STATION ***** (1, 19+15.21 -Y5-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0621	8091000000-N	410	FOUNDATION EXCAVATION FOR BENT ** AT STATION ***** (1, 21+33.13 -Y2-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0622	8091000000-N	410	FOUNDATION EXCAVATION FOR BENT ** AT STATION ***** (1, 22+70.63 -Y12-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0623	8096000000-E	450	PILE EXCAVATION IN SOIL	160 LF		
0624	8097000000-E	450	PILE EXCAVATION NOT IN SOIL	40 LF		
0625	8105500000-E	411	***_*** DIA DRILLED PIERS IN SOIL (4'-6")	249 LF		
0626	8105500000-E	411	***_*** DIA DRILLED PIERS IN SOIL (5'-6")	295 LF		
0627	8105600000-E	411	***_*** DIA DRILLED PIERS NOT IN SOIL (4'-6")	215 LF		
0628	8105600000-E	411	***_*** DIA DRILLED PIERS NOT IN SOIL (5'-6")	260 LF		
0629	8111000000-E	411	PERMANENT STEEL CASING FOR ***_*** DIA DRILLED PIER (4'-6")	196 LF		
0630	8111000000-E	411	PERMANENT STEEL CASING FOR ***_*** DIA DRILLED PIER (5'-6")	292 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0631	8112730000-N	450	PDA TESTING	1 EA		
0632	8113000000-N	411	SID INSPECTIONS	16 EA		
0633	8115000000-N	411	CSL TESTING	3 EA		
0634	8121000000-N	412	UNCLASSIFIED STRUCTURE EXCAVATION AT STATION ***** (421+74.67 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0635	8121000000-N	412	UNCLASSIFIED STRUCTURE EXCAVATION AT STATION ***** (659+58.95 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0636	8121000000-N	412	UNCLASSIFIED STRUCTURE EXCAVATION AT STATION ***** (756+21.00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0637	8147000000-E	420	REINFORCED CONCRETE DECK SLAB	149,450 SF		
0638	8161000000-E	420	GROOVING BRIDGE FLOORS	92,126 SF		
0639	8182000000-E	420	CLASS A CONCRETE (BRIDGE)	3,437.8 CY		
0640	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (17+01.2 -Y11-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0641	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (17+09.26 -Y7-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0642	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (19+15.21 -Y5-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0643	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (21+33.13 -Y2-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0644	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (22+70.63 -Y12-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0645	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (421+74.67 -L- LT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0646	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (421+74.67 -L- RT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0647	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (659+58.95 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0648	8210000000-N	422	BRIDGE APPROACH SLABS, STATION ***** (756+21.00 -L-)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0649	8217000000-E	425	REINFORCING STEEL (BRIDGE)	652,430 LB		
0650	8238000000-E	425	SPIRAL COLUMN REINFORCING STEEL (BRIDGE)	77,170 LB		
0651	8265000000-E	430	54" PRESTRESSED CONCRETE GIR- DERS	11,566.58 LF		
0652	8274000000-E	430	MODIFIED 63" PRESTRESSED CONC GIRDERS	3,876 LF		
0653	8277000000-E	430	MODIFIED 72" PRESTRESSED CONC GIRDERS	1,145.77 LF		
0654	8328200000-E	450	PILE DRIVING EQUIPMENT SETUP FOR *** STEEL PILES (HP 12 X 53)	327 EA		
0655	8328200000-E	450	PILE DRIVING EQUIPMENT SETUP FOR *** STEEL PILES (HP 14 X 73)	38 EA		
0656	8328400000-E	450	PILE DRIVING EQUIPMENT SETUP FOR *** GALVANIZED STEEL PILES (PP 30 X 0.50)	40 EA		
0657	8364000000-E	450	HP12X53 STEEL PILES	16,931 LF		
0658	8384000000-E	450	HP14X73 STEEL PILES	1,870 LF		
0659	8385200000-E	450	PP ** X **** GALVANIZED STEEL PILES (30 X 0.50)	2,750 LF		
0660	8391000000-N	450	STEEL PILE POINTS	62 EA		
0661	8392500000-E	450	PREDRILLING FOR PILES	272 LF		

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0662	8503000000-E	460	CONCRETE BARRIER RAIL	4,799.31		LF
0663	8510000000-E	460	CONCRETE MEDIAN BARRIER	529.12		LF
0664	8524000000-E	SP	*** CHAIN LINK FENCE (72")	490		LF
0665	8531000000-E	462	4" SLOPE PROTECTION	3,611		SY
0666	8559000000-E	SP	CLASS II, SURFACE PREPARATION	199		SY
0667	8566000000-E	SP	CLASS III, SURFACE PREPARATION	171.2		SY
0668	8573000000-E	SP	LATEX MODIFIED CONC OVERLAY	22.3		CY
0669	8580000000-E	SP	PLACING & FINISHING OF LATEX MODIFIED CONC OVERLAY	534.7		SY
0670	8608000000-E	876	RIP RAP CLASS II (2'-0" THICK)	4,146		TON
0671	8622000000-E	876	GEOTEXTILE FOR DRAINAGE	4,619		SY
0672	8657000000-N	430	ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS	Lump Sum		L.S.
0673	8692000000-N	SP	FOAM JOINT SEALS	Lump Sum		L.S.
0674	8706000000-N	SP	EXPANSION JOINT SEALS	Lump Sum		L.S.
0675	8727000000-N	SP	ELECTRICAL CONDUIT SYSTEM FOR SIGNALS AT STA***** (17+01.2 -Y11-)	Lump Sum		L.S.
0676	8727000000-N	SP	ELECTRICAL CONDUIT SYSTEM FOR SIGNALS AT STA***** (421+74.67 -L- LT)	Lump Sum		L.S.
0677	8727000000-N	SP	ELECTRICAL CONDUIT SYSTEM FOR SIGNALS AT STA***** (659+58.95 -L-)	Lump Sum		L.S.
0678	8860000000-N	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM APPLICATION OF BRIDGE COATING	Lump Sum		L.S.
0679	8867000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM ANODIZED THREE BAR METAL RAIL	781.27		LF

County : Buncombe, Henderson

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0680	8867000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM FOAM JOINT SEALS FOR PRESERVA- TION	453.1 LF		
0681	8882000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE FOR PRE- SERVATION	43.8 CF		
0682	8892000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE SURFACE TREATMENT	18,365 SF		
0683	8892000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM BRIDGE JOINT DEMOLITION	232.9 SF		
0684	8893000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM CONCRETE BRIDGE DECK CRACK SEALING	2,519.4 SY		
0685	8893000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM DIAMOND GRINDING	8,819 SY		
0686	8893000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM HYDRODEMOLITION OF BRIDGE DECK	572.5 SY		
0687	8893000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM SCARIFYING BRIDGE DECK	534.7 SY		
0688	8893000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM SHOTBLASTING BRIDGE DECK	2,519.4 SY		
0689	8893000000-E	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM SILANE DECK TREATMENT	8,784 SY		
0703	8121000000-N	412	UNCLASSIFIED STRUCTURE EXCAVA- TION AT STATION ***** (421+74.67-L-RT)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0705	8860000000-N	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM SOUND BARRIER WALL (BRIDGE MOUNTED)	Lump Sum	L.S.	